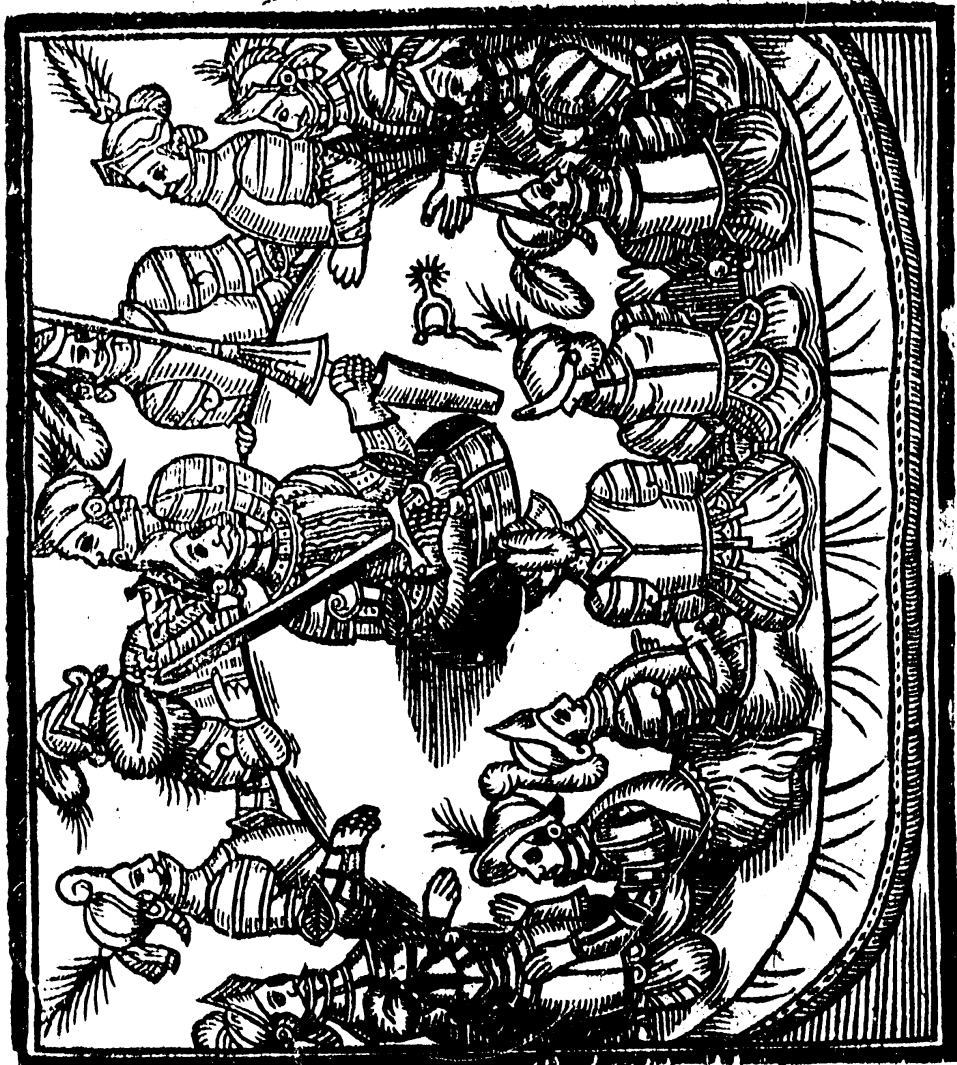


King *Arthur* and his vallant Knights of the round Table.
Sir Tristram. Sir Launcelot. Sir Galahad. Sir Perciual.
Sir Gawain. Sir Ector. Sir Bors. Sir Lionel. Sir Griflet.
Sir Gaheris. Sir Tor. Sir Acolon. Sir Ewaine. Sir Marhaus.
Sir Pelleas. Sir Sagris. Sir Turquine. Sir Kay. Sir Gareth



Sir Beaumans. Sir Bersunt. Sir Palomides. Sir Belcabus.
Sir Ballomare. Sir Galahad. Sir Lamoracke. Sir Frol.
Sir Suprabilis. Sir Paginet. Sir Belvoure.

THE MOST ANCIENT AND FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE RENOWNED PRINCE ARTHUR King of Britaine,

Wherein is declared his Life and Death,
 with all his glorious Battails against the
 Saxons, Saracens and Pagans,
 which (for the honour of his
 Country) he most wor-
 thily atchieued.

As also, all the Noble Acts, and Heroicke
 Deeds of his Valiant KNIGHTS of
 the ROUND TABLE.

Newly refined, and published for the delight, and
 profit of the READER.

LONDON,
 Printed by *William Stansby,*
 for *Iacob Bloome,* 1634.

16-521



♣ A Preface, or Aduertisement to the
Reader, for the better illustration and
vnderstanding of this famous
HISTORIE.

After this Kingdome had for the space of aboute foure hundred and eighty yeares, borne the intolerable yoke of the Romane seruitude (which began by the Conquest which *Iulius Caesar* made here in the Raigne of *Cassibellan*, King of the Britaines) seuentene yeares before the Incarnation of Christ, and ended in the time of *Gratian* (which was three hundred seuentie six yeares after Christ) who had slaine *Maximinianus*, the Romane Emperour, which *Gratian* after being slaine, *Vortiger* of the Bloud Royall of the Britaine Kings, did (by vsurpation and the murther of *Constance*, the sonne of *Constantine*) seize vpon the Crowne. And being by his wicked life and ill gotten Soueraignty, growin odious, and hated by most of his subjects, hee was inforced to send into Germany for the *Saxons*, to aide and support him. The Saxons hauing got footing here neuer gaue ouer their Military diligence till they got full possession of the whole Kingdome, chasing the British Kings beyond the Riuer of *Dee* and *Seauen*, into Wales in the Raigne of *Caractacus*, in the yeare fue hundred eighty six. The aboute said *Vortigerne* the vsurper was deposed, to whom his sonne *Vortimer* succeeded, but *Vortimer* was poysoned by *Roman* the daughter of *Hengist* the Saxon, and *Vortigerne* againe was restored to the Crowne, and after nineteene yeares of a troublous Raigne, hee and his wife *Roman* were both burnt in their Castle or Palace, by *Aurelius Ambrose*, who was of the Race of *Constance*, who formerly had beene murdred by *Vortigerne*. This *Aurelius Ambrose* liued thirty two yeares, to whom succeeded his brogiter *Leo*.

To the Reader.

about 1100. yeares agoe, when as it was so plaine and simple in King *Edward's* time.

And therefore Reader I aduertise thee to deale with this booke as thou wouldest doe with thy house or thy garment, if the one doe want but a litle repaire thou wilt not (madly) pull downe the whole frame, if the other hath a small spot or a staine thou wilt not cast it away or burne it; Gold hath its drosse, Wine hath its lees; man (in all ages) hath his errors and imperfections, & though the times are now more accute and sharp-witted, vsing a more eloquent and ornated stile and phrase in speech and writing then they did, who liued so many yeares past, yet it may be that in the age to come, our successours may hold and esteeme of vs as ridiculously as many of our ouer-nice Critickes doe of their and our Progenitours, as we are refined in words, I wish we were reformed in deeds, and as we can talke better, it were well if wee would not doe worse. Wee perceiue their darknesse through our light, let not our light blind vs that we may not see our owne ignorance. In many places this Volume is corrected (not in language but in phrase) for here and there, King *Arthur* or some of his Knights were declared in their communication to sweare prophane, and vse superstitious speeches, all (or the most part) of which is either amended or quite left out, by the paines and industry of the Compositor and Corrector at the Presse; so that as it is now it may passe for a famous piece of Antiquity, reuiued almost from the gulph of obliuion, and reuued for the pleasure and profit of present and future times.

As (by the fauour of Heaven) this Kingdome of Britaine was graced with one worthy, let vs with thankfulness acknowledge him, let vs not account it our shame, that he hath bin our Countreys Honour; let vs not be more cruell then death, to smother or murder his name, or let vs not be worse then the graue in burying his fame. Thus Reader please thee at thy pleasure to read, but not to judge, except thou judge with vnderstanding. The Ass is no competent Iudge betwixt the Owle and the Nightingale for the sweetnes of their voices, cloth of Arras or Hangings of Tappety are not fit to adorne a Kitchin, no more are Ketles, Pots and Spits to hang in a Ladies Bed-chamber. Neither is it befeeming for a man to censure that which his Ignorance cannot perceiue, or his pride and malice will prejudicate or caull at.

The Prologue.

After that I had accomplished and finished diuers histories, as well of contemplation as of other histories and worldly acts of great conquerours and Princes, and also certaine bookes of ensamples, and doctrine, many noble and diuers gentlewomen of this realme of England came and demanded me many and often times why that I did not cause to bee imprinted that noble historie of the *Sauage*, and of the most renowned Christian King, first and chiefe of the best three christned, and worthy King *Arthur*, which ought most to be remembre. I among vs englishmen afore all other Christian Kings, for it is notoriously knowne through the vniuersal world that there be nine worthy & best that euer were that is to wit, three Paynims, three Iewes, and the three christian men. As for the Paynims, they were before the incarnation of Christ, which were named the first *Hector* of *Troy*, of whom the history is common, both in ballad and in prose. The second *Alexander the great*. And the third *Iulius Cesar* Emperour of *Rome*, of which the histories be wel knowne and had. And as for the three Iewes, which also were before the incarnation of our Lord, of whom the first was *Duke Iosua*, which brought the children of *Israell* into the land of behest. The second was *Dauid King* of *Ierusalem*. And the third was *Iudas Machabeus*. Of these three the Bible rehearseth all their noble histories and acts. And since the said incarnation haue bene three noble christian men called and admitted through the vniuersal world, into the number of the nine best and worthy. Of whom was first the noble King *Arthur*, whose noble acts I purpose to write

The prologue.

write in this present booke beare following. The second was Charlemaine, or Charles the great, of whom the historie is had in many places both in French and in English. And the third and last was Godfrey of Bulloyn, of whose life I made a booke unto the excellent Prince, and King of noble memorie, Edward the fourth.

The said noble gentleman instantly required me for to imprint the historie of the said noble King, and conquerour King Arthur, and of his Knights, with the historie of the Sangreall and of the death & ending of the said King Arthur. Affirming that I ought rather to imprint his acts and noble feates then of Godfrey of Bulloyn, or any of the other eight, considering that hee was a man borne within this realme, and King and Emperour of the same, and that there be in French diuers and many noble volumes of his acts, and also of his Knights. To whom I have answered, that diuers men hold opinion that there was no such Arthur, and that all such bookes as be made of him be but fained matters and fables, because that some Cronicles make of him no mention, nor remember him nothing nor of his knights. Where to they answered, and one in especiall said that in him that should say or thinke that there was neuer such a King called Arthur, might be full wel accounted great folly and blindnesse. For he said that there were many evidences to the contrary. First yee may see his Sepulcher in the monastery of Glassebury, And also in Pollicronicon in the fifth booke the sixth chapter and in the seventh booke the twentieth third chapter, where his body was buried, and after found and translated into the said Monastery. Ye shall also finde in the history of Bochas in his booke De casu principum, part of his noble acts, and also of his fall.

Also Galfridus in his Britissh booke recounteth his life. And also in diuers places of England many remembrances, be

The prologue.

yet of him, and shal remaine perpetually of him, and also of his Knights. First in the abbey of Westminster at S. Edwards shrine remaineth the print of his seale in red wax closed in berill, in which is writtten. Patricius Arthurus Britanniae, Galliae, Germaniae, Daciae Imperator.

Also in the Castle of Douer yee may see Sir Gawaines scull, and Cradokes mantell. At Winchester the rounde Table. In other places Sir Launcelots sword, & many other things. Then all these things considered there can no man reasonably gainsay but that there was a King of this land named Arthur. For in all the places Christian & Heathen he is reputed and taken for one of the nine worthies, & the first of the three Christian men. Also hee is more spoken of beyond the Sea, & more bookes made of his Noble acts, then there be in England, as well in Dutch, Italian, Spanish, & in Greeke as in French. And yet of record remaineth in witnesse of him in Wales in the towne of Camelot the great stones and the meruailous works of Iron lying vnder the ground, & royall vaults, which diuers now haue seene. Wherefore it is a great meruaille why that he is no more renowned in his owne countrey, saue onely it accordeth to the word of God which saith, that no man is accepted for a Prophet in his owne countrey. Then al things afore said alledged I could not wel deny but that there was such a Noble King named Arthur, and reputed for one of the nine worthies, and first and chiefe of the Christian men. And many Noble volumes be made of him and of his Noble Knights in French, the which I haue seene and read beyond the Sea, which he not had in our maternall tongue. But in welsh be many, and also in French and some in English, but no where nigh all. Wherefore such as haue beene late briefly drawn out into English. I haue after my simple cunning that God hath sent me vnder the fauour and correction of all Noble Lords and Gentlemen enterprised

The Prologue

to imprint a Booke of the Noble Histories of the said King Arthur, and of certaine of his Knights after a copy vnto me deliuered. Which copy Sir Thomas Malory tooke out of certaine Bookes in French, and reduced it into English. And I according vnto my copy haue set it in Print. To the intent that Noble men may see and read the Noble Acts of Chivalry, the gentle and vertuous deeds that some Knights used in those dayes, by the which they came to honour, and how they that were vicious were punished and oft put to shame and rebuke. Humbly beseeching all Noble Lords and Ladies, with all other estates or commenalitie, of what estate or degree they be of, that shall see and read in this present booke & worke, that they take and entend vnto the good and honest acts in their remembrance, and for to follow the same, wherein they shall well find many ioyous and pleasant histories, and the Noble and renowned acts of humanitie, gentleness and chivalry. For in this present volume may be seene Noble, chivalry, courtesie, humanitie, friendlinesse, hardinesse, loyalty, friendship, cowardise, murder, hate, vertue, and sinne. Doe after the good and leaue the ill, and it shall bring you vnto good fame and renoune. And for to passe the time this Booke shall be pleasant to reade in. But for to giue faith & beleene that al is true that is contained therein, yea be at your owne libertie. But all is written for our doctrine, and for to beware that we fall not to vice nor sin, but to exercise and follow vertue, by the which we may come and attaine vnto good fame, and renoune in this life, and after this short and transitory life, to come vnto everlasting blisse in Heauen. The which he grant vs that reigneth in Heauen the blessed Trinitie. Amen.

The

The Preface of William Caxton,

To the Christian Reader.

TO proceed forth in this booke, the which I direct vnto all noble Princes, Lords and Ladies, and Gentlewomen that desire to reade or heare read of the Noble and ioyous History of the great conquerour and excellent prince King Arthur, sometime King of this noble Realme of England, then called great Britaine with the noble chiuarley of the worthy Knights of the round table, I William Caxton simple person present this booke following, which I haue enterprised to imprint. In which all those that dispose them to eschew idlenesse which is the mother of all vices, may read historicall matters. Some are willing to reade deuout meditations of the humanitie and passion of our Sauour Iesus Christ. Some the liues and painefull Martyrdomes of holy Saints. Some delight in moralisacion and Poeticall stories. And some in Knightly and victorious deeds of Noble Princes and Conquerours, as of this present volume which treateth of the Noble acts and feates of of armes of chiuarly, prowesse, hardinesse, humanitie

The Preface to the Reader.

manitie, loue, courtesie and gentillesse, with diuers and many wonderfull Histories and adventures. And for to vnderstand briefly the contents of this present volume, comprehending the valiant acts of this Noble Conquerour with his lamentable death caused by Sir Mordred his Sonne and the subjects of his Realme. I haue deuised it into three parts, and euery part into sundry Chapters as hereafter by Gods grace shall follow.

THE

THE CONTENTS AND

Chapters of the first

PART.

- How *Utherpendragon* sent for the Duke of *Cornewayle* and *Uther* his wife, & of their sodaine departing againe. chap. 1.
 How *Utherpendragon* made warre on the Duke of *Cornwaile*, and how by the meanes of *Merlin* he lay by the Duchesse and begat on her *Arthur*. chap. 2.
 Of the birth of King *Arthur*, and of his nourishing, and of the death of King *Utherpendragon*, and how *Arthur* was chosen King, and of wonders and maruailes of a sword that was taken out of a stone by the said *Arthur*. chap. 3.
 How King *Arthur* pulled out the sword diuers times. chap. 4.
 How *Arthur* was crowned King and how hee made officers. chap. 5.
 How King *Arthur* held in *Wales* at a Pentecost a great feast, and what Kings and Lords came to this feast. chap. 6.
 Of the first warre that King *Arthur* had, and how he wanne the field and ouercame his enemies. chap. 7.
 How *Merlin* counsailed King *Arthur* to send for King *Ban* and King *Bors*, and of their counsaile taken for the warre. chap. 8.
 Of a great turney made by King *Arthur* and the two Kings *Ban* and *Bors* and how they went ouer the sea. chap. 9.
 How eleauen Kings gathered a great host against King *Arthur*. chap. 10.
 Of a dreame of the King with the hundred Knights. chap. 11.
 How that the eleauen Kings with their host fought against King *Arthur* and his host, and of many great feates of the warre. chap. 12.
 Yet of the same battaile. chap. 13.
 Yet more of the said battaile, and how it was ended by *Merlin*. chap. 14.
 Yet of the said battaile. chap. 15.
 How King *Arthur*, King *Ban* and King *Bors* rescued King *Loadaunce*, and of other incidents. chap. 16.
 How King *Arthur* rode to *Carlyon*, and of his dreame, and how he saw the questing beast. chap. 17.
 How

THE CONTENTS.

How King Pellinore took King Arthur's horse, and followed the questing beaver, and how Merlin met with King Arthur. chap. 18

How Vlsin approaches Queene Igrayne King Arthurs mother of treason. And how a Knight came and desired to haue the death of his master reuenged. chap. 19

How Griflet was made Knight, and how hee lusted with a Knight. chap. 20

How twelue Knighs came from Rome and asked truage of this land of King Arthur, and how King Arthur fought with a Knight. chap. 21

How Merlin saued King Arthurs life, and threw an enchantment ypon King Pellinore & made him to fall on sleepe. chap. 22

How King Arthur by the meanes of Merlin, gat his sword of Excalibur of the Lady of the lake. chap. 23

How tidings came to King Arthur that King Rience had overcome eleauen Kings and how he desired King Arthurs beard to purfull his mantell. chap. 29

How all the Children were sent for, that were borne vpon May day, and how Morfred was saued. chap. 25

Of a damosell which came gird with a sword for to finde a man of such vertue to draw it out of the scabbard. chap. 26

How Balin arayed like a poore man, pulled out the sword, which after ward was cause of his death. chap. 27

How the Lady of the Lake demanded the Knights head that had wonne the sword, for the maydens head. chap. 28

How Merlin told the aduenture of the damosell. chap. 29

How Balin was pursued by Sir Lancelot a Knight of Ireland, and how Balin slew him. chap. 30

How a damosell which was in loue with Lancelot, slew her selfe for his loue, and how Balin met with his Brother Balan. chap. 31

How a dwarfe reprov'd Balin for the death of Lancelot, and how King Marke of Cornewaile found them, and made a tombe ouer them. chap. 32

How Merlin prophesied that two of the best Knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Lancelot and Sir Tristram. chap. 33

How

The Contents.

How Balin and his brother by the counsaile of Merlin tooke King Rience and brought him vnto King Arthur. chap. 34

How King Arthur had a battaile against Nero and King Lot of Orkeney, and how King Lot was deceiued by Merlin, and twelue Kings were slaine. chap. 35

Of the entertainment of twelue Kings, and of the prophesie of Merlin, and how Balin should giue the dolorous stroke. chap. 36

How a sorrowfull Knight came before King Arthur, and how Balin fet him, and how that Knight was slaine by a Knight inuisible. chap. 37

How Balin and the damosell met with a Knight that was in likewise slaine, and how the damosell bled for the custome of the Castle. chap. 38

How Balin met with the Knight, aimed Garlon, at a feast, and there he slew him, to haue his blood to heale therewith the sonne of his hoast. chap. 39

How Balin fought with King Pellam, and how his sword brake, and how he gat a speare, wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke. chap. 40

How Balin was deliuered by Merlin and saued a Knight that would haue slaine himselfe for loue. chap. 41

How that Knight slew his loue and a Knight lying by her, and after how hee slew himselfe with his owne sword and how Balin rode toward a Castle where he lost his life. chap. 42

How Balin met with his brother Balan and how each of them slew other ynknowen till they were wounded to death. chap. 43

How Merlin buried Balin and Balan the two brethren in one tombe, and of Balins sword. chap. 44

How King Arthur tooke and wedded Guenewer vnto his wife, which was daughter to Leodegrance, King of the land of Camelard with whom he had the round table. chap. 45

How the Knights of the round table were ordained, and how their sieges were blessed by the Archbishop of Canterburie. chap. 46

How a poore man riding vpon a leane Mare desired King Arthur to make his sonne a Knight. chap. 47

A

How

The Contents.

How Sir *Tor* was knowne for the sonne of King *Pellinore*, and
Gawaine was made Knight. chap. 48
 How at the feast of the wedding of King *Arthur* unto *Guenivere*
 a white Hart came into the hall and chirry couple of
 hounds, and how a bracher pinched the Hart, which was
 taken away. chap. 49
 How Sir *Gawaine* rode for to fetch againe the Hart. And how
 two brethren fought each againe other for the Hart. chap. 50
 How the Hart was chased into a Castle and there slaine. And
 how Sir *Gawaine* slew a Lady. chap. 51
 How foure Knights fought against Sir *Gawaine* and *Gaheris*,
 and how they were overcome and their liues saued at the re-
 quest of foure damosels. chap. 52
 How Sir *Tor* rode after the Knight with the Bracher, and of his
 adventures by the way. chap. 53
 How Sir *Tor* found the Bracher with a Lady, and how a Knight
 assailed him for the said Bracher. chap. 54
 How Sir *Tor* overcame the Knight, and how he lost his head at
 the request of a Lady. chap. 55
 How King *Pellinore* rode after the Lady and the Knight that led
 her away, and how a Lady desired helpe of him, and how he
 fought with two Knights for that Lady, of whom he slew the
 one at the first stroke. chap. 56
 How King *Pellinore* gat the Lady and brought her to Camelot
 vnto the Court of King *Arthur*. chap. 57
 How King *Pellinore* heard two Knights as he lay by night in a
 valey, and of other adventures. chap. 58
 How King *Pellinore* when he was come to Camelot, was sworne
 vpon a booke to tell truth of his quest. chap. 59
 How *Merlin* was assotted and doted on one of the Ladies of the
 Lake and he was shut in a rocke vnder a stone by a wood side,
 and there died. chap. 60
 How five Kings came into this Land to warre against King
Arthur and what counsaile King *Arthur* had against them. chap. 61
 How King *Arthur* overthrew and slew the five Kings, and made
 the remnant to flee. chap. 62
 How

The Contents.

How the battaile was finished or that King *Pellinore* came, and
 how King *Arthur* founded an abbey where the battaile was.
 chap. 63
 How Sir *Tor* was made Kinght of the round table, and how
Kingdemagus was displeased. chap. 64
 How King *Arthur*, King *Vrience* and Sir *Accolon* of Gaule cha-
 sed an Hart and of their maruailous adventures. chap. 65
 How King *Arthur* tooke vpon him to fight for to be deliuered
 out of prison, and also to deliuer twentie Knights that were in
 prison. chap. 66
 How Sir *Accolon* found himselfe by a well, and he tooke vpon
 him to doe battaile against King *Arthur*. chap. 67
 Of the battaile betweene King *Arthur* and Sir *Accolon*. chap. 68
 How King *Arthur* sword that he fought with brake and how
 hee recovered of Sir *Accolon* his owne sword *Excalibur*, and
 ouercame his enemy. chap. 69
 How Sir *Accolon* confessed the treason of *Morgan le fay*, and
 how she would haue caused her brother King *Arthur* to be
 slaine. chap. 70
 How King *Arthur* accorded the two brethren and deliuered the
 twentie Knights and how Sir *Accolon* died. chap. 71
 How *Morgan le fay*, would haue slaine King *Vrience* her hus-
 band, and how Sir *Ewaine* her sonne saued him. chap. 72
 How *Morgan le fay* made great sorrow for the death of Sir *Ac-
 colon*, and how she stole a way from King *Arthur* the scab-
 bard. chap. 73
 How *Morgan le fay* saued a Knight that should haue beene
 drowned, and how King *Arthur* returned home againe to
 Camelot. chap. 74
 How the damosell of the Lake saued King *Arthur* from a man-
 tell which should haue brent him. chap. 75
 How Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Ewaine* met with twelue faire damosels,
 and how they complained vpon Sir *Marhaus*. chap. 76
 How Sir *Marhaus* trusted with Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Ewaine*, and
 overthrew them both. chap. 77
 How Sir *Marhaus*, Sir *Gawaine* and *Ewaine* met three damosels,
 and each of them tooke one. chap. 78

The Contents.

- How a Knight and a dwarfe stroue for a Lady. chap. 79
- How King *Pelleas* suffered himselfe to betaken prisoner because he would haue a sight of his Lady, and how sir *Gawaine* promised him for to get to him the loue of his Lady. chap. 80
- How Sir *Gawaine* came to the Lady *Ettard* and lay by her, how sir *Pelleas* found them sleeping. chap. 81
- How sir *Pelleas* loued no more the Lady *Ettard* by the meanes of the damosell of the Lake, whom he loued euer after during his life. chap. 82
- How sir *Marhaus* rode with the damosell, and how he came to the Duke of the South Marches. chap. 83
- How sir *Marhaus* fought with the Duke and his fixe sonnes and made them to yeeld them. chap. 84
- How sir *Ewaine* rode with the damosell of threescore yeares of age and how he gat the prise at a turney. chap. 85
- How sir *Ewaine* fought with two Knights, and couercame them. chap. 86
- How at the yeares end all the three Knights with their three damosels met at the fountaine. chap. 87
- How twelue aged men embassadours of Rome come to King *Arthur* for to demandaund truage for the realme of Brittain. chap. 88
- How the Kings and Lords promised vnto King *Arthur* ayde and helpe against the Romans. chap. 89
- How King *Arthur* held a parliament at Yorke, and how he ordained in what manner the Realme should be gouerned in his abtence. chap. 90
- How King *Arthur* being shipped and lying in his cabin had a maruailous dreame, and of the exposition thereof. chap. 91
- How a man of the countrey told him of a maruailous Gyant, and how he fought and conquered him. chap. 92
- How King *Arthur* sent sir *Gawaine* and others to *Lucius* the Emperour, and how they were assailed, and escaped with worship. chap. 93
- How *Lucius* sent certaine spies into ambush for to haue taken his Knights being prisoners, and how they were letted. chap. 94
- How

The Contents.

- How a Senatour told to the Emperour *Lucius* of their discomfiture, and also of the great battaile betweene King *Arthur* and *Lucius*. chap. 95
- How King *Arthur* after that hee had atchieued the battaile against the Romanes, entred into Almaine, and so into Italy. chap. 96
- Of the battaile done by sir *Gawaine* against a Sarasin, which after was taken and became Christian. chap. 97
- How that the Sarasins came out of a wood for to rescue their beasts, and of a great battaile. chap. 98
- How sir *Gawaine* returned to King *Arthur* with his prisoners, and how the King wan a Citie and how hee was crowned Emperour. chap. 99
- How sir *Lancelot* and sir *Lionell* departed from the Court for to seeke aduentures, and how sir *Lionell* left sir *Lancelot* sleeping and was taken. chap. 100
- How sir *Ector de maris* followed to seeke sir *Launcelot*, and how he was taken by sir *Torquine*. chap. 102
- How foure Queenes found sir *Lancelot* sleeping, and how by enchauntment hee was taken and led into a strong Castle. chap. 103
- How sir *Launcelot* was deliuered by the meanes of a Damosell. chap. 104
- How a Knight found sir *Launcelot* lying in his lemans bed, and how sir *Launcelot* fought with that Knight. chap. 105
- How sir *Launcelot* was receiued of King *Bagdemagus* daughter, and how he made his complaint vnto her father. chap. 107
- How sir *Lancelot* behaued him in a turneyment, and how hee met with sir *Turquin* leading away sir *Gaheris* with him. chap. 108
- How sir *Launcelot* and *Turquine* fought together. chap. 109
- How sir *Turquin* was slaine, and how sir *Launcelot* bad sir *Gaheris* deliuer all the prisoners. chap. 110
- How sir *Launcelot* rode with the damosell and slew a Knight that distressed all Ladies, and a villaine that kept the passage ouer a bridge. chap. 111

The Contents.

- How sir *Lancelot* slew two Gyants, and made a Castle free. chap. 112
- How sir *Lancelot* was disguised in sir *Kays* armour, and how he smote downe a Knight. chap. 113
- How sir *Lancelot* Iusted against foure Knights of the round table, and ouerthrew them. chap. 114
- How sir *Lancelot* followed a bracher into a Castle, whereas he found a dead Knight, and how after ward he was required of a damosell for to heale her brother. chap. 115
- How sir *Lancelot* came into the chappell perilous, and gatthere of a dead corps a peece of the cloath and a sword. chap. 116
- How sir *Lancelot* at the request of a Lady recovered a fawcon, whereby he was deceiued. chap. 117
- How sir *Lancelot* ouertooke a Knight which chased his wife to haue slaine her, and what he said to him. chap. 118
- How sir *Lancelot* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court, and how there were recounted of his noble feates, and acts. chap. 119
- How *Beaumains* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court and demanded three petitions of King *Arthur*. chap. 120
- How sir *Lancelot* and sir *Gauaine* were wroth because sir *Kay* mocked *Beaumains*, and of a damosell which desired a Knight for to doe battaile for a Lady. chap. 121
- How *Beaumains* desired the battaile and how it was graunted him, and how he desired to be made Knight of sir *Lancelot*. chap. 122
- How *Beaumains* departed, and how he got off sir *Kays* speare and a shield and how he Iusted and fought with sir *Lancelot*. chap. 123
- How *Beaumains* told his name to sir *Lancelot*, and how hee was dubbed Knight of sir *Lancelot*, and after ouer-tooke the the damosell. chap. 124
- How sir *Beaumains* fought and slew two Knights at a passage. chap. 125
- How sir *Beaumains* fought with the Knight of the blacke lands and hee fought so long with him that the blacke Knight fell downe and dyed. chap. 126
- How

The Contents.

- How the brother of the Knight that was slaine, met with sir *Beaumains*, and fought with sir *Beaumains*, which yeelded him at the last. chap. 127
- How the damosell alwayes rebuked sir *Beaumains*, and would not suffer him to sit at her table, but called him kitching Page. chap. 128
- How the third brother called the red Knight, Iusted and fought against sir *Beaumains*, and how sir *Beaumains* ouercame him. chap. 129
- How sir *Beaumains* suffered great rebukes of the damosell and he suffered it patiently. chap. 130
- How sir *Beaumains* fought with sir *Perseant* of Inde, and made him to be yeelden. chap. 131
- Of the goodly communication betweene sir *Perseant* and sir *Beaumains* and how hee told him that his name was sir *Gauareth*. chap. 132
- How the Lady which was besieged, had word from her sister how she had brought a Knight to fight for her, and what batailles he had done. chap. 133
- How the damosell and sir *Beaumains* came to the siege and came to a sickamore tree, and there sir *Beaumains* blew an horne, and then the Knight of the red Lands came to fight with him. chap. 134
- How the two Knights met together, and of their talking, and how they began their battaile. chap. 135
- How after long fighting sir *Beaumains* ouercame the Knight, and would haue slaine him, but at the request of the Lords hee saued his life and made him to yeeld him to the Lady. chap. 136
- How the Knight yeelded him, and how sir *Beaumains* made him to goe vnto King *Arthurs* Court, and to crie sir *Lancelot* mercy. chap. 137
- How sir *Beaumains* came to the Lady, and when hee came vnto the Castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the Lady said vnto him. chap. 138
- How sir *Beaumains* rode after for to rescue his dwarfe, and came into the Castle where he was. chap. 139
- How sir *Gareth* otherwise called sir *Beaumains*, came into the presence

The Contents.

- presence of his Lady and how they tooke acquaintance and of their loue. *chap. 140*
- How in the night came in an armed Knight and fought with sir Gareth, and hurt him fore in the thigh, and how sir Gareth smote off the Knights head. *chap. 141*
- How the same Knight came againe the next night, and was be-headed againe. And how at the feast of Pentecost all the Knights that sir Gareth had ouercome, came and yeelded them vnto King Arthur. *chap. 142*
- How sir Launcelot and sir Gawaine pardoned him, and demaunded him where sir Gareth was. *chap. 143*
- How the Queen of Orkeney came to this feast of Pentecost, and how sir Gawaine and his brethren came to aske her blessing. *chap. 144*
- How King Arthur sent for the Lady Lyones, and how shee let erie a turnement at the Castle, whereas came many good Knights. *chap. 145*
- How King Arthur went to the turnement with his Knights, and how the Lady dame Lyones receiued him worshipfully, and how the Knights encountred together. *chap. 146*
- How the Knights bare them in battaile. *chap. 147*
- How sir Gareth was espied by the Heralds, and how he escaped out of the field. *chap. 148*
- How sir Gareth came vnto a Castle where he was well lodged, and how he iusted with a Knight, & how he slew him. *ch. 149*
- How sir Gareth fought with a Knight that held within his Castle thirtie Ladies, and how he slew him. *chap. 150*
- How sir Gawaine and sir Gareth fought each against other and how they knew each other by the damofell Lynet. *chap. 151*
- How sir Gareth acknowledged that they loued each other to King Arthur, and of the day of their wedding. *chap. 152*
- Of the great royaltie and what officers were made at the feast of Sir Gareth and dame Lyones wedding and of the great iusting at the same feast and wedding. *chap. 153*

THE

**THE
HISTORIE OF THE MOST
Noble and worthy Prince KING
ARTHUR,**

**Sometime King of Great BRITAIN, now
called England, which Treateth of his Noble
Acts and fentes of Armes and Chivalrie, and
of his Noble Knights of the Round
TABLE.**

CHAP. I.

How Vtherpendragon sent for the Duke of Cornewayle and Igrayne his wife, and of their sodaine departing againe.



I besell in the dayes of the noble Vtherpendragon when he was King of England and reigned, there was a mighty and a noble Duke in Cornewayle, that held long time warre against him. And the Duke was named the Duke of Mintageil, and so by meanes King Vther sent for this Duke charging him to bring his wife with him, for she was called a right faire Lady, and a passing wise, and Igrayne was her name. So when the duke and his wife were come to the King, by the meanes of great Lords they were both accorded, and the King liked and loued this Lady well, and made her great chere out of measure, and desired to haue ien by her. But she was a passing good woman and would not assent to the King. And then she told the Duke her husband and said, I suppose that we were sent for that I should be dishonoured; wherefore husband I coulde tell you that we depart from hence sodainly, that we may rize all night to our owne Castell. And like as she had said so they departed, that neither the King nor none of his counsell were ware of their departing. As soone as King Vther knew of their departing so sodainly, hee was wonderfull wroth. When he called to him

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

him his priuie counsell, and told them of the towne departing of the Duke and his wife. Then they aduised the King to send for the Duke and his wife by a great charge. And if he will not come at your commandement, then may yee doe your best, for then haue you a cause to make mightie warre vpon him. So that was done, and the messengers had their answers, and that was this, shortly, that neither he nor his wife would not come at him. When was the King wondrous wrath. And then the King sent him plaine word againe, and bad him be ready and stiffe him and garnish him, for within threescore dayes he would fetch him out of the strongest Castle that hee had. When the duke had this warning anone he went and furnished and garnished two strong Castles of his, of the which the one was Wyntagyll, and that other called Terrabyl. So his wife Dame Igrayne he put in the Castle of Wyntagyll, and hee put himselfe in the Castle of Terrabyl the which had many iusses and posternes out. When in all haste came Vcher with a great host, and layd a siege about the Castle of Terrabyl, and there hee fought many battailes. And there was great warre made on both parties, and much people slaine. When for pure anger and for great loue of faire Igrayne King Vcher fell sick. When came to King Vcher Sir Vilius a noble knight, and asked the King why hee was sick. I shall tell thee said the King I am sick for anger and for loue of faire Igrayne that I may not be whole. Well my Lord sayd Sir Vilius, I shal seeke Merlyn, and hee shal get you remedy that your heart shal be pleased. So Vilius departed, and by aduenture he met Merlyn in a beggers rags. And there Merlyn asked Vilius whom he sought. And he said he had little a poe to tel him. Well sayd Merlyn, I know whom thou seekest for thou seekest Merlyn therefore seeke no further, for I am he, and if King Vcher wil wel rewarde me, and hee sworne to me to fulfill my desire the which shal be his honour and profit more then mine, for I shal cause him to haue all his desire. All this will I undertake said Vilius, that there shal be no thing reasonable, but thou shalt haue thy desire. Well said Merlyn, hee shal haue his intent and desire, and therefore said Merlyn,

and his Knights of the round Table.

Merlyn, ride on your way, for I will not be long behind.

CHAP. II.

How Vcherpendragon made warre on the Duke of Cornwaile, and how by the meanes of Merlyn he lay by the Duchesse and begat on her Arthur.

Then Vilius was glad, and rode on more then a pace til that he came vnto King Vcherpendragon, and told him he had met with Merlyn. Where is hee, said the King Sir said Vilius hee will not tarrie long, therewithall Vilius was ware to where Merlyn stood at the porch of the pavilions doore. And there Merlyn was bounde to come to the King. When King Vcher saw him, he said that he was welcome. Sir said Merlyn, I know all your heart every deile, so you will be sworne to mee as you be a true King and pceded, to fulfill my desire, you shall haue your desire. When the King was sworne vpon the four Evangelists. Sir said Merlyn this is my desire, the first night that you shall lye by Igrayne you shall get a child on her and when it is borne that it shall be deliuered to mee for to nourish there as I will haue it, for it shall be your worship and the childes aduall as much as the child is worth. I will, well said the King, as thou wilt haue it. So to make you ready said Merlyn, this night shall you lye with Igrayne in the Castle of Wyntagyll, and you shall be like the Duke her husband, Vilius shall be like Sir Brastias a knight of the Dukes, and I will be like a knight called Sir Iordanus a knight of the Dukes. But beware you make not many questions with her, nor with her men, but say you are diseased and so lye you to bed and rise not on the morrow til I come to you, for the Castle of Wyntagyll is but few miles hence. So, as they had deuised, it was done. But the Duke of Wyntagyll espied how the King rode from the seignior Terrabyl, and therefore that night hee issued out of the Castle at a posterne for to haue distressed the Kings host. And so through his owne issue the Duke himselfe was slaine of such

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

the King came at the Castle of Wintagill. So after the death of the Duke King Vher lay with Igrayne more then three houres after his death and begat on her Arthur the same night, and ere day came, Merlin came to the King and bad him make him ready and so he kist the Lady Igrayne and departed in all haste. But when the Lady hard tell of the Duke her husband, and by all record hee was dead or euer King Vher came to her, then shee maruailed who that might be that lay with her in likeness of her Lord; so shee mourned piniely and held her peace. When all the barons by on assent prayed the King of accord betwene the Lady Igrayne and him. The King gaue them leaue, for saine would hee haue bene accorded with her. So the King put al his trust in Vilius to entreat betwene them, so by that entreat at the last the King and she met together. Now wil we doe well said Vilius our King is a lusty knight and wincesse, and my Lady Igrayne is a passing faire Lady, it were great joy vnto vs all and it might please the King to make her his Quene: vnto that they were all well agreed and moued it to the King. And anon like a lusty knight he assented thereto with a good will, and so in all haste they were married in a morning with great mirth and joy. And King Lot of Lowethan and of Wyke then wedded Margawse that was Gawyns mother. And King Nentres of the land of Carlot wedded Elain. All this was done at the request of King Vher. And the third sister Morgan le fay was put to schole in a Nunry, and there shee learned so much that shee was a great clarke of pigromanry and after shee was wedded to King Vrience of the land of Goze that was sir Ewayas le blanchenaynes father.

CHAP. III.

Of the birth of King Arthur, and of his nourishing, and of the death of King Vherpendragon, and how Arthur was chosen King, and of wonders and maruailes of a sword that was taken out of stone by the said Arthur.

Then the Quene Igrayne waied dayly greater and greater so it fell after within halfe a yere as King Vher lay by his

and his Knights of the round Table.

his Quene, he asked her by the faith she ought vnto him whose was the child within her body. When was shee soze abashed to giue answere. Feare you not said the King but tell me the truth and I shall loue you the better by that faith of my body. Sir, said shee I shal tel you the truth. The same night that my lord was dead, that houre of his death there came into my Castle of Wintagil a man like my Lord in speche countenance, and two knights with him in likenes of her two knights Brastias & Lordais, & so I went to bed with him as I ought to do with my Lord, & that same night as I shal answere vnto God this child was begotten vpon mee. What is truth said the King as you say, for it was I my selfe that came in his likeness, and therefore feare you not, for I am father to the child and there hee told her all the cause how it was by Merlins counsell. When the Quene made great joy when she knew who was the father of her child. Soone came Merlin vnto the King and said, sir you must provide you for the nourishing of your child. As thou wilt said the King be it. Well said Merlin, I know a Lord of yours in this land that is a passing true man and a faithful, and he shal haue the nourishing of your child, his name is sir Ector, and hee is a Lord of faire liuelyhood in many parts of England and Wales. And this Lord sir Ector let him besent for, for to come and speake with you, and desire him your selfe as he loveth you that hee will put his owne child to nourishing to an other woman, and that his wife nourish yours. And when the child is borne, let it bee deliuered vnto mee at yonder priue posterne vnclosed. As Merlin had deuised so was it done, and when sir Ector was come, he made affiance to the King for to nourish the child like as the King desired, and there the King granted sir Ector great rewards. When when the Quene was deliuered the King commanded two knights and two Ladies to take the child bound in rich cloath of gold, and deliuer him to what poore man you mete at the posterne gate of the Castle. So the child was deliuered vnto Merlin, and so hee bare it forth vnto sir Ector, and made an holy man to christen him, and named him Arthur and so sir Ectors wife nourished him with her

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

alone byests. When within two yeres King Vher fell sick of a great maladie. And in the meane while his enemies vsurped vpon him, and did a great battle vpon his men and slew many of his people. Sir said Merlin you may not lie so as you doe, for you must to the field though you ride in an horse litter, for you shall neuer haue the better of your enemies but if your person be there, and then shall you haue the victory. So it was done as Merlin had deuised and they carried the King forth in a horse litter with a great host toward his enemies. And at saint Albons there met with the King a great host of the North. And that day sir Vilius and sir Brastias did great deedes of armes, and King Vhers men ouer came the Northen battle, and slew much people, and put the remnant to flight. And then the King returned to London, and made great joy of his victorie. And within a while after he was passing sore sicke, so that three dayes and three nights hee was speecheles, wherefore all the barons made great sorrow, and asked Merlin what counsell were best.

There is none other remedy said Merlin but God will haue his wil. But looke that you al his barons be before him to morrow and God and I shall make him to speak. So on the morrow al the barons with Merlin came before the King. When Merlin said aloud vnto King Vher. Sir shall your sonne Arthur bee King after your dayes of this Realme, with all the appurtenances. When Vherpendragon turned him and said in heareing of them all, I giue him gods blessing and mine and bid him pray for my soule, and righteously and worthily that he claime the Crowne vpon forsciture of my blessing. And therewith hee yealded vp the ghost. And then he was entered as belonged vnto a King, wherefore Igraine the Quene made great sorrow and all the barons. When now the realme in great separdie a long while, for every Lord that was mighty of men made him strong, and many wente to haue beene King. When Merlin went to the Archbishop of Canterbury, and counselled him to send for all the Lords of the realme, and all the gentlemen of armes, that they should

and his Knights of the round Table.

come to London afore Christmasse, vpon paine of cursing, and for this cause, that as Iesus was borne on that night, that hee would of his great mercy shew some miracle as he was come to bee King of all mankind, for to shew some miracle who should be rightwise King of this realme. So the Archbishop by the aduise of Merlin sent for all the Lords and Gentlemen of armes, that they should come by Christmasse eue to London. And many of them made them cleane of their liues, that their prayer might be the more acceptable to God. so in the greatest Church of London (whether it were Paules or not, the French booke maketh no mention) all the States and Lords were long or it was day, in the Church for to pray. And when matins and the first masse was done there was scene in the Church-yard against the hie altar a great stone foure square like to a marble stone and in the midst thereof was an anuile of Steele a foote of height, and therein stooke a faire sword naked by the point, and letters of gold were written about the sword that said thus. Who so pulleth out this sword of this Seone and anuile, is right-wise King borne of England. When the people maruailed and told it to the archbishop. I commaund you said the Archbishop that you keepe you with in your Church, & pray vnto God still that no man touch the sword til the hie mas be al done. So when al the masses wer don, al the States went for to behold the stone and the sword. And then they saw the scripture, some assaied, such as would haue bene King. But none might stir the sword, nor moue it. He is not yet here said the Archbishop that shall achieve the sword but doubt not God will make him to be knowne. But this is my counsaile said the Archbishop, that we let puruey ten knights men of good fame, and they to keepe this sword, and so it was ordeined, and then there was made acrie that every man should assaie that would for to winn the sword. And vpon new yeres day the barons let make a iustes and a turneyment, that all knights that would iust and turney there might play. And all this was ordeined for to keepe the Lords together and the commons, for the Archbishop trusted that God would make him knowne that should win the sword.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

So upon new years day when the service was done, the barons rode to the field, some to iust, and some to turney. And so it happened that sir Ector that had great livelihood about London rode to the iusts, and with him rode sir Key his sonne and yong Arthur that was his nourished brother, and sir Key was made knight at all halowmasse afore. So as they rode toward the iustes, sir Key had lost his sword, for hee had left it at his fathers lodging, and so hee prayed yong Arthur to ride for his sword. I will with a good will said Arthur, and rode fast after the sword, and when he came home, the Lady and all were gone out to see the iusting. Then was Arthur wroth and said to himselfe. I will ride to the Church-yard and take the sword with me that sticketh in the Stone for, my brother sir Key shall not bee without a sword this day. And so when he came to the Church-yard Arthur alighted, & tied his horse to the stile, and so went to the tent, and found no knights there, for they were all at the iusting, and so hee handled the sword by the handles, and lightly and fierly hee pulled it out of the Stone and tooke his horse and rode his way till hee came to his brother sir Key, and deliuered him the sword. And as soon as sir Key saw the sword hee wist well that it was the sword of the Stone and so hee rode to his father sir Ector and said Sir loe here is the sword of the Stone. Wherefore I must be King of this land. When sir Ector beheld the sword, hee returned againe and came to the Church, and there they alighted all three and went into the Church, and anon hee made sir Key to sweare vpon a booke how hee came to that sword. Sir said sir Key by my brother Arthur, for hee brought it to me. How gate you this sword said sir Ector to Arthur, sir I will tell you, when I came home for my brothers sword, I found no body at home for to deliuer mee his sword and so I thought my brother sir Key should not be swordles, and so I came thither egerly and pulled it out of the Stone without any paine. Found ye any knights about this sword said sir Ector. Nay said Arthur. Now said sir Ector to Arthur I vnderstand that you must bee King of this land. Wherefore I, said Arthur and so what cause? Sir said sir Ector, for God will haue it so,

for

and his Knights of the round Table.

for there should neuer no man haue drawn out this sword but hee that shall be rightwise King of this land. Now let me see whether ye can put the sword there as it was and pull it out againe. What is no mastery said Arthur, and so hee put it in the Stone. Therewith sir Ector assayed to pull out the sword and failed.

CHAP. IIII.

How King Arthur pulled out the sword diuers times.

Now assay you, said sir Ector, to sir Key. And anon hee pulled at the sword with all his might, but it would not be. Now shall we assay said sir Ector to Arthur, with a good will said Arthur & pulled it out easily. And therewithal sir Ector knelled downe to the earth, & sir Key also. Alas said Arthur mine owne deare father & my brother, why kneele you to me? Nay nay my Lord Arthur, it is not so, I was neuer your father ne of your blood, but I wote well that you are of an higher blood then I wende you were. And then sir Ector told him all how he was betaken him to nourish, and by whose commandement, and by Merlins deliuerance. When Arthur made great mone when hee vnderstood that sir Ector was not his father. Sir said sir Ector vnto Arthur, will you bee my good and gracious Lord when you are King. Else were I too blame said Arthur for you are the man in the world that I am most beholding vnto, and my good Lady and mother your wife that as well as hee owne hath fostered and kept me. And if euer it be Gods will that I be King as you say, ye shall desire of mee what I may doe, and I shall not faile you, God forbid I should faile you. Sir said sir Ector I will aske no more of you but that if you will make my sonne your fostered brother sir Key Seneschall of all your lands. What shall be done sir said Arthur and more by the faith of my body, and that neuer man shall haue that office but hee while that hee and I liue. Therewithall they went vnto the Archbishop and told him how the sword was achieved, and by whom. And vpon the twelfth day all the barons came thither for to assaie to take the sword who that would assaie. But there afore them al,

there

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

there might none take it out but onely Arthur, wherefore there were many great Lords wroth, and said it was great shame vnto them all and the realme, to be gouerned with a boy of no high blood borne. And so they fell out at that time, that it was put off til Candlemasse, and then all the Barons should meete there againe. But alwayes the ten knights were ordained for to watch the sword both day and night, and so they set a pavilion ouer the stone and the sword, and due alwayes watched. And at Candlemasse many more great Lords came thither for to haue wonne the sword, but none of them might preuaile. And right as Arthur did at Christmasse, he did at Candlemasse and pulled out the sword easily whereof the Barons were sore agreiued, and put it in del. y till the high feast of Easter. And as Arthur sped afoze, so did hee at Easter: and yet there were some of the great Lords had indignation that Arthur should be their king, and put it off in delay till the feast of Pentecost. When the Archbishop of Canterbury by Merlins prouidence, let puruey of the best knights that might be gotten & such knights as King Vtherpendragon loued best & most trusted in his dayes, and such knights were put about Arthur, as Sir Bawdewine of Britaine, Sir Key, Sir Vilius, and Sir Brasias: all these with many other were alwayes about Arthur day and night till the feast of Pentecost.

CHAP. V.

How Arthur was crowned King and how he made officers.

At the feast of Pentecost, all manner of men assayed for to pull at the sword that would assaye: and none might preuaile but Arthur, & pulled it out afoze al the Lords and commons that were there, wherefore all the commons cryed at once. We will haue Arthur vnto our king, we will put him no more in delay, for we all see that it is Gods will that hee shall be our king, and who that holdeth against it, we will slay him: and therewithall they kneled downe all at once both rich and poore, and cryed Arthur mercy because they had delayed him so long. And Arthur forgaued them, and tooke the sword

and his Knights of the round Table.

sword betwene both his hands and offered it vp to the altar where the Archbishop was, and was made knight of the best man that was there. And so anone was the Coronation made, and there was hee sworne to the Lords and commons for to be a true king, to stand with true justice from thenceforth all the dayes of his life. And then hee made all the Lords that held off the crowne to come in and to doe him seruice as they ought to doe. And many complaints were made vnto King Arthur of great wrongs that were done since the death of King Vtherpendragon, of many lands that were bereued of Lords, knights, Ladies, and gentlemen. Wherefore King Arthur made the lands for to be rendred againe vnto them that ought them. When this was done that the king had stablished all the counties about London, then hee did make Sir Key Seneshall of England, and Sir Bawdewine of Britayne was made Constable, and Sir Vilius was made Chamberline, and Sir Brasias was made warden, for to waite vpon the North fro Trent forward, for it was that time as for the most part enemye vnto the king. But within few yeares after, King Arthur wonne all the North, Scotland and all that were vnder their obedience. Also a part of Wales held against King Arthur, but hee overcame them all as hee did the remnant, and all through the noble prouesse of himselfe and his knights of the round table.

CHAP. VI.

How King Arthur held in Wales at a Pentecost a great feast, and what Kings and Lords came to this feast.

Then King Arthur remoued into Wales, and let erie a great feast that it should be holden at Pentecost after the Coronation of him at the Citie of Carlion. Vnto this feast came King Lot of Lowthean and of Orkeney, with six hundred knights with him. Also there came vnto this feast King Vrience of Goze, which brought with him foure hundred knights. Also to this feast there came King Nentres of Carloth, and with him seuen hundred knights. Also there came vnto this feast the king of Scotland, with six hundred knights

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

with him, and hee was but a yong man. And there came vnto this feast a King that was called the King with the hundred knights, but hee and his men was passing well besene at all points. Also there came the King of Cardos with five hundred knights. When was King Arthur glad of their coming. For hee wend that all the Kings and knights had come for great loue, and for to haue done him worship at his feast, wherefore the King made great joy, and sent vnto the Kings and knights great present. But the Kings would none receiue, but rebuked the messengers shamefully, and said they had no joy to receiue gifts of a berdes boy that was come of low blood: And sent him word that they would haue none of his gifts, and that they were come to giue him gifts with hard swords betwene the neck and the shoulders, and therefore they came thither, so they told the messengers plainly, for it was great shame to all them to see such a boy to haue the rule of so noble a realme as this land was. With this answere the messengers departed, and told this answere vnto King Arthur. And for this cause by the aduise of his Barons hee take him to a strong Toure with five hundred good men of armes with him: and all the Kings aforesaid in a manner laid a seige afoze him, but King Arthur was well vitaled. And within fiftene dayes after Merlin came among them into the Citle of Corlion. When all the Kings were passing glad of Merlins coming, and asked him for what cause is that berdes boy Arthur made your King, thus said Merlin I shall tell you the cause. For hee is King Vtherpendragons sonne, borne in wedlock, begotten vpon faire Igraine the Dukes wife of Cornewalle. When hee is a dastard said they all. Nay said Merlin after the death of the Duke more then three houres was Arthur begot thirtene dayes after King Vtherpendragon wedded faire Igrayne, and therefore I proue him hee is no baird and who soeuer saie he may he shall bee King and ouercome all his enemies, and or that hee die hee shall be long King of all England, and hee shall haue vnder his obeyance Wales, Ireland and Scotland, and many more realmes then I wil now reherse. Some of the Kings by Merlin's words, and deemed well that it should be as hee

said

and his Knights of the round Table.

said; and some of them laughed him to scoone as King Lot and moe other called him a witch. But then were they accorded with Merlin that King Arthur should come out and speake with the Kings, and for to come safe and goe safe, such assurance was made of Merlin went. So Merlin went vnto King Arthur and told him how he had done, and bad him that he should not feare, but come out boldly and speake with them, and spare them not but answere them as their King and cheffayne, for you shall overcome them all, whether they will or will not.

CHAP. VII.

Of the first warre that King Arthur had, and how he wanne the field and overcame his enemies.

Then King Arthur came out of his Toure, and had vnderneath his govine a jessearunt of double maille which was good and sure, and there went with him the Archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Bawdwin of Britayne, and Sir Key the Seneschall and Sir Brastias, these were the men of most worship that were with him and when they were met together, there was but little mekenesse, for there was stout and hard words on both sides. But alwayes King Arthur answered them and said that he would make them to bowe & he liued, wherefore they departed with wrath, and King Arthur brookepe them wel. and they bad the King keepe him wel so the King returned to the Toure againe and armed him & al his knights. What wil ye doe said Merlin to the Kings ye are better to stint, for here ye shal not preuile, though ye were ten times so many. We weluel aduised to bee a frate of a dremereader said King Lot. With that Merlin vanished away and came to King Arthur, and bad him set on them fierly, and in the meane while there were three hundred good men of the best that were with the Kings, that went straight to King Arthur and that comforted him greatly. Sir said Merlin to King Arthur, fight not with the sword that you had by miracle till you see that you goe to the worst, then draw it out and doe your best. So forth withall King Arthur set vpon them in their lodging. And Sir Bawde-

William
Obersho

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

winne, Sir Key and Sir Brastia flew on the right hand and on the left that it was maruaille, and alway King Arthur on horseback laid on with a sword and did maruelous deedes of armes that many of the Kings had great joy of his deedes and hardi-nes. When King Lot brake out on the back side and the King with the hundred knights and King Carados, and set on King Arthur fierly behind him. With that King Arthur turned with his knights and smote behind and before, and King Arthur was in the foremost presse till his horse wasaine vnder him. And therewith King Lot smote downe King Arthur. With that his foure knights receiued him, and set him on horseback. When hee drew his sword excalibur, but it was so bright in his enemies eyes, that it gaue light like thirtie torches, and therewith hee put them backe and slew much people. And then all the commons of Carlion arose with clubbs and staves and slew many knights, but all the knights held them together with the knights that were left aliue, and so fled and departed. And Merlin came to King Arthur, and counsailed him to follow them no farther.

CHAP. VIII.

How Merlin counsailed King Arthur to send for King Ban and King Bors, and of their counsaile taken for the warre.

SO after the feast and journey King Arthur drew him to London, and by the counsaile of Merlin the King did call his Barons to counsel. For Merlin had told the King that the six knights that made warre vpon him, would in all haste be auenged on him, and on his laude. Wherefore the King asked counsaile of them all. They could no counsaile giue, but said they were big enough. He say well said King Arthur, and I thanke you for your good courage, but will yee all that loue mee speake with Merlin: yee know wel that hee hath done much for me, and hee knoweth many things and when he is a fore you, I would that yee prayed him hartily of his best aduise. And all the Barons said they they would pray him and desire him. So Merlin was sent for, and was farre desired of all the Barons to giue them the

and his Knights of the round Table.

the best counsaile. I shall tell you Sirs said Merlin I warn you all that your enemies are passing strong for you, and they are good men of armes as any that now liue, and by this time they haue gotten foure Kings more, and a mighty Duke also, and but if our King haue more chiuallrie with him then hee may make himselfe within the bonds of his owne realme. And hee fight with them in battaile, hee shall be ouercome and slaine, what were best to doe in this case, said all the Barons. I shall tel you said Merlin mine aduise, there are two brethren beyond the sea, and they be Kings both, and maruelous good men of their hands, the one hight King Ban of Benwicke and that other hight King Bors of Gaule that is France, and on these two Kings warreth a mighty man of men, King Claudas, and striueth with them for a Castle, but this Claudas is so mighty of goods, wherof he getteth good knights, that he putteth these two Kings for the most part to the worst, wherefore this is my counsaile that our King send vnto the two Kings Ban and Bors by two trusty knights with letters well deuised that if they will come and see King Arthur and his court and so helpe him in his warres that hee will bee sworn to them to helpe them in their warres against King Claudas. Now what say yee vnto this counsaile said Merlin. This is well counsailed said the King, and all the Barons. Might so in all the haste were ordained to goe two knights vpon the message vnto the two Kings. So were there made letters in most pleasant wise, according vnto King Arthurs desire. Vilius and Brastias were made the messengers, and so rode south well horsed and well armed, as the guye was that time, and so passed the sea and rode towards the Citie of Benwicke, and there besides were eight knights that espied them. And at the straight passage they mette with Sir Vilius and Sir Brastias, and would haue taken them prisoners. So they prayed them that they might passe, for they were messengers vnto King Ban and Bors sent from King Arthur. Wherefore said the eight knights yee shall die or bee our prisoners, for wee be knights of King Claudas. And therewith two of them dressed their peares and Vilius and Brastias dressed their speares, and ran together with great strength and

Claudas

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

Claudas knights brake their speares and the other two held, and bare the two knights out of their labels vnto the earth, and so left them lying and rode their way. And the other five knights rode afore to a passage to meete with them againe, and so Vilnius and Brastias smote other two downe, and so pass on their way.

And at the third passage smote bothe other two. And at the fourth passage there met two for two, and both were laid to the earth. So there was none of the eight knights but that he was sore hurt or els brused. And when they came to Benwicke it fortuned there were both the kings Ban & Bors. When it was told to the kings, that there were come messengers there were sent to them two knights of worship, the one hight Lyons Lord of the countrie of Waparne, & Sir Phariance a worshipful knight. Anone they asked from whence they came, and they said from King Arthur of England, then they tooke them in their armes and made great joy each of other. But anon as the two kings wist that they were messengers of King Arthur, no carrying was made, but forthwith they spake with the knights, and welcomed them in the faithfallest wise, and said they were most welcome vnto them before all the kings liuing, and therewith they kist the letters and deliuered them straigh, and when King Ban and Bors vnderstood the letters, then were they better welcome then before: And after the haste of the letter they gaue them this answer that they would fulfil the desire of King Arthurs writing. And Vilnius and Brastias taried there as long as they would, and had as good chere as might be made them in those marches. When Vilnius and Brastias told the kings of the aduenture of their passages of the eight knights. Waha said King Ban and Bors, they were our good friends. I would I had wist of them, they should not haue escaped so. So Vilnius and Brastias had good chere and great gifts, as much as they might beare away, & had their answer by mouth and by writing that the two kings would come to King Arthur in all the haid that they might. So the two knights rode on a ore, and passed the sea and came to their Lord and told him how they had sped, whereof King Arthur was passing glad

and his Knights of the round Table.

glad. At what time suppose ye the two knights will be here? Sir said they afore all hollowmasse. When the king let purue for a great feast, and let erie a great iustes. And by all hollowmasse, the two kings were comen ouer the sea, with three hundred knights well arayed both for the peace and for the warre. And King Arthur met with them ten miles out of London and there was great joy as could be thought or made, and on all hollowmasse at the great feast late in the hal the three kings, and Sir Key the Seneschall serued in the hall, and Sir Lucas the Butler that was Duke Corneus sonne, and Sir Griflet that was the sonne of Cardol, these three knights had the rule of all the seruice that serued the kings. And anone as they had washed and were risen, all knights that would just made them ready. By than they were ready on horseback there were seven hundred knights. And King Arthur Ban and Bors with the Archbishop of Canterbury, and Sir Ector Kays father they were in a place couered with cloth of gold like an hall with Ladies and gentlewomen, for to behold who did best and thereon to giue judgement.

CHAP. IX.

Of a great turney made by King Arthur and the two Kings Ban and Bors and how they went ouer the sea.

King Arthur and the two kings let depart the seven hundred knights in two partie. And there were three hundred knights of the realme of Benwicke, & they of Gaule turned on the other side. When they dressed their shields & many good knights couched their speeres. So Sir Griflet was the first that met with a knight that was called Ladynas, and they met so eagerly that al men had wonder, and they fought so that their shields fell to peeces, and horse and men fell to the earth, and both the English knight and the French knight lay so long, that al men wend that they had bene dead. And when Lucas the Butler saw Griflet lie so, he quickly horsed him againe, and they two did maruailous deedes of armes with many batchelers, And also Sir Key came out of an embushment with five good knights

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

knights with him, and they fire smote other fire dookte horse and man. But Sir Key did that day maruolous deedes of arms, that there was none that did so well as he that day. Then there came in firstly Sir Ladas and Sir Gracian two knights of France, and did passing well, that all men prayed them. Then came there Sir Placidus, a good knight, and mette with Sir Key and smote him downe horse and man wherfore Sir Griseo was woorth, and mette with Sir Placidus so hard that horse and man fel to the earth. But when the three knights saw that Sir Key had a fall, they were wonderous wroth, and therewith each of them hue bare downe a knight. When King Arthur and the two knights saw them begin to waie woorth on both parts, they lepte on small backynes and let crie that all men should depart vnto their lodging. And so they went home and burred them, and so to euen some to Upper. And after the three kings went into a garter, and gave the pryce vnto Sir Key and to Sir Lucas the butler, and to Sir Griseo. And then they went to counsaile, and with them Gwonaub, brother vnto Sir Ban and Bors, a wise clurke, and thither went Vilius and Bractias and Merlin. And after they had bene in counsaile, they went to bed. And on the morrow they heard masse, and after went to dinner, and so to counsaile, and made many arguments what were best to doe. At the last they were concluded that Merlin should goe with a token of King Ban, and that was a ring vnto his men and King Bors, and Gracian and Placidus should goe againe and keepe their Castles and their countries, as for King Ban of Benwick, and King Bors of Gaules had aduised them, & so passed the sea and came to Benwick. And when the people saw King Bans ring and Gracian and Placidus, they were glad and asked how the king fared, and made great joy of their wellfares and coming. And according vnto the lawes of the Lordes castle, the men of warre made them vnder a tree as faste as possible, so that they had fiftene thousand on horseback and on foot, and they had great plenty of victuals with them by Merlins promise. But Gracian and Placidus were left to defend the Castle for dread of King Claudas. Night Sir Merlin passed the sea well victualled both by

water

and his Knights of the round Table.

water and by land. And when he came to the sea he sent home the same men againe, and took no more with him but ten thousand men on horsebacke, the most part men of armes, and so shipped and passed the sea into England, and landed at Dover, and through the witte of Merlin he led the host northward the prauiest way that could be thought vnto the forrest of Wedgraine, and there in a valey he lodged them secretly. When rode Merlin vnto King Arthur and the two kings and told them how he had sped, whereof they had great maruaile, that man on earth might spee so soone, and goe and come. So Merlin told them that ten thousand were in the forrest of Wedgraine wel armed at all points. When was there no more to say but to horsebacke went all the host, as King Arthur had afore purueied. So with twenty thousand he passed by night and day, but there was made such an ordinance afore by Merlin that there should no man of warre ride nor goe in no countrie on this side Trent water, but if he had a token from King Arthur, where the kings enemies durst not ride as they did before to espie.

CHAP. X.

How a leuen Kings gathered a great host against King Arthur.

And so within a little space the three kings came vnto the Castle of Wedgraine, and found there a passing faire fellowship and well besone. Whereof they had great joy, and victuals they wanted none. This was the cause of the Northern host that they were reared for the despite and rebuke that the six kings had at Carlion. And those six kings by their meanes gate to them five other kings, and thus they began to gather their people. And how they swore that for weale nor wo they should not leaue each other til they had destroyed King Arthur. And then they made an oath. The first that began the oath was the Duke of Candebenet, that he would bring with him five thousand men of armes which were ready on horseback. Then swore King Brandegoris of Latangor that he would bring five thousand men of armes on horsebacke. Then swore King

D 2

Clarence

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

Clarance of Northumberland that he would bring three thousand men of armes. Then swore the King of the hundred knights that was a passing good man and a young, that he would bring four thousand men on horseback. Then King Lot swore, a passing good knight and Sir Gwynas father, that he would bring five thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Vrience that was Sir Gwynas father of the kind of Boze and he would bring six thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Idres of Cornewalle that he would bring seven thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Cradelmans to bring five thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Agwifance of Ireland to bring five thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Nentres to bring five thousand men of armes on horseback. Also there swore King Carados to bring five thousand men of armes on horseback. So their whole host was of cleane men of armes on horseback fifty thousand. And on foote ten thousand of good mens bodies. Then were they sone redie and mounted upon horse and sent forth their fore riders; for these eleauen Kings in their wayes laid syege vnto the Castle of Bedgraine: and so they departed and drew toward Arthur and left ielu to hyde at the syege. for the Castle of Bedgrayne was holden of King Arthur, and the men that were therein were Arthurs.

CHAP. XI.

Of a dreame of the King with the hundred Knights.

AND so by Merlins aduise there were sent fore riders to skum the countrie, and there met with the fore riders of the North, and made them to tell which way the host came, and then they told it to King Arthur, and by King Ban and Bors counsaile they let bren and destroyed all the countrie as fore them where they should ride. The King with the hundred knights dreamed a wonderfull dreame two nights afore the battaile, that there blew a great wind, and blew downe the Castles and their towres, and after that came a water and

bare

and his Knights of the round Table.

bare it al away. Al that heard of the dreame said it was a token of great battaile. Then by the counsaile of Merlin when they wist which way the eleauen Kings would ride and lodge that night. At midnight they set upon them as they were in their pavilions, but the scout watch by their hoot cried, Lords at armes, for here be your enemies at your hand.

CHAP. XII.

How that the eleauen Kings with their host fought against King Arthur and his host, and of many great feates of the warre.

Then King Arthur and King Ban and King Bors with their good and trustie knights set upon them so fierly, that they made them ouerthrow their pavilions on their heads, but the eleauen Kings by many prowesse of armes took a faire field. But there was laine that morrow tide ten thousand of good mens bodies. And so they had afore them a strong passage, yet were they fifty thousand of hardy men. Then it drew toward day. Now shall you doe by mine aduise said Merlin vnto the three Kings. I would that King Ban and King Bors with their fellowship of ten thousand men were put in a wood here besides in an embushment and keepe them prey, and that they be led of the light of the day come, and that they stirre not till ye and your knights haue fought with them long and when it is day light, dresse your battaile even afore them, and the passage, that they may see all your host, for then they will be the more hardy when they see you haue but twenty thousand and cause them to be the gladder to suffer you and your host to come ouer the passage. All the three Kings and the Barons said that Merlin had said passing well, and it was done as he had deuised. So on the morrow when either host saw other, the host of the North was well comforted. Then to Vilfius and Brastias were deliuered three thousand men of armes, and they set on them fierly in the passage, and slew on the right hand and on the left hand, that it was wonderfull to tell. When the eleauen knights saw that there was so few a fellowship and did such deedes of armes, they were

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ashamed, and set on them fierly againe, and there was Sir Vilius horse slaine vnder him, but he did well and maruelously on fote. But the Duke Eustace of Cambenet and King Clariance of Northumberland were alway grieuous on Sir Vilius. When Brastias saw his fellow so fared withall hee smote the Duke with a speare, that horse and man fell downe. What saw King Clariance, and returned to Brastias and either smote other, so that horse and man went to the earth, and so they lay long assonged, and their horses knees brast to the hard bone. When came Sir Kay the Seneschall with five fellows with him, and did passing well. With that came the eleauen kings, and there was Sir Griflet put to the earth horse and man and Lucas the butler horse and man, by King Grandegors and King Idres and King Agulance. When wared the meddle passing hard on both parties. When Sir Kay saw Sir Griflet on fote hee rode to King Nentres and smote him downe, and led his horse to Sir Griflet and horsed him againe. Also Sir Kay with the same spere smote downe King Lot and hurt him passing sore. What saw the king with the hundred knights and ran to Sir Kay and smote him downe and took his horse and gave him to King Lot, whereof hee said graniercie. When Sir Griflet saw Sir Kay and Lucas the Butler on fote, hee took a sharpe spere great and square, and rode to Pynell a good man of arms and smote downe horse and man, and then hee took his horse and gaue him Sir Kay. When King Lot saw King Nentres on fote he ran to Melot de la Roch, and smote him downe horse and man, and gaue King Nentres the horse and horsed him againe. Also the king of the hundred knights saw King Idres on fote: then hee ran vnto Guimiart de bloi, and smote him downe horse and man, and gaue King Idres the horse, and horsed him againe. And King Lot smote downe Clariance de la Forrest savage, and gaue the horse to Duke Eustace. And so when they had horsed the kings againe, they drew them all eleauen kings together, and said they would be reuenged of the damage that they had taken that day. In the meane while came in Sir Ector with an eger countenance and found Vilius and Brastias on fote in great peril of death which were foule defoyled vnder the

and his Knights of the round Table.

the horse fete. When King Arthur as a Lyon ran vnto King Cradelmont of Northwales, and smote him through the left side, that the horse and the king fell downe, and then he took the horse by the rayne and lad him vnto Vilius and said. Haue this horse mine old friend, for great neede hast thou of an horse. Gramercy said Vilius. When King Arthur did so maruelously in armes that all men had wonder thereof: when the king with the hundred knights saw King Cradelmont on fote he ranne vnto Sir Ector that was well horsed, Sir Kays father, and smote downe downe horse and man and gaue the horse to the king, and horsed him againe. And when King Arthur saw the king ride on Sir Ectors horse he was wroth, and with his sword hee smote the king on the helme that a quarter of the helme and shield fell downe and the sword kerued downe vnto the horse wecke, and so the king and the horse fell downe on the ground. When Sir Kay came to Sir Morganeore seneschall with the king of the hundred knights, and smote him downe horse and man, and lad the horse vnto his father Sir Ector: then Sir Ector ran vnto a knight that hight Kardens, and smote downe horse and man and lad the horse vnto Sir Brastias, that had great neede of an horse and was greatly defoyled. When Brastias beheld Lucas the butler that lay like a dead man vnder the horse fete, and for rescue him Sir Griflet did maruelously, and there were alwayes fourtene knights vpon Sir Lucas and then Brastias smote one of them on the helme, that it went to the earth, and hee rode to another and smote him that the same fete into the filds. When hee went to the third and smote him on the shoulder that both shoulder and arme flew to the filds. And when Sir Griflet saw him rescued, hee smote a knight on the temples, that head and helme went to the earth, and Sir Griflet took the horse of that knight and ladde him vnto Sir Lucas, and bad him mount vpon the horse and reuenge his hurts. For Brastias had slaine a knight tofore and horsed Sir Griflet.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

CHAP. XIII.

Yet of the same battaile.

Then Lucas saw King Agwysance that late had slaine Morris de la roche, and Lucas ran to him with a short speare that was great, that he gaue him such a fall that the horse fel downe to the earth. Also Sir Lucas found there on foote Bloyas de la Flaundres, and Sir Gwynas two hardy knights, and in the woodnes that Sir Lucas was in, he slew two batchelers and horsed them againe. When waxed the battaile passing hard on both parties, but King Archur was glad that his knights were horsed againe, and then they fought together that the noise and sound rang by the water and the wood, wherefore King Ban and King Bors made them ready and dressed their shields and habergeons, and they were so couragious that many knights shooke and trembled for egermesse. All this while Lucas and Guinas and Briant, and Belias of Flaunders held a strong meddle against six Kings, that was King Lot, King Nentes, King Brandegoris, King Idres, King Vrience, and King Agwysance. So with the helpe of Sir Kay and Sir Griflet they held these six Kings hard, that vnnethes they had any power to defend them selues. But when King Archur saw the battaile would not be ended by no manner, he sared like a wood Lion, and stirred his horse here and there on the right hand, and on the left, that he stinted not till he had slaine twenty knights. Also he wounded King Lot soze on the shoulder, and made him to leue that ground, for Sir Kay and Sir Griflet did there with King Archur great deedes of armes. And then Sir Vlius, Sir Brastias, and Sir Ebor, encountred against the Duke Eustace, King Cradelmont King Cardelmans, King Clauriance of Northumberland, King Cardos, and against the King with the hundred knights. So these knights encountred with these Kings that they made them to auoide the ground. When King Lot made great moane for his domages and his fellows, and said vnto the cleauen Kings. But if ye will not doe as I deuise, wee shall be slaine and destroyed. Let me haue the King with the hundred knights, King Agwysance, King Idres and the Duke

and his Knights of the round Table.

of Cambenet, and we sixe Kings will haue fiftene thousand men of armes with vs, and wee will goe apart while ye sixe Kings hold the meddle with twelue thousand and as we see that ye haue foughten with them long, then will we come on fierfly, and else shall we neuer match them said King Lot but by this meane. So anone they departed as they had deuised, and the sixe Kings made their party strong against King Archur, and made great warre longe. In the meane while byalte the embushment of King Ban and Bors, and Lionces and Phariaunce had the vant guard, and the two Kings met with King Idres and his fellowship, and there began a great meddle of breaking of speares and smiting of swords, with sleynge of men and horses, and King Idres was nere at discomfiture. What saw Agwysance the King and put Lyonces and Phariaunce in point of death, for the Duke of Cambenet came on them with a great fellowship. So the two knights were in great danger of their liues that they were faine to returne, but alwaies they rescued themselves & their fellowship maruolously. When King Bors saw those knights put backe, it grieved him soze, then he came on so fast this his fellowship seemed as blacke as the men of Inde. When King Lot had espied King Bors he knew him well, then he said. O Iesus, defend vs fro death and horrible maymes for I see well we ben in great peril of death, for I see yonder a King one of the most worshipfullest men and one of the best knights of the world is joynd to his fellowship. What is he said the King with the hundred knights? It is, said King Lot, King Bors of Gaule, I maruaile how they come into this countrey without weting of vs all. It was by the aduise of Merlin said a knight. As for him said King Carados, I will encounter with King Bors, if ye will rescewe me when it is neede. So on said they al, we wil doe al that we may for you. Then King Carados and his host rode on a softe pace til they came as nigh King Bors as a bow shotte. Then either battaile let their horses runne as fast as they might and Sir Bleoberis that was god-some vnto King Bors bare his chiefe standard. Which was a passing good knight. Now shall we see said King Bors, how the Northern Britons can beare their armes, and King Bors encountred with a knight and smote him throughe

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

out with a speare that hee fell downe dead vnto the earth, and after drew his sword and did merchaillous deedes of armes that both parties had great wonder thereof, and his knights failed not, but did their part, and King Carados was smitten to the earth, with that came the king with the hundred knights and rescued King Carados mightily by force of armes, for he was a passing good knight, and was but a young man.

CHAP. XIII.

Yet more of the said battaile, and how it was ended by *Merlin*.

By then came into the field King Ban as a fierce Lion, with bandes of grene, and there vpon gold. Ya ha said King Lor, now shall we be discomfited, for yonder I see the most valiant knight of the world, and the man of most renowne: for such two brethren as is King Ban and King Bors are not living, wherfore we must needs vnder die, & but we auoid manly & wisely ther is but death. When King Ban came into the battle he came in so fierdly, that the stroke rebounded againe fro the wood and the water; wherfore King Lor wept for pittie and sorrow that he saw so many good knights take their end. But through the great force of King Ban they made both the northern batailles that there departed to hurtle together for great dread, and the three kings with their knights flew downe right, that it was pitie to behold, and a great multitude fled.

But King Lor and the king with the hundred knights and King Morganore gathered the people together passing knightly, and did great deedes of armes and held the battaile all that day like hard. When the king with the hundred knights beheld the great damage that King Ban did, he thrust vnto him with his horse, and smote him a mighty stroke vpon the helme, which astonished him sore. When was King Ban wroth with him, and set vpon him fierdly. When that other saw that, he cast vp his shield and purred his horse forward, but the stroke of King Ban fell downe and carued a cantell of the shield, and the sword fello downe by the halberke behinde his backe, and cut in twaine the trappour of Steele, and the horse also in two

pieces

and his Knights of the round Table.

pieces that the sword fell to the ground. When the king with the hundred knights voyded the horse lightly, and with his sword he broched the horse of King Ban through and through. With that King Ban with great diligence voyded the dead horse, and came and smote at the other so egerly vpon the helme, that hee fell to the earth. Also in that ire he felled King Morganore, and there was great slaughter of good knights and much people. By that time came into the presse King Arthur, that found King Ban standing among dead men and dead horses, fighting on foote as a wood lion, that there came none nigh him as farre as he might reach with his sword but that hee caught a greuous buffet, whereof King Arthur had great pitie. And King Arthur was so bloody that by his shield no man might know him for all was blood and braines on his sword. And as King Arthur looked by him, he saw a knight that was passing well horsed, and therewith he ranne to him and smote him on the helme with such force, that his sword cutt him in two pieces, that the one halfe fell on the one side and the other on the other side, and King Arthur tooke the horse and led him vnto King Ban, and said. Faire brother haue this horse, for ye haue great neede thereof, and me repenteth sore of your great damage. If I shall be soone reuenged said King Ban, for I trust in God mine hurt is not much but some of them may sore repent this. I will well said King Arthur, for I see your deedes full actual; neuertheless I might not come at you at that time. But when King Ban was mounted on horsebacke, then there began a new battaile, which was sore and hard, and passing great slaughter.

And so through great force King Arthur and King Ban and King Bors, made their knights a litte to withdraw them. But alwayes the eleauen kings with their chivalrie neuer turned backe, and so with drew them to a little wood, and so ouer a little riuer, and there they rested them for on the night they might haue no rest in the field. And then the eleauen kings and their knights assembled them all on an heape together, as men a dread and all discomfited. But there was no man might passe them, they held them so hard together both behinde and before that King Arthur had maruaile of their great deedes of armes,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

and was passing wroth. Ah Sir Arthur said King Ban and King Bors, blame them not for they doe as good men ought to doe, for by my faith said King Ban they are the best fighting men & knights of most prowes that euer I saw or hard speak of, & those eleuen kings are men of great worship, if they wer belöging to you, there were no king vnder heauen had such eleuen knights and of such worship. I may not loue them said King Arthur, they would destroy me. What know we wel said King Ban and King Bors, for they are your mortall enemies, and that hath ben promised aforehand, and this day they haue done their part, and that is great pittie of their wilfullnesse. Then all the eleuen kings drew them together, and then said King Lot. Lords yee must take other wayes then you doe, or els the great losse is behinde, yee may see what people we haue lost, and what good men we leese because alwayes we waite vpon those foote men, and euer in sauing one of the horsemen we leese tenne horsemen for him, therefore this is mine aduise, let vs put our foote men fro vs, for it is almost night. For King Arthur wil not fary vpon the foote men, therefore they may saue them selues, he wood is neare hand. And when we horsemen be together, looke that eueryche of you kings make such an ordinance that none breake vpon paine of death, And who that seeth any man dresse him for to flee, lightly that he be slaine, for it is better that we slay a coward, then through a coward all we be slaine. How say ye said King Lot, and were vnto mee all yee kings. It is well said quoth King Nennes, and so said the king with the hundred knights and the same said King Carados and King Vrience, so did King Idres and King Brandegoris, and so did King Cardelmans and the Duke of Cambenet, the same said King Clariance and King Agwylance. And they sware that they would neuer faile the one vnto the other, neither for life nor for death. And who that fled, but did as they did, should be slaine. Then anon they amended their harnyses, and righted their shields, and tooke new peares, and set them on their thighes, and stood still as it had bene a plompe of wood.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XV.

Yet of the said battayle.

When kinge Arthur, and kinge Ban and kinge Bors behelde them and all their knyghts they praised them greatly for their noble cheere of chualry, for the hardyest fyghters that euer they heard or sawe. With that there dresed them a fortie noble knyghtes and sayd vnto the three kings that they would breake theyr battayle, these were theyr names. Lyonses, Pharyauce, Vlfius, Braffias, Ector, Key, Lucas the butler, Griflet le fyle de dieu, and Meryet of the rocke. Guynas de bloy, and Briant de la forest sauage. Ballaus & Moryans of the Castell of maydens. Flanedrius of the Castell of Ladies. Annecians which was kinge Bors godsonne a valpant knight. Ladinus de la rouse. Emeraus Caulas and Graciencle le castleyn, one Bloyse de la case, and Sir Colgreuance of Goyre. All these fortie knyghtes rode on afore with great speres on their thyghes and spurred theyr horses myghtely as fast as theyr horses might runne. And the eleuen kings with part of their good knyghtes, rushed with their horses as fast as they might with theyr speres, and there they did on both parties meruaylous deedes of armes. So came into the thickest of the presse kinge Arthur, Ban, and Bors and slewe downe ryght on both handes, that theyr horses went in blode vnto the flytlockes. But euer the eleuen kings and theyr host were alwayes in kinge Arthurs vyage. For kinge Ban and Bors had great meruail consyderinge the great slaughter that there was, but at the last they were driuen backe ouer a litle ryuer. With that came Merlyn vpon a great black horse and sayde to kinge Arthur. We haue neuer done, haue ye not done ynough, of thre score thousand ye haue left on lyue but fiftene thousand it is tyme for to save ho, for God is wrothe wyth you that you wyll neuer haue done, for yonder eleuen kings at this tyme will not be ouerthrowen, but and if yee fary vpon them any longer, all your fortune wyll turne, and theirs shall encrease, and therefore withdrowe you to your lodgynges,

3

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ginge, and there rest you as soone as you may and rewarde well your good knyghtes wth gold and siluer, for they haue regh^t well deserued it, for there may no ryches be too deere for them, for of so fewe men as ye haue, there were neuer men did moze p^{ro}ffesse than they haue done this day, for ye haue this day matched with the best fyghters of the worlde. What is trouth sayde King Ban and Bors. Also said Merlin, wythdraw you where you lyst, for these thre yeres I dare vnder take they shall not hurt ne graue you, and by than ye shall here newe tydings. And than Merlyn said to King Arthur, these eleauen Kinges haue moze in hand than they are ware of for the Sarasyns are landed in their countreies moze than fortie thousand that berne and sleie, and haue layde seige at the castell waunds brought and made great destruction, therefore dreade ye not these thre yeres. Also Sir, all the goods that ye haue gotten at this battaile, let it be searched, and when ye haue it in your handes, let it be giuen freely to these two Kinges that be here, Ban and Bors, that they may rewarde their knyghtes with all, and that shall cause straungers to be of a better w^{ill} to doe you seruice at a neede. Also ye be able enough to rewarde your owne knyghts of your owne goods when so euer it lyketh you. It is well sayde quod King Arthur, and as thou hast deuised so shall it be done. When it was deliuered to Kinge Ban & King Bors, they gaue the goodes as freely to their knyghts as it was giuen them.

When Merlyn tooke his leaue of King Arthur and of the two Kinges for to goe see his master Bleise which dwelt in Northumberland, and so departed and came to his master which was passing glad of his comming and there he told him how Kinge Arthur and the two Kinges had sped at the great battaile, and how it was ended, and tolde him the names of euery Kinge and knyght of worship that was there. And so Bleise wrote the battaile word by word as Merlyn tolde him, how it began, and by whom, and in like wise howe it was ended, and who had the worst. All the batayles that were done in King Arthurs dayes Merlyn caused Bleise his master to write them. Also he caused hym to write all the batayles that euery

and his Knights of the round Table.

euery worthy knyght did of King Arthurs court. After this Merlyn departed from his master and came to Kinge Arthur that was in the Castell of Bedegraine, that was one of the Castells that stood in the forrest of Sherwood, and Merlyn was so disguised that King Arthur knewe him not, for he was all furred in black sheeps skynnes, and a great payre of hootes, and a bow and arowes in a russet golone, and brought wild geese in his hand, and it was on the morow after Candelmasse daye, but King Arthur knew him not. Syr sayde Merlyn to King Arthur, will ye giue mee a gift. Wherefore sayde the King should I giue thee a gift thou choost. Syr sayde Merlyn, ye were better to giue mee a gyft the which is not in your handes than to lose great riches. For here in the same place whers as the great battaile was, is great treasure hid in the earth. Who told thee so choost sayd King Arthur. Merlyn told me so saide he.

When Vllius and Brastias knew him well enough, and smiled at him. Syr sayde these two knyghtes, it is Merlyn that speaketh so vnto you. When King Arthur was greatly abashed, and had meruaile of Merlyn, and so had King Ban and King Bors, and so they had great sport at him. So in the mean while there came a damoyzell which was an Carles daughter, and hir fathers name was Sanam, and her name was Lyonors a passing fayre damoyzell, and so she came thither for to doe homage, as other Lords did after the great bataile. And Kinge Arthur set his loue greatly vpon hir, and so did she vpon him, and the King had adoe with hir, and begate vpon hir a childe and his name was Borre, that was after a good knight of the round table. When there came word that Kinge Ryence of North Wales made strong warre vpon King Leodegrance of Camelgarde, for the which thinge Kinge Arthur was wrothe, for he loued him well and hated King Ryence, because he was alwayes agaynst him. So by the ordinance of the three Kinges that were sent home to Benwycke, they all would depart for dreade of King Claudas, and Pharyanue, and Antemes, and Gracians, and Lyonles Payame, with the leaders of those that should keepe the Kings landes.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XVI.

How King Arthur, King Ban and King Bors rescowed King Leodegrance, and of other incidents.

Then King Arthur and King Ban and King Bors departed with their felowship about twentie thousand and came within six dayes into the countrie of Camelyard, and there rescowed King Leodegrance, and slew there much people of King Ryence, unto the number of ten thousand of men and put him to flight. And than had these three Kings great chere of King Leodegrance, and thanked them of their great goodnes that they would reuenge him of his enemies. And there had King Arthur the first sight of Gueneuer, daughter unto King Leodegrance, and euer after he loued hir. And afterward they were wedded, as it shall be shewed here after. So brenely to make an ende, these two Kings tooke their leaue to go into their owne countrie, for King Claudas did great destruction on both their landes. Than said King Arthur, I will goe with you. Nay sayde the two Kings, yee shall not at this time, for yee haue yet much to doe in these lands, therefore wee will depart, and with the great goods that we haue gotten in these landes by your gyfts we shall wage many good knyghts, and withstand the malyce of King Claudas, for by the grace of God if wee haue need, we will send to you for succour. And if yee haue need send for vs, and we will not tarry by the faith of our bodys. It shall not neede said Merlyn that the two Kings come againe in the way of warre, but I know well that the noble King Arthur may not be long from you, for by twelue moneths be past yee shall haue great need of him and than he shall reuenge you on your enemies, as yee haue reuenged him on his. For these eleauen Kings shall dye all in one day, by the great might and prowesse of armes of two valiant knyghts as it shall be shewed hereafter, their names ben Balyne le sauage, and Balan his brother, which bene meruaylous good knyghtes as any be now liuing.

So we turne we vnto the eleauen Kings which returned to a City that heght Sozhaute, which City was wythin King Vryence

and his Knights of the round Table.

Vryence land, and there they refreshed them as well as they myght, and made leches to search their woundes, and sorowed greatly for the death of their people. With that there came a messenger and told them that there was comen into their lands people that were lawlesse as well as Sarasins for the theft and haue brent and slayne all the people that they may come by, without mercy and haue layd seige vnto the Castell of Mandelbozugh. Alas saide the eleauen Kings here is sorow vpon sorow and if we had not warred against King Arthur as we had done, hee would soone reuenge vs, and as for King Leodegrance, he loueth King Arthur better than vs. And as for King Ryence he hath ynough to doe with King Leodegrance, for he hath layd seige vnto him. So they consented to keepe all the marches of Cornemayle, of Wales and of the North. So first they put King Idres in the City of Gauntes in Wrytayne with foure thousand men of armes for to watch both the water and the land. Also they put in the City of Windesore King Nennes of Barlot, with foure thousand knyghts, for to watch both the water and the land.

Also they had of other men of warre more than eight thousand, for to fortify all the fortresses in the marches of Cornemayle. Also they put moe knyghtes in all the marches of Wales and of Scotland, with many good men of armes. And so they kept them together the space of thre yere, and euer ayded them with mighty Kings, Dukes, Lords and gentelmen. And to them sell King Ryence of North Wales, which was a mighty man of men, and also Nero that was a mighty man of good men also. And al this while they furnished & garnyshe the of good men of armes & by sale, & of al manner of ordynance that belongeth to warre for to auenge them of the battayle of Bedegrayne, as it is reheried in the booke of aduenture, following.

CHAP. XVII.

How King Arthur rode to Carlyon, and of his dreame, and how he sawe the questing beast,

Then after that King Ban and King Bors were departed King Arthur rode vnto Carlyon, and thither came to him
Lots

The Historie of Prince Arthure

Lots wyfe of Wykeny in manner of a messenger, but she was sent thither to espye the court of King Arthur, and she came richly bescent with hir fourd sonnes, Gawayne, Gaherys, Agrayne and Gareth with many other knyghts and Ladies, and she was a passing fayre Lady, wherefore the King cast great love vnto her and desired her to lye by her. So they were agreed, and he begate vpon her Mordred, and she was his sister on the mothers side Igrayne. So there she refted her a month, and at the last she departed. Whan on a tyme the King dreamed a meruailous dreame, whereof he was right sore adread. But all this tyme King Arthur knewe not that King Lots wyfe was his sister. This was King Arthurs dreame. Him thought that there was comen into this lande many gryffons and serpents, and him thought that they dyent and slew all the people in the land, and then him thought that he fought with them, and that they bit him passing great tothage and wounded him full sore, but at the last he slew them all. Whan the King awoke, he was passing heavy and right pen-sive of his dreame. And so for to put away all these thoughts he made him ready with many knyghts to ryde on hunting. As soone as he was in the forrest, the King saw a great hart afoze him. This hart will I chace said King Arthur, and so he spurred his horse and rode long after, and so by fine force off he was like to have smitten the hart, where as the King had chased the hart so long, that his horse had lost his breath & fell downe dead. When a yeman set the King another horse, the King saw the hart embushe and his horse dead, he sat him down by a fontaine, and there he fel in great thoughts and as he sat there alone, him thought he heard a noyse of hounds to the number of thirtie, and with that the King saw comynge toward him the strangest beast that ever he saw or heard tell of, so the beast went to the fontaine and dranke and the noyse was in the beasts belly like vnto the queyn of thirtie couple of hounds, but all the while that the beast dranke there was no noyse in the beasts belly, and therewith the beast departed with a great noyse, whereof the King had great meruaile, and so he was in great thought & therewith he fel on slepe. Right so there came a

knight

and his Knights of the round Table.

knight on foots to King Arthur and said: knight full of thought and slepe, tel me if thou sawest a strange beast passe this way. Such one saw I said King Arthur vnto the knight that is past two miles, what would you with that beast said King Arthur. Sir I haue followed that beast long tyme and haue killed my horse, so would God I had an other to follow my quest. Right forame one with the Kings horse and when the knight saw the horse he prayed the King to giue him that horse, for I haue followed this quest these twelue monethes, and either I shall acheue him or bleede of the best blood of my body. King Pellinore that tyme followed the questing beast, and after his death Sir Palomides followed it.

CAHP. XV III.

How King Pellinore tooke King Arthurs horse, and followed the questing beast, and how Merlin met with King Arthur.

Sir knight said King Arthur leave that quest and suffer me to haue it, and I will follow it other twelue moneths. Ah foole said the knight to King Arthur, thy desire is in vaine, for it shall neuer be acheued but by me, or by my next kynne. Therewith he stert to the Kings horse and mounted into the saddle, and said gramercy, this horse is mine. Well said King Arthur, thou shalt take my horse by force, but and I might proue thee whether thou wert better on horseback or I, I would be content. Well said the knight take me here when thou wilt, and here nigh this well thou shalt find me, and so passed forth on his way. When sat King Arthur in a great study, and had his men fetch his horse as fast as euer they might. Right so came Merlin like a child of foureteene yeres of age, and saluted the King, and asked him why he was so pensue and heavy, I may well be pensue and heavy said the King, for here euer now I haue scene the most maruailous sight that euer I saw. What knowe I well said Merlin as well as thy selfe, and of all thy thoughts, but thou art but a foole to take thought, for it will not amend thee. Also I know what thou art and also who was thy father, and also on whom thou wert begotten,

¶ 2

King

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

King Vcherpendragon was thy father, and begat thee on Igraine. That is false said King Arthur, how shouldest thou know it, for thou art not so old of yeres for to know my father? Yes said Merlin I know it better then you, or any man liuing. I will not beleue thee said King Arthur, and was wroth with the child. So Merlin departed, and came againe in the likenesse of an old man of foure score yeres of age, whereof the king was glad for hee seemed to be a right wise man. Then said the old man, why are you so sad? I may wel beheauy said King Arthur for diuers things: also here was a child told me many things that me, seemeth he should not know for he was not of age for to know my father. Yes said that old man, the child told you the truth and more would hee haue told you and you would haue suffered him. But you haue done a thing late wherefore God is displeased with you, for you haue lpen by your sister, and on her you haue gotten a child that shall destroy you and all the Knights of your realme. What are you said King Arthur, that tell me these tidings? I am Merlin, and I was hee in the childes likenesse. Ah said King Arthur, ye are a maruailous man, but I maruaile much of thy words, that I must die in battaile. Peruaile not said Merlin, for, it is Gods will that your body be punished for your foule deedes. But I may well be saye said Merlin, for I shall die a much shamefull death as to be put into the earth all quicke and ye shall die a worshipfull death. As they thus talked came one with the kings horses, and so the king mounted on his horse, and Merlin on another, and so rode to Carlion. And anon the king asked Ector and Vlsius how hee was begotten. And they told him that Vcherpendragon was his father, and Quene Igraine his mother. When King Arthur said vnto Merlin, I will that my mother be sent for that I may speake with her, and if shee say so her selfe, then will I beleue it. In all hast the Quene was sent for, and she came anon, and brought with her Morgan le fay hir daughter, that was as faire a lady as any might be. And the king welcomed Igraine in the best manner.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XIX.

How Vlsius appeaches Quene Igraine King Arthurs mother of treason. And how a Knight came and desired to haue the death of his master reuenged.

Right so came Vlsius and said openly that the king and all that were there might heare. We are the falsest lady of the world, and the most traytresse vnto the kings person. Beware Vlsius said King Arthur what thou sayst, for thou speakest a great word. I am well ware said Sir Vlsius what I speak, and heare is my gloue for to proue it vpon any man that saith the contrary that this Quene Igraine is cause of all your damage, and of your great warre that ye haue had, for and shee would haue vttered in the life of King Vcherpendragon of the birth of you and how you were begotten, ye should neuer haue had halfe the mortall warres which ye haue had: for the most part of your great Lords, Barons and gentlemen of your realme knew neuer whose sonne ye were, nor of whom you were begotten, and she that bare you of her body should haue made it knowne openly in excusing of her worship & yours, and in likewise to all the realme, wherefore I proue her false to God and you and to all your realme, and who will say the contrary, I will proue it vpon his body. When spake Igraine and said I am a woman and may not fight, but rather then I should be dishonoured, there would some good man take my quarell. More she said Merlin knoweth well and you Sir Vlsius how King Vcher came to me in the Castle of Wintagill, in the likenesse of my Lord that was dead three houres tofore, and thereby gat a child that night vpon me. And after the thirtieth day King Vcher wedded me, and by his commandement when the child was borne, it was deliuered to Merlin, and nourished by him, and so I saw the child neuer after, nor wote not what is his name, for I neuer knew him yet. And then Sir Vlsius said vnto the Quene. Merlin is more to blame then ye. I wote well said the Quene that I bare a child by my Lord King Vcher, but I wote not where he is become. When Merlin tooke

¶ 3

the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the King by the hand saying. This is your Mother. And therewith Sir Ector bare witnesse how he nourished him by King Vthers commandement. And therewith King Arthur tooke his mother Quene Igraine in both his armes and kissed her, and either wept vpon other. And then the King let make a feast which lasted eight dayes. When on a day there came into the Court a squire on horsebacke, leading a knight before him wounded to the death, & told him there was a knight in the forrest that had reared vp a pavilion by a well side, and hath slaine my master a good knight, and his name was Miles, wherefore I beseech you that my master may be buried and that some good knight may reuenge my masters death. When was in the Court great noise of the knights death, and euery man said his aduise. When came Griflet that was but a squire, and he was but young of the age of King Arthur, so he besought the King for all his seruice that he had done, to giue him the order of knighthood.

CHAP. XX.

How Griflet was made Knight, and how he iusted with a Knight.

Thou art full young and tender of age said King Arthur for to take so high an order vpon thee. Sir said Griflet I beseech you to make me a knight. Sir said Merlin, it were pittie to lose Griflet, for he will be a passing good man when he cometh to age, abiding with you the terme of his life, and if he aduventure his body with yonder knight at the fountaine, he shall be in great perill if euer he come againe, for he is one of the best knights of the world & the strongest man of armes. Well said King Arthur. So at the desire of Griflet, the King made him knight.

Now said King Arthur to Sir Griflet sithen that I haue made thee knight thou must graunt me a gift. What ye will my Lord said Sir Griflet. Thou shalt promise me by the faith of thy body, that when thou hast iusted with the knight at the fountaine, whether it fall that ye be on foot or on horsebacke, that in the same manner ye shall come againe vnto mee with
out

and his Knights of the round Table."

out any question or making any more debate. I will promise you said Griflet as ye desire. When Sir Griflet tooke his horse in great hast, and dressed his shield, and tooke a great spere in his hand, and so he rode a great gallop till he came to the fountaine, and therby he saw a rich pavillion and thereby vnder a cloth stood a fayre horse well sabled, and brydeled, and on a tree a shield of diuers colours, and a great spere. When Sir Griflet smote vpon the shield with the end of his spere, that the shield fell downe to the ground. With that came the knight out of the pavillion, and said. Fayre knight why smote ye downe my shield? For I will iust with you said Sir Griflet. It were better ye did not, said the knight, for ye are but young and late made knight, and your might is nothing to mine. As for that said Sir Griflet, I will iust with you. What is mee both said the knight but syth I must needs I will dresse me thereto, but of whence be ye said the knight? Sir I am of King Arthurs court. So they ran together that Sir Griflets spere all to sheuered, and therewithall he smot Sir Griflet through the shield and the left side, and brake his spere, that the tronchon sticke in his body, that horse and knight fell downe.

CHAP. XXI.

How twelue Knights came from Rome and asked truage of this land of King Arthur, and how King Arthur fought with a Knight.

When the knight saue him lye so on the ground, he alighted and was passing heauy, for he wend he had slaine him, and than he vnlaed his helme and gaue him wind, and so with the tronchon he set him vpon his horse and he tooke him to god, and said he had a mighty heart, and if he might liue he would proue a passing good knight. And so Sir Griflet rode to the court, whereas great mone was made for him. But through good leeches he was healed, and his life saued. Right so came in the court twenty knights, & were aged men, & they came from the Emperour of Rome, and asked of King Arthur truage for this realme, or els the Emperour would destroy him
and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

and his land. Well said King Arthur, ye are messengers, therefore may ye say what ye will, or els ye should die therfore. But this is mine answer, I owe the Emperour no truage, nor none will I send him, but vpon a fayre field I shall giue him my truage, that shall be with a sharpe spere, or els with a sharpe sword, and that shall be within these few dayes by my fathers soule. And therewith the messengees departed passingly wroth and King Arthur was as wroth as they, for in an euill time came they then, for the king was passing wroth for the hurt of Sir Griser. And by and by he commaunded a preuy man of his chamber, that or it be day his best horse and armour with al that belonged to his person, that it be without the Citie or to morrow day. Right so in the morning afore day he mette with his man and his horse, and so mounted by and dressed his shield, and took his spere and hadde his chamberlayne tary there till he came againe. And so king Arthur rode but a soft pace till it was day, and then was he ware of three chorles which chased Merlin, and would haue slaine him. Than King Arthur rode vnto them a good pace and cried to them, flee chorles. Than were they afraide whan they saw a knight & fled away. Where Merlin said King Arthur, here haddest thou bene slaine for all thy craft had I not bene. Nay said Merlin not so for I could saue my selfe if I would, and thou art more nere thy death then I am, for thou goest toward thy death, and God be not thy friend. So as they went thus talking they came to the fountaine, and the rich pavilion by it. Than King Arthur was ware where a knight sate all armed in a chayre. Sir knight said King Arthur, for what cause abidest thou here, that there may no knyght ryde this way but if he do iust with thee, said the king, I reade thee leue that custome said King Arthur. This custome said the knight haue I vsed and will vse maugre who saith nay, & who is grieved with my custome, let him amende it that will. I will amend it said King Arthur. And I shall defend it said the knight. Anone he took his horse and dressed his shield and took a spere, and they met so hard either on others shield that they all to shouered their speres. Therewith King Arthur drew his swerde. Nay not so said the knight,

and his Knights of the Round Table.

knight, it is sayer that we twayne ren more together with sharpe speres. I will well said King Arthur and I had any mo speres. I haue speres ynough said the knight. So there came a squire and brought two good speres and King Arthur took one and he another, so they spurred their horses and came together with al their might, that either brake their speres in their hands. Than King Arthur set hand to his sword. Nay said the knight, ye shall do better, ye are a passing good iuster as euer I met withal, for the lous of the high order of knight-hood let vs iust it once again. I assent me said King Arthur. Anon there were brought two good speres, and every knight gate a spere, and therewith they ran together, that King Arthurs spere all so shouered. But the knight hit him so hard in the middes of the shield, that horse and man fell to the earth wiser with King Arthur was soze angred, and drew out his sword and said. I will assay thee Sir knight on foot, for I haue lost the honour on horsebacke. I will bee on horsebacke said the knight.

Then was King Arthur wroth and dressed his shield toward him with his swerde drawn. Whan the knight sawe that he alighted for him, he thought it was no worshippe to haue a knight at such a pauntage, he to be on horsebacke, and that other on foot, and so alight and dressed him to King Arthur, and there began a strong battaile with many great strokes & so heued with their swerds, that the cantels flew in the fields, and much blood they bled both, so that all the place where they fought was all bloody, and thus they fought long, and rested them, and then they went to battaile agayne and so hurtled together like two wilde bores, that either of them fell to the earth. So at the last they smote together that both their swerds met enen together. But the swerde of the knight smote King Arthurs swerde in two peces, wherfore he was heauy. Than said the knight to the king, thou art in my daunger whether me lyst to saue thee or slei thee, and but thou yeld thee as ouercome and recreant, thou shalt dye. As for death said King Arthur welcome be it when it cometh, but as to yeld me to thee as recreant, I had leuer die than to be so shamed. And therewith

therwithall the king leapt onto Pellynore and toke him by the middell and threwe him downe and rased off his helme. When the knight felt that, he was a dread for hee was a passing big man of might and anone he brought King Arthur under him and rased off his helme, and would have smitten off his head.

CHAP. XXII.

How Merlin saved King Arthur's life, and threw an enchantment vpon King Pellinore and made him to fall on sleepe.

Therewithall came Merlin and said, knight hold thy hand, for and thou sey that knight thou watted this Realme in the greatest damage that euer Realme was in, for this knight is a man of more worth than thou watted of. And by this he said the knight: It is King Arthur. When would he haue slaine him for dread of his wrath, and heaued up his sword, and therewith Merlin cast an enchantment on the knight that he fell to the earth in a great sleepe. When Merlin tooke up King Arthur and rode forth vpon the knights horse. And said King Arthur, what hast thou done Merlin hast thou slaine this good knight by thy craftes, there leued not so worthy a knight as hee was, I had leuer than the King of my land a yeare that he were on liue. Cays ye not said Merlin, for he is wholer then ye, for he is but on sleepe, and will awake within thre houres. A told you said Merlin, what a knight he was, heere had ye beene slaine had I not bene. Also thes knight is not a better knight then he is one, and he shall doe you yett after right good seruice and his name is Pellinore, and he shall haue two sonnes that shall be passing good men, and one of thes shall haue no fellow of prowesse and of good liuing, the one shall be named Perceuaile of Wales, and the other Lamorocke of Orkney, and they shall tell you the name of your own begotten sonne vpon your latter, that shall be the destruction of all this realme.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

How King Arthur by the meanes of Merlin, gate his sword of Excalibur of the lady of the lake.

Right to the king and he departed and went onto an hermitage where as was a good man and a great leache. So the hermit leached all his woundes and gaue good salues, and the king was there thre dayes, and then were his wounds wel amended that he might ride and goe. And so Merlin and he departed, and as they rode King Arthur said, I haue no sword. So forsoe said Merlin, here by is a sword that shall be yours and I may. So they rode til they came to a lake, which was a faire water and abroade and in the middes of the lake King Arthur was ware of an arme clothed in white samite that held a faire sword in the hand. So said Merlin to the king, vnder is the sword that I spake of. And with that they saw a damosell going vpon the lake. What damosell is that said the king. That is the lady of the lake said Merlin, and within that lake is a roch and therein is a faire place as any is on earth, and richly be-temed, and this damosell will come to you anone, and then speak faile to her that she will giue you that sword. Therewith came the damosell to King Arthur and saluted him, and he her againe, damosell said the king, what sword is that which the arme holdeth vnder the water? I would it were mine for I haue no sword. So King Arthur said the damosell of the lake that sword is mine, and it will giue me a gift when I aske it you, yf I shall haue it. Yf my faith said King Arthur I will giue you any gift that you will aske or desire. Well said the damosell, goe ye in to vnder barge and ride your selfe into the sword, and take it and the scabbard with you, and I will aske my gift when I see my time. So King Arthur and Merlin alighted, tyed their hores to two trees, and so they went into the barge. And when they came to the sword that the hand held, King Arthur tooke it up by the handles and tooke it with him. And the arme and the harte went vnder the water, and so came to the land and rode forth. When King Arthur saw a rich paultion, what signifieth

ponder pavilion. That is the knights pavilion that yee fought with last Sir Pellinore, but hee is out, for he is not there, hee hath had a doe with a knight of yours that hight Egglame and they haue foughten together a great while but at the last Egglame fled, and else he had bene dead, and hath chased him to Carlion, and welshall anon meete with him in the high way. It is well said (quoth King Arthur) now haue I a sword, and now will I wage battaile with him and be auenged on him. Sir ye shall not doe so said Merlin, for the knight is weary of fighting and chacing, so that ye shall haue no worship to haue a doe with him, also he wil not lightly be matched of one knight liuing, and therefore my counsaile is that ye let him passe, for he shall doe you good seruice in short time, and his sonnes after his dayes. Also ye shall see that day in short space, that ye shall be right glad to giue him your sister to wife. When I see him said King Arthur I will doe as ye aduise me. When King Arthur looked vpon the sword, and liked it passing well, whether liketh you better said Merlin, the sword or the scabbard? He liketh better the sword said King Arthur. We are more unwise said Merlin, for the scabbard is worth ten of the sword, for while ye haue the scabbard vpon you ye shall lose no blood, be ye neuer so sore wounded, therefore keepe well the scabbard alway with you. So they rode on to Carlion, and by the way they met with Sir Pellinore. But Merlin had done such a craft that Pellinore saw not Arthur, and so he passed by without any words. I maruaile said the king that the knight would not speake. Sir said Merlin, he saw you not, for and he had seen you he had not lightly departed. So they came vnto Carlion whereof the knights were passing glad and when they heard of his adventures, they maruailed that he would leopord his person so alone. But all men of worship said it was mery to be vnder such a chiefetaine that would put his person in adventure as other poore knights did.

How tidings came to King Arthur that King Ryence had overcome eleauen Kings and how he desired King Arthurs beard to purfel his mantell.

The meane while came a messenger hastily from King Ryence of Northwales, and he was king of all Ireland, and of many Isles and this was his message, greeting wel King Arthur in this maner wise, saying that King Ryence had discomfited and overcome eleauen kings, and eueryche of them did him homage, and that was this, they gaue him their beards cleane shapne of as much as there was, wherefore the messenger came for King Arthurs beard, for King Ryence had purchased a mantell with kings beards, and there lacked for one place of the mantell, wherefore he sent for his beard or else hee would enter into his lands and burne and sleie, and neuer leaue till he haue thy head and thy beard. Well said King Arthur, thou hast said thy message which is the most villainous and lewdest message that euer man heard sent to a king. Also thou mayest see my beard full young yet for to make a purfell of, but tell thou the king this. I owe him none homage, ne none of mine eldes, but or it belong he shall doe to me homage on both his knees, or else he shall lose his head by the faith of my body, for this is the most shamefulest message that euer I heard speak of, I see well the king met neuer yet with a worshipful man, but tell him I will haue his head without he doe homage vnto me. When the messenger departed. Now is there any here said King Arthur that knoweth King Ryence. When answered a knight that hight Naram. Sir I know him well, hee is a passing good man of his body as few bene liuing and a passing proude man, and, Sir, doubt ye not hee wil make warr on you with a mighty puissance. Well said King Arthur to the knight, I shall ordayne for him, and that shall he finde.

How all the children were sent for, that were borne vpon May day, and how *Mordred* was saued.

Then King Arthur let send for all the children that were borne on May day, begotten of Lords and barons of Landes. For Merlin told King Arthur that he that should bestroy him should be borne on May day, wherefore he sent for them all vpon paine of death. And so therewere found many Lords sons and all were sent vnto the King, and so was *Mordred* sent by King Lores wife, and all were put in a shippe to the sea, and some were four weeks olde and some lesse. And so by fortune the shippe droue vnto a Castle and was all to riven, and destroyed the most part saue that *Mordred* was cast vp, and a good man found him, and nourished him til he was foureteene yeres old, and then he brought him to the Court, as it is rehearsed afterward toward the end of the death of King Arthur. So many Lords and Barons of this realme were sore displeased, because that their children wer so lost, and many put it on the wit of Merlin more then on King Arthur. So what for drede, and what for loue they held their peace. But when the messenger came to King Ryence, then was he wood out of measure for anger, and purueied him for a great host, as it is rehearsed afterward in the booke of Balinle sauege that followeth next after, and how by aduenture Balin gate the sword.

Of a damosel which came gyrd with a sword for to finde a man of such vertue to draw it out of the scabbard.

After the death of King Vtherpendragon reigneth King Arthur his sonne, which had great warre in his dayes for to get all England into his hands, for there were many Kings at that time within the realme of England, in Wales, in Scotland, and in Cornewale. So it besel vpon a time when King Arthur was at London, there came a knight that brought

the King tydings how that King Ryence of Northwales had reared a great number of people, and were entred into the land and bent and slew the Kings true liege people. If that be true said King Arthur, it were great shame vnto mine estate, but that he were mightily withstanden. It is troth said the knight, for I saw the host my selfe. Then King Arthur let make a crye, that all the Lords, knightes, and gentlemen of armes should draw vnto a Castle that was called in those dayes Camelot, and there the King would let make a counsaile generall, and a great Justes. So when the King was comen thither with all his baronage, and lodged as them seemed best, there came a damosell which was sent on message from the great Lady Lyle of Auelyon. And when she came before King Arthur she told him from whom she came, and how she was sent on message vnto him for these causes, and she let her mantle fall that was richly fured, and then was she girded with a noble sword, wherof she said she had great maruaile and said, Damosell for what cause are you gyrd with that sword it becometh you not. Now shall I tell you said the damosell, This sword that I am gyrd withall doth me great sorrow and encombzance, for I may not be deliuered of this sword, but by a good knight, and he must be a passing good man of his hands and of his deedes, and without vi-lany or trechery: If I may finde such a knight that hath all these vertues, he may draw out this sword of the scabbard. For I haue bene at King Ryence, for it was told that there were passing good knightes, and he and all his knightes haue asayed it, and none can speede.

This is a great maruaile said King Arthur, and it be sothe, I will my selfe assay to draw out the sword, not presuming vpon my selfe that I am the best knight, but that I will beginne to draw at your sword, in giuing exaple to all the Barons, that they shall assay euery one after other when I haue assayed. Then King Arthur took the sword by the scabbard and by the girdel and pulled at it egerly but the sword would not out. Sir said the damosell, ye neede not to pull halfe so hard, for he that shall pul it out, shall doe it with little nught. We say well said King Arthur, now assay ye, all my Barons, but beware ye be not deli-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

led with shame, trechery ne guile, then it will not auaille said the damosell, for he must be a cleane knight without villany, and of gentell streame of father side and mother side. Most of all the Barons of the round table that were there at that time assayed all by rowe, but none might speede, wherefore the damosell made great sorow out of measure and said. Alas I wend in this Court had bene the best knights without trechery or treason. By my faith said King Arthur here are good knights as I deeme any bene in the world, but their grace is not to helpe you, wherefore I am greatly displeased.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Balin arayed like a poore man pulled out the sword, which afterward was cause of his death.

It happened so at that time that there was a poore knight with King Arthur, that had bene prisoner with him halfe a yere and moze for sleping of a knight, which was cotten to King Arthur. This knight was named Balin le sauage, and by good meanes of the Barons hee was deliuered out of prison for hee was a good man named of his body, and hee was borne in Northumberland. And so he went priuily into the Court, and saw this aduenture whereof his heart raysed, and would as say it as other knights did, but for because he was poore and poorely arayed, he put him not farr in presse. But in his heart he was fully assured to doe as well (if his grace happened him) as any knight that was there. And as that damosell took her leaue of King Arthur and al the Barons, this knight Balin called vnto her and said, damosell, I pray you of your courtesie to suffer me as well to assay as these Lords though I be poorely cloathed, in mine heart me seemeth I am fully assured as some of these other Lords, and me seemeth in my heart to speede right well. The damosell beheld the poore knight and saw he was a likely man, but because of his poore aray she thought he should be of no worshippe without villany or trechery. And then she said to the knight Balin. Sir it is no nede to put me to any moze paine or labour, for it bescometh not you to speede, there

and his Knights of the round Table.

as other haue failed. Ah faire damosell said Balin, worshippe and good faches and good deedes are not all onely in rayment, but manhood and worship is hid within mans person, and many a worshipfull knight is not knowen vnto all people, and therefore worship and hardinesse is not in rayment and clothing. By God said the damosell ye say troth, therefore ye shall assay to doe what ye may. When Balin tooke the sword by the girdell and scabbard and drew it out easily and when hee looked vpon the sword, it pleased him much. When had the king and all the Barons great maruaile that Balin had done that aduenture, and many knights had great spite at Balin. Truly said the damosell, this is a passing good knight, and the best man that euer I found and most of worship without treason, trechery, or villany, and many maruailes shall he atcheaue. Now gentle and courteous knight said the damosell giue mee the sword againe. Nay said Balin, for this sword will I keepe but it be taken from me by force. Well said the damosell, ye are not wise to keepe the sword from me, for ye shall sleie with the sword, the best friend that ye haue, and the man that ye most loue in this world, and the sword shall be your destruction. I shall take the aduenture said Balin that God will ordaine to me, but the sword ye shall not haue at this time by the faith of my body.

Ye shall repent it within a short time said the damosell, for I would haue the sword moze for your auaille then for mine, for I am passing heauy for your sake, for ye will not beleue that the sword shall be your destruction, and that is as great pittie as euer I knew. With that the damosell departed, making the greatest sorow that might be. Anon after Balin sent for his horse and his armour and so would depart fro the Court and tooke his leaue of King Arthur. Nay said the king, I suppose ye will not depart so lightly fro this fellowship. I beleue ye are displeased that I haue shewed you unkindnesse, blame me the lesse for I was misinformed against you, but I wend you had not bene such a knight as ye are of worship and prowesse, and if ye will abide in this Court with my good knights. I shall so auance you that ye shall be well pleased. God thanke you

your highnesse said Balin, for your bountie and highnesse may no man praise halfe to the value, but as now at this time I must needs depart, beseeching you alway of your good grace. Cruely said King Arthur, I am right wroth for your departing, I beseech you faire Knight that ye wil not tarry long, and ye shall be right welcome to me and to all my Barons, and I shall amend all that is amisse and that I haue done against you. God thanke your Lordship said Balin, and therewith made him ready to depart. When the most part of the knights of the round table said that Balin did not this aduenture all onely by might but by witchcraft.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the Ladie of the Lake demanded the Knights head that had wonne the sword, or the maydens head.

The meane while that this knight was making him ready to depart there came into the Court a Lady which hight the Lady of the Lake, and she came on horsebacke richly be-furne, and saluted King Arthur and there she asked him a gift that he had promised her when she gaue him the sword.

What is sooth said King Arthur, a gift I promised you, but I haue forgotten the name of the sword which ye gaue me. The name of it said the Lady is Excalibur, that is as much to say as cutte-steel. So say well said King Arthur, aske what ye will, and ye shall haue it, if it be in my power to giue it. Well said the Lady of the Lake, I aske the head of the knight that hath wonne the sword, or else the damosels head that brought it and though I haue both their heads I force not, for he slew my brother a full good knight and a true, & that gentlewoman was cause of my fathers death. Cruely said King Arthur, I may not graunt you neither of their heades with my worshippe therefore aske what ye will else and I shall fulfill your desire. I will aske none other thing of you said the Lady. When Balin was redy to depart he saw the Lady of the Lake there, by whose meanes was slaine his owne mother, and he had sought her thre yeeres. And when it was told him that she demanded

his

his head of King Arthur, he went strait to her and said. Cull be ye found ye would haue my head, and therefore ye shall loose yours, and with his sword lightly he smote of her head, in the presence of King Arthur. Alas for shame said the king why haue you done so, you haue shamed me and all my Court, for this was a Lady that I was much beholden vnto, and hither she came vnder my safe conduits, I shall neuer forgive you that trespass. So said Balin me forthinketh much of your displeasure, for this Lady was the truest Lady liuing, and by her enchaunement and witchcraft she hath bene the destroy-er of many good knights, and she was cause that my mother was hent through her falsehood and trechery. What cause soeuer ye had sayd King Arthur, ye should haue forborne her in my presence, therefore thinke not the contrary ye shall repent it, for such another despite had I neuer in my Court afore, ther-fore with draw you out of my Court in all the haste ye may. Then Balin tooke vp the head of the Lady and bare it with him to his hostre, and there he met with his squire that was sorry he had displeased King Arthur. And so they rode forth out of the towne. So said Balin we must here depart, take you this head and bare it to my friends, and tell them how I haue sped and tel my friends in Northumberland that my most foe is dead, also tell them how I am out of prison, and also what ad-uenture did befall me at the getting of this sword. Alas said the squire ye are greatly to blame for to displease King Ar-thur. As for that said Balin I will hit me in all the haste I may to make with Rience, and destroy him, or else to die ther-fore, and if it may happen me to winne him, then will King Arthur be my good and gracious Lord. Where shall I meete with you said the squire. In King Arthurs Court said Balin. So his squire and he departed at that time. When King Ar-thur and all the Court made great dole, and had great shame of the death of the Lady of the Lake. When the king full richly buried her.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XXIX

How Merlin told the aduerture of the damosell.

AT that time there was in King Archurs Court a Knight that was the Kings sonne of Ireland, and his name was Lanceor, and he was a proude Knight, and hee counted himselfe one of the best Knights of the Court, and he had great spite at Balin for the atcheaunting of the sword that any should be accounted of more prowesse then he was, and he asked King Arthur if he would giue him leaue to ride after Balin and to reuenge the dispite that he hath done. Woe your best said King Arthur, for I am right wroth with Balin, I would hee were quite of the dispite that he hath done to me and to my Court. When this Lanceor went to his hostrie to make him redy. In the meane while came Merlin to King Archurs Court, and there it was told him of the aduerture of the sword, and of the Lady of the Lake. Now shall I say to you Merlin, this damosell that here standeth that brought the sword vnto your Court, I shall tel you the cause of her coming, she is the falsest damosell that liueth. Say not so said they, she hath a brother a passing good Knight of prowesse and a full true man, and this damosell loued an other that held her to paramour, and this good Knight her brother met with the Knight that held her to paramour, and slew him by force of his hands. When this false damosell vnderstood this, she went to the Lady Lile of Auelyon, and besought her of helpe to be auenged on her brother.

CHAP. XXX

How Balin was pursued by Sir Lanceor a Knight of Ireland, and how Balin slew him.

AND so this Lady Lile of Auelion tooke her this sword which she brought with her, and told that there should no man draw it out of the scabbard but if he were one of the best Knights of this realme, and he should be hardy and full of prowesse, and with that sword, he should slea her brother. This was

and his Knights of the round Table.

the cause that the damosell came into this Court. I know it as well as ye doe said Merlin, would to God she had neuer come into this Court, for she came neuer in fellowship of worshipp to doe good, but alway great harme, and that Knight which hath atcheaued the sword, shall be destroyed by that sword, wherefore it shall be great damage, for there is not liuing a Knight of more prowesse then he is, and he shall doe vnto you my Lord King Arthur great honour and kindnesse, and great pittie it is for he shall not endure but a while, and as for his strength and hardnesse I know not his match liuing. So the Knight of Ireland armed him at all points, and dressed his shield on his shoulder and mounted by on horsebacke and tooke his speare in his hand & rode after as fast as his horse could run, and within a little space on a mountaine he had a sight of Balin, and with a loude voice he cried to him and said. Abide Knight, for ye shall abide whether ye will or will not, and the shield that is to fore you shall not helpe you.

When Balin heard that noyse, he turned his horse sterly and said. Faire Knight what will you with me, will yee iust with me? Yea said the Irish Knight, therefore am I come after you. Peraduerture said Balin, it had bene better to haue holden you at home, for many a man weneth to put his enemy to a rebuke, and often it falleth to himselfe. Of what Court be ye sent fro said Balin. I am come fro the Court of King Arthur said the Knight of Ireland, that am come hither for to reuenge the despite that ye haue done this day to King Arthur and to his Court.

Well said Balin, I see well I must haue adoe with you, which me forethinketh for to greiue King Arthur or any of his Knights, and your quarell is full simple to me said Balin, for the Lady that is dead did great damage, and else I would haue bene as loth as any Knight that liueth for to slea a Lady. Pak you ready said the Knight Lanceor, and dresse you to me, for one of vs shall abide in the field. When they tooke their speares in all the haste they might, and came together as fast as their horses might driue, and the Kings sonne of Ireland smote Balin vpon his shield, that his speare went all to shivers. And Ba-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

He smote him with such a might, that it went through his shield and perished the halberke, and so pierced through his body and the horse troupe, and Balin anon turned his horse sterly, and drew out his sword and wist not that he had slaine him, and then he saw him lye as a dead corpe.

CHAP. XXXI.

How a damosell which was in loue with *Lanceor* slew her selfe for his loue, and how *Balin* met with his brother *Balan*.

Then he looked by him and was ware of a damosell that came riding as fast as her horse might gallop vpon a fair palfray. And when she espied that Sir *Lanceor* was slaine then she made sorrow out of measure and said. O Balin two bodyes haste thou slayne and one heart and two hearts in one body, and two soules thou hast lost. And therewith she tooke the sword from her loue that lay dead, and as she tooke it she fell to the ground, in a swoone and when she arose she made great dole out of measure, which sorrow græued Balin passing sore, and went to her for to haue taken the sword out of her hands, but she held it so fast, that in no wise he might take the sword out of her hands, but if he should haue hurt her, and sodainly she set the point of the sword to the ground and runne her selfe through the body. And when Balin saw her dead, he was passing heauy in his heart and ashamed that so faire a damosell had destroyed her selfe for the great loue she had vnto Sir *Lanceor*. Alas said Balin, me repenteth sore the death of this knight for the loue of this damosell, for there was much true loue betwene them both, and for sorrow might no longer behold them, but turned his horse and looked toward a forrest, and there he espied the armes of his brother *Balan*. And when they were met, they put off their helmes and kissed together, and wept for ioye and pittie. When said Balan, I wene little to haue met with you at this sodaine aduenture, I am right glad of your deliuerance out of your dolorous prisoning, for a man told me in the Castle of four stones that ye were deliuered, and that man had sene you in King *Arthurs* Court, and therefore I came hither

and his Knights of the round Table.

hither into this country, for here I supposed to finde you. And anon *Balin* told vnto his brother of all his aduentures of the sword and of the death of the Lady of the Lake, and how King *Arthur* was displeased with him, wherefore he sent this knight after me that lieth here dead, and the death of this damosell greiueth me full sore. So doth it me said Balan but ye must take the aduenture that God will ordaine vnto you. Truly said Balin, I am right heauy of minde that my Lord King *Arthur* is displeased with me, for he is the most worshipfullest knight that reigneth now on the earth, and his loue I will get or else I will put my life in aduenture, for King *Ryence* of *Northwales* lieth at a siege at the Castle *Terrabill*, and thither will wee draw in al haste, to proue our worship and prouesse vpon him. I will well said Balan that we doe so, and we will helpe each other as brethren ought to doe.

CHAP. XXXII.

How a dwarfe reproveth *Balin* for the death of *Lanceor*, and how King *Marke* of *Cornewayle* found them, and made a tombe ouer them.

Brother said Balin, let us goe hence and well bee we met. The meane while as they talked there came a dwarfe from the Citie of *Camelot* on horsebacke as fast as hee might and found the dead bodyes, wherefore he made great dole, and drew his haire for sorrow and said which of you knights hath done this dede? wherby asked thou it said Balin. For I would wite said the dwarfe. It was I said Balin that slew this knight in my defence, for hither came he to chace me, and either I must slay him or he me, and this damosell slew her selfe for his loue, which me sore repenteth, and for her sake I shall owe all women the better loue and fauour. Alas said the dwarfe, thou haste done great damage vnto thy selfe, for this knight that is here dead was one of the most valiantest men that liued and trust thou well Balin that the kinne of this knight will chace thee through the world till they haue slaine thee. As for that said Balin, I feare it not greatly, but I am right heauy of minde

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

I haue displeased my soueraigne Lord King Arthur for the death of this knight. So, as they talked together there came a King of Cornwalle riding by them which was named King Marke, and when he saw these two bodies dead and understood how they were dead by one of the two knights aboue said, then made King Marke great sorrow for the true loue that was betwene them, and said. I wil not depart from hence til I haue on this earth made a tombe. And there he pight his pavilions, and sought thzough all the countrie to finde a tombe. And in a Church they found one was rich and faire, and then the King let put them both in the earth, and put the tombe on them, and wrote both their names on the tombe. Here lieth Lancelot the Kings sonne of Ireland that at his owne request was slayne by the hands of Balin, and how his Lady Colombe and par amour slew her selfe with her lones sword for dole and sorow.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Merlin prophesied that two of the best Knights of the world should fight there, which were Sir Lancelot and Sir Tristram.

The meane while as this was in doing, came Merlin vnto King Marke, seeing all his doing said. Here in this place shall be the greatest battaile betwene two knights that euer was or euer shall be, and the truest louers, and yet none of them shall sleve other, and there Merlin wrote their names vpon the tombe with letters of gold that should fight in that place, whose names were Lancelot du lake and Tristram de lianes. Then art a maruailous man said King Marke vnto Merlin, that speakest of such maruailles, thou art a boistrous fellow and an unlikely to tell of such deedes, what is thy name said King Marke. at this time said Merlin I will not tell but at that time when Sir Tristram shall be taken with his soueraigne Lady, then ye shall knowe and heare my name, and at that time ye shall heare tydings that shall not please you. When said Merlin to Balin, thou hast done thy selfe great hurt because thou did not saue this Lady that slew herselfe, that might haue saued her if thou

and his Knights of the round Table.

thou had would. By the faith of my body said Balin, I could not nor might not saue her, for she slew her selfe sodainely. He repenteth said Merlin because of the death of that Lady, thou shalt strike a stroke the most dolorous that euer man stroke, except the stroke of our Lord, for thou shalt hurt the truest knight and the man of the most worship that now lieth and through that stroke three kingdomes shall be in great pouertie, miserie and wretchednesse twelue yeeres and the knight shall not be whole of that wound in many yeeres. And then Merlin toke his leaue of Balin. When said Balin, if I will that it were sooth that ye say, I should doe such a perillous dede as that I would slay my selfe to make thee a lyer. And therewith anon Merlin sodainly banished away. When Balin and his brother toke their leaue of King Marke.

First said the King tel me your name. Sir said Balin, ye may see he beareth two swords thereby ye may call him the knight with the two swords. And so departed King Marke and rode to Camelot to King Arthur, and Balin and his brother took the way to King Rienc, and as they rode together they met with Merlin disguised, but they knew him not. Whether ride ye said Merlin. We haue little to doe said the two knights for to tell thee, but what is thy name said Balin. As at this time said Merlin I will not tell thee. It is full euil sene said the two knights, that thou art a true man when thou wilt not tell thy name. As for that said Merlin, be it as it may, but I can tel you wheresoe ye ride this way, for to meete King Rienc, but if will not auaille you without you haue my counsaile. Ah said Balin, ye are Merlin. We wil be ruled by your counsaile. Come on said Merlin ye shall haue great worship and loke that ye doe knightly, for ye shall haue great neede. As for that said Balin, dead ye not, we will doe what we may.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Balin and his brother by the counsaile of Merlin toke King Rienc and brought him vnto King Arthur.

Then Merlin lodged them in a wood amongst leaues beside the high way, and took off the bridles of their horses, and put

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

put them to grasse, and laid them downe to rest them till it was nigh midnight. then Merlin had them arise and make them ready, for the king was nigh them that was stolen away from his hoast with thre score hozes of his best knights and twenty of them rode tofore to warn the Lady de Vauc that the king was comming, for that night king Rience should haue layen with her. Which is the king said Balin. Abide said Merlin, here in a straight way ye shal mite with him. And therewith he shewed Balin and his brother where he rode. Anone Balin and his brother met with the king, and smote him downe, and wounded him fierly, and laid him to the ground, and ther they stode on the right hand and on the left, and slew more then fortie of his men, and the remnant fled. When went they againe to king Rience, and would haue slaine him, if he had not yelded him to their grace. When said the king againe. knights full of prowesse slay me not for by my life ye may winne and by my death yee shal winne nothing. When said these two knights ye say sooth and troth. And so laid him on an horse litter. With that Merlin was vanished & came to king Arthur afore hand, & told him how his most enemy was taken and disconfited. By whom said king Arthur. By two knights said Merlin that would please your worship, and to morrow ye shall know what they be. Anone after came the knight with the two swords and Balin his brother, and brought with them king Rience, and there deliuered him to the porters and charged them with him, and so they two returned againe in the springing of the day. King Arthur came so king Rience and said. Sir king, you are welcom, by what adventure come ye hither. Sir said king Rience, I came hither by an hard adventure. And so when you said, king Arthur. Sir said Rience the knight with the two swords and his brother which are two maruillous knights of prowesse, I know them not said king Arthur, but much I am beholden vnto them. As said Merlin I shall tell you it is Balin that atcheued the sword and his brother Balan a good knight, there liueth not a better in prowesse and worthynesse and it shal be the greatest dole of him that euer was of knight, for he shal not long endure. Alas said king Arthur that is great pittie, for I am greatly beholden vnto

and his Knights of the round Table.

unto him, and I haue full euill deserued it vnto him for his kindnesse. As said Merlin, he shall doe much more for you and that shall ye know or it be long. But Sir are ye purueyed said Merlin, for to morrow the hoast of Nero king Rience brother will set vpon you afore diner with a mighty hoast, therefore make you ready, for I will depart from you.

CHAP. XXXV.

How King Arthur had a battaille against Nero and King Lot of Orkeney, and how King Lot was deceiued by Merlin, and how twelue Kings were slaine.

Then king Arthur made ready his hoast in ten battailes, and Nero was ready in the field afore the Castle Terra-bil with a nightie hoast, for hee had ten battailes with much more people than king Arthur had. So Nero himselfe had the vaward with the most party of his people, and Merlin came to king Lot of the yle of the Orkeney, and held him with a tale of prophecie till Nero and his people were destroyed. And there Sir Kay the Seneschall did passing well, that all the dayes of his life he had thereof worship. And Sir Heris de Reuel did maruailous deedes with king Arthur, and king Arthur slew that day twentie knights, and maimed fortie. At that time came in the knight with the two swords and his brother Balin, but they two did so maruelously that the king & al the knights had great maruaille thereof, and all that beheld them said that they were sent from heauen as angels, or as diuels from hell, and king Arthur said himselfe that they were the best knights that euer he saw, for they gaue such strokes that al men had wonder of them. In the meane while came one to king Lot and told him that while he taried there, Nero was destroyed and slaine with al his people. Alas I am shamed said king Lot for though my default is slaine many a worshipfull man, for if wee had bene together, there had bene no hoast vnder heauen that had bene able to match vs. This sayter with his prophecie hath mocked me. All that did Merlin, for he knew well that if king Lot had bene there with his body at the first battaile, king Arthur

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

thur and all his people should have bene destroyed and slaine. And Merlin knew wel that one of the Kings should be dead that day, and loth was Merlin that any of them both should be slaine. But of the twaine he had leuer King Lot had bene slaine then King Arthur.

Now what is best to doe said King Lot, whether is it better for to treat with King Arthur or to fight, for the most part of our people are slaine and destroyed. Sir said a knight, set upon King Arthur, for he and his men are weary of fighting, and we be fresh. As for me said King Lot, I would that every knight should doe his part as I will doe mine. And then they advanced their baners and smote together, and al to shivered their spears, and King Arthurs knights with the helpe of the knight with the two swords and his brother Balin put King Lot and his host to the worst, but alway King Lot held him in the foremost and did great deedes of armes, for all his host was borne up by his hands, for he abode and withstood all knights. Alas he might not euer endure, the which was great pittie that so worthy a knight as he was should be overmatched, and that of late time afore had bene a knight of King Arthurs, and had wedded King Arthurs sister, and because King Arthur lay by King Lots wife and begat upon her Mordred, therefore King Lot held against King Arthur. So there was a knight that was called the knight with the stranger beast, and at that time his right name was Pellinore, which was a good man of prowess, and he smote a mightie stroke at King Lot as he fought with his enemies, and he failed of his stroke, and smote the horse necke that he fell to the ground with King Lot, and therewith anone Sir Pellinore smote him a great stroke through the helme and bewed him to the bowels. And then all the host of Orkeney fled for the death of King Lot and there was slaine many a more sonne. But King Pellinore bare the witt of the death of King Lot, wherefore Sir Gawaine revenged the death of his father the tenth yeare after he was made knight, and slew King Pellinore with his owne hands. Also there was slaine at the battaile twelve kings on King Lot side with Nero, and all were buried in the Church of Saint Steuens in Camelot, and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and the remnant of knights & of other were buried in a great church.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the entertainment of twelve Kings, and of the prophesie of Merlin, and how Balin should give the dolorous stroke.

At the entertainment came King Lots wife Morgause with her four sonnes, Gawayne, Agravaine, Gaheris and Gareth. Also there came thither King Vrience Sir Ewaynes father, and Morgan le fay his wife, that was King Arthurs sister. All these came to the entertainment. But of all these twelve knights King Arthur let make the tombe of King Lot passing richly, and his tombe stood by it selfe apart, and then King Arthur let make twelve images of latyn and of copar, and made them to be overgilt with fine gold, in signe and token of the twelve kings, and every image held a taper of waue, which brennt night and day. And King Arthur was made in signe of a figure standing about them all with a sword drawn in his hand. And all the twelve figures had countenance like unto men that were overcomen. All this made Merlin by his subtil craft, and there he said to King Arthur. When I am dead, my bones shal burne no longer, and soone after this my bones shal come out of the holy Sanctgreall shal come among you and shal also be atcheued. Also hee told unto King Arthur how Balin the worshipfull knight should give the dolorous stroke, whereof shall fall great vengeance. And where is Balin said King Arthur. And Sir Pellinore said Merlin, he will meete with you anon, and as for Balin he will not be long from you, but the other brother Balan will depart, and ye shall see him no more. Now by my faith said King Arthur, they are two marvellous knights and namely Balin passeth of prowess farre of any knight that euer I found, for I am much beholden unto him, would to God that he would abide still with me. Sir said Merlin looke that ye keepe well the scabbard of Excalibur, for as I told you ye shall lose no blood as long as ye haue the scabbard upon you, though ye haue as many wounds upon your body as

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

ye may haue. So afterward by great trust King Arthur be-
took the scabbard to Morgan le fay his sister and the loue-
ly other knight better then her husband King Vrience or King
Archur, and she would haue had King Arthur slaine, and there-
fore she let make an other scabbard like it by enchantement
and gaue the scabbard of Chealbur to her loue, a knight na-
med Sir Accolon, which after had nigh slaine King Arthur.
After this Merlin told unto King Arthur of the scabbard, that
there should be a great battaile betwix Balinbury, and that
Mordred his owne sonne should be agaynst him. Also he told
him that Baldernegus was his cosen, and germaine by King
Vrience.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Now a sorrowfull Knight came tofore King Arthur, what how
blisefac him, and how that Knight was slaine by a knight
multible.

Within a day or two King Arthur was contented like,
and he let pitch his pavilion in a meadow, and there he
laid him downe on a pallet to sleepe, but he might not rest.
Right so he heard a great noise of a horse, and there with the
king looked out at the porch of the pavilion, and saw a
knight comming by him making great sorrow. Ahide saide
Sir, said King Arthur, and tell me wherefore thou makest this
sorrow. He may little amend it said the knight, and so passed
forth vnto the Castle of Pellot. Anone after there came Balin,
and when he saw King Arthur, anone he alighted off his horse
and came to the king on foot, and saluted him. By my head
said King Arthur ye be welcome. Sir, right now came riding
this way a knight making great sorrow, and I can not tel for
what cause, wherefore I would desire you of your courtesie
and gentlenesse that ye will fetch that knight agayne, either
by force, or else by his good will. I will doe more for your Lord-
ship then that said Balin, and so rode more then a pace, and
found the knight with a damosell in a forrest and said. Sir
knight ye must come with me vnto my Lord King Arthur, for

and his Knights of the round Table.

to tell him the cause of your sorrow. What will I not saide the
knight, for it would scathme greatly and doe you non auaille.
Sir said Balin pray you make you ready for ye must needs go
with me, or else I must fight with you, and bring you by force,
and that were I loth to doe. Will ye be my warrant saide the
knight to Balin if I goe with you. Yea said Balin, or else I will
ble the therefor. And so he made him ready to goe with the good
knight Balin, and left there the damosell. And as they were a-
gaine King Archurs pavilion there came one in visble, and smote
this knight that went with Balin through out the body with a
speare.

Alas said the knight I am slaine vnder your conduct and
garde with a traitrous knight called Garlon, therefore take
my horse the which is better then yours and ride to the damosell
and follow the quest that I was in where as shee will leade you,
and revenge my death when ye may best. What shall I doe
said Balin, and thereof I make a vowe to you by my knight-
hood. And so he departed from this knight making great sor-
row. So King Arthur, let burie this knight richly, and made
a mention vpon the tombe, how there was slaine Herlaus le
berbeus, and also how the trechery was done by the knight
Garlon. But ouer the damosell bare the truncheon of the speare,
with her that Sir Herlaus was slaine withall.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Balin and the damosell met with a Knight that was in
likewise slaine, and how the damosell bled for the custome of
Castle.

So Balin and the damosell rode into a forrest and there met
with a knight that had bene on hunting, and that knight
asked Balin for what cause he made so great sorrow. He li-
ued not to tell you said Balin. How said the knight and I were ar-
med as ye be, I would fight with you. What should little neede
said Balin, for I am not afraid to tell it you, and told him al the
cause how it was. Ah said the knight, is this all, here I en-
sure you by the faith of my body neuer to depart from you as
long

The Historie of Prince Arthur

long as my life lasteth. And so they went to the hostery and armed him, and so rode forth with Balin. And as they came by an hermitage fast by a churchyard there came the knight Garlon inuisible, and smote this good knight Perin de mounbelyard with a speare through the body. Alas said the knight, I am slaine by this traitour knight that rideth inuisible. Alas said Balin, it is not the first despite that he hath done to me. And there the hermit and Balin buried the knight vnder a rich stone and a tombe royall. And on the morrow they found letters of gold written how Sir Gawayne shall reuenge King Lots death his father vpon King Pellinore. And anone after this Balin and the damosell rode till they came to a Castle, and there Balin alighted, and he and the damosell went to haue gone into the Castle. And anone as Balin came within the Castle gate the portecolis fel downe at his backe, and there came many men about the damosell, and would haue slaine her. And when Balin saw that, was sore grieved, because he might not helpe the damosell. And then he went vpon the walles and leapt ouer into the ditch and hurt him not, and anon he pulled out his sword and would haue foughten with them. And they all said that they would not fight with him, for they did nothing but the old custom of the Castle, and told him how their Lady was sicke, and had layen many yeares, and she might not be whole but if she had a silver dish full of blood of a cleane maide and a kings daughter, and therefore the custome of this Castle is, that there shall non passe this way but that she shall blæde of her blood a silver dish full. Well said Balin, she shall blæde as much as she may blæde, but I will not that she leese her life while my life lasteth. And so Balin made her to blæde by her good will. But her blood helped not the Lady. And so he and she rested there all that night, and had there right good cheare, and on the morrow they passed on their way. And as it telleth afterward in the sangreall that Sir Perciualles Uster helped that Lady with her blood wherof she died.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Balin met with the knight, armed Garlon at a feast, and how he slew him, to haue his blood to heale therewith the sonne of his host.

Then they rode three or foure dayes and neuer met with adventure, and by happe they were lodged with a gentleman that was a rich man and well at ease. And as they sate at their supper Balin heard one complaine grievously by him in a chaire. What noyse is this said Balin. Forsooth said his host I will tell you, I was but late at a iusting, and there I iust with a knight that is brother vnto King Pellam, and twice I smote him downe, and then he promised to quit me on my best friend, and so he wounded my sonne that cannot be whole til I haue o' that knights blood, and he rydeth alway inuisible, but I know not his name. Ah said Balin I know that knight, his name is Garlon, he hath slaine two knights of mine in the same maner, therefore I had rather meet with that knight then all the gold in this realme for the despite that he hath done mee. Well said his host, I shall tell you, King Pellam of Liffenise hath made a crie in all this country a great feast that shalbee within twentie dayes, and no knight may come there, but if he bring his wife with him or his paramour, and that knight your enemye and mine yet shall see that day. When I behote you said Balin part of his blood to heale your sonne withal. Well will be forward to morrow said his host. So on the morrow they rode all three toward Pellam, and had fiftene dayes iourney or they came thither, and that same day began the great feast, and they alight and stabled their horses and went into the Castle, but Balins host might not be let in, because he had no Lady. When was Balin wel receiued and brought to a chamber and unarmed him, and there were brought him robes to his pleasure, and would haue had Balin leaue his sword behinde him. Nay said Balin that will I not doe, for it is the custome of my cuntry a knight alway to keepe his weapon with him, and that custome will I keepe or else I will depart as I came.

Then

The Historie of Prince Arthur

When they gaue him leaue to were his sword And so he went to the Castle, and was set among knights of worship, and his Lady afoze him. Some Balin asked a knight, is there not a knight in this Court whose name is Garlon? wonder he saith saith the knight; he with that blacke face, he is the marvellous knight that is now liuing, for he destroyeth may good knights, for he goeth invincible.

As wel said Balin is that he, then Balin aduised him long, at day him here I shall not leave, and if I leave him none peraventure I shall never more see him againe at such a tetter, and much harme he will doe and he live. Wherewith this Garlon espied that this Balin beheld him, and then he came and smote Balin on the face with the backe of his hand and saith, might why beholdest thou me so, for I have therefore eate thy meate and doe that thou came for. Thou saist soth said Balin, this is not the first despite that thou hast done me, and therefore I will doe that I came for, and rose up fierly and claued his head to the shoulders. Give me the francheon said Balin to his Lady wherewith he slew your knight. Some she gaue it him, for alway she bare that francheon with her, and therewith Balin smote him through the body, and said openly, with that francheon thou hast slaine a good knight and now it sticketh in thy body. And then Balin called to him his host saying, now may ye fetch blood inough for to deale your sonne withall.

CHAP. XL.

How Balin fought with King Pellam, and how his sword brake, and how he gate a speare, wherewith he smote the dolorous stroke.

ADone all the knights rose up from the table for to set on Balin. And King Pellam himselfe arose up fierly and said, knight why hast thou slaine my brother, thou shalt dye therefore or thou depart. Well said Balin, then doe it your selfe. Yes said King Pellam, there shall no man haue adoe with thee but my selfe for the loue of my brother. Then King Pellam caught in his hand a grim weapon and smote egerly at Balin but

and his knight of the round table

he smote him with his hand and the stroke, and the sword brake in his hand. And King Pellam was wroth, and he gat him a chamber for to take some weapon, and he gat him a timber, and no weapon could he finde, and King Pellam followed him, and at the last he entred into a wood, and he was marvellously well night and day, and a knight of the round table, who the night that night he thought he was being there, and therewith he gat a cleane gold sword, and a spear of blue that was up the table, and upon the table stood a marvellous speare of auncle wrought. And when Balin saw the speare, he gat it in his hand and turned him to King Pellam, and smote him passingly soe with that speare that King Pellam fell downe dead there, and therewith the castle was and with brake, and fell to the earth, and Balin fel downe so that he might not stir hand nor foot. And so the most part of the Castle that was fallen downe through that dolorous stroke lay upon King Pellam and Balin they dyed.

Now I would I might say, of the death of King Pellam and of the death of Balin.

CHAP. XLII.

How Balin was deliuered by Merlin and saved a knight that would haue slaine himselfe for loue.

When Merlin came thither he took up Balin, and gat him a good horse for his horse was dead and bad him ride out of that country. I would haue my damosell, said Balin. Yes said Merlin, where she lieth dead. And King Pellam lay so many yeeres soe wounded and might neuer be whole till Galahad the haue found healed him in the quest of the Sancgreal, for in that place was part of the blood of our Lord Jesus Christ that Joseph of Arimathea brought into this land, and there himselfe lay in that place. And that was the same place that Longinus smote our Lord to the heart, and King Pellam was hurt of Joseph himselfe, and that was the most worshipfull man that liued in this world, and great pitié it was of his hurt, for the stroke turned him to great dole, fithy, and tame. Then departed Balin from Merlin and said. In this world be that neuer more is more, so he rode soth through the faire countries, and Cities, and found

The Historie of Prince Arthur

found the people dead on every side. And all that were in fine cryd: O Balin thou hast caused great damage in these countries for the dolorous stroke that thou gauest on this Peleus the countries are destroyed, and doubt not but the vengeance will fall on thee at the last. When Balin was past the countries he was passing saine, so he rode eight dayes or he met with a man sure, and at the last he came into a faire forrest in a valley, and was ware of a towre and there beside he saw a great horse of warre tied to a tree, and there beside sat a faire knight on the ground and made great mourning, and he was a likely man and a well made. Balin said, God save you, why be ye so heauie, tell me and I will amend it and I may to my power. Sir knight said hee againe thou doest me great grieve, for I was in mery thoughts, and now thou puttst me to more paine. Balin went a little from him and looked on his horse then Balin heard him say thus. Ah faire Lady why haue ye broken my promise, for ye promised me to meet me here by noone, and may curse you that ever ye gaue me this sword, for with this sword I will slay my selfe, and pulled it out and therewith Balin stert to him and tooke him by the hand. Let goe my hand said the knight or else I shall slay thee. What shall not needs said Balin, for I shall promise you my helpe to get you your Lady, if you will tell me where she is. What is your name said the knight. My name is Balin le sauage. Ah Sir I know you well enough, ye are the knight with the two swords and the man of most prowesse of your hands living. What is your name said Balin. My name is Garnish of the mount, a poore mans sonne but by my prowesse and hardinesse a Duke hath made me knight and gaue me lands, his name is Duke Hermell, and his daughter is she that I loue, and she me as I deemed. How farre is she hence said Balin. But five miles said the knight. How ride we hence said the two knights. So they rode more then a pace till that they came vnto a faire Castle well walled and disched, I will into the Castle said Balin and looke if she be there. So he went in and searched from chamber to chamber, and found her bed, but shee was not there, then Balin looked into a faire little garden, and vnder a laurel tree he saw her lye vpon a quilt of greene samite, and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and a knight in her armes fast halting either other, and vnder their heads grasse and hearbes. When Balin saw her lye so with the foulest knight that ever he saw and the faire Lady. When Balin went through all the Chambers againe, and told the knight how he had found her as she had slept fast, and so brought him in the place there she lay fast sleeping.

CHAP. XLII.

How that Knight slew his lone and a Knight lying by her, and after how he slew himselfe with his owne sword and how Balin rode toward a Castle where he lost his life.

As when Garnish beheld her so lying for pure sorrow his mouth and nose brast out on bleeding, and with his sword he smote off both their heads and then he made sorrow out of measure and said. Oh Balin much sorrow hast thou brought to me, for haddest thou not shewed me that sight I should haue passed my sorrow. Forsooth said Balin I did it to this intent that it should aswage thy courage, and that ye might see and know their falshood, and to cause you to leaue that Ladies loue, God knoweth I did none other but as I would you did to me. Alas said Garnish now is my sorrow double that I may not endure, now haue I laine that I most loued in all my life, and therewith sodainely he roue himselfe on his owne sword vnto the hilts. When Balin saw that, he dresled him from thence, least folke should say that he had laine them, and so he rode forth, and within three dayes he came by a crosse, and thereon was letters of gold written that said. It is not for a knight alone to ride toward this Castle. When saw he an old hore gentleman comming toward him that said Balin le sauage thou passest thy bounds this way, therfore turne againe and it will auaille thee. And he vanished away anone, and so he heard an horne blow, as it had bene the death of a beast. That blast said Balin is blowne for me, for I am the priue yet am I not dead. And there with he saw an hundred Ladies and many knights that welcomed him with faire semblant, and made him passing good chere vnto his sight, and led him into the Castle, and there was daunsing

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

daunting and ministrally and al manner of toy. When the chiefe Lady of the Castle said. Knight willy the two swordes, ye must haue ado and iust with a knight here by that keepeth an Island, for there may no man passe this way but hee must iust or hee passe. What is an unhappie custome said Balin that a knight may not passe this way but if he iust. We shall haue adoe but with one knight said the Lady. Well said Balin, sith I shall thereto am I ready but traueling men are often weary, and their horses also, but though my horse be weary, my heart is not weary, I would be faine there my death should be. Sir said a knight to Balin, me thinketh your shield is not good, I wil lend you a bigger. Whereof I pray you, and so tooke the shield that was unknowne, and left his owne, and so robe vnto the Island, and put him and his horse in a great boate, and when he came on the other side, he met with a damosell, and she said. O knight Balin why haue you left your owne shield, alas ye haue put your selfe in great danger, for by your shield you should haue bene knowen, it is great pittie of you as euer was of knight, for of prowesse and hardnesse thou hast no fellow living.

He repenteth said Balin that euer I came within this country, but I may not turne now againe for shame, and what aduventure shall fall to me, be it life or death, I will take the aduventure that shall come to me. And then he looked on his armour, and vnderstood he was well armed and therewith blessed him and mounted vpon his horse.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Balin met with his brother Balan and how each of them slew other vnknewen till they were wounded to death.

Then afoze him hee saw come riding out of a Castle a knight and his horse trapped al in red, and himselfe in the same colour. And when this knight in the red beheld Balin, him thought it should be his brother Balin because of his two swordes, but because he knew not his shield, he deemed that it should not be he. And so they auentred their speares, and came meruailously fast together and smote either other in the shields but

and his Knights of the round Table.

but their speares and their course was so big that it bare doونه horse and man, so that they lay both in a swoone, but Balin was soze bruised with the fall of his horse for he was weary of traualle. And Balan the first that rose on foote and drew his sword and went toward Balin and he arose and went against him, but Balan smote Balin first, and he put vp his shield, and smote him through the shield and brake his helme. When Balin smote him againe with that unhappy sword and wel nigh had slew his brother Balan, so they fought there together till their breaths failed. When Balin looked vp to the Castle, and saw the towers stand full of Maoyes. So they went to battaile againe, and wounded each other grievously, and then they breathed offtentime, and so went to battaile, that all the place there as they fought was red of their blood. And at that time there was none of them both but they had smitten either other seauen great wounds, so that the least of them might haue ben the death of the mightiest giant in the world. When they went to battaile againe so maruailously, that doubt it was to heare of that battaile for the great bloodshedding, and their hauberks vnmailed, that naked they were on euery side. At the last Balan the younger brother withdrew him a little and laid him down. When said Balin le sauage, what knight art thou for or now I found neuer no knight that matched me. My name is said he Balan, brother to the good knight Balin. Alas said Balin that euer I should see this day, and therewith he fel backward in a swoone. When Balan went on all foure fete and hands, and put off the helme of his brother, and might not know him by the visage it was so full between and be bled, but when he awoke he said. O Balan my brother thou hast slaine me, and I thee, wherefore all the wide world shall speake of vs both.

Alas said Balin, that euer I saw this day, that though mis hap I might not know you, for I espyed well your two swordes, but because ye had an other shield, I deemed you had bene an other knight. Alas said Balin, al that made an unhappy knight in the Castle, for he caused me to leaue mine owne shield to the destruction of vs both, and if I might liue, I would destroy that Castle for the ill customes. What were well done said Balan,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

CHAP. XLV.

How King Arthur tooke and wedded *Gueneuer* vnto his wife, which was daughter to *Leodegrance*, King of the land of *Camelopard* with whom he had theround table.

In the beginning of King Arthur after that hee was chosen King by aduenture and by grace, for the most part of the Barons knew not that he was *Vherpendragons* sonne, but as *Merlin* made it openly known. But yet many Kings and Lords made great war against him for that cause, but King Arthur full well ouercame them all, for the most part of the dayes of his life he was much ruled by the counsaile of *Merlin*. So it befell on a time that King Arthur said vnto *Merlin*. By what Barons will let me haue no rest but meedes they will haue that I take a wife, and I will none take but by thy counsaile and by thine aduise. It is well done said *Merlin* that ye take a wife, for a man of your bountie and noblenesse should not be without a wife. Now is there any faire Lady that ye loue better then an other. Yea said King Arthur I loue *Gueneuer* the Kings daughter *Leodegrance* of the land of *Camelopard*, which *Leodegrance* holdeth in his house the table round that ye told he had of my father, *Vher*. And this damosell is the most gentlest and fairest lady that I knowe living, or yet that euer I could find. Sir said *Merlin*, as of her beautie and fairnesse she is one of the fairest that liue. But and you loued her not so well as ye doe, I would finde you a damosell of beautie and of goodnesse that should like you, and please you, and your heart were not set. But there as a mans heart is set, he will be loth to returne. What is truth said King Arthur. But *Merlin* warned the King priuily that *Gueneuer* was not wholesome for him to take to wife, for he warned him that *Lancelot* should loue her and thre him againe, and so he turned his tale to the adventures of the *Sanegreall*. When *Merlin* desired of the King to haue mee with him that should enquire of *Gueneuer*. And so the King graunted him. And *Merlin* went forth to King *Leodegrance* of *Camelopard*, and told him of the desire of the King, that he would

and his Knights of the round Table.

haue to his wife *Gueneuer* his daughter, that is to me said King *Leodegrance* the best tidings that euer I heard, that so worthy a King of prowess and of noblenesse will wed my daughter. And as for my lands I will giue him, with I that it might please him, but he hath lands enough, hee needeth none, but I shall send him a gift that shall please him much more, for I shall giue him the table round, the which *Vherpendragon* gaue me, and when it is full compleate, there is an hundred knights and fiftie, and as for an hundred good knights I haue my selfe, but I lack fiftie, for so many haue bene slaine in my dayes, And so King *Leodegrance* deliuered his daughter *Gueneuer* vnto *Merlin*, and the table round with the hundred knights, and so they rode freshly, with great royalty, what by water and what by land till they came that night vnto London.

CHAP. XLVI.

How the Knights of the round table were ordained, and how their sieges were blessed by the Archbishop of Canterbury.

When King Arthur heard of the coming of *Gueneuer* and the hundred knights with the table round, hee made great ioy for their coming, and said openly. This faire Lady is passing welcome to me, for I loued her long and therefore there is nothing so pleasing to me. And these knights with the round table please me more then right great riches. When in all haste the King did ordaine for the mariage and the Coronation in the most honourablest wise that could be deuised. Now *Merlin* said King Arthur goe thou and espie me in al this land fiftie knights that bene of most prowess and worshippe. Within short time *Merlin* made the best spæde he might and found twenty eight good knights, but no more could hee find. When the Archbishop of Canterbury was sent for and he blessed the sieges of his table round with great royalty & deuotion and there set the twenty eight knights in their sieges. And when this was done *Merlin* said. Faire Sirs ye must all arise and come vnto King Arthur for to doe him homage, he will haue the better wil to maintaine you. And so they arose & did their homage.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

And when they were gone, Merlin found in the sieges letters of gold that told the knights names that had sitten therein. But the sieges were void. And so anon came young Gawayne and asked the king a gift. Aske said the king and I shall grant it you. Sir I aske that ye will make me knight the same day that ye shall wed faire Gueneuer I will doe it with a good will said King Arthur, and doe to you al the worship that I may, for I must so doe by reason you are my nephew and sisters sonne.

CHAP. XLVII.

How a poore man riding vpon a leane Mare desired King Arthur to make his sonne a Knight.

Forthwith there came a poore man into the Court, and brought with him a faire young man of eightene yeares of age riding vpon a leane Mare. And the poore man asked al men that he met, where shall I find King Arthur. Ponder hee is said the knights, wilt thou any thing with him. Pea said the poore man, therefore I came hither. Anone as he came before the king he saluted him and said. O King Arthur the floure of all knights and kings, I beseech Iesus saue thee. Sir it was told me that at this time of your marriage ye would giue any man the gift that he would aske, except it were vnrasonable. What is truth said the king, such cries I let make, and that wil I hold so it appaire not my realme nor mine estate. Pea say well and graciously said the poore man. Sir I aske nothing else but that ye will make my sonne here a knight. It is a great thing that thou askest of me said the king, what is thy name said the king to the poore man. Sir my name is Aries the colweheard. Whether commeth this of thee or of thy sonne said the king. Nay Sir said Aries this desire commeth of my sonne and not of me. For I shall tel you I haue thirteene sonnes, and all they will fall to what labour I put them to, and will bee right glad to doe labour, but this child will doe no labour for me, for any thing that my wife or I may do but alwayes he wil be shooting or casting of darts, and glad to see battailes and to behold knights, and alwayes both day and night he desireth of me that

and his Knights of the round Table.

hee might be made a knight. What is thy name said the king vnto the young man. Sir my name is Tor. The king beheld him fast, and saw he was passingly well visaged and passingly well made of his yeares. Well said king Arthur to Aries the colweheard, fetch all thy sonnes afoze me that I may see them. And so the poore man did and all were shapen much like the poore man, but Tor was not like none of them all in shape nor in countenance, for he was much more then any of them. Now said king Arthur vnto Aries the colweheard, where is that sword that he shal be made knight withal. It is here said Tor. Take it out of the sheath said the king, and require me to make you a knight. Then Tor alight off his Mare and pulled out his sword kneeling, requiring the king that he would make him knight and that he might be a knight of the table round. As for a knight I will make you, and there with smote him in the neck with the sword saying. Wee pee a good knight, and so I pray to God ye may be, and if ye be of prowesse and of worthynesse ye shal be a knight of the table round. Now Merlin said king Arthur, say whether this Tor shal be a good knight or no. Pea Sir, he ought to be a good knight, for he is come of as good a man as any is on line, and of kings blood. Now so Sir said the king. I shall tell you said Merlin this poore man Aries the colweheard is not his father he is nothing like to him, for king Pellinore is his father. I suppose nay said the colweheard. Fetch thy wife afoze me said Merlin, and she shall not say nay. Anon the wife was fet which was a faire housewife, and there she answered Merlin full womanly, and there she told the king and Merlin, that when she was a maide and went to milke kien ther met with me a sterne knight, and halfe byforce he had my maidenhead and at that time he begat my sonne Tor and he took away from me my greyhound that I had that time with me, and said that he would keepe the greyhound for my loue. Ah said the colweheard I wend not this, but I may beleue it well, for hee had neuer noatches of me. Sir said Tor to Merlin, dishonour not my mother. Sir said Merlin, it is more for your worshippe then hurt, for your father is a good man and a king, and he may right well aduance you and your mother, for ye were begot-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ten or euer she was wedded. That is truth said the wise. It is the lesse grieve to me said the cowheard.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Sir Tor was known for the sonne of King Pellinore, and Gawayne was made Knight.

Soon the morrow King Pellinore came to the Court of King Arthur which had great ioy of him, and told him of Tor how he was his sonne, and how he had made him Knight at the request of the cowheard. When King Pellinore beheld Tor hee pleased him much. So the King made Gawayne Knight but Tor was the first that he made at the feast. What is the cause said King Arthur that there bene two places void in the sieges. Sir said Merlin there shall no man sit in those places but they that shall be of most worship. But in the siege perillous there shall no man sit therein but one, and if there be any so hardy to do it he shall be destroyed and he that shall sit there shall haue no fellow, and therewith Merlin tooke King Pellinore by the hand, and in the one hand next the two sieges and the siege-perillous, he said in open audience. This is your place and best ye be worthy to sit therein of any that is here. Therent had Sir Gawayne great enuy, & said to Gaheris his brother. Ponder Knight is put vnto great worship, the which greueth me sore, for he slew our father King Lot, therefore I will slay him said Sir Gawine with a sword that was sent me which is passing trenchant. We shall not doe so said Gaheris at this time, for at this time I am but a squier, and when I am made Knight I will be auenged on him, and therefore brother it is best ye suffer till an other time, that we may haue him out of the Court, for and wee did so now we should trouble this high feast. I will well said Sir Gawayne as ye will

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XLIX.

How at the feast of the wedding of King Arthur vnto Gueneuer a white Hart came into the hall and thirty couple of hounds, and how a brachet pinched the Hart, the which was taken away.

Then was the high feast made ready, and the King was wedded at Camelot vnto dame Gueneuer in the Church of saint Steuens with great solemnitie, and as euery man was set after his degree, Merlin went vnto all the knights of the round table and bad them sit still and that none should remoue, for ye shall see a strange and a maruelous aduenture. Right so as they sat there came running in a white Hart into the hall, and a white brachet next him, and thirtie couple of black running hounds came after with a great crie, and the Hart went about the table round, as hee went by other bordes the white brachet bote him by the buttocke and pulled out a peece where through the Hart leapt a great leape and ouerthrew a knight that sat at the bordes side, and therewith the knight arose and tooke vp the brachet, and so went forth out of the hall, and took his horse and rode his way with the brachet. Right so anone came in a Lady on a white palfrey, and cryed aloud to King Arthur. Sir suffer me not to haue this despite for the brachet was mine that the knight lad away. I may not doe therewith said the King. With this there came a knight riding all armed on a great horse and tooke the Lady away with him by force, and she cried & made great moane. When she was gone the King was glad, because she made such a noyse. Nay said Merlin ye may not leaue these aduentures so lightly, for these aduentures must be brought againe or else it would be disworship to you and to your feast. I will said the King that all be done by your aduise. Then said Merlin, let call Sir Gawayne, for he must bring againe the white Hart. Also Sir ye must let call Sir Tor, for he must bring againe the brachet and the knight, or else slay him. Also let call King Pellinore, for he must bring againe the Lady and the knight, or else slay him. And these three knights shall doe maruailous aduentures or they come againe. Then were

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

were they called all three as it is rehearsed afore, and euer each of them tooke his charge, and armed them surely. But Sir Gawayne had the first request, and therefore we will beginne at him.

CHAP. L.

How Sir Gawayne rode for to fetch againe the Hart. And how two brethren fought each againe other for the Hart.

Sir Gawayne rode more then apace, and Gaheris his brother rode with him in stead of a squire for to doe him service. So as they rode, they saw two knights fight on horseback passing sore, so Sir Gawayne and his brother rode betwene them, and asked them for what cause they fought so. The one knight answered and said we fight for a simple matter, for we two be two brethren, and borne and begotten of one man and of one woman. Alas said Sir Gawayne why doe ye so. Sir said the elder, there came a white Hart this way this day, and many hounds chased him, and a white brachet was alway next him, and we vnderstood it was auenture made for the high feast of King Arthur and therefore I would haue gone after to haue won me worship and here my younger brother said he would go after the white Hart, for he was a better knight then I, and for this cause we fell at debat, and so we thought to proue which of vs both was better knight. This is a simple cause said Sir Gawayne, vnconth men ye should debate with all and not brother with brother, therefore and if ye wil doe by my counsell I will haue adoe with you, that is ye shall yeeld you vnto me, and that ye goe vnto King Arthur and yeeld you vnto his grace. Sir knight said the two brethren, we are for foughten and much blood haue we lost through our wilfulnesse, and therefore we would be loath to haue adoe with you. When doe as I wil haue you said Sir Gawayne. We will agree to fullfill your will, but by whom shall we say that we be thither sent. We may say by the knight that followeth the quest of the white Hart. Now what is your names said Sir Gawayne. Sorlouse of the Forrest said the elder. And my name is said the yonger Brian of the forest

and his Knights of the round Table.

rest. And so they departed and went to the Kings Court, and Sir Gawayne went on his quest, and as Sir Gawayne followed the Hart by the crie of the hounds, euen afore him ther was a great river and the Hart swam ouer, and as Sir Gawayne would haue followed after, there stood a knight on the other side and said. Sir knight come not ouer after the hart, but if thou wilt iust with me. I will not faile as for that said Sir Gawayne to follow the quest that I am in, and so he made his horse to swim ouer the water, and anon they gat their speares and ran together full hard, but Sir Gawayne smote him off his horse, and then he turned his horse and bad him yeeld him. Nay said the knight not so, though thou haue the better of me on horseback I pray thee valiant knight alight on foot, and match we together with swords. What is your name said Sir Gawayne. Allardin of the Isles said the other. When either dressed their shields and smote together, but Sir Gawayne smot him through the helme so hard that it went to the baines, and the knight fel down dead. Ah, said Gaheris that was a mighty stroke of a yong knight.

CHAP. LI.

How the Hart was chased into a Castle and there slaine. And how Sir Gawayne slew a Lady.

Then Sir Gawayne and Gaheris rode more then a pace after the white Hart, and let slip at the Hart three couple of greyhounds, and so they chased the Hart into the Castle, and in the chief place of the Castle, they slew the Hart that Sir Gawayne and Gaheris solowed after. Right so there came a knight out of a chamber with a sword in his hand and slew two of the hounds euen in the sight of Sir Gawayne and the remnant he chased them with his sword out of the Castle. And when he came againe he said. O my white Hart, me repenteth that thou art dead for my soueraigne Lady gaue thee to me, and euil haue I kept thee, and thy death shall be deare bought and I liue. And anon he went into his chamber and armed him, and came out fierly, and there he met with Sir Gawayne. Why haue ye slaine my houndes said Sir Gawayne, for they did but their kind and

I had rather ye had woken your anger vpon me then vpon the
dombe beasts. Thou saist truth said the knight I haue auenged
me on thy hounds and so will I be on thee or thou goe. Then
Sir Gawaine alighed on soote, and dressed his shield and strooke
mightily, and claue their shields, and stoned their helmes, and
braz their habberks that the blood ranne downe to their fete.
At the last Sir Gawaine smote the knight so hard that he fel to
the earth. And then he cried mercy and yeelded him and be-
sought him as he was a knight and gentleman to saue his life.
Thou shalt die said Sir Gawaine for slaying of my hounds. I
will make amends vnto my power said the knight. Sir Ga-
waine would no mercy haue, but unlaced his helm to haue strik-
en of his head, right so came his Lady out of her chamber and
fell ouer him, and so he smote off her head by misadventure.
Alas said Gaheris that is soule and shamefully done, that shame
shall neuer from you. Alas ye should giue mercy vnto them
that aske mercy for a knight without mercy, is without
worshippe. Sir Gawaine was so astonied at the death of this
faire Lady that hee wist not what hee did, and said to the
knight. Arise I will giue thee mercy. Nay nay said the
knight, I take no force of mercy now for thou hast slain my loue
and my Lady that I loued best of all earthly things. We re-
penteth it soze said Sir Gawaine, for I thought to haue striken
at thee. But now thou shalt goe vnto King Arthur, and tell him
of thine aduentures and how thou art ouercome by the knight
that went in the quest of the white Hart. I take no force said
the knight whether I liue or die. But for dread of death hee
swore to goe vnto King Arthur, and hee made him for to beare
one greyhound before him vpon his horse, and an other behind
him also. What is your name said Sir Gawaine or we depart.
My name is said the knight Ablemore of the marise. And he de-
parted toward Camelot.

How foure Knights fought against Sir Gawaine and Gaheris, and
how they were ouercome and their liues saued at the request
of foure damosels.

AND Sir Gawaine went into the Castle, and made him
ready to lye there all night, and would haue vnarmed
him. What will ye doe said Gaheris, will ye vnarme you in
this countrey, ye may well thinke that ye haue many enemies
here about. They had no sooner said that word but there came
foure knights well armed, and assailed Sir Gawaine hard and
said thus vnto him. Thou new made knight thou hast shamed
thy knighthood, for a knight without mercy is dishonoured.
Thou hast also slaine a faire Lady, which is vnto thee great
shame for euermore, and doubt thou not thou shalt haue great
need of mercy or thou depart from vs. And therewith one of
them smote Sir Gawaine such a stroke, that he had nigh felled
him to the earth, and Gaheris smote him againe soze, and so they
were on the one side and on the other that Sir Gawaine and Ga-
heris were in great leopordie of their liues, and one of of them
with a bowe and archer smote Sir Gawaine through the arme,
that it grieved him wondrous soze. And as they should haue
bene both slaine, there came foure Ladies, and besought the
knights of grace for Sir Gawaine. And goodly at the request of
the Ladies they gaue Sir Gawaine and Gaheris their liues, and
made them to yeeld them as prisoners. When Sir Gawaine
and Gaheris made great mone. Alas said Sir Gawaine mine
arme grieueth me soze. I am like to be maimed, and so made
his complaint pittiously. On the morrow early came one of
the foure Ladies to Sir Gawaine which had hard all his com-
plaints and said. Sir knight whatcheare. Not good said he. It
is your owne default said the Lady, for ye haue done a passing
foule dede in the slaying of the Lady, which will be great bil-
lany to you. But bee ye not of King Archurs kinne said the La-
dy. Yes truly said Sir Gawaine. What is your name said
the Lady, ye must tel it or that ye passe. My name is Gawaine,
King

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

King Lot's sonne of Dykeney and my mother is King Arthurs sisters. Ah then ye are nephew unto King Arthur said the Lady and I shall so speake for you that ye shall haue conduct to goe to King Arthur for his loue. And so she departed and told the foure knights how their prisoner was King Arthurs nephew, and his name is Gawaine, King Lot's sonne of Dykeney. When they gaue him the head of the white Hart, because it was in his quest. When anon they deliuered Sir Gawaine vnder this promise that he should bare the dead Lady with him in this manner. Her head was hanged about his necke, and the whole body of her lay before him vpon the maine of his horse. And in this manner he rode forth towards Camelot. And anon as he was come to the Court, Merlin desired of King Arthur that Sir Gawaine should be swayne to tell of all his adventures and so he was. And shewed how he slew the Lady, and how he would giue no mercy to the knight, where through the Lady was violently slaine. When the King and the Quene were greatly displeased with Sir Gawaine for the slaying of the Lady. And thereby the ordinance of the Quene was set a quest of Ladyes on Sir Gawaine. And they iudged him euer while he liued to be with al Ladyes and to fight for their quarrels and that he should euer be curteous, and neuer to refuse mercy to him that asketh mercy. Thus was Sir Gawaine swayne vpon the foure euangelists that he would neuer be against Ladyes ne gentlewomen but if he fought for a Lady and his aduersarie for another. And thus endeth the adventure of Sir Gawaine, which he did at the marriage of King Arthur.

CHAP. LIII.

How Sir Tor rode after the Knight with the Brachet, and of his adventures by the way.

Then Sir Tor was ready, and he mounted on horsebacke and rode forth his way a good pace after the knight with the brachet. And so as he rode he met with a dwarfe suddenly which smote his horse on the head with a staffe, that he went backward more then his speares length. In what intent doest thou

and his Knights of the round Table.

thou smite my horse said Sir Tor. For thou shalt not passe this way said the dwarfe, but that thou shalt first iust with yonder knights that abide in yonder pavilions that thou seest. When was Sir Tor ware where two pavilions were, great speres stood out, and two shields hung on two trees by the pavilions. I may not tarry said Sir Tor for I am in a quest which I must needs follow. Thou shalt not passe said the dwarfe, and therewith he blew his hoene. When there came one armed on horseback, and dressed his shield, and came fast toward Sir Tor, and he dressed him against him, and so ranne together that Sir Tor bare him from his horse. And anon the knight yeelded him to his mercy, but Sir Tor haue a fellow in yonder pavilion that wil haue adoe with you anon. He shall be welcome said Sir Tor. When was he ware of an other knight comming with great raundon, and each of them dressed to other, that manuaile it was to see, but the knight smote Sir Tor a great stroke in the middest of the shield, that his speare all to shieuered and Sir Tor smote him through the shield by law, that it went through the side of the knight, but the stroke slew him not. And therewith Sir Tor alight smote him vpon the helme a great stroke. And therewith the knight yeelded him, and besought him of mercy. I wil wel say said Sir Tor, but thou and thy fellow must goe vnto King Arthur, and yeeld you prisoners to him. By whom shall we say that we are thither sent. See that say, by the knight that went with the brachet. Now what be your two names said Sir Tor. My name is said the one Sir Felot of Langdock, and thy name is said the other Sir Petipace of Winchelsea. Now goe ye forth said Sir Tor God speede you and me. Then came the dwarfe and said to Sir Tor I pray you to giue me a gift. I wil wel say for me to doe you seruice, for I will serue no more recreant knights. When take a horse anon said Sir Tor, and come on and ride with me. I wil ye ride after the knight with the white brachet. I shall bring you there hee is said the dwarfe. And so they rode through the forest, and at the last they were ware of the pavilions by a piazze with two shields the one shield was reuelled with white, and the other shield was red.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LIIII.

How Sir Tor found the Bracher with a Lady, and how a Knight assailed him for the said Bracher.

Therewith Sir Tor alighted and took the dwarfe his speare, and so came to the white paviilion and saw three damosels lye therein on a pallet sleeping. And then he went on to that other paviilion, and there he found a faire Lady sleeping. And there was the white bracher that bayed at her fast. And therewith anon the Lady awoke and went out of the paviilion and all her damosels. But anon as Sir Tor espied the white bracher, he took her by force and took her to the dwarfe. What will ye doe said the Lady, will ye take away my bracher from me. Yea said Sir Tor this bracher haue I sought from King Arthurs Court to this place. Well said the Lady, Sir Knight ye shall not goe farre with her but that ye shall be met withall or it be long, and also euill handled. I shall abide it what aduenture soeuer cometh by the grace of God. And so mounted vpon his horse and passed forth on his way toward Camelot, but it was so nere night that he might not passe but little farther. Know ye any lodging said Sir Tor. I know none said the dwarfe, but here beside is an hermitage, and there ye must take such lodging as ye find. And within a while they came to the hermitage and took lodging. And there was grasse, wheat and bread for their horses, soeue it was sped and full hard was their supper, but there they rested them all the night till on the morrow, and heard a masse deuoutly and took their leave of the hermite, and Sir Tor praised the hermite to pray for him. He said he would, and betooke him to God, and so mounted on horsebacke and rode toward Camelot a long while. With that they heard a knight call lowd that came after them, and said. Knight abide and yeld my bracher that thou tookest from my Lady. Sir Tor returned againe and beheld him, and saw he was a soevely knight and well horsed and armed at all points, then Sir Tor dressed his shield and took his speare in his hand, and the other came fierly vpon him, and smote each other that both

and his Knights of the round Table.

both horse and men fell to the earth. Anon they lightly arose and drew their swords as egerly as two Lyons and put their shields afoze them, and smote through their shield, that the cantles fel off on both parties, and also they brake their helmes that the hot blood rane out, and the thick mailles of their halberds they carued and roue in sunder, that the hot blood ranne downe to the ground, and they had both many great wounds, and were passing weary. But Sir Tor espied that the other knight fainted, and then he pursued fast vpon him, and doubled his strokes, and made him fall to the ground on the one side. Then Sir Tor bad him yeld him. What will I not said Abellus while my life lasteth and the soule within my body, vnlesse that that thou wilt giue mee the bracher. What will I not doe said Sir Tor, for it was my request to bring againe the bracher and thee, or else slay thee.

CHAP LV.

How Sir Tor ouercame the Knight, and how he lost his head at the request of a Lady.

With that came a damosell riding vpon a palfray as fast as she might driue, and cried with a loud voice to Sir Tor. What will ye with me said Sir Tor. I beseech the said the damosell, for King Arthurs loue giue me a gift, I require the gentle knight as thou art a gentleman. Now said Sir Tor, aske a gift and I wil giue it you. Gramarcie said the damosell. I aske the head of this false knight Abellus, for he is the most outrageous knight that liueth and the greatest murderer. I am right sorry and loth sayd Sir Tor of that gift which I haue graunted you, let him make you amends in that which he hath trespassed against you. He can not make amends said the damosell, for he hath slaine mine owne brother which was a better knight then euer he was, and he had no mercy vpon him, so much that I knoeled halfe an houre afoze him in the mire, for to saue my brothers life which had done him no damage, but fought with him by aduenture of armes as knights should doe, and for all that I could doe or say, he smote off my

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

my brothers head, wherefore I require thee as thou art a true knight to giue me my gift, or else I shall shame thee in all the Court of King Arthur, for he is the falsest knight liuing, and a great destroyer of good knights. When when Abelleus heard this, he was sore aserd, and yeldeb him and asked mercy. I may not now said Sir Tor, but if I should be found false of my promise, for when I would haue taken you to mercy, ye would none aske, but if ye had the bzachel again that was my request. And therwith he tooke off his helme, and he arble and fled, and Sir Tor after him and smote off his head quite. Now Sir said the damosell is is nere night, I pray you come and lodge with me here at my place, it is here fast by. I will wel said Sir Tor, for his horse and hee had fared euil sith they departed from Camelot, and so he rode with her, and had passing good there with her, and the had a passing faire old knight to her husband which made him passing good chere, and well eased Sir Tor and his horse. And on the morrow he heard masse and bzake his fast & tooke his leaue of the knight and of the Lady, which besought him to tell them his name. Cruely said he my name is Sir Tor, that late was made knight, and this was the first request of armes that euer I did to bring againe that this knight Abelleus tooke away from King Arthurs Court. My knight said the Lady and her husband, if ye come here in our marches, come and see our poore lodging and it shal be alwayes at your commandement. So Sir Tor departed and came to Camelot on the third day by none. And the King and the Quene and all the Court was passing glad of his coming, and made great ioy that he was come againe, for he went from the Court with little succour, but that his father King Pellinore gaue him an old cosse, and King Arthur gaue him armour and a sword and also had hee none other succour, but rode so forth himselfe alone. And then the King and the Quene by Merlins aduise made him to shewe to tell of his adventures, and so he told and made prouer of his dooers, as it is afore rehearsed, wherefore the King and the Quene made great ioy. Nay said Merlin, there be but iapes to that he shal do, hee shal proue a noble knight of prouesse, as good as any is liuing, and

gentle

and his Knights of the round Table.

He was courteous, and full of good parts, and passing true of
his promise, and never shall doe outrage. And here through Mer-
lin's bewitching Arthur gaue him an Earldome of lands that
fell into him. And here endeth the quest of Sir Tor, King
Pellicore's sonne.

CHAP. LVI.

How King Pellinore rode after the Lady and the Knight that led
 the way, and how a Lady desired helpe of him, and how hee
 fought with two Knights for that Lady, of whom he slew the
 one at the first stroke.

The King Pellinore armed him and mounted upon his horse and rode more then apace after the Lady that the knight was away. And so as he rode in a forrest he saw in a valey, whomosell sit by a well she, and a wounded knight be-
tween her armes, and Sir Pellinore saluted her. And when she saw the face of him she cried ouer loud, helpe me knight for I am taking King Pellinore would not carry her was so-
ger in his quest, and enen she cried more then an hundred times after helpe. And when she saw he would not abide, she
prayed vnto God for to send him as much neede of helpe as she
had, that he might knowe it or be vied. And as the booke tel-
leth the knight died that lay there wounded, wherefore the
Lady for pite sorrowe slew her selfe with her loues sword. So
King Pellinore rode in that valey, hee met with a poore la-
bouring man. Salueth thou not said King Pellinore a knight
was and leading alway a Lady. Yes said the poore man. A
sith that knight and the Lady that made great mone, and you
knowe in a valey there shall ye see two pavillions, and one
of the knights of the pavillions chalenged that Lady of that
knight, and said she was his here to sell. Wherefore he should
take her to his mercer, and so they began battaile in that quarrell,
and he that was to be wound haile her by force, and the other said
he would win the rule of her because he was her kin kinsman and
would take her to her friends. For this quarrell I lost them
fighting, and if ye ride a pace ye shall find them yet fighting,

५९

AND

and the Lady is in keeping with the two squires in the pavilions. God thanke the said King Pellinore. When he rode a gallop till that he had a sight of the two pavilions, and the two knights fighting. Anone rode he to the two pavilions, and saw the Lady that was his quest, and said to her Father Lady ye must come with me onto King Arthurs Court. Sir Knight said the two squires that were with her, yonder be two knights that fight for this Lady, goe thither and depart them and he agreed with them, and then may ye have her at your owne pleasure. Yea say well said King Pellinore. And anone he rode betwene them and parted them in sonder and asked the cause why they fought. Sir Knight said the one, I shall tell you. This Lady is my nigh kinswoman, mine aunts daughter, and when I heard her complaine that she was with him maugre her beauty I waged battaile to fight with him. Sir Knight said the other, whose name was Hontzlake of Wentland, this Lady I gate by my prowesse of armes this day of King Arthurs Court. What is truly said, quoth King Pellinore, for ye came in there all so dainely as we were at the high feast, and toke away this Lady or any man might make him ready, and therefore it was my request for to bring her againe and you also, or else the one of us to abide in field, therefore the Lady shall goe with me to King Arthurs, or I shall die for it, for I have promised it unto him, and therefore fight no more for her, for none of you both shall have no part of her at this time and if ye list to fight for her, fight with me and I will defend her. Well said the knight, make you ready, and wee shall assaile you with all our power. And as King Pellinore would have put his horse from them, and a light on foot, Sir Hontzlake runne his horse through with the sword and said. Now art thou on foot as well as we, and when King Pellinore saw that his horse was so slaine, he was wroth and then sterly and lightly leapt from his horse, and in great hast drew out his sword and put his shield afore him, and said. Knight keepe well thy head, for thou shalt have a buffet for the slaying of my horse. So King Pellinore gaue him such a stroke upon the helme that he cloue downe the head to the shoulde, and therewith fell to the earth dead.

Now King Pellinore gate the Lady and brought her to Camelot unto the Court of King Arthur.

And then he turned him to that other knight that was sore wounded. But when hee had seene the buffet that the other had, he would not fight, but kneeled downe and said. Take my cosin the Lady with you at your request, and I require you as ye be a true knight put her to no shame no vilany. What said King Pellinore will ye not fight for her? So Sir said the knight, I wil not fight with a knight of prowes as ye be. Well said King Pellinore, ye say well, I promise you she shall have no vilany by me as I am a true knight. But now black a horse said King Pellinore, I will have Hontzlaces horse. Yea shall not needs said the knight, for I shall giue you such a horse as shall please you, so that ye will lodge with me, for it is nere night. I will well said King Pellinore abide with you al night. And there he had with him right good chere, and fared of the best with passing good wine, and had merry rest that night. And on the morrow he heard a masse, and after dined, and then was brought him a faire bay courser and King Pellinore saddle set upon him. Now what shall I call you said the knight, in as much as ye have my cosin at your desire of your quest. Sir I shall tell you, my name is Pellinore king of the Isles, and knight of the round table. Now I am glad said the knight that such a noble man as ye be shal have the rule of my cosin. What said he, my name is Sir Melior of Logurs, and this Lady my cosin bright Nimue, and the knight that is in that other pavilion is my sowne brother a passing good knight, and his name is Brian of the Isles, and he is full loth to doe any wrong, and full loth to fight with any man or knight, but if he be sore sought upon, so that for shame he may not leaue. It is maruaille said King Pellinore that he will not have adoe with me. Sir he will not have ado with no man but if it be at his request. Bringing him one of these to the Court of King Arthur said King Pellinore.

The Historie of Prince Arthure

Sir we will come together. Ye shall be greatly welcome there said King Pellinore, and also greatly allowed for your coming. And so hee departed with the Lady, and brought her to Camelot. So as they rode in a vale that was full of stones the Ladies horse stumbled and threw her down, wherewith her arme was sore brused and nere the shouder for paine and anguish. Alas Sir said the Lady mine arme is out of joint, where through I must needs rest me. Ye shall doe well, said King Pellinore, and so he alighted under a faire tree, whereas was faire grasse, and he put his horse thereto, and so laid him under the tree and slept till it was nigh night, and when he awoke he would haue ridden. Sir said the Lady, it is so darke that ye may as well ride backward as forward. So they abode still and made there their lodging. Then King Pellinore put off his armour, and then alittle before midnight they heard the trotting of an horse. We ye still said King Pellinore for we shall haue of some aduventure.

CHAP. LVIII.

How King Pellinore heard two Knights as he lay by night in a valey, and of other aduentures.

And therewith he armed him. So right euen afore him there met two Knights, the one came from Camelot and the other from the North, and either saluted other. What tidings at Camelot said the one. By my head said the other there haue I bene, and espied the Court of King Arthur, and there is such a fellowship that they may neuer be brook, & wel nigh al the world holdeth with King Arthur, for there is the source of chivalry: Now for this cause I am riding into the North to tel our chieftaines of the fellowship which is withholden with King Arthur. As for that said the other Knight, I haue brought a remedy with me, that is the greatest poison that euer ye hard speake of, and to Camelot will I with it, for we haue a friend right nigh King Arthur, and well cherished that shall poison King Arthur, so he hath promised our chieftaines, and hath received great gifts for to do it. Beware said the other Knight of

Merlin

and his Knights of the round Table.

Merlin, he knoweth all things by the diuels craft. Therefore he will not let it said the Knight. And so they departed in sun. After King Pellinore made him ready and his Lady, and rode toward Camelot. And as they came by the well wher the wounded Knight was and the Lady, there he found the Knight and the Lady eaten with Lions or wilde beastes all save the head, wherefore he made great mone and wept passing sore and said. Alas her life I might haue saued, but I was so fierce in my quest, therefore I would not abide. Wherefore make ye such dole said the Lady. I wot not said King Pellinore, but my heart mourneth sore for the death of this Lady for shee was a passing faire Lady and a young. Now shall ye doe by mine advise said the Lady, take this Knight and let him be buried in an hermitage, and then take the Ladies head and beare it with you vnto King Arthurs Court. So King Pellinore took this dead Knight on his shoulders and had him to the hermitage, and charged the hermit with his corps, and that service should be done for the soule and take his harness for your labour and paine. It shall be done said the hermit, as I will answer to God.

CHAP. LIX.

How King Pellinore when he was come to Camelot, was sworne vpon a booke to tell truth of his quest,

And therewith they departed, and came whereas the head of the Lady lay with faire yellow haire which grieved King Pellinore passing sore when he looked vpon it, for much he had his heart on the visage. And so by noone they came to Camelot. And King Arthur and the Quene were passing glad of his coming to the Court. And there he was made to swere vpon the four Cuagelists, for to tel al the truth of his quest, from the beginning vnto the ending. Ah Sir Pellinore said the Quene, ye were greatly to blame that ye saued not the Ladies life. Now said King Pellinore ye were greatly to blame and if ye would not saue your owne life, and ye might, but sauing your honour I was so furious in my quest that I would not abide, and that repenteth me and shall doe all the dayes of my life. Now said Merlin ye ought sore to repent it, for the Lady was

The Historie of Prince Arthur

your owne daughter, begotten on the Lady of the Lake, and that knight that was dead was her loun, and should haue wedded her, and hee was a right good knight of a young man, and would haue proued a good man, and to this Court was he comming, and his name was Sir Miles of the Launds, and a knight came behind him and slew him with a speare, and his name is Lorinele sauge, a false knight and a very coward, and he for great sorrow slew her selfe with his sword, and her name was Elein, and because ye would not abide and helpe her, ye shal se your best friend falle you when ye be in the greatest distresse that euer ye wer or shal be in, and that penance God hath ordeined you for that dede, that he that ye shal most trust to of any man aliuie, he shal leaue you there as ye shal be slaine. He forsoothinketh said King Pellinore that this shal betide me, but God may well forsedoe all destinies.

Thus when the quest was don of the white Hart that Sir Gawaine followed, & the quest of the brachet followed of Sir Tor, son vnto King Pellinore, and the quest of the Lady that the knight tooke away, the which King Pellinore at that time followed. Then King Arthur stablished all his knights and gaue them lands that were not rich of land, and charged them neuer to do outrage nor murder, and alway to flew treason. Also by no meanes to be cruel, but to giue mercy vnto him that asked mercy, vpon paine of forfeiture of their worship and Lordship of King Arthur for euermore, and alway to doe Ladies, damosels and gentlewomen succour vpon paine of death. Also that no man take no battailes, in a wrong quarrell for no law, nor for worldly goods. Vnto this were all the knights swozne of the round table, both old and young. And euery yeare they were swozne at the high feast of Pentecost.

CHAP. LX.

How Merlin was allotted and doted on one of the Ladies of the Lake and he was shut in a roche vnder a stone by a wood side, and there died.

Then after these quests of Sir Gawaine of Sir Tor, and of King Pellinore, Merlin in a dotage on the Damosel that

and his Knights of the round Table.

King Pellinore brought to the Court with him, and she was one of the damosels of the Lake which hight Nimue. But Merlin would haue no rest but alwayes he would be with her in the palace. And euer she made Merlin good chere, till she had leaured of him all manner thing that she desired, and hee was soe allotted vpon her that he might not be from her. So vpon a time he told vnto King Arthur that he should not enioy her, and that for al his crafts he should be put in the earth, and so he told the king many things that should befall, and alwayes he warned King Arthur to keepe well his sword Excalibur and the scabbard for he told him how the sword and the scabbard should be stolen by a woman from him, that hee most trusted. Also he told King Arthur that he should misse him, yet had ye rather then all your lands to haue me againe. Ah said the king with I know of your aduenture puruey for it, and put away by your crafts that misaduenture. Nay said Merlin, it will not be. And then he departed from King Arthur. And after a while the damosell of the Lake departed, and Merlin went euermore with her wheresoeuer she went. And often times Merlin would haue had her priuely away by his subtile craft, and then she made him to sweare that he should neuer do her any hurtment vpon her if he would haue his will, and so hee was bound. So she and Merlin went ouer the sea vnto the land of Benwicke, where as King Ban was king, that had great wars against King Claudas and there Merlin spake with King Ban's wife a faire Lady and a good, and her name was Elein, and there he saw young Launcelot. There the Quene made great sorrow for the mostall warre that King Claudas made on her Land and on her lands. Take no heauinesse said Merlin, for this child within this twenty yeare shal reuenge you on King Claudas, that all christendome shal speake of it, and this same child shal be the most man of worship of this world, and I know well that his first name was Galahad, and with ye haue I named him Lancelot. That is truth said the Quene, his first name was Galahad. O Merlin said the Quene shal I liue to see my sonne such a man of prowesse. Yea Lady on my perill ye shall see it, and liue after many winters. And then soone after the

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

the Lady and Merlin departed, and by the way as they went Merlin shewed her many wonders, and came into Eboracshire, And afterwards Merlin lay about the Lady to have her maidenhead, & she was ever passing weery of him, and said she would have bene deliuered of him, for she was afraid of him, because he was a diuels sonne, and she could not put him away by no meanes.

And so upon a time it hapned that Merlin shewed to her in a roche whereas was a great wonder, and wrought by enchantment, which went vnder a stone. So by her subtille craft and working, she made Merlin to goe vnder that stone, to let her wit of the meruailes there, but she wrought so there for him that he came neuer out, for all the craft that he could doe. And so she departed and left Merlin.

CHAP. LXI.

How five Kings came into this Land to warre against King Arthur and what counsaile King Arthur had against them.

After King Arthur came to Cantelour and there he made a sollemne feast with mirth and ioy. So anon after he returned vnto Cardoyle, and there came to King Arthur new tidings, that the King of Denmarke and the King of Ireland his brother, and the King of the Male, and the King of Scythie and the King of the Ile of Longtaine, all these five knights with a great host were entred into King Arthurs land, and burnt and slew all that they found afoze them, both Cities and Castles, that it was great pittie to see. Alas said King Arthur, I had I neuer rest one moneth sith I was crowned King of this land. Now shall I neuer rest till I make with those Kings in a faire field and so that I make mine avow, for my true liege people shall not be destroyed in my default, goe with me who will, and abide who will. When the King let write vnto King Pellinore, and prayed him in all haste to make him ready with such people as he might lightliest reere, and he him after in all haste. All the Barons were piteously wroth that the King should depart so suddenly. But the King by no meanes would abide,

and his Knights of the round Table.

but made writings vnto them that were not there, and bad them be ready by him such as were not at that time in the Court. When the King came to Quene Guenener and said. Lady make you ready, for ye shall goe with me, for I may not long misse you, for that cause me to be the more hardier what aduventure soeuer shall come. I will not wit my Lady to be in no leopardie. Sir said she, I am at your command and shall be ready what time you shall be ready. So on the morrow the King and the Queen departed with such fellowship as they had, and came into the South into a Forrest beside Humber, and there lodged them. And when the tidings came to the five Kings aboue said, that King Arthur was beside Humber in a Forrest, there was a knight called Sir Kay, who knoweth wel that King Arthur hath with him the flower of chivalle of the world, as it is proued by the great battaille that he hath with the eleauen Kings, and therefore he went vnto him that day, till that he be nigh him, for the longer he is the bigger he is, and weener the weaker, and he is so confident of himselfe that he is come to the field with little heed, and therefore let be set vpon him or it be day, and weene to slay of his knights, that there shall not one escape.

CHAP. LXII.

How King Arthur ouerthrew and slew the five Kings, and made the remnant to flee,

After this counsaile the five Kings assented, and so they passed forth with their host through South Wales, and came vpon King Arthur by night, and set vpon his host, he & his knights being in their pavilions & King Arthur was vnarmed, and had no heed to rest with the Quene. Sirs said Sir Kay, it is not good that we be vnarmed. We shall haue no neede said Sir Kay, and Sir Griflet that lay in a little pavilion by the King, said that they heard a great noise, & many cried treason. When King Arthur was thus betraied, vnto armes fellows he arose. So they were anon armed at all points. When there came a wounded knight to King Arthur and said to him.

¶

Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Sir saue your selfe and my Lady the Quene, for our host is destroyed, and much people of ours slaine. So anon the King and the Quene and thre knights toke their horses and rode toward Humber to passe ouer it, and the water was so rough that they were a feard to passe ouer. Now may ye chouse said King Arthur, whether ye will abide and take the aduenture vpon this side, for and ye be taken they will slay you. It were me rather said the Quene to die in the water then for to fall into your enemies hands, and there to be slaine. And as they stood so talking Sir Kay saw the five kings comming on horseback by themselves alone with their speares in their hand toward them. So said Sir Kay, yonder be the five kings, let vs goe to them and match them. That were folly said Sir Gawaine, for we are but foure and they be five. That is truth said Sir Griflet. So force said Sir Kay, I will undertake two of them, and then may ye thre undertake the other thre and therewith Sir Kay let his horse runne as fast as he might and stroke one of them through the shield and the body of a sabon daxe, that the king fel to the earth sturke dead. That saw Sir Gawaine and ran vnto another king so hard, that he smote him through the body. And therewith King Arthur ran to an other, and smote him through the body with a speare that he fell downe to the earth dead. When Sir Griflet ran to the fourth king, and gaue him such a fall that he brake his necke. Anon Sir Kay ran vnto the fift king, and smote him so hard vpon the helme, that the stroke clate the helme and the head to the shoulders. That was well stricken said King Arthur, and worshipfully haste thou holden thy promise, therefore I shall honour the as long as I liue. And therewith they set the Quene in a barge in Humber, but alwayes Quene Gueneuer praised Sir Kay for his noble dades, and said. What Lady that ye loue, and the loue you not againe, she were greatly to blame, and among Ladies said the Quene I shall beare your noble fame, for ye spake a great word, and fulfilled it worshipfully. And therewith the Quene departed. When the king and the thre knights rode into the Forrest, for there they supposed to beare of them that were escaped, and there King Arthur found the most part of his people and told them all how the

and his Knights of the round Table.

five kings were dead, and therefore let we hold vs together till it be day, and when their host espie that their chiefetaines be slaine, they will make such sorrow that they shall not be able to helpe themselves. Right so as the king had said so it was. For when they found the five kings dead, they made such sorrow that they fell downe from their horses. Therewith came King Arthur with a few people and slew on the right hand and on the left, that well nigh there escaped no man, but all were slaine, so the number of thirtie thousand men and when the battaile was all ended, King Arthur knaled downe and thanked God full meekly. And then he sent for the Quene and she came anon, and made great ioy for the victorie, of that dangerous battaile.

CHAP. LXIII.

How the battaile was finished or that King Pellinore came, and how King Arthur founded an abbey where the battaile was.

Therewithall came one to King Arthur and told him that King Pellinore was within thre myle with a great host, and said. Goe vnto him and let him haue knowledge how we haue sped. So within a while King Pellinore came with a great host and saluted the people and the king. And there was great ioy made on euery side. When King Arthur let search how much people of his party there was slaine. And there were found not past a two hundred men slaine and eight knights of the round table in their pavilions. When the king let reare and built in the same place there as the battaile was done a faire abbey, and endowd it with great liuelhood, and let call it the abbey of le beaue aduenture. But when some of them came into their countries there as the five kings were kings, and told them how they were slaine, there was made great sorrow. And when all King Arthurs enemies, (as the king of Northwales and the king of the North) wist not of the battaile they were passing heauie. And so the king returned to Camelot in haste, and when he was come to Camelot he called King Pellinore vnto him and said. We vnderstand wel that we haue lost eight good knights of the table round, and by your aduise wee will chouse

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

chose eight againe of the best that we may find in this Court. Sir said King Pellinore, I shall comfalte you after my conceite the best. There are in your Court right noble knights both old and young, and therefore by mine aduise ye shal chose the one halfe of old, and the other halfe of young. Which be the old said King Arthur. Sir said King Pellinore, me seemeth that King Vrience that hath wedded your sister Morgan le fay, and the King of the Lake, and Sir Heruise de reuel a noble knight, and Sir Galagars the fourth. This is well deuised said King Arthur, and right so shall it be. Now which are the foure young knights said King Arthur. Sir said King Pellinore, the first is Sir Gawayne your nephew that is as good a knight of his time as any is in this land, and the second as me seemeth is Sir Griflet le fize de deue, that is a good knight and full desirous in armes and who may see him liue he shal proue a good knight. And the thirde as me seemeth is well worthy Sir Kay the Seneschall, for many times he hath done full worshipfully, and now at your last battaile he did full honourably for to undertake to slay two Kings. By my head said King Arthur, he is best worthy to be a knight of the round table of any that ye haue rehearsed, and he had done no more prowesse all the dayes of my life.

CHAP. LXIIII.

How Sir Tir was made Knight of the round table, and how Bagdemagus was displeased.

Then said King Pellinore, now shal I put to you two knights and ye shal chose which is most worthy, that is Sir Bagdemagus and Sir Tor my sonne, but because Sir Tor is my son, I may not praise him, but else and he were not my sonne, I durst say that of his age there is not in this land a better knight then he is, nor of better conditions, and loth to doe any wrong, and loth to take any wrong. By my head said King Arthur he is a passing good knight as any yee spake of this day, and that I know I full well, for I haue seene him proued, and he saith little, but he doth much more, for I know none in all this Court and he, were as well bozne on his mothers side as he is on your

and his Knights of the round Table.

side that is like him of prowesse and of might, and therefore I will haue him at this time and leaue Sir Bagdemagus till another time. And when they were so chosen by the assent of all the Barons, so were there found in their sieges euery knights name as afoze is rehearsed. And so were they set in their sieges, whereof Sir Bagdemagus was wonderous wroth that Sir Tor was so aduanced afoze him, and therefore sodainly he departed from the Court of King Arthur, and tooke his squire with him and rode long in a forrest till they came to a crosse, and there he alighted and said his prayers deuoutly. The meane while his squire found written upon the crosse that Bagdemagus should neuer retorne againe to the Court till hee had wonne a knights body of the round table, body for body. So Sir said his squire, heere I find written of you, therefore I bid you retorne againe to the Court. What shall I neuer, said Bagdemagus, till men speake of me great worship, and that I be worthy to be a knight of the round table. And so he rode forth, and by the way he found a branch of an holy hearbe that was the signe of the Dongreall and no knight found such tokens but he were a good liuer. So as Sir Bagdemagus rode to so many adventures it happened him to come to the roche there as the Lady of the Lake had put Merlin vnder a stone, and there hee heard him make great mone, wherefore Sir Bagdemagus would haue holpen him, and went to the great stone, and it was so heauy that an hundred men might not lift it vp. When Merlin wist that he was there he had him leaue his labour, for all was in vaine, and might neuer be holpen but by her that put him there. And so Sir Bagdemagus departed and did many adventures, and proued after a full good knight of prowesse, and came againe to the Court of King Arthur, and was made knight of the round table. And so on the morrow there fell new tidings and other adventures.

CHAP. LXV.

How King Arthur, King Vrience and Sir Accolon of Gaule charged an Hart and of their maruailous aduenrures.

Then it befell that King Arthur and many of his knights rode on hunting into a great forrest, and it happened

The Historie of Prince, ARTHUR

King Arthur King Vrience and Sir Accolon of Gaule followed a great Hart, for they thre were well horsed, and they chased so fast that within a while they thre were ten mile from their fellowship, and at the last they chased so sore that they slew their horses under them. When wer they al thre on foot and euer they saw the Hart afoze them passing weary and embushed. What will ye doe said King Arthur, we are hard bested. Let vs goe on foote said King Vrience till we may meete with some lodging. When were they ware of the Hart that lay su a great water banck, and a bzachet biting vpon his throte, and many other hounds came after. When King Arthur blew the pice and dight the Hart there. When King Arthur looked about him, and saw afoze him in a great water a little ship al apparelled with silke dowe to the water and the ship came straight vnto them, and landed on the sands. When King Arthur went to the banck and looked in, and saw none earthly creature therein. Sirs said the King come thence and let vs see what is in this ship. So they went in all thre and found it richly behanged with cloath of silk, and by that time it was darke night, there suddainly wers about them an hundred torches set on all the sides of the shippe bozds and gaue a great light. And therewith came out twelue faire damosels and saluted King Arthur on their knees and called him by his name, and said he was welcome, and such chere as they had he should haue of the best. And the King thanked them faire. Therewith they led the King and his two fellows into a faire chamber, and there was a cloth laid richly besene of all that belonged to a table, and there they were serued of all wines and meates that they could thinke of, that the King had great maruaile for he fared neuer better in his life for one supper. And so when they had supped at their leasure King Arthur was led into a chamber, a richer besene chamber saw he neuer none, and so was King Vrience serued, and led into another chamber and Sir Accolon was led into the thrid chamber passing rich and well besene. And so were they laid in their beds right easily, and anon they fell on sleepe, and slept meruailously soze all that night. And on the morrow King Vrience was in Camelot abed in his wines armes Morgan le fay. And when he awoke he had great meruaile how he came there, for on the euen afoze

he

and his Knights of the round Table.

hee was about a two dayes iourney from Camelot. And also when King Arthur awoke, he found himselfe in a darke prison, hearing about him many complaints of wofull Knights.

CHAP. LXVI.

How King Arthur tooke vpon him to fight for to be deliuered out of prison, & also to deliuer twentie Knights that wer in prison.

Then said King Arthur, what are ye that so complaine. We are here twentie good Knights prisoners said they, and some of vs haue lien here seauen yere and some more and some lesse. For what cause said King Arthur. We shall tell you said the Knights. The Lord of this Castle is named Sir Damas, and he is the falsest Knight that liueth, and full of treason, and a very coward as any liueth, and hee hath a yonger brother a good Knight of prowesse, his name is Sir Onzlake, and this traitor Damas the elder brother wil giue him no part of his liuelihood but that Sir Onzlake kepeth through his prowesse, and so he kepeth from him a full faire mannor and a rich, and ther in Sir Onzlake dwelleth worshipfully and is well beloued of the people and comminallty. And this Sir Damas our master is as euil beloued, for he is without mercy and he is a very coward, & great war hath bene betwen them both, but Sir Onzlake hath euer the better, & euer he proffereth Sir Damas to fight for the liuelihood, body for body, but he will doe nothing; or else to find a Knight to fight for him, vnto that Sir Damas hath granted to find a Knight but he is so euill and hated that there is no Knight that wil fight for him. And when Sir Damas saw this, that there was no Knight that would fight for him, he hath dayly layen in a waite with many Knights with him to take all the Knights in this countrey to see and espie their aduenures, he hath taken them by force and bzought them into his prison, and so hee toke vs euerrally as wee rode on our aduenures, and many good Knights haue died in this prison for hunger, to the number of eightene Knights and if any of vs al that is here or hath bene would haue foughten with his brother Onzlake, he would haue deliuered vs, but because this

Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

Sir Damas is so false and so full of treason, we would neuer fight for him to die for it. And we be so leane for hunger, that vnnethes we may stand on our feete. God deliuer you for his mercy said King Arthur. Anon therewith came a damosell vnto King Arthur, and asked him, what chere. I can not tel said he. Sir quoth she, and ye will fight for my Lord, ye shall be deliuered out of prison or else ye shall neuer escape with your life. Now said King Arthur, that is hard, yet had I rather to fight with a knight then to die in prison, if I may be deliuered with this and all these prisoners said King Arthur, I will doe the battaile. Yes said the damosell. I am ready said King Arthur if I had a horse and armor. Ye shall lacke none said the damosell. We someth damosell I should haue seene you in the Court of King Arthur. Nay said the damosell I came neuer there I am the Lords daughter of this Castle. Yet was shee false, for she was one of the damosels of Morgan le fay. Anon shee went vnto Sir Damas, and told him how hee would doe battaile for him. And so he sent for King Arthur, and when hee came hee was well coloured and well made of his limbes, and that all the knights that saw him said it were pittie that such a knight should die in prison. So Sir Damas and he were agreed that he should fight for him vpon this couenant that al the other knights should be deliuered, and vnto that was Sir Damas sworn vnto King Arthur, and also to doe this battaile to the uttermost. And with that all the twentie knights were brought out of the darke prison into the hall and deliuered. And so they all abode to see the battaile.

CHAP. LXVII.

How Sir Accolon found himselfe by a well, and he tooke vpon him to doe battaile against King Arthur.

Turne we vnto Sir Accolon of Gaule, that when he awoke he found himselfe by a deepe wel side within halfe a fote in great perill of death and there came out of that fountaine a pipe of bluer, and out of that pipe ranne water all on high in stone of marble. And when Sir Accolon saw this, hee blessed him

and his Knights of the round Table.

him and said Iesus saue my Lord King Arthur and King Vrience for these damosels in this ship haue betraied vs, they were diuels and no women, and if I may escape this misadventure I shall destroy all where I may find these false damosels that vse inchantments. And with that there came a dwarfe with a great mouth and flat nose, and saluted Sir Accolon, and said how he came from Dyene Morgan le fay and she greeteth you well and biddeth you to bee strong of hart, for yee shall fight to morrow with a knight at the houre of prime, and therefore she hath sent you here Excalibur King Arthurs sword and the scabbard, and she desireth you as you loue her that ye doe the battail to the uttermost without any mercy, like as ye haue promised her when ye spake together in priuate, and what damosell that bringeth her the knights head that ye shall fight withall, shee will make her a rich Duene for euer. Now I vnderstand you well said Sir Accolon, I shall hold that I haue promised her, now I haue the sword, when saw yee my Lady Duene Morgan. Right late said the dwarfe. When Sir Accolon took him in his armes, and said. Recommend me vnto my Lady Duene Morgan, and tell her that all shall be done as I haue promised her, or else I will die for it. Now I suppose said Sir Accolon she hath made al these crafts and enchantments for this battel. Ye may wel beleue it said the dwarfe. Right so came a knight and a Lady with sixe squires, and saluted Sir Accolon and prayed him to arise and come and rest him at his manor. And so Sir Accolon mounted vpon a boide horse and went with the knight vnto a faire manor by a priorie, and there he had passing good chere. When Sir Damas sent vnto his brother Sir Ontlake, and bad him make him ready by to morrow at the boile of prime, and to be in the field to fight with a good knight for he had found a good knight that was ready to doe battaile at al points. When this word came vnto Sir Ontlake he was passing heauie, for he was wounded a little to fore through both his thighes with a speare, and made great mone, but for all hee was wounded he would haue taken the battell in hand. So it happened at that time by the meanes of Morgan le fay Sir Accolon was lodged with Sir Ontlake, and when he heard of that

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

battaile, and how Sir Onzlake was wounded, he said he would fight for him, because Morgan le fay had sent him Excalibur and the scabbard for to fight with the knight on the morrow, this was the cause Sir Accolon took the battaile in hand. Then Sir Onzlake was passing glad, and thanked Sir Accolon hartly that he would doe so much for him. And therewith Sir Onzlake sent word to his brother Sir Damas that he had a knight that for him should be ready in the field by the houre of prime. So on the morrow King Arthur was armed and well horsed, and asked Sir Damas, when shall we goe to the field. Sir said Sir Damas ye shal heare masse. And when masse was done there came a squire on a great horse & asked Sir Damas if his knight were ready, for our knight is ready in the field. Then King Arthur mounted on horse backe and there were all the knights and commons of the countrey, and so by all aduises there were chosen twelue goodmen of the countrey for to waite vpon the two knights. And as King Arthur was vpon horse backe there came a damosell from Morgan le fay and brought vnto King Arthur a sword like vnto Excalibur, and the scabbard, and said vnto King Arthur. Morgan le fay sendeth you here your sword for great loue. And he thanked her, and wend it had bene so, but she was false, for the sword and the scabbard was counterfeit, brittle and false.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of the battaile betweene King Arthur and Sir Accolon.

And then they dressed them on both parties of the field, and let their horses run so fast, that either smote other in the middle of their shields with their speares, that both horses and men went to the ground, and then they started vp both and drew out their swords. And in the meane while that they were thus fighting came the damosell of the Lake into the field that had put Merlin vnder the stone and she came thither for the loue of King Arthur, for she knew how Morgan le fay had so ordained that King Arthur should haue beneaine that day, and therefore she came to saue his life. And so they went egerly to doe their

and his Knights of the round Table.

their battaile, and gaue manie great strokes. But alway King Arthurs sword was not like Sir Accolons sword, so that for the most part every stroke that Sir Accolon gaue the wounded King Arthur sore, that it was maruaille that he stood, and alway his blood fell fast from him. When King Arthur beheld the ground so sore be blooded hee was dismaied, and then he deemed treason that his sword was changed, for his sword was not still, as it was wont to doe, therefore was he sore adread to be dead, for euer him seemed that the sword in Sir Accolons hand was Excalibur, for at every stroke that Sir Accolon stroke, he drew blood on King Arthur. Now knight said Sir Accolon to King Arthur, keepe thee well from me, but King Arthur answered not againe, and gaue him such a buffet on the helme that he made him to scope, nigh falling to the ground. Then Sir Accolon withdrew him a little and came on with Excalibur on high and smote King Arthur such a buffet that he fell nigh to the earth. When were they both wroth and gaue each other many sore strokes but alwayes King Arthur lost so much blood that it was maruaille that he stood on his feete, but he was so full of knighthood that knightly he endured the paine. And Sir Accolon lost not a drop of blood, therefore he wared passing light, and King Arthur was passing feeble and thought verily to haue died. But for all that he made countenance as though he might endure, and held Sir Accolon as short as he might, but Sir Accolon was so bold because of Excalibur that he wared passing hardy. But almenthat beheld them said they saw neuer knight fight so well as did King Arthur considering the blood that he bled, and all the people were soze for him but the two brethren would not accord, then alway they fought together as fiere knights, and King Arthur withdrew him a little for to rest him, and Sir Accolon called him to battaile and said. It is no time for me to suffer thee to rest and therewith he came fierly vpon King Arthur, and King Arthur was wroth for the blood that he had lost, and smote Sir Accolon vpon the helme so mightily that hee made him nigh fall to the earth, and there with King Arthurs sword brak at the crosse and fel in the grasse among the blood, and the pomell and the handle he held in his hand.

hand. When King Arthur saw that, he was greatly afeard to die, but alwayes he held up his shield and lost no ground, no bated noz chere.

CHAP. LIX.

How King *Arthur*s sword that he fought with brake and how he recovered of Sir *Accolon* his owne sword *Excalibur*, and overcame his enemy.

Then Sir *Accolon* began to say thus with words of treason. Knight thou art overcome and maist no longer endure, and also thou art weaponlesse, and thou hast lost much of thy blood, and I am full loth to sleigh thee, therefore yeld thee to me as recreant. Nay said King *Arthur*, I may not so, for I have promised to doe the battaile to the uttermost by the faith of my body while my life lasteth, and therefore I had rather to die with honour then to live with shame, and if it were possible for me to die an hundred times, I had rather so often die then to yeld me to thee, for though I lacke weapon and am weaponlesse yet shall I lacke no worship, and if thou sleigh me weaponlesse, it shall be to thy shame. Well said Sir *Accolon*, as for the shame I wil not spare. Now kepe thee from me said Sir *Accolon*, for thou art but a dead man. And therewith Sir *Accolon* gave him such a stroke, that he fel nigh to the earth, and would not have King *Arthur* to crie him mercy. But King *Arthur* pressed vnto Sir *Accolon* with his shield and gave him with the pomell in his hand such a buffet that he went thre strides back. When the damosell of the lake beheld King *Arthur* how full of prowess and worthinesse his body was, and the false treason that was wrought for him to have slaine him, she had great pittie that so good a knight and so noble a man of worship should be destroyed. And at the next stroke Sir *Accolon* strooke him such a stroke, that by the damosells enchauntment the sword *Excalibur* fell out of Sir *Accolons* hand to the earth. And therewith King *Arthur* lightly leapt to it and quickly gave it in his hand, and forthwith he perceived clearly that it was his good sword *Excalibur*, and said. Thou hast bene from me al too long,

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and much damage hast thou done me. And therewith he espied the scabbard hanging by Sir *Accolons* side, and suddenly he leapt to him and pulled the scabbard from him, and anon threw it from him as farre as he might throw it. Whanight said King *Arthur* this day thou hast don me great damage with this sword. Now are ye come to your death, for I shall not warrant you but that ye shall be as well rewarded with this sword or we depart aunder, as thou hast rewarded me, for much paine have ye made me to endure, and have lost much blood. And therewith King *Arthur* rushed vpon him with all his might, and pulled him to the earth, and then rushed off his helme, and gave him such a buffet on the head, that the blood came out of his eares nose and mouth. Now will I sleigh thee said King *Arthur*. Sleigh me ye may said Sir *Accolon* and it please you, for ye are the best knight that euer I found, and I see well that God is with you, but for I promised to doe this battaile said Sir *Accolon* to the uttermost and neuer to be recreant while I lived, therefore shall I neuer yeld me with my mouth, but God doe with my body what he wil. And then King *Arthur* remembred him, and thought he should have sene this knight. Now tel me said King *Arthur*, or I will sleigh thee, of what countrey art thou, and of what Court. Sir *Whanight* quoth Sir *Accolon*, I am of the Court of King *Arthur* and my name is *Accolon* of *Gaule*. Then was King *Arthur* more dismaied then he was before, for then he remembred him of his sister *Morgan le fay*, and of the enchauntment of the ship. Wh Sir *Whanight* said he, I pray thee tell me who gaue thee this sword and by whom had ye it.

CHAP. LXX.

How Sir *Accolon* confessed the treason of *Morgan le fay*, and how she would have caused her brother King *Arthur* to be slaine.

Then Sir *Accolon* bethought him and said. What worth this sword for by it have I gotten my death. It may wel be said King *Arthur*. Now Sir said Sir *Accolon* I wil tel you. This sword hath bene in my keeping the most of these twelue monethes, and *Queene Morgan le fay* King *Vrience* wife sent it

maye yesterday by a swarte to this intent that I should sleie King Arthur her brother, for ye shall understand that King Arthur is the man which mee most hateth in this world, because that he is the most of worship and of prowesse of any of her blood. Also she loueth me out of measure as her paramoure, and I her againe. And if she might bring about for to sleie King Arthur with her crafts, she would sleie her husband King Vrience light, and then had she me deuised to be King in this land, and so for to raigne, and she to be my Queene, but that is now done said Sir Accolon, for I am sure of my death. Well said King Arthur, I fele by you ye would haue bene King in this land, it had bene great damage for to haue destroyed your Lord said King Arthur. It is truth said Sir Accolon, but now haue I told you the truth, wherefore I pray you that ye will tell me of whence ye are, and of what Court. Oh Sir Accolon, said King Arthur, now I let thee to wit that I am King Arthur to whom thou hast done great damage, when Sir Accolon heard that, he cried out a loud. Oh my gracious Lord haue mercy on me, for I knowe you not. Oh Sir Accolon said King Arthur, mercy shall thee haue, because I fele by thy words at this time thou knowest not my person. But I understand well by thy words that thou hast agreed to the death of my person, and therefore thou art a traitour. But I blame thee the lesse for my sister Morgan le fay by her false crafts made thee to agree and consent to her false luffe, but I shall be auenged vpon her and I trow, that all Christendome shall speake of it. God knoweth I haue honoured her and worshiped her more then any of my kin, and more haue I trusted her then mine owne wife and all my kin after. When King Arthur called the keepers of the field and said. Sirs come hither, for here we be two knights that haue fought vnto a great damage to vs both, and like each one of vs to haue slaine other, if it had happened so: and had any of vs knowne other, here had bene no battaile nor stroke stricken. When al aloud cried Sir Accolon vnto all the knights and men that there were gathered together, and said to them in this manner wise. Oh my Lords, this noble knight that I haue fought withall which me full sore repenteth, is the most man of prowesse,

of worship, and of worship that in all the world liueth, and himselfe King Arthur our most soueraigne liege Lord and King, and with great mishap and great misadventure haue I done this battaile against my King, and Lord, that I am bolken withall.

CHAP. LXXI.

How King Arthur accorded the two brethren and delluered the twentie Knights and how Sir Accolon died.

Then all the people fell downe on their knees and cried King Arthur mercie. Wherfore shall ye haue said King Arthur, here may ye see what aduentures befallenth oftentimes to knights, how I haue fought with one of mine owne knights to my great damage and his hurt. But Sirs because I am sore hurt and he both, and haue great neede of a litle rest, ye shall understand my opinion betwene you two brethren, as to the Sir Damas for whom I haue bene champion and the selfe of this knight, yet will I iudge because ye Sir Damas are called a very proud knight and full of villany, and no worth of prowesse of your deedes, therefore I will that ye giue vnto your brother all the whole manor with the appurtenance vnder this maner of forme that Sir Onzlake hold the manor of you and yearly to giue you a palfrey to ride vpon, for I will become you better to ride on then on a courser. Also I charge the Sir Damas vpon paine of death that thou neuer disturb these erraunt knights that ride on their aduentures. Also that thou restore these twentie knights which thou hast long kept in prison of all their harnais, and that thou content them, and if any of them come to my Court and complaine of thee, thy head thou shalt die therefore. Also Sir Onzlake as to you because ye are named a good knight and full of prowesse, and true and gentle in all your deedes this shall be your charge. And that in all goodly hast ye come to me and to my Court, and ye shall be a knight of mine and if your deedes be thereafter, I shall so aduance you by the grace of God that ye shall in short time begin ease for to liue as worshipfully as doth your brother Sir

Sir Damas. God thanke you of your largesse and of your great goodnesse. I shall be at all times at your commandement. For Sir says Sir Onclake as God shall I was hurt but late with an aduenturous knight through both my thighes which grieved me sore, and else had I done this battaille with you. Would to God said King Arthur it had been so, for then had not I bene hurt as I am, I shall tell you the cause why, for I had not bene hurt as I am had not it bene mine olone sword that was stolen from me by treason, and this battaille was ordeined aforehand for to haue slaine me, and so it was brought to the purpose by false engine and treason and false enchantment. Alas said Sir Onclake, that is great pittle that so noble a man as you are of your bedes and prowess, that any man or woman might find in their hearts to work any treason against your person. I shall rewepe then said King Arthur in that space by the grace of God, howel me said King Arthur, how far am I from Camelot. Sir ye are two daies journey thence. I would faine be at some place of worship said King Arthur, that I might tell my selfe. Sir said Sir Onclake, hereby is a rich abbey of monks of our elders foundation but thye miles hence, so then the king took his leave of all the people, and mounted on horseback and Sir Accolon with him. And when they were come to the abbey, he let fetch surgeons and leeches to search his wound, & Sir Accolon both, but Sir Accolon died within foure dayes after, for he had bled so much blood that he might not live, but King Arthur was well recovered. And when Sir Accolon was dead, he let send him on horsebacke with five knights of Camelot and said. Weare him to my sister Morgane le fay, and say that I send him hir for a present, and tel her that I haue my sword Excalibur and the scabbard. So they departed with the king.

CHAP. LXXII.

How *Morgan le fay* would haue slaine King *Prince* her husband, and how *Sir Ewaine* her sonne saved him.

The meane while *Morgan le fay* had wend that King Arthur had bene dead. So on a day she espied King Arthur how

and his Knights of the round Table.

was in his bed sleeping, then she called vnto her a damsel and counsel said. Go fetch me my Lords sword, for I saw her sometime to lley him then now. Madam said the damsel, and if ye lley my Lord, ye can neuer escape. Care not thou said *Morgan le fay*, for now I see my time in the which it is best to dole, and therfore he the fast and fetch me the sword. When the damsel departed, & found Sir Ewaine sleeping vpon a bed in another chamber, so she went vnto Sir Ewaine and waked him, and bid him arise and waite vpon my Lady your mother, for she will lley the king your father sleeping in his bed, for I go to fetch her his sword. Well said Sir Ewaine goe on your way and let me deale. Anon the damsel brought the sword vnto *Morgan* with quaking hands, and she lightly took the sword and drew it out, and went boldly to the beds side, and as she drew and where she might lley him best. And as she lift the sword for to smite, Sir Ewaine leapt vnto his mother and caught her by the hand and said. Ah fiend what wilt thou doe to my son? were not my mother, with this sword I would smite thy head. Ah said Sir Ewaine, men say that *Merlin* was begetter of a diuell, but I may say an earthly diuell bare me. Oh said *Morgan le fay* said *Morgan* haue mercy vpon me, I was tempted with a diuell, wherefore I crie thee mercy, I wil neuer more do so, and saue my worship and discover me not. But the damsel said Sir Ewaine I wil glue you so you wil neuer be able to do such deeds. Nay, son said she, and thereto I mak you assurance.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How *Morgan le fay* made great sorrow for the death of Sir Accolon, and how she stole away from King Arthur the scabbard.

Then came tidings vnto *Morgan le fay*, that Sir Accolon was dead, and his body brought to the Church and how King Arthur had his sword againe. But when *Morgan* wist that Sir Accolon was dead she was so sorowful that nere her hart was. But because she would not that it were knowne she kept her countenance outward, and made no semblance of sorrow. But well she wist and if she abode till her brother Arthur came thither,

thither, there Morgana got some helife. When she went unto Morgana Guenever, and asked her leave to ride into the country, she may abide said Morgana Guenever till your brother the king come home: I may not said Morgana le fay, for I have such hastie thinges that I may not tarry. Well said Morgana Guenever, ye may depart when ye will. So early on the morrow as it was day, she took her horse and rode all that day and the most part of the night, and on the morrow by nyght she came to the same abbey of Anna wheras King Arthur lay and she knowing that he was there, she asked where he was. And they answered and said that he had lain him downe in his bed to sleepe, for he had had but little rest these three nights. Well said she I charge you that none of you awake him till I awake him my selfe. And then she alight from her horse, and thought to keale away Excalibur his good sword, and so she went straight unto his chamber and no man durst disobey her commandement, and there she found King Arthur a sleape in his bed, and Excalibur in his right hand naked, when she saw that, she was passing heauie that she might not come by the sword without she had wakened him and then she wold well that she had beene dead. When she took the scabbard and went her way on her horsebacke. When the king awoke and missed his scabbard he was wondrous wroth, and asked who had beene there. And they said his sister Morgana had beene there, and had put the scabbard under her mantell, and was gone. Alas said King Arthur, falsely haue ye watched me. Sir said they, al we durst not disobey your sisters commandement. Ah said the king let fetch the best horse that may be found, and bid Sir Onzlake arme him in all haste, and take an other good horse and ride with me.

So anon the king and Sir Onzlake were well armed, and rode after this Lady. And as they rode they came by a crosse and found a coloward, they asked the poore man if there came any Lady late riding that way. Sir said this poore man, right late came a Lady riding with fourie horses, and to yonder forrest she rode. When they spurred their horses and followed fast after, and within a while King Arthur had a sight of her, that he cha-

sed

sed as fast as he might. And when she spied him followinge she rode through the forrest a great pace till she came to a crosse. And when she saw she might not escape, she rode on a horse wherby, and said. Whatsoeuer becommeth of me, my sword shall not haue this scabbard. And then she let throt the sword into the depth of the water, and it sunke, for it was so heauie of gold and precious stones. When she rode into a valey where many great stones were. And when she saw that she might not be overtaken, she thop herself horse and man by a great stone into a great mable stone. So anon King Arthur and Sir Onzlake came wheras the king might know his sister was, and one knight from an other. Ah said the king, what say ye to the vengeance of God, and now am I forrie that my sister Morgana is befallen. And then he looked for the scabbard, but it could not be found. So he returned again to the abbey where he came from. When King Arthur was gone, she turned into a stone like as she and they were before, and said. Sirs, what say ye for where soeuer we will, for my brother Arthur shall find me.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How Morgana le fay saued a Knight that should haue beene drowned, and how King Arthur returned home againe to Camelot.

Then said Morgana, said ye my brother Sir Arthur. Ye said to your knights right wel, and that ye should haue found and he might haue stirren from one stede, for by my arminge all countenance he would haue caused us to haue fled. I beleue you wold say Morgana. Anon after she rode the next with a knight leading an other knight on his horse before him bound hand & foot, to haue drowned him in a fontaine. When the knight was bound, she asked what he would doe. He said, I will doe what ye say. She said he, I will doe what ye say. For I found him with my wife, and she shall haue the same death anon. What were pittie said Morgana. Now what say you ye knight, is it truth that he saith of you said she to the knight that should be drowned. Nay truly

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

madam, he saith not ought of me. Of whence be yee said Morgan le fay, and of what countrey. I am of the Court of King Arthur, and my name is Manassen, cousin unto Sir Accolon of Gaulle. Ye say well said she, and for the love of him ye shal be delivered, ye shall have your aquerlary in the same case that ye be in. And so Manassen was loosed and the other knight bound. And anon Manassen unarmed him, and armed himselfe in his harness, and so mounted on his horse, and the knight afoze him, and so theye him into the fountaine, and drowned him. And then he rode to Morgan le fay, and asked her if she would anything unto King Arthur. Told him not that I rescued the for the love of him, but for the love of Sir Accolon, and tel him that I feare him not while I can make me and them that bee with me in likeness of bones, and let him wit I can doe much more when I see my time. And so she departed and went into the countrey of Gore, and there was shee richly received, and made that Castle and townes passing strong, for alwayes she dread much King Arthur. And when King Arthur had well rested him at that abbey he rode to Camelot, and found his Queene and his barons right glad of his coming. And when they heard of his strange adventures, as is afoze rehearsed, they all had meruaile of the falschode of Morgan le fay, & many knights wished her brent. When came Manassen to the Court and told the King of his adventure. Told said the King, she is a kind sister, I shall so be avenged on her and I live, that al christens dome shall speake of it. So on the morrow there came a damosell from Morgan to the King, and shee brought with her the richest mantell that ever was seene in the Court, for it was set as ful of precious stones as might stand on by another, and there were the richest stones that ever the King saw. And the damosell said, your sister sendeth you this mantell, and desireth you that ye will take this gift of her, and in what thing she hath offended you, shee will amend it at your some pleasure. When the King beheld this mantell it pleased him much, but he said but little.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. LXXV.

How the damosell of the lake saved King Arthur from a mantell which should have brent him.

And with that came the damosell of the Lake unto the King and said. Sir I must speake with you in priuate. Say on said the King what ye will. Sir said the Lady, put not on you this mantell till ye have seene more and in no wise let it not come upon you nor on no knight of yours, till ye command the bringer thereof to put it upon her. Told said King Arthur, it shall be done as ye counsaile me. And then he said unto the damosell that came from his sister. Damosell this mantell that thou brought me, I will see it upon you. Sir said she, it will be some me to weare a knights garment. By my head said King Arthur, ye shall weare it or it come on my backe, or any part that here is and so the King made it to be put upon her, and with that she fell downe dead, and neuer more spake word more, and was brent to coles.

When was the King wondrous wroth more then he was afoze, and said unto King Vrience. My sister your wife, is alway a traitor to betray me, and wel I wot either yee or my nephew your sonne is of counsaile with her, to haue me destroyed, but as for you said King Arthur to King Vrience, I deeme not greatly that ye be of her counsaile, for Sir Accolon confessed to me with his stone mouth that she should haue destroyed you as well as me, therefore I hold you excused, but as for your sonne Sir Ewaine I hold him suspect, therefore I charge you put him out of my Court. So Sir Ewaine was charged. And when Sir Ewaine wist of it, he made him ready to goe with him, and said. Who so banished my cousin Ewaine, shall banish me. So theye departed and rode in a great Forrest. And so they came to an Abbey of Monkes, and there were well lodged. But when the King wist that Sir Gawaine was departed from the Court, there was made great sorrow among all the states. Now said King Arthur Sir Gawaines brother, we haue lost too good a knight for the lone of one. So on the morrow they had masse

Gawaine

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

in the abbey, and so they rode forth till they came to a great forest, then was Sir Gawaine ware in a baley by a Turret of twelue faire damofels and two knights armed upon two great horses, and the damofels went to and fro by a tree. And then was Sir Gawaine ware how there hung a white shield on that tree, and euer as the damofels came by it, they spit vpon it, and some threw mire vpon it.

CHAP. LXXVI.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine met with twelue faire damofels, and how they complained vpon Sir Marhaus.

Then Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine went and saluted them, & asked why they did that despite to the shield. Sirs said the damofels, we shall tell you. There is a knight in this countrey that oweth this white shield, and he is a passing good knight of his hands, but he hateth all Ladies and gentlewomen, and therefore we doe all this despite to the white shield. I shall say to you said Sir Gawaine to the Ladies, it becometh well a good knight to despise all Ladies and gentlewomen, and also peradventure though he hate you he hath some cause, and peradventure that he loueth in some other places good Ladies and gentlewomen, and to be loued againe, if he be such a man of prouesse as ye speake of. Now what is his name. Sirs said they, his name is Marhaus the kings sonne of Ireland. I know him well said Sir Ewaine, he is a passing good knight as any is liuing, for I saw him once proued at a jousting, whereas many knights were gathered and that time there might no man withstand him. Ah said Sir Gawaine, damofels me thinketh ye are to blame, for it is to suppose that he that hug that shield ther, he will not be long there from, and then may those knights match him on horse backe, and that is more your worship then thus, for I will abide no longer, to see a knight thus dishonoured. And there with Sir Ewaine and Sir Gawaine departed a little from them and then were they ware where Sir Marhaus came riding vpon a great horse straight toward them. And when the twelue damofels saw Sir Marhaus, they ran into the Turret and they had ben

and his Knights of the round Table.

benne smitten so that some of them fell by the way. When the one of the knights of the Turret, dressed his shield, and said an hee, Sir Marhaus defend thee, and so they ran together that the knight brake his speare on Sir Marhaus, and Sir Marhaus smote him so hard that he brake his necke. That saw the other knight of the Turret, and dressed him toward Sir Marhaus, and they met so egerly together, that the knight of the Turret was soone smitten downe, horse and man sturke dead.

CHAP. LXXVII.

How Sir Marhaus Iusted with Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine, and ouerthrew them both.

And then Sir Marhaus rode vnto his shield, and saw how it was defowled & said. Of this despite I am a part auenged, for hee loue that gaue me this white shield I shall were thee, and hang mine here in thy stead. And so hee hung it about his necke, and then he rode straight to Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine, and asked them what they did there: They answered that they came from King Arthurs Court for to seeke adventures. Well said Sir Marhaus, here am I ready a knight aduenturous that will fight any aduenturer that ye will desire of me. And so departed from them to fetch his raunge. Let him goe said Sir Ewaine to Sir Gawaine, for he is a passing good knight as any is liuing in this world, I would not by my will that any of vs two should match with him. Nay said Sir Gawaine not so, it were better to ha if hee were not assayed were hee neuer so good a knight. Well said Sir Ewaine, I will assay him afoze you, for I am more weaker then ye are, and if he smite me downe then may ye reuenge me. So these two knights came together, with great raundon, that Sir Ewaine smote Sir Marhaus that his speare hurt in peces on the shield, and Sir Marhaus smote him so that horse and man he bare to the earth, and hurt Sir Ewaine on the left side. When Sir Marhaus turned his horse, and rode toward Sir Gawaine with his speare. And when Sir Gawaine saw that, hee dressed his shield, and they aduentred their speares, and they came together with all the might of their horses,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

horses, that either knight smote other so hard in the middell of their two shields that Sir Gawaine speare brake, and Sir Marhaus speare held and therewith Sir Gawaine and his horse rushed downe to the earth, and lightly Sir Gawaine arose vpon his fete, and drew out his sword, and dressed him toward Sir Marhaus on fote. And Sir Marhaus saw that and drew out his sword, and began to come to Sir Gawaine on horsebacke. Sir knight said Sir Gawaine alight on fote, or else I will sleie thy horse. Gracerie said Sir Marhaus of your gentlesse ye teach me curtesie, for it is not according for one knight to bee on fote and the other on horsebacke, and therewith Sir Marhaus set his speare against a tree and alighted, and tied his horse to a tree, and dressed his shield, and either came to other egerly, and smot together with their swords that their shields flew in cantels, and they brused their helmes and their habberkes, and wounded either other. But Sir Gawaine, fro it passed nine of the clock, waxed euier stronger and stronger, for then it came to the houre of noone, and thize his might was increased. All this espied Sir Marhaus, and had great wonder how his might increased, and so they wounded each other passing sore. And when it was past noon, & drew toward euensong time, Sir Gawaines strength waxed passing faint, that vnneth hemight not endure any longer, and Sir Marhaus waxed bigger & bigger. Sir knight, said Sir Marhaus, I haue well felt that ye are a passing good knight, and a maruailous man of might as euer I felt any, while it lasteth, and our quarels are not great and therefore it were pittie to do pou hurt, for I perceiue ye are passing feeble. Ah said Sir Gawaine gentle knight, ye say the words that I should say, and therewith they toke off their helmes and either kissed other, and there they swore together either to loue other as brethren. And Sir Marhaus prayed Sir Gawaine to lodge with him that night. And so they toke their horses and rode toward Sir Marhaus place. And as they rode by the way, Sir Gawaine said, Sir knight I maruaile that so valiant a man as ye be loue not ladies nor gentlewomen. Sir said Sir Marhaus, they name me wrongfully that giue me that name, but well I wot it is the damosels of the Turret that so name me, and other such as they be. Now

shall

and his Knights of the round Table.

will I tell you for what cause I hate them so. For they bee enchantrilles and enchantresses the most part of them, and bee a curse to good of his hoby and of prouesse as any man can be. For they will make him a coward for to haue the better of him. This is the principal cause that I hate them. And to all knights and gentlemen to my seruice as a knight ought to be. And in the french booke rehearseth there were many knights that outmatched Sir Gawaine, for al the thize might that he had, as Sir Launcelot du lake, Sir Tristram, Sir Bors de Gaule, Sir Perciuaile and Sir Marhaus, these five knights had the better of Sir Gawaine. When within a while they came to Sir Marhaus place, the which was in a little wozie, and there they alight, and ladies and damosels vnarmed them and looked to their hurts, for they were all thize hurt. And there they had there good lodging with Sir Marhaus and good chere. Sir knight he wist that they were King Arthurs sister sonnes, and he kept them all the chere that lay in his power. And so they lodged there about a seauen nights, and were right well eased of their wounds, and at the last departed. Now said Sir Marhaus, we will not depart so lightly, for I will bring you through the forrest. And rode day by day well a seauen dayes to find any aduenture. At the last they came into a great forrest, which was named the countrey and forrest of Arroy, and the countrey of strange aduentures. In this countrey Sir Marhaus came neuer knight sithen it was christned, to see strange aduentures. So long they rode till they came into a deepe valey full of stones, and thereby they saw a streame of water, and aboue therby the head of the streame was a faire fountaine, and thize damosels sitting thereby. And when they rode vnto them, and either saluted other, and the eldest had a garland of gold about her head, and shee was thize winters of age or more, and her haire was white vnder the garland. The second damosel was of thirtie winters of age, with a coronet of gold about her head. The thirde damosell was of thize yeares of age, and she had a garland of flowers about her head. When these knights had well beholden them, they asked them the cause why they sat at that fountaine. And

M

be

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

he here said the damosels for this cause. If we may see any erraunt knights, to teach them vnto strange adventures, and ye be thre knights that seek adventures, and we thre damosels, and therfore each of you must chosse one of vs. And when ye haue done so, we will leade you vnto thre high wates, and there each of you shall chosse a way, and his damosell with him. And this day twelue monethes ye must mete here againe, and God spare you your liues, and therfore ye must plight your troth. This is well said, said Sir Marhaus.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

How Sir Marhaus, Sir Gawaine and Ewaine met three damosels, and each of them took one.

How that we chosse every each of vs a damosel. I shal tel you said Sir Ewaine. I am the youngest and most weakest of you both, therefore I will haue the eldest damosell, for she hath seene much and can helpe me best when I haue neede, for I haue most neede of helpe of you both. Then said Sir Marhaus, I will haue the damosell of thirtie winters of age, for she falleth best to me. Then said Sir Gawaine, I thanke you, for ye haue left me the youngest and the fairest, and she is most louest to me. Then every damosell took her knight by the raine of the bzible and brought them to the thre wayes, and there was their oath made to mete at the fountaine that day twelue moneth, and they liued. So they list and departed, and each knight set his Lady behind him. And Sir Ewaine took the way that lay west, and Sir Marhaus took the way that lay south and Sir Gawaine took the way that lay north. Now wil we begin at Sir Gawaine that held that way till he came to a faire mannoze, whereas dwelleth an old knight and a good housholder, and there Sir Gawaine demanded of the old knight if he knew any adventures in that countrey. I shall shew you some to morrow said the old knight and that maruailous. So on the morrow they rode into the Forrest of adventures, til they came to a land, and thereby they found a crosse, and as they stood and looked, there came by them the fairest knight, and the seemest

and his Knights of the round Table.

It is man that ever they saw, making the the greatest moane that ever man made. And then he was ware of Sir Gawaine, and saluted him, and prayed to God to send him much worship. As to that said Sir Gawaine graunty. Also I pray to God that he send to you honour and worship. Ah said the knight I may lay that on side, for sorow and shame cometh to mee after worship.

CHAP. LXXIX.

How a Knight and a dwarfe stroue for a Lady.

And therewith he passed to that one side of the land. And on that other side Sir Gawaine saw ten knights that bowed still, and made them ready with their shields and spears against that one knight that came by Sir Gawaine. When this one knight aduentred a great speare, and one of the ten knights encountred with him, but this wofull knight smote him so hard that he fel ouer the horse taile. So this dolorous knight serued them all, and smote them downe horse and man, and all he did it with one speare. And when they were all ten on foote, they went to that one knight, & he stood on stil and suffered them to pull him down off his horse, and bound him hand and foote, and tyed him vnder his horse belly, and so led him with them. Wherupon said Sir Gawaine, this is a dolefull sight to see yonder knight so to be entreated, and it seemeth by the knight that he suffereth them to binde him so, for he maketh no resistance. So verily said his host, that is truth, for and if that he would, they were all to weake so to doe to him. Sir said the damosell vnto Sir Gawaine, me seemeth that it were your worship and honour to helpe that dolorous knight, for me thinketh he is one of the best knights that ever I saw. I would be glad to doe for him said Sir Gawaine, but it seemeth that he wil haue no helpe. When said the damosell, mee seemeth ye haue no list to helpe him. Right thus as they talked, they saw a knight on that other side of the land, all armed saue the head. And on that other side of the land came a dwarfe on horsebacke all armed saue the head, with a great mouth and a short nose. And the dwarfe when

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

hee came nigh to the knight and said. *Where is the Lady that should mete vs here. And therewithall she came forth out of the wood. And then they began to strive for the Lady. For the knight said he would haue her, & the dwarfe said he would haue her. Wel ye doe wel said the dwarfe, ponder is a knight at the crosse, let vs put it to his iudgement and as he deemeth euen so be it. I will well said the knight. And then they went all three into Sir Gawaine, and told him wherefore they two stroue. Well Sirs said he, will ye put the matter into my hand. Yea Sirs said they both. Now damosell, said Sir Gawaine, ye shall stand betwene them both, and whether ye list better to goe to, he shall haue you. And so when the damosell was set betwene them both, she left the knight and went to the dwarfe. And the dwarfe took her and went his way singing. And the knight went his way with great mourning. Then came there two knights all armed, and cried on high. Sir Gawaine knight of King Arthur, make thee ready in all hast and iust with me. So they ran together that either fell downe. And then on foote they drew their swords and did full actually. In the meane while the other knight went vnto the damosell and asked her why she shode with that knight, and if ye would abide with me, I wil be your faithfull knight. And with you will I be said the damosell, for with Sir Gawaine I may not find in mine hart to bee with him. For now here was one knight that discomforted ten knights and at the last hee was cowardly led away, and therefore let vs two goe our way while they fight. And Sir Gawaine fought with that other knight long. But at the last they were both accorded. And then the knight prayed Sir Gawaine to lodge with him that night. So as Sir Gawaine went with this knight he demaunded him. What knight is he in this countrey that smot down the ten knights. For when he had done so manfully, he suffered them to bind him hand and foote, and so led him away. Ah said the knight that is the best knight I trow in the world, and the man most of prowesse, and he hath bene serued so as he was euen now more then ten times, and he is named Sir Pelleas, and he loueth a great Lady in this countrey, and her name is Ecarde, and so when hee loued her,*

there

and his Knights of the round Table.

there was cried in this countrey a great iustes three daies. And all the knights of this countrey were there and also the gentlewomen. And who that proued him the best knight should haue a passing good sword and a serklet of gold, and the serklet the knight should giue it to the fairest Lady that was at those iustes. And this knight Sir Pelleas was the best knight that was there, and there were five hundred knights but there was neuer man that euer Sir Pelleas met withal, but that he strooke him downe, or else from his horse. And euery day of the three dayes he strooke downe twentie knights therfore they gaue him the price. And forth withall he went there as the Lady Ecarde was and gaue her the serklet, and said openly that she was the fairest Lady that was there, and that would he proue vpon any knight that would say nay.

CHAP LXXX.

How King Pelleas suffered himselfe to be taken prisoner because he would haue a sight of his Lady, and how Sir Gawaine promised him for to get to him the loue of his Lady.

AND so he chose her for his soueraigne Lady, and neuer to loue other but her. But she was so proude that she had scorn of him, and said that she would neuer loue him, though he would die for her. Wherefore al Ladies and gentlewomen had scorn of her because she was so proude, for there were fairer then she, and there was none that was there but and Sir Pelleas would haue proffered them loue, they would haue loued him for his noble prowesse. And so this knight promised the Lady Ecarde to follow her into this countrey and neuer to leaue her till she loued him. And thus he is here the most part nigh her, and lodgeth by a prioste, and euery wake she sendeth knights to fight with him. And when he hath put them to the worst, then will he suffer them wilfully to take him prisoner, because he would haue a sight of this Lady. And alway she doth him great dispite, for sometime she maketh her knights to tie him to the horse-tail, and sometime binde him vnder the horse belly. Thus in the most shamefullest wise that she can thinke he is brought to her.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

her. And al this she doth for to cause him to leaue this countrey, and to leaue his louing. But all this cannot make him to leaue, for and hee would haue fought on foote hee might haue had the better of the ten knights as well on foote as on horseback. Alas said Sir Gawaine it is great pittie of him, and after this night in the morning I will goe seeke him in the Forrest, to doe him all the helpe that I can. So on the morrow Sir Gawaine tooke his leaue of his host Sir Carados, and rode into the Forrest. And at the last hee met with Sir Pelleas making great mone out of measure, so each of them saluted other, and asked him why he made such sorrow. And as it is aboue rehearsed, Sir Pelleas told to Sir Gawaine, but alway I suffer Sir knights to fare so with me as ye saw yesterday, in trust at the last to winne her loue, for she knoweth wel that al her knights should not lightly winne mee and mee list to fight with them to the uttermost. Wherefore and I loued her not so sore, I had rather to die an hundred times and I might die so often rather then I would suffer this great despite, but I trust she wil haue pittie vpon me at the last, for loue causeth many a good knight to suffer for to haue his intent, but alas I am vnfortunate. And therewith he made so great mone and sorrow, that vnneth hee might hold him on horseback. Now said Sir Gawaine leaue off your mourning, and I shall promise you by the faith of my body to doe all that lieth in my power to get you the loue of your Lady, and thereto I will plight you my troth. Ah my good friend said Sir Pelleas of what Court are ye, I pray you that you will tell me. And then Sir Gawaine said, I am of the Court of King Arthur, and am his sisters sonne. And King Lot of Orkeney was my father and my name is Sir Gawaine. And then hee said, my name is Sir Pelleas, borne in the Isles, and of many Isles I am Lord, and neuer haue I loued Lady nor Damosell till now in an unhappie time, and Sir knight sith ye are so nigh cousin vnto King Arthur and a Kings sonne, therefore I pray thee betray me not, but helpe me, for I may neuer come by her but by the helpe of some good knight, for she is in a strong Castle here fast by within this foure mile, and ouer all this countrey she is Lady of. And so I may neuer come vnto her presence,

but

and his Knights of the round Table.

but as I doe suffer her knights for to take me, and but if I did so, that I might haue a sight of her, I had bene dead long afore this time, and yet had I neuer one faire word of her, but when I am brought before her, she rebuketh me in the foulest manner that euer she may. And then her knights take me and my horse and my harneis and put me out of the gates, and she will not suffer me to eate nor drinke, and alwayes I offer mee for to be her prisoner, but so she will not take me, for I would desire no more what paines soeuer I had, so that I might haue a sight of her dayly. Well said Sir Gawaine, all this shall I amend, and ye will doe as I shall deuise. I wil haue your horse and your armour, and so will I ride to her Castle, and tell her that I haue slaine you, and so shal I come within to her, to cause her to cherish me, and then shall I doe my true part, that yee shall not faile to haue her loue.

CHAP. LXXXI.

How Sir Gawaine came to the Lady Ettarde and lay by her, and how Sir Pelleas found them sleeping.

AND there withall Sir Gawaine plight his troth vnto Sir Pelleas to be true and faithfull vnto him. When they had plight their troth the one to the other, they changed horses and harneis, and Sir Gawaine departed, and came to the Castle whereas stood the pavilions of this Lady without the gate. And as soone as Ettarde had espied Sir Gawaine, she fled toward the Castle. Then Sir Gawaine spake on high and had her a-bide, for he was not Sir Pelleas, I am an other knight that hath slaine Sir Pelleas. Doe off your helme said the Lady Ettarde that I may behold your visage. And when she saw it was not Sir Pelleas she made him to a light, and led him vnto her Castle, and asked him faithfully whether he had slaine Sir Pelleas. And he said yea. And then Sir Gawaine told her that his name was Sir Gawaine, and of the Court of King Arthur, and his sisters sonne. Truly said she, that is great pittie, for hee was a passing good knight of his body, but of all men on liue I hated him most, for I could neuer be quiet for him. And for that

that yee haue slaine him I shall bee your woman, and doe any thing that may please you. So thee made Sir Gawaine good chere. When Sir Gawaine said that he loued a Lady, and by no meanes she would loue him. She is too blame said Ectorde and she wil not loue you, for that ye be so well borne a man and such a man of prowesse there is no Lady in this world too good for you. Will ye said Sir Gawaine promise me to doe all that ye may doe by the faith of your body, to get me the loue of my Lady. Yea Sir said she, and that I promise you by the faith of my body. Now said Sir Gawaine, it is your selfe that I loue so well, therefore I pray you hold your promise. I may not chouse said the Lady Ectorde, but if I should be forsworne And so she graunted to fulfill all his desire. And then it was in the moneth of May, that she and Sir Gawaine went out of the Castle and supped in a pavilion and there was a bed made and there Sir Gawaine and the Lady Ectorde went to bed together, and in another pavilion she layed her damosels, and in the third pavilion shee laid part of her knights. For then she had no dread nor feare of Sir Pelleas. And there Sir Gawaine lay with her, doing his pleasure in that pavilion two daies and two nights, against the faithfull promise that he made to Sir Pelleas. And on the third day in the morning early Sir Pelleas armed him, for he had not slept sith that Sir Gawaine departed from him. For Sir Gawaine had promised him by the faith of his body to come vnto him to his pavilion by the morrow within the space of a day and a night. When Sir Pelleas mounted on horsebacke, and came to the pavilions that stood without the Castle and found in the first pavilion three knights in their beds, and three squires lying at their feet. Then went he to the second pavilion and found foure gentlewomen lying in foure beds. And then hee went to the third pavilion, and found Sir Gawaine lying in a bed with his Lady Ectorde, and either clapping other in armes, and when hee saw that, his heart almost burst for sorow and said. Alas that ever a knight should be so found so false, and then he took his horse and might no longer abide for sorow, And when he had ridden nigh halfe a mile, he turned againe and thought to sleigh them both, and when he saw them

them both, he so fast sleeping, burneth hee might hold him on horsebacke for sorow and said thus to himselfe, though this knight be neuer so false I will not sleigh him sleeping for I will neuer destroy the high order of knighthood. And therewith hee departed againe, and left them sleeping. And as hee had ridden halfe a mile he returned againe, and thought then to sleigh them both, making the greatest sorow that any man might make. And when he came to the pavilions he tied his horse to a tree, and pulled out his sword naked in his hand, and went straight to them wheras they lay together, and yet he thought that it were great shame for him to sleigh them sleeping, and laid the naked sword overthwart both their throates, and then hee took his horse and rode forth his way, making great and wofull lamentation. And when Sir Pelleas came to his pavilions, he told his knights and squires how he had sped, and said thus to them. For your true and faithfull service that you haue done to me I shall give you all my goods, for I will goe vnto my bed, and neuer arise untill I be dead. And when I am dead I charge you that ye take the heart of my body and beare it vnto her becomen two silver dishes, and tell her how I saw her lie in her pavilion with the false knight Sir Gawaine. Right so Sir Pelleas unarmed himselfe and went to his bed, making the greatest sorow that ever man heard. And then Sir Gawaine and the Lady Ectorde wakened out of their slepe, and found the naked sword overthwart both their throates. When she knew well that it was Sir Pelleas sword. Alas said she to Sir Gawaine ye haue betrayed me and Sir Pelleas also, for yee told me that yee had slaine him, and now I know well it is not so, he is on liue. And if Sir Pelleas had bene as courteous to you as you haue bene to him, ye had bene a dead knight, but ye haue deceived me and betrayed me falsly, that all Ladies and damosels may beware by you and me. And therewith Sir Gawaine made him ready and went into the Forrest. When it hapned that the damosell of the Lake Nimue met with a knight of Sir Pelleas, which went on soote in the Forrest making great moone and she asked him the cause of his sorow. When the wofull knight tolde her how that his master and Lord was betrayed through a

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

that night and a Lady, and how he would neuer arise out of his bed til he were dead. Bzing me to him anon, and I wil warrant his life, that he shall not die for loue, and shee that hath caused him to loue, she shall be in as euill a plite as he is now; it be long, for it is no toy of such a presumptuous Lady that wil haue no mercy of such a valiant knight. Anon the knight brought her vnto his Lord and master. And when she saw him so lying in his bed, she thought shee had neuer seene so likely a knight. And therewith she threw an enchantment vpon him, and he fel on slepe. And in the meane while she rode to the Lady Ectard, and charged that no man should waken him til she came again. And so within two houres she brought the Lady Ectard thither, and both the Ladies found him on slepe. Loe said the damosell of the Lake, ye ought to be ashamed to murder such a knight. And therewith she cast such an enchantment vpon her, that she loued him out of measure, that well nigh shee was out of her mind. Wh Lord Iesus said the Lady Ectard, how is it befallen me that I now loue him which I before most hated of all men liuing. This is the rightwise iudgement of God said the damosell of the Lake. And then anon Sir Pelleas awoke, and looked vpon the Lady Ectard. And when he saw her, he knew her, and then hee hated her more then any woman alieue and said, Goe thy way hence thou traitresse, come no more in my sight. And when she heard him say so, she wept and made great sorow out of measure.

CHAP. LXXXII.

How Sir Pelleas loued no more the Lady Ectard by the meanes of the damosell of the Lake, whom he loued euer after during his life.

Sir knight Pelleas said the damosell of the Lake, take your horse and come with me out of this countrey and yee shall haue a Lady that shall loue you. I will well said Sir Pelleas for the Lady Ectard hath done me great dispite and shame. And there he told her the beginning, and how he had purposed neuer to haue artsen till that he had bene dead, and now God hath sent me

and his Knights of the round Table.

me such grace that I hate her as much as euer I loued her, thanked be our Lord God. Thanke me said the damosell of the Lake, Anon Sir Pelleas armed him, and took his horse and commanded his men to bzing after his pavilions and his stuff where as the damosell of the Lake would assigne. So the Lady Ectard died for sorow, and the damosell of the Lake reioyced Sir Pelleas, and loued together during their liues.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

How Sir Marhaus rode with the damosell, and how he came to the Duke of the South Marches.

Now returne we vnto Sir Marhaus that rode with the damosell of thirtie winters of age southward, and so they came into a deepe Forrest, and by fortune they were nighter, and rode long in a deepe way, and at the last they came vnto a courtlage, and there they demanded harbour. But the man of the courtlage would not harbour them for no treating that they could treat, but thus much the good man said. And ye will tak the aduenture of your lodging, I shall bzing you there yee shall be lodged. What aduenture is that, that I shall haue for my lodging said Sir Marhaus. Yee shall wit when yee come there said the good man. What aduenture so euer it bee I require thee bzing me thither said Sir Marhaus, for I am weary and my damosel and my horse. So the good man went and opened the gate, and within an houre he brought him vnto a faire Castle. And then the poore man called the porter, and anon he was let into the Castle and forthwith hee shewed to the Lord how hee had brought him a knight errant and a damosell that would be lodged with him. Let him come in said the Lord, it may hap that they shall repent that they took their lodging here in this Castle. So Sir Marhaus was let in with torch light, and there was a goodly sight of young men that welcommed him. And then his horse was led into the stable and he and his damosell were brought into the hall, and there stood a mightie Duke and many goodly men about him. When this Lord asked him how he bight, and from whence he came, and with what man

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

he dwelled. Sir said he I am a knight of King Arthurs, and knight of the table round, and my name is Sir Marhaus, and I am bozne in Ireland. And then said the Duke vnto him, that me soze repenteth, and the cause is this. I loue not thy Lord, nor none of all thy fellows that be of the table round, and therefore ease thy selfe this night as well as thou mayest for to morrow I and my sixe sonnes shall match with thee, if God will. Is there none other remedy, but that I must haue adoe with you and your sixe sonnes at once said Sir Marhaus. So said the Duke, for this cause I made mine auow, Sir Gawaine slew my seauen sonnes in an encounter, and therefore I made mine auow, that there should neuer no knight of King Arthurs Court lodge with me, or comethere as I might haue adoe with him but that I should reuenge the death of my seuen sonnes. Sir I require you said Sir Marhaus, that ye will tell me, if it please you, what your name is. Wit ye will that I am the Duke of the South marches. Ah said Sir Marhaus I haue heard say that ye haue bene a long time a great foe vnto my Lord King Arthur and to his knights. What shall ye feele to morrow said the Duke, shall I haue adoe with you said Sir Marhaus. Yea said the Duke, thereof thou shalt not chuse, therefore take thee to thy chamber where thou shalt haue all that to thee belongeth. So Sir Marhaus departed and was led to a chamber, and his damosell was also led to her chamber. And on the morrow the Duke sent to Sir Marhaus, that he should make him ready. And so Sir Marhaus arose and armed him, and then there was a masse sung afore him, and after brake his fall, and so mounted on horsebacke in the Court of the Castle where they should doe the battaile. So there was the Duke all ready on horsebacke cleane armed, and his sixe sonnes by him, and euery each had a speare in his hand, and so they encountred, whereas the Duke and two of his sonnes brake their speares vpon him, but Sir Marhaus held by his speare and touched none of them.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

How Sir Marhaus fought with the Duke and his sixe sonnes and made them to yeeld them.

Then came the foure sonnes of the Duke by couples, and two of them brake their speares, and so did the other two. And all this while Sir Marhaus did not touch them. When Sir Marhaus ranne to the Duke, and so smote him with his speare, that horse and man fell to the earth, and so he serued his sonnes. And then Sir Marhaus alighted downe, and bad the Duke yeeld him or else he would sleigh him. And then some of his sonnes recovered and would haue set vpon Sir Marhaus. When said Sir Marhaus to the Duke. Hease thy sonnes or else I will doe the uttermost to you all. When when the Duke saw he might not escape death hee cried to his sonnes and charged them to yeeld them vnto Sir Marhaus. And they kneeled all downe, and put the pomels of their swords vnto Sir Marhaus. And he receiued them. And then they holpe their father. And there by a common assent promised vnto Sir Marhaus neuer to be foes vnto King Arthur, and thereupon at Pentecost after, he to come and his sixe sonnes and put them in the Kings grace. When Sir Marhaus departed, and within two daies his damosell brought him whereas was a great turnament that the Lady de Vauie had cried. And who that did best should haue a rich serklet of gold worth a thousand besaunts. And there Sir Marhaus did so nobly that hee was renowned to haue smitten downe fortye knights, and so the serklet of gold was rewarded him. Then he departed from thence with great worship. And within seven dayes after the damosell brought him to an Earles place, whose name was called Fergus, which after was Sir Tristrams knight. And this Earle was but a young man and late come to his lands, and there was a giant fast by him that hight Taulurd, and he had another in Cornewalle that hight Taulas that Sir Tristram slew when he was out of his minde. So this Earle made his complaint vnto Sir Marhaus that there was a giant by him that destroyed all his lands, and how he durst no where

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ride nor goe for him. Sir said Sir Marhaus, vseth he to fight on horsebacke or on foot? Ray said the Carle, there may no horse beare him he is so great. Well said Sir Marhaus then will I fight with him on foot. So on the morrow Sir Marhaus prayed the Carle that one of his men might bring him whereas the giant was, and so he was ware of him, for he saw him sit under an holy tree, and many clubbes of iron and gisardines about him. So Sir Marhaus dressed him to the giant, putting his shield afoze him, and the giant stert to a club of iron and came against Sir Marhaus as fast as he might drive, and at the first stroke he claue Sir Marhaus shield all to peces, and light on a stone and crushed it into the earth, and there he was in great perill, for the Giant was a wisely fighter, but at the last Sir Marhaus smote off his right arme aboue the elbow. Then the Giant fled, and the knight after him, and so hee droue him to a water but the Giant was so hie that he could not wade after him, and then Sir Marhaus made the Carle Fergus man to fetch stones, and with those stones he gaue the Giant many a soze knock, till at the last he made him to fall downe in the water, and so was he there drowned. Then Sir Marhaus went to the Giants Castle, and there he deliuered out of the Giants prison twentie foure Ladies, and twentie two knights, and ther he had riches without number, so that all the dayes of his life he was neuer poore man after. When he returned to the Carle Fergus, which greatly thanked him, and would haue giuen him halfe his lands, but he would take none. So Sir Marhaus dwelled with the Carle nigh halfe a yeeare, for he was soze brysed with the Giant, and at the last he took his leaue. And as he rode by the way, he met with Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine, and so by aduenture he met with foure knights of King Arthurs Court, the first was Sir Sagramore le desirous, Sir Osanna, Sir Dodinas le sauage, and Sir Felot of listnosse, and there Sir Marhaus with one speare smote downe these foure knights, and hurt them soze. So he departed and met at his day afoze set.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. LXXXV.

How Sir Ewaine rode with the damosell of threescore yeeres of age and how he gate the prisce at a turney.

Now turne we vnto Ewaine which rode westward with his damosell of threescore winters of age, and she brought him there as was a turneyment nigh the march of Wales. And at that turneyment Sir Ewaine smote downe thirtie knights, wherfoze the price was giuen him, and the price was a Iersalwcon and a white kede trapped with cloth of gold. So then Sir Ewaine did many strange aduentures by the meanes of the old damosell that went with him, and so she brought him vnto a Lady that was called the Lady of the Roche, which was a full curteous Lady. So there were in that countrey two knights that were brethren, and they were called two perilous knights, the one hight Sir Edward of the reed Castle, and the other hight Sir Hue of the reed Castle. And these two brethren had disherited the Lady of the Roch of a Baroney of lands by their extortion. And as Sir Ewaine lodged with this Lady, she made her complaint vnto him of these two knights. Adamant said Sir Ewaine they are too blame, for they doe against the high order of knighthood and the oath that they haue made, and if it like you I will speake with them because I am a knight of King Arthurs, and I will entreate them with fairenesse, and if they will not, I shall doe battaile with them in the defence of your right. Gramarcie said the Lady, and thereas I may not acquite you, God shall. So on the morrow the two knights were sent for that they should come thither to speake with the Lady of the Roch. And wit it well they failed not, for they cam with an hundred horses. But when the Lady saw them in this maner so many she would not suffer Sir Ewaine to goe out vnto them neither vpon suretie nor for faire language but she made him to speake with them out of a towre. But finally these two brethren would not be entreated, and answered that they would keep that they had. Well said Sir Ewaine, then wil I fight with one of you both, and proue vpon your bodies that ye

doe

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

doe wrong and extortion vnto this Lady. What will we not doe
saie the two brethren. For and we doe battaile, we two will
fight with one knight at once, and therefore if ye will fight so,
we will be ready at what houre ye will assigne vs. And if that
ye winne vs in plaine battaile, then the Lady shall haue her
land againe. We say well said Sir Ewaine, therefore make
you ready, so that ye be here to morrow in the defence of the
Ladys right.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

How Sir Ewaine fought with two Knights, and ouercame them.

Then was there peace made on both parties, that no trea-
son should be wrought on neither parties. So then the
knights departed and made them ready. And that night Sir
Ewaine had great chere. And on the morrow hee arose early
and heard masse and brake his fast and after rode vnto the
plaine without the gates, where houred the two brethren biding
him. When rose they together passing soe that Sir Edward
and Sir Hue brake their speares vpon Sir Ewaine. And Sir
Ewaine smote Sir Edward that he fell ouer his horse talle, and
yet brake not his speare. And then hee spurred his horse and
came vpon Sir Hue, and ouerthrew him, but they soon reco-
uered and dressed their shields, and drew their swords, and had
Sir Ewaine alight and doe his battaile to the uttermost. When
Sir Ewaine auoyded suddenly his horse, and put his shield a-
foze him and drew his sword, and so they dressed together, and
either gaue other great strokes. And there these two brethren
wounded Sir Ewaine passing soe, that the Lady of the Roche
wene that he would haue died. And thus fought they together
like hounes as men enraged and without reason. And at the
last Sir Ewaine smote Sir Edward vpon the helme such a buf-
fet that his sword karued him vnto his canel bone, and then Sir
Hue abated his courage. But Sir Ewaine pressed fast to haue
slaine him. And when Sir Hue saw that, he kneled vnto him and
yelded him vnto Sir Ewaine. And he of his gentlenesse receiued
his sword, and toke him by the hand and went into the Castle
together.

and his Knights of the round Table.

After, When the Lady of the roche was passing glad, and Sir
Ewaine made great mone for his brothers death. When the Lady
returned vnto her lands, and Sir Hue was commanded to
be in the court of King Arthur at the next feast of Pentecost.
Sir Ewaine dwelled with the Lady nigh halfe a yere, for
he was long as he might be whole of his great hurts. And then
came the terme day that Sir Gawaine should
goe to the crosse way, then euery knight drew him thither
as he had promised that they had made. And Sir Marhaus and
Sir Ewaine brought their damoels with them. But Sir Ga-
waine had lost his damoell, as it is afore rehearsed.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

How at the yeares end all the three Knights with their three da-
moels met at the fountaine

At the right at the twelue monethes end they met all three
knights at the fountaine, and their damoels. But the
damoell that Sir Gawaine had with him could say but little
of him. So they departed from the damoels and rode
through a great Forrest, and there they met with a messenger
that came from King Arthur, which had sought them wel nigh
a twelue moneth throughout all England, Wales, and Scot-
land, and was charged if that he might finde Sir Gawaine, and
Sir Ewaine, to bring them vnto the Court againe. And then
were they all glad. And so they praised Sir Marhaus to ride
with them vnto King Arthurs Court. And so within twelue
monethes they came to Camelot. And the King was passing glad
of their coming, and so were al they of the Court. When King
Arthur made them to sweare vpon a booke, to tell him all their
adventures that there had bene fallen them. all the twelue
monethes, and so they did. And there was Sir Marhaus well
liked. For there were knights that he had matched afore
time, and hee was named one of the best knights then liuing.
And at the feast of Pentecost, came the damoell of the Lake,
and brought with her Sir Pelleas. And at that high feast,
there was a great Jousting of knights, and of all the knights
that

that were at that Jousting, Sir Pelleas had the prize, and Sir Marhaus was named the next. But Sir Pelleas was so strong, that there might but a few knights hit him a buffet with a speare. And at that feast Sir Pelleas and Sir Marhaus were made knights of the table round, for there were two sieges void for two knights had bene slaine in those twelve monthes. And great joy had King Arthur of Sir Pelleas and of Sir Marhaus. But Sir Pelleas loved never after Sir Gawaine, but that he spared him for the love of King Arthur. But oftentimes at the Jousts and turneyments Sir Pelleas quitted Sir Gawaine, for so it is rehearsed in the French booke. So Sir Tristram many dayes after that, fought with Sir Marhaus in an Island, and there they did a great battaille, but at the last Sir Tristram slew him, and Sir Tristram was soze wounded, that beneath his might recover, and lay at a Juny halfe a yeare. And Sir Pelleas was a worshipfull knight, and was one of the four that achieved the Danegrell. And the damasell of the Lake made by her meanes that never he had adoe with Sir Lancelot du Lake, for whereas Sir Lancelot was at any Jousts or turneyment, she would not suffer him to be there at that day, but if it were on Sir Lancelots side.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

How twelve aged men embassadours of Rome come to King Arthur for to demand truage for the realme of Brittain.

When King Arthur had rested a while after long war, and held a royall feast and table round, with his allies of kings and princes and noble knights, all of the round table, there came into his hall, he sitting in his Throne royal, twelve aged men, bearing each of them a branch of Olive, in token they came embassadours and messengers from the Emperour Lucius, which had called at that time Brittain of Brittain, of the publicke weale of Rome, which said messengers after their entring and coming into the presence of King Arthur did unto him their obeysance in making to him reverence, and said to him in this wise. The highmighty Emperour Lu-

cus

doth cometh unto the King of Brittain greeting, commending him to knowlege him for thy Lord, and to send him the governance of this Realme unto the Emperour, which thy father and thy predecessors have payed as it is of record. And thou as a rebell not knowing him as thy soueraigne with, holdst and retainest contrary to the statutes and decrees made by the noble Julius Cesar conquerour of this Realme, and first Emperour of Rome. And if thou refuse his demand, and commandment, know thou for a certaine that he shall make strong wars against thee and thy Realme and lands, and shall chastise thee and thy subjects, that it shall be an ensample perpetual to all kings and princes for to denie their truage unto the noble Emperour which domineth upon the universall world. When when they had shewed the effect of their message, King commanded them to withdraw them and said hee would take advise of counsaile, and give to them an answer. When some of the young knights hearing their message would set upon them for to have slaine them, saying that it was their due unto al the knights there being present to suffer them to go to the King. Anon the King commanded that none of them upon paine of death to mistay them, ne doe to them any harme, and commanded a knight to bring them to their lodgings, and for that they have all that is necessary and requisite for them with the best chere, and that no daintie be spared, for the Romaynes have great Lords, and though their message please not my Court, yet I must remember mine honour, and for this the King let call all his Lords and knights of the round table to counsaile upon this matter, and desired them to say their advise. When Sir Cadur of Cornewalle spake and said, Sir this message liketh mee well, for wee have many dayes rested us, and have ben idle, and now I hope ye shall have some war on the Romaynes where I doubt not but wee shall get honour. I beleave well said King Arthur that this matter pleaseth thee well, but these answers may not be answered, for the demand grieveth me soze, for truly I will never paye a truage to Rome, wherefore I pray you to counsaile me. I understand that Belinus and Brenius knights of Brit-

taine, have had the Empire in their hands many dayes, and also Constantine the Emperour of Rome, which is an open sentence that his oyle is tribute to Rome, but of right we that be descended of them haue right to claime the title of the Empire.

CHAR. LXXXIX.

How the Kings and Lords promised vnto King Arthur ayde and helpe against the Romaines.

Then answered King Angulsh of Scotland, Sir ye ought of right to be above all other things, for vnto you is none like ne parelle in all christendome of might nor of dignity, and therfore you neuer to obey the Romaines, for when they reigned on vs, they distressed our elders, and put this land to great extorsions and tallages, wherefore I make here mine vowe to auenge me on them, and for to strength your quarrell I shall furnish twentie thousand good men of warre, and wage them on my costs, which I shall waite on you with my selfe when it shall please you. And the King of little Brittain, granted him to the same, thirtie thousand, wherefore King Arthur thanked them. And then every man agreed to make warre and to ayde after their power, that is to wit, the Lord of West Wales promised to bring thirtie thousand men. And Sir Bwalin, Sir Iders sonne with their cosins, thirtie thousand men. When Sir Lancelot with al other in likewise promised every man a great multitude. And when King Arthur vnderstood their courage and good will, he thanked them hartly, and after he let call the embassadors that they should heare this answer. And in presence of all his noble Lords and Knights he said to them in this wise. I will that yee returne vnto your Lord and Locourne for the common weale for the Romaines, and say to him, Of his demand and commandment I let nothing, and that I know of no truage ne tribute that I owe to him ne to none earthly creature nor prince chistian nor heathen, but I pretend to haue and occupy the Soueraintie of the empire, wherein I am entitled by the right of my predecessors, sometime Kings of this Land. And

Then they all delibered and fully concluded to goe with King Arthur with strength and power to Rome by the grace of God, to take possession in the Empire and subdue them that be contrary, wherefore I command him and al them of Rome that they make to me their homage, and to knowledgement to their Emperour and gouernour vpon paine that they enioyne. And then he commanded his treasurer to giue them great gifts, and to pay all their expences, and assigned Sir Gawaine to conuey them out of the land. And so they took their leave and departed for to goe toward their Lord, and took their way at Sandwich, and passed south by Flaunders, Almaine, the mountaines, and all Italy, untill they came to Lucius. And after the reuerence made they made relation of their voyage, like as tofore ye haue heard. When the Emperour Lucius had well heard and vnderstood their credence, hee was much moued as he had bene all enraged and said, I had supposed that Arthur would haue obeyed my commandment, and haue made himselfe as him well becomed or any other thing so. And Sir said one of the Senatours, let be such vaine words, for doe you to wit that I and my fellows were full soze a while to behold his cheere and countenance, I feare me that yee haue made a rod for your selfe, for hee entendeth to bee Lord of the Empire, which soze is to be doubted if he come, for he is another manner of man then yee wit, and holdeth the most noble court of the world, all other Kings nor Princes may not compare vnto his noble maintenance. On the next day we saw him in his great estate, which was the royallest that ever we saw in our dayes, for he was serued at the table with nine Kings and the noblest fellowship of other princes, Lords and Knights that bee in all the world, and every knight approued and like a Lord, and holdeth table round. And in his person the most manly man that liueth, and he is like to conquere al the world, for vnto his courage it is all too little, wherefore I aduise you to keepe well your marches and wayes in the mountaines. For certainly he is a Lord to be redoubted. And Sir Lucius before he departed I suppose to passe the mountaines and so into France, and there hereaue him of his lands with Genewages and other

might, for I will send for all them that bee subiect unto mine Empire of Rome to come into mine ayde. And forthwith sent old wise knights to these countries following. First to Ambage and Arrage, to Alexandrie, to Inde, to Germany, whereas the River of Cyphrus runneth into Asia, to Africa, and to Europe, to Craine, and to Plancy, to Araby, to Egypt, and to Damaske, to Damiet, and to Cayer, to Capadoce, and to Emoy, to Turkey, Bounce, and Bampouille, to Surry, and Galacy. All these were subiects to Rome, and many more, as Grece, Cyprus, Paphlagon, Calabre, Cateland, Bostingale, with many a thousand of Spaniards. When all these things, Dukes and admiralls assembled about Rome with sixtens kings at once with a wonderous great multitude of people. When the Emperour understood their coming, hee made ready his Romanes and all the people between him and the Germans. And also he had gotten with him fiftie Gyants, which had bene engendred of fiends, and they were ordained to kepe and garde his person, and to break the front of the battail of King Arthur. And thus he departed from Rome, and came to the mountaines of Saviory for to destroy the lands that King Arthur had conquered, and came to Colaine, and besieged a Castle there, and won it sone, and stuffed it well with two hundred Saracins and infidels. And after destroyed many faire countries, which King Arthur had won of King Claudas. And thus Lucius came with all his host, which were dispepled thre score miles in bredth, and commanded them to meete with him in Burgoine, for hee supposed to destroy the Realme of little Brittain.

CHAP. XC.

How King Arthur held a parliament at Yorke, and how hee ordeined in what manner the Realme should bee governed in his absence.

Now leave we off Lucius the Emperour and speake we of King Arthur, which commanded all them of his retinue to be ready at the feast of saint Hilary for to hold a parliament at

Yorke. And at that parliament was concluded that all the knights of the land should bee arrested, and to bee ready within thre dayes at Sandwiche, and there shewed hee unto all his knights he purposed to conquer the Empire, which he ought to have. And there he ordeined two gouernours of the realme, Sir Bawdewaine of Brittain for to countsaile him, and Sir Constantine sonne to Sir Cadour of Cornwal. And after the death of King Arthur was King of this realme. And in the presence of all his Lords hee resigned the realme, and Gueneuer his Quene unto them, where Sir Launcelot was wroth for he left Sir Tristran with the realme for the loue of Labeale loude. When Quene Gueneuer made great sorrow and lamentation for the departing of King Arthur, and swoned in such wise that the Ladies were in her chamber. Thus the King with his great army departed leaving the Quene and the realme in the gouernance of Sir Bawdewaine and Sir Constantine. And when he was on his way he said with an hie voice. If I die in that journey, I desire that Sir Constantine be mine heire, and King crowned of Brittain as next of my blood. And after departed and entered the sea at Sandwiche with all his army, with a great multitude of ships, gallees, cogges and bismons, sailing on the sea.

CHAP. XCI.

How King Arthur being shipped and lying in his cabin had a maruailous dreame, and of the exposition thereof.

As the King lay in his cabin in the ship, he fell into a slumbering sleepe, and dreamed a meruailous dreame, that a dreadful dragon deuoured much of his people, and he came flying out of the West, and his head was enameled with aurre, and his shoulders shined as gold, his belly like to a meruailous helow, and his taile was full of statters, and his feet were full of fine sables, and his clawes like fine gold, and his flame of fire flew out of his mouth, like as the flames of fire had flamed all on fire. After, him seemed that the sunne of the orient againe bore all black in a cloud, and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and his pawes as big as a post, he was ruged looking roughly, he was the foulest beast that euer man saw, he roared and roared so hideously that it was maruile to heare. Then the dreadfull dragon aduanced him and came in the winde like a faulcon, giuing great strokes to the Boze, and the boze hit him again with his grisly tuskes, that his breast was all bloody, and that the hot blood made all the sea red of his blood. Then the dragon flew a way all on an height, and came downe with such a might and smote the Boze on the ridge, which was ten fote large from the head to the taile, and smote the boze all to powder both flesh and bones that it sittered all abroad on the sea. And therewith the King awoke and was soze abashed of this dreame, and sent anon for a wise phylosopher, commanding him to tell him the signification of his dreame. Sir said the phylosopher the dragon that ye dreamed of betokeneth your owne person which saileth here, and the coulours of his wings be your realmes which ye haue won, and his taile which is all to tattered signifieth the noble knights of the round table. And the Boze that the dragon flew comming from the clouds betokeneth some tyrant that tormenteth the people, or else ye are like to fight with some gyant your selfe, being right horrible and abominable whose pære ye saw neuer in your dayes, wherefore of this dreadfull dreame doubt nothing, but as a conquerer comfort your selfe. When sone after this they had sight of land, and sayled till they arrived at Wircet in Flaunders, and when they were there he found many of his great Lords ready as they had beens commanded to waite vpon him.

CHAP. XCII.

How a man of the countrey told him of a meruailous Gyant, and how he fought and conquered him:

Then came to him an husbandman of the countrey, and told him how there was in the countrey of Constantine beside Brittain a great Gyant which had slaine, murdered and deuoured much people of the countrey, and had bene sustained seauen yeares with the children of the commons of that land

and his Knights of the round Table.

land; in so much that all the children be all slaine and destroyed, and now late he hath taken the duchesse of Brittain as she rode with her men, and had led her to his lodging which is in a mountaine for to rauish her and lye by her to her liues end, and many people followed her more then five hundred, but all they might not rescue her, but they left her striking and crying lamentably, wherefore I suppose that hee hath slaine her in fulfilling his foule lust of lechery, she was wife vnto your cousin Sir Howell, the which was full nigh of your blood. Now as ye are a rightfull King haue pittie on this Lady, and reuenge vs all as ye are a valiant conquerer. Alas said King Arthur, this is a great mischief, I had rather then the best realme that I haue that I had bene a furlong before him for to haue rescued that Lady. Now fellow said King Arthur canst thou bring me there where as this Gyant haunteth. Yea Sir said the good man, loe yonder wheras ye see the two great fires, there shall ye not faile to find him, and more treasure as I suppose, then is in all the realme of Fraunce. When King Arthur had understood this pitious case, he returned into his tent, and called vnto him Sir Kay and Sir Bediure, and commanded them secretly to make ready horse and harnais for himselfe and for them twaine, for after euenlong he would ride on pilgrimage with them twainely, vnto Saint Michaels mount. And then anon they made them ready and armed them at all points, and took their horses and their shields, and so they thre departed thence and rode forth as fast as they might, till they came vnto the furlong of that mount, and there they alighted, and the King commanded them to tarry there, and said hee would himselfe goe vnto that mount.

And so he ascended vnto the mount till hee came to a great fire, and there found hee a carefull widow wringing her hands and making great sorrow, sitting by a graue new made. And then King Arthur saluted her and demanded her wherefore she made such lamentation. Vnto whom she answered and said. Sir I might speake soft for yonder is a diuell, if he heare thee speake, he will come and destroy thee, I hold thee unhappy, what doest thou heare in this mountaine, for if ye were such fittle as yee be,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

be, ye were not able to make resistance against this diuel, here lyeth a duchesse dead, which was the fairest Lady of the world, wife vnto Sir Howell of Brittain, he hath murdered her in forcing her, and hath sit her vnto the nauell. Dame said the king, I come from the great conquerour King Arthur for to treat with that tyrant for his lyege people. He vpon such treties said the widow, hee setteth nought by the king nor by no man else. But and if thou haue brought King Archurs wife Dame Gueneuer he shal be gladder then if thou hadst giuen him halfe France. Beware approach him not to nigh, for hee hath ouercome and vanquished siftene kings, and hath made him a coateful of precious stones embrodred with their beards, which they sent him for to haue his loue for saluation of their people this last Christmas, and if thou wilt speak with him at yonder great fire he is at supper. Well said King Arthur, I wil accomplish my message for all your fearefull wordes, and went forth by the creast of that hill, and saw wher he sate at supper gnawing on a limbe of a man, belking his broad limbes by the fire & brichlesteethre damoels turning thre bitches whereon was broached twelue yong children late bozne like young birds. When King Arthur beheld that pitious sight, he had great compassion on them, so that his heart bled for sorrow, and hailed him saying in this wise. What that al the world weldesth giue thee short life and shameful death, and the diuell haue thy soule, why hast thou murdered the young innocent children, and this duchesse, therefore arise and dresse thee thou glutton, for this day shalt thou die of my hands. When anon the gyant start vp and took a great club in his hand, and smote at the king that his coronall fell to the earth. And King Arthur hit him againe that hee carued his belly and cut off his genitours that his guts and entrailes fell downe to the ground. When the Gyant with great anguish threwo away his club of iron, and caught the king in his armes that hee crushed his ribs. When the thre damoels kneeled downe and called vnto our Lord Iesus Christ for helpe and comfort of the noble King Arthur. And then King Arthur welfred and wrong that he was one while vnder and other while aboue. And so weltring and wallowing they roled downe the hill, till they came to the marks,

and his Knights of the round Table.

And as they so tumbled and welfred, King Arthur smote him with his dagger, and it fortunied they came vnto the place wher the two knights were that kept King Arthurs horse. When they saw the king fall in the Gyants armes they came and loosed him. And then King Arthur commanded Sir Kay to smite off the Gyants head, & to set it vpon a trunchon of aspeare and beare it to Sir Howell, and tel him that his enemy was dead. After let his head be bound to a Warbican that all the people may see and behold it, and goe ye two to the mountaine and fetch me my shield, and my sword, and also the great club of iron, and as for the treasure take it to you, for ye shall find there goods without number, so that I haue his kirtell and the club I desire no more. This was the fiercest Giant that euer I met with, saue one in the mount of Araby which I ouercome but this was greater and fiercer. When the knights fetched the club and the kirtell, and some of the treasure they tooke vnto themselves, and returned againe to the host. And anon this was knowne thzough all the countrey, wherefore the people came and thanked the king. And hee said againe, giue the thanks to God and part the goods among you. And after that King Arthur commanded his cousin Howell that he should ordeine for a Church to be builded vpon the same hill, in the worship of Saint Mighell. And on the morrow after the noble King Arthur remoued with his great host and came into the countrey of Champaine in a vale, and there they pight their pavilions. And the king being set at his dinner, there came in two messengers, of whom the one was Marshal of France, and said to the king that the Emperour was entred into France and had destroyed a great part thereof, and was in Burgoine, and had destroyed and made a great slaughter of people and burned townes and burrowes wherefore if thou come not hastily they must peepe by their bodies and goods.

CHAP. XCIII.

How King Arthur sent Sir Gawaine and others to Lucius the Emperour, & how they were assailed, & escaped with worship.

When King Arthur did call Sir Gawaine, Sir Bors, Sir Lionel and Sir Bediure and commanded them to goe straight to

to Lucius the Empercur, and say to him that hastily he remoue out of my land. And if he will not, bid him make him ready to battaile, and not distresse, the poore people. Then anon these noble knights dressed them on horsebacke, and when they came to the greene wood, they saw pight in a meddow many pavillions of like and diuers coulours beside a river, and the Emperours pavilion was in the middle within an egale displayed a bone, toward which pavilion our knights rode, and obtained Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors to doe the message and lest in ambushment Sir Lionell and Sir Bedluere. And then Sir Gawaine and Sir Bors did their message and commanded Lucius in King Arthurs name to auoide his land, or else shortly to dresse him to battaile. To whom Lucius answered and said. We shall returne to your Lord and say to him that I shal subdue him and all his lands. Then Sir Gawaine was soze angred, and said. I had rather then all France I might fight against thee. And so had I, said Sir Bors rather then all Brittain or Burgoine. When a knight named Sir Gainus nigh cousin to the emperour said. Doe how these Britons bee full of pride and boast, and they brag as though they bare vp all the world. Then was Sir Gawaine soze agreiued with the words, and drew out his sword and smote off Sir Gainus head. And anon therewith turned their horses and rode quer waters and thzough woods till they came to their ambushment, wheras Sir Lionell & Sir Bedluere were lying. The Romaines followed fast after on horsebacke and on foot ouer a champaine vnto a wood and then Sir Bors turned his horse and saw a knight come fast on, whom he smote thzough the body with a speare, that hee fell downe Marke dead on the ground. When came there Calibure, one of the strongest of Waup, and smote downe many of King Arthurs knights. And when Sir Bors saw him doe so much harme he dressed him toward him, and smote him thzough the brest, that he fell downe dead to the ground. When Sir Feldenak thought to reuenge the death of Gainus vpon Sir Gawaine but Sir Gawaine was anon ware thereof, and smote him on the head, which stroke stunted not untill it came to his brest. And then he returned and came vnto his fellows in the ambushment, and there was an encounter, for the ambushment brake on the Romaines,

maines, and flew and helved downe right the Romaines, and forced the Romaines to returne and flee. Whom our noble knights did chase vnto their tents. When the Romaines gathered more people and also some greke came on, and there was a new battaile and so much people, that Sir Bors and Sir Berel were taken. But when Sir Gawaine saw that, hee toke with him Sir Idrus the good knight, and said he would honour King Arthur but if he receiued them, and drew out his sword and followed them that led those two knights away with them, and he smote him that led Sir Bors, and toke Sir Bors from him and deliuered him vnto his fellows. And Sir Idrus in like wise receiued Sir Berel. Then began the battaile to be passing great, and our knights were in great teopardy, wherfore Sir Gawaine sent for succour vnto King Arthur, and that he hee him, for I am soze wounded and hurt, and that our prisoners must pay good out of number. And the messenger came vnto the King and shewed him the message. And anon the King did assemble his armie, but anon or hee departed the prisoners were come, and Sir Gawaine and his fellows gate the field and put the Romaines to flight, and after returned and came with their fellowship in such wise, that no man of worship was lost of them saue that Sir Gawaine was soze hurt. When the King did ransake his woundes, and comforted him. And thus was the beginning of the first iourney of the Britons and the Romaines. And there were slaine of the Romaines part more then ten thousand, and great ioy and mirth was made that same night in the host of King Arthur. And on the morrow after he sent all the prisoners into Paris, vnder the gard of Sir Lancelot and Sir Cadur, with many other knights.

CHAP. XCIII.

How Lucius sent certaine spies into ambush for to haue taken his Knights being prisoners, and how they were letted.

Now turne wee to the Emperour of Rome which espied that these prisoners should be sent to Paris, and anon he sent to lye in abush certaine knights and priuees with three

score thousand men for to rescue his knights and Lords that were prisoners. And so on the morrow as Sir Lancelot and Sir Cadore chiefest men and governours of all them that conueied the prisoners, as they would passe through a wood, Sir Lancelot sent certaine knights to espie if any were in the wood to let them. And when the said knights came into the wood, anon they espied and saw the great ambushment, and returned and told Sir Lancelot that there lay in waite above score thousand Romans. And then Sir Lancelot with such knights as hee had and men of warre, to the number of ten thousand put them in goodly array, and went and met with them, and fought with them manfully, and slew and detrenched many of the Romans, and slew many knights and admirall: of the Romaines and Saracins partie there was slaine the King of Lyly and three great Lords, Aladuke, Hecrawd and Heringdale. But Sir Lancelot fought so nobly that no man might endure a stroke of his hand, but whersoever he came he shewed his prowesse and his might, for he slew downe right on euery side, and the Romaines and Saracins fled from him as the sheepe from the wolfe or from the Lion, and put them all to flight that abode alive. And so long they fought that tyding came vnto King Arthur and anon hee apparraled him and came to the battail & saw how his knights had vanquished the battail, hee embraced them knight by knight in his armes, and said. Ye be worthy to wield all your honour and worship, there was neuer no King that had so noble knights as I haue. Sir said Sir Cadore, there was none of vs that failed other, but of the prowesse and manhood of Sir Lancelot were more then wonder to tell, and also of his tolines which did this day many noble feates of warre. And also Sir Cadore told who of his knights were slaine, as Sir Berell and other, Sir Moris and Sir Murrell two good knights. Then the King wept and wiped his eyes with a handkercher, and said: Your courage had nere hand destroyed you, for though ye had returned againe, ye had lost no worship, for I call it folly, knights to abide when they be overmatched. Nay said Sir Lancelot & the other, for once shamed may neuer bee recovered.

How a Senatour told to the Emperour Lucius of their discomfiture, and also of the great battail betweene King Arthur and Lucius.

Now leaue wee off the noble King Arthur and his noble knights which had won the field, and had brought their prisoners to Paris, and speake we of a Senatour that escaped from the battail and came to the Emperour Lucius and said to him. Sir Emperour I aduise thee to withdraw thee: what dost thou here, thou shalt win nothing in these marches but great brookes out of measure, for this day one of King Arthurs knights was worth in the battail an hundred of ours. Ife on this said Lucius, thou speakest cowardly, thy words grieve me more then all the losse that I haue had this day. When anon he sent forth a King that hight Sir Liomay with a great army, and bad him hye him fast afoze and he would hastily follow after. When was King Arthur priuily warned and sent his people to Soissons, and took by the towne and Castles from the Romaines. When King Arthur commanded Sir Cadore to take the reward, & to take with him certaine knights of the round table. And Sir Lancelot, Sir Bors, and Sir Key, Sir Maroke, with Sir Marchaus shall waite on your person. Thus the noble King Arthur dispeopled his host into diuers parts, to the end that his enemies should not escape. When the Emperour was entred into the vale of Soissons he might see where King Arthur was embattaild and his banners displayed, and saw that he was beset round about with his enemies, that needs he must fight or yeld him, for he might not flee, but said openly to the Romaines. Sirs I admonish you that this day ye fight and acquite you as men, and remember how Rome dominereth and is chiefe and head ouer all the earth and vniuersall world, and suffer not these Britons this day to abide against vs. And he therewith commanded his trumpets blow the bloody sounds, in such wise that the ground trembled and dindled. When the battail approached and shone and sholuted on both sides, and great

The Historie of Prince Arthur

great brooks wer smitten on both sides, many men were overthowne, hurt and slaine, and great ballances, prowesses and feates of warre were that day shewed, which were ouer long to recount the noble feates of euery man for they shoulde comprehend a whole volume. But in especiall of them King Arthur rode into the battaile, exhorting his knights to doe well. And he himselfe did as nobly with his hands as it were possible a man to doe, he drew out Excalibur his good sword and awaited euery where the Romaines were thickest and most grieved his people, anon hee dyessed him on that part and helpe and slew holone right, and rescued his people, and there he slew a great Gyant named Galapas, which was a man of a meruailous quantitie and hight, he thortned him and smote off both his legs by the knees saying. Now art thou better of a life to deale with then thou were, and after smote off his head, and the body flew Sir Sarasins in the falling downe. Where Sir Gawaine fought nobly, and slew thre admiralls in that battaile. And all the knights of the round table did full nobly. Thus the battaile endured long betwene King Arthur and Lucius the Emperour. Lucius had on his side many Sarasins that were slaine. And thus the battaile was great, and oftentimes that one partie was at a fozebele and anon at an afterdole, which endured long. At the last King Arthur espied where Lucius fought and did wonder with his owne hands, and anon he rode to him, and either smote other fierly and at the last Lucius smote King Arthur ouerthwart the visage and gaue him a large wound. And when King Arthur felt himselfe hurt, anon hee smote him againe with Excalibur that it cleft his head from the somet of his helm, and stinted not till it came beneath the breast. And then the Emperour fell bowne dead, and there ended he his life. When when it was knowne that the Emperour was slaine, anon all the Romaines with all their armie put them to flight. And King Arthur with al his knights followed the chase, and slew downe right all them that they might attaine. And thus was the victory giuen vnto the noble conquerour King Arthur. And there were slaine on the part of Lucius more then an hundred thousand. And after King Arthur did ransake their dead bodies, and

doe

and his Knights of the round Table.

he bury them that were slaine of his retinue, euery man according to the estate and degree that he was of. And those that were hurt hee caused the surgeons to search all their hurts and wounds, and commanded to spare no salues nor medicines till they were whole. When the King rode straight to the place where the Emperour Lucius lay dead, and with him hee found slaine the Soloman of Surrey, the King of Egypt and the King of Ethiopie, which were two noble Kings, with seuentene other Kings of diuers other regions. And also threescore Senators of Rome all noble men, whom the noble King Arthur did embaulme and gumme with many good aromatike gunnes, and after hee did curre them in threescore fold of cored cloth of Sendale, and then laid them in chests of lead, because they shoulde not chafe nor sauer, and vpon all these bodies were set their shields with their armes and banners to the end they shoulde be knowne of what countrey they were. And after hee found thre Senators that were a liue, vnto whom hee said. For to saue your liues, I will that ye take these dead bodies, and carry them with you vnto great Rome, and present them to the Potesstate on my behalfe, shewing him my letters, and tel him that I in my person shall hastily bee at Rome. And I suppose the Romaines shal be ware how they wil demand of me any tribute. And I command you that ye say when ye shal come to Rome vnto the Potesstate and all the counsaile and Senate, that I send vnto them these dead bodies for the tribute that they haue demanded. And if so be they be not content with these, I shall pay more at my comming, for other tribute owe I none nor none other will I pay. And mee thinketh this shoulde suffice for Brittain, Ireland and all Almaine with Germany. And furthermore I charge you to say to them that I command them vpon paine of their heads neuer to demand nor aske of me nor of my lands any tribute. When with this charge and commandement the thre Senators aforesaid departed with all the said dead bodies, the body of Lucius lying in a cart couered with the armes of the Empire all alone, and after allway two bodies of Kings in a Chariot, and then the bodies of the Senators after them and so went to ward Rome, and shewed their legation and

III

message

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

message to the Potestate and Senate, recounting the battaile done in France, and how the field was lost and most people and innumerable slain, wherefore they advised them in no wise to moue more warre against that noble conquerour King Arthur, for his might and prowesse is most to be doubted, seeing the noble Kings and great multitude of knights of the round table, to whome none earthly Prince may compare.

CHAP. XCVI.

How King Arthur after that he had atchieued the battaile against the Romaines, entred into Almaine, and so into Italy.

NOW turne we vnto King Arthur and his noble knights, which after the great battaile atchieued against the Romaines, entred into Lozaine, Brabant, and Flanders and then returned into hie Almaine, and so ouer the mountaines into Lumbardy, and after into Luskeine wherein was a Citie which in no manner of wise would yeld themselves nor obey, wherefore the noble King Arthur besieged it, and lay full long about it, and gaue many assaults to the Citie. And they within defended them valiantly. When on a time the King called Sir Florence a knight and told him that they lacked vitaille and not farre from hence be great forrests and great woods, wherein be many of mine enemies with much bestiall. I will that thou make thee ready and goe thither inforcing, and take with thee Sir Gawaine my nephew and Sir Whichard, and Sir Clegis, Sir Clemond, and also the captaine of Cardise, with many other more, and bring with you all the beastes that yee may get there. And anon these knights made them ready and rode out holts and hills through forrests and woodstill they came to a faire meadowe full of faire flowers and grasse, and there they rested them and their horses all that night, And in the springing of the day on the next morrow Sir Gawaine took his horse and stole away from his fellows to seeke some aduenture. And anon he was ware of a knight armed walking his horse eastly by a woods side, and his shield laced vnto his shoulder, sitting on a strong courser without any man save onely a page bearing

and his Knights of the round Table

bearing a mighty spear, and the knight bare in his shield three griffons of gold in sable carbuncle the chiefe of silver. When Sir Gawaine espied this gay knight he fettered his speare and rode straight vnto him, and demanded him of whence he was. What other answered and said he was a Luskeine, and demanded of Sir Gawaine. Thou proud knight what profferest thou me so boldly, here getest thou no prey, thou mayest proue when thou wilt, for thou shalt be my prisoner or thou depart. When said Sir Gawaine, thou vauntest thee greatly and speakest all too proud words I counsaile thee for al thy boast that thou make thee ready and take thy goere to thee, tofore greater game fall to thee.

CHAP. XCVII.

Of the battaile done by Sir Gawaine against a Sarasin, which after was taken and became christian.

Then they took their speares and ranne each at other with al the might they had, and smote each other through their shields into their shoulders, wherefore anon they drew out their swords and smote great strokes so that the fire sprang out of their helmes. When was Sir Gawaine all abashed, and with Galantine his good sword he smote him through the shield and thicke pabwerke made of thicke mailles and all so rushed and brake the precious stones, and made him a large wound that men might see both liuer and longes. When that knight groined, and bled him to Sir Gawaine, and with an awke stroke gaue him a great wound and cut a veine that grieved Sir Gawaine sore and he bled fast. When said the knight to Sir Gawaine, bind thy wound or thy blood change, for thou bee blæde st all thy horse and thy faire armes, for all the leeches of Brittain shall not stench thy blood, for whosoever is hurt with this blade hee shall neuer bee stench of bleeding. When answered Sir Gawaine, it grieveth mee but little, thy great words shall not feare me to lose my courage, but thou shalt suffer sene and sorrow as I depart: but tell me in haste who may stench my bleeding? What may I doe said the knight if I will, and so I will if thou wilt honour and aide me that I may be christned and belæue

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

on God, and thereof I require thee of my manhood, and it shall be great merit for thy soule. I am content said Sir Gawaine so God helpe me to accomplish all thy desire. But first tell mee what thou soughtest thus here alone, and of what land and language thou art. Sir said the knight my name is Priamus, and a great prince is my father and he hath bene rebel unto Rome, and hath ouer ridden many of their land. My father is lineally descended of Alexander and of Hector by right line. And Dike Iosue and Machabae is were of our linage. I am right inheritor of Alexandry and Affrike and of all the out Isles, yet will I be leue on the Lord that thou belieuest on, and for thy labour I shall giue thee treasure enough. I was so eleuated and taken in my heart that I thought no man my peere ne to me sembla ble. I was sent to this warre with seuen score knights, and now I haue encountred with thee which hath giuen me of fighting my fill. wherefore Sir knight I pray thee to tell me what thou art, and of thy being. I am no knight said Sir Gawaine I haue bene brought up many yeares in the garde robe, with the noble prince King Arthur for to take hede to his armour and his other aray and for to point his pauldres that belongeth to him selfe. At Christmas last hee made me yeoman and gaue mee horse and harnais and an hundred pound in money, and if fortune be my friend, I doubt not but to be well aduanced and holpen by my liege Lord. Ah said Priamus, if his knaues bee so haene and fierce, then his knights be passing good. Now for the Kings loue of heaven, whether you be knight or knaue, tell me thy name. By God said Sir Gawaine, now wil I tel the truth, my name is Sir Gawaine, and known I am in his noble court and in his chamber and on of the knights of the round table, he dubbed me a Duke with his owne hands, therefore grudge not if his grace is to me fortune and common, it is the goodnesse of God that lent to me my strength. Now said Sir better pleased said Priamus then if thou hadst giuen mee all the prouince of Paris the rich, I had rather to be torne with wild horses then any varlet should haue wonne such lots, or any page or piker should haue had the price of me, but now Sir knight I warne thee that hereby is a Duke of Lozaine with all his army, and hat

and his Knights of the round Table.

hath the noblest men of armes of all Dolphine and Lords of Lumberdy with the garnison of Godard, and sarasins of Southland to the number of thre score thousand of good men of warre wherefore but if wee flee and hee vs fast from hence it will doe harme to vs both, for we be sore hurt and wounded, and neuer like to recouer, but take hede to my page that he blow no hoene, for if hee doe, there bee housing here fast by an hundred good knights waiting vpon my person and if they take thee once, there shall no ransome of gold nor silver acquit thee. When Sir Gawaine rode ouer a water for to saue himselfe, and the knight followed after him, and so they rode forth till they came to his fellows that were in the meddow, whereas they had bene all the night. Anon as Sir Whichard was ware of Sir Gawaine and saw that he was hurt he ranne vnto him sorrowfully weeping, and demanded of him who it was that had so hurt and wounded him. And Sir Gawaine told how hee had fought with that man, and each of them had hurt other, and how hee had salues to heale them, but I can tell you other tidings, that soone wee shall haue adoe with many enemies. When Sir Priamus and Sir Gawaine alighted and let their horses graze in the meddow, and forth with there they vnarmed them, and then the hot blood ranne downe freshly from their wounds. And Priamus toke from his page a viole full of foure waters that came out of Paradise, and with certaine balme nointed their woundes, and washed them with that water, and within an houre after they were both as whole as euer they were. And then with a trumpet they were all assembled vnto counsaile, and there Priamus told them what Lords and knights had swozne to rescue him, and that without faile they should be assailed with many a thousand, wherefore he counseled them to withdraw them. When said Sir Gawaine, it were great shame to them to auoide without any strokes, wherefore I aduise you to take our armes and to make vs ready to meete with these sarasins and misbelouing men and with the helpe of God wee shall ouerthrow them and haue a faire day on them. And Sir Florens shall abide still in this field to keepe the stall as a noble knight, and wee shall not forsake yonder fellows. Now said Priamus cease your

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

words, for I warne you ye shall find in yonder woods many perilous knights, they will put forth beast to call you on, they be out of number, and ye are not past seven hundred which be over few to fight with so many. Nevertheless said Sir Gawaine, we shall once encounter with them and see what they can doe, and the best shall haue the victorie.

CHAP. XCVIII.

How that the Saracins came out of a wood for to rescue their beasts, and of a great battaile.

Then Sir Florence called to him Sir Floridas with an hundred knights and dzone forth the heard of beasts. When followed him seven hundred men of armes, and Sir Ferraunt of Spaine on a faire steede came leaping out of the wood and came to Sir Florens and asked him wherfore he fled. When Sir Florens took his speare and rode against him and smote him so hard that he brake his necke bone. When all the other were moued, and thought to auenge the death of Sir Ferrant and smote in among them, and there was great fight and many slaine and laid downe vpon the cold ground, and Sir Florens with his hundred knights alwayes kept the scale and fought right manfully. When when Priamus the good knight perceiued the great fight, hee went to Sir Gawaine and bad him that hee should goe, and succour his fellowship, which were soze bestead with their enemies, Sir griene you not said Sir Gawaine, for the grieve shall bee theirs, I shall not once moue my horse toward them but if I see more then there bee, for they bee strong inough to match them. And with that he saw an Earle called Sir Echelwold, and the Duke of Duchmen came leaping out of a wood with many a thousand and Priamus knights, and came straight vnto the battaile. When Sir Gawaine comforted his knights, and bad them not bee abashed for all shall be ours. When they began to gallop and meete fierly with their enemies, there were men slaine and ouerthrowne on euery side. And then thrust in among them the knights of the table round and smote downe to the earth all them that withstood them, in so much that they made

and his Knights of the round Table.

made them to glue back and flee. By God said Sir Gawaine this gladdeth well my heart, for now be they lesse in number by twentie thousand. When entred into the battell a gyant named Iuliance, and fought and slew downe right, and distressed many of our knights, among whom was slaine Sir Gherard a knight of Wales. When our knights tooke heart to them and slew many Saracins. And then came in Sir Priamus with his penon, and rode with the knights of the round table, and fought so manfully that many of their enemies lost their liues, and there Sir Priamus slew the Marques of Moises land. And Sir Gawaine with his fellows quit them so well that they had the field, but in that combat was Sir Chastilaine a child, and was slaine of Sir Gawaine, wherfore was made much sorrow, and his death was soone auenged. Thus was the battell ended and many Lords and knights of Lomberdy and Saracins left dead in the field. When Sir Florens and Sir Gawaine harboured sorely their people and took great plenty of beasts, of gold and silver, and of great treasure and riches, and returned vnto King Arthur which lay still at the siege. And when they came to the King they presented him their prisoners, and told to him their adventures and how they had vanquished their enemies.

CHAP. XCIX.

How Sir Gawaine returned to King Arthur with his prisoners, and how the King wan a Citie and how he was crowned Emperour.

Now thanked be God said King Arthur. But what manner man is he that standeth by himselfe, he seemeth no prisoner. Sir said Sir Gawaine, this is a good man of armes, he hath matched me, but he is beholden vnto God and to me for to be come a Christian, had not hee beene, we should neuer haue returned, wherfore I pray you that he may be baptized, for there liueth not a nobler man nor a better knight of his hands. Whereupon the King let him bee baptized, and did call him by his true name Priamus, and made him a Duke and knight of the round table.

And

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

And then anon the King did make assault to the Citie, and there was rearing of ladders breaking of walls, and the ditch filled, that men with little paine might enter into the Citie. Then came out a duchesse and Clarifine the Countesse, with many Ladies and damosels, kneeling befoze the King and requiring him for the loue of God to receiue the Citie and not to take it by assault, for then should many guiltlesse be slaine. Then the King auailed his viser with a make and noble countenance and said. Adam there shall none of my subiects misdoe you nor none of your damosels, nor to none that to you belongeth, but the duke shall abide my iudgement. Then anon the King commanded to leaue the assault. And anon the Dukes eldest sonne brought out the keyes and kneeling downe deliuered them to the King, and besought him of grace, and the king sealed the towne by assent of his Lords, and took the Duke and sent him to Doner, there to abide prisoner the terme of his life, and assigned certaine rents for the dowry of the duchesse and for her children. Then he made Lords to rule those lands and lawes as a Lord ought to doe in his owne countrey. And after that he took his iourney toward Rome, and sent for Floris and Sir Floridas, for with five hundred men of armes, and they came to the Citie of Urbine, and laide ambushment there as them seemed it was most best for them, and rode to the towne, where anon issued out much people and skirmished with the fore riders. Then brake out the ambushment and so won the bridge, and after they won the towne and set vpon the walls the Kings banner. Then came King Arthur vpon a hill saw the Citie and his banner displayed vpon the walls by the which hee knew that the Citie was won and gotten. And anon hee sent a commandement that none of his liege men should defile nor lie by noe Ladie, wife, nor maide, then when he came into the Citie, hee passed through and came to the Castle and there comforted them that were in heavinesse, and ordeined there a knight of his owne countrey to be captaine. And when they of Milane heard that the foresaid Citie was won, they sent vnto King Arthur great summes of money, and besought him as their soueraigne Lord to haue pittie vpon them, promising him to be his true subiects

for

and his Knights of the round Table.

for evermore, and yeld to him homage and fealtie for the lands of Plesance, and of Panie, Peter saint and the poore of Tremble, and to giue vnto him yearely a million of gold during all his life time. When King Arthur rode into Tuskanie and there hee won towncs and Castles and wasted all that hee found in his way that to him would not so obey, and went to Spolite and to Interbe. And from thence he rode into the vale of Ulicount among the vines. And from thence he sent vnto the Senatours of Rome, for to wit whether they would know him for their Lord and chiefe gouernour or not. But soone after vpon a Saturday came vnto King Arthur all the Senatours that were left on liue, and all the noblest cardinals which at that time dwelled within the Citie of Rome and they all praised him of peace, and proffered him full largely of goods. And they all besought him as gouernour to giue them lycence for seven weekes to assemble together all the Barony of the Romaines, and there to crowne him as Emperour with holy creme, as it belongeth vnto such an high and noble estate. I assent vnto you said King Arthur as ye haue deuised, and at Christmas there to be crowned and to hold my round Table with my knights there as me liketh. And then the senatours made all things ready for his coronation. And then at the day appointed as the Romaines tell he came into Rome, and there he was crowned Emperour by the Popes owne hands with all the solemnitie that could be made, and sojourned there a certaine time, and established all his lands from Rome vnto France, and hee gaue lands and realmes vnto his seruants and knights, to euery each after his deservng, in such wise that none of them complained neither rich nor poore. And he gaue vnto Sir Priamus the dutchesse of Roaine. And he thanked him and said that he would serue him and be his true subiect all the dayes of his life. And after that he made Dukes and earles and constituted his men vnto great riches and honour. When after this all his Lords and knights and all the great men of estate assembled them together afore the triumphant conquerour King Arthur, and said. Noble Emperour blessed be the eternal God, your mortall warre is all finished, and your conquest is ached, in so much that we know

X

no

No man so great nor mightie that dare make any warre against you, wherefore wee beseech and heartily pray your noble grace for to returne homeward, and also we pray you to giue vs licence to goe home to our wiues, from whom wee haue bene a long season, and for to rest vs, for your iourney is finished with great honour and worship. Then said King Arthur vnto them, ye say truth, and for to tempt God, it is no wisdom, and therefore in all haste make you ready and returne we into England. Then was there a trussing of harnais and of other baggage, and had great carriage. And after that the licence was giuen, King Arthur returned and commanded that no man vpon paine of death should rob by the way neither take vitaille nor none other thing, but that he should truly pay therefor. And thus hee came ouer the sea and landed at Sandwiche against whom came Quene Gueneuer and met with him, and made great ioy of his coming. And he was full nobly receiued of all his commons in euery Citie, towne and burrough. And great gifts were presented vnto him at his home coming, for to welcome him with

CHAP. C.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lionell departed from the Court for to seeke aduentures, and how Sir Lionell left Sir Launcelot sleeping and was taken.

After that the noble and worthy King Arthur was come from Rome into England, all the knights of the round table, resorted vnto the King and made many iusts and turnements, and some ther were that were good knights, which encreased so in armes and worship that they passed all their fel- lowes in prowesse and noble deedes and that was well proued on many. But especially it was proued on Sir Launcelot du Lake. For in all turnements and iusts and deedes of armes, both for life and death he passeth all knights, and at no time he was neuer overcome, but it were by treason or enchantment. Sir Lancelot encreased so meruallously in worshippe and honour, wherefore he is the first knight that the French booke maketh mention of, after that King Arthurs came from Rome, where-
foze

and his Knights of the round Table:

Now Quene Gueneuer had him in great fauour above all other knights, and certainly he loued the Quene againe above all other ladies and damosels all the daies of his life, and for her he did many great deedes of armes, and saued her from the fire through his noble chivalrie. Thus Sir Launcelot rested him a long while with play and game. And then hee thought to proue himselfe in strange aduentures. Then he had his brother Sir Lionell to make him ready, for we two will seeke aduentures. So they mounted vpon their horses armed at all points and rode into a deepe forest and after they came into a great plaine, and then the weather was hot about noone and Sir Launcelot had great list to sleepe. Then Sir Lionell espied a great apple tree that stood by an hedge and said. Brother, yonder is a faire shadow, there may we rest vs and our horses. It is well said faire brother said Sir Lancelot, for of all this seven yeare I was not so sleepe as I am now. And so they alighted there, and tyed their horses vnto sundry trees, and so Sir Launcelot laide him downe vnder an apple tree, and laide his helme vnder his head. And Sir Lionell waked while he slept. So Sir Launcelot slept passing fast. And in the meane while there came three knights riding as fast flying as euer they might ride, and there followed after those three but one knight. And when Sir Lionell beheld him, he thought that he had neuer seen so great a knight, nor so wellfaring a man, neither so well apparated at all points. So within a while this strong knight had overtaken one of these three knights that fled, and there smote him downe to the ground. And then hee rode vnto the second knight, and smote him such a stroke that horse and man fel downe vnto the earth. And then he rode straight vnto the third knight, and hee smote him ouer his horse arse more then the length of his speare. And then hee alighted downe and reined his horse on the bydle, and bound al the three knights fast with the reines of their owne bydles. And when Sir Lionell saw him doe thus, hee thought to assay him, and made him ready, and sily and priuily hee tooke his horse, and thought not to waken his brother Sir Launcelot. And so when he was mounted vpon his horse and had overtaken this strong knight he had him turne. And so hee turned him, and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

smote Sir Lionell so hard that horse and man hee bare to the earth, and then he alighted and bound him fast, and threw him ouerthwart his owne horse and so he serued them al foure, and rode with them away to his owne Castle. And when hee came there he vnarmed them and beate them with thoznes all naked, and after put them in a deepe prison, where were many more knights that made great moone.

CHAP. CII.

How Sir Ector de maris followed to seeke Sir Launcelot, and how he was taken by Sir Torquine.

When Sir Ector de Maris wist that Sir Launcelot was past out of the Court to seeke aduentures hee was wroth with himselfe, and made him ready to seeke Sir Launcelot, and as hee had ridden long in a great Forrest, hee met with a man that was like a foster. Faire fellow said Sir Ector, knowest thou in this countrey any aduentures which bee here nigh hand. Sir said the foster this countrey know I well and here within this mile is a strong mannor and wel ditched, and by that mannor on of the left hand there is a faire fount for horses to drinke, and ouer that fount ther groweth a faire tree, and ther on hangeth many faire shields that belonged sometime vnto good knights and at the hole of the tree hangeth a bason of copper and latyn, and strike vpon that bason with the end of the speare thrice, and soone after thou shalt heere new tidings, and else hast thou the fairest grace that many a yeare any knight had that passed through this Forrest. Gramercy said Sir Ector, and so hee departed and came to the tree, and saw many faire shields, and among them he saw his brothers shield Sir Lionell and many more that he knew that were his fellows of the round table, the which grieved his heart, and there hee promised to reuenge his brother Sir Lionell. And anon Sir Ector beate vpon the bason as hee were wood, and then hee gaue his horse drinke at the fount. Anon there came a knight behind him and bad him come out of that water and make him ready. And Sir Ector anon turned him shortly and shaked his speare

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and smote the other knight a great buffet, that his horse turned thrice about. This was well done said the strong knight, and full knightly thou hast stricken me. And therewith hee rushed his horse vpon Sir Ector and caught him vnder his right arme, and bare him cleane out of the saddell, and so rode with him away into his hal, and threw him downe in the middle of the floze. The name of this knight was Sir Turquine. When said he vnto Sir Ector, for thou hast done this day more vnto me then any knight did these twelue yeares, now will I graunt thee thy life, so that thou wilt bee sworne to mee as my prisoner all the dayes of thy life. Nay said Sir Ector, that wil I neuer promise thee, but that I will doe mine auantage. What more repenteth said Sir Turquine, and then he tooke him and vnarmed him, and beate him with sharpe thoznes all naked, and after put him downe into a deepe dungcon, where he knew many of his fellows, but when Sir Ector saw Sir Lionell, there made he great sorrow. Alas brother said Sir Ector where is my brother Sir Launcelot. Faire brother I left him a sleepe vnder an apple tree, and what is become of him I can not tell you. Alas said the knights, but Sir Launcelot helpe vs we may neuer bee deliuered, for we know now no knight that is able to match our maister Sir Turquin.

CHAP. CIII.

How foure Queenes found Sir Launcelot sleeping, and how by enchauntment he was taken and led into a strong Castle.

Now leaue we these knights prisoners, and speake wee of Sir Launcelot du Lake, that lieth vnder the apple tree sleeping. Quen about the noone there came by me foure Quenes of great estate and for the heate of the sun should not nigh them, there rode foure knights about them, and bare a canope of greene silke on foure speares, betwene them and the sun. And the Quenes rode on foure white mules. Thus as they rode they heard by them a great horse grimly ney, and then were they ware of a sleeping knight that lay all armed vnder an apple tree, anon as these Quenes looked on his face, they knew

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

that it was Sir Launcelot. When they began to strue for that knight, and each of them said shee would haue him vnto her loue. Well shall not strue said Morgan le fay, that was King Arthurs sister, I shall put an enchauntment vpon him that he shall not awake six houres and then I will leade him away vnto my Castle, and when he is surely within my hold, I shall take the enchauntment from him, and then let him choose which of vs he will haue vnto his paramour. So this enchauntment was cast vpon Sir Launcelot, and then they laid him vpon his shield and bare him so on horsebacke betwene two knights, and brought him vnto the Castle Chariot, and there they laid him in a cold chamber, and at night they sent vnto him a faire damosell with his supper ready dight. By that the enchauntment was past. And when she came she saluted him, and asked him what chere. I can not tell faire damosell said Sir Launcelot for I wot not how I came into this Castle vntill it be by enchauntment. Sir said the damosell, yee must make good chere, and if ye be such a knight as is said that ye be, I shall tell you more to morrow by prime of the day. Graunty said Sir Launcelot, of your good will I require you. And so she departed, and there he lay all that night without comfort of any person. And in the morning early came these foure Quenes passingly well besene, all they bidding him good morrow, and he them againe. Sir knight said the foure Quenes, thou must vnderstand that thou art our prisoner, and we here know thee well that thou art Sir Launcelot du Lake, King Bans son. And because we vnderstand your worthinesse that ye are the noblest knight that is now lining. And as we know well there can no Lady haue thy loue but one and that is Quene Gueneuer, and now thou shalt lose her for euer, and she thee, and therefore it behoueth thee now to choose one of vs foure, I am Quene Morgan le fay, Quene of the land of Goze, and here is also the Quene of Northgales, and the Quene of Castland, and the Quene of the out Isles, now choose ye one of vs which yee will haue vnto your paramour, if ye will not doe thus, here shall ye abide in this prison till that yee die. This is an hard case said Sir Launcelot, that either I must die, or else choose one of you,

yet

and his Knights of the round Table.

yet had I rather to die in this prison with worship then to haue one of you to my paramour maugre my head. And therefore be ye answered for I will haue none of you for ye be false enchauntresses. And as for my Lady dame Gueneuer, were I at my libertie as I was, I would proue it vpon you or vpon yours, that she is the truest Lady lining vnto her Lord. Well said the Quenes, is this your answer, that you will refuse vs. Well vpon my life said Sir Launcelot, refused yee be of me. So they departed and left him there alone that made great sorrow.

CHAP. CIIII.

How Sir Launcelot was deliuered by the meanes of a damosell.

Right so at noone came the damosell to him and brought him his dinner, and asked him what chere. Truly faire damosell said Sir Launcelot, in al my life dayes neuer so ill. Sir said she, that me repenteth, but and ye will be ruled by me, I shall helpe you out of this distresse, and ye shall haue no shame nor villany, so that ye hold me a promise. Faire damosell that I will grant you, and soze I am a feard of these Quenes witches for they haue destroyed many a good knight. Sir said shee that is sooth, and for the renowne and bounty they heare of you, they would haue your loue, and Sir they say that your name is Sir Launcelot du Lake the flour of al the knights that ben lining, and they bene passing wroth with you that yee haue refused them, but Sir and ye would promise me for to helpe my father on Tuesday, next comming, that hath made a turneyment betwene him and the king of Northgales, for the Tuesday laste past my father lost the field throughe thre knights of King Arthurs Court, and if ye will be there vpon Tuesday next coming and helpe my father, to morrow or prime by the grace of God, I shall deliuer you cleane. Faire maiden said Sir Launcelot tell me what is your fathers name, and then shall I giue you an answer. Sir knight said the damosell, my father is King Bagdemagus that was souly rebuked at the last turneyment. I know your father well said Sir Launcelot for a noble king, and a good knight, and by the faith of my body, yee shall haue

my

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

my body ready to doe your father and you seruice at that day. Sir said the damosell gramercy, and to morrow a waite that ye be ready betimes, and I shall deliuer you, and take you your armour and your horse, shield, and speare, and hereby within these ten miles is an abbey of white monkes, and there I pray you to abide, and thither shall I bring my father unto you. All this shal be done said Sir Launcelot, as I am a true knight. And so she departed, and came on the morrow early and found him ready. When she brought him out of twelve lockes, and brought him vnto his armour. And when he was all armed and arrayed, she brought him vnto his owne horse, and lightly hee saddled him, and tooke a great speare in his hand, and so rode forth and said. Faire damosell I shall not faile you by the grace of God. And so he rode into a great Forrest all that day, and in no wise could he find any high way, and so the night fell on him, and then was he ware of a shade a pavilion of reed sandall. By my faith said Sir Launcelot, in that pavilion will I lodge all this night, and so there he alighted downe and tied his horse to the pavilion, and there he vnarmed him, and found there a rich bed and laid him therein, and anon he fell on sleepe.

CHAP. CV.

How a Knight found Sir Launcelot lying in his lemans bed, and how Sir Launcelot fought with that Knight.

Then within an houre came the knight to whom belonged the pavilion and he wend his lemmman had layen in that bed, and so he laid him downe beside Sir Launcelot, and tooke him in his armes, and began to kisse him. And when Sir Launcelot felt a rough beard kissing him, he started lightly out of the bed, and the other knight leapt after him, and either of them gat their swords in their hands & out at the pavilion doze went the knight of the pavilion, and Sir Launcelot folloved him, and there by a litte shade Sir Launcelot wounded him soze nigh vnto the death, and then he yelded him vnto Sir Launcelot. And Sir Launcelot tooke him to his mercy, so that he would tell him why he came into the bed. Sir said the knight, the pavilion is mine

and his Knights of the round Table.

mine owne, and there this night I had assigned my loue and Lady to haue slept with me, and now I am likely to die of this wound. What me repenteth said Sir Launcelot of your hurt, but I was soze adored of treason for I was lately beguiled, and therefore come on your way into your pavilion and take your rest and as I suppose I shall stretch your blood. And so they went both into the pavilion, and anon Sir Launcelot stretched his blood. Therewith came the knights Lady, which was a passing faire Lady. And when she espied that her Lord Sir Belleus was so soze wounded, she cried out on Sir Launcelot, and made great wroone out of measure. Peace my Lady and my loue said Sir Belleus, for this knight is a very good man and a knight aduenturous, and there he told her all the cause how he was wounded and when I yelded me vnto him, hee goodly left me and tooke me to his mercy, and hath stretched my blood. Sir said the Lady I require you tell me what knight ye are, and what is your name. Faire Lady said he, my name is Launcelot du lake. So me thought by your speache said the Lady, for I haue scene you often times or this, and I know you better then ye wene. But now and ye would promise mee of your curtesie for the harmes that yee haue done to mee and to my Lord Sir Belleus, that when he cometh to King Arthurs Court to cause him to be made a knight of the round table, for hee is a passing good man of armes, and a mighty Lord of lands of many out Isles. Faire Lady said Sir Launcelot, let him come vnto the Court the next high feast, and looke that yee come with him. And I shall doe all my power, and if ye proue you doughty or mightie of your hands, then shall ye haue your desire. So thus within a while as they stood thus talking, the night passed and the day appeared, and then Sir Launcelot armed him and mounted vpon his horse, and tooke his leaue, and they shewed him the way towards the abbey, and thither they rode within the space of two houres.

CHAP.

CHAP. CVII.

How Sir Launcelot was receiued of King Bagdemagus daughter, and how he made his complaint vnto her father.

AS soone as Sir Launcelot came within the abbey yard, King Bagdemagus daughter heard a great horse goe on the pavement. And then she arose and went vnto a window, and there she saw that it was Sir Launcelot and anon shee made men hastely to goe to him, which took his horse and led him in to a stable, and himselfe was led into a faire chamber, and there he vnarmed him, and the Lady sent to him a long gowne, and anon she came her selfe. And then she made Sir Launcelot passing good chere, and she said he was the knight in the world that was most welcome to her. When she in al the haste sent for her father King Bagdemagus, that was within twelue mile of that abbey, and afore euen hee came with a faire fellowship of knights with him. And when the king was alighted from his horse, he went straight vnto Sir Launcelots chamber and there found his daughter, and then the king embraced Sir Launcelot in his armes, and either made other good chere. Anon Sir Launcelot made his complaint vnto the king how hee was betrayed, and how his brother Sir Lionell was departed from him hee wist not whither, and how his daughter had deliuered him out of prison, wherefore I shall while I liue doe her seruice and all her friends and kindred. When am I sure of your helpe said the king now on tuesday next comming. He Sir said Sir Launcelot, I shal not faile you, for so haue I promised vnto my Lady your daughter. But Sir what knights beene they of my Lord King Arthurs that were with the king of Northgales. And the king said it was Sir Mador de la port, and Sir Mordred and Sir Gahallatine that foule fared with my knights, for against them thre. And my knights might bare no strength. Sir said Sir Launcelot as I heare say, the turnement shall be within thre mile of this abbey, yee shall send vnto mee thre knights of yours such as ye trust best, and looke that these thre knights haue all white shields and also, and no painting on the

and his Knights of the round Table.

the shields, and wee foure will come out of a little wood in the midst of both parties, and we shall fall in the front of our enemies and grieue them all that wee may. And so I shall not be knownen what knight I am. So they took their rest that night, and this was on the Sunday. And so the king departed, and sent vnto Sir Launcelot thre knights, with foure white shields. And on the tuesday they lodged them in a little leued wood beside wher the turnement should be. And ther wer scaffolds and holes that Lords and Ladies might behold and giue the praise. When came into the field the king of Northgales without eight score helmes, and then the thre knights of King Arthurs stood by themselves. When came into the field King Bagdemagus with fourescore helmes: And then they setvred their speares and came together with an huge dash, and there were slaine of knights at the first encounter twelue of King Bagdemagus part, and sixe of the king of Northgales part, and King Bagdemagus part was far set backe.

CHAP. CVIII.

How Sir Launcelot behaued him in a turneyment, and how hee met with Sir Turquine leading away Sir Gaheris with him.

With that came Sir Launcelot du lake, and he thrust in with his speare in the thickest of the presse, and there he smote downe with one speare fise knights, and of foure of them he brake their backs, and in that throng hee cast downe the king of Northgales, and brake his thigh with that fall. All this doing of Sir Launcelot saw the thre knights of King Arthurs Court. Ponder is a threword gest said Sir Mador de la port, therefore haue heere once at him. So they encountred and Sir Launcelot bare him downe horse and man, so that his shoulder went out of ioynt. Now befallerh it to me to iust said Sir Mordred, for Sir Mador hath a sore fall. Sir Launcelot was ware of him and gat a great speare in his hand and met him. and Sir Mordred brake his speare vpon him, and Sir Launcelot gaue him such a buffet that the arson of his saddle brake and so he flew ouer his horse taile that his helme pight into the earth

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

a foote and more, that nigh his neck was broken and there hee lay long in a sound. Then came in Sir Gahalarine with a spear, and Sir Launcelot against him with all the strength that they might drine that both their speares all brake vnto their hands, and then they drew out their swords and gaue each other many grim strokes. Then was Sir Launcelot wroth out of measure, and then hee smote Sir Gahalarine on the helme that both his nose and his mouth burst out on bleeding, and his eares also, and therewith his head hung low, and his horse ranne away with him, and he fell downe to the earth. Anon therewith Sir Launcelot gat a great speare in his hand, and oꝛ euer that great speare brake, hee bare downe to the ground sixtene knights, some horse & man, & some the man & not the horse, & ther was non but that he was hit surely, so that hee bare no armes that day. And then he gat another great speare and smot downe twelue knights, and the most of them neuer throue after. And then the knights of the King of Northgales would iust no more. And the game was giuen vnto King Bagdemagus. Soe either partie departed vnto his owne place, and Sir Launcelot rode forth with King Bagdemagus vnto his Castle, and there hee had passing good chare both with the King and with his daughter, and they promised him great gifts. And on the morrow he toke his leaue, and told King Bagdemagus that hee would goe seeke his brother Sir Lionel that went from him when he slept. So he toke his horse and betooke him all to God, and there he said vnto the Kings daughter, if yee haue neede at any time of my seruice, I pray you let me haue knowledge thereof, and I shall not faile you as I am true knight. And so Sir Launcelot departed, and by aduenture came into the same forest where as he was taken sleeping. And in the middell of an hie way he met with a damosell riding vpon a white palfrey, and there they saluted other. Faire damosell said Sir Launcelot, know yee in this countrey any aduenturers. Sir Knight said the damosell to Sir Launcelot heere are aduentures nere hand, and thou must proue them. Why should I not proue aduentures, said Sir Launcelot, as for that cause come I hither. Well said the damosell, thou seemest well to be a right good knight, and

and his Knights of the round Table.

if thou dare meete with a good knight, I shall bring thee where as the best knight is, and the mightiest that euer thou found, so that thou wilt tell mee what thy name is, and of what countrey and knight thou art. Damosell as for to tell thee my name I take no great force. Truly my name is Sir Launcelot du lake. Sir thou besamest well, here be aduentures that be fallen for thee, for hereby dwelleth a knight that will not bee ouermatched for no man that I know, but ye ouer match him, and his name is Sir Turquine, and as I vnderstand hee hath in his prison of King Arthurs Court good knights thersore and fore that he hath won with his owne hands. But when ye haue done this journey, ye shall promise me as ye are a true knight for to go with me and helpe me and other damosels that are distressed with a false knight. All your intent and desire damosell I will fulfil, so that ye wil bring me to this knight. Now faire knight come on your way, and so the brought him vnto the fount and vnto the tree wheron the bason hung. So Sir Launcelot let his horse drinke, and after he beate on the bason with the end of his speare so hard, and with such a might that he made the bottome fall out, and long he did so, but he saw nothing. Then he rode endlong the gates of the mannor well nigh halfe an houre. And then was hee ware of a great knight that droue an horse afore him and ouerthwart the horse lay an armed knight bound. And euer as they came neerer and neerer Sir Launcelot thought that he should know him then Sir Launcelot was ware that it was Sir Gaheris Sir Gawaines brother, a knight of the table round. Now faire damosell said Sir Launcelot, I see yonder comes a knight fast bound, which is a fellow of mine and brother hee is vnto Sir Gawaine, and at the first beginning I promise you by the leaue of God to rescue that knight, but if his maister set the better in the saddle I shall deliuer all the prisoners out of danger, for I am sure that he hath two brethren of mine prisoners with him. By that time that either had sene other, they toke their speares vnto them. Now faire knight said Sir Launcelot, put that wounded knight from thy horse, and let him rest a while, and then let vs two proue our strength together. For as it is enformed and shewed me, thou doest and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

hast done great disple and shame vnto the knights of the round table and therefore defend thee now shortly. And thou bee of the round table said Sir Turquine, I desie thee and all thy fellowship. What is ouer much said, said Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. CIX.

How Sir Launcelot and Turquine fought together.

AND then they put their speares in their rests and came together with their horses as fast as it was possible for them to runne, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, that both their horses backs burst vnder them, whereof the knights were both astonied, and as soone as they might auoide their horses, they tooke their shields afore them, and drew out their swords, and came together egerly, and either gaue other many great strokes, for there might neither shields nor harneis hold their dint. And so within a while they had both grimly wounds, and bled passing grienously. Thus they fared two houres or more, frasing and rasing either other where they might hit any bare place. At the last they were both bzeathlesse, and stood leaning on their swords. Now fellow said Sir Turquine hold thy hand a while and tell me what I shall aske thee. Say on, said Sir Launcelot. Thou art said Sir Turquine the biggest man that euer I met withall, and the best bzeathed, and like one knight that I hate aboue all other knights, and that thou be not he, I will lightly accord with thee, and for thy loue I will deliuer all thy prisoners that I haue, that is threescore and foure, so that thou wilt tell mee thy name, and thou and I we will be fellows together, and neuer faile thee while I liue. It is well said quoth Sir Launcelot, but sithence it is so that I may haue thy friendship, what knight is he that thou so hatest aboue all other. Truly said Sir Turquine, his name is Launcelot du lake, for he slew my brother Sir Carados at the dolorous Towre, which was one of the best knights then liuing, and therefore him I except of all knights, for and I may once meet with him, that one of vs shall make an end of an other and so that I make arow. And for Sir Launcelots sake I haue slaine an hund-

and his Knights of the round Table.

red good knights, and as many I haue vtterly mained, that neuer after they might helpe themselves, and many haue died in my prison, and yet I haue threescore and foure, and all shal be deliuered, so that thou wilt tell me thy name, and so it bee that thou be not Sir Launcelot. Now for I well said Sir Launcelot that such a man I might be I might haue peace, and such a man I might be, there should be betwene vs two, mostall warre, and now Sir knight at thy request, I will that thou tell and know that I am Sir Launcelot du lake King Bans son of Wemwicke and knight of the round table. And now I desie thee doe thy best. Ah said Sir Turquine, Launcelot thou art vnto mee most welcome as euer was any knight, for we shall neuer depart till the one of vs bee dead. And then hurtled they together as two wild bulls rashing and rashing with their shields and swords, that sometime they fell both on their noses. Thus they fought still two houres and more, and neuer would rest, and Sir Turquine gaue Sir Launcelot many wounds that all the ground there as they fought was all besprinkled with bloo.

CHAP. CX.

How Sir Turquine was slaine, and how Sir Launcelot bad Sir Gaheris deliuer all the prisoners.

THEN at the last Sir Turquine wared very faint, and gaue somewhat backe, and bare his shield full low for wearinesse. What soone espied Sir Launcelot, and then leapt vpon him fierly as a Lyon, and got him by the banour of his helmet, and so he plucked him downe on his knees, and anon he rased off his helme, and then hee smote his neck a sunder. And when Sir Launcelot had done this he went vnto the damosell and said to her. Damosell I am ready to goe with you where ye will haue me, but I haue no horse. Faire Sir said the damosell, take yee this wounded knights horse, and send ye him into this mannor, and command him to goe and deliuer all the prisoners. And so Sir Launcelot went vnto Sir Gaheris, and prayed him not to bee greeued for to lend him his horse. Nay faire Lord said Sir Gaheris, I will that ye take my horse at your owne command, for

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

for ye haue both saued me and my horse, and this day I say ye are the best knights in the world, for ye haue slaine this day in my sight the mightiest man and the best knight (except your selfe) that ever I saw. Faire sir said sir Gaheris I pray you tel me your name. Sir my name is Sir Launcelot du lake, which ought to helpe you of right for King Arthurs sake, and in especiall for my Lord Sir Gawaines sake your dead bzother, & when ye come within yonder mannoz, I am sure that yee shall finde there many noble knights of the round table, for I haue seene many of their shields that I know, on yonder tre there is Sir Kaes shield, and sir Brandels shield and sir Marhaus shield, and sir Galinds, and sir Brian de listinoise shield, and sir Alidukes shield, with many moe that I am not now aduised of, and also my two bzethzens shields, sir Ector de Maris and sir Lionell, wherefore I pray you græte them all from me, and say to them that I bid them take there such stufte as they find, and that in any wise my bzethzen goe vnto the Court and abide there till I come thither, for by the high feast of Pentecost I thinke to be there, for as at this time I must ride with this damosell for to saue my promise. And so he departed from sir Gaheris and sir Gheris went into the mannoz, and there hee found a yeoman porter keeping many keyes. And forthwith sir Gaheris thzew the porter against the ground that his eyes start out of his head, and toke the keyes and opened the prison, and there he let out all the prisoners, and euery each loosed other of their bands. And when they saw sir Gaheris they all thanked him, for they wend becau'e he was wounded that he had slaine sir Turquine. Not so said Gaheris, it was sir Launcelot that slew him worshipfully with his owne hands, I saw it with mine eyes. And he græteth you all well, and prayeth you to haste you to the Court and as vnto sir Lionell and sir Ector de Maris he praieth you to abide him at the Court.

That shall wee not doe said his bzethzen, wes wil and him and wee may lue. So shall I said sir Key find him or I come at the Court as I am true knight. When al the knights sought the house whereas the armour was, and then they armed them, and euery knight found his owne horse, and all that belonged vnto

and his Knights of the round Table.

him. And when all this was done, there came a forrester with two horses laden with venison. Anon Sir Kay said here is meat for vs for one meale, for we had not many a day to be repaid. And so that venison was roasted, baked, and eaten, and so after supper some abode there all night, but Sir Launcelot and sir Ector de Maris and Sir Kay rode after Sir Launcelot for to finde him if they might.

CHAP. CXI.

How Sir Launcelot rode with the damosell and slew a Knight that distressed all Ladies, and a villain that kept the passage over a bridge.

So turne we vnto Sir Launcelot that rode with the damosell in a faire high way. Sir said the damosell, here may haunte a knight that distresseth all Ladies and gentlewomen, and at the least he robeth them or lyeth by them. Sir said Sir Launcelot is hee a thæfe and a knight and a slayer of women, hee doth great shame vnto the order of chivalry and contrary to his oath, it is pittie that he liueth. Sir said the damosell yee shall ride your selfe alone before, and I will follow my selfe in couert, and if hee trouble you or distresse you, I shall be your rescow, and learne him to be ruled as a knight. So the damosell rode on by the way a soft ambling pace. And within a while came that knight on horsebacke out of the wood, and his page with him, and there hee put the damosell from her horse and then she cried. With that came Sir Launcelot as fast as he might, till hee came to that knight, saying: O thou false knight and traitour vnto knighthood, who leauest thee to distresse Ladies and gentlewomen? When the knight saw Sir Launcelot thus rebuking him he answered not, but drew his sword and rode vnto Sir Launcelot. And Sir Launcelot threw his speare from him and drew out his sword, and struck him such a buffet on the helmet that he claued his head in the throte. Now hast thou thy payment that thou long hast deserued. That is truth said the damosell, for like as Turquine was charged to destroy knights, so did this knight attend to destroy

The History of Prince Arthur

destroy and distress Ladies and gentlewomen, and his name was Sir Peers du forest sauge. Now damosell said Sir Launcelot, will ye any moze service of me? Sir said she at this time, but almighty God preserve you wheresoever yee goe or ride, for the curliest knight thou art and meekest unto al Ladies and gentlewomen that now liveth. But Sir knight one thing me thinketh that ye lacke, ye that are a knight winlesse that ye will not love some maiden or gentlewoman, for I could never heare say that ever ye loved any of no manner degree, and that is great pittie, but it is nysed that yee love Duene Gueneuer, and that she hath ordained by enchauntment that ye never shall love none other but her, ne none other damosell nor Lady shall reioyce you, wherefore manie in this countrey of hie estate and low make great sorow. Faire damosell said Sir Launcelot I may not warne the people to speake of me, they may speake what soever it please them. But to bee a wedded man I thinke never to be, for if I were then should I be bound to tarry with my wife, and leave armes and turnements, battells and adventures. And as for to say that I take my pleasure with paramours that will I refuse, and principally for dread of God. For knights that bee adventurous or lecherous shall not be happy nor fortunate in the warres for either they shall be overcome with a simpler knight then they be themselves, or else they shall by unhap and their cursednesse be better men then they be themselves, and so who that useth paramours shall be unhappie, and all things is unhappie that is about them. And so Sir Launcelot and the damosell departed. And then rode hee into a deepe forest two daies and moze, and had stratte lodging. So on the thirde day hee rode over a great long brydge, and there stert upon him suddenly a passing foule churle, and he smote his horse on the nose that hee turned about, and asked him why hee rode over that brydge without his licence. Why should not I ride this way said Sir Launcelot, I may not ride beside. Thou shalt not chuse said the churle, and so lashed at him with a mighty great club ful of pinns of iron. When Sir Launcelot drew his sword and put the strooke backe, and cloue his head unto the navell. And at the end of the brydge was a faire village, and all the

and his Knights of the round Table.

he came and cried on Sir Launcelot and said. Sir a woze I praye thee if thou never for thy selfe, for thou hast slaine the churle that was of our Castle. Sir Launcelot let them say what they would, and he went straight into the Castle. And when hee came into the Castle he alighted and tied his horse to a ring in the wall, and there he saw a faire greene Court, and thither he came, for there hee thought was a faire place to fight in. Hee looked about and saw much people in bowes and winches that said. Faire knight thou art unhappie.

CHAP. CXLI.

Now Sir Launcelot slew two Gyants, and made a Castle free.

Now therewith came upon him two great Gyants well armed al save the heads, with two horrible clubs in their hands. Sir Launcelot put his shield afore him and put the point of the one Gyant and with his sword he cloue his head unto his pappes. When his fellows saw that hee ranne a horse more mad, for feare of that horrible stroke, and Sir Launcelot ranne after him as fast as he might and smote him on the shoulder, and cloue him to the fundament. When Sir Launcelot went into the hall, and there came afore him three hundred Ladies and damosells and al kneeled unto him, and thanked him for their delivrance. For sir said they the most part of us have been here this seven yere their prisoners, and we have here wrought all manner of ilke woorkes for our masters, and we are all great gentlewomen borne, and blessed be the time that ever thou were borne, for thou hast done the most deed of worship that ever any knight did in this world, and thereof wil we beare record, and we all pray you to tel us your name that we may tell our friends who delivred us out of prison. Faire damosell said hee, my name is Launcelot du lake. Sir said they, wel mightest thou be he, for else save your selfe as we named there might no knight have the better of these two Gyants, for many faire and goodly knights have assailed it, and have ended their lives, and also many times have we called after you, and these two Gyants dread never knight but you.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

you. Now may ye say (said Sir Launcelot) vnto your friends how and who hath belideted you, and graue them from mee, and if I come into any of your marches, shew mee such chere as yee haue cause, and what treasure there is in this Castle I giue it you for a reward for your griefe. And the Lord that is the owner of this Castle, I would that he receiued it as his right and apurtenance. Faire Sir said they, the name of this Castle is Tintagill, and a Duke ought it some time that had wedded faire Igraine, and after Vtherpendragon wedded her, and gat on her King Arthur. Well said Sir Launcelot I vnderstand now to whom this Castle belongeth, and so hee departed from them and betooke them to God. And then hee mounted vpon his horse, and rode into many strange and wilde countries, and through many waters and ballopes, and euill was hee lodged. And at the last by fortune it happened him against a night to come to a faire Court-lage and therein he found an old gentlewoman which lodged him with a good will, and there he and his horse were well cheared. And when time was, his host brought him to a faire garret ouer a gate in his bed. Where Sir Launcelot vnarmed him and set his harness by him and went to bed, and anon he fell on slepe. So soone after there came one on horsebacke and knocked at the gate in great haste. And when Sir Launcelot heard this he arose vp and looked out at the window and saw by the moone light three knights that came riding after that one man, and al three lashed vpon him at once with their swords, and that one knight turned on them knightly againe and defended himselfe. Truly said sir Launcelot, ponde one knight shall I helpe, for it were shame for mee to see three knights on one, and if he were slaine I should be partner of his death. And therewith hee tooke his harness and went out at a window by a sheete downe to the foure knights, and then sir Launcelot said all on high. Turne you knights vnto mee and leaue your fighting with that knight. And then they all three left sir Kay, and turned vnto sir Launcelot, and there began a great battaile, for they alighted all three and strake many great strokes at sir Launcelot, and assailed him on euery side. When sir Kay desired him for to haue holpen sir Launcelot, say

for

and his Knights of the round Table.

Sir said he, I will none of your helpe, and therefore as ye will haue my helpe, let mee alone with them. Sir Kay for the pleasure of the knight he suffered him to his will, and so stood aside. And then anon within fye strokes Sir Launcelot had stricken them to the earth. And then they all three cried, Sir knight we yelde vs vnto you as man of might. As to that said Sir Launcelot, I will not take your yelding vnto me, but so that yee will yeld you vnto Sir Kay the Seneschall, vpon that couenant will I saue your liues, and else not. Faire knight said they, that were we loth to do for as for Sir Kay we chased him hither and had ouercome him, had not ye bene, therefore to yeld vs vnto him, it were no reason. Well as to that said Sir Launcelot advise you well for yee may choose whether yee will die or liue, for and ye be holden, it shall be vnto Sir Kay, or else not. Faire knight said they, then in sauing of our liues we will doe as yee commaund vs. When shall ye said Sir Launcelot vpon Whit-sunday next comming goe vnto the Court of King Arthur, and there shall ye yeld you vnto Quene Gueneuer & put you al three in her grace and mercy, and say that Sir Kay sent you thither for to bee her prisoners. Sir said they, it shall bee done by the faith of our bodies, if wee bee liuing. And there euery knight stoode vpon their swords, and so Sir Launcelot suffered them to depart. And then Sir Launcelot knocked at the gate with the pummell of his sword, and with that came his host, and so in they entred Sir Kay and he. Sir said his host, I wend ye had bene in your bed. So I was said sir Launcelot, but I arose and lept out at my chamber window to help an old fellow of mine. And so when they came in the light, sir Kay knew well that it was sir Launcelot and therewith he kneeled downe and thanked him of his kindnesse that he had holpen him twice from death. Sir said he, I haue done nothing but that I ought to doe, and ye are welcome, and here shall ye take your rest. So when sir Kay was vnarmed hee asked after meate and anon there was meate brought him, and hee ate strongly. And when hee had supped they went to their bed, and were lodged together in one bed. On the morrow sir Launcelot arose early, and left sir Kay sleeping. And sir Launcelot tooke sir Kays armour and his shield

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

and armed him. And so he went to the stable and took his horse, and tooke leaue of his host, and so departed. When some after arose sir Kay and missed sir Launcelot. And then he espied that he had his armour and his horse. Now by my faith I know wel that hee will grieue some of King Arthurs Court. For on him knights will bee bold, and deeme that it is I, and that will bequile them: And because of his armour and shield, I am sure that I shal ride in peace. And then some after departed sir Kay, and thanked his host.

CHAP. CXIII.

How Sir Launcelot disguised in Sir Kayes armour, and how hee smote downe a Knight

Now turne we vnto sir Launcelot that had long ridden in a great forrest, and at the last came into a low countrey full of faire riuers and medowes and afoze him hee saw a long brydge and thre paviilions stood thereon of silke and sendell of diuers hew, and without the paviilions hung thre white shields on truncheons of speares, and great long speares stood vpright by the paviilions, and at euery paviilions dooze stood thre fresh squires, and so sir Launcelot passed by them and spake not a word. When he was past, the thre knights said that it was the proud Kay, he woeneth no knight so good as he, and the contrary is oftentimes proued. By my faith said one of the knights, whose name was sir Gaunter, I will ride after him, and assay him for all his pride, and ye may behold how I speed. So this knight sir Gaunter armed him, and hung his shield vpon his shoulder and mounted vpon a great horse, and gat his speare in his hand, and galloped after sir Launcelot. When hee came nigh him hee cried abide thou proud knight sir Kay, for thou shalt not passe quit. So sir Launcelot turned him and either felwred their spears and came together withal their might, and sir Gaunters speare brake, but sir Launcelot smote him downe horse and man. And when sir Gaunter was on the earth, his brethren said one to another. Ponder knight is not sir Kay, for hee is bigger then hee, I dare lay my head said sir Gilmere

and his Knights of the round Table.

Gilmere, yonder knight hath slaine Sir Kay, and hath taken his horse and harnais. Whether it bee so or no said sir Reynold the thirde brother, let vs now goe mount vpon our horses and rescue our brother Sir Gaunter vpon paine of death, wee all shall haue enough adoe to match that knight, for mee seemeth by his person it is Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram, or Sir Pelleas. Anon they took their horses and ouertooke Sir Launcelot, and sir Gilmere put forth his speare and ran to Sir Launcelot. And sir Launcelot smote him downe that hee lay in a sound. Sir knight said Sir Reynold thou art a strong man, and as I suppose thou hast slaine my two brethren, for the which my heart riseth fore against thee, and if I might with my worship I would not haue to doe with thee, but needs must I take part as they doe, and therefore knight said he keepe thy selfe, and so they hurtled together with all their might, and all to shinered both their speares, and then they drew their swords, and lashed together eagerly. Anon therewith arose sir Gaunter and came vnto his brother Sir Gilmere, and bad him arise and help vs our brother Sir Reynold which full meruailously matcheth yonder good knight. Therewith they leapt on their horses and hurtled vnto Sir Launcelot. And when hee saw them come, hee smote a sore stroke vnto sir Reynold, that he fell off his horse to the ground, and then hee strooke at the other two brethren, and at two strokes hee strooke them downe to the earth. With that sir Reynold began to start vp with his head all bloody, and came straight vnto sir Launcelot. Now let bee said sir Launcelot, I was not far from thee, when thou wert made knight sir Reynold, and also I know thou art a good knight, and loth I were to slay thee. Graunty said sir Reynold for your goodnesse, and I dare say as for me and my brethren, wee will not be loth to yeld vs vnto you, so that we know your name, for we know wel ye are not sir Kay, as for that be it as it may, for yee shall yeld you vnto dame Gueneuer, and loke that yee bee with her on Whit Sunday, and yeld you vnto her as prisoners and say that sir Kay sent you vnto her. When they swore it should be done. And so passed forth sir Launcelot, and the thre brethren helped each other as well as they might.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXIII.

How Sir Launcelot lusted against foure Knights of the round table, and ouerthrew them.

Sir Launcelot rode into a deepe fforest, and thereby a flade he saw foure knights hewing vnder an oke and they were of King Archurs Court, that one was Sagramour le desirous, Sir Ector de maris, Sir Gawaine and Sir Ewaine. Anon as these foure knights had spied Sir Launcelot, they went by his arms it had bene Sir Kay. Now by my faith said Sir Sagramour I will proue Sir Kayes might, and gat his speare in his hand and came toward Sir Launcelot. Thereof was Sir Launcelot ware and knew him well, and fewred his speare against him, and smote Sir Sagramour so soze that horse and man fel to the earth. Doe my fellows said Sir Ector, yonder you may see what a buffet he hath, that knight is much bigger then euer was Sir Kay. Now shall ye see what I may doe to him. So Sir Ector gat his speare in his hand and galloped toward Sir Launcelot and Sir Launcelot smote him through the shield and shoulder, that horse and man went to the earth, and euer his speare held. By my faith said Sir Ewaine that is a strong knight, and I am sure he hath slaine Sir Kay, and I see by his great strength it will be hard to match him. And therewith Sir Ewaine gat the spear in his hand and rode toward Sir Launcelot, and Sir Launcelot knew him well, and so he met him on the plaine, and gaue him such a buffet that of a great while hee wist not where hee was. Now I well see said Sir Gawaine I must encounter with that knight, and so he dressed his shield and got a good speare in his hand and Sir Launcelot knew him well, and then they let their horses run as fast as they might, and either smote other in the midst of their shields, but Sir Gawaines speare brake, and Sir Launcelot charged so soze vpon him, that his horse reuered vp and downe, and much sorow had Sir Gawaine to auoide his horse, and so Sir Launcelot passed on a pace and smiled, and said God giue him joy that this speare made, for there came neuer a better in my hand. When the foure knights went each one to other

other, and comforted each other. What say yee by this I see said Sir Gawaine, that one speare hath feld vs foure. Wee com- mungund him to the dinell said they all, for he is a man of great might. Ye may well say it said Sir Gawaine that he is a man of great might, for I dare lay my life it is Sir Launcelot, I know it by his riding. Let him go said Sir Gawaine, for as we come to the Court then shall wee wit, and then had they much sorow to get their horses againe.

CHAP. CXV.

How Sir Launcelot followed a brachet into a Castle, whereas he found a dead Knight, and how afterward he was required of a damosell for to heale her brother.

Now let vs speake of Sir Launcelot that rode a great while in a deepe fforest, where he saw a blacke brachet, seeking in maner as it had bene in the fealtie of an hurt deere, and therewith hee rode after the brachet, and hee saw lye on the ground a large seante of blood, and then Sir Launcelot rode after, and euer the brachet looked behind her. And so shee went through a great marish, and euer Sir Launcelot folloved, and then was he ware of an old manno, and thither ran the brachet and so ouer the bridge. So Sir Launcelot rode ouer the bridge that was old and fable. And when he came into the midst of a great hall, there saw he lye a dead knight that was a sennet man, and that brachet licked his wounds. And therewith came out a Lady weeping and wringing her hands, and she said. Oh knight too much sorow hast thou brought to mee. Why say yee so said Sir Launcelot, I neuer did harme to this knight, for hither by seant of blood this brachet brought me, and therefore faire Lady be not displeased with me, for I am full soze agrieved of your grievance. Cruely Sir said she, I trow it be not ye that haue slaine my husband for he that did that deed is soze wounded and he neuer likly to recouer, that I shall ensure him. What is your husbands name said Sir Launcelot. Sir said she his name was Sir Gilbert the bastard, one of the best knights of the worlde, and he that hath slaine him I know not his name.

A a

Now

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

How God send you better comfort said Sir Launcelot. And so he departed and went into the Forrest againe, and there he met with a damosell that knew him well, and shee said with a loud voice. See wee well found my Lord, and now I require you of your knight hood to helpe my brother that is sore wounded and neuer stinteth bleeding, for this day fought hee with Sir Gilbert that bastard and slew him in plaine battell, and there was my brother sore wounded, and there is a lady a sorceresse that dwel- leth in a Castle here beside, and this day shee told me that my brothers wounds should neuer be whole till that I could finde a knight that would goe into the chappell perilous, and there he should finde a sword and a bloody cloath, that the wounded knight was lapped in, and a peece of the cloath and sword should heipe my brothers wounds, so that his wounds were searched with the sword and the cloath. This is a meruailous thing said Sir Launcelot, but what is your brothers name. Sir said shee, his name is Sir Melior de logres. What mee repenteth said Sir Launcelot, for he is a fellow of the round table, and to his helpe I will doe my power. When Sir said she, follow this hie way and it will bring you vnto the chappell perilous, and here I shal abide till God send you hither againe, and but if you speede, I know no knight liuing that may atchieue that aduenture.

CHAP. CXVI.

How Sir Launcelot came into the chappell perilous, and gat there of a dead corps a peece of the cloath and a sword.

Right so Sir Launcelot departed, and when he came to the Chappell perilous, he alighted downe and tied his horse to a little gate. And as soone as he was within the Churchyard, hee saw on the front of the Chappell many faire rich shields turned vpside downe and many of the shields Sir Launcelot had sene knights bare before, with that hee saw stand by him thirtie great knights more by a yard then any man that euer hee had sene, and all those grinned and gnashed at Sir Launcelot, and when hee saw their countenance hee dread them sore, and so put his shield afore him, and toke his sword in his hand

ready

and his Knights of the round Table:

ready to doe battaile, and they were all armed in blacke harness, ready with their shields and swords drawn. And when Sir Launcelot would haue gone through them they scattered on euery side of him, and gaue him the way, and therewith hee waied all bold and entred into the Chappell, and then hee saw no light but a dimme lampe burning, and then was he ware of a corpe couered with a cloath of silke, then Sir Launcelot stowed downe and cut a peece of that cloath away, and then it sared vnder him as the earth had quaked a little, whereof hee was afeard, and then hee saw a faire sword lye by the dead knight, and that he gat in his hand and hied him out of the chappell. As soone as hee was in the chappell yard, all the knights spake to him with a grimly voice, and said, knight Sir Launcelot, lay that sword from thee or else thou shalt die. Whether I liue or die said Sir Launcelot, with no great words get yee it againe therfore fight for it and yee list. Therewith he passed through them, and beyond the chappell yard there met him a faire damosell, and said. Sir Launcelot, leaue that sword behind thee or thou wilt die for it. I will not leaue it said Sir Launcelot for no treats. So said she, and ye did leaue that sword, Quene Gueneuer should ye neuer see. When were I a fawle and I would leaue this sword said Sir Launcelot. How gentell knight said the damosell, I require thee to kisse mee once. Nay said Sir Launcelot, that God forbid. Well Sir said she, and thou haddest kissed me, thy life dayes had bene done, but now alas said she I haue lost all my labour, for I ordeined this chappell for thy sake, and for Sir Gawaine, and once I had Sir Gawaine within me and at that time he fought with that knight which there lieth dead in yonder chappell Sir Gilbert the bastard, and at that time hee smote off Sir Gilbert the bastards left hand. And so Sir Launcelot now I tell thee, that I haue loued thee the this seauen yeare, but there may no woman haue thy loue but Quene Gueneuer, but sithen I may not reioyce thee to haue thy body alieue, I had kept no more joy in this world but to haue had thy dead body, and I would haue balmed it and serued, and so haue kept it my life dayes, and dayly I should haue clipped thee and kissed thee in the despite of Quene Gueneuer. See say

A a 2

well

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

well said Sir Launcelot, Iesus preserve me from your subtil craft. And therewith hee tooke his horse and departed from her. And as the booke saith, when Sir Launcelot was departed shee tooke such sorrow that shee died within fiftene dayes, and her name was Hellawes the sorceresse, Lady of the Castle Pigramus. Anon Sir Launcelot met with the damosell Sir Millots sister. And when shee saw him shee clapped her hands and wept for joy, and then they rode to a Castle thereby where Sir Meliot lay. Anon as Sir Launcelot saw him he knew him, but he was pale as earth for bleeding. When Sir Meliot saw Sir Launcelot hee kneeled on his knees and cried on him. Oh Lord Sir Launcelot helpe mee, anon Sir Launcelot went unto him and touched his wounds with sir Gilberts sword, & then he wiped his wounds with a part of the bloody cloath that sir Gilbert was wrapped in. Anon a wholer man in his life was he neuer. And then was there betwene them great joy, and they made sir Launcelot all the chere that they might. And so on the morrow sir Launcelot tooke his leaue and sir Meliot to hee him to King Arthurs Court, for it draweth nigh to the feast of Pentecost, and there by the grace of God ye shall find me. And therewith they departed.

CHAP. CXVII.

How Sir Launcelot at the request of a Lady recovered a fawcon, whereby he was deceived.

Sir Launcelot rode through many strange countries, over Parth and Wales til by fortune he came to a Castle, and as he passed beyond the Castle him thought hee heard two little bells ring, and then he was ware of a fawcon that came flying over his head toward an high elme, and long lines about his feet, and as shee flew unto the elme to take her perch, the lines overcaught a bough, and as she would haue taken her right she hung fast by the leggs, and sir Launcelot saw how she hung, and beheld the faire fawcon perigot, and he was sorry for her. In the meane while came a Lady out of a Castle and cried on him. Oh Launcelot Launcelot as thou art floure of all knights of the

world

and his Knights of the round Table.

world, helpe me to get my hawke, for if my hawke be lost my Lord will destroy mee, for I kept the hawke and shee slept away from me, and if my Lord my husband know it, hee is so hastic that he will sleie me. What is your Lords name said Sir Launcelot. Sir she said his name is Sir Phelot, a knight that longeth to the King of Northgales. Faire Lady said Sir Launcelot sith that yee know my name and require me on my knight hood to helpe you, I will doe that I may to get your hawke, and yet God knoweth I am an il climer and the tre is passing hie and few boughs to helpe me withall. And therewith Sir Launcelot alighted and tied his horse to the same tre, and prayed the Lady to vnrarme him. And so when he was vnarmed, hee put off all his clothes vnto his shirt and breeches, and with might and force climbed vp to the fawcon, and tied the lynes to a great rotten branch, and threw the hawke downe with the branch. Anon the Lady gat the hawke with her hand. And therewithall came Sir Phelot out of the groues suddainely that was her husband, al armed with his naked sword in his hand, and said. Oh knight Sir Launcelot, now haue I found thee as I would haue thee and stood at the bole of the tre to sleie him, A Lady said Sir Launcelot why haue ye betraied me. Shee hath done as I commanded her said Sir Phelot, and therefore there is none other way but thine houre is come that thou must die. What were shame said Sir Launcelot that an armed knight should sleie a naked man by treason.

Thou gettest none other grace said Sir Phelot. Truly said Sir Launcelot that shall bee thy shame, but sith thou wilt doe none other wise, take mine harnais with thee, and hang my sword vpon a bough that I may get it, and then doe thy best to sleie me and thou canst. Nay nay said Sir Phelot, for I know thee better then thou waneest, therefore thou gettest no weapon and I may keepe thee therfro. Alas said Sir Launcelot that euer any knight should die weapenlesse. And therewithall hee looked aboue and vnder him, and over his head he saw a round spike on a big bough leauelesse, and brake it off by the body of the tre, and then hee came lower and awaited how his owne horse stood, and suddenly hee leapt on the farther side of the horse

And 3

from

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

from the Knight. And then Sir Phelot lashed at him eagerly, meaning to haue slaine him. But Sir Launcelot put away the stroke with the roundspike, and therewith he smote him on the side of the head that he fell in a sound to the ground. Then Sir Launcelot tooke his sword out of his hand, and strooke his neck from the body. Then cried the Lady, alas why hast thou slaine my husband. I am not causer said Sir Launcelot, for with fals hood ye would haue slaine me with treason and now it is fallen on you both. And then she sounded as though she would die. And therewithall Sir Launcelot got all his armour as well as hee could and put it on him for dread of more resort, for he dread that the knights Castle was nigh. And as soone as hee might hee tooke his horse and departed thence, and thanked our Lord God that he had escaped that aduenture.

CHAP. CXVIII.

How Sir Launcelot ouertooke a Knight which chased his wife to haue slaine her, and what he said to him.

Sir Launcelot rode many wilde wayes through parties and many other waies. And as he rode in a valley, he saw a knight chasing a Lady with a naked sword to haue slaine her. And by fortune as this knight should haue slaine this Lady, shee cried on Sir Launcelot, and prayed him to rescue her. When Sir Launcelot saw that mischief, hee tooke his horse and rode betwene them saying. Knight fie for shame, why wilt thou sleigh this Lady, thou doest shame to thee and all knights. What hast thou to doe betwene me and my wife said the knight, I will sleigh her in angre thy head. That shall ye not said Sir Launcelot, for rather wee will haue adoe together. Sir Launcelot said the knight, thou doest not thy part, for this Lady hath betrayed me. It is not so said the Lady, truly he saith wrong on me, and because I loue and cherish my cousin Germane, he is telous betwene him and me, and as I shall answer before God, there was neuer sinne betwene vs. But Sir said the Lady as thou art named the worshipfullest knight of the world, I require thee of thy true knight hood to keepe me and saue me.

for

and his Knights of the round Table.

What soeuer ye say he wil sleigh me, for he is without mercy. Haue ye no doubt said Sir Launcelot, it shall not lie in his power. Sir said the knight in your sight I will be ruled as ye will haue me. And so Sir Launcelot roode on the one side and the Lady on the other side. He had not ridden but a while, but that the knight bad Sir Launcelot turne him, and looked behind him and said. Ponder come men of armes riding after vs. And Sir Launcelot turned him and thought no treason. And therewith was the knight and the Lady on one side, and suddainly hee strooke off the Ladies head. And when Sir Launcelot had espied what he had done, he called him traitour and said. Thou hast shamed me for euer, and suddainly Sir Launcelot alighted from his horse, and drew out his sword to haue slaine him. And therewith he fel flat to the earth, and caught Sir Launcelot by the thighs and cried him mercy. Fie on thee said Sir Launcelot thou shamefull knight, thou mayest haue no mercy, and therefore arise and fight with me. Nay said the knight I will not arise til ye graunt me mercy. Now wil I proffer thee faire, said Sir Launcelot. I will vnarme mee vnto my shirt, and wil haue nothing vpon mee but my shirt, and my sword in my hand, and and if thou canst sleigh me, quit beest thou for euer. Nay Sir said Peduere that will I neuer doe. Well said Sir Launcelot take this Lady and the head and beare it vpon thee, and here shalt thou sweare vpon my sword to beare it alway vpon thy backe, and neuer to rest till thou come vnto Quene Gueneuer. Sir said hee that will I doe by the faith of body. Now said Sir Launcelot tell mee thy name, for my name is Peduere. In a shamefull houre wert thou borne said Sir Launcelot. So Peduere departed with the dead Lady and the head, and found the Quene with King Arthur at Winchester, and there hee told all the truth. Sir knight said the Quene, this is an horrible deede and a shameful, and a sore rebuke for Sir Launcelot, but notwithstanding his worship is not knownen in diuers countries, but this shall giue you in penitance, make ye as good shift as you can, ye shall beare this Lady with you on horsebacke vnto the Pope of Rome, and of him receiue your penitance for your soule deedes, and ye shall neuer rest one night there as ye doe another,

233

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and if ye goe to any bed, the dead body shall lye with you. This oath hee made there, and so departed, and as the French booke saith, when hee came to Rome, the Pope bad him goe againe to Quene Gueneuer, and in Rome was his Lady buried by the Popes commandement. And after this Sir Peduere fell to great goodnesse, and was an holy man and an hermit,

CHAP. CXIX.

How Sir *Launcelot* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court, and how there were recounted of his noble feates, and acts.

NOW turne wee vnto Sir *Launcelot* that came home two daies afore the feast of *Pentecost*. And King *Arthur* and all the Court were full glad of his coming. And when Sir *Gawaine* Sir *Ewaine*, Sir *Sagramour*, and Sir *Ector de Maris*, saw Sir *Launcelot* in Sir *Kays* armour, then they wist wel it was he that smot them down al with one spear. When there was laughing & smiling among them. And ever now and then came all the knights home that sir *Turquine* had taken prisoners, and they all honoured and worshipped sir *Launcelot*. When sir *Gaheris* heard them speake, he said. As al the bat-taile from the beginning to the ending, and there hee told King *Arthur* all how it was, and how sir *Turquine* was the strongest knight that euer hee saw except sir *Launcelot*, there were many knights bare him record nigh threescore. When sir *Kay* told the King how sir *Launcelot* had rescued him when hee was in danger to haue bene slaine, and how hee made the knights to yeld them to me, and not to him. And there they were all thre and bare record. And by *Iesus* said sir *Kay* because sir *Launcelot* took my harnais and left me his, I rode in good peace, and no man would haue to doe with me. When anon therewithall came the thre knights that fought with sir *Launcelot* at the long bridge, and there they yelded them vnto sir *Kay*, and sir *Kay* forsooke them and said, he fought neuer with them, but I shal ease your hearts said sir *Kay*, yonder is sir *Launcelot* that overcame you. When they understod that, they were glad. When sir *Meliot de logres* came home and told King *Arthur* how sir

and his Knights of the round Table.

sir *Launcelot* had saued him from death, and all the deedes were knownen how soure *Quenes* sorceresses had him in prison, and how he was deliuered by the daughter of King *Bagdemagus*. Also there were told all the great deedes of armes that Sir *Launcelot* did betwene the two kings, that is to say, the King of *Northgales* and King *Bagdemagus*, all the truth Sir *Gahallatine* told, and sir *Mador de laport* and sir *Mordred*, for they thre were at that turnement. When came in the Lady that knew sir *Launcelot* when he wounded sir *Belleus* at that pavilion, and there at the request of sir *Launcelot* sir *Belleus* was made knight of the round table. And so at that time sir *Launcelot* had the greatest name of any knight of the world, and most was hee honoured both of high and low.

CHAP. CXX.

How *Beaumains* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court and demanded three petitions of King *Arthur*.

WHEN King *Arthur* hold his round table most plenare, it was fortun'd that hee commanded that the solemne and high feast of *Pentecost* should be holden at a Citie and Castle, which in those daies was called King *Benetton*, vpon the sands that marched nigh *Wales*, so King *Arthur* had euer a custome that at the high feast of *Pentecost* especially afore al other high feasts in the yeare, he would not goe that day to meate vntill hee had heard or seene some great aduenture or meruaile. And for that custome all manner of strange aduentures came before King *Arthur* at that feast afore all other feasts. And so sir *Gawaine* a little before noone of the day of *Pentecost* espied at a window thre men on horsebacke and a dwarfe on fote. And so the thre men alighted, and the dwarfe kept their horses, and one of the thre men was higher then the other twaine by a fote and a halfe. When sir *Gawaine* went vnto the King and said. Sir goe to your meate, for here at hand cometh strange aduentures. So King *Arthur* went to his meate with many other things. And there were all the knights of the round table, saue those that were prisoners or slaine at an encounter.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

When at the high feast euermore they should be fulfilled the whole number an hundred and fiftie, for then was the round table fully accomplished. Right so came into the hall two men well besene and richly, and vpon their shoulders there leaned the goodliest young man and the fairest that euer they saw, and hee was large, long and broad in the shoulders, and well visaged, and the fairest and the largest hands that euer man saw, but he fared as though he might not goe nor beare himselfe, but if hee leaned vpon their shoulders. Anon as King Arthur saw him, there was made silence and ronne, and right so they went with him vnto the highe doore, without saying any word, and then this bigge young man drew him backe and chily stretched vpon a right laying to King Arthur God blesse you and al your faire fellowship, and in especial the fellowship of the round table. And for this cause I am come hither, for to pray you to giue mee these gifts, and they shall not bee vnreasonably asked, but that yee may worshipfully and honourably graunt them vnto me, and to you no great hurt nor losse. And as for the first gift I will aske now, and the other two gifts I will aske at the same day twelue moneths wheresoener that ye hold your high feast. Now aske said King Arthur, and ye shall haue your petition. Now sir said he, this is my petition for this feast, that ye will giue me meate and drinke sufficiently for these twelue moneths, and at that day I will aske mine other two gifts. By faire sonne said King Arthur, aske better I counsaile thee, for this is but a simple asking, for my heart giueth mee to thee greatly that thou art come of men of worship, and greatly my conceit faileth mee, but thou shalt proue a man of right great worship. Sir said he, as for that be it as it may bee, I haue asked that I will aske. Well said King Arthur, yee shall haue meate and drinke enough, I neuer defended that none neither my friend nor foe. But what is thy name I would faine know, I can not tell you said hee. What haue I maruaile of thee said the king that thou knowest not thine owne name, and thou art one of the goodliest young men that euer I saw. Then the noble King Arthur betooke him vnto the Belward Sir Kay, and charged him that hee should giue him of all manner of meates,

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and drinke of the best, and also that he haue all manner of dwelling, as though hee were a Lords sonne. What shall little made said Sir Kay to doe such cost vpon him, for I dare well undertake that hee is a villaine bozne, and neuer will make man, for and hee had bene come of a Gentleman, hee would haue asked of you horse and harnets, but such as hee is, he hath asked. And when hee hath no name, I shall giue him a name that shall be Beaumains, that is to say, faire hands, and into the kitchen I shall bring him, and there he shall haue fat browesse euery day, that he shall bee as fat by the twelue moneths end as a porke hog. Right so the two men that had brought him departed, and left him to Sir Kay that scorned and mocked him.

CHAP. CXXI.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine were wroth because Sir Kay mocked Beaumains, and of a damosell which desired a Knight for to doe battraile for a Lady.

There at was Sir Gawaine wroth and especially Sir Launcelot for hee had Sir Kay leaue his mocking, for I dare lay my head he shall proue a man of great worship. Let be said Sir Kay, it can not bee by reason, for as he is so hath he asked. Beware said Sir Launcelot, so yee gaue that good knight Sir Brewnor Sir Dinadans brother a name, and ye cald him Lacot male ryle, and that turned you to anger afterward. As for that said Sir Kay this shall neuer proue no such, for Sir Brewnor desired euermore worship, and this desireth bread and drinke, paine of my life he was brought by and fostered in some abbey, and how soeuer it was they failed of meate and drinke, and so thither he is come for sustenance. And so Sir Kay had got him a place and sat downe to meate. So Beaumains went to the hall doore, and sat him downe among boyes and lads, and there hee ate sadly. And then sir Launcelot, after meate was done came to his chamber, and there hee should haue meate and drinke enough. And so did Sir Gawaine. But hee refused them all, hee would doe nothing but as Sir Kay commanded him, for no proffer. But as touching Sir Gawaine he had reason to proffer him

W b 2

lodging,

lodging, meate and drinke, for that proffer came of his bloud: for hee was neuer kinne to him then hee wist. But that Sir Launcelot did, was of his great gentlenesse and curtesie. So thus he was put into the kitchen and lay euery night as the boy of the kitchen did. And so he endured al those twelue monethes, and neuer displeased man nor child, but alwaies he was mecke and milde. But ener when hee knew of any iussing of knights, that would he see and hee might. And euer sir Launcelot would giue him gold to spend and cloathes, and so did Sir Gawaine. And whereas were any masteries done there would hee be, and there might none cast the barre or stone to him by two yards. Then would Sir Kay say, how like you my boy of the kitchen. So it passed on till the feast of Pentecost, and at that time the King held it at Carlion in the most royallest wise that might be, like as yearely hee did. But the King would eate no meate on the Whit Sunday till hee had heard of some aduventure. And then came there a squire to the King and said. Sir ye may goe to your meate, for here commeth a damosell with some strange aduventure. When was the King glad, and set him downe. Right so there came in a damosell and saluted the King, and prayed him for succour. For whom said the King, what is the aduventure? She said she haue a Lady of great worship and renown, and she is besieged with a tyrant, so that shee may not goe out of her Castle, and because that heere in your Court are called the noblest knights of the world, I come vnto you and pray you for succour. What call ye your Lady, and where dwelleth she, and who is hee and what is his name that hath besieged her. Sir King said shee, as for my Ladies name that shall not bee knowne for me as at this time. But I let you wit shee is a Lady of great worship, and of great lands. And as for the tyrant that besiegeth her and destroyeth her land, hee is called the red knight of the robe lands. I know him not said the King. Sir said Sir Gawaine, I know him well, for hee is one of the perillous knights of the world, men say that hee hath seauen mens strength, and from him I escaped once full hard with my life. Faire damosell said the King, there bee knights heere that would doe their polder to rescow your Lady, but because ye wil not

nottell her name, nor where she dwelleth, therefore none of my knights that be here now shall goe with you by my will. When must I speake further said the damosell.

CHAP. CXXII.

How Beaumains desired the battaile and how it was graunted him, and how he desired to be made Knight of Sir Launcelot.

Then with these words came before the King Beaumains, while the damosell was there, and thus he said. Sir King God thanke you I haue bene these twelue monethes in your kitchen, and haue had my full sustenance and now I will aske my two gifts that bee behind. Aske upon my perrill said the King. Sir these shal be my two gifts. First that ye will grant mee to haue this aduventure of the damosell, for it belongeth to me. Thou shalt haue it said the King, I graunt it thee. When sir this is now the other gift, that ye shall bid sir Launcelot du lake to make me a knight, for of him I will bee made knight, and else of none.

And when I am past, I pray you let him ride after mee, and make mee knight when I requyre him. All this shall be done said the King. Fie on thee said the damosell, shal I haue none but one that is your kitchen page. When was shee wroth, and tooke her horse and departed. And with that there came one to Beaumains and told him that his horse and armour was come for him, and there was a dwarfe come with al things that him needed in the richest manner. Whereat all the Court had much maruaile from whence came all that geare. So when hee was armed there was none but few so goodly a man as hee was. And right so he came into the hall and tooke his leaue of King Arthur and of Sir Gawaine, and of Sir Launcelot, and prayed him that he would hie after him. And so departed and rode after the damosell.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. CXXIII.

How *Beaumains* departed, and how he got of Sir *Kay* a speare and a shield and how he lusted and fought with Sir *Lancelot*.

But there went many after to behold how well he was horsed and trapped in cloth of Gold, but hee had neither shield nor speare. When sir *Kay* said openly in the Hall. I will ride after my boy of the *Kitching*, for to wit whether hee will know mee for his better. Sir *Lancelot* and sir *Gawaine* said, yet abide at home. So sir *Kay* made him ready and tooke his horse and his speare and rode after him. And right as *Beaumains* ouer-tooke the damosell right so came sir *Kay* and said. What sir *Beaumains*, know ye not mee. When hee turned his horse and knew that it was sir *Kay* which had done him all the dispite that ye haue heard afore. He said *Beaumains*, I know you for an vngentle knight of the Court, and therefore beware of me. Therewith sir *Kay* put his speare in the rest, and ranne straight to him, and *Beaumains* came as fast vpon him with his sword in his hand, and so hee put away the speare with his sword, and with a soyne thrust him through the side, that sir *Kay* fell downe as hee had beene dead; and he alight downe and tooke sir *Kayes* shield and his speare and start vpon his owne horse and rode his way. All that saw sir *Lancelot* and so did the damosell. And then he bad his dwarfe start vpon sir *Kayes* horse, and so hee did. By that sir *Lancelot* was come. When hee profered sir *Lancelot* to iust, and either made them ready, and came together so fiercely that either bare downe other to the earth, and soe were they hurt. When sir *Lancelot* arose and helped him to auyd his horse. And then *Beaumains* put his shield before him, and profered to fight with sir *Lancelot* on foote, and so they rased together like two wild Bores, rasing and foyning to the mountenance of an houre, and sir *Lancelot* felt him so big, that hee meruailed of his strength, for hee fought more like a gyant then a knight, and that his durable and passing perilous. For sir *Lancelot* had much a doe with him, that hee dreed himselfe to bee ashamed, and said

Beaumains

and his Knights of the round Table.

Beaumains fight not so sore, your quarrell and maine is not so great but ye may leaue off. Truly that is truth said *Beaumains* but it doth mee good to feele your might, and yet my lord I haue not shelded the uttermost.

CHAP. CXXIII.

How *Beaumains* told his name to Sir *Lancelot*, and how hee was dubbed Knight of Sir *Lancelot*, and after ouer-tooke the damosell.

In Gods name said sir *Lancelot*, for I promise you by the faith of my body I had as much to doe as I might to saue myselfe from you vntill now, and therefore haue no doubt of none earthly knight. Hope ye that I may any while stand a proued knight said sir *Beaumains*. He said sir *Lancelot* doe as ye haue done, and I shall be your warrant. When I pray you said *Beaumains* giue mee the order of knight-hood. When must ye tell mee your name said sir *Lancelot*, and of what kinne ye be borne. Sir so that you will not discouer me I shall tell you said *Beaumains*. Nay said sir *Lancelot*, and that I promise you by the faith of my body, vntill it be openly knowne. When hee said hee, my name is *Gareth* of *Orkeney* and vnto the vnto sir *Gawaine* of *Father* and *Mother*. Ah sir said sir *Lancelot* I am now more gladder of you then I was, for euer mee thought ye should bee of a great blood, and that ye came not to the Court for meate nor drinke. And then sir *Lancelot* gaue him the order of knight-hood. And then sir *Gareth* prayed him to depart and let him goe on his iourney. So sir *Lancelot* departed from him and came to sir *Kay*, and made him to bee borne vpon his shield and so he was healed hard with his life, and althmen stoared sir *Kay*, and especially sir *Gawaine* and also sir *Lancelot* said that it was not his part to rebuke no young man, for full little knew hee of what kinne hee is come, and for what cause he came vnto this Court. And so wee leaue off sir *Kay* and turne wee vnto *Beaumains*. When hee had undertaken the damosell anone hee said. What doest thou heere, thou stinkest all of the *Kitching*, thy clothes bee all baloyd of the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

the grease and talow that thou hast gotten in King Archurs
kitching, weneſt thou ſaid thee, that I alow thee for yonder
Knight that thou haſt ſlaie, may truely, for thou ſlewſt him
unhappily and cowardly, therefore returne againe balwy
kitching page. I know thee well, for ſir Kay named thee
Beaumains: what art thou but a luſke and a turner of bzoaches
and a waſher of diſhes. Damofell ſaid ſir Beaumains ſay to
mee what yee liſt I wil not goe from you whatſoeuer yee ſay,
for I haue undertaken of King Arthur for to atchieue your ad-
uenture, and I ſhall finiſh it to the end, or I ſhall die there-
fore. Hee one thee kitching knaue wilt thou finiſh mine ad-
venture, thou ſhalt anon bee met withall, that thou wouldeſt
not for all the bzoth that euer thou ſuppeſt once looke him in the
face. I ſhall aſſay ſaid Beaumains. So as they thus rode in
the Wood, there came a man flying all that he might. Whe-
ther wilt thou ſaid Beaumains? A lord ſaid he helpe mee, for
hereby in a ſlade are ſir theues which haue taken my Lord and
bound him, and I am afraid leaſt they will ſlay him. Bring
mee thither ſaid ſir Beaumains. And ſo they rode together till
they came there as the Knight was bound, and then hee rode
vnto the theues, and ſtrake one at the firſt ſtrooke to death,
and then an other, and at the third ſtrooke hee ſlew the third
thiefe. And then the other three fled, and hee roe after and
ouer-tooke them, and then thoſe three theues turned againe
and hard aſſailed ſir Beaumains, but at the laſt hee ſlew them.
And then returned and vnbond the Knight. And the Knight
thanked him and prayed him to ride with him to his Caſtle
there a little beſide, and he ſhould worſhipfully reward him for
his good deedes. Sir ſaid ſir Beaumains I will no reward
haue, I was this day made Knight of the Noble ſir Lancelot,
and therefore I will haue no reward, but God reward me. And
alſo I muſt follow this damofell. And when hee came nigh-
er, ſhee bad him ride from her, for thou ſmelleft all of the
kitching; weneſt thou that I haue ioy of thee, for all this deede
that thou haſt done, is but miſhapned thee. But thou ſhalt ſee a
ſight that ſhall make thee to turne againe, and that lightly.
When the ſame Knight which was reſcued of the theues rode
after

and his Knights of the round Table.

after the damofell, and prayed her to lodge with him all that
night. And becauſe it was neere night the damofell rode with
him to his Caſtle, and there they had great cheere. And at
ſupper the Knight ſet ſir Beaumains beſore the damofell. He
ſaid thee, ſir Knight yee are vncurtious for to ſet a kitching
page beſore mee him beſeemeth better to ſticke a ſwine then to
ſit beſore a damofell of high parentage. When the Knight was
aſhamed of her words, and tooke him vp and ſet beſore him, at
a ſide boord, and ſet himſelfe beſore him. And ſo all that night
they had good and merry reſt.

CHAP. CXXV.

How Sir Beaumains fought and ſlew two Knights
at a paſſage.

Son the morrow the damofell and he tooke their leaue and
thanked the Knight, and ſo departed, and rode one their
way till they came to a great forreſt, and there was a great
riuer and but one paſſage, and there were redy two Knights
on the further ſide, to let them the paſſage. What ſaiſt thou
ſaid the damofell, wilt thou match yonder two Knights, or
wilt thou returne againe. Nay ſaid ſir Beaumains, I will
not returne againe and they were ſire more. And therewith hee
raſhed into the water, and in the middeſt of the water either
broke their ſpeares to their hands, and then they drew their
ſwords and ſmote each at other egerly. And at the laſt, ſir
Beaumains ſmote the other vpon the helme that his head was
aſtoned, and there with hee fell downe into the water, and
there was drowned. And then hee ſpurred his horſe vnto the
land, where the other Knight fell vpon him and broke his
ſpeare, and ſo they drew there ſwords and fought long together.
At the laſt ſir Beaumains cloue his helme and his head vnto
the ſhoulders. And then hee rode vnto the damofell, and bad her
ride forth on her way. Alas ſaid ſhe that euer kitching page
ſhould haue the fortune to deſtroy ſuch two daughtie Knights,
thou weneſt thou haſt done daughtily and that is not ſo for the
ſir Knights horſe ſtumbled and there he was drowned in the
water,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

water, and neuer it was by thy force and might. And the last knight by mishap thou camest behind him and shamefully thou slewest him. Damosell said Sir Beaumains, yee may say what yee will, but with whom soeuer I haue adoe withall I trust to God to serue him or hee depart, and therefore, I reckon not what yee say, so that I may winne your Lady. Fic fic foule kitching knaue, thou shalt see knights that shall abate thy boast. Faire Damosell giue mee faire language and then my care is past, for what knights soeuer they be I care not, nor doubt them not. Also said shee I say it for thine auaille, yet mayst thou turne againe with thy worship, for if thou follow mee, thou art butaine, for I see all that euer thou doest is but by misadventure, and not by prownesse of thy hands. Well damosell yee may say what yee will, but where soeuer that yee goe I will follow you. So thus Sir Beaumains rode with the Damosell untill euening, and euer shee chid him and would not rest. And then they came to a blacke land, and there was a blacke hawthorne, and thereon hung a blacke baner and on the other side there hung a blacke shield, and by it stood a black speare and a long, and a greate blacke horse couered with silke, and blacke stone fast by it.

CHAP. CXXVI.

How Sir Beaumains fought with the Knight of the blacke lands, and he fought so long with him that the blacke Knight fell downe and dyed.

There sate a knight all armed in blacke harnies, and his name was the knight of the blacke landes. When the Damosell saw the blacke knight, shee bad Sir Beaumains see downe the valey, for his horse was not sabled. I thanke you said Sir Beaumains, for alwayes yee will gaue mee a coward. With that the blacke knight came to the Damosell and said. Faire Damosell haue yee brought this knight from King Arthurs Court to be your Champion. Day faire knight said shee this is but a kitching knaue, that hath bene fed in King Arthurs kitching for almes. Wherefore comming he in such aray

and his Knights of the round Table.

aray said the knight, it is great shame that he beareth you company. Sir I cannot bee deliuered of him said the damosell, for with me hee rideth maugre mine head, would to God yee would put him from me or else to sleigh him if yee may, for hee is an unhappie knaue, and unhappie hath hee done to day through misadventure, for I saw him sleigh two knights at the passage of the water, and other doedes he did before right maruailous, and all through unhappinesse. What maruaillesth mee said the blacke knight that any man the which is of worship will haue to doe with him. Sir they know him not said the damosell, and because he rideth with me, they thinke he is some man of worship bozne. That may well be said the blacke knight, neuertheless how be it you say that hee is no man of worship, yet he is a full likely person, and full like to bee a strong man, but thus much shall I graunt you said the black knight, I shall put him downe upon his face, and his horse and his armour he shall leaue with mee, for it were shame for mee to doe him any moze harme. When Sir Beaumains heard him say thus to her, hee said. Sir knight thou art full large of my horse and my harnies, I let thee to wit it cost thee nought, and whether it liketh thee or not this land will I passe maugre thine head, and horse nor harnies gettest thou none of me but if thou winne them with thy hands, and therefore let mee see what thou canst doe. Saidst thou that said the blacke knight, now yeld thy Lady from thee lightly, for it becometh not a kitchin knaue to ride with such a Lady. Thou liest said Sir Beaumains I am a gentleman bozne, and of moze high linage then thou art, and that I will proue upon thy body. When in great wrath they departed with their horses, and came together as it had bene thunder, and the blacke knights speare brake, and Sir Beaumains thrust him through both his sides, and therewith his speare brake, and the truncheon sticke still in his side, but neuertheless the blacke knight drew his sword and smote many eager strokes and of great might, and hurt Sir Beaumains full sore. But at the last the blacke knight within an houre and a halfe fell downe from his horse in a sound, and there died forthwith. And when Sir Beaumains saw him so wel hoysed and armed he alighted down,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and armed him in his armour, and so tooke his horse and rode after the damosell. When she saw him come nigh her she said to him. A way kitchen knave goe out of the wind, for the smell of thy bawdy cloathes grieneth me. Alas that ever such a knave as thou art should by mishap slea so good a knight as thou hast slaine, but all this is through thine unhappinesse. But hereby is a knight that shall pay thee all thy payment, and therefore yet I counsell thee to slee backe. It may happen mee said Sir Beaumains to be beaten or slaine, but I warne you faire damosell I will not slee away for him, nor leave your company for all that ye can say, for ever ye say that they slea me or beat me, but how soever it happeneth I escape, and they lye on the ground and therefore it were as good for you to hold you still, then thus to rebuke me all day, for away will I not till I feele the uttermost of this journey or else I will bee slaine or truely beaten, therefore ride on your way, for follow you I will what soever happen.

CHAP. CXXVII.

How the brother of the Knight that was slaine, met with Sir Beaumains, and fought with Sir Beaumains, which yeelded him at the last.

THUS as they rode together they saw a knight come driving by them all in greene both his horse and his harness, and when hee came nigh the damosell, hee asked of her. As that my brother the blacke knight that ye have brought with you. May sayd she, this unhappie kitchen knave hath slaine your brother through unhappinesse. Alas said the greene knight, that is great pittie that so noble a knight as hee was should so unhappily be slaine, and namely of a knaves hand as ye say he is. A traitour said the greene knight thou shalt die for slaying of my brother he was a full noble knight, and his name was Sir Percard. I desie thee said Sir Beaumains, for I let thee to wit I slew him knightly, and not shamefully. Where withall the greene knight rode unto an horne that was greene, and it hung upon a thorne, and there he blew three deadly notes, and there came three damosells that lightly armed him. And then tooke

hee.

and his Knights of the round Table.

his great horse and a greene shield and a greene speare. And then they ranne together with all their might, and brake their speares to their hands. And then anon they drew out their swords and gaue many sad strokes, and either of them wound other full euill. And at the last at an ourthwart Sir Beaumains strooke the greene knights horse on the outside, that he fell to the ground. And then the greene knight lightly avoided his horse, and dressed him vpon his feete. What said Sir Beaumains, and therewith he alighted, and they rushed together like two mightie champions a long while, and they bled sore both. With that came the damosell and said. My Lord the greene knight, for shame why stand yee so long fighting with that kitchen knave, alas it is shame that ever ye were made a knight, for to see such a stinking boy match such a valiant knight as ye be. The greene knight hearing these words was ashamed, and incontinent he gaue Sir Beaumains a mightie stroke and cloued his shield throughout. When Sir Beaumains saw his shield cloue a sunder he was a little ashamed of that stroke and of the damosells language, and then hee gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme, that hee fell on his knees, and suddenly Sir Beaumains threw him downe on the ground growling. And incontinent the greene knight cried Sir Beaumains mercy, and yeelded him vnto Sir Beaumains, and prayed him to grant him his life. All this is in vaine said Sir Beaumains, for thou shalt die but if this damosell which is come with me pray me to saue thy life, and therewith hee unlaced his helme, like as hee would haue slaine him. Fie vpon thee thou kitchen page, I will neuer pray thee to saue his life. For I will neuer bee so much in thy danger. When shall hee die said Sir Beaumains. Not so hardy thou bawdy knave said the damosell that thou say him. Alas said the greene knight suffer me not to die, for a faire word may saue my life. Oh faire knight said the greene knight, saue my life and I will forgive the death of my brother, and for ever to become thy man, and thirtie knights that help of mee for ever shall doe you seruice. In the deuills name said the damosell, that such a bawdy kitchen knave should haue thirtie and thirtie knights seruice. Sir knight said Sir Beau-

Cc 3

mains

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

mains all this availleth not, but if my damosell speake with me for thy life. And therewithall he made resemblance to slep him. Let be said the damosell thou balowy knave, slep him not, for if thou doe, thou shalt repent it. Damosell said Sir Beaumains your charge is to mee a pleasure, and at your commandement his life shall be saved, and else not. When he said, Sir Knight with the greene armes, I release thee quit at this damosells request, for I wil not make her wroth, I will fulfil all that she chargeth me. And then the greene Knight knéled down & did him homage with his sword. When said the damosell me repenteth greene Knight of your bondage, and of your brothers death the blacke Knight, for of your helpe I had great néede, for I am sore adread to passe this great forrest. Pay dreed ye not so sore said the greene Knight, for yee shall lodge with me this night, and to morrow I shall helpe you through this forrest. So they toke their horses and rode onto his mannor, which was fast there beside.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How the damosell alwayes rebuked Sir *Beaumains*, and would not suffer him to sit at her table, but called him kitchen page.

And alwayes the damosell rebuked Sir *Beaumains*, and would not suffer him to sit at her table, but the greene Knight toke him by and set him at a side table. She thinketh marvaile said the greene Knight to the damosell, why that ye rebuke this noble Knight as yee doe, for I warne you damosell hee is a full noble Knight, and I know no Knight able to match him, therefore ye doe great wrong to rebuke him, for he shall doe you right good service for whatsoever he maketh him selfe, yee shall proue at the end that hee is come of noble blood, and of Kings lineage. Hee said the damosell, it is shame for you to say of him such worship. Cruelly said the greene Knight it were shame for me to say of him any disworship, for he hath proued him selfe a better Knight then I am, yet haue I met with many Knights in my dayes, and neuer of this time haue I found no Knight his match. And so that night they went on

and his Knights of the round Table.

to their rest and all the night the greene Knight commanded his little Knights priuily to watch Sir *Beaumains* for to keepe him from all treason. And so on the morrow they all arose and heard their masse and brake their fast, and then they toke their horses & rode on their way, & the greene Knight conueied them through the forrest and then the greene Knight said. My Lord Sir *Beaumains*, I and my thirtie Knights shall bee alway at your command both early and late at your calling, and where soeuer yee will send us. It is well said quoth Sir *Beaumains*, and when I call upon you ye must yeld you and al your knights unto King *Arthur*. If ye so commaund us, we shall be ready at all times said the greene Knight. Hee said the damosell that any good Knight should be obedient unto a kitchen knave. When departed the greene Knight and the damosell. And then he said to Sir *Beaumains*, why followest thou me thou kitchen boy, cast away thy shield and thy speare I commaunde thee yet, and flee away betimes or thou shalt say soone alas, for were thou as nightie as euer was *Wade*, or Sir *Launcelot*, Sir *Tristram*. or the good Knight Sir *Lamorake*, thou shalt not passe a pace heere by, that is called the pace perillous. Damosell said Sir *Beaumains*, who is afeard, let him flee, for it were shame to turne againe, sith I haue ridden so long with you. Well said the damosell, thou shalt see soone whether thou wilt or not.

CHAP. CXXIX.

How the third brother called the red Knight, Iusted and fought against Sir *Beaumains*, and how Sir *Beaumains* overcame him.

So within a while they saw a Tower as white as any snow well matcht all about, and double ditched, and ouer the Tower gate there hung fiftie shields of diuers colours. And ouer that Tower there was a faire medow, and therein were many knights and squires in pavilions and upon scaffolds to behold, for there on the morrow should bee a great turnement at that Castle, and the Lord of that Tower was in his Castle, and looked out at a window, and there he saw a damosell and a page,

and a knight armed at all points. So God mee helpe said the Lord, with that knight will I fust for I see that he is a knight arrant. And so anon he armed him, and took his horse hastily. And when he was on horseback with his shield and his speare, which was all red both his horse and his harness, and all that belonged unto him. And when he came nigh Sir Beaumains, he wend he had bene his brother the blacke knight, and then hee cried aloud. Brother what doe yee here in these marches. May nay said the damosell it is not your brother this is but a kitchen knave, which hath bene brought up for almes in King Archurs Court. Nevertheless said the red knight I will speake with him or he depart.

Ah said the damosell, this unhapie knave hath slaine your brother, and Sir Kay named him Beaumains, and this horse and harness was your brothers the blacke knight. Also I saw him overcome your brother the greene knight with his owne hands. Now may yee bee reuenged upon him, for I cannot bee quit of him. And with this both the knights departed a sunder, and they came together withall their might, and either of their horses fell to the earth, and lightly they avoided their horses and put their shields afore them, and drew their swords, and either gaue to other many sad strokes, as now here, and now there, rasing, trasing, foyning, and hurling like two boozes, the space of two houres. And then the damosell cried out on high unto the red knight. Alas thou noble red knight, thinke what worship hath followed thee, let neuer a kitchen knave endure thee so long as he doth. When the red knight waxed wroth and doubled his strokes, and hurt Sir Beaumains wonderous sore, so that the blood ranne downe to the ground, and great meruaile it was to behold that strong battaile. Yet at the last Sir Beaumains strooke him to the earth, and as hee would haue slaine the red knight, he cried mercy, saying. Noble knight sleyme not, and I shal yeld me unto thee with fiftie knights that be at my command, and I forgue thee all the despite that thou hast done to me, and the death of my brother the blacke knight. All this while the not said Sir Beaumains, but if my damosell pray me to saue thy life. And there with he made resemblance to strike off

his head. Let be thou Beaumains, sleyme not, for he is a noble knight, and not so hardy upon thine head but that thou saue him. Then Sir Beaumains bad the red knight stand by, and thank yee now the damosell for your life. When the red knight prayed him to see his Castle, and to be there all that night. And so the damosell granted him, and there they had merry chere. But alwaies the damosell spake many soule words unto Sir Beaumains whereof the red knight had great meruaile and all that night the red knight made threescore knights to watch Sir Beaumains, that hee should haue no shame nor bilany. And on the morrow they heard masse, and brake their fast, and the red knight came before Sir Beaumains with his threescore knights, and there he proffered him his homage and feaultie at all times hee and his knights to doe him seruice. I thanke you said Sir Beaumains, but this ye shall graunt mee, when I call upon you to come afore my Lord King Arthur, and yeld you unto him to be his knight. Sir said the red knight, I will bee ready with all my fellowship at your command. So Sir Beaumains and the damosell departed, and euer she rode chiding him in the foulest manner.

CHAP. CXXX.

How Sir Beaumains suffered great rebukes of the damosell and he suffered it patiently.

Damosell said Sir Beaumains yee are vncourteous so to rebuke me as ye doe, for me seemeth I haue done you great seruice, and euer ye threaten me for I shal be beaten with knights that we meete, but euer for all your best they lye in the dust or in the myze, and therefore I pray you rebuke mee no more, and when ye see mee beaten or yelden recreant, then may yee bid me goe from you shamefully, but first I let you to wit I will not depart from you, for I were worse then a foote if I would depart from you all the while I winne worship. Well said the right sone there shall meete with thee a knight that shall pay thee all thy wages, for he is the man of the most worship in the world, except King Arthur. I will it well said Sir Beaumains, the more he is of worship, the more shall it be my worshippe to haue

haue adoe with him. When anon within a while they were ware wherwas was befoze them a faire Citie, and betwene them and the Citie a mile and a halfe, there was a faire medow that was new mowen, and therein were many pavilions goodly to behold. Aoe said the damosell yonder is a Lord that oweth yonder Citie, and his custome is such, that when the weather is faire he lieth in this medow for to Just and turney, and euer there bee about him five hundred knights and all gentlemen of armes, and there be of al maner of games that any gentleman can deuise or think. That goodly Lord said Sir Beaumains would I faine see. Thou shalt see him time enough said the damosell. And so as she rode nere shee espied the pavilion where he was. Aoe said shee, seest thou yonder pavilion that is all of the colour of Inde, and all manner thing that is about him, both men and women, and horses trapped, shields and speares were all of the colour of Inde, and his name is Sir Perfaunt of Inde, the most Lordliest knight that euer thou lookedst on. It may well be said Sir Beaumains, but be he neuer so stout a knight, in this field I shall abide till that I see him vnder his shield. Ah foole said she, thou were better to see betime. Why said Sir Beaumains, and he be such a knight as ye make him, hee will not set vpon mee with all his men, or with his five hundred knights at one bout, for if there come no more but one at once, I shall neuer fail him while my life lasteth. He said the damosell that euer such a stinking knave should blow such a boast.

Damosell said Sir Beaumains yee are to blame so to rebuke me, for I had rather to doe five battalles then so to be rebuked, let him come and then let him doe his worst. Sir said shee I maruaile what thou art, and of what kinne thou art come boldly thou speakest, and boldly thou hast done that haue I wel scene, therefore I pray thee saue thy selfe and thou maiest, for thine horse and thou haue had great trauaile, and I read me we dwel ouerlong from the siege, for it is but seven mile hence, and all perilous passages we are past, save all onely this passage, and here I dread me full soze, least that ye shall catch some hurt or damage, and therefore I would ye were hence that ye were not dzuised nor hurt with this strong knight, but I let you to wit that

that this Sir Perfaunt of Inde is nothing of might nor of strength vnto the knight that hath laid the siege about my lla. dy. As for that said Sir Beaumains be it as it may for sith I am come so nigh this good knight, I will proue his might or I depart from him, it were great shame to mee if I withdoze mee now from him, and therefore damosell haue ye no doubt by the grace of God yee shall so deale with this knight, that within two houres after none ye shall deliuer him, and then shall wee come to the siege by day-light. Oh Iesus said the damosell, I haue maruaile what manner of man ye be, for it may neuer be otherwise but that yee be come of a noble blood, for more so wleer as more shamefuller did neuer woman rule nor rebuke a knight as I haue done to you, and euer curteously yee haue suffred me, and that came neuer but of a gentle blood and linage. Damosel said Sir Beaumains a knight may little doe that may not suffer a damosel, for what soeuer that ye said to me, I took no heed to your words, for the more ye said the more ye angered me, and my wrath I wreaked vpon them that I had adoe withal, and therefore all the mistaying that ye mistayed mee furthered me in my battalles, and caused mee to thinke to shew and proue my selfe at the end what I was, for peradventure though I had meate in King Archurs kitchin, yet I might haue had meate enough in other places, but all that I did, for to proue and to assay my friends, and that shall be knowne an other day, and whether I be a gentleman borne or no, I let you wit faire damosell I haue done you gentlemans seruice, and peradventure better seruice yet will I doe you or I depart from you. Alas said shee, faire Sir Beaumains forgiue me all that I haue mistayed and misdone against you. Withall my heart said Sir Beaumains I forgiue it you, for yee did nothing but as yee ought to doe, for all your euill words pleased mee, and damosell said Sir Beaumains, sith it liketh you to speake thus faire to mee, wit yee well it gladdeth greatly mine hart, and now me seemeth there is no knight living but I am able enough for him.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

CHAP. CXXXI.

How Sir *Beaumains* fought with Sir *Perfaunt* of Inde, and made him to be yeelden.

WHEN this Sir *Perfaunt* of Inde had espied them, as they hounded in the field, and knightly hee sent to them to know whether hee came in warre or in peace. Say vnto thy Lord said Sir *Beaumains*, I take no force, but whether as him list himselfe. So the messenger went againe vnto Sir *Perfaunt*, and told him all his answer. Well said hee, then will I haue adoe with him to the uttermost, and so he purueied him and rode against him. And when Sir *Beaumains* saw him he made him ready, and therethy met with all the might that their hoxses might run and brake their speares either in thre peeces, and their hoxses rashed so together that both their hoxses fell dead to the earth, and lightly they auoyded their hoxses and put their shields befoze them and drew their swords and gaue each other many great strokes, that sometime they so hurled together that they fell both groueling on the ground. Thus they fought two houres and more, that their shields and their halberkes were all forheuen, and in many places they were sore wounded. So at the last Sir *Beaumains* smot him thzough the cost of the body, and then he retrayed him here and there and knightly maintained his battaile long time. And at the last Sir *Beaumains* smote Sir *Perfaunt* on the helme, that hee fell groueling to the earth, and then he lept ouerwhart vpon him, and unlaced his helme soz to haue slaine him. When Sir *Perfaunt* yeelved him and asked him mercy. With that came the damosell and prayed him to saue his life. I will well said Sir *Beaumains*, soz it were pittie that this Noble knight should die. Gamercie said Sir *Perfaunt* gentle knight and damosell, soz certainly now I know well it was you that slew the black knight my brother at the black thorne, hee was a full Noble knight, his name was Sir *Periard*. Also I am sure that yee are hee that wan mine other brother the greene knight, his name was Sir *Pertolope*. Also yee wan the

and his Knights of the round Table.

the knight my brother Sir *Perimones*. And now Sir sith yee haue won these knights, this shall I doe soz to please you, yee shall haue homage and feaultie of mee, and an hundred knights to bee alwayes at your command, to goe and ride where yee will command vs. And so they went vnto Sir *Perfaunts* pavilion, and there hee dranke wine and ate spices. And afterward Sir *Perfaunt* made him to rest vpon a bed till it was supper time, and after supper to bed againe. When Sir *Beaumains* was abed, Sir *Perfaunt* had a daughter a faire Lady of eighteens yeares of age, there hee called her vnto him, and charged and commanded her vpon his blessing to goe vnto the knights bed, & lye downe by his side, & make him no strange cheere, and take him in thine armes and kisse him, and loke that this bee done, I charge you as yee will haue my loue and my good will. So Sir *Perfaunts* Daughter did as her father bad her, and so shee went vnto Sir *Beaumains* bed and priuily shee dispoyled her and laid her downe by him. And then he awoke and saw her, and asked her what shee was. Sir said shee, I am Sir *Perfaunts* Daughter, that by the commandement of my father am come hither. We yee a maide or a Wolfe said hee. Sir said shee, I am a cleane maide. God defend said hee, that I should defoule you to doe Sir *Perfaunt* such a shame, therefore faire Damosell arise out of this bed, or else will I. Sir said shee I came not to you by mine owne will, but as I was commanded. Alas said Sir *Beaumains*, I were but a shamefull knight if I would doe your father any dishonour. And so hee kissed her, and shee departed and came to Sir *Perfaunt* her father, and told him all how shee had sped. Truly said Sir *Perfaunt* whatsoeuer he be, he is extract of a noble blood, and so we leaue him there till on the morrow.

CHAP. CXXXII.

Of the goodly communication between Sir *Perfaunt* & Sir *Beaumains* and how he told him that his name was Sir *Gaureth*.

On the morrow the Damosell and Sir *Beaumains* heard Masse and brake their fast and so tooke their leaue. Faire Damosell.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Damosell said Sir Persaunt, whetherward are ye a way leading this knight, Sir said she, this knight is going to the siege, that besiegeth my sister in the castle Dangerous. Ah ah said Persaunt, that is the knight of the red lands, which is the most perillous knight that I know now living, and a man that is without mercy, & men say that he hath seaven mens strength, God save you said he to Sir Beaumains from that knight, for he doth great wrong to that Lady, and that is great pittie, for shee is one of the fairest Ladies of the world, and me seemeth that your Lady is his sister, is not your name Lynet said he? Shee said shee, and my Lady my sisters name is dame Lyones. Now shall I tell you said Sir Persaunt, this red knight of the red lands hath layen long at the siege well nigh these two yeares, and many times hee might have had her and he had would, but he prolongeth the time to this intent, for to have Sir Launcelot du lake to doe battaile with him, or Sir Tristram or Sir Lamoracke de Gales, or Sir Gawain. And for this cause hee tarrieth so long at the siege. Now my Lord Sir Persaunt said the Damosell Lynet, I require you that yee will make this gentleman knight or ever he fight with the red knight, I will with all my heart said Sir Persaunt, and it please him to take the order of knight-hood of so simple a man as I am. Sir said Sir Beaumains, I thanks you for your good will, for I am better sped, for certainly the Noble knight Sir Launcelot made mee knight. Ah said Sir Persaunt of a more renowned knight might yee not bee made knight, for of all the knights in the world hee may bee called chiefe of all knight-hood, and so all the world saith that betweene three knights is parted cleerely knight-hood, that is Sir Launcelot du lake, Sir Tristram de Lyones, & Sir Lamoracke de Gales, these beare now the renowne, There be many other knights, as Sir Palamides the Sarasin, and Sir Sufere his Brother, also Sir Bleoberis, and Sir Blamore de Ganis his Brother, also Sir Bors de Ganis and Sir Ector de Maris, and Sir Percivale de Galis, these and many more be Noble knights, but there be none that passe the three above said, therefore God speede you well said Sir Persaunt, for and yee may match the red knight, yee shall bee called

and his Knights of the round Table.

called the fourth of the world. Sir said Sir Beaumains, I would faine have a good fame of knight-hood and I let you to wit I come of good men, for I dare say my father was a Noble man, and so that yee will keepe it close and this Damosell, I would tell you of what kinne I am. Wee will not discover you said they both, till yee commaund us by the faith that wee owe unto God. Truly said hee, my name is Sir Gareth of Orkeny, and King Lot was my father, and my mother is King Arthurs sister, whose name is Dame Morgawse, and Sir Gawaine is my Brother and Sir Agraune and Sir Gaheris, and I am the yongest of them all, and yet knoweth not King Arthur nor Sir Gawaine what I am:

CHAP. CXXXIII.

How the Lady which was besieged, had word from her sister how he had brought a knight to fight for her, and what battailes he had done.

So the Booke saith that the Lady that was besieged had word of her sisters coming by the dwarfe, and brought a knight with her, and how hee had passed all the perillous passages. What manner of man is hee said the Lady dame Lioness. Hee is a noble knight truly madam said the dwarfe, and but a young man, but hee is as likely a man as ever yee saw any. What is he said the Lady, and of what kinne is he come, and of whom was hee made knight. Madam said the dwarfe, hee is the kings sonne of Orkeny, but his name I will not tel you at this time, but wit ye well that of Sir Launcelot du lake was hee made knight, for of none other would he be made knight, and Sir Kay named him Beaumains.

How escaped hee said the Lady from the brethren of Sir Persaunt. Madam said he, as a noble knight should doe. First he slew two brethren at a passage of a water. Ah said the Lady they were very good knights, but they were strong murderers, the one hight Sir Gheard le brewse, and that other was called Sir Arnold le brewse. When madame hee encountred with the blacke knight, and slew him in plaine battaile, and so

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

so he took his horse and his armour and fought with the greene knight, and wanhim in plaine battell. And in like wise he served the red knight, and after in the same wise he served the blew knight, and won him in plaine battell. When said the Lady hee hath overcome Sir Persaunt of Inde, one of the noblest knights of the world. And the dwarfe said he hath won all the foure brethren, and slaine the blacke knight. And yet hee did more, hee ouerthrew Sir Kay and left him nigh dead vpon the earth. Also he did great battaile with Sir Launcelot, and there they departed on euen hands, and then Sir Launcelot made him knight. The Lady said, dwarfe I am glad of these tidings, therefore goe thou in an hermitage of mine here beside, and thither shalt thou beare with me of my wine in two flagons of silver, they are of two gallons, and also two casks of bread, with fat venison baked and daintie soules, and a cup of gold here I deliuer thee that is rich and precious, and beare all this to mine hermitage, and put it in the hermites hands, and when thou hast thus done, goe to my sister and greete her well, and recommend me vnto that gentle knight, and pray him to eate and drinke and make him strong, and say yee to him that I thanke him of his curtesie and goodnesse that he would take vpon him such labor for me that neuer did him bounty nor curtesie. Also pray him that he be of a good heart and good courage, for hee shall meete with a full noble knight, but hee is neither of bountie, curtesie, nor gentlenesse, for hee attendeth vnto none other thing but to murder, and that is the cause I cannot praise him nor loue him. So this dwarfe departed and came to Sir Persaunt, where hee found the damosell Lynet and Sir Beaumains, and there hee told them all as yee haue heard, and then they took their leaue, but Sir Persaunt took an ambling hackney and conueied them on their way, and then betooke them vnto God. And so within a little while they came vnto the hermitage, and there they drinke the wine, and eate the venison and the soules baken. And so when they had repasted them well, the dwarfe returned with his vessel vnto the Castle againe, and there met with him the red knight of the red lands, and asked him from whence hee came, and where hee had bene. Sir said

the

and his Knights of the round Table.

I haue bene with my Ladies sister of this Castle, and haue bene at King Arthurs Court, and hath brought a knight with her. When I accompt her trauaile lost, for though I haue brought with her Sir Launcelot, Sir Trigram, Sir Lancelot, and Sir Gawaine, I would thinke my selfe good enough. It may wel be, said the dwarfe, but this knight hath overcome all the perillous passages, and hath slaine the black knight, and the two more, and hath won the greene knight, the red knight, and the blew knight. When is hee one of these sonne of a name rehearsed. He is none of those said the dwarfe, but he is a thing some. What is his name said the red knight of the red lands. What will I not tell you said the dwarfe, but he is a scoyne called him Beaumains. I care not for him said the red knight. What knight sooner he be, for I shall soone deliuer him, and if so be that I watch him, hee shall haue a shamefull death. Many other haue had. What were pittie said the dwarf, that he should make such a shamefull warre vpon knights.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

Now the damosell and Sir Beaumains came to the siege and came to the more tree, and there Sir Beaumains blew an horn, and then the knight of the red lands came to fight with him.

The Dwarfe went off the knight and the dwarfe, and speake to Sir Beaumains that all night lay in the hermitage, and on the morrow hee and the damosell Lynet heard a masse and drinke their fast. And then they took their horses and rode through out a faire Forrest, and then they came vnto a plaine, and saw whereas were many pavilions and tents, and a faire Castle, and there was much smoke and great noyse. And when they came neare the siege, Sir Beaumains espied vpon great trees as hee rode how there hung goodly armed knights by the neckes, and their shields about their neckes with their swords, and gilted spurs vpon their heeles, and so there hung shamefully nigh forty knights with rich armes. When Sir Beaumains abated his countenance and said. What thing meaneth this. Faire Sir saith the Damosell abate not your

Ge

chare

there for all this sight, for yee must encourage your selfe, or else yee bee all spent, for all these knights came hither vnto this siege to rescue my Sister dame Lyones, and when the red knight of the red lands, had ouercome them, hee put them to this shamefull death, without mercy and pittie, and in the same wise hee will serue you, but if yee quit you the better. Now Iesu defend mee said Sir Beaumains from such a villaynous death and shenship of armes, for rather then thus I shoulde bee faren withall, I would rather bee slaine manfully in plaine battaile. So were yee better said the Damosell trust not in him, for in him is no courtesie, but all goeth to the death or shamefull murder, and that is great pittie, for hee is a full likely man and well made of body, and a full noble knight of prowesse, and a Lord of great Lands and possessions. Truly said Sir Beaumains, hee may well bee a good knight but hee vseth shamefull customes, and it is great meruaile that hee endureth so long that none of the noble knights of my Lord King Arthurs Court haue not dealt with him. And then they rode vnto the ditches, and saw them double ditched with full strong wals and there were lodged many great estates and Lords nigh the wals, and there was great noyse of minstrels, and the sea beat vpon the one side of the wals whereas were many ships and Mariners noyse with hale and holo. And also there was fast by a sickamore tree, and thereon hung an horne, the greatest that euer they saw, of an Elisants bone. And this knight of the red lands hath hanged it vpon there, that if there come any arraunt knight, he must blow that horne, and then will he make him ready and come out vnto him to doe battaile with him. But Sir I pray you said the Damosell Lynet blow yee not the horne till it bee high noone, for now it is about paine, and now encrease his might, which as men say hee hath seauen mens strength. Ah fie for shame faire Damosell say yee neuer so moxe to mee for and he were as good a knight as euer was, I shall neuer faile him in his most might, for either will I worshipfully winne worship, or die manighly in the field and therewith he spurred his horse vnto the sickamore tree, and blew the horne so egerly, that all the siege and

the Castle rang thereof. And then knights lept there out of their tents and pavilions, & they that were within the Castle looked ouer the wals and out at the windowes. When the red knight of the red lands armed him hastily, and two Barons sat on his spurs vpon his heeles, and all was blood red his armour, speare, and shield, and an Carle buckled his helme vpon his head and then they brought him a red speare and a red, and so hee rode into a little vale vnder the Castle, that all that were in the Castle and at the siege might behold the battaile.

CHAP. CXXXV.

How the two Knights met together, and of their talkings, and how they began their battaile.

As said the Damosell Lynet vnto Sir Beaumains, looke that yee be merry and light, for ponder is your deadly enemy, and a ponder window is my Lady my Sister dame Lyones. Where said Sir Beaumains, Ponder said the Damosell, and pointed with her finger. What is sooth said Sir Beaumains, she seemeth a farre the fairest Lady that euer I looked vpon, and truly said hee I aske no better quarrell then now to doe battaile, for truly shee shall bee my Lady, and for her will I fight. And euer hee looked vp to the window with glad cheere. And the Lady Lyones made curtesie to him down to the ground, holding vp her hands. With that the red knight of the red lands called to Sir Beaumains. Leane Sir knight thy looking and behold mee I counsaile thee for I warne thee well shee is my Lady, and for her I haue done many strong battailes. If thou haue so done said Sir Beaumains, mee seemeth it but wast labour for shee loueth none of thy fellowship, and thou to loue that loueth not thee, it is a great folly, for if I vnderstood that shee were not glad of my coming, I would be aduised or I bid battaile for her, but I vnderstand by the besieging of this Castle, shee may forbear thy company. And therefore wit thou well thou red knight of the red lands, I loue her and will rescue her, or else die in the quarrell. Sayst thou that said the red knight, me seemeth thou ought of reason to beware by

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ponder knights that thou sawest hang upon yonder great Elmes. For he for shame said Sir Beaumains that ether thou shouldest say or doe so euill and such shamefollnesse, for in that thou shamest thy selfe and the order of knight-hood, and thou mayest bee sure there will no Lady loue thee that knoweth thy deffensible customs. And now thou weenest that the sight of these hanged knights should feare mee and make mee agast, may truly not so, that shamefull sight causeth mee to haue courage and hardinesse against thee, more then I would haue had against thee. And if thou bee a well ruled knight make thee ready said the red knight of the red lands and take no longer with me. Then Sir Beaumains bad the Damofell goe from him, and then they put their speares in their rests, and came together with all the might they had, and either smote o- ther in the mids of their shields, that the paytreles, surcungles, and crowpers brast and fell both to the ground with the raines of their bridles in their hands, and so they lay a great while soze astoned, and all they that were in the Castle and at the siege wend their necks had beene broken, and then many a stranger and other said that the strange knight was a big man and a noble fuster, for now we saw neuer no knight match the red knight of the red lands, thus they said both within the Castle and without. Then they lightly auoided their horses and put their shields afoze them, and drew their swords and ranne together like two fierce Lyons, and either gaue other such buffets upon their helmes that they reeled both backward two strides, and then they recovered both and helmed great peeces from their harness and their shields, that a great part fell in the fields.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

How after long fighting Sir Beaumains ouercame the knight, and would haue slaine him, but at the request of the Lords hee saued his life and made him to yeeld him to the Lady.

And thus still they fought till it was past nooke and would not stint, till at the last they both lacked wind, and then they stood wagging, staggering, panting, blowing, and bleed-
ing

and his Knights of the round Table.

ing, so that all those that beheld them for the most part wept for pittie. And when they had rested them a while they went to battell againe, trasing, rasing and foyning as two Woozes. Also sometime they ranne the one against that other as it had bene two wild stams and hurtled so together that they fell to the ground grueling. And sometime they were so amased that either tooke others swords in steede of their owne. Thus they endured till euen-song time that there was none that there beheld them might know whether was likeliest to winne the battelle, and their armour was so soze heuen that men might see their naked sides, and in other places they were naked, but not the naked places they defended. And the red knight was a wily knight of warre, and his wily fighting taught Sir Beaumains to be wise, but full soze he bought it or he espied his fighting. And thus by assent of them both, they granted each other to rest a while, and so they set them downe upon two mole-hills there beside the fighting place, and either of them unlaced his helme and tooke the cold wind, for either of their pages were fast by them, to come when they called for them to unlace their harness and to set it on againe at their command. And then when Sir Beaumains helme was off, he looked up into the window, and there hee saw the faire Lady dame Lyones. And shee made to him such countenance, that his heart was light and ioyfull. And therewith he start vp suddenly and bad the red knight make him ready to doe the battelle to the uttermost. I will well, said the red knight. And then they laced up their helmes, and their pages auoided, and they slept together and fought fiercely. But the red knight of the red lands awaited him and at an onerthwart smote him within the hand, that his sword fell out of his hand. And yet hee gaue him another buffet on the helme that he fell downe grubbling to the earth, and the red knight fell ouer him for to hold him downe. When cryed the Damofell Lynet on high, O Sir Beaumains where is thy courage become, alas my Lady my sister beholdeth thee, and shee sobbeth and weepeth, so that it maketh my heart heauy. And when Sir Beaumains heard her say so, hee arose up with a great might and gate him upon his feete,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

and lightly hee leapt to his sword and caught it in his hand, and doubled his pace vnto the red knight, and there they fought together a new battaile. But Sir Beaumains then doubled his strokes and smote so thicke, that he smote the sword out of the red knights hand, and then hee smote him vpon the helme that he fell to the ground and Sir Beaumains fell vpon him and unlaced his helme for to haue slaine him.

And then the red knight yelded him and asked mercy, and said with a loud voice. Oh noble knight I yeld mee vnto thy mercy. Then Sir Beaumains bethought him vpon the knights that he had made to be hanged so shamefully. And then he said, I may not with my worship save thy life: for the shamefull deaths that thou hast caused so many good knights to die: Sir said the red knight of the red lands, hold ye your hands and ye shall know the cause why I put them to so shamefull a death. Say on said Sir Beaumains. Sir I loued once a Lady a faire Damosell, and shee had her brother slaine, and shee said it was Sir Launcelot du lake, or Sir Gawaine, and shee prayed mee, that as I loued her heartily, that I would make her a promise by the faith of my knighthood for to labour dayly in armes vnto the time that I had met with one of them, and all that I might overcome, that I should put them to a villainous death, and this is the cause that I haue put all these good knights to death, and so I ensured her to doe all this villanie vnto King Arthurs knights, and that I should take vengeance vpon al his knights. And Sir, now I will tell thee that every day my strength encreaseth til now, and al this time haue I seven mens strength.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

How the Knight yelded him, and how Sir Beaumains made him to goe vnto King Arthurs Court, and to crie Sir Launcelot mercy.

Then came there many Carles and Barons, and noble knights, and prayed Sir Beaumains to saue his life and to take him prisoner, and all they fell vpon their knees and prayed him of mercy, and that hee would saue his life. And Sir, they said all, it were better to take homage and fealtie of him, and let

and his Knights of the round Table.

let him hold his lands of you, then to slay him, for by his death we shall haue none aduantage, and his misdoedes that bee done, may not bee vndone, and therefore he shall make amends to all parties, and wee all bee here will become your men, and doe you homage and feaultie. Faire Lords said Sir Beaumains, wit ye well I am full loth to slay this knight, neuertheless hee hath done passing ill and shamefully. But in so much as all that hee did was at a Ladies request, I blame him the lesse, and for your sakes I will release him and he shall haue his life vpon this couenant that hee goe within the Castle and yeeld him there to the lady, and if shee will forgive and quite him I will well with that hee make her amends of all the trespasses hee hath done against her and her landes. And also when that is done that hee goe vnto the Court of King Arthur, and there shall hee aske Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, for the euill will that hee hath had against them. Sir said the red knight of the red lands, all this will I doe as ye command, and siker assurance and hozowes ye shall haue. And then when the assurance was made, hee made his homage and feaultie, and all those Carles and Barons with him. And then the damosell Lynet came vnto Sir Beaumains and vnarmed him, and searched his wounds and stinted his blood, and in like wise shee did to the red knight of the red lands. And so they sojourned ten days in their tents. And the red knight made his Lords and seruants to doe al the pleasure that they might vnto Sir Beaumains. And within a while after the red knight of the red lands went vnto the Castle and put him in the Lady Lyones grace, And so shee receiued him vpon sufficient sureties, and all her hurts were well restored of all that hee could complaine. And then hee departed and went vnto the Court of King Arthur, and there openly the red knight of the red lands put him in the mercy of Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine, and ther hee told openly, how he was overcome and by whom, and also hee told of all the battailes, from the beginning to the ending. Iesus mercie said King Arthur and Sir Gawaine, we maruaile much of what blood he is come, for he is a full noble knight. Vne ye no maruaile said Sir Launcelot for ye shall right well wit that hee is come of a full noble blood.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

and as for his might and hardinesse there bee but few now living that is so mightie as hee is, and so noble of prowesse. It seemeth by you said King Arthur that ye know his name, and from whence he is come, & of what blood he is. I suppose I doe so said Sir Launcelot, or else I would not have given him the order of knighthood, but hee gave mee at that time such charge that I should never discover him until hee required mee, or else it be known openly by some other.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

How Sir Beaumains came to the Lady, and when he came unto the Castle the gates were closed against him, and of the words that the Lady said unto him.

NOW returne we unto Sir Beaumains, which desired of the Damosell Linet that hee might see her sister his Lady. Sir said hee, I would faine see her. Then Sir Beaumains armed him at all points, and took his horse and his speare and rode straight to the Castle. And when hee came to the gate hee found there many men armed that pulled up the drawbridge, and drew the port close. Then marvelled hee why they would not suffer him to enter in. And then he looked up to the window, and there he saw the faire Lady dame Liones that said on high. Goe thy way Sir Beaumains, for as yet thou shalt not wholly have my love, until the time thou bee called one of the number of the worthy knights, and therefore goe and labour in armes worshipfully these twelvemonths, and then ye shall heare new tidings. Alas faire Lady said Sir Beaumains I have not deserved this, that ye should shew to mee this strangeness, I had wend that I should have right good chere with you, and to my power I have deserved thanks and kindness, and well I am sure that I have bought your love with part of the best blood within my body. Faire knight said dame Liones, bee not displeased, nor over haste, for wit ye wel that your great travaile nor good love shall not be lost, for I consider your great travaile and labour, your bountie and your goodness as I ought to doe, and therefore goe on your way, and looke that ye be ever of good comfort.

and his Knights of the round Table.

comfort, for all shall be for your worship and honour, and also for the best, and perde a twelvemonth will be soone gone, and trust you me faire knight I shall be true unto you and shall never betray you, but unto my death I shall love you and none other. And therewithall shee turned her from the window. And Sir Beaumains rode away from the Castle in making great moane and sorrow. And so he rode here and there, and wist not whether he rode, till it was darke night. And then it happened him to come to a poore manshouse, and there hee was harboured all that night. But Sir Beaumains could have no rest, but wallowed and wretched for the love of the Lady of the Castle. And so on the morrow hee took his horse and his armour and rode till it was none, and then hee came unto a broad water, and thereby was a great lodge, and there hee alighted to sleepe, and laid his head upon his shield, and betooke his horse to the dwarfe, and commanded him to watch all night. Now turne we to the Lady of the Castle that thought much upon Sir Beaumains, and then she called unto her Sir Gringamor her brother, and prayed him in all manner as he loved her heartily that hee would ride after Sir Beaumains, and ever have him in a waite till that ye may finde him sleeping, for I am sure in his heaviness he will alight downe in some place and lye downe to sleepe, and therefore have your watch upon him, and in the priviest place that ye can take his dwarfe from him, and goe your way with him as fast as ever you may, or Sir Beaumains awake. For my sister Linet hath shewed me that the dwarfe can tell of what kindred hee is come, and what his right name is, and in the meane while I and my sister will ride to your Castle to a waite when ye shall bring with you this dwarfe, and then when ye have brought him to your Castle, I will have him in examination my selfe, unto the time I know what his right name is, and of what kindred he is come, or else I shall never be merry at my heart. Sister said Sir Gringamor, all this shall be done as ye have desired. And so he departed and rode both day and night till that hee had found Sir Beaumains lying sleeping by a water side, and he laid his head upon his shield. And then when hee saw that Sir Beaumains was fast on sleepe, hee

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

came stilly stalking behind the dwarfe, and tooke him fast under his arme, and so rode away with him as fast as euer hee might vnto his Castle. And this Sir Gringamors armour, and all that to him belonged was all blacke. But as hee rode with the dwarfe toward his Castle, he cried vnto his Lord and prayed him of helpe. And therewithal Sir Beaumains awoke, and by hee leapt lightly and saw where Sir Gringamor rode his way with the dwarfe, and so Sir Gringamor rode out of his sight.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

How Sir Beaumains rode after for to rescue his dwarfe, and came into the Castle where he was.

Then Sir Beaumains put on his helme anon, and buckled his shield, and tooke his horse and rode after him all that euer hee might ride through mares and fields, and great dales, that many times his horse and he plunged ouer the head in deepe mires, for hee knew not the way, but hee tooke the next way in that woodnesse that many times hee was like to perish. And at the last it hapned him to come to a faire greene way, and there he met with a poore man of the countrie, whom hee saluted, and asked him whether hee met not with a knight vpon a blacke horse and blacke harneis, and a little dwarfe sitting behind him with heauie chere. Sir said the poore man, heere passed by mee a knight that is called Sir Gringamor with such a dwarfe mourning as yee say, but I counsell you that ye follow him not for he is one of the perilous knights of the world, and his Castle is here nigh hand within these two miles, and therefore I aduise you that ye ride not after him, but if ye owe to him good will.

Leave wee now to speake of Beaumains, riding toward the Castle, and speake we of Sir Gringamor and of the dwarfe. Anon as the dwarfe was come to the Castle, then dame Lioness and dame Linet her sister asked the dwarfe where his master was borne, and of what linage that he was come, and but thou tell me the truth said dame Lioness, thou shalt neuer escape this Castle, but for euer here to be prisoner. As for that said the

dwarfe

and his Knights of the round Table.

dwarfe I feare not greatly to tell his name, and of what kinne that he is come. Wit yee well that hee is a kings sonne, and his mother is sister vnto King Arthur and hee is brother vnto the good knight Sir Gawaine and his name is Sir Gareth of Orkney. Now haue I told you his right name, now I pray you faire Lady let mee goe againe vnto my Lord, for he will neuer out of this countrey till he haue me againe. And if he be angry he wil doe much harme or he killt, and worke you much wack in this countrey. As for that threatening said Sir Gringamor, be it as it may, we will goe to our dinner. And so they washed and went to meat, and made them merry, and were well at ease, and because the Lady dame Lioness of the Castle was there they made great joy.

Truely madame said Linet vnto her sister, well may he be a kings sonne, for he hath many goodatches in him, for he is a courteous and a mild man, the most suffering man that euer I met withall. For I dare well say there was neuer gentlewoman that reuiled man in so foule a manner as I haue reuiled him, and at all times he gaue me goodly and meeke answers againe. And as they sat thus talking, there came Sir Beaumains at the gate with an angry countenance, and his sword drawn in his hand, and cried a loud that all the Castle might heare it, saying, thou traitour Sir Gringamor deliuer mee my dwarfe againe, or by the faith that I owe to the order of knight-hood, I shall doe thee all the harme that I can. When Sir Gringamor looked out at a window and said, Sir Gareth of Orkney leave thy boasting words, for thou gettest not thy dwarfe againe. Thou coward knight said Sir Gareth bring him with thee, and come and doe battaile with me, and winne him, and take him. So will I doe said Sir Gringamor and me list, but for all thy great words thou gettest him not. Ah faire brother said dame Lioness I would hee had his dwarfe againe, for I would not hee were in zoeth, for now hee hath told mee all my desire I will no longer keepe the dwarfe. And also brother hee hath done much for mee and deliuered me from the red knight of the red lands, and therefore brother I owe him my seruice afore all knights liuing, and wit ye well I loue him aboue all other knights, and

ff 2

full

Tillaine would I speake with him but in no wise I would hee
wist what I were, but that I were an other strange Lady.
Well said Sir Gringamor, sith that I know your will, I will
now obey vnto him. And therewithall hee went downe vnto
Sir Gareth and said. Sir I cry you mercy and all that I haue
misdone against your person I will amend it at your owne wil,
and therefore I pray you that you will alight, and take such
chere as I can make you here in this Castle. Shall I then
haue my dwarfe againe said Sir Gareth. Yea Sir, and all the
pleasure that I can make you, for as soone as your dwarfe told
me what yee were and of what blood that yee are come, and
what noble deeds ye haue done in these marches, then I repen-
ted me of my deeds. And then Sir Gareth alighted downe from
his horse, and therewith came his Dwarfe and tooke his horse.
My fellow said Sir Gareth, I haue had many euill aduen-
tures for thy sake. And so Sir Gringamor tooke him by the hand
and led him into the Hall, and there was Sir Gringamors wife.

CHAP. CXL.

How Sir Gareth otherwise called Sir Beaumains, came vnto the
presence of his Lady and how they tooke acquaintance and of
their loue.

And then there came forth into the Hall Dame Lyones
arrayed like a Princesse, and there shee made him passing
good cheere, and hee her againe. And they had goodly Lan-
guage and louely countenance together. And Sir Gareth many
times thought in himselfe. Jesu would to God that the Lady
of the Castle perillous were so faire as shee is. There were
all manner of games and playes, both of dawning and leaping.
And euer the more Sir Gareth beheld the Lady, the more hee
loued her. And so hee brenned in loue that he was past himselfe
in his understanding. And forth toward night they went to
supper, and Sir Gareth might not eat for his loue was so hot,
that hee wist not where hee was. All these looks Sir Grin-
gamor espied, and after supper hee called his Sister dame
Lyones vnto a Chamber and said. Faire Sister I haue well
espied

your countenance betwene you and this knight,
and I will sister that yee wit that hee is a full Noble
knight, and if yee can make him to abide here I will doe
to him all the pleasure that I can, for and yee were bet-
ter than yee be, yee were well bestowed vpon him. Faire Bro-
ther said dame Lyones, I vnderstand well that the knight
is good and true hee is of a Noble house. Notwithstanding I
will assay him better, how bee it I am most beholding to him
of any earthly man, for hee hath had great labour for my loue,
and hath passed many a dangerous passage. Right so Sir
Gringamor went vnto Sir Gareth and said. Sir make ye good
chere, for yee shall haue none other cause for this Lady my
sister is yours at all times, her worship saued. For wit yee
well that shee loueth you as well as yee doe her and better, if
better may bee. And I wist that said Sir Gareth, there should
not liue a gladder man then I would bee. Vpon my worship
said Sir Gringamor, trust to my promise, and as long as it
liketh you yee shall sojourne with mee, and this Lady shall be
with vs daily and nightly to make you all the cheere that shee
can. I will well said Sir Gareth, for I haue promised to bee
nigh this countrey these twelue moneths. And well I am sure
that my Lord King Arthur and many other Noble knights
will find mee where that I am within these twelue moneths,
for I shall be greatly sought and found, if that I bee on liue.
And then the noble knight Sir Gareth went to the dame
Lyones, which hee then much loued, and kissed her many times
and elther made great ioy of other. And there shee promised
him her loue, faithfully to loue him, and neuer none other all
the dayes of her life.

And then the Lady dame Lyones by the assent of her Bro-
ther told Sir Gareth all the truth what shee was, and how she
was the same Lady that hee did battaile for, and how that shee
was Lady of the Castle perillous. And there shee told him
how shee caused her Brother to take away his dwarfe.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. CXLI.

How in the night came in an armed Knight and fought with Sir Gareth, and hurt him sore in the thigh, and how Sir Gareth smote off the Knights head.

For this cause to know the certaintie what was your name, and of what kinne yee were come. And then shee let fetch befoze him the Damosell Lynet, which had ridden with him many wilsome wayes. Then was Sir Gareth more gladder then he was befoze. And then they plight their troth vnto each other to loue, and neuer to faile whiles their liues lasted. And so they burnt both in loue that they were accorded to abate their lusts secretly, and there dame Lyones counsailed Sir Gareth to sleepe in none other place but in the Hall, and there shee promised him to come to his bed a little afore mid-night. This counsell was not so priuily kept but it was knowne, for they were but young both and tender of age, and had not vled no such crafts befoze wherefoze the Damosell Lynet was a litle displeased, and thought her Sister dame Lyones was a litle ouer hasty in that thing, as that she might not abide the time of her marriage, and for sauing of their worship shee thought to abate their hot lusts. And so shee let ordaine by her subtille crafts that they had not their entent the one with the other, as in their delights, till they were married. And so it pass on. And after supper was made cleane auoydance that euery Lord and Lady should goe to his rest. But Sir Gareth said plainly that he would goe no further than the Hall for such places said hee was conuenient for an ar-
raunt Knight to take his rest in. And so there were ordained great couches, and thereon feather beds, and there laid him downe to sleepe. And within a while came dame Lyones wrapped in a mantle that was furred with armines, and laid her downe beside Sir Gareth. And anon hee beganne to kisse her, and then he looked afore him and perceiued and saw coming toward him an armed Knight, with a great light about him. And this Knight had a long gisarme in his hand, and made a grim countenance to smite him. When Sir Gareth saw him

and his Knights of the round Table.

When he came in that wise, he leapt out of his bed, and gat his sword in his hand, and went straight toward the Knight. And when the Knight saw Sir Gareth come so fiercely vpon him, he smote him with a soyne through the thicke of the thigh, that the same wound was a shaftmonbroad, and had cut a two many vessels and sinewes. And therewith Sir Gareth smote him vpon the helme such a buffet, that he fell groueling to the earth, and then Sir Gareth leapt ouer him and unlaced his helme, and quickly smote off his head. And than he bled so fast that hee might not stand vpon his feete but laid him down vpon his bed and there he swoned, and lay as hee had beene dead. And then dame Lyones cryed aloud that her Brother Sir Gringamor heard her. Then came hee downe and when he saw that Sir Gareth was so shamefully wounded, he was sore displeased, and said, I am ashamed that this noble Knight is thus dishonoured. Then said Sir Gringamor vnto his Sister dame Lyones, how may this bee that yee see here, and this Noble Knight so sore wounded. Brother said dame Lyones, I can not tell you, for it was not done by mee, nor by mine assent. For he is my Lord, and I his, and hee must be my husband, therefore whether I will that yee wit I am not ashamed to bee with him, nor to doe him all the pleasure that I can. Sister said Sir Gringamor, and I will well that yee wit and Sir Gareth also, that it was neuer done by me nor by mine assent that this unhappye doede is done. And then anone they stanchd the bleeding as well as they might. And great sorow made Sir Gringamor and dame Lyones. And forthwith came dame Lynet and took by the head of the dead Knight in the sight of them all, and anointed it with an oymntment there as it was smitten off, and in the same wise shee did to that other part thereas the head stood and then shee set it together, and it was as fast as euer it was afore, and the same Knight arose lightly, and the Damosell Lynet led him into her Chamber with her. All this saw Sir Gringamor and dame Lyones, and so did Sir Gareth, and well hee espied that it was the Damosell Lynet which rode with him through the perillous passages. Ah well Damosell said Sir Gareth, I wend yee would not haue done as ye haue done

done. For Lord Gareth said the Damosell Lynet, all that I have done I will avow, and all that I have done shall bee for your honour and worship, and also for his all. And so within a while Sir Gareth was nigh whole, and waked light and iocund, and sang, dounced and gamed, and hee and Dame Lyones were so hot in burning love that they made their covenant, that at the tenth night after the Damosell come to his bed. And because he was wounded afore, he laid his armour and his sword nigh his bed side.

CHAP. XLII.

How the same Knight came againe the next night, and was be-headed againe. And how at the feast of Pentecost all the Knights that Sir Gareth had overcome, came and yielded them unto King Arthur.

Right as shee had promised her came, and shee was not so loone in his bed but shee espied an armed knight coming toward the bed and therewith shee warned Sir Gareth, and lightly through the good helpe of Dame Lyones he was armed anon, and then they hurled together with great ire and malice all about the Hall, and there was great light, as it had beene to the number of twentie together both before and behind, so that Sir Gareth strake to himselfe, that his old wounds burst out againe in bleeding, but hee was hot and courageous and took no care, but with his great force he strake downe that knight, and boydd his helme, and strake off his head. When he helved the head in an hundred peeces. And when he had done so, hee took up all those peeces and threw them out at a window into the ditches of the Castle, and when hee had thus done, hee was so faint that he could not stand for bleeding.

And when hee was almost smothered, hee fell in a deadly sound in the doore. And then Dame Lyones cryed so loud that Sir Gringamor heare her, and when hee came and found Sir Gareth in that piteous great sorrow, and there he awaked Sir Gareth, and gave him a wound that releevd him wonderfully well, but the great sorrow that Dame Lyones made

may tell, for shee so fared with her selfe, as though shee had died. Right so came the Damosell Lynet be-headed, and shee had fetched all the little gobbets of the head that Sir Gareth had thrown out at the window, and shee anointed them as shee had done before, and set her another againe. Well Damosell Lynet said Sir Gareth, you have deserved all this despite which yee doe to mee. Sir Gareth said the Damosell Lynet, I have nothing done but I have slain it, and all that I have done shall bee for your worship and for his all. And then was Sir Gareth changed of his colour. But the leeches said that there was no man on earth that should heale him throughout of his wound, but if they should heale him that caused that stroke by enchantment.

So hee leave we off Sir Gareth. Therewith Sir Gringamor and Sir Lancelot, and returne wee unto King Arthur, that at the feast of Pentecost held his feast, and there came the greene knight with fiftie knights, and they all yielded them unto King Arthur. And after there came the red knight his brother, and yielded him to King Arthur and threescore knights with him. Also there came the blew knight that was brother to the other two, with an hundred knights, and they all yielded them unto King Arthur. The greene knights name was Sir Pertolope, and the red knights name was Sir Perilous, and the blew knights name was Sir Perilous of Inde. These three brethren told King Arthur how they were overcome by a knight that a Damosell had with her, and called him Sir Beaumains. And Jesu said the King I marvelle what knight he is, and of what lineage he is come, he was with mee a twelue moneth, and poozely and shamefully hee was fostered, and Sir Kay in scoone named him Beaumains.

Right as King Arthur stood so talking with these three brethren, there came Sir Lancelot du lake, and told the King that there was come a goodly Lord with five hundred knights. When the King went out of Carlion, for there was the feast, and there came to him this Lord, which saluted the King in a good manner. What is your will said King Arthur, and what is your errand. Sir said hee I am called the red knight

The Historie of Prince Arthur

Knicht of the red lands, but my name is Sir Ironside, and Sir yee shall wit that heere I am sent to you of a knight which is called Sir Beaumains, for he wanne mee in plaine battaile, hand for hand, and so did neuer no knight but he this thirtle winters and hee charged and commanded me to yeeld mee vnto your grace and will. We are welcome said the king, for yee haue done long a great foe to mee and to my Court, and now I trust to God I shall so entreat you, that yee shall be my friend. Sir both I and these five hundred knights shall alway be at your command to doe you seruice as much as lyeth in our power. Iesu mercy said King Arthur, I am much beholding vnto that knight, that hath so put his body in deuoure to worship mee and my Court. Ironside, that art called the red knight of the red lands thou art called a precious knight, if thou wilt hold of me I shall worship thee and make thee knight of the round table, but then thou maiest be no more a murderer. Sir as to that I haue promised vnto Sir Beaumains neuer to vse such a custome, for all the shamefull customes that I haue vfed, I did it at the request of a Lady that I loued, and therefore I must goe vnto Sir Launcelot and vnto Sir Gawaine, and aske them forgiveness of the euill will that I had vnto them, for all them that I put to death, was onely for Sir Lancelots and Sir Gawaines sakes. They be heere now afore thee, said the king, ye may say vnto them what yee will. And then hee knelsed downe to Sir Lancelot and to Sir Gawaine, and prayed them of forgiveness of the euill will and enmitte that he had committed against them both.

CHAP. CXLIH.

Now Sir Launcelot and Sir Gawaine pardoned him, and demanded him where Sir Gareth was.

Then goodly they said all at once, God forgive you and wee doe, and pray you that yee will tell vs where wee may finde Sir Beaumains. Faire Lord, said Sir Ironside, I can not tell you, for it is full hard to finde him, for all such young knights as hee is, when they

and his Knights of the round Table.

their adventures, bee neuer abiding in one place. For the worship that the red knight of the red lands and his brother said of Sir Beaumains it was marvellous. Well my faire Lords said King Arthur, wit ye that I shall doe you honour for the loue of Sir Beaumains, in as soon as euer I meete with him I shall make you all knights of the Table round. And as to thee Sir Ironside, thou hast euer bene called a full noble knight, and hast euer bene thy thyse brethren called. What I marvell at King Arthur, that I heare not of the blacke knight and his brother, hee was a full noble knight. Sir said Percelophe the knight, Sir Beaumains slew him in an encounter, and his peare, his name is Sir Percard. What was great pity said King Arthur, and so said many knights more. For these brethren were full well knownen for noble knights in King Arthurs Court, for long time they had holden warre against the knights of the Table round. When said Sir Percelophe hee came knight vnto the king, at a passage of the water there hee encountred Sir Beaumains with his brother, that euer for the most part kept that passage, and there hee slew many knights, and there hee slew the eldest brother of the water, and smote him vpon the head such a buffet that hee fell in the water, and there hee was drowned, and his name was Sir Gerarde le brewse. And anon after hee slew the other brother vpon the land, and his name was Sir Arnold le

CHAP. CXLIH.

Now the Queene of Orkeney came to this feast of Pentecost, and with her Sir Gawaine and his brethren came to aske her blessing.

Then the king and they went to their meate, and were seated in the best manner. And as they sat at their meate, there came in the Queene of Orkeney with a great number of ladies and knights. And then Sir Gawaine, and Sir Agravaine, and Sir Gaheris arose and went to her, and saluted her with their knees and asked her blessing. For in the space of fif-

twelve years they had not seen her. When they spake on high to her brother King Arthur. Where have ye done my young son Sir Gareth, he was here among you a twelvemonth, and ye made a kitchen maide of him which is a great shame to you all. Alas where have ye done my deare sonne which was my joy and blisse.

His deare mother said Sir Gawaine I know him not. For I said the King which he now is, yet I know him not. But God be thanked he is now a worshipfull knight, and is now living of his yeares, and I shall never be glad till I may find him. His brother said the Quene of Dokerney to King Arthur and to Sir Gawaine and to her other five sonnes, ye did your selfe a great shame when ye among you kept my sonne in the kitchen and made him like a porce hogge. And the King said King Arthur, ye shall sight well wit that I know him not, no more did Sir Gawaine nor his brethren. But when it is said to the King that he is thus gone from us, I will mercurially send a messenger to find him. Also the King said, ye might have knowne the colour of his countenance, and then if I had not knowne it, ye might have blamed mee. For when he came to this Court, he came leaning upon two mens shoulders, as though he might not have gone. And then he asked mee three gifts, and one hee asked that same day, that was, that I would give him meate enough for twelue moneths.

And the other two gifts hee asked that same day twelue moneths after, and that was, that he might have the adventure of the Damosell Linet. And the thirde was that Sir Launcelot should make him knight when he desired him, and so I graunted him all his desire. And many in this Court marvelled that he desired his sustenance for twelue moneths, and therefore we deemed many of us that he was not come of a noble house.

So said the Quene of Dokerney to her brother King Arthur, wit ye well that I sent him unto you right well armed and horsed, and worshipfully well belov'd of his baby, and gold and silver great plenty for to spend. It may well be said the King, but thereof save we none save that same day that hee departed from us, knights told mee that there came a dwarf with the

and brought him armour and a good courser full of gold and silver, and thereat we had all great marvaile. And when the dwarfes came, and then we all deemed that hee was a great man of worship. Brother said the Quene, I knowe I believe, for ever since that hee was growen he was marvellously witted. And ever he was faithfull and true to us. And I marvaile said she that Sir Kay did mock him, and gave him that name Beaumains, yet Sir Launcelot named him more righteously, then hee was. And well I say and hee is on live, hee is a faire hand, and well disposed as any is living. When said King Arthur, in this language hee still, and by the grace of God hee shall be a knight, and he be within this space of moneth, and let al men be merry, for he is proued a man of worship, and I am the great joy.

CHAP. CXLV.

King Arthur sent for the Lady Lionel, and how shee let him to the Castle, whereas came many good knights.

So said Sir Gawaine and his brethren unto King Arthur, Sir and ye will give us leave, we will goe seeke for our brother. For said Sir Launcelot, that shall not neede, and I will send Sir Bawdewaine of Brittain, for as by our advise the King shall send unto dame Lionel a messenger, and pray her that she will come to the Kings Court in al the haste that she may, and I doubt not but that shee will come, and then she may give us the best countaile whereas ye shall find him. This is wel said of you, quoth King Arthur. So then goodly letters were writte, and in all haste a messenger was sent forth, that rode night and day till he came to the Castle perillous. And then the Lady Lionel was sent for there as shee was with Sir Gringamor her brother and Sir Gareth. And when shee under- stood this message, shee had the messenger to ride on his way to King Arthur, and shee would come after in al the haste possible. When she came to Sir Gringamor and Sir Gareth, shee

The Historie of Prince Arthure

He told them all how King Arthur had sent for her. That is the cause of the said Sir Gareth. Now to the said Dame Lyones, what shall I say and in what manner shall I rule my selfe. My Lady and my love said Sir Gareth, I pray you in no manner of wisdome know where I am, but well I wot my mother is there and all my brethren, & they will take upon them to seeke me, as I wot well they doe. But the said Dame Lyones said and advise my son the King, to let her questioneth with you of me, then may yee say this to your mother, that and it like his good grace ye will make him to be the first of the Assumption of our Lady, that what knight these promise him best, hee shall winne you and all your lands. And it is best that hee be a wedded man, that his wife shall have the wages and a coronall of gold, beset with stones of vertue to the value of a thousand pound, and a white Jarsawcon. When Dame Lyones departed and came unto King Arthur, where she was nobly receiued and there she was sore questioned of King Arthur and of the Queen of Deney. And she answered wherefore Sir Gareth was, she could not tell. But thus much she said to King Arthur. Sir I will let crie a turnement, that shall be done before my Castle at the Assumption of our Lady, and the crie shall be thus, that you my Lord Arthur shall be there and your knights, and I will puruey that my knights shall be against yours, and then I am sure yee shall heere of Sir Gareth. This is well advised said King Arthur. And so she departed from thence. And then the King and shee made great provision for the tournement. When Dame Lyones was come to the Ile of Aulion, which was the same Ile where as her Brother Sir Gringamor dwelled, and then shee told him all how she had done, and what promise shee had made to King Arthur. Then said Sir Gareth, I haue bene so sore wounded with unhappynesse sithen I came into this Castle, that I shall not be able to do at that turnament like as a knight should doe, for I was neuer well whole since I was hurt. Be ye of good cheare said the Damosell Lynet, for I undertake within these thre dayes, for to make you as whole and as lusty as euer yee were. And then she laid an oymntment and a salve to him as it pleased her, that he was

neuer

and his Knights of the round Table.

was so lusty. When said the Damosell Lynet, I will send Sir Persaunt of Inde, and command him and his knights to be heere with you as they haue promised. Also I will send unto Sir Ironside, that is the red knight of the round table, and charge him that he be ready with you with all his company of knights, and then shall yee be able to match King Arthur and his knights. So this was done, and Sir Ironside and his knights were sent for unto the Castle perillous. And the said knight then answered and said unto Dame Lyones and the said Sir Gareth, Madame and my Lord Sir Gareth, yee shall understand that I haue bene at King Arthurs Court with Sir Persaunt of Inde, and his Brethren, and there we haue done our homage as yee commanded us. Also Sir Ironside said I haue taken upon mee with Sir Persaunt of Inde and his Brethren to hold partie against my Lord Sir Launcelot and his knights of that Court. And this haue I done for the loue of my Lady Dame Lyones, and you my Lord Sir Gareth. Yee haue well done said Sir Gareth, but wit ye well yee shall be full matched with the most noble knights of the world, therefore yee must puruey us of good knights whereas wee may get. What is well said quoth Sir Persaunt and worship Sir Ironside. And so the cry was made in all England, Wales, and Ireland, and Cornetwaile, and in all the out Isles, and in Brittain, and in many other countries, that at the Assumption of our Lady next coming, men should come to the Castle Perillous, beside the Ile of Aulion and there all the knights that came should haue the choyse whether they wold be on the one part with the knights of the Castle, or on the other part with King Arthur. And two moneths was it so that the turnament should be. And so there came many good knights that were at large, and held them for the partie against King Arthur and his knights of the round table, and came on the side of them of the Castle. For Sir Ironside was the first, and he was the Kings Son of Northumberland, and Sir Palamides the Sarasin was an other and Sir Gareth his Brother, and Sir Sagwarides his Brother, but Sir Ironside was Christened and Sir Malagrins an other and Sir Briap.

The Historie of Prince Arthur.

Brian de les Iles, a noble knight and Sir Grummore Grummor-
sum, a good knight of Scotland, and Sir Carados of the dolo-
rous Tower, a noble knight and Sir Turquine his brother, and
Sir Arnold and Sir Gaunter two brethren, good knights of
Cornewalle, there came Sir Tristram de Iones, and with him
Sir Dinadan the Seneschall, and sir Sadoke, but sir Tristram at
that time was not knight of the round table, but he was one of
the best knights of the world. And so all these noble knights
accompanied them, with the Lady of the Castle, and with the
red knight of the red lands, but as for sir Gareth he would take
upon him no more but as other meane knights did.

CHAP. CXLVI.

How King Arthur went to the turnement with his Knights, and
how the Lady dame Lioness received him worshipfully, and
how the Knights encountered together.

AND then there came with King Arthur Sir Gawaine and
his two brethren Sir Agravaine and Sir Gaheris and then
his nephewes Sir Ewaine le blanche mains and Sir Agloulle,
Sir Tor, Sir Perciualle de galis, and Sir Lamorake de galis.
Then came Sir Launcelot du lake with his brethren nephewes
and colins, as Sir Lionell, Sir Ector de maris, and Sir
Bors de ganis, and sir Galihodin, sir Galihud, and many moe
of sir Launcelots blood, and sir Dimdam, sir La cote male tail his
brother, a noble knight, and also sir Sagramore a good knight,
and the most part of the round table.

Also there came with King Arthur these knights, the King
of Ireland King Aguisaunce, and the King of Scotland King
Carados, and King Vrience of the land of Coze, and King Bag-
demagus & his son sir Meliganus & sir Galahault the noble prince.
All these Kings princes Charles and Barons & many other noble
knights, as sir Brandiles, and sir Ewaine les auoutres, and sir
Kay sir Bediuerse, sir Melior de logres, sir Petipace of Winchel-
le, and sir Godlake. All these came with the noble prince
King Arthur, and many moe, which were too long to rehearse.
Now leaue wee to speake of these Kings and knights, and let

and his Knights of the round Table.

us speake of the great array that was made within the Castle
and about the Castle for both parties. The Lady dame Lio-
ness obtained great array on her part for her noble knights for
all manner of lodging and vittaille that came by land and by
water, that there lack nothing for her part nor yet for the other,
but there was plentie to bee had for gold and silver for King
Arthur and his knights. And then there came the Herbegeours
from King Arthur, for to harborow him and his knights, his
Dukes, his Charles, his Barons, and all his knights. And then
sir Gareth praised his Lady dame Lioness, and sir Ironside the
red knight of the red lands, and sir Perfaunt of Inde and his
brother, and sir Gringamor, that in no manner of wise there
should none of them tell his name and make no more of him
then of the least knight that there was; for hee said I will not
be known neither of more nor lesse, neither at the beginning
nor at the ending. When dame Lioness said vnto sir Gareth, sir
I will leaue you a ring but I would pray you as yee loue mee
heartily let mee haue it againe when the turnement is done.
For that ring encrease my beaultie much more then it is of it
selfe. And this is the vertue of my ring, that is greene it will
turne it vnto red, and that is red it will turne into likenesse of
greene, and that is blew it will turne to likenesse of white, and
that is white it will turne to likenesse of blew, and so it will doe
of all manner of colours. Also who that beareth my ring shall
lose no blood, and for great loue I will glue you this ring. Gra-
merry said sir Gareth mine owne Lady, for this ring is passing
mete for me, for it will turne all maner of likenesse that I am
in, and that shal cause me that I shal not be known. When sir
Gringamor gaue sir Gareth a baye courser that was a passing
good horse, also he gaue him a passing good armour and a sure,
and a noble sword that sometime sir Gringamors father won vp-
on an heathen tyrant. And so thus euery knight made him rea-
dy vnto that turnement. And King Arthur was come two
dayes before the assumption of our Lady. And there was all
manner of royaltie, and of all manner of minstrels that might
be found. Also there came Quene Gueneuer and the Quene
of Deney sir Garethes mother. And on the day of the Assump-
tion

tion when masse and matting was done, there were Heraulds with trumpets commanded to blow vnto the field. And so anon there came out sir Epinogris the Kings sonne of Northumberland from the Castle and there encountred with him sir Sagramore le desirous, and either of them brake their speares to their hands. And then came in sir Palomides out of the Castle, and there encountred with him sir Gawaine and either of them smote other so hard that both the good knights and their horses fell to the earth. And then the knights of either part rescued their knights.

And then came in Sir Safere and Sir Segwardes, brethren vnto Sir Palomides, and there encountred Sir Agrauiaine with Sir Safere, and Sir Gaheris encountred with Sir Segwardes. So Sir Safere smote downe Sir Agrauiaine Sir Gawaines brother and Sir Segwardes Sir Saferes brother smote downe Sir Gaheris, and Sir Malgrine a knight of the Castle encountred with Sir Ewaine le blaunch mains, and there Sir Ewaine gaue Sir Malgrine a grent fall, that he had almost broken his necke.

CHAP. CXLVII.

How the Knights bare them in the battaile.

Then Sir Brian de les Iles and Sir Grummore grumorsum knights of the Castle encountred with Sir Aglouale and Sir Tor, and Sir Aglouale and Sir Tor smote downe Sir Brian and Sir Grummore grumorsum to the earth. Then came in Sir Carados of the dolorous Tower and Sir Turquine knights of the Castle and there encountred with them Sir Perciuaile de galis and Sir Lamorake de galis which were two brethren, and there encountred sir Perciuaile with sir Carados, and either of them brake their speares vnto their hands, and then sir Turquine and sir Lamorake, and either of them smote downe others horses to the earth. And either parties rescued other and horsed them againe. And sir Arnold and sir Gaunter knights of the Castle encountred with sir Brandiles and sir Kay, and these foure knights encountred mightily and brake their speares vnto their hands.

Then

Then came sir Tristram and sir Sadoke and sir Dinas knights of the Castle, and there encountred sir Tristram with sir Bedivere, and sir Bedivere was smitten to the earth both horse and man, and sir Sadoke encountred with sir Petipace, and there sir Sadoke was ouer thzowen. And there sir Ewaine les auontres smote downe sir Dinas the seneshall. Then came in sir Persaunt of the Castle, and there encountred with him sir Launcelot dulake, and there he smote both sir Persaunt and his horse to the earth. Then came in sir Pertolope out of the Castle, and there encountred with him sir Lionell and there sir Pertolope the greene knight smote downe sir Lionell brother to sir Launcelot. All this was marked of noble Heraulds, who bare them best, and their names. And then came into the field sir Perimones the red knight sir Persaunts brother, which was a knight of the Castle, and he encountred with sir Ector de Marres, and either smote other so hard that both their horses and they fell to the earth. And then came in the red knight of the red lands and sir Gareth from the Castle, and there encountred with them two sir Bors deganis and sir Bleoberis, and there the red knight and sir Bors smote each other so hard, that their speares burst and their horses fell groueling to the earth. Then sir Bleoberis brake his speare vpon sir Gareth, but of that great stroke sir Bleoberis fell to the ground. When sir Galihodin saw that, he bad sir Gareth keepe him, and sir Gareth smote him to the earth. Then sir Galihud gat a speare to auenge his brother and in the same wise sir Gareth serued him. And sir Dinadan and his brother la cote male taile, and sir Sagramore le desirous, and Dodinas le saunge, al these he bare downe with one speare. When king Augwisaunce of Ireland saw Sir Gareth fare so, he maruailed what he might bee, that one time seemed greene, and an other time at his againe coming hee seemed blew. And thus at euery course that hee rode too and fro hee changed his colour, so that there might neither king nor knight haue cognisance nor knowledge of him. When king Augwisaunce of Ireland encountred with Sir Gareth, and there Sir Gareth smote him from his horse saddle and all. And then came king Carados of Scotland, and sir Gareth smote him downe

W h 2

horse

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

horse and man. And in the same wise he serued King Vrience of the Land of Coze. And then there came in King Bagdemagus, and Sir Gareth smote him downe horse and man to the ground. And King Bagdemagus sonne Meliaganes brake a speare vpon Sir Gareth mightily and knightly. And then Sir Galahaut the Noble Prince cryed on high. Knight with the many colours wel hast thou iusted, now make thee ready that I may iust with thee. When Sir Gareth heard that, he gave him a great speare, and so they encountred together and there the Prince brake his speare but Sir Gareth smote him on the left side on the helme that he reeled here and there & he had fallen downe had not his men recovered him. So God mee helpe said King Arthur, that knight with the many colours is a good knight, wherefore the king called vnto him Sir Lancelot du lake, and prayed him to encounter with that knight. Sir said Sir Launcelot, I may well finde in heart to forbear him as at this time, for he hath had trauaile inough this day, and when a good knight doth so well some day, it is no good knights part to let him of his worship, and namely when hee seemeth a knight that had done so great labour, for peradventure said Sir Launcelot his quarrell is here this day, and peradventure hee is best beloued with this Lady of all that be here, for I see well hee paineth himselfe and enforceth him to doe great deeds, and therefore said Sir Lancelot as for me this day he shall haue the honour, though it lay in my power to put him from it, yet would I not doe it.

Then when this was done, there was drawing of swords, and there began a great turnament. And there did Sir Lancelot meruailous deeds of armes, and betweene Sir Lamoracke and Sir Ironside, that was the red knight of the red lands there was a stronge battaile, and betweene Sir Palomides and Sir Bleoberis was a strong battaile, and Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristram met together, and there Sir Gawaine had the worst, for he pulled Sir Gawaine from his horse, and there he was long on foote and desouled. Then came Sir Lancelot, and hee smote Sir Turquine, and hee him againe and then there came Sir Carados his Brother, and both at once they assailed him, and hee

and his Knights of the round Table.

hee as the most noblest knight of the world right worshipfully fought with them both, that all men wondred of the noblenesse of Sir Lancelot du lake that fought with those two perillous knights. And then sir Gareth came with his good horse and put them a sunder and no stroke would hee smite to Sir Lancelot du lake. What espied Sir Lancelot which deemed it should be the good knight sir Gareth, and then Sir Gareth rode here and there and smote on the right hand and on the left hand, that all the folke might well espie where he rode. And by fortune he met with his Brother Sir Gawaine, and there he put Sir Gawaine to the worst, for hee put out his helme, and so hee serued five or sixe knights of the round table, that all men said he put him in the most paine, & best he did his deuoure. For when Sir Tristram beheld him how he first iusted & after fought so well with a sword, then he rode vnto Sir Ironside & vnto Sir Persaunt of Inde, and asked them by their faith what maner of knight is yonder knight which seemeth in so many diuers colours truly me seemeth said sir Tristram that hee putteth himselfe in great paine, for hee neuer ceaseth. Know ye not what he is said sir Ironside. So said sir Tristram. When shall yee know that this is he that loueth the Lady of the Castle and shee loueth him againe right heartily, and this is he that wanne me when I had besieged the Lady of this Castle, and this is hee that wanne sir Persaunt of Inde and his three Bretheren. What is his name said sir Tristram, and of what blood is he come. Hee was called in King Arthurs Court Beaumains, but his name is sir Gareth of Wkeney, brother vnto sir Gawaine. By my head said sir Tristram hee is a good knight and a big man of armes and if he be young he shall proue a full Noble knight. Hee is but a Child said they all, and of Sir Lancelot hee was made knight. Therefore hee is much the better said sir Tristram. And then sir Tristram, sir Ironside, Sir Persaunt and his Brother rode together for to helpe sir Gareth, and then there were giuen many strong strokes. And then sir Gareth rode out on the one side to amend his helme. And then said his Brother, take me your ring that yee lose it not while ye drinke. And so when he had drunke he put out his helme againe, and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

egerly tooke his horse and rode into the field, and left his ring with his Dwarf, and the Dwarf was glad that the ring was from him, for then hee wist well hee should be knowne. And then when Sir Gareth was in the field all the people saw him well and plainly that he was in yellow colours, and there he rushed off helmes and pulled downe knights, that King Arthur had meruaile what knight hee was, for the king saw by his haire that it was the same knight.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

How Sir Gareth was espied by the Heralds, and how he escaped out of the field.

But before hee was in so many colours and now hee is but in one colour, that in yellow, now goe said King Arthur unto diuers Heralds, and ride about him and espie what manner of knight he is, for I haue asked of many knights this day that hee of the partie, and all say they know him not. And so an Herald rode as nigh Sir Gareth as he could and there hee saw written about the helme in Gold. This is Sir Gareth of Wykeney. When the Herald cryed as he were wood and many Heralds with him. Thus is Sir Gareth of Wykeney in the yellow armes whereby all kings and knights of King Arthurs part belaid him and waited for him, and then they proceede all to behold him, and Ieuer the Heralds cryed this is Sir Gareth of Wykeney, King Lots son. And when Sir Gareth espied that hee was discovered, then hee began to double his strokes, and smote downe Sir Sagramor and his Brother Sir Gawaine. Oh Brother said Sir Gawaine I wend yee would not haue stricken mee And when Sir Gareth heard him say so, hee threw here and there, and with paine hee gat out of the presse, and then he met with his Dwarf. Oh boy said Sir Gareth thou hast beguiled mee souly this day that thou kept my ring, giue it mee anon againe that I may hide my body withall. And so hee tooke it him, and then they all wist not where he was become, and Sir Gawaine had espied where Sir Gareth rode, and then hee rode after with all his might. Then espied Sir

and his Knights of the round Table.

Sir Gareth and rode lightly into the forrest, that Sir Gawaine wist not where hee was become. And when Sir Gareth wist that Sir Gawaine his Brother was past, he asked the Dwarf of his best counsell. Sir said the Dwarf me seemeth it were best now that yee are escaped from spring that yee send my Lady Dame Lyones, her ring. That is well aduised said Sir Gareth, now haue it here and beare it to her, and say that I commend mee vnto her good grate and tell her I will come when I may and that I pray her to be true and faithfull to me as I will be vnto her. Sir said the Dwarf, it shall be done as yee haue commanded. And so hee rode his way and did his errand vnto the Lady. When she said, where is my Lord Sir Gareth. Madame said the Dwarf, hee had mee say that hee would not be long from you. And so lightly the Dwarf came againe vnto Sir Gareth that would faine haue had a lodging, for hee had neede to rest him. And then fell there a thunder and raide as heauen and earth should haue gone together, and Sir Gareth was not a little weary, for of all that day hee had but little rest, as well his horse as himselfe. Sir Gareth rode so long in that forrest till night came, and euer it lightned and thundered that wonder it was to see. At the last by fortune hee came to a Castle, and there he heard the waiters on the wals.

CHAP. CXLIX.

How Sir Gareth came vnto a Castle where he was well lodged, and how he iusted with a Knight, and how he slew him.

Then Sir Gareth rode straight vnto the barbican of the Castle and prayed the Porter faire for to let him into the Castle. The Porter answered him vngodly againe and said thou gettest no lodging here. Faire Sir said hee say not so for I am a knight of King Arthurs, and I pray the Lord of the Lady of this Castle to giue me harbour for Arthurs loue. Then the Porter went vnto the Duchesse and told her how there was a knight of King Arthurs that would haue harbour. Let him in said the Duchesse, for I will see that knight and for King Arthurs sake he shall not be harbourlesse. And then the Duchesse

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

Duchesse went by vnto a towre ouer the gate with great torch light. When Sir Gareth saw the torch light, hee cryed all on high, whether thou be Lord or Lady, Wyant or Champion, I take no force, so that I may haue harboze for this night, and if it be so that I must needs fight, spare me not to morrow when I haue rested mee, for both I and my horse are weary. Sir Knight said the duchesse, thou speakest mightily and boldly but wit thou well that the Lord of this Castle loueth not laing Arthur nor none of his Court, for my Lord hath ouer beene against him, and therefore thou were better not to come within this Castle for if thou come in this night, thou must come in vnder this manner and forme that wheresoener thou meete my Lord by Crete or by way thou must yeeld thee vnto him as prisoner. Madame said Sir Gareth what is your Lord, and what is his name. Sir my Lords name is Duke de la Rowe. Well Madame said Sir Gareth, I shall promise you that in what place I meete your Lord I shall yeeld me vnto his good grace, so that I may know he will doe me no harme, and if I may vnderstand that he will, then will I release my selfe and I can with my speare and with my sword. Vee say right well said the Duchesse, and then shee let the draw bridge downe. And so he rode into the Hall, and there he alighted and his horse was led into a stable, and in the Hall hee vnrmed him and said. Madame I will not out of thy Hall this night, and when it is day light, let see who will haue adoe mee, he shall finde mee lightly ready. When was he set to his supper and had many good dishes. When Sir Gareth list well to eate, and knightly he eate his meate & egerly, there was many a faire Lady by him, and some of them said they saw neuer a goodlier man nor so well of eating. When they made him passing good cheere all. And shortly when that he had supped his bed was made there, so he rested him all night. And on the morrow he heard masse and brake his fast and tooke his leaue of the Duchesse and of them all and thanked her goodly of her lodging and of her good cheere. And then shee asked him his name. Madame said hee truly my name is Sir Gareth of Wykeney, and some men call me Beaumains. When knew she well it was the

and his Knights of the round Table.

the same knight that fought for Dame Lyones: And then Sir Gareth departed and rode by vnto a mountaine, and there met him a knight, his name was Sir Bendelaine, and hee said to Sir Gareth. Thou shalt not passe this way, for either thou shalt lust with me, or be my prisoner. When will I lust with thee said Sir Gareth. And so they let their horses runne and there Sir Gareth smote him throughout the body, and then Sir Bendelaine rode forth vnto his Castle there beside and there dyed. So Sir Gareth would faine haue rested him, and he came riding vnto Sir Bendelaines Castle, and then his knights and his seruants espied that it was hee that had slaine their Lord. Then they armed twentie good men, and came out and assailed Sir Gareth, and he had no speare but onely his sword, and put his shield afore him, and there they all brake their speares vpon him, and they assailed him passing sore. But euer Sir Gareth defended him like a noble knight.

CHAP. C. L.

How Sir Gareth fought with a Knight that held within his Castle thirtie Ladies and how he slew him.

So when they saw that they might not ouercome him, they rode from him and toke their counsell to slay his horse, and so they came vpon Sir Gareth, and with speares they slew his horse, and then they assailed him full hard. But when hee was on foote there was none that hee caught but hee gaue him such a buffet that he neuer recovered after. So he slew them one and one till they were but foure, and then they fled, and Sir Gareth tooke a good horse which was one of theirs and rode his way. When hee rode a great pace till that he came to a Castle, and there he heard much mourning of Ladies and Gentlewomen, so there came by him a page. What noyse is this said Sir Gareth that I heare within this Castle. Sir Knight said the page here be within this Castle thirtie Ladies, and all they be Maidolnes, for here is a knight that waiteth daily vpon this Castle, and his name is the browne knight without pittie, and he is the perillous knight that now liueth. And therefore Sir

said the page. I bid you see. May said Sir Gareth I will not see, how well thou be heard of him. And then the page saw where as the the browne knight came. He said the page yonder is becomming. Let me deale with him said Sir Gareth. And when either of other had a sight, they let their horses runne, and the browne knight brake his speare, and sir Gareth smote him throughout the body, that he ouerthrew him to the ground like dead. So Sir Gareth rode into the Castle, and prayed the Ladies that he might rest him there. Alas said the Ladies yee may not be lodged here. Make him good chere said the page for this knight hath slaine your enemy. Then they all made him good chere as lay in their power. But woe well they made him good chere, for they might none other wise doe, for they were all but poore Gentlewomen. And so on the morrow hee went to masse, and there he saw the thirtie Ladies lince and lay groueling vpon diuers tombes making great moine and sorrow. When sir Gareth wist well that in the tombes lay their Lords. When said Sir Gareth. Faire Ladies yee must at the next feast of Pentecost be at the Court of King Arthur, and say that I Sir Gareth sent you vnto him. Woe shall doe your command said the Ladies. So he departed, and by fortune he came to a mountaine, and there he found a goodly knight which said. Abide sir knight and rest with me. What be yee said Sir Gareth. My name is said he the Duke de la Rowe. Ah sir yee are the same knight that I lodged once in your Castle, and there I made promise vnto your Lady that I should yeld me vnto you. Ah said the Duke, art thou the same proud knight that proffered to fight with my knights, therefore make thee ready, for I will haue a doe with thee. So they let their horses run and there Sir Gareth smote the Duke downe from his horse. But the Duke lightly noided his horse and set his shield afore him, and drew his sword, and had Sir Gareth alight and fight with him. So he alighted and did together a great batall that lasted more then an houre, and either hurt other full sore. At the last sir Gareth gate the Duke to the earth would haue slaine him, and then he yelded him to him. When must ye goe said sir Gareth vnto my Lord King Arthur

at

at the next feast of Pentecost, and say that I Sir Gareth of D. they sent you vnto him. It shall be done said the Duke, and I shall doe to you homage and fealtie with an hundred knights with mee, and all the daies of my life to doe you seruice where ye will command me.

CHAP. CLII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Gareth fought each against other and how they knew each other by the damosell Lince.

So the Duke departed and Sir Gareth stood there alone, and there he saw an armed knight comming toward him. Then Sir Gareth took the Dukes shield and mounted on horseback, and so without bidding they ran together as it had been thunder, and there that knight hurt Sir Gareth vnder the side with his speare. And then they alighted and drew their swords and gaue each other great strokes, that the blood traile to the ground on euery side, and so they fought two houres. At the last there came the damosell Lince that some men call the damosell sauage, and shee came riding vpon an ambling mule, and there shee cried all on high. Sir Gawaine Sir Gawaine leaue thy fighting with thy brother Sir Gareth. And when he heard her say so he threw away his shield and his sword and ran to Sir Gareth and took him in his armes, and after knelted downe and asked him mercie. What are yee said Sir Gareth that right now were so strong and so mighty, and now so suddenly yeld you vnto me. Oh Sir Gareth I am your brother Sir Gawaine that for your sake haue had great sorrow and labour. When sir Gareth vnlaed his helme and knelted downe to him and asked him mercy. Then they arose both and embraced each other in their armes, and wept a great while or they might speak, and either of them gaue other the prize of the battaile. And there was many a kind word betwene them both. Alas my faire brother said sir Gawaine, perde, I ought of right to worship you and yee were not my brother for ye haue worshiped King Arthur and al his Court, for ye haue sent him more worshipfull knights these twelue moneths then six of the best of the round table haue done, except sir Launcelot. Then came the Damosell sauage that was the

Lady Lincet, that rode long time with sir Gareth, and there shee
 stretched sir Gareth's wounds and sir Gawaine. Now what will
 ye doe said the Damosell Lincet, methinks it were wel done
 that King Arthur had knowledge of you both, for your horses
 are so bruised that they may not bear you. Now faire Damosell
 said sir Gawaine. I pray you to ride vnto my Lord mine vncle
 King Arthur, and tell him what adventure is befallen to me
 here, and I suppose he will not tarry long. When shee took her
 mule and lightly came vnto King Arthur, that was but two
 mile thence, and when shee had told him the tidings, the King
 had to get him a palfrey, and when he was vpon his backe, hee
 had the Lords and Ladies come after who that would. When
 there was saluting and bidding of the Quenes horses and Prin-
 ces horses; and well was him that soonest might be ready. So
 when the King came thero as they were, he saw sir Gawaine
 and sir Gareth sit vpon a little hilla side, and then the King a-
 voided his horse. And when he came nigh sir Gareth, hee would
 haue spoken but might not, and therewith hee sunke downe in
 a sound for gladnesse. And so they start vnto their vncle, requi-
 ring him of his good grace to be of good comfort. At it ye wel the
 King made great joy, and many a pittious complaint he made
 vnto sir Gareth, and euer he wept as he had bene a child. With
 that came his mother the Quene of Wykeney dame Morgawse,
 and as she saw her sonne sir Gareth readily in the visage, shee
 might not wepe, but suddenly fel down in a sound and lay there
 a great while, like as shee had bene dead. And that sir Gareth
 comforted his mother in such a wise that shee recovered, and
 made good chere. When the King commanded that all manner
 of knights that were vnder his obeysance should make their
 lodging there for the loue of his nephew, and so was it done, and
 all manner of puruelance puruated that there lacked nothing
 that might be gotten of lame ne wild, for gold or for silver. And
 then by the meanes of the damosell sauage, sir Gawaine and sir
 Gareth were healed of their wounds, and there they sojourned
 eight dayes. When said King Arthur vnto the damosell sauage.
 I maruaile that your sister dame Liones cometh not heere to
 me, and in especiall that she cometh not to visit her knight my
 nephew

nephew sir Gareth that hath had so much trouble for her loue.
 Now said the damosell Lincet ye must of your good grace hold
 her excused, for shee knoweth not that my Lord sir Gareth is
 here. When goe for her said King Arthur that we may bee ap-
 pointed what is best to be done, according vnto the pleasure of
 my nephew sir Gareth. Sir said the damosell Lincet that shall
 be done, and so she rode vnto her sister. And as lightly as shee
 might make her ready shee did, and came on the morrow with
 her brother sir Gringamor and with her fortie knights. And
 when she was come, shee had all the chere that might be done,
 both of King Arthur and of many other Kings and Quenes.

CHAP. CLIII.

Now sir Gareth acknowledged that they loued each other to
 King Arthur, and of the day of their wedding.

Among all these Ladies was shee named the fairest and
 peerlesse. When when sir Gareth saw her, there was
 many goodly lookes and goodly words, that all men of worship
 had ioy to behold them. Then came King Arthur and many o-
 ther Kings, and Quene Gueneuer and the Quene of Wykeney
 And there the King asked his nephew sir Gareth, whether hee
 would haue the Lady to his paramour, or to haue her to his
 wife. My Lord wit you well that I loue her aboue all Ladies
 liuing. Now faire Lady said King Arthur vnto her what say
 ye. Most noble King said Dame Lyones, wit you well that
 my Lord sir Gareth is to mee more leuer to haue and welde
 as my husband, then any King or Prince Christened, and if
 I may not haue him, I promise you I will neuer haue none.
 For my Lord King Arthur said Dame Lyones, wit yee well he
 is my first loue, and he shall be the last, and if yee will suffer
 him to haue his will and free choise. I dare say he will haue
 mee. That is truth said sir Gareth, and I haue not you and
 welde you as my wife, there shall neuer Lady nor gentlewoman
 reioyce mee. What nephew said the King is the wind in that
 doore, for wit yee well I would not for the skint of my crowne
 to be causer to withdraw your hearts, and I wit yee well yee
 can

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

can not loue so well but I shall rather increase it then distresse. Also yee shall haue my loue and my Lordship in the uttermost wise that may lye in my power. And the same wise said Sir Gareths Mother. When was there made a prouision for the day of marriage, and by the Kings aduise it was prouided that it should be at Wighelmaste next following at Winkenadon by the sea side, for there is a plentifull countrey. And so it was cryed in all places through the realme. And then Sir Gareth sent his messengers vnto all those Knights and Ladies that he had wone in battaile befoze, that they should be at the day of his marriage at Winkenadon by the sands. And then Dame Lyones and the Damosell Lynet, with Sir Gringamor rode to their Castle, and a goodly & a rich ring she gaue to Sir Gareth, & he gaue her another. And King Arthur gaue her a rich paire of Wreaths of Gold, and so they departed, and King Arthur, and his fellowship rode toward Winkenadon & Sir Gareth brought his Lady in the way, and so came to the King againe and rode with him. The great chere that Sir Launcelot du lake made for Sir Gareth of Wikeney it was meruaile to see and he of him againe, for there was neuer no knight that Sir Gareth loued so well as he did Sir Lancelot du lake, & euer for the most part would be in Sir Lancelots company, for after Sir Gareth had he espied Sir Gawains conditions, he withdrew himselfe from his Brother Sir Gawains fellowship for he was vengeable and unmercifull, and whereas he hated he would be auenged with murder and treason and that hated Sir Gareth.

CHAP. CIII.

Of the great royaltie and what officers were made at the feast of Sir Gareth and dame Lyones wedding, and of the great iustling at the same feast and wedding.

So it drew fast to Wighelmaste and thither came dame Lyones and her sister dame Lynet with Sir Gringamor their brother with them, for he had the guiding of those Ladies. And there they were lodged at the deuise of King Arthur. And on the thirteenth day the Archbishop of Canterbury made the wedding

and his Knights of the round Table.

ing betwene Sir Gareth and the Lady Lyones with great solemnitie. And King Arthur made Sir Gaheris to wed the damosell sauage that was dame Lynet. And King Arthur made Sir Agrauaine to wed dame Lyones nece a faire Lady, her name was dame Laurell. And so when this solemnisation was done, then there came in the greene knight that hight Sir Percelope with thirtie knights, and there he did homage and fealtie vnto Sir Gareth and these knights to hold of him for euermore. Also Sir Percelope said, I pray you that at this feast I may be your chamberlaine. With a good will said Sir Gareth yf it liketh you to take so simple an office. Then came in the red knight with threescore knights with him, and did to Sir Gareth homage and fealtie, and all those knights to hold of him for euermore, and then Sir Perimones prayed Sir Gareth to graunt him for to be his chiefe butler at that high feast. I will well said Sir Gareth that ye haue this office and it were better. Then came in Sir Persaunt of Inde with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealtie vnto Sir Gareth and all his knights should doe him serutce, and hold their lands of him for euermore, and then hee prayed Sir Gareth to make him the chiefe sewer at the feast. I will well said Sir Gareth that yee haue it and it were better. Then came in the Duke de la Rowe with an hundred knights with him, and there he did homage and fealtie vnto Sir Gareth, and so to hold their lands of him for euer, and he required Sir Gareth that he might serue him of the Wine that day at the feast. I will well said Sir Gareth and it were much better. Then came in the red knight of the red Lands, that was Sir Ironside, and he brought with him three hundred knights, and there he did homage and fealtie to Sir Gareth, and all these knights to hold their lands of him for euer, and then he asked Sir Gareth to be his haruer. I will well said Sir Gareth and it please you. Then came into the Court thirtie Ladies, & all they seemed widowes and those thirtie Ladies brought with them many faire Gentlewomen, and they all kneeled downe at once vnto King Arthur and vnto Sir Gareth, and there all those Ladies told the King how Sir Gareth had deliuered them from the dolorous

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

Coloure and slew the browne knight without pitie, and there-
 fore wee and our heires for euermore will doe homage vnto
 Sir Gareth of Wykeney. So then the Kings & Quene, Princes,
 Charles and Barons and many bold knights went vnto meate
 and well ye may wit that there was all manner of meate plen-
 tefully, & all manner reuelles & games, with all manner of mu-
 sicke that was vsed in those dayes. Also there was great iusting
 thre dayes. But the king would not suffer Sir Gareth to iust
 because of his new bride. For the French booke saith that dame
 Lyones desired the king that none of them that were wedded
 should iust at that feast. So the first day there iusted Sir
 Lamoracke de galis, and he ouerthrew thirtie knights, and did
 passing meruailous deeds of armes. And then King Arthur
 made Sir Persaunt of Inde and his two Bretheren knights of
 the round table vnto their liues end, & gaue them great Lands.
 Also the second day there iusted Sir Tristram best and he ouer-
 threw fortie knights, & he did there meruailous deeds of armes.
 And there King Arthur made sir Ironside that was the red knight
 of the red lands a knight of the round table vnto his liues end, &
 gaue him great Lands. The thirde day there iusted sir Launcelot
 du lake, and he ouerthrew fiftie knights & did many meruailous
 deeds of armes, that all men had great wonder of his noble
 deeds. And there King Arthur made the Duke de la Rowe a
 knight of the round table to his liues end, and gaue him great
 Lands to spend. But when these iusts were done Sir Lamoracke
 and Sir Tristram departed sudainely, and would not be known,
 for the which King Arthur and all his Court were sore displea-
 sed. And so they held the feast fortie dayes with great solemnity.
 And this Sir Gareth was a full noble knight, and a well ru-
 led, and faire languaged.

Thus endeth the History of Sir Gareth of Wykeney that
 wedded Dame Lyones of the Castle Perillous. And also Sir
 Gaheris wedded her sister Dame Lynet, that was called the
 Damocell sauage. And Sir Agrauiaine wedded Dame Laurell
 a faire Lady, and great and mightie Lands with great riches
 gaue with them the noble King Arthur, that royally they might
 liue vnto their liues end.

FINIS.

King Arthur and his valiant Knights of the round Table,
 Sir Tristram. Sir Launcelot. Sir Galahad. Sir Perciual,
 Sir Gauwin. Sir Ector. Sir Bors Sir Lionell. Sir Griflet,
 Sir Gaheris. Sir Tor. Sir Acolon. Sir Ewaine. Sir Marhaus,
 Sir Pelleas Sir Sagris. Sir Turquine. Sir Kay. Sir Gareth.



Sir Beaumans. Sir Bersunt. Sir Palomides. Sir Belcobus.
 Sir Ballomarc. Sir Gahmalt. Sir Lamoracke. Sir Frok
 Sir Superabilis. Sir Vaginer. Sir Belvoure.

THE MOST ANCIENT AND FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE RENOWNED PRINCE

ARTHUR

King of Britaine,

The second Part.

Wherein is declared his Life and Death,
 with all his glorious Battails against the
 Saxons, Saracens and Pagans,
 which (for the honour of his
 Country) he most wor-
 thily atcheiued.

Also, all the Noble Acts, and Heroicke
 Deeds of his Valiant KNIGHTS of
 the ROUND TABLE.

Newly revised, and published for the delight, and
 profit of the READER.

LONDON,

Printed by William Stansby,
 for Iacob Bloome. 1634.

THE CONTENTS AND

Chapters of the second.

PART.

How Sir *Tristram de lioues* was borne and How his Mother dyed at his birth, wherefore shee desired that his name should by *Tristram*. cap. 1.

How the step-mother of Sir *Tristram* had ordained poyson for to haue poysoned young *Tristram*. cap. 2.

How young *Tristram* was sent into France, and had one to gouerne him named *Gouernale*, and how hee learned to harpe, kawke, and hunt. cap. 3.

How Sir *Marhaus* came out of Ireland for to aske truage of Cornewaile or else he would fight therefore. cap. 4.

How Sir *Tristram* enterprised the battaile to fight for the truage of Cornewaile, and how and of whom he was made knight. cap. 5.

How Sir *Tristram* arriued into the Iland for to furnish the battaile with Sir *Marhaus*. cap. 6.

How Sir *Tristram* fought against Sir *Marhaus* and finished his battell, and how Sir *Marhaus* fled to his ships. cap. 7.

How Sir *Marhaus* after he was arriued in Ireland died of the great stroke that Sir *Tristram* had giuen him and now Sir *Tristram* was hurt. cap. 8.

How Sir *Tristram* was first put to the ward and keeping of *la beale Isond* for to be healed of his wound. cap. 9.

How Sir *Tristram* wan the degree at a turnament in Ireland, and there made Sir *Palomides* to beate no harneis in a yeare. cap. 10.

How the Queene espied that Sir *Tristram* had slaine her brother Sir *Marhaus* by his sword, and in what icopardy he was. cap. 11.

How Sir *Tristram* departed from King *Anguish* and *la beale Isond* out of Ireland for to come into Cornewaile. cap. 12.

How Sir *Tristram*, and King *Marke* hurt each other for the loue of a Knights wife. cap. 13.

How Sir *Tristram* lay with the Lady, and how her husband fought with Sir *Tristram*. cap. 14.

How Sir *Bleoberis* demanded the fairest Lady in King *Markes* Court,

The Table.

- Court, whom he took away, and how he was foughren with. cap. 15
- How sir *Tristram* fought with two Knight of the round table. cap. 16
- How Sir *Tristram* fought with Sir *Bleuberis* for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice vnto whom she would goe. cap. 17
- How the lady forsooke Sir *Tristram* and abode with Sir *Bleuberis*, and how she desired to goe vnto her husband. cap. 18
- How King *Marke* sent for his *Tristram* for *la beale Isond* toward Ireland, and how by fortune he arriued in England. cap. 19
- How King *Anguish* of Ireland was summoned to come vnto King *Arthurs* court for treason. cap. 20
- How Sir *Tristram* rescued a child from a Knight, and how *Gouernale* told him of King *Anguish*. cap. 21
- How Sir *Tristram* fought for king *Anguish* and ouercame his aduersary and how his aduersary would neuer yeld him. cap. 22
- How Sir *Blamor* desired sir *Tristram* to sleie him, and how Sir *Tristram* spared him, and how they took appointment. cap. 23
- How Sir *Tristram* demanded *la beale Isond* for King *Marke*, and how Sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* dranke the loue-drinke. cap. 24
- How Sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* were in prison, and how Sir *Tristram* fought for the beauty of *la beale Isond* and smote off an other ladies head. cap. 25
- How Sir *Tristram* fought with Sir *Brennor*, and at the last smote off his head. cap. 26
- How Sir *Galahad* fought with Sir *Tristram*, and how Sir *Tristram* yekled him, and promised to fellowship with Sir *Lancelot*. cap. 27
- How Sir *Lancelot du lake* met with King *Carados* bearing away Sir *Gauains* and of the rescue of Sir *Gauaine*. cap. 28
- Of the wedding of King *Marke* to *la beale Isond*, and of *Bragwaine* her moile and of Sir *Palomides*. cap. 29
- How sir *Palomides* demanded the *Queene Isond* and how *Lamoracke* rode after to rescue her, and of the escape of *Queene Isond*. cap. 30
- How sir *Tristram* rode after sir *Palomides*, and how hee found him and fought with him, and by the meanes of *la beale Isond* the battail ceased. cap. 31
- How

The Table.

- How sir *Tristram* brought *Queene Isond* home, and of the debate of King *Marke* and Sir *Tristram*. cap. 32
- How sir *Lamoracke* iusted with thirtie Knights, and how Sir *Tristram* at the request of King *Marke* smote his horse downe. cap. 33
- How sir *Lamoracke* sent an horne to King *Marke* in despite of sir *Tristram*, and how sir *Tristram* was driuen into a chappell. cap. 34
- How sir *Tristram* was holpen by his men, and of *Queene Isond* which was put in a lazar coate, and how Sir *Tristram* was hurt. cap. 35
- How sir *Tristram* serued in warre King *Howell* of Britaine, and in how his aduersary in the fiede. cap. 36
- How sir *Suppinables* told sir *Tristram* how he was defamed in the Court of King *Arthur*, and of sir *Lancelot du lake*. cap. 37
- How sir *Tristram* and his wife arriued in Wales, and how he met there with sir *Lamoracke*. cap. 38
- How sir *Tristram* fought with sir *Naban*, and ouercame him, and made sir *Segwarides* Lord of the Ile. cap. 39
- How sir *Lamoracke* departed from sir *Tristram*, and how he met with sir *Frol*, and after with Sir *Lancelot*. cap. 40
- How sir *Lamoracke* slew Sir *Froll*, and of the couetous fighting with sir *Belleance* his Brother. cap. 41
- How a younge man came into court of King *Arthur* and how sir *Kay* called him in scorne *La cote male taile*. cap. 42
- How a damosell came vnto King *Arthur* Court and desired a Knight to take on him an enquest, which *La cote male taile* enterprised. cap. 43
- How sir *La cote male taile* ouerthrew sir *Dagonet* king *Arthurs* jote, and of the rebuke that he had of the Damosell. cap. 44
- How sir *La cote male taile* fought against an hundred Knights, and how he escaped by the meanes of a Lady. cap. 45
- How sir *Lancelot* came to the Court and heard of sir *La cote male taile*, and how he followed after him, and how sir *La cote male taile* was prisoner. chap. 46
- How sir *Lancelot* fought with six knights, & after that he fought with sir *Brian*, & how he deliuered al the prisoners. chap. 47
- How sir *Lancelot* met with the damosell named *Maledisant*, and how he named her the damosell *Piehpensant*. chap. 48
- How

The Table.

- How sir *Lacot* was taken prisoner, & after rescued by sir *Lancelot*, and how sir *Launcelot* ouercame foure bretheren. *ch. 49.*
 How sir *Lance.* made *Lacote*. Lord of the Castle of *Pendragon*, & after was made Knight of the round table. *chap. 50.*
 How *la beale Isond* sent letters vnto sir *Tristram* by her maiden *Bragmaine*, and of diuers aduentures of sir *Tristram*. *chap. 51.*
 How sir *Tristram* met with sir *Lamorake de Galis*, & how they fought, and after accorded neuer to fight together. *chap. 52.*
 How sir *Palomides* followed the questing beast, & how he smot down both sir *Trist.* and sir *Lamorake* with onespeare. *ch. 53.*
 How sir *Lamorake* met with sir *Meliogrance*, and fought together for the beauty of *Queene Gueneuer*. *chap. 54.*
 How sir *Launcelot* and sir *Bleoberis* came riding and found sir *Lamorake* and sir *Meliogrance* fighting, and how sir *Lamorake* iusted with king *Arthur*. *chap. 55.*
 How sir *Kay* met with sir *Tristram*, and after of the shame spoken of the knights of *Cornewaile*, and how they iusted. *chap. 56.*
 How king *Arthur* was brought into the Forrest perilous, and how sir *Tristram* saued her life. *chap. 57.*
 How sir *Trist.* came to *la beale Isond* and how sir *Kay* *Hedius* began to loue *la beale Is.* & of the letter that sir *Trist.* found. *c. 58.*
 How sir *Tristram* departed from *Tintagill*, & how he sorrowed, and was so long in a Forrest till he was out of his mind. *ch. 59.*
 How sir *Tristram* lowsed sir *Dagonet* in a Well, and how sir *Palomides* sent a damosell to seeke sir *Tristram*, and how sir *Palomides* met with king *Marke*. *chap. 60.*
 How it was noysed that sir *Tristram* was dead, and how *la beale Isond* would haue slaine her selfe. *chap. 61.*
 How king *Marke* found sir *Tristram* naked, and made him to be borne home to *Tintagill*, and how hee was there knowne by a Bratcher. *chap. 62.*
 How king *Mar.* by the aduise of his Counsell banished sir *Tristram* out of the Country of *Cornwaile* for the tearm of ten years. *ch. 63.*
 How the damosell sought help for to help sir *Launcelot* against thirtie knights, and how sir *Tristram* fought with them. *c. 64.*
 How sir *Tristram* and sir *Dinadan* came to a lodging wher they must iust with two knights. *chap. 65.*
 How sir *Tristram* iusted with sir *Kay* and sir *Sagramore le despons*, and how sir *Gama.* turned sir *Tristram* from *Mor.* *chap. 66.*
 How

The Table.

- How sir *Tristram* and sir *Gawaine* rode to haue fought against the thirtie knights, but they durst not come out. *chap. 67.*
 How the damosell *Brag.* found sir *Tristram* sleeping in a Well, & how she deliuered letters to him from *Isond*. *chap. 68.*
 How sir *Tristram* had a fall of sir *Palomides* and how sir *Launcelot* ouerthrew two knights. *chap. 69.*
 How sir *Launce.* iusted with sir *Palo.* and ouerthrew him, and how hee was afterwards assailed with twelue knights. *chap. 70.*
 How sir *Tristram* behaued him the first day of the turnement, and there he had the prise. *chap. 71.*
 How sir *Tristram* returned against king *Arthurs* part, because he saw sir *Palomides* on that part. *chap. 72.*
 How sir *Tristram* found sir *Palomides* by a well and brought him with him to his lodging. *chap. 73.*
 How sir *Tristram* smote downe sir *Palomides*, and how hee iusted with king *Arthur*, and other feates. *chap. 74.*
 How sir *Launcelot* hure sir *Tristram*, and how after sir *Tristram* smote downe sir *Palomides*. *chap. 75.*
 How the prise of the third day was given to sir *Launcelot*, and sir *Launcelot* gaue it vnto sir *Tristram*. *chap. 76.*
 How sir *Palo.* came to the caste where sir *Tristram* was, and of the quest that sir *Launce.* and ten knights made for sir *Tristram*. *ca. 77.*
 How sir *Tristram*, sir *Palomides* and sir *Dinadan* were taken and put in prison. *chap. 78.*
 How king *Marke* was sorry of the good renoune of sir *Tristram* and how some of king *Arthurs* Knights iusted with knights of *Cornewaile*. *chap. 79.*
 Of the treason of king *Marke*, and how sir *Gaheris* smote him downe and sir *Andret* his cosin. *cap. 80.*
 How after that sir *Tristram* and sir *Palomides* and sir *Dinadan* had bene long in prison, they were deliuered out. *cap. 81.*
 How sir *Dinadan* rescued a Lady from sir *Breusefaunce* pittie, and how sir *Tristram* receiued a shield of *Morgan le fay*. *c. 82.*
 How sir *Tristram* tooke with him the shield, and also how hee slew the paramour of *Morgan le fay*. *chap. 83.*
 How *Morgan le fay* buried her paramour, and how sir *Tristram* praysed sir *Launcelot* and his kinne. *chap. 84.*
 How sir *Tristram* at a turnement bare the shield that *Morgan le fay* had deliuered him. *chap. 85.*
 How

The Table

- How Sir *Tristram* iusted and smote downe King *Arthur* and Sir *Ewaine*, and would not tell them his name. chap. 86.
- How Sir *Tristram*, and Sir *Palomides* met, and how they promised to fight together within fourteene dayes after. chap. 87.
- How Sir *Tristram* sought the strong Knight that had smitten him downe and many other Knights of the round table. ca. 88.
- How Sir *Tristram* smote downe Sir *Sagramore le desirous* and Sir *Dodinas le sauvage*. chap. 89.
- How Sir *Tristram* met at the Peron with Sir *Lancelot* and how they fought together, not knowing the one the other. cap. 90.
- How Sir *Launcelot* brought Sir *Tristram* to the Court and of the great ioy that King *Arthur* and other made for the coming of Sir *Tristram*. chap. 91.
- How for the despite of Sir *Tristram* King *Marke* came with two Knights into England, and how hee slew one of his Knights. chap. 92.
- How King *Marke* came to a fountaine, where as hee found Sir *Lamorake* complaining for the lous of King *Lots* wife. chap. 93.
- How King *Marke*, Sir *Lamorake* and Sir *Dinadan*, came into a Castle and how King *Marke* was knowne there. chap. 94.
- How Sir *Berlus* met with King *Marke*, and how Sir *Dinadan* tooke his part. chap. 95.
- How King *Marke* mocked Sir *Dinadan*. And how they met with sixe Knights of the round table. chap. 96.
- How the sixe Knights Sir *Dagonet* to iust with king *Marke* and how King *Marke* refused him. chap. 97.
- How Sir *Palomides* by aduventure met with King *Marke*, flying and how he ouerthrew Sir *Dagonet* and other Knights. ca. 98.
- How King *Marke* and Sir *Dinadan* heard Sir *Palomides* making great sorrow and mourning for *la beale Isond*. chap. 99.
- How King *Marke* had slaine Sir *Amant* wrongfully before King *Arthur* and how Sir *Launcelot* fetcht King *Marke* to King *Arthur*. chap. 100.
- How Sir *Dinadan* told Sir *Palomides* of the battaile betweene Sir *Launcelot* and Sir *Tristram*. chap. 101.
- How Sir *Lamorake* iusted with diuers Knights of the Castle, where in was *Morgan le fay*. chap. 102.
- How Sir *Palomides* would haue iusted for Sir *Lamorake* with the Knights of of the Castle, chap. 103.

The Table

- How Sir *Lamorake* iusted with Sir *Palomides*, and how hee hurt him grievously. chap. 104.
- How it was told sir *Launcelot* that sir *Dagonet* chased King *Marke*, and how a Knight ouerthrew him and six Knights. c. 105.
- How King *Arthur* let doe crie a Iust and how sir *Lamorake* came in and ouerthrew sir *Gawaine* and many more. chaps 106.
- How King *Arthur* made King *Marke* to be accorded with sir *Tristram*, and how they departed to ride toward *Cornewaile*. chap. 107.
- How *Percinable* was made Knight of King *Arthur*, and how a *lomb* made speak and brought him to the round table. c. 108.
- How sir *Lamorake* lay with King *Lots* wife, and how sir *Gaheris* slew her, which was his owne Mother. chap. 109.
- How Sir *Agrauaine* and Sir *Mordred* met with a Knight flying, and how they both were ouerthrowne, and sir *Dinadan*. c. 110.
- How King *Arthur* with the Queene and Sir *Launcelot* receiued letters out of *Cornewaile*, and of the answere againe thether. chap. 112.
- How Sir *Launcelot* was wroth with the letter that hee had receiued from King *Marke*, and sir *Dinadan* that made a lay of King *Marke*. chap. 113.
- How Sir *Tristram* was hurt. And of a warre made to King *Marke*. And of Sir *Tristram*, how he promised to rescue him. ca. 114.
- How Sir *Tristram* ouercame the batraile. And how sir *Elias* desired a man to fight body for body. chap. 115.
- How Sir *Elias* and Sir *Tristram* fought together for the Truage of *Cornewaile*, and how Sir *Tristram* slew Sir *Elias* in the field. chap. 116.
- How a great feast King *Marke* made an harpe come and sing the lay that Sir *Dinadan* had made. chap. 117.
- How King *Marke* slew by treason his brother *Bondwine* for good seruice that he had done to him. chap. 118.
- How *Anglides* *Bandwins* wife escaped with her young son *Alcander* *Lorselin*, and came to the Castle of *Arundell*. chap. 119.
- How *Anglides* gaue the bloody doublet vnto *Alisunder* her son. the same day that he was made Knight, and the charge withall. chap. 120.
- How it was told King *Marke* of Sir *Alisunder*, and how hee would haue slaine Sir *Sadocke* for saucing of his life. chap. 122.

The Table.

- How sir *Alisaunder* wanne the prise at a turnament, and of *Morgan le fay*. And how he fought with sir *Malgrin* and slew him. cap. 122
- How *Queene Morgan le fay* had sir *Alisaunder* in her castle, and how she healed his wounds. cap. 123
- How sir *Alisaunder* was deliuered from *Queene Morgan le fay*, by the meanes of a damosell. cap. 124
- How sir *Alisaunder* met with *Alis la beale Pilgrim*, and how hee iusted with two Knights. And after of him and of sir *Mordred*. cap. 125
- How sir *Galahalt* the haut Prince did doe cry a iusts in *Surluse*, and *Queene Guenewers* knights should iust against all them that would come. cap. 126
- How that sir *Lancelot* fought in the turnament. And how sir *Palomides* did there deeds of armes for a damosell. cap. 127
- How sir *Galahalt* and *Palomides* fought together, and of sir *Dinadan* and sir *Galahalt*. cap. 128
- How sir *Archad* appealed sir *Palomides* of treason, and how sir *Palomides* slew him. cap. 129
- Of the third day, and how sir *Palomides* iusted with sir *Lamoracke*, and of other things. cap. 130
- Of the fourth day, and of many great feates of armes. cap. 131
- Of the fifth day, and how sir *Lamoracke* behaued him. cap. 132
- How sir *Palomides* fought with sir *Corsabrin* for a Lady, and how sir *Palomides* slew sir *Corsabrin*. cap. 133
- Of the sixth day, and what then was done. cap. 134
- Of the seauenth battaile, and how sir *Lancelot* being disguised like a Maide smote downe sir *Dinadan*. cap. 135
- How by treason sir *Tristram* was brought vnto a turnament for to haue beene slaine, and how he was put in prison. cap. 136
- How King *Marke* let doe counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how sir *Percinale* deliuered sir *Tristram* out of prison. cap. 137
- How that sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* came into England, and how that sir *Lancelot*, brought them vnto Ioyous gard. cap. 138
- How by the counsell of *la beale Isond* sir *Tristram* rode armed and how hee met with sir *Palomides*. cap. 139
- Of sir *Palomides*, and how hee met with *Bleoberis*, and with sir *Eltor* and of sir *Percinale*. cap. 140
- How

The Table.

- How sir *Tristram* met with sir *Dinadan*, and of their deuises and what he said vnto sir *Gamaines* bretheren. cap. 141
- How sir *Tristram* smote downe sir *Agramaine* and Sir *Gaberis* and how sir *Dinadan* was sent for the *Queene la beale Isond*. cap. 142
- How sir *Dinadan* met with sir *Tristram*, and how with lusting with sir *Palomides*, sir *Dinadan* knew him. cap. 143
- How they approached the castle of *Lonazep*, and of other deuises of the death of sir *Lamoracke*. cap. 144
- How they came to *Humber bancke* and how they found there a ship, in which ship lay the dead body of King *Hermance*. cap. 145
- How sir *Tristram* with his fellowship came and were with an hoast, which after fought with sir *Tristram*, and of other matters. cap. 146
- How sir *Palomides* went for to fight with two bretheren for the death of King *Hermance*. cap. 147
- The copy of the letter written for to reuenge the Kings death. And how sir *Palomides* fought for to haue the battaile. cap. 148
- Of the preparation of sir *Palomides* and the two bretheren that should fight with him. cap. 149
- Of the battaile of sir *Palomides* and the two bretheren, and how the two bretheren were slaine. cap. 150
- How sir *Tristram* and sir *Palomides* sir *Brense saunce pitte*, and how sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* went to *Lonazep*. cap. 151
- How sir *Palomides* iusted with sir *Galibodin* and after with sir *Gawaine*, and smote them downe. cap. 152
- How sir *Tristram* and his fellowship came vnto the turnement of *Lonazep*. And of diuers other iusts and matters. cap. 153
- How sir *Tristram* and his fellowship iusted, and of the noble feates that they did in that turnement. cap. 154
- How sir *Tristram* was vnhorsed and smiten downe by sir *Lancelot*, and after that sir *Tristram* smote downe King *Arthur*. cap. 155
- How sir *Tristram* changed his harneis and it was all red, and how hee demeaned him, and how sir *Palomides* slew sir *Lancelots* horse. cap. 156
- What sir *Lancelot* said vnto sir *Palomides*, and how that the
- (a) prise

The Table.

- prize of that day was giuen vnto Sir *Palomides*. cap. 157
 How Sir *Dinadan* prouoked Sir *Tristram* to doe well. cap. 158
 How King *Arthur* and Sir *Lancelot* came to see the *Queene la beale Isond*, and how Sir *Palomides* smote downe king *Arthur*. cap. 159
 How the second day Sir *Palomides* forsooke Sir *Tristram* and went to the contrary part against him. cap. 160
 How Sir *Tristram* departed out of the field and awaked Sir *Dinadan* and changed his aray all into blacke. cap. 161
 How Sir *Palomides* changed his shield and his armes for to hurt Sir *Tristram* and what Sir *Lancelot* did to Sir *Tristram*. cap. 162
 How Sir *Tristram* departed with *la beale Isond*, and how Sir *Palomides* followed and excused him. cap. 163
 • How King *Arthur* and Sir *Lancelot* came into their pavilions as they sate at supper, and of Sir *Palomides*. cap. 164
 How *Tristram* and Sir *Palomides* did the next day, and how King *Arthur* was unhorsed. cap. 165
 How Sir *Tristram* turned to King *Arthurs* side, and how Sir *Palomides* would not. cap. 166
 How Sir *Bleoberis* and Sir *Ector* reported to *Queene Gueneuer* the beauty of *la beale Isond*. cap. 167
 How Sir *Palomides* complained by a Well, and how Sir *Epinogris* came and found him, and of both their sorrowes. cap. 168
 How Sir *Palomides* brought vnto Sir *Epinogris* his Lady. And how Sir *Palomides* and Sir *Sasire* were assailed. cap. 169
 How Sir *Palomides*, and Sir *Sasire* conducted Sir *Epinogris* to his Castle and of other aduentures. cap. 170
 How Sir *Tristram* made him ready for to rescue Sir *Palomides*, but Sir *Lancelot* rescued him or hee came. cap. 171
 How Sir *Tristram* and Sir *Lancelot* with Sir *Palomides* came to Ioyous garde, and of Sir *Palomides*, and of Sir *Tristram*. cap. 172
 How there was a day set betweene Sir *Tristram* and Sir *Palomides* for to fight and how Sir *Tristram* was hurt. cap. 173

THE

**THE
 MOST ANCIENT AND
 FAMOUS HISTORIE OF
 THE RENOWNED
 PRINCE
 ARTHUR King of
 Britaine.**

The second Part.

CHAP. I.

How Sir *Tristram de Lyones* was borne and How his Mother dyed at his birth, wherefore shee desired that his name should be *Tristram*.



There was a knight that hight *Meliodas*, and he was Lord & King of the countrey of *Lyones*, and this King *Meliodas* was as likely a man as any was at that time liuing. And by fortune hee wedded King *Markes* Sister of *Cornewaile*, whose name was *Elizabeth*, and hee was a right faire Lady and a good. And at that time King *Arthur* reigned, and hee was all whole King of *England* *Wales* and *Ireland*, and also of *Scotland*, and of many other Realmes, how bee it there were many Kings that were Lords of many countries, but all they held their Lands of King *Arthur*. For in *Wales* were two Kings, and in the North were many Kings, and in *Cornewaile* and in the West were two

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

two Kings. Also in Ireland were two or three Kings, and all were vnder the obeyſance of King Arthur, and ſo was the King of France and the King of Britaine, and all the lordſhips vnto Rome. So when this King Meliodas had bene a certaine time with his wiſe, within a while ſhee waied great with child, and ſhee was a full make Lady, and well ſhee loued her Lord, and he her againe, ſo there was great ioy betweene them. Then was there a Lady in that countrey that had loued King Meliodas long and by no manner of meanes ſhee could neuer get his loue, therefore vpon a day ſhe let ordaine for him as he rode on hunting, for hee was a great hunter, and thereby enchantment ſhee made him chace an Hart by himſelfe alone till that he came to an old Caſtle, and there anon he was taken priſoner the Lady by that loued him. When Elizabeth King Meliodas wiſe miſſed her Lord, ſhe was nigh out of her wit & great with Child as ſhee was, ſhee tooke a Gentlewoman with her and ranne ſtraight vnto the forreſt for to ſeek her Lord and husband. And when ſhee was farre within the forreſt ſhe might goe no farther, for ſhe began ſaſt to trauaile of her Child; and ſhee had many grlinly throlues, and her Gentlewoman holpe her all that ſhe might. And ſo by miracles of our Lady of heauen ſhee was deliuered with great paines but ſhee had taken ſuch cold for default of helpe, that the deepe draughts of death tooke her, that needs ſhee muſt die, and depart out of this world, none other boote there was. And when this Queene Elizabeth ſaw there was none other boote, then ſhe made great moone and ſorrow, and ſaid vnto her Gentleman. When ye ſee my Lord King Meliodas, recommend me vnto him, and tell him what paines I endure for his loue, and how I muſt die here for his ſake, and for default of good helpe, and let him wit that I am full ſorry to depart out of this world from him, therefore pray him to be good friend vnto my ſoule.

Now let mee ſee I pray you my little Child for whom I haue had all this ſorrow. And when ſhee ſaw him thus ſhee ſaid. Ah my little Sonne thou haſt murdered thy Mother, and therefore I ſuppoſe thou that art a murderer ſo young, thou art full likely to bee a grarly man in thine age. And

and his Knights of the round Table.

And becauſe I ſhall die of the birth of this, I charge this Gentlewoman that thou beſeech my Lord King Meliodas, that when my Son ſhall be Chriſtened, let him be named Triſtram, that is as much to ſay as ſorrowfull birth. And therewithall this Queene Elizabeth gaue vp her ghoſt, and died in the ſame place. When the Gentlewoman laid her vnder the ſhadow of a great tree, and then ſhee lapped the Child as well as ſhe might for cold. Right ſo ſorowth withall there came the Barons following after the Queene, and when they ſaw that the Queene was dead, and vnderſtood none other but that the King was deſtroyed.

CHAP. II.

Now the ſtep-mother of Sir *Triſtram* had ordained poyſon for to haue poyſoned young *Triſtram*.

When a certaine of them would haue ſlaine the Child, becauſe they would haue bene Lords of the countrey of Lyones. But then through the faire ſpeech of the Gentlewoman, & by the meanes that ſhe made, the moſt part of the great Barons and Lords would not aſſent thereto, and then they let carry home the dead Queene, and great mone was made for her. The meane while Merlin deliuered King Meliodas, out of priſon on the morrow after his Queene was dead. And ſo when the King was come home, the moſt part of his Barons made great ioy. But the ſorrow that the King made for his Queene no tongue can tell it. So then the King let bury her full richly. And after hee let the Child be Chriſtened as his wiſe had commanded afore her death. And then he let call him *Triſtram*, the ſorrowfull borne Child. When the King Meliodas endured ſeuen yeares without a Wiſe, and all this time the young *Triſtram* was well nourished. When it befell vpon a time that King Meliodas wedded King Howels Daughter of Britaine, and anon ſhee had Children of King Meliodas, then was ſhee beauiſh and wroth that her Children ſhould not reioyce the Countrey of Lyones wherefore this Queene ordained for to poyſon young *Triſtram*. So ſhe let poyſon to be put into a peece of ſiluer in the Chamber whereas *Triſtram* and her Children

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

were together, to the entent that when Tristram were thirſtic he ſhould drinke that drinke. And ſo it beſell vpon a day that the Queeneſon as he was in that Chamber eſpied the peece with poyſon, and hee wend it had beene good drinke, and be-
 caufe the Child was thirſtic he tooke the peece with poyſon and dranke fiercely, and therewith ſodainly the Child bzall and died. When the Quene wiſt of the death of her Sonne, wit ye well ſhee was paſſing heauie. But yet the King Meliodas vnderſtood nothing of her treaſon. Notwithſtanding the Quene would not leaue this, but eſte ſhee ordaine more poyſon and put it in a peece. And by fortune the King Meliodas her huſband found the peece with the wine where as the poyſon was in, and hee that was moſt thirſtic tooke the peece for to drinke thereof, and as hee would haue drunken thereof, the Quene eſpied him, and then ſhe ranne vnto him and pulled the peece from him ſodainly. The King meruailed why ſhe did ſo, and remembred him how her Sonne was ſodainly ſlaine with poyſon. And then hee tooke her by the hand and thus ſaid to her. Thou falſe traitreſſe thou ſhalt tell me what manner of drinke this is or elſe I ſhall ſlay thee. And therewith he pulled out his ſword and ſwoze a great Oath that he would ſlay her but if ſhe told him truth. Ah mercy my Lord ſaid ſhe, and I ſhall tell you all. And then ſhee told him why that ſhee would haue ſlaine Tristram, becauſe her children ſhould reioyce the land. Well ſaid King Meliodas therefore ſhall ye haue the Law. And ſo ſhee was damned by the aſſent of the Barons to be burnt and then was there made a great fire. And right as ſhee was at the fire for to take her execution, young Tristram kneeled down beſore King Meliodas his Father, & beſought him to giue him a boone. I will well ſaid the King. Then ſaid young Tristram giue me the life of your Queene my Stepmother. That is vnrightfully asked ſaid his Father King Meliodas, for ſhe would haue ſlaine thee with that poyſon, and ſhee might haue had her wil, & for thy ſake moſt, is my cauſe that ſhe ſhould die. Sir ſaid Tristram as for that I beſeech you of your mercy that ye will forgiue it her, & as for my part God forgiue it her, and I doe, and ſo much it liketh your highneſſe to graunt me

and his Knights of the round Table

my boone, for Gods loue I pray you hold your promiſe. Sith it ſo ſaid the King, I will that ye haue her life and giue her to you, and goe ye to the fire and take her, and doe with her what ye will. So young Tristram went to the fire, and by the command of the King deliuered her from the death. But after that King Meliodas would neuer haue to doe with her as at bed and at board. But by the good meanes of young Tristram hee made the King and her accorde. But then the King would not ſuffer young Tristram his ſonne to abide no longer in his Court.

CHAP. III

How young Tristram was ſent into France, and had one to gouerne him named *Gouernale*, and how hee learned to harpe hawke, and hunt.

As then he let ordaine a gentleman that was wel learned and taught, his name was *Gouernale*, and then hee ſent his ſonne Tristram with *Gouernale* into France to learne the language and nurture, and deeds of armes, and there was Tristram more then ſeauen yeares, and then when hee could well ſpeake the language, and had learned all that hee might learne in that countrey, then he came home againe to his father King Meliodas, and ſo Tristram learned to be an harper paſſing all o-
 ther that there was none ſuch called in no countrey, and ſo in harping and on instruments of muſike hee applied him in his youth for to learne, and after as hee growed in his might and ſtrength, he laboured euer in hunting and hawking, ſo that we neuer read of no gentleman more that ſo vſed himſelfe therein. And as the booke ſaith hee began good meaſures of blowing of blaſts of venery and of chaſe, and of all manner of vermetins, and all theſe termes haue we yet of hawking and hunting. And therefore the booke of venery of hawking and hunting is called the booke of Sir Tristram, wherefore as me ſeemeth all gentle-
 men that beare old armes, of right they ought to honour Sir Tristram for the goodly termes that gentlemen haue and vſe and ſhall vnto the worlds end, that thereby in a manner all men of worſhip may diſſeuer a gentleman from a yeoman and a yeoman from a villaine. For he that is of gentle blood

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

will draw him vnto gentle catches, and to follow the custome of noble gentlemen. Thus young Tristram continued in Coznewaile vntill he was big and strong of the age of nineteene yeares and then King Meliodas his father had great joy of Tristram his son & so had the Queen his wife, for euer after al his life because Tristram saued her from the fire, she neuer hated him more after, but loued him euer after, and gaue him many great gifts, and euery estate loued him wher euer he went.

CHAP. IIII.

How Sir *Marhaus* came out of Ireland for to aske truage of Coznewaile or else he would fight therefore

Then it befell that King Anguish of Ireland sent to King Marke of Coznewaile for his truage, which Coznewaile had payed many winters afoze time, and all that time King Marke was behind of the truage for seuen yeares, and King Marke and his barons gaue vnto the messenger of Ireland this answer, and said that they would none pay, and bad the messenger goe vnto his King Anguish and tell him that we will pay him no truage: but tell your Lord and hee will alwayes haue truage of vs of Coznewaile, bid him send a trustie Knight of his land that wil fight for his right, and we shall finde an other to defend our right. With this answer the messenger departed into Ireland. And when King Anguish vnderstood the answer of the messenger, he was wonderous wroth. And then he called vnto him Sir Marhaus the good Knight that was noble proued, and a Knight of the round table. And this Sir Marhaus was brother vnto the Duke of Ireland. When the King said thus vnto him. Faire brother Sir Marhaus I pray you goe into Coznewaile for my sake and doe battaile for our truage, that wee of right ought to haue, and whatsoever yee spend yee shall haue sufficiently more then yee shall neede. Sir said Sir Marhaus wit yee well that I shall not be loath to doe battaile in the right of you and your land with the best Knight of the round table, for I know them for the most part what their deeds bee and for to aduance my deeds and to encrease my worship, I wil right gladly

and his Knights of the round Table.

gladly goe to this journey for our right. So in all the hast there was made purueiance for Sir Marhaus, and he had all things that to him needed, and so he departed out of Ireland and arrived vp in Coznewaile euen fast by the Castle of Wintagill. And so when King Marke vnderstood that there was arrived for to fight for Ireland the noble Knight Sir Marhaus, then made hee great moane and sorow, for he knew no Knight that durst haue to doe with him. For at that season Sir Marhaus was called one of the famousst and the most renowned Knight of the world.

And thus Sir Marhaus abode still in his ship on the sea, and the next day he sent vnto King Marke for to pay the truage which was behind of seuen yeare, or else to find a Knight to fight with him for the truage. This manner of message Sir Marhaus sent daily vnto King Marke. When they of Coznewaile let make many cries in euery place that what Knight would fight for to haue the truage of Coznewaile, hee should so be rewarded, that he should fare the better as long as he liued. When some of the barons of Coznewaile said vnto King Marke, and counsailed him to send vnto the Court of King Archur for to seeke Sir Lancelot du lake, which was at that time called the maruailous Knight of the world. When there were some other barons that counsailed the King not to doe so, and said that it were labour lost and in vaine, because Sir Marhaus was a Knight of the round table, therfore any of them will be loth to haue adoe with other, but if it were any Knight at his owne request would fight slighted and vnknown. So the King and all his barons assented that it was not but to seeke a Knight of the round table. The meane while came the language and the noise vnto King Meliodas, how Sir Marhaus abode battaile fast by the Castle of Wintagill and how King Marke could find no manner of Knight to fight with him. When young Tristram heard this hee was wroth and sore ashamed, that there durst no Knight in Coznewaile haue to doe with Sir Marhaus of Ireland.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. V

How Sir Tristram enterprised the battaile to fight for the truage of Cornewaile, and how and of whom he was made Knight.

Therewith Sir Tristram went vnto his father King Meliodas and asked him counsaile what was best to doe for to recover the countrey of Cornewaile for truage, for as me seemeth said sir Tristram it were better that sir Marhaus the Quenes brother of Ireland, should goe away, vntesse that he were not fought withall. As for that said King Meliodas, wit ye wel my sonne Tristram that sir Marhaus is called on of the best knights of the world, and knight of the round table, and therefore I know no knight in this countrey that is able to match with him. Alas said sir Tristram that I am not made knight, and if sir Marhaus should thus depart into Ireland. God let mee neuer haue worship, and I were made knight I should match him, and sir said sir Tristram, I pray you to giue me leaue to ride vnto mine vncle King Marke, and so ye be not displeased, of King Marke will I bee made knight, I will well said King Meliodas that ye be ruled as your courage will rule you. And then Sir Tristram thanked his father much, and so made him ready to ride into Cornewaile. And in the meane while there came a messenger with letters of loue from the daughter of King Paramon of Fraunce vnto Sir Tristram, which were full pittious letters, and in the letters were written many complaints of loue. But Sir Tristram had no joy of her letters, nor regard vnto her. Also shee sent him a little bracelet that was passing faire. But when the daughter of the King of Fraunce vnderstood that Tristram would not loue her, shee died for pure sorrow. And then the same squire that brought the letters and the bracelet came againe to Sir Tristram as yee shall heare after in the historie. So this young Tristram rode vnto his vncle King Marke of Cornewaile, and when he came there he heard say, that there should no knight fight with Sir Marhaus. And so Tristram went vnto his vncle and said Sir if yee will giue mee the order of knighthood, I shall doe battaile to the utter,

most

and his Knights of the round Table.

most with Sir Marhaus of Ireland. What are yee said the King, and from whence come yee? Sir said Tristram I come from King Meliodas that wedded your sister, and wit ye wel that I am a gentelman. King Marke beheld Tristram and saw that he was but a young man of age, but he was passing well made, and big. Faire sonne said the King what is your name, and where are ye bozne? Sir said he my name is Tristram, and in the countrey of Liones was I bozne. We say well said King Marke, and ye will doe this battaile, I shall make you knight. Therefore I come to you said Tristram, and for none other cause. And then King Marke made him knight. And forthwith when he had made him knight, he sent a messenger with letters vnto Sir Marhaus, which said thus, that hee had found a young knight ready to take the battaile, vnto the uttermost. It may well be said Sir Marhaus, but tell vnto King Marke that I will not fight with no knight, but if he be of the blood royall, that is to say, either a Kings sonne or a Quenes sonne bozne, or else a Prince or a Princesse.

When King Marke vnderstood that, he sent for Sir Tristram and told him what was the answer of Sir Marhaus. Then Sir Tristram said thence he sayeth for let him know I am come both of fathers side and of mothers side, of as much blood as he is. For now shall we know that I am come of King Meliodas sonne and bozne of your owne sister dame Elianor that died in the Forrest in the birth of mee. Oh Jesus King Marke yee are right hartily welcome faire nephew. And then in all the hast the King let horse Sir Tristram armed him in the best maner that might be had or gotten of gold or silver. And then King Marke sent vnto Sir Marhaus to wit that a better bozne man then hee was him, should fight with him, and that his name was Sir Tristram of Liones, begotten of King Meliodas, and bozne of King Marke. And then was Sir Marhaus right glad, and blith that he should fight with such a gentleman. And so by the assent of King Marke and Sir Marhaus, they let ordaine that they should fight within an Island nigh Sir Marhaus ships, and so young Sir Tristram put into a little vessel both hee and his

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

his horse, and all that vnto him belonged, both for his body and for his horse, so that Sir Tristram lacked no manner of thing. And when King Marke and his Barons of Cornewaille beheld how young Sir Tristram departed with such a cariage to fight for the right of Cornewaille, wit ye well there was neither man nor woman of worship but they wept for to see and vnderstand in young a knight to leopord himselfe for their right.

CHAP. VI.

Now Sir Tristram arriued into the Iland for to furnish the battaile with Sir Marhaus.

For to make short this tale that when Sir Tristram was arriued within the Iland, then hee looked to the further side, and there he saw at an anker five ships nigh to the land, and vnder the shadow of the ships, vpon the land there housed the noble knight Sir Marhaus of Ireland. And then Sir Tristram commanded his seruant Gouvernalle for to bring his horse to the land, and dresse his harnets at all manner of rights. And when he had so done, hee mounted vpon his horse. And when hee was in his saddell well apparelled, and his shield dresed vpon his shoulder, Sir Tristram asked Gouvernalle, where is this knight that I shall haue to doe withall. Sir said his seruant Gouvernalle, see ye him not, I wend ye had scene him, yonder hee lieth vnder the shadow of his ships vpon horsebacke, and his speare in his hand, and his shield vpon his shoulder. It is truth said Sir Tristram, now I see him well enough. And then hee commanded his seruant Gouvernalle to goe againe vnto his vessel, and commend him vnto mine vncle King Marke, and pray him that if I be slaine in this battaile, for to bury my body as him seemeth best, and as for me let him wit that I will neuer yeld me for no cowardise, and if I be slaine and slay not, then haue they lost no truage for me. And if so be that I slay or yeld me as recreant, bid mine vncle neuer bury me in chistian burials. And vpon the life said Sir Tristram de Gouvernalle come thou not nigh this Iland till thou see me ouercome or slaine, or else that I winne yonder knight. And so either departed from othe the way ping.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. VII.

How Sir Tristram fought against Sir Marhaus and finished his battell, and how Sir Marhaus fled to his ships

And then sir Marhaus perceiued sir Tristram, and thus said vnto him. Young knight sir Tristram what doest thou here, me sore repenteth of thy courage, for wit thou wel I haue bene assaied, and the best knights of this land hath bene assaied of my hands, and also I haue matched with the best knights of the world, and therefore by my counsaile returne againe to thy ship. Faire knight and well proued knight said sir Tristram, thou shalt well wit that I may not forsake thee in this quarrell, for I am for thy sake made knight, and thou shalt well wit that I am a Kings sonne borne and begotten by a Quene, and such promise haue I made at mine vncles request and mine owne seeking, that I shall fight with thee vnto the uttermost, to deliuer Cornewaille from the old truage. Also wit ye well sir Marhaus that this is the greatest cause that ye courage me for to haue to doe with you, for ye are called one of the best renowned knights of the world, and because of that noyle and fame that ye haue, it will doe me good to haue to doe with you, for neuer yet sith that I was borne of my mother was I proued with a good knight, and also sith I haue taken the high order of knighthood this day, I am right well pleased that I may haue to doe with so good a knight as ye are. And now wit ye well sir Marhaus of Ireland that I cast me to winne worship on thy body, and if that I bee not proued I trust to God I shall be worshipfully proued vpon thy body, and for to deliuer the countrey of Cornewaille for euer from all manner of truage from Ireland. And when the good knight sir Marhaus had heard him say what him list, then said he thus againe. Faire knight sith it is so that thou castest thee to winne worship on me, I let thee wit that no worship maist thou lose by me, if thou maist stand mee three strokes, for I let you wit that for my noble deedes proued and scene, King Arthur made mee knight of the round table. And then they began for to fute

their speares, and they met so fierly together that they smote either other down both horse and al to the earth. But sir Marhaus smote sir Tristram a great wound in his side with his speare, and then they auoided their horses and drew out their swords anon, and cast their shields afoze them, and then they lashed together as it had bene two wild boozes that bee couragious. And when they had striken together a long while, then they leest off their strookes and foyned at their brest an viceroy, And when they saw it might not preuaile them, then they hurtled together like two rams to beare either other downe. Thus they fought till more then halfe a day, and were both sore wounded, that the blood ran downe from them on euery side to the ground. Why then Tristram waxed more fresher then Sir Marhaus and better winded and bigger, and with a mighty strooke hee smote Sir Marhaus vpon the helme such a buffet that it went through his helme, and through his crosse of Steele, and through the braine panne, so that his sword sticke so fast in the helme and in his braine pan, that Sir Tristram pulled thrice at his sword or hee might pull it out from his head, and there Sir Marhaus fell downe vpon his knees, and the edge of Sir Tristrams sword a-bode still in his braine pan. And suddenly Sir Marhaus arose and threw his sword and his shield from him, and so ran vnto his shippes and fled his way, and Sir Tristram had euer still his owne shield and his sword. And when Sir Tristram saw Sir Marhaus withdraw him, hee said. Ah Sir Knight of the round table, why doest thou withdraw thee, thou doest thy selfe and thy king great shame, for I am but a young knight, or now I was neuer proued, and rather then I should withdraw me from thee, I had rather be hewen in an hundred peeces. Sir Marhaus said no word but went his way sore groaning. Well sir knight said sir Tristram, I promise thee thy sword and thy shield shall bee mine, and thy shield shall I weare in all places where I ride on mine adventures, and in the sight of King Arthur, and all the round table.

How Sir Marhaus after he was arriued in Ireland died of the great strooke that Sir Tristram had giuen him and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

Then anon Sir Marhaus and his fellowship departed and went toward Ireland. And as soone as he came vnto the king his Brother he let search his wounds and when his head was searched a peece of Sir Tristrams sword was found therein, and might neuer be had out of his head for no surgions, and so he died of Sir Tristrams sword, and that peece of the sword the Quene his Sister kept it for euer with her for she thought to be reuenged and she might.

Now turne wee againe vnto Sir Tristram, which was sore wounded and bled full sore, that he might not within a little while when hee had taken cold vnto the strise him of his limmes. And then he set him downe softly vpon a litle hill and bled fast. When anon came Gouvernail his seruant with his bestell, and the king and his Barons came with processyon against him, and when he was come to the Land, King Marke took him in both his armes and the king and Sir Dinas the Seneschall led Sir Tristram into the Castle of Tintagill, and then were his wounds searched in the best manner and laid in bed. And when King Marke saw all his wounds, he wept right hartily, and so did all his Lords. So God me helpe said King Marke, I would not for all my Lands that my nephew died. So Sir Tristram lay there a month and more, and was like to haue died of the strooke that Sir Marhaus had giuen him first with his speare. For as the french booke saith, that speares head was enuenimed, that Sir Tristram might not be hole thereof. When was King Marke and all his Barons passing heauie, for they deemed none other but that Sir Tristram should not recouer. So the king let send after all manner of leeches and surgions both men and women, and there was none that would warrant him his life. When came there a Lady, which was a full wise Lady, and shee said plainly vnto King Marke

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

their speares, and they met so fierly together that they smote either other down both horse and al to the earth. But Sir Marhaus smote Sir Tristram a great wound in his side with his speare, and then they avoided their horses and drew out their swords anon, and cast their shields asoze them, and then they lashed together as it had bene two wild boozes that bee couragious. And when they had striken together a long while, then they left off their strokes and forned at their breast an visero, And when they saw it might not prevaile them, then they hurtled together like two rams to beare either other downe. Thus they fought till more then halfe a day, and were both sore wounded, that the blood ran downe from them on euery side to the ground. Wy then Tristram waied more fresher then Sir Marhaus and better winded and bigger, and with a mighty stroke hee smote Sir Marhaus vpon the helme such a buffet that it went thzough his helme, and through his crosse of Steele, and thzough the bzaine panne, so that his sword sticke so fast in the helme and in his bzaine pan, that Sir Tristram pulled thrice at his sword or hee might pull it out from his head, and there Sir Marhaus felt downe vpon his knees, and the edge of Sir Tristrams sword a bone still in his bzaine pan. And suddenly Sir Marhaus arose and thzow his sword and his shield from him, and so ran vnto his shippes and fled his way, and Sir Tristram had euer still his owne shield and his sword. And when Sir Tristram saw Sir Marhaus withdraw him, hee said. Ah Sir Knight of the round table, why doest thou withdraw thee, thou doest thy selfe and thy king great shame, for I am but a young knight, or now I was neuer proued, and rather then I should withdraw me from thee, I had rather be betwen in an hundred peeces. Sir Marhaus said no word but went his way sore groaning. Well Sir Knight said Sir Tristram, I promise thee thy sword and thy shield shall bee mine, and thy shield shall I weare in all places where I ride on mine aduentures, and in the sight of King Arthur, and all the round table.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. VIII.

Now Sir Marhaus after he was arriued in Ireland died of the great stroke that Sir Tristram had giuen him and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

Then anon Sir Marhaus and his fellowship departed and went toward Ireland. And as soone as he came vnto the king his Brother he let search his wounds and when his head was searched a peece of Sir Tristram sword was found therein, and might neuer be had out of his head for no surgions, and so he died of Sir Tristrams sword, and that peece of the sword the Quene his Sister kept it for euer with her for she thought to be reuenged and she might.

Now turne wee againe vnto Sir Tristram, which was sore wounded and bled full sore, that he might not within a little while when hee had taken cold vnto the strref him of his limmes. And then he set him downe softly vpon a litle hill and bled fast. Then anon came Gouvernale his seruant with his vessel, and the king and his Barons came with proccession against him, and when he was come to the Land, King Marke took him in both his armes and the king and Sir Dinas the Seneschall led Sir Tristram into the Castle of Wintagill, and then were his wounds searched in the best manner and laid in bed. And when King Marke saw all his wounds, he wept right hartly, and so did all his Lords. So God me helpe said King Marke, I would not for all my Lands that my nephew died. So Sir Tristram lay there a month and more, and was like to haue died of the stroke that Sir Marhaus had giuen him first with his speare. For as the french booke saith, that speares head was enuenimed, that Sir Tristram might not be hole thereof. When was King Marke and all his Barons passing heauie, for they deemed none other but that Sir Tristram should not recover. So the king let send after all manner of leeches and surgions both men and women, and there was none that would warrant him his life. Then came there a Lady, which was a full wise Lady, and shee said plainly vnto King Marke

The Historie of Prince Arthur

and vnto Sir Tristram and vnto all the Barons that he should neuer be whole but if Sir Tristram went into the same countrey that the venime came from, and in that countrey should he bee holpen or else neuer. When King Marke had well heard what the Lady said, forthwith hee let puruey for Sir Tristram a faire vessell, and well bitailed it, and therein was put Sir Tristram and Gouvernale with him, and Sir Tristram tooke his Warpe with him and so hee was put to Sea, for to saile into Ireland, and so by good fortune he arriued by into Ireland, euen fast by a Castle where the King and the Quene were, and at his arriuing he sat and harped in his bed a merry lay, such one had they neuer heard in Ireland afore that time. And when it was told the King and the Quene of such a Knight that was such a harper. Anon the King sent for him, and let search his wound, and then he asked him what was his name. He answered and said, I am of the countrey of Lyones, and my name is Sir Trameris, that haue beene thus wounded in a battaile as I fought for a Ladies right. So God me helpe said King Anguiss yee shall haue all the helpe in this land that yee may haue.

But I let you wit that in Cornewalle I haue had a great losse as euer had King, for there I lost the best knight of the world, his name was Sir Marhaus a Noble knight, and a knight of the round table, and there hee told Sir Tristram wherefoze Sir Marhaus was slaine. Sir Tristram made semblance as he had been soze, and better knew he how it was then the King.

CHAPTER IX.

How Sir *Trifram* was first put to the ward and keeping of *la*
bente Isonde for to be healed of his wound.

Then the King for great fauour made Sir Tramcrift to be put in his Daughters ward and keeping, becaufe ſhe was a Noble ſurgeon. And ſo when ſhee had ſearched his wound found in the bottom of his wound that there was poiſon, and within a litle while ſhe healed him; and therefore Tramcrift caſt great loue to la bealeſſonde for ſhe was at that time the faireſt

1802

and his Knights of the round Table:

Lady of the World, and there Sir Tramtrist learned her to harpe, and she began to haue a great fantesie, vnto Sir Tramtrist. And at that time Sir Palomides that was a sarasin was in that countrie, and was well cherished both of the King and the Queene, and euery day this Sir Palomides drezv vnto la beale Isonde, and he profered her many great gifts, for he loued her passing well. And all that espied right well Sir Tramtrist, and full well he knew Sir Palomides for a noble knight and a mightie man. And wit yee well that Sir Tramtrist had great dislike at Sir Palomides for la beale Isonde told Sir Tramtrist that Sir Palomides was in will to be Chrystened for her sake. Thus was there great enuy betweene Sir Tramtrist and Sir Palomides. When it be fell that King Anguish let crie a great iusts and a great turneyment for a Lady which was called the Lady of the Lands, and she was nigh cousin vnto the King. And what man that should winne her should wed her three dayes after, and haue all her Lands. This crie was made in England, Wales and Scotland, and also in France and in Britaine. It befell vpon a day la beale Isonde came to Sir Tramtrist and told him of this turnement. He answered and said. Faire Lady I am but a feeble knight, and but late I had bene dead had not your good Ladyship beene. Now faire lady what would yee I should doe in this matter, well yee wot my Lady that I may not iust. Ah Tramtrist said la beale Isonde, why will yee not haue to doe at that turnament, well I wot Sir Palomides will bee there and doe what he may, and therefore Sir Tramtrist I pray you to be there, for else Sir Palomides is like to winne the degree. Madame said Sir Tramtrist as for that hee may doe so for he is a proued knight, and I am but a young knight and late made, and the first battaile that I did it misshapped me to be soze wounded as ye see. But and I wilt that yee would bee my better, Lady, at that turnament will I bee, so that ye will keepe my counsell and let no creature haue knowledge that I shall iust but your selfe and such as yee will to keepe your counsell, my pooze person shall I iopard there for your sake, that peraduenture Sir Palomides shall know when I come. Thereto said la beale Isonde, doe your best, and

738

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

as I can I shall puruey horses and armour for you at my deuise. As yee will so be it said Sir Tramtrist, I will bee at your command. So at the day of iustis there came Sir Palomides with a blacke shield, and he ouerthrew many knights, that all the people had meruaile of him, for he put to the worst Sir Gawaine, Gaheris, Agrouaine, Bagdemagus, Kay, Dodi- us lesauage, Sagramore le desyrous, Gunret le pitie, and Griller le fise de diu, all these the first day Sir Palomides strake downe to the earth, and then all manner knights were adzed of Sir Palomides, many called him the knight with the blacke shield. So that day Sir Palomides had great worship.

Then came King Anguish vnto Sir Tramtrist and asked him why he would not iust. Sir said he I was but late hurt, and as yet I dare not aduenture me. Then came there the same Squire that was sent from the Kings Daughter of France vnto Sir Tristram. And when he had espied Sir Tristram hee fell flat vnto his feete. All that espied la beale Isonde, saw what courtesie the Squire made vnto Sir Tristram. And therewith all sodainly Sir Tristram ranne vnto his Squire, whose name was Hebes le renommes, and prated him heartily in no wise to tell his name. Sir said Hebes I will not discouer your name but if yee command mee.

CHAP. X.

How Sir *Tristram* wan the degree at a turnament in Ireland, and there made Sir *Palomides* to beare no harnais in a yeare.

Then Sir Tristram asked him what he did in that Countrey. Sir said he, I am come hither with Sir Gawaine for to be made knight, and if it please you that of your hands I may be made knight, wait on me secretly to morrow, and in the field I shall make you a knight. Then had la beale Isonde great suspicion vnto Sir Tramtrist that hee was some knight of worship proued, and therewith shee comforted her selfe, and cast more loue vnto him then she had done before. And so on the morrow Sir Palomides made him ready for to come into the field as he did the first day and there he smote downe the king with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with an hundred knights and the king of Scotland. When had la beale Isonde ordained and well arrayed Sir Tramtrist all in white both horse and harnais, and right so she put him out at a priue posterno, and so hee came into the field, as white as it had bene a bright Angel. And anon Sir Palomides espied him, and therewith he sentred a great speare vnto Sir Tristram, and Sir Tristram to him againe, and there Sir Tristram smote downe Sir Palomides vnto the earth. And then there was a great noyse of people, for some said Sir Palomides had a fall, and some said the knight with the blacke shield had a fall, and hit ye well that la beale Isonde was passing glad. And then Sir Gawaine and his nine fellows had maruaile what knight it might be that had smitten downe sir Palomides, and then there was none that would iust with sir Tristram, but all that were there forsooke sir Tristram most and least. When sir Tristram made Hebes knight and caused him to put him selfe forth, and hit right well that day. And so after Sir Hobes held him with sir Tristram. And when Sir Palomides had receiued the fall, hit ye well hee was right sore ashamed, and as priuily as hee might, hee withdrew him out of the field. And all that espied sir Tristram, and lightly hee rode after sir Palomides, and anon ouertooke him, and bad him turne for he would better assay him or he departed. And then Sir Palomides turned him and either lashed at other with their swords. But at the first stroke Sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides, and gaue him such a stroke vpon the head that he fell to the earth. And then sir Tristram had yeld him and doe his commandement, or else hee would slay him. And then sir Palomides beheld his countenance hee deead sore his buffets, so that he graunted him at his asking. Well said sir Tristram vnto him, this shall be your charge. First vpon paine of your life that yee forsake my Lady la beale Isonde, and in no manner of wise that yee draw vnto her, and also these twelue monethes and a day that ye beare none armour nor in likewise no harnais of warre. Now promise me this or here shalt thou die. Alas said sir Palomides, now am I for euer shamed. And then he swore as sir Tristram had commanded him. Then for great dispite and anger sir Palomides cut off his

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

harnais and threw it away. And so sir Tristram returned again vnto the Castle whereas la beale Isond was, and by the way he met with a Damosell that asked after sir Launcelot which was the dolorous gard so worshipfully, and this damosell asked sir Tristram what hee was, for it was told her that it was hee that smote downe sir Palomides, by whom the ten knights of King Archurs were smitten downe. And then the Damosell praised sir Tristram for to tell her what he was, and whether hee were sir Launcelot du lake or not, for she deemed that there was no knight in the world that might doe such deedes of armes, but if it were sir Launcelot du lake. Faire Damosell said sir Tristram, wit ye well that I am not sir Launcelot, for I was neuer in such prowesse, but in God is all, that he may make me as good a knight as is the good knight sir Launcelot.

Now gentle knight said shee, put vp thy viser. And when she beheld his visage she thought that she had neuer seene better mans visage, nor a better faring knight. And when the Damosell knew certainly that he was not sir Launcelot, then shee tooke her leaue and departed from him. And then sir Tristram rode priuily vnto the posterne where la beale Isond kept him, and there shee made him full good chere, and thanked God of his good spede. So anon within a while the King and the Quene vnderstood that it was Tristram that smote downe sir Palomides, then was hee much made of and set by more then he was before.

CHAP. XI.

How the Quene espied that Sir Tristram had slaine her brother Sir Marhaus by his sword, and in what jeopardy he was.

Thus was sir Tristram long there well cherished with the King and the Quene, and namely with la beale Isond. So vpon a day the Quene and la beale Isond made a bayne for sir Tristram, and when hee was in his bayne, the Quene and her daughter la beale Isond roused vp and downe in the chamber, and there whiles Gouvernale and Hebes attended vpon Tristram, and the Quene beheld his sword whereas it lay vpon

and his Knights of the round Table.

on his bed. And then by vnhap the Quene drew out his sword and beheld it a long while, and both they thought it a passing faire sword, but within a foote and an halfe of the point there was a great peece broken out of the edge. And when the Quene espied that gap in the sword, shee remembred of a peece of a sword that was found in the braine panne of the good knight sir Marhaus that was her brother. Alas said shee then to her daughter la beale Isond, this is the same traitorous knight that slew my brother thine vncle, when la beale Isond heard her say so, she was then passing sore abashed, for shee loued sir Tristram passingly well, and right well shee knew well the cruelnesse of her mother the Quene. And so anon therewith the Quene went in all the hast that she might vnto her owne chamber, and then she sought in a coffer that shee had, and there shee found and tooke out the peece of the sword that was taken out of her brothers head sir Marhaus after that he was dead. And then anon she ran with the same peece of Iron vnto sir Tristrams sword which lay vpon the bed, and so when shee put the same peece of Steele and Iron vnto the same sword, it was then as fit as euer it might bee when it was first new broken. And so forthwith the Quene caught that sword fierly in her hand, and withall her might shee ranne straight vnto Tristram where hee sat in a bayne, and there shee had runne him through had not sir Hebes gotten her in his armes, and pulled the sword from her, and eke shee had thrust him through. When shee was thus letted of her euill will, shee ran to King Anguish her husband, and fell on her knees before him, saying. Oh my Lord and husband, here haue ye in your house, that traitour knight that slew my brother, and your seruant, that noble knight sir Marhaus, who is that said King Anguish, and where is he? Sir said shee, it is sir Tristram, the same knight that my daughter hath bealed. Alas said King Anguish, therefore am I right heauie, for he is a ful noble knight as euer I saw in field, but I charge you said the King to the Quene that yee haue not to doe with this knight, but let me deale with him. When the King went into the chamber to sir Tristram, that then was gone vnto his chamber, and then the King found him all armed, ready to mount

mount vpon his horse. And when the King saw him all ready armed to mount on horsebacke, the King said, nay Tramerist it will not auaille thee to compare against me. But thus much will I doe for my worship, and for thy loue, in so much as thou art within this Court, it were no worship for mee to slay thee, therefore vpon this condition, I will giue thee leaue to depart from this Court in safetie, so that thou wilt tell me who is thy father, and what is thy name, and if thou slew my brother Sir Marhaus

CHAP. XII

How Sir Tristram departed from King Anguis and la beale Is-
soud out of Ireland for to come into Cornewaile.

Sir said sir Tristram now shall I tell you all the truth, my fathers name is Meliodas King of Lioness, and my mother hight Elizabeth that was sister vnto King Marke of Cornewaile, and my mother died of me in the forest, and because thereof she commanded or she died that when I were christened that they should name mee Tristram, and because I would not be knowen in this countrie, I turned my name, and let call me Tramerist, and for the truage of Cornewaile I fought for mine uncles sake, and for the right of Cornewaile that yee had possessed many yeares. And wit ye well said sir Tristram vnto the King, I did the battaille for the loue of mine uncle King Marke and for the loue of the countrey of Cornewaile, and for to encrease mine honour, for that same day that I fought with sir Marhaus I was made knight, and neuer or then did I no battaille with no knight, and from me he went a liue, left his shield and his sword behind. So God me helpe said the King I may not say but ye did as a good knight should doe, and it was your part to doe for your quarell, and to encrease your worship as a knight should doe, how bee it I may not maintaine you in this countrey, with my worship vlesse I would displease my Barons and my wife and her kinne. Sir said sir Tristram I thank you of your goodnesse that I haue had with you here, and of the great goodnesse that my Lady your daughter hath shewed mee,
and

and therefore said Sir Tristram it may happen that yee shall remember by my life then by my death, for in the parties of England it may happen I may doe you seruice at some season that yee shall be glad that euer yee shewed mee the goodnesse of your Lordship. With more I promise you as I am true knight, that in all places I shall bee my Lady your daughters seruant, and knight in right and in wrong, and I shall neuer faile her to doe as much as a knight may doe. Also I beseech your good grace that I may take my leaue of my Lady your daughter, and Barons, and knights. I will said the King. When sir Tristram went vnto la beale Isoud and tooke his leaue of her. And then he told her al, what he was, and how he had changed his name because he would not be knowen, and how a Lady told him that he should neuer be whole till he came into this countrey where the poyson was made, where through I was nere my death had not your Ladyship bene. Oh gentle knight said la beale Isoud, full woe am I of your departing, for I saw neuer yet man that I fought so good will vnto, and therewith she wept right heartily. Madame said Sir Tristram, yee shall vnderstand that my name is sir Tristram de Lioness, begotten of King Meliodas and borne of his Quene. And I promise you faithfully that I shall be all the dayes of my life your knight. Sir gramercy said la beale Isoud, and there againe I promise you that I shall not be married of this seauen yeare but if it be by your assent, and to whom ye will I shall be married, him shall I haue, if hee will will haue mee, if yee will consent. And then sir Tristram gaue her a ring, and she gaue him an other, and therewith he departed from her, leauing her making full great moane and lamentation, and hee went straight vnto the Court among all the Barons, and there hee tooke his leaue of most and least, and openly among them all he said. Faire Lords now it is so that I must depart from hence, if there be any man here that I haue offended vnto, or that any man bee with mee grieved, let him complaine here before me or I depart from hence, and I shall amend it vnto my power. And if there be any that will proffer me wrong, or to say of mee wrong or shame behind my backe, say it now or neuer, and here is my body to make it good, body
C. 3
against

The Historie of Prince Arthur

against body. And all they stood still, there was not one that would say one word, yet were there some knights which were of the Quenes blood and of sir Marhaus blood, but they would not meddle with him.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Tristram, and King Marke hurt each other for the loue of a Knights wife

So Sir Tristram departed and toke the sea, and with good wind hee arrived vp at Tintagill in Cornewalle. And when King Marke was whole and in prosperitie, there came tidings that sir Tristram was arrived and whole of his wound, whereof King Marke was passing glad, and so were all the Barons. And when hee saw his time, hee rode vnto his father King Meliodas, and there hee had all the chere that the King and the Quene could make him. And then largely King Meliodas and his Quene parted of their lands and goods vnto sir Tristram. So then by the licence of King Meliodas his father he returned againe vnto the Court of King Marke, and there he liued in great joy long time, vntill at the last there befell a reuolte and an unkindnesse betwene King Marke and Sir Tristram for they loued both one Lady, and shee was an Charles wife that hight sir Segwarides. And this Lady loued sir Tristram passing wel, and hee loued her againe, for she was a passing faire Lady, and that espied well sir Tristram. When King Marke vnderstood that, he was anon stricken with felousie, for King Marke loued her passing wel. So it befell vpon a day that this Lady sent a dwarfe vnto sir Tristram, and bad him say that as hee loued her, that he would be with her the next night following, and charge him that he come not to mee, but if hee bee well armed. For her Lord was called a good knight, sir Tristram answered the dwarfe and said. Recommend mee vnto my Lady, and tell her that I will not faile, but will bee with her at the time she hath sent mee. And with this answer the dwarfe departed. When King Marke espied that the dwarf had bene with sir Tristram on message from sir Segwarides wife,

and his Knights of the round Table.

then sent King Marke for the dwarfe, and when he was come hee made the dwarfe by force to tell him all, why and wherefore he came on message to sir Tristram. So said King Marke goe wherethou wilt, and vpon paine of death that thou say no word that thou speakest with mee. So the dwarfe departed from the King. And that same night the time was set betwene sir Sagwarides wife and sir Tristram, King Marke armed him and made him ready, and tooke two knights of his counsaile with him, and so hee rode afoze for to abide by the way for to awaite sir Tristram. And as sir Tristram came riding on the way with his speare in his hand, sodainely King Marke came hurlling vpon him with his two knights, and there smote him with their speares and King Marke hurt sir Tristram vpon the breast right sore, and then Sir Tristram sentred his speare, and smote his vncke King Marke such a stroke that hee rushed to the earth and brused him soze that he lay still in a mounth, and it was long or he might weld himselfe, and then hee came to the one knight and oft to the other, and smote them to the earth that they lay still. And therewith sir Tristram came to the Lady soze wounded, and found her abiding him in posterne.

CHAP. XIII.

How sir Tristram lay with the Lady, and how her husband fought with sir Tristram.

And there she full faire welcomed him and either haused the other in armes sweetly. And so shee let put vp his horse the best wise, and then shee vnarmed him and so they lightly layed and went to bed with great ioy and pleasure. And so in the morning hee tooke no care of his greene wound that King Marke had giuen him. And so Sir Tristram be bled both the upper sheete, and the neither sheete, and pillowes and head. And within a while there came one before that told her that her Lord was nere hand within a bowes length. So shee made sir Tristram to rise, and forthwith hee armed him and tooke his horse and so departed. By than was come sir Segwarides her Lord, and when hee found her bed troubled and broken, hee went nere and beheld it by candle light.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

light, then saw he there as had layen a wounded knight. Ah false traytreffe said he then, why hast thou betrayed me, and there, with he drew out his sword and said. But if thou tell me who hath beene heere, here shalt thou die. Ah my Lord mercy said the Lady, and held vp her hands saying. Slay me not and I shall tell you who hath beene heere. Tell mee anon said sir Segwarides all the truth. Anon for dead he said, here was sir Tristram with me, and by the way as he came toward me hee was sore wounded. Ah thou false traytreffe said sir Sagwarides, where is he become. Sir said thee, he is armed and departed on horsebacke, and is not yet hence halfe a mile. We say well said sir Segwarides, then he armed him lightly and gat his horse and rode after sir Tristram that rode straight the way vnto Tintagill, and within a while he ouertooke sir Tristram, and then hee bad him turne false trayfour knight. When anon sir Tristram turned him against him. And therewith sir Segwarides smote sir Tristram with a spear that it all to brake in peeces. And then he drew out his sword and smote at sir Tristram full sore strookes. Sir knight said sir Tristram, I coulde saile you that you smite no more, how be it for the wrong that I haue done you, I will forbear you as long as I may. Nay said sir Segwarides that shall not bee for either thou shalt dye or I. So sir Tristram drew out his sword and spurred his horse vnto him right fiercely, and through the wast of the body he smote sir Segwarides that hee fell to the earth in a colone. And so sir Tristram departed and left him there, and so he rode vnto Tintagill and tooke his lodging secretly, for he would not bee knowne that he was hurt. Also sir Segwarides men rode after their master, whom they found lying in the field sore wounded, and when they saw him lie so, they tooke him vp and brought him home vpon his shield, and there he lay long or he was hole, but at the last he recovered. King Marke also would not bee knowne of, that sir Tristram and he had met that knight. And as for sir Tristram hee wist not that it had beene King Marke that had met with him. And so the Kings assistance came to sir Tristram to comfort him as hee lay sicke in his bed.

But

and his Knights of the round Table

As long as King Marke liued he neuer after loued sir Tristram, though there was much faire spech betwene them yet loue was there none, and thus it pass on many weekes and moneths, and all was forgiven and forgotten. For sir Segwarides wist no more haue to doe with sir Tristram because of his noble maner, and also because that hee was nephew vnto King Marke, therefore hee let it slip ouer. For hee that hath a priue purpose loth to haue a shame outward.

CHAP. XV.

Now sir Bleoberis demanded the fairest Lady in King Markes Court, whom he tooke away, and how he was foughten with

When it befell vpon a day that the good knight sir Bleoberis de ganis, brother vnto sir Blamor de ganis, and nigh vnto the good knight sir Launcelot du lake. And this sir Bleoberis came vnto King Markes Court, and there he asked King Marke a boone to giue him what gift hee would aske in his Court. And when the King heard him say so, he marvelled at his asking, but because he was a knight of the round table and great renoune, King Marke graunted him his whole asking. When said sir Bleoberis to King Marke, I will haue the fairest Lady in your Court, the which me liketh to choose. I may say nay said King Marke, now choose at your aduenture. And then sir Bleoberis chose sir Segwarides wife, and tooke her by the hand, and so went his way with her, and anon he set vpon horsebacke behind his squire, and so he tooke his horse and rode forth on his way. When sir Segwarides heard tell that his Lady was gone with a knight of King Archurs Court, then anon hee armed him and rode after that knight for to recover his wife. So when sir Bleoberis was gone with this Lady, King Marke and all the Court were wroth that shee was thus gone. When were there certaine Ladies that knew that there was great loue betwene sir Tristram and her, and also the Lady loued sir Tristram aboue all other knights. And then there was a damosell that rebuked sir Tristram in the most cruel manner, and called him coward knight, that he would

D

for

The History of Prince Arthur

for shame of his his knighthood for a Lady so shamefully taken away from his vnder Court. But she meant that either of them had loved other with entire heart long times. But sir Tristram, answered her in this wise, faire Lady it is not my part to haue to doe in such matters, while her Lord and husband is here present. If it had bene so that her Lord had not bene here in this Court, then for the worship of this Court peradventure I would haue bene her champion. And if so be that Sir Segwarides speede not well, then it may happen that I wil speake with that knight or he passe out of this countrey. So within a while came one of Sir Segwarides squires, and told in the Court that Sir Segwarides was soze beaten and wounded, and in point of death, for as hee would haue rescued his Lady, Sir Bleoberis ouerthrew him, and hath soze wounded him. When was King Marke and all the Court right beguile thereof. And when sir Tristram heard of this, he was ashamed, and soze grieved, and then was he sone armed and on horsebacke, and Gouvernals his servant bare his shield and his speare. And so as sir Tristram rode he met with Sir Andret his cousin, the which by the commandement of King Marke was sent to bring (and it lay in his powder) two knights of King Arthurs Court that rode through the countrey to seeke their adventures. When sir Tristram saw Sir Andret he asked him what tidings. For god me helpe said Sir Andret, it was neuer worse with me then now, and for here by the commandement of King Marke I was sent to fetch two knights of King Arthurs Court, and the one beate mee and wounded mee, and set naught by my message. Faire cousin said sir Tristram, ride on your way, and if I meete them it may happen I shall reuenge you. So sir Andret rode into Cornewalle, and sir Tristram rode after the two knights, of whom the one hight Sagramore le desirous, and that other hight sir Dodinas le sauage.

CHAP. XVI.

How sir Tristram fought with two Knights of the round table.

Then within a while sir Tristram saw before him the two likely knights. Sir, said Gouvernals unto his master, I would

and his Knights of the round Table.

that you shoulde you not to haue to doe with them, for they be the best knights of King Arthurs court. As for that said sir Tristram, haue ye no doubt, but I will haue to doe with them, for to encrease my worship for it is many a day sith I did any deed of armes. Doe as ye list said Gouvernals. And anon there sir Tristram asked them from whence they came, and whether they would, and what they did in those marches. Sir Sagramore looked vpon sir Tristram and had scoone of his words, and said to him againe. Faire knight ye be knight of Cornewalle, here by aske ye said sir Tristram. For it is but little time since said sir Sagramore that ye Cornish knights be of great men of armes. For within these two houres there met one of your Cornish knights, and great words he spake, and anon with little might he was laide on the earth, and as I trou said sir Sagramore, ye shall haue the same pansell that he had. Faire lords said sir Tristram, it may happen I may better withstand than he did, and whether ye will or not I will haue to doe with you because he was my cousin that ye beate, and therfore here doe your best, but wit ye well but if ye quite you the better here vpon this ground one knight of Cornewalle shall beate you both. When sir Dodinas le sauage heard him say so, hee gat a speare in his hand and said. Sir knight kepe well thy selfe. And then they departed and came together as it had bene thunder and sir Dodinas speere brast under, but sir Tristram smote him with a moze might, that hee smote him cleane ouer his horse crouper, that nigh he had broken his necke. When sir Sagramore saw his felow haue such a fall, then he meruailed what hee might be, and dressed his speere with all his might, and sir Tristram against him, and they came together as thunder, and there sir Tristram smote sir Sagramore a great buffet that hee bare his horse and him to the earth, and in the falling he brake his thigh. When this was done sir Tristram asked them, faire knights will ye any more. Are there no bigger knights in King Arthurs court, it is to you great shame for to say dishonour of vs knights of Cornewalle, for it may happen a Cornish knight to match you both. It is so, said sir Sagramore, and that haue we well

prayed, but I require you said Sir Sagramore tell us your right name by the faith that ye owe vnto the high order of knight-hood. Percharge me with a great thing said Sir Tristram, and thence ye liste to witte, ye shall vnderstand that my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones King Meliodas sonne, and nephew vnto King Marke. Then were the two knights gladd that they had met with Sir Tristram, and so they prayed him to abide in their fellowship. Day said Sir Tristram, I must haue to doe with one of your fellows, his name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. God speede you well said Sir Sagramore and Sir Dodinas, So Sir Tristram departed and rode on his way, and then was he ware before him in a valey where Sir Bleoberis rode with Sir Segwarides wife that rode behind his squire vpon a palfrey.

CHAP. XVII.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Bleoberis for a lady, and how the lady was put to choice vnto whom she would goe.

Then Sir Tristram rode more than a pace till hee had overtaken Sir Bleoberis. When spake Sir Tristram, abide Sir knight of King Arthurs court, bzing againe that Lady or deliver her to me. I will not said Sir Bleoberis, for I deead no Cornish knight so soze, that me list to deliver her. Why said Sir Tristram may not a Cornish knight doe as well as an other knight, this day within these thre miles two knights of your court met with me, and as we departed they found a Cornish knight good enough for them both. What were their names said Sir Bleoberis. The one tolde mee said Sir Tristram that he hight Sir Sagramore le desirous, and that other told mee hee hight Sir Dodinas le sauage. Ah said Sir Bleoberis, haue ye met with them, so God me helpe they were two good knights, and good men of worth, and if ye haue beaten them both, ye must needs be a good knight, but for all that it bee so that ye haue beaten them both, yet shall ye not feare me, but ye shall beate me or that ye haue this Lady. Defend you then said Sir Tristram. So they departed and came together like thunder, and either bare other down horse and all to the earth. When they

they moyded their horses and lashed together full egerly and mightily with their swozds, now tracing and traucersing on the right hand and on the left hand more than two houres. And sometime they rashed together with such a might that they lay both groueling on the ground. When Sir Bleoberis start backe and said thus vnto Sir Tristram. How gentile knight, a while hold your hand, and let vs two speake together. Say on said Sir Tristram, and I shall answer you againe. Sir said Sir Bleoberis, I would wit of whence ye be, and of whom ye be come, and what is your name. So god me help said Sir Tristram I dare not to tell you my name, wit ye well I am King Meliodas sonne, and my mother is King Markes sister, and my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones, and King Marke is mine uncle. Truly said Sir Bleoberis I am right glad of you for ye be that slew Sir Marhaus the good knight hand for hand in Ireland, for the truage of Cornewaile, also ye ouercame Sir Palomides the good knight at a turnement in Ireland, and here ye beate Sir Gawaine and his nine felowes. How so god me helpe said Sir Tristram wit ye well that I am the same knight, and now that I haue told you my name, tell me yours. With a good will, wit ye well my name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, and my brother hight Sir Blamore de Ganis, that is called a good knight, and wee be sisters children vnto my Lord Sir Launcelot du lake, which is called one of the best knights of the world. What is truth said Sir Tristram, Sir Launcelot is called peerlesse of curtesie, and of knight-hood, and for his sake I will not with my good will fight no more with you, for the great loue that I haue vnto Sir Launcelot du lake. In good faith Sir, said Bleoberis, as for me I will be loth to fight with you. But sith ye follow me here to haue this Lady, I shall proffer you kindnesse curtesie and gentlenesse here vpon this ground. This lady shall be betwixt vs, and whoso whom she will goe, let him haue her in peace. Well said Sir Tristram, for as I deeme she will leaue you and come to me. Ye shall proue it anon said Sir Bleoberis.

How the lady forsooke Sir Tristram and abode with Sir Bleoberis, and how she desired to goe vnto her husband,

So when she was set betwene them both, she said these wordes vnto Sir Tristram. *Wilt ye well Sir Tristram, that but late you were the man in the world, that I most loued and trusted, and I wend thou haddest loued me againe aboue all other ladies but when thou sawest this knight lead mee away, thou madest no semblance to rescue me, but suffered my Lord Sir Segwarides ride after me, but vntill that time I wend thou haddest loued me, and therefore now I will leaue thee and neuer loue thee more. And therewith she went vnto Sir Bleoberis. When Sir Tristram saw her doe so, hee was wonderous wroth with that Lady, and was ashamed to come to the court. Sir Tristram said to Sir Bleoberis, ye are in the default, for I heare by this ladies wordes that she before this day trusted you aboue all earthly knights and as she saith ye haue deceived her, therefore wilt ye well there may no man hould that will away, and rather than ye should be heartily displeased with me, I would ye had her and she would abide with you. May said the Lady so god me helpe I will neuer goe with him, for hee that I loued most I wende he had loued mee againe. And therefore Sir Tristram, said she ride as thou came, for though thou haddest ouer come this knight as ye were likely, yet with thee neuer would I haue gone. And I shall pray this knight to saue of his knighthood that or hee passe this countrey that he will leade me to the abbey where my lord Sir Segwarides lyeth. So god me helpe said Sir Bleoberis, I let you to wit good knight Sir Tristram because King Marke gaue me the choise of a gift in this court, and so this lady liked me best, notwithstanding she is wedded and hath a lord, and I haue fulfilled my quest, she shall bee sent to her husband againe, and in especiall most for your sake Sir Tristram and if she would goe with you I would ye had her. I thanke you said Sir Tristram, but for her sake I shall be ware what maner lady I shall loue*

For had her lord Sir Segwarides bene away from the court I should haue bene the first that should haue solowed her, but she hath refused me, and as I am true knight I shall not be passing well that I shall loue or trust. And so they took their leaue and departed one from an other, and Sir Tristram rode vnto Lintagill, and Sir Bleoberis rode vnto the abbey where Sir Segwarides lay soe wounded, and there he visited his Lady and departed as a noble knight. And when Sir Segwarides saw his Lady, hee was greatly comforted. And than she told him that Sir Tristram had done a great hurtle with Sir Bleoberis, and caused him to bring her againe. And these wordes pleased Sir Segwarides right well that Sir Tristram would doe so much, and so that Lady told of all the hurtle vnto Sir Marke betwene Sir Tristram and Sir Bleoberis.

How King Marke sent for Sir Tristram for la beale Isoud towarde Ireland, and how by fortune he arriued in England.

Then when this was done king Marke cast alwayes in his hart how he might destroy Sir Tristram. And than he imagined in him selfe to send Sir Tristram into Ireland. for la beale Isoud, for Sir Tristram had so praised her beautie, and her goodnes, that king Marke said he would wed her where vpon hee should Sir Tristram to take his way into Ireland for him on a voyage. And all this was done to the entent that Sir Tristram should be slaine. Notwithstanding Sir Tristram would not take the message for no daunger nor perill that might fall to the pleasure of his vnckle, but to goe he made him ready in the most goodliest wise that might be deuised, for Sir Tristram took with him the most goodliest knights that he might find in the court, and they were arraied with the guise that was used in the goodliest maner. So Sir Tristram departed and rode to the sea with all his fellowship. And anon as he was in the Irish sea, a tempest tooke him and his fellowship and drove them backe into the coast of England, and there they arriued vnto Camelot and full faine they were to take the land. And when

The Historie of Prince Arthur

When they were landed Sir Tristram set up his pavilion upon the land of Camelot, and there he let hang his shield upon the pavilion, and that day came two knights of King Arthurs court, the one was Sir Ector de Maris and that other was Sir Morganore and they touched the shield and bad him come out of the pavilion to iust, and he would iust. He shall be answered anon said Sir Tristram and ye will tary a little while. So he made him ready, and first he smote downe Sir Ector de Maris, and after he smote downe Sir Gringamor all with one speare, and byused them soze. And when they lay upon the earth they asked Sir Tristram, what he was, and of what countrey he was knight. Faire Lords, said Sir Tristram, wit ye well that I am of Coznewaile. Alas said Sir Ector, now am I ashamed that ever any coznysh knight should overcome me, and then for great despite sir Ector put off his armour from him, and went on foote, and would not ride.

CHAP. XX.

How King *Anguish* of Ireland was summoned to come unto King *Arthurs* court for treason.

Then it befell that Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, and Sir Blamor de Ganis his brother had summoned king *Anguish* of Ireland to come unto king *Arthurs* Court upon paine of forfeiture of king *Arthurs* good grace. And if the king of Ireland came not at the day assigned and set, he should lose all his lands. So it hapned that at the day assigned king *Arthur* neither Sir *Launcelot* might not be there for to give iudgement, for king *Arthur* was with Sir *Launcelot* at the castle Joyous garde. And so king *Arthur* assigned king *Carados*, and the king of *Scotland* to be there that day as Judges. So when the kings were at Camelot, king *Anguish* of Ireland was come to know his accusers. Then was there Sir *Blamor* de Ganis and accused the king of Ireland of treason, that he had slaine a cousin of his in his court of Ireland by treason. The king was soze abashed of his accusation, for why he was come at the summoning of king *Arthur*, and he came at Camelot

and his Knights of the round Table.

he wist not wherfoze he was sent after. And when the king had heard Sir *Blamor* say his will, he understood full well, there was none other remedy but for to answer him knightly. For the custome was such in those dayes, that if any man were accused of any murther or treason he should fight body for body or else to find an other knight for him. And all manner of murther was in those dayes called treason. And when king *Anguish* understood his accusing, he was passing heavy for he knew well that Sir *Blamor* de Ganis was a noble knight, and was also come of noble knights. When was the king of Ireland simply purveyed of his answer, therefore the iudges gave him respite by the third day to give his answer. So the king departed and went unto his lodging. The meane while there came a Lady going by Sir *Tristrams* pavilion making great mone. What ayleth you said Sir *Tristram* that ye make such mone. Ah faire knight said the Lady I am shamed unlesse that some good knight helpe me, for a great lady of worship sent by me a faire child and a rich and unto Sir *Launcelot* duke, and hereby there met with me a knight and threwe me downe from my palfrey, and tooke away the child from me. Well Lady said Sir *Tristram*, and for my lord Sir *Launcelots* sake I shall get you that child againe or else I shall be beaten full. And therewith Sir *Tristram* tooke his horse and asked the lady which a way the knight rode. And then she told him. And he rode after them and within a while he over-tooke the knight. And then sir *Tristram* bad him turne and give againe the child.

CHAP. XXI.

How Sir *Tristram* rescued a child from a Knight, and how *Governale* told him of king *Anguish*.

The knight turned his horse and made him ready to fight. And then Sir *Tristram* smote him with his sword such a buffet that he tumbled downe to the ground. And then he yeelded him unto sir *Tristram*. Come on thy way said sir *Tristram*, and bring the child to the lady againe. So he tooke his horse and rode with Sir *Tristram*, and then by the way Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Tristram asked him his name. And he said, my name is Breus saunce pite. So when he had deliuered that child to the lady hee said, sir as in this the child is well remedied. And then Sir Tristram let him goe againe, which soze repented him afterward, for he was a great enemy vnto many good knights of king Arthurs court. When when Sir Tristram was in his rich pavilion Gouvernale his man came and told him how king Anguish of Ireland was come there, and how he was put in great distresse, and there Gouvernall told to Sir Tristram how king Anguish of Ireland was summoned and accused of murder, so God mee helpe said Sir Tristram these be the best tidings that euer came to me this seuen yeare, for now shall the king of Ireland haue neede of my helpe, for I dare say there is no knight in this countrey that is not of king Arthurs court dare doe no battaile with Sir Blamor de ganis, and for to win the loue of the king of Ireland I shall take the battaile vpon me, and therefore Gouvernale I charge thee to bring mee to the king. And so gouernale went vnto king Anguish of Ireland and saluted him faire. The king welcomed him and asked him what he would. Sir said Gouvernale heere is a knight neere hand which desireth to speake with you, and he bad me say that he would doe you seruice. What knight is he said the king. Sir said he it is Sir Tristram de Lioness, that for the good grace that yee shewed vnto him in your land he will reward you in this countrey. Come on good felow said the king with me, and shew me Sir Tristram.

So the king tooke a little hackney and a litle company with him vntill hee came vnto Sir Tristrams pavilion. And when Sir Tristram saw king Anguish, hee ran vnto him and would haue holden his stiope. But anon the king lept lightly from his horse and either holded other in their armes. My gracious lord said Sir Tristram grauncy of your great goodnesse that yee shewed to me in your marches and lands. And at that time I promised you to do you seruice and euer it lay in my power. Ah woorthipfull knight said the king vnto Sir Tristram, now haue I great need of you, for neuer had I so great need of no knights helpe. Now sa my good lord said Sir Tristram I shall tell

and his Knights of the round Table.

tel you said king Anguish. I am summoned and appealed from my countrey for the death of a knight that was kinne vnto the good knight Sir Launcelot, wherfore Sir Blamor de ganis brother to Sir Bleoberis hath appealed me to fight with him, or else to find a knight in my steele, and I wote well said the king that all these that are come of king Bans blood, and Sir Launcelot and these other are passing good knights, and are hard to winne in fight or battaile as any that I know now liuing. Sir said sir Tristram for the great goodnesse that yee shewed to me in Ireland, and for my lady your daughters sake I beleafe I shal, I will take the battaile in hand for you, so that vpon this condition yee shall graunt mee two things, that one is this, that yee shall be swozne vnto me that yee are in the right, that yee were neuer consenting to the knights death. Sir then said Sir Tristram, when I haue done this battaile if god giue me grace that I speede yee shall giue me a reward, what thing reasonable that I will aske of you. So god me helpe said the king, yee shall haue what so euer yee will aske. What is well said, said Sir Tristram.

CHAP. XXII.

How Sir Tristram fought for king Anguish and overcame his aduersary and how his aduersary would neuer yeld him.

NOW make answere that your champion were ready, for I shall rather die in your quarrell then to be recreant. I haue no doubt of you said the king, that and yee should haue to doe with Sir Launcelot du lake. Sir said sir Tristram as for Sir Launcelot hee is called the noblest knight of the world, and wit yee well that the knights of his blood are noble men and dread shame, and as for Sir Bleoberis brother vnto Sir Blamor I haue done battaile with him, therefore vpon my head it is no shame to call him a good knight. It is noised said the king that Sir Blamor is the hardier knight. Sir as for that let him be, he shall neuer be refused if he were the best knight that now beareth shield or speare. So king Anguish departed and went vnto king Carados and other kings that were that time

as iudges, and told them that he had found his champion ready. And then by the commandment of the kings Sir Blamor de Ganis and sir Tristram de lyones were sent for, to heare their charge. And so when they were come before the iudges, there were many kings and many knights which beheld sir Tristram, and much speech had they of him because that hee had slaine the good knight sir Marhaus, and also because he had iusted with the noble knight sir Palonides. So when they had taken their charge then they with drew them for to make them ready for to doe the battaile. Then said sir Bleoberis vnto his brother sir Blamor, faire brother now remember of what kinne that we are come of, and what maner of man that sir Launcelot du lake is, neither further nor neerer but brothers children, and there was neuer none of our kintred that euer was shamed in any battaile, and rather suffer death, brother, then for to be shamed. Brother said sir Blamor, haue yee no doubt of mee, for I shall neuer shame none of my blood, howbeit I am sure that yonder knight is called a passing good knight, as of his time one of the best of the world. Yet shall I neuer yeeld me nor say the loth word, but well may it happen him for to smite me downe with his great might of chivalry, but rather shall he slei me then I shall yeeld me vnto him as recreant. God speed you well said sir Bleoberis, for yee shall find him the mightiest knight that euer yee had to doe withall, and that know I right well, for I haue had to doe with him.

God be my speede said sir Blamor, and therewith he took his horse at the one end of the listes, and sir Tristram, at the other end, and so they feutred their speares and came together as it had beene thunder, and so there sir Tristram through his great might smote downe sir Blamor & his horse to the earth. And anon sir Blamor auoided his horse and drew out his sword and put his shield afore him and bad sir Tristram alight, for though an horse hath failed me, I trust to god the earth will not faile me. And then sir Tristram alighted and dressed him to battaile, and there they lashed together strongly as raising and raising, foyning and dashing many sad strokes, that the kings and knights had great wonder that they might stand, for euer they

they fought like two wild men, so that ther were neuer knights that fought more fiercely then they did, for sir Blamor was so hasty that he would haue no rest that all men wondred that they had breath to stand on their feete, all the place was bloody that they fought in. And at the last sir Tristram smote sir Blamor such a buffet vpon the helme that he fell downe vpon his nose and sir Tristram stood and beheld him.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Blamor desired sir Tristram to slei him, and how Sir Tristram spared him, and how they tooke appointment.

Then when sir Blamor might speake, he said thus. Sir Tristram de lyones I require thee as thou art a noble knight, and the best knight that euer I found, that thou wilt slei me out of hand, for I would not liue to be made lord of all the world, for I had leauer die with worship then liue with shame, and needs sir Tristram thou must slei me, or else thou shalt neuer wine the fiede, for I will neuer say the loth word, neither so if thou dare slei me, slei me I require thee, and when sir Tristram heard him say so knightly, he wist not what to doe with him, he remembred him of both parties of what blood he was come, and for sir Launcelots sake he would not slei him, and on that other parties in no wise he might not chuse but he must make him to say the loth word, or else to slei him. And then sir Tristram start abacke and went to the kings which were iudges, and there he knoled downe before them, and besought them for their worship, and for king Arthur and sir Launcelots sake that they would take this matter in their hands, for faire lords said sir Tristram, it were shame and pittie that this noble knight that yonder lieth should be slaine, for yee may well heare that shamed he will not be, and I pray to god that he neuer be slaine nor shamed for me. And as for the king for whom I doe this battaile, I shall require him as I am his true champion and true knight in this fiede that he will haue mercy vpon this good knight. So god me helpe said king Anguish to sir Tristram, I will be ruled

The Historie of Prince Arthur

led for your sake as ye will haue me. For I know you for my true knight, and therefore I will heartily pray the kings that be here as iudges for to take it into their hands. And then the kings which were iudges called Sir Bleoberis vnto them, and demaunded him his aduise. My lord said Sir Bleoberis, though that my brother be beaten and hath the worse throughe night of armes, I dare well say though Sir Tristram hath beaten his body he hath not beaten his heart, I thanke god he is not shamed this day. And rather then he should be shamed, I require you said Sir Bleoberis, let Sir Tristram sleigh him out of hand. It shall not be so said the kings for his aduerse partie both the king and the champion hath pittie of Sir Blamors knightthode. My lords said Sir Bleoberis, I will right well as ye will. When the kings called to them the king of Ireland and found him good and treatable. And then by al their aduises Sir Tristram and Sir Bleoberis took vnto Sir Blamor. And the two brethren were accorded with king Anguish. And kissed each other and were made friends for euer. And then Sir Blamor and Sir Tristram kissed each other and there the two brethren made their othes that they would neuer non of them both fight with Sir Tristram. And Sir Tristram made the same oathe. And for that gentle battaile all the bloode of Sir Lancelot loued Sir Tristram for euer more. When king Anguish and Sir Tristram took their leaue and sailed into Ireland with great ioy and noblenesse. So when they were in Ireland the king let make it to be knowne throughtout all the land how and in what manner Sir Tristram had done for him. And then the Quene and all the estates that were there made as much of him as euer they might make. But the ioy that la beale Isonde made of Sir Tristram that might no tongue tell, for of men liuing she loued him most.

CHAP. XXIIII.

How Sir Tristram damanded la beale Isond for King Marke, and how Sir Tristram and la beale Isond dranke the loue-drinke.

Then on a day king Anguish asked Sir Tristram why he asked not his bone. For what some euer he had promised him,

and his Knights of the round Table.

he should haue it without any faile. Sir said Sir Tristram, now is it time, this is all that I require of you, that ye will giue me la beale Isond your daughter, not for my self, but for my vncle king Marke of Cornewaille that shall haue her vnto his wife. For so haue I promised him. Alas said the king, I had rather then all the land that I haue, that ye would wed her your self. Sir said Sir Tristram, if I had so, then were I shamed for euer in this world, and should be false of my promise, and therefore said Sir Tristram, I pray you hold your promise that ye haue promised me, for this is my desire that ye will let me haue la beale Isond for to goe with me into Cornewaille for to be wedded vnto mine vncle king Marke. As for that said king Anguish ye shall haue her with you and doe with her what comeneth it shall please you, that is to say if that ye list to wed her your selfe that were me leauest, and if ye will giue her vnto king Marke your vncle, that may be in your choysse.

So to make a short conclusion la beale Isond was made ready for to goe with Sir Tristram, and dame Bradwaine went with her for her chiefe gentlewoman with many other. And then the Quene la beale Isondes mother gaue vnto dame Bradwaine her daughters gentlewoman and vnto Gouvernalle a drinke, and charged them that what day king Marke should wed, that same day they should giue him that drinke, so that king Marke should drinke vnto la beale Isond, and then I undertake said the Quene either shall loue other all the dayes of their life. So this drinke was giuen to Gouvernalle and to dame Bradwaine, and then anon Sir Tristram and la beale Isond took the sea. And when they were in their cabin, it hapned so that they were there a while, and saue a little flackel of gold stand by them, and it seemed by the colour and tast that it was noble wine. So Sir Tristram took the flackel in his hand and said Madame Isond here is the best drinke that euer ye dranke, which dame Bradwaine your maide and Gouvernalle my seruant haue kept for themselves. And then they laught and made good cheere, and either dranke to other freely, and they thought neuer drinke that euer they dranke to other was so sweete nor so good. But by that their drinke was in their bodies, they loued ech other

The Historie of Prince Arthur

so well, that their loue neuer departed for weale nor woe. And thus hapened first the loue betweene sir Tristram and la beale Isond, the which loue neuer departed all the daies of their life. And so longe they sailed til by fortune they came nigh a castle that hight Pluere, and there they arrived for to rest them, weninge to them to haue had good harborow. But anon as sir Tristram was within the Castle they were taken prisoners for the custome of the castle was such, that who that rode by that castle and brought any lady he must needs fight with the Lord of that castle which hight Sir Brewnor.

And if so were that the same Sir Brewnor wanne the field, then the strong knight and the lady to be put to death, what so euer they were. And if it were so that the strange knight wanne the field of sir Brewnor then should he and his Lady die. This custome had bene used many winters, for it was called the castle Pluere that is to say the weeping castle.

CHAP: XXV.

How Sir Tristram and la beale Isond were in prison, and how Sir Tristram fought for the beauty of la beale Isond and smote off another ladies head.

THUS as Sir Tristram and la beale Isond were in prison, it hapned that a knight and a lady came to them where they were, to cherish them. I haue great meruaile saide Sir Tristram vnto the knight and the lady, what is the cause that the Lord of this castle holdeth vs here in prison, it was neuer the custome of no place of worship that euer I came in, that when a knight and a lady asked harbor, and they to receiue them. And then after to destroy them that be their guests, it is a full euill custome. Sir said the castle, that when any knight cometh here, hee must needs fight with our lord of this castle, and he that is the weakest must lose his head. And when that is done, if his lady that he bringeth with him be fouler then our lordes wife, she must lose her head, and if she be fairer proued then our ladies, then shall the lady of the castle lose her head. Now so God me helpe said Sir Tristram, this is a right foule and a

and his Knights of the round Table

shamefull custome. But one aduantage haue I then said Sir Tristram, I haue a lady is faire enough, fairer said I neuer in all my life dayes, and I doubt not for lacke of beautie she shall lose her head, and rather then I should lose my head I will fight for it in a faire field. Wherefore Sir knight I pray you to tell your Lord that I will be ready on the morrow with my Lady my selfe to battaile, if it be so that I may haue my life, and mine armour. Sir said the knight I undertake that your desire shall be sped right well. And then he said, take your Lady, and looke that ye be by betimes to make you ready and your lady, for ye shall lacke no manner of thing that to you longeth. And therewith he departed, and on the morrow before that same knight came vnto sir Tristram and put him and his lady out of prison. And brought him horse and armour. Which was his owne and bad him make him ready to the field, for all the estates and commons of that lordship were there all ready to behold that battaile and iudgment. Then came Sir Brewnor the Lord of that Castle, holding his lady by the hand all muffled, and asked sir Tristram where his lady was. For the lady be fairer then mine with thy sword smite off my lates head, and if my Lady bee fairer then thine, with my sword I must strike off her head. And if that I winne thee, yet shall my Lady be mine and thou shalt lose thy head. Sir knight said Sir Tristram this is a foule and an horrible custome, and rather then my lady should lose her head, yethad I rather to lose my owne head. Nay said Sir Brewnor, the ladies shall be beheld together, and the one shall haue her iudgment. I will not so said sir Tristram, for here is none that will give rightfull iudgment.

But I doubt not said Sir Tristram my Lady is fairer then thine, and that will I proue and make good with my owne hands. And who soeuer he be that will say the contrary, I will proue it vpon his head. And therewith sir Tristram the wed la beale Isond and turned her thise about with his naked sword drawn in his hand. And when Sir Brewnor saw that, he turned his Lady about in the same wise. But when Sir Brewnor beheld la beale Isond, him thought he neuer saw a

The Historie of Prince Arthur

And the he deade that his ladies head should be smitten off. And so all the people that were there present gaue iudgement that la beale Isond was the fairer lady and the better made lady. Now now said Sir Tristram me seemeth it were great pittie that my lady should lese her head, but because that thou and thy lady of long time haue used this wicked custome, and by you both there haue many good knights and ladies bene destroyed, and so that cause it were no great losse to destroy you both. So God me helpe said sir Brewnor so to say the truth, thy lady is fairer then mine, and that me soze repenteth, and so I heare all the people preuily say, for of all women I saw neuer none so faire, and therefore if thou wilt ley my lady, I doubt not but I shall ley thee and haue thy lady. Thou shalt winne her said sir Tristram, as deare as euer any knight wan lady, and because of thine owne iudgement as thou wouldest haue done vnto my lady if she had bene fouler, and because of thine euill custome giue me thy lady, said sir Tristram. And therewithal sir Tristram went vnto him and toke his lady from him, and with an auke stroke he smote off her head. Well knight said sir Brewnor, now hast thou done me a despite.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Sir Tristram fought with Sir Brewnor, and at the last smote off his head.

NOW take thy horse sith I haue lost my Lady, for I will winne thy Lady and I may. And they toke their horse and came together as fast as their horses might runne, and sir Sir Tristram smote Sir Brewnor from his horse and lightly he arose vp, and as Sir Tristram came againe by him, he thrust his horse throughout both the shoulders that his horse reeled here and there and fell dead to the earth. And euer sir Brewnor ran after to haue slaine sir Tristram, but sir Tristram was light and nimble and voided his horse lightly, and so sir Tristram could dresse his shield and draw out his sword the other gaue him three or foure sad strokes, And then they rushed together like two wild boyes tracing and trauersing full mightily and wisely

and his Knights of the round Table.

As two noble knights, for this sir Brewnor was a good knight and had bene so then the death of many good knights that it was pittie that he had so long endured. And thus they fought hurtling here and there nigh two houres and other wounded other full soze. When at the last sir Brewnor rushed vpon sir Tristram, and toke him in his armes for he trusted much in his strength and as then sir Tristram was called the strongest and the biggest knight of the world, for he was bigger then sir Launcelot, but sir Launcelot was better armed. So anon sir Tristram thrust sir Brewnor downe groining and then he unlaced his helme and strooke off his head. And then all they that longed to the castle came to him and did him homage and fealtie, praying him that he would abide there a little while to forbid that foule custome. Sir Tristram consented therto, the meane while one of the knights of the castle rode vnto sir Galahaut the haut prince that was sir Brewnors sonne which was a noble knight and told him what aduventure his father had and his mother.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Galahaut fought with Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram yeilded him, and promised to fellowship with Sir Launcelot.

Then came sir Galahaut and the king with the hundred knights with him and thus sir Galahaut profered to fight with sir Tristram hand for hand. And so they went to horseback with great courage. Sir Galahaut and sir Tristram met together so mightely that either bare other downe horse and all to the ground, and then they auoided their horses lightly as noble knights and dressed their shieldes and drew their swords that with great ire and rancour they lashed together many sad strokes and one while striking and an other while soyninge, tracing and trauersing like noble knights, and thus they fought long, neere halfe a day and either were soze wounded. At the last sir Tristram wared light and big and doubled his strokes and drew sir Galahaut a backe on the one side and on the o-

The Historie of Prince A R T U R

ther so that he was like to haue bene slaine. With that came the King with the hundred knights, and al that fellowship fell fiercely vpon Sir Tristram. When Sir Tristram saw so many comming vpon him, then he wist well that he might not endure, and as a wise knight of warre he said vnto Sir Galahault le haut Prince. Sir ye shew vnto me no knighthood, for to suffer all your men to haue to doe with me all at once, and as me seemeth ye be a noble knight of your hands, it is a very great shame to you. So God me helpe, said Sir Galahault vnto Sir Tristram, none other way there is but thou must yeld thee vnto me, or else thou shalt die. I will rather yeld me vnto you then die said Sir Tristram. For that is more for the might of your men then for the might of your owne hands. And therewith Sir Tristram took his owne sword by the point, and put the pommel into the hand of Sir Galahault. And therewith came the King with the hundred knights, and there he began hard to assaile Sir Tristram. Let he said Sir Galahault be ye not so hardy to touch him for I haue giuen this knight his life.

That is vnto you a great shame said the King with the hundred knights, hath he not slaine your father and your mother. As for that said Sir Galahault, I may not greatly blame him for my father had him a prisoner, and enforced him to doe battaile with him, and my father had such a custome, that was a shamefull custome, that what knight came there to aske harbor, his lady must needs die, but if she were fairer then my mother, and if my father overcame that knight he must needs die, this was a shamefull custome and vsage; a knight for asking of his harbor to haue such harbourage, and for this custome I would neuer draw about him. So God me helpe said the King with the hundred knights, this was a shamefull custome. Truly said Sir Galahault so seemed me and me seemed it had bene great pittie, for I dare say he is the noblest man that beareth life but if it were the good knight Sir Launcelot du lake. Now faire knight said Sir Galahault I require thee tell me thy name and of whence thou art, and whether thou wilt. Sir said he my name is Tristram de Lioness, and from King Marke of Cornewaille,

and his Knights of the round Table.

Cornewaille, I was sent on message to King Anguish of Ireland for to fetch his daughter to be his wife, and here she is ready to goe with me into Cornewaille, and her name is la beale Isonds. When said Sir Galahault vnto Sir Tristram, will ye be found in these marches, and so ye will promise me to goe vnto Sir Launcelot du lake and accompany with him, ye shall goe where ye will, and your faire lady with you. And I shall promise you by the faith of my body neuer in al my dayes shall such customes be more vsed in this Castle as there hath bene vsed. Sir said Sir Tristram, now I let you wit so god me helpe I wend ye had bene Sir Launcelot du lake when I saw you first, and therefore I dread you the more and sir I promise you, said Sir Tristram as soone as I may I will see Sir Launcelot and en fellowship me with him, for of all the knights of the world I desire much of his fellowship.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Launcelot du lake met with King Caradoc bearing away Sir Gawaine and of the rescue of Sir Gawaine.

Aspothen Sir Tristram toke his leaue when he saw his time, and toke the sea. And in the meane while came word vnto Sir Launcelot, and vnto Sir Tristram, that Sir Caradoc the mighty King which was made like a giانت, had fought with Sir Gawaine and gaue him such strokes that he swooned in his saddle, and after that he toke him by the collar and pulled him out of his saddle, and bound him fast to the saddle bow, and so rode his way with him towards his castle. And as he rode, by fortune Sir Launcelot met with King Caradoc, and anon he knew Sir Gawaine that lay bound behind him. As said Sir Launcelot vnto Sir Gawaine, how is it with you. Neuer so hard said Sir Gawaine, vnlesse that ye helpe me, for so God me helpe without ye rescue me, I know no knight that may but you or Sir Tristram. Wherefore Sir Launcelot was heavy for Sir Gawaines words. And then Sir Launcelot had Sir Carados lay downe that knight and fight with him. Thou art but a foole said Sir Carados, for I will serue thee in the same

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

wise. As for that said sir Launcelot spare me not, for I warne thee I will not spare thee. And then he bound Sir Gawains hands and feet, and so threw him to the ground, and then he gat his speere of his squire and departed from sir Launcelot to fetch his course. And so either met with other, and brake their speares to their hands, and then they drew out their swords and hurtled together on horsebacke more then an houre: And at the last sir Launcelot smote sir Carados such a buffet upon his helme, that it went through the braine pan. So then sir Launcelot tooke Carados by the collar and pulled him downe under his horse feet, and then he alighted and pulled off his helme and smote off his head. And then sir Launcelot unbound sir Gawaine. So this tale was told vnto sir Galahault and vnto sir Tristram. Here may ye heare the noblenesse that followeth sir Launcelot. Alas said sir Tristram, and I had not this messenger on hand, with this faire lady, truly I would neuer stent till I had found sir Launcelot. When sir Tristram and la beale Mond went to the sea and came into Coznewaile, and there all the barons met them.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the wedding of King Marke to la beale Mond, and of Bragwaine her maide and of Sir Palomides.

And anon they were right richly wedded with great noblenesse. But euer (as the french booke saith) sir Tristram and la beale Mond loved euer together: When was there made great iusts and turnements, and many great Lords and Ladies were at that feast, and sir Tristram was most praised of all other. Thus the feast endured long, and when the feast was done with in a little while after by the assent of two ladies that were with Quene Mond, they ordeined for hate and enuie to destroy dame Bragwaine, which was maiden and Gentlewoman vnto la beale Mond, and she was sent into a great forrest for to fetch herbes, and there she was met, and bounde hands and feet vnto a tree, and so she was bound thre dayes. And by fortune sir Palomides found dame Bragwaine and there he re-

and his Knights of the round Table.

liuered her from the death, and brought her to a Priory there beside to be recouered. And when Mond the Quene mist her Gentlewoman Dame Bragwaine, wit ye well she was full heavy as euer was any Quene, for of all earthly women she loved her best because she came with her out of her countrey. And so vpon a day the Quene Mond walked into the forrest for to put away her sorrowful thoughts, and there she went her selfe vnto a Well and made great mone: And sodainly there came sir Palomides vnto her, and had heard all her complaint and said. Madame Mond and if ye will graunt me a bone I shall bring vnto you dame Bragwaine safe and sound. And the Quene was so glad of his proffer that sodainly binadvised she graunted all his asking. Well madame said sir Palomides, I trust to your promise, and if ye will abide here but halfe an houre I shall bring her vnto you. I shall abide you here said the Quene Mond. When sir Palomides rode forth his way into the Priory, and lightly he came againe with dame Bragwaine, but by her good will would not haue come againe, because for loue of the Quene she was in aduenture of her life. Notwithstanding halfe against her will she went with sir Palomides vnto the Quene. And when the Quene Mond saw her, she was passing glad. Now madame said sir Palomides, think vpon your promise, for I haue fulfilled my promise: sir Palomides said the Quene, I wot not what your desire is, but I will that ye wit howbeit I promised you largely I thought none ill, nor I warne you none ill will I doe. Madame said sir Palomides as at this time ye shall not know my desire, before my Lord your husband there shall ye know that I will haue my desire that ye haue promised me. And therewith the Quene departed and rode home to the King, and sir Palomides rode after her. And when sir Palomides came before the King, he said, sir King I require you as ye be a righteous King that ye will iudge me the right. Tell me the cause said the King, and ye shall haue right.

CHAP.

How sir Palomides demanded the Queene Isoud and how Lambegus rode after to rescew her, and of the escape of Queene Isoud:

Sir said Sir Palomides, I promised your Quene Isoud, for to bring againe Dame Bragwaine, that she had lost vpon this couenant, that she should grant me a boone that I would aske, and without grutching or aduise ment she granted mee. What say ye my Lady said the King. It is as he saith, so God mee helpe, said the Quene, to say the sooth I promised him his asking for loue & ioy that I had to see her. Well Madame said the King, and if ye were hasty to grant him what boone he would aske, I will well that ye performe your promise. Then said Sir Palomides I will that ye wit that I will haue your Quene to leade her and gouerne her whereas mee list. Where with the King stood still and he bethought him of Sir Tristram, and deemed that he would rescew her. And anone hastily King Marke answered, take her with the adventures that shall fall of it, for Sir Palomides as I suppose thou wilt not long enjoy her.

As for that said Sir Palomides I dare right well abide the adventure. And so for to make short tale, Sir Palomides tooke her by the hand and said to her. Madame grutch not to go with mee, I desire nothing but your owne promise. As for that said the Quene Isoud, I feare not greatly to goe with thee, how be it thou hast me at aduantage vpon my promise, for I doubt not I shall bee worshipfully rescewed from thee. As for that said Sir Palomides, bee it as it may bee. So the Quene Isoud was set behind Sir Palomides, and so rode his way. Anon King Marke sent for Sir Tristram, but he could not be found, for he was in the forrest at hunting, for that was alwayes his custome, but if he used armes for chase and hunt in forrests. Alas said the King now am I shamed for ever, that by mine assent my Lady and my Quene shall be deuoured. When came forth a knight his name was Lambegus, and he was a knight

of Sir Tristrams, and then this knight said vnto him. My lord if ye haue trust in my Lord sir Tristram, wit ye well for his sake I will ride after your Quene & rescew her, or else I shal be beaten. Gramercy said the King, and I lue sir Lambegus shall deserue it. And then sir Lambegus armed him and rode after as fast as he might. And then within a while he ouertooke sir Palomides and then sir Palomides left the Quene. What art thou said sir Palomides art thou sir Tristram. Nay said hee I am his seruant, and my name is sir Lambegus. What me repenteth said sir Palomides, I had leauer thou haddest bene sir Tristram. I beleue thee well said Sir Lambegus, but when thou meetest with Sir Tristram thou shalt haue thy hands full. And then they hurled together and al to brast their speeres in peeces. And then they drew out their swords and helwed on helmes and habwerkes. At the last Sir Palomides gaue sir Lambegus such a wound that he fel doune to the earth like a dead knight. Then hee looked after la beale Isoud, and shee was gone he wist not where, and wit ye well sir Palomides was neuer so heauy. So the Quene ran into the forrest, and there she found a faire well, and therein she had thought for to haue drowned her selfe.

And as good fortune would there came a knight to her that had a castle thereby, his name was sir Adthrepe. And when he found the Quene in that mischiese, he rescewed her, and led her into his castle thereby. And when he wist what she was he armed him lightly and tooke his horse, and said he would be auenged vpon Sir Palomides, and so he rode untill hee met with him, and there Sir Palomides wounded him sore, and by force he made him to tell him the cause why he did battaile with him, and how he had led the Quene vnto his castell. Polloving me there said Sir Palomides or thou shalt dye of my hands. Sir said Sir Adthrepe, I am so wounded that I may not folow you, but ride you this way, and it shall bring you into the castle, and there within is the Quene. And then sir Palomides rode still till he came to the castle, and out at a window la beale Isoud saw Sir Palomides, then shee made all the gates to be shut strongly. And when he saw he might not come within the castle, he tooke off both bzidell and savel and put his horse

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

to pasture, and set him selfe downe at the gate like as it had bene a man that had bene out of his wits which reckoned not of him selfe.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Sir *Tristram* rode after Sir *Palomides*, and how he found him and fought with him, and by the meanes of *la beale Isond* the battaile ceased.

NOW turne we to Sir *Tristram* that when he was come home and witte that *la beale Isond* was gone with Sir *Palomides*, witte ye well he was wroth out of measure. Alas said Sir *Tristram* this day am I shamed. Then he cried to Governale his man hast thee that I were armed and on horsebacke, for well I know Sir *Lambegus* hath no might nor strength to withstand Sir *Palomides*. Alas that I am not in his steede. So anon as he was armed and horsed, Sir *Tristram* and Governale rode after into the forest, and within a little while he found his knight Sir *Lambegus* almost wounded unto death, and Sir *Tristram* bare him to a foster, and charged him to keepe him well. And then he rode forth, and there he found Sir *Adcherpe* sore wounded, and he told him how the Quene would haue drowned herselfe and he had not bene and how for her sake and loue he had taken vpon him to doe battaile with Sir *Palomides*. Where is my Lady said Sir *Tristram*. Sir said the knight, she is sure enough within my castle, and she can hold hir within it. Gumercy said Sir *Tristram* of your great goodnesse. And so he rode till he came nigh to the castle and then Sir *Tristram* saw where Sir *Palomides* sate at the gate sleeping, and his horse pastured fast afoze him. Now goe thou Governale said Sir *Tristram* and bid him awake and make him ready. So Governale rode to him and said. Sir *Palomides* arise and take to thee thy harnais, but he was in such a study that he heard not what Governale said. So Governale came againe and told Sir *Tristram* that he slept or else hee was mad. Goe thou againe said Sir *Tristram* and bid him arise, and tell him that I am here his mortall enemy. So Governale rode againe and put vpon

and his Knights of the round Table.

vpon him the end of his speare and said. Sir *Palomides* make you ready, for witte ye well Sir *Tristram* houeth yonder and seeth you word he is your mortall enemy. And therewith Sir *Palomides* arose stilly without any word speaking, and gat his horse and saddled and bridled him, and lightly he leapt vpon him, and gat his speare in his hand and either sentred their speares and hurled fast together, and there Sir *Tristram* smote downe Sir *Palomides* ouer his horse taile. So lightly Sir *Palomides* put his shield afoze him and drew his sword, and there began a strong battaile on both parties, for both they fought for the loue of one lady, and euer she lay on the walls and beheld them how they fought out of measure, and either were wounded passing sore, but Sir *Palomides* was much sorer wounded, and thus they fought tracing and trauersing more then two houres, that well nigh for sorrow *la beale Isond* sowned. Alas said she that one I loued and yet doe, and that other I loue not, yet it were great pittie that I should see Sir *Palomides* slaine, for well I know that by that time the end be done, Sir *Palomides* is but a dead knight, and because he is not christned, I would be loth that he should die a sarasin. And therewith she came downe and besought Sir *Tristram* to fight no more. My madam said he, what meane you, will ye haue me shamed, ye know well I will be ruled by you. I will not your dishonour said *la beale Isond*, but I would that yee would for my sake spare this unhappie sarasin Sir *Palomides*. Madame said Sir *Tristram*, I will leaue fighting at this time for your sake. And then she said to Sir *Palomides* this shal be thy charge, thou shalt goe out of this countrey while I am therein. I will obey to your bidding said Sir *Palomides* that is right sore against my will. Take then thy way said *la beale Isond* vnto the court of King Arthur, and there recommend me vnto Quene Gueneuer, and tell her that I send her word that there be within the land but foure louers, that is Sir *Launcelot du lake*, and Quene Gueneuer, and Sir *Tristram de Lyones* and Quene *Isond*.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XXXII.

How Sir *Tristram* brought Queene *Isonde* home, and of the debate of King *Marke* and Sir *Tristram*.

And so sir *Palomides* departed with great heavines. And sir *Tristram* took the Queene and brought her againe to King *Marke*, and then was there made great ioy of her home coming. Who was cherished but sir *Tristram*? And then anon sir *Tristram* let fetch home Sir *Lambegus* his knight from the fosters house, and it was long o2 he was hole, but at the last he was well recovered. Thus they lived with ioy and play a long while. But euer Sir *Andret* the which was nigh cosin unto Sir *Tristram* lay in a watch for to waite betweene Sir *Tristram* and la beale *Isonde*, for to take them and slaunder them. So vpon a day as Sir *Tristram* talked with la beale *Isonde* in a window, and that espied Sir *Andret* and told it vnto the King. Then King *Marke* took in his hand a sword and came to Sir *Tristram*, and called him false traitour and would haue smitten him. But Sir *Tristram* was nigh him, and ranne vnderneath his sword, and pulled it out of his hand. And then King *Marke* cried, where are my knights and my men, I charge you slei this traytour knight. But at that time there was not one that would remoue for his words. When Sir *Tristram* saw there was not one that would be against him he thooke the sword at the King, and made countenance as though he would haue stricken him. And then King *Marke* fled, and Sir *Tristram* folowed him, and smote vpon him five o2 six strokes flatly vpon the hecke that hee made him for to fall vpon his nose. And then soorth with Sir *Tristram* went his way and armed him, and took his horse and his men and so rode into the forrest. And there vpon a day Sir *Tristram* met with two b2theren that were knights with King *Marke* and there hee strooke off the head of the one, and wounded the other to the death, and he made him to beare his b2thers head vpon his helme with the King, and thirtie mo there he wounded. And when the knight came before the King to say his message,

and his Knights of the round Table.

sage, he died there afore the King and the Queene. And then King *Marke* called his counsaile vnto him and asked aduise of his Barons what was best to doe with Sir *Tristram*. Sir said the Barons, in especiall Sir *Dinas* the Seneschall, wee will giue you counsaile to send for Sir *Tristram*, for we will that ye wit many men will hould with Sir *Tristram* and hee were hard bestead. And Sir said Sir *Dinas* ye shall vnderstand that Sir *Tristram* is called perelesse and makelesse of any christen knight, and of his might and his hardinesse we know no where so good a knight, but if it be Sir *Launcelot du lake*. And if hee depart from your court and goe to King *Archurs* Court, wit ye well he will get him such friends there that hee will not set by all your malice. And therefore Sir I counsaile you for to take him to your good grace. I will well said the King that hee be sent for, that wee may bee friends. And then the Barons sent for Sir *Tristram* vnder a safe conduct. And so when *Tristram* came vnto the King, he was welcome, and no reherfall was made, and there was game and play. And then the King and the Queene and Sir *Tristram* went on hunting together.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir *Lamoracke* iusted with thirtie Knights, and how Sir *Tristram* at the request of King *Marke* smote his horse downe.

The King and the Queene made their paylions and their tents to be pight in the forrest beside a riuer and there was daily hunting, and iusting, for there were euer twentie knights ready for to iust with all them that came in at that time. And there by fortune came Sir *Lamoracke* de galis and Sir *Driaunt*, and there sir *Driaunt* iusted right well, but at the last hee had a fall. And then sir *Lamoracke* proffred to iust. And when he began hee fared so with the twentie knights that there was not one of them but that hee gaue him a fall, and some of them were sore hurt. A meruaile greatly said King *Marke* what knight hee is that doth such deeds of armes. Sir

said Sir Tristram, I know him for a noble knight as few now be living, and his name is sir Lamoracke de galis. It were great shame said King Marke that he should goe thus away unlesse that some other of you meete with him better. Sir said sir Tristram mee thinketh it were no worship for a noble man for to haue to doe with him, and for because at this time he hath done ouermuch, for any meane knight living, and therefore as mee seemeth it were great shame and villanie to tempt him any more at this time, in so much as he and his horse are weary both, for the deeds of armes that he hath done this day, and they be well considered, it were enough for the noble knight Sir Launcelot du lake. As for that said King Marke I require you as ye loue me and my Lady the Queene take your armes and iust with Sir Lamoracke de Galis. Sir said Sir Tristram, ye bid me doe a thing that is against knighthood, and well I can deeme that I shall giue him a fall, for it is no maistray, for my horse and I be fresh both, and so is not his horse and he, and wit ye well that he will take it for great unkindnesse, for euer one good knight is loth to take an other at a disadvantage, but because I will not displease you as ye require me so will I doe and obey your commandement. And Sir Tristram armed him anon and tooke his horse and put him forth, and there sir Lamoracke met with him right mightily, and what with the might of his owne speare, and of sir Tristrams speare, sir Lamorackes horse fell to the earth, and he sitting in the sadell. And so anon as lightly as he might he auoided the sadell and his horse and put his shield afore him and drew his sword, and then he said to sir Tristram. Alight thou knight and thou darest. Nay said sir Tristram I will no more haue to doe with thee, for I haue done to thee ouermuch vnto my dishonour, and to thy worship. As for that said sir Lamoracke I can thee no thanke sith thou hast afore iusted me on horsebacke, I require thee and thou be sir Tristram fight with mee on foote. I will not, said sir Tristram, and wit ye well my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and well I know thou art sir Lamoracke de Galis, and this that I haue done to thee was against my will, but I was required thereto, but to say that I will

will doe at thy request, as at this time I will haue no more to doe with thee, for me shameth of that I haue done. As for the same said sir Lamoracke on thy part or on mine beare thou it and thou wilt, for though a mares son hath failed me, now a Queenes sonne shall not faile thee, and therefore if thou be such a knight as men call thee, I require thee alight and fight with me. Sir Lamoracke, said sir Tristram, I vnderstand your heart is great, and yee haue a cause why, to say the soth, for it would grieue me and any knight should keep himselfe fresh and then to smite downe a weary knight, for that knight nor horse was neuer formed that alway might stand or endure, and therefore said sir Tristram I will not haue to doe with you, for me forse thinketh of what I haue done. As for that said sir Lamoracke, I shall quite you and I see my time.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Sir Lamoracke sent an horne to King Marke in despite of Sir Tristram, and how Sir Tristram was driuen into a chappell.

So he departed from him with sir Driant, and by the way they met with a knight that was sent from Morgan le faye to King Arthur, and this knight had a faire horne all garnished with gold, and the horne had such a vertue that there might no Lady nor Gentlewoman drinke of that horne but if she were true to her husband, and if shee were false, shee should spill all the drinke, and if shee were true vnto her Lord, shee might drinke peaceably, and because of Queene Gueneuer, and in the despite of sir Launcelot du lake this horne was sent vnto King Arthur, and by force sir Lamoracke made that knight to tell all that cause why he bare that horne. And then said sir Lamoracke vnto that knight. Now shalt thou beare that horne vnto King Marke or else chouse thou to die for it. For I tell thee plainly that in the despite and reproofe of sir Tristram thou shalt beare that horne vnto King Marke his unkle. And say thou vnto him that I send it him for to assay his Lady, and if that she be true vnto him he shall proue her. So the knight went his way vnto King Marke, & brought him that rich horne,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

horne, and told him that Sir Lamoracke de galis sent it him and thereto he told him the vertus of that horne. And then the King made la bealelfond his Quene to drinke thereof and an hundred ladies moe and there were but foure ladies of all those that dranke cleane. Alas said king Marke this is a greete despite, and so swoze a great othe that the quene should be bzent and all the other ladies also. Then the Barons gathered them together, and said plainly they would not haue all the Ladies bzent for an horne made by sorcerie that came from as false a sorceresse and witch as then was any liuing. For that horne did neuer good but caused strife and debate, and allwaies in her daies she had bene an enemy vnto all true louers. So there were many knights that made their answ, if euer they met with Morgan le fay that they would shew her short curtesie. Also sir Tristram was passing wroth that sir Lamoracke sent that horne vnto King Marke, for wel he knew that it was done in the despite of him, and therfore he thought to quite sir Lamoracke. And then allwaies sir Tristram bled daily and mightily for to goe to Quene Ifonde when he might, and euer sir Andret his cosin watched him night and day for to take him with la bealelfond. And so vpon a night sir Andret his cosin espied the houre and the time when sir Tristram went to his Lady. And then sir Andret gat vnto him twelue knights, and at midnigh he set vpon sir Tristram secretly and sodainely, and there sir Tristram was taken naked abed with la bealelfond the Quene, and then was he bound hand and fote, and so was he kept vntill day. And then by the assent of King Marke and of sir Andret and of some of the Barons sir Tristram was led vnto a chappell which stood vpon the sea rockes, and there for to take his iudgement, so he was led and bound with fortie knights. And when sir Tristram saw there was none other remedy, but that needs he must die then said he vnto them all:

Faire Lords remember what I haue done for the countrey of Cornewalle and in what leoperdy I haue bene in for the weale of you all. For when I fought for the truage of Cornewalle with sir Marhaus the good knight, I was promised to be better rewarded, when yee all refused the battaile, therefore

as

and his Knights of the round Table.

ye are good and Gentill knights see me not thus shamefully to die, for it is shame vnto all knight hood thus for to see me die. For I dare well say said sir Tristram that I neuer yet met with no knight but that I was as good as he or some what better then he. Fie vpon the said sir Andret false traytour that thou art with thy vaunting, for all thy boast that thou makest yet shalt thou die this day. Andret Andret said sir Tristram thou shouldst be my best friend, and now thou art to me full unfriendly, but and there were no mo but thou and I thou wouldst not put me to death. So said sir Andret, and there with he drew his sword and would haue slaine him. When sir Tristram saw him make such countenance, he looked vpon both his hands that were fast bound vnto two knights, and so sodaynely he pulled them both him and vntwast his hands, and then he leapt vnto his cosin Andret, and tooke his sword out of his hands and then he smote sir Andret that he fell downe to the earth, and so sir Tristram fought vntill he had slaine ten knights. And then sir Tristram gat the chappell and kept it mightily. When the cry was great, and the people drew fast to sir Andret more then an hundred. When sir Tristram saw the people draw vnto him, he remembred that he was naked, and thus fast the chappell doze and brake the barres of a window, and so he leapt out and fell vpon the craggess in the sea. And so at that time sir Andret nor none of his fellows might get to him at that time.

CHAP. XXXV.

How Sir Tristram was holpen by his men, and of Quene Ifonnes which was put in a lazar coate, and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

When they were departed, Gouvernail and Sir Lambegus and Sir Sentraile de Lushon, which were sir Tristrams men fought their maister. And when they heard he was escaped then they were passing glad and on the rockes they found him. And with towels they pulled him vp, and then sir Tristram asked them where la bealelfond was, for hee wend shee had bene

h)

bene

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

being led away of Sir Andreis people. Sir said Gouvernale she is put in a lazar coate. Alas said Sir Tristram that is a full vngodly place for such a faire Lady, and if I may she shall not be there long. And then anon sir Tristram tooke his men, and went where as la beale Isoud was, and fetcht her away, and brought her into a forrest to a faire mannoz, and there sir Tristram abode with her. So the good knight had his men to goe from him, for at this time I may not helpe you. So they departed all saue Gouvernale. And so vpon a day sir Tristram went into the forrest for to despozt him, and then it hapned that he fell there on slepe. And it fortuneth there came a man that sir Tristram afoze had slaine his brother, and when this man had found him, he shot him through the shoulder with an arrow. And therewith sir Tristram leapt vp and slew that man, and in the meane while it was told to King Marke how sir Tristram and la beale Isoud were in the foresaid mannoz, and as sone as he might, thither he came with many good knights to haue slaine Sir Tristram. And when he came there he was gone, and then he tooke la beale Isoud home with him and kept her so strait that by no meanes she might neuer wit nor send vnto Sir Tristram; nor he vnto her. When when Sir Tristram came toward the old mannoz, he found the traces of many horses, and thereby he thought well that his lady was gone. And then Sir Tristram tooke great sorrow and was sore displeased, and endured with great paine long time, for the arrow that he was hurt withall was enuened.

Then by the meanes of la beale Isoud she tooke a lady that was cousin vnto dame Bragwaine, and she came vnto Sir Tristram, and told him that he might not be hole by no meanes, for the Lady la beale Isoud may not helpe thee, therefore she biddech you in all the hast to goe into Britaine to King Howell, and there ye shall find his daughter Isoud le blaunch mains and she shall helpe you. Then Sir Tristram and Gouvernale gat them shipping, and so sailed into Britaine. And when King Howell wist that it was sir Tristram hee was right glad of him, for he said Sir Tristram, I am come into this countrey for to haue helpe of your daughter. For it is tolde me that there is none other

and his Knights of the round Table.

other that may helpe me but thee, and so within a while she heales him.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Sir Tristram serued in warre King Howell of Britaine, and slew his aduersary in the felde.

There was an earle which hight Grip, and this Earle made great war vpon King Howell of Britaine and put the king to the worse, and besieged him. And vpon a time sir Kay Hedius that was sonne to King Howell as he issued out he was sore wounded to the death. Then Gouvernale went vnto the king and said. Sir I counsaile you to desire my Lord Sir Tristram as in your need for to helpe you. I will doe by your counsaile said the king. And so he went vnto Sir Tristram and prayed him in his warres for to helpe him, for my sonne Sir Kay Hedius may not goe into the field. Sir said Sir Tristram I will goe to the field and doe what I may. When sir Tristram issued out of the towne with such fellowship as he could make, and did there such deeds that all Britaine spake of him. And then at the last by the great might and force he slew the Earle Grip with his owne hands, and he slew more then an hundred knights that same day. And sir Tristram was then right worshipfully receiued with procession. Then King Howell embraced him in his armes and said. Sir Tristram all my kingdome will I resigne vnto you. God defend it said Sir Tristram, for I am beholding vnto you for your daughters sake to doe for you. Then by the meanes of King Howell and his son sir Kay Hedius by their great proffers there grew great love betwene Isoud le blaunch mains and Sir Tristram, for that Lady was both good and faire and a woman of noble blood and fame. And for because that sir Tristram had such chere and riches and all other pleasaunces that he had, hee had almost forsaken la beale Isoud. And so vpon a time sir Tristram agreed to wed Isoud le blaunch mains. And so at the last they were wedded and solemnely held their marriage. And so when they were both a bed together, then Sir Tristram remembred himselfe of his first

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Lady la beale Isond, and then hee tooke such a thought so suddenly that he was all abashed and dismayed, another chere he made her none but with clepping and kissing, and as for other fleshy coniunction, sir Tristram neuer thought, nor neuer had to doe with her. And the Lady wend that there had bene no pleasure but kissing and clepping. In the meane while there was a knight in Britaine his name was sir Suppinabiles, and he came ouer the sea into England, and then he came vnto the Court of King Arthur, and there he met with sir Launcelot du lake, and told him of the marriage of sir Tristram. And then said sir Launcelot, yee vpon him vntrue knight to his Lady that so noble a knight as sir Tristram is should be found false vnto his first Lady la beale Isond queene of Cornewaile, but say to him said sir Launcelot that of all knights in the world I loued him most and had most ioy of him, and all was for his noble deeds, and let him wit the loue betwene him and me is gone for euer and I giue him warning from this day forth to be his mortall enemy,

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Suppinabiles told Sir Tristram how he was defamed in the Court of King Arthur, and of Sir Launcelot du lake.

Then departed sir Suppinabiles for to goe againe into Britaine, and there he found sir Tristram and tolde him that he had bene in King Arthurs Court. Then said sir Tristram, heard yee any thing of me. So God me helpe said sir Suppinabiles there I heard sir Launcelot speake of you great shame, and that yee be a false knight to your Lady and he bad me to doe you to wit that he will be your mortall enemy in euery place hee may meete you. What me repenteth said sir Tristram, for of all knights I loued to be in his fellowship. So sir Tristram made great mone, and was ashamed that uable knights should defame him for his ladies sake.

And this meane while la beale Isond made a letter vnto the Queene Gueneuer complaining her of the vntruth of sir Tristram,

and his Knights of the round Table.

tram, and how he had wedded the Kings daughter of Britaine. Queene Gueneuer sent her another letter, and bad her be of good cheere, for she should haue ioy after sorrow, for sir Tristram, was so noble a knight called, that by the crafts of sorcery Ladies would make such noble men for to wed them, but in the end said Queene Gueneuer it shall bee thus, that hee shall hate her and loue you better then euer he did before.

Soleaue we sir Tristram, in Britaine, and speake we of sir Lamoracke de Galis, that as he sailed, his ship fell on a rocke and perished all saue sir Lamoracke and his squire, and there he swamme mightily, and fishers of the Ile of seruage tooke him vp, and his squire was drowned and those fishers had great labour to saue sir Lamoracks life for all the comfort that they could doe. And the Lord of that Ile hight sir Naban le noyre which was a great mighty Gyant. And this sir Naban hateth all the knights of King Arthur, and in no wise he will doe them fauour: And these fishers told sir Lamoracke all the guile of sir Naban, and how there came neuer knight of King Arthurs but he destroyed him. And at the last battaile that he did was slaine sir Nanowne le petite, the which he put vnto a right shamefull death in despite of King Arthur, for he was drawen limmeal. What fore thinketh me fore said sir Lamoracke for that knights death, for hee was my Cousin, and if I were at mine ease as well as euer I was, I would reuenge his death, Peace said the fishers and make here no words, for or yee depart from hence sir Naban must know that yee haue bene heere, or else wee should dye for his sake. So that I bee whole said sir Lamoracke of my disease that I haue taken on the sea, I will that ye tell him that I am a knight of King Arthurs Court, for I was neuer so affeard to deny my Lord.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Sir *Tristram* and his wife arriued in Wales, and how he met there with Sir *Lamoracke*.

NOW turne we againe vnto Sir *Tristram*, that vpon a day he took a little barge and his wife *Isond la blaunch mains* with Sir *Kay Hedi* her brother to play them in the coasts. And when they were from the land there arose a wind that droue them into the coast of Wales vpon the Ile of *Sernage* whereas Sir *Lamoracke* was, and there the Barge all to roud and there dame *Isond* was hurt, and as well as they might they gat into the Forrest, and there by a well shee saw Sir *Segwarides* and a damosell, and then either saluted other. Sir said Sir *Segwarides*, I know you for Sir *Tristram de Lioness*, the man that I haue most cause to hate in the world, because yee departed the loue betweene me and my wife, but as for that said Sir *Segwarides*, I will neuer hate a noble knight for a light lady, and therefore I pray you be my friend, and I will be your man vnto my power, for wit yee well yee are hard belted in this valey, and we haue enough to doe either of vs to succour other. And then Sir *Segwarides* brought Sir *Tristram* vnto a lady thereby that was borne in *Coznelwaile*, and shee told him all the perils of that valey, and how there came neuer knight but hee was taken prisoner or slaine. Wit ye well faire Lady said Sir *Tristram* that I slew Sir *Marhaus* and deliuered *Coznelwaile* from the truage of *Ireland*, and I am he that deliuered the King of *Ireland* from Sir *Blamor de Galis* and I am hee that beat Sir *Palomides*, and wit yee well I am Sir *Tristram de Lyones* that by the grace of God shall deliuer this wofull Ile of *Sauage*. So Sir *Tristram* was well eased, then one told him there was a knight of King *Arthurs* that was wracked on the rockes. What is his name said Sir *Tristram*. Wee wot not said the fishers, but hee keepesth it no counsell but that hee is a knight of King *Arthurs*, and by the mighty Lord of this Ile he setteth nothing. I pray you said Sir *Tristram* that ye may bring him hither that I may see him, and if he be any of the knights

and his Knights of the round Table.

of King *Arthur* I shall know him. When the Lady prayed the fishers to bring him to her place.

So on the morrow early they brought him thither in a fishers rayment. And as soone as Sir *Tristram* saw him hee smiled vpon him and knew him well, but hee knew not Sir *Tristram*. Faire knight said Sir *Tristram*, mee seemeth by your cheere ye haue bene diseased but late, and also me thinketh I should know you heretofore. I wil wel said Sir *Lamoracke* that ye haue seene me and met with me. Faire Sir said Sir *Tristram* tell me your name vpon couenant. I will tell you said Sir *Lamoracke*, so that yee will tell me whether yee be Lord of this Ile or no, that is called Sir *Naban le noyr*. For sooth said Sir *Tristram* I am not hee nor I hold not of him, I am his foe as well as yee be, and so shall I be found or I depart out of this Ile. Well said Sir *Lamoracke* sth yee haue said so largely to me, my name is Sir *Lamoracke de Galis*, Son vnto King *Pellinore*, For sooth I grow well said Sir *Tristram*. For and yee had said other wise I knew the contrary. What are yee said Sir *Lamoracke* that knoweth me. I am Sir *Tristram de Lyones*. Ah Sir remember yee not of the fall yee gaue me once, and after yee refused me to fight on foote. What was not for feare I had of you said Sir *Tristram*, but me shamed at that time to haue more adoe with you, for me seemed yee had enough, but Sir *Lamoracke* for my kindnesse yee put many Ladies to a reproofe, when yee sent the hozne from *Morgan le fay* to King *Marke*, whereas yee did this in despite of me. Well said he and it were to doe againe, so would I doe for I had leauer rise and debate fell in King *Markes* Court rather then in King *Arthurs* Court, for the honour of both Courts be not like. As to that said *Tristram* I know well. But that that was done, it was for despite of mee, but all your malice I thanke God hath not greatly hurt mee said Sir *Tristram*, yee shall leaue your malice and so will I and let vs assay how we may winne worship betweene you and mee vpon this Wyant Sir *Naban le noyre*, that is Lord of this Island for to destroy him. Sir said Sir *Lamoracke*, now I vnderstand your man-hood, it may not be false that all men say, for of your bountie, noblenesse and worship of all knights

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

knights yee are peerelesse, and for courtesie and Gentlenesse
I shewd you vngentilnesse, and that me repenteth.

CHAP. XXIX.

How Sir *Tristram* fought with sir *Naban*, and ouercame him,
and made sir *Segwarides* Lord of the Ile.

In the meane time came word that Sir Naban had made a
cry that all the people of that Ile should be at the Castle
the first day after. And on the same day the Son of Naban
should be made a knight, and all the knights of that valey
and thereabout should be there for to iust and all they of the
Realme of Logris should be there for to iust with the of North
wales, and thither came five hundred knights, and they of
the country brought there Sir Lamoracke, Sir Tristram, Sir
Kay Hediue, and Sir Segwarides, for they durst not other wise
doe. And then Sir Naban lent Sir Lamoracke horse and
armour at Sir Lamorackes desire, and Sir Lamoracke iusted
and did such doeds of armes, that Naban and all the people said
that there was neuer knight that euer they saw doe such doeds
of armes. For as the French booke saith, he foriusted all
that were there for the most part of five hundred of knights,
that none abode him in his saddle. Then Sir Naban proffered
to play with him his play, for I saw neuer no knight doe so
much vpon one day. I will well said Sir Lamoracke play as
I may, but I am weary and sore bruised, and there either gate
a speare but Sir Naban would not encounter with Sir La-
moracke, but smite his horse in the forehead, and slew him, and
then Sir Lamoracke went on foote and turned his shield and
drew his sword, and there began a strong battaile on foote.
But Sir Lamoracke was so sore bruised and short breathed that
he traced and trauesed somewhat abacke. Faire fellow said
Sir Naban hold thy hands & I shall shew thee more courtesie
then euer I shewd knight, because I haue seene this day thy
Noble knight-hood and therefore stand thou by. And I will
wit whether one of thy fellows will haue to doe with me. And
when Sir Tristram heard that, he slept forth and said Naban
lend

and his Knights of the round Table:

lend me horse and sure armure and I will haue to doe with
thee. Faire fellow said Sir Naban, goe thou into yonder pa-
uilion and take the best thou findest there and I shall play a
meruailous play with thee. When said Sir Tristram, looke yee
play well or else peradventure I shall learne thee a new play.
That is wel said fellow said Naban. So when sir Tristram was
armed as him liked best, & well shielded & sworded, he dressed
to him on foote, for well he knew that Sir Naban would not
abide a strooke with a speare, therefore hee would slay euery
knights horse. Noble faire fellow said Sir Naban let vs goe
play. So then they fought long on foote tracing and trauesing,
slitting and forning long without any rest. At the last Sir
Naban prayed him for to tell him his name. Sir Naban I tell
thee my name is Sir Tristram de lyones a knight of Corne-
waile vnder King Marke. Thou art welcome said Sir Naban,
for of all knights I most desire to fight with thee or with sir
Lancelot. So then they went egerly together and sir Tristram
slew sir Naban, and so forth with hee leapt to his sonne
and strooke off his head. And then all the Country said they
would hold of Sir Tristram. Nay said Sir Tristram. I will
not so for here is a worshipfull knight Sir Lamoracke de galis
that for mee hee shall be Lord of this Country, for he hath done
here great doeds of armes. Nay said sir Lamoracke I will
not be Lord of this Countrey, for I haue not deserved it as
well as yee, therefore giue it where yee will, for I will none
thereof.

Faire said sir Tristram sith that yee nor I will not haue it,
let vs giue it to him that doth not so well deserue it. Doe as
yee list said sir Segwarides, for the gift is yours, for I will
none haue and I had deserved it. So it was giuen to Sir Seg-
warides, wherefore he thanked him, and so was he Lord and
worshipfully he ruled it. And then sir Segwarides deliuered
all the prisoners, and set good gouernance in that valey, and
so he returned into Cornewaile, and told King Marke and La-
beale how sir Tristram had aduanced him to the Ile of
Seruage, and there he proclaimed in all Cornewaile of all
the adventures of these two knights, so was it openly knowne.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

But full woe was la beale I found when she heard tell that Sir Tristram was wedded to Isonde leblance mains.

CHAP: XL.

How Sir Lamoake departed from Sir Tristram, and how he met with Sir Frol, and after with Sir Lancelot.

Sir Lamoake tooke his leaue and rode toward King Archurs Court and Sir Tristram & his wife and Kay hediis tooke a vessel and sailed into Britaine unto King Howell, where he was welcome. And when hee heard of their adventures, hee marvelled of his Noble deeds. Now turne wee to Sir Lamoake that when he was departed from Sir Tristram, he rode out of the forrest till he came unto an hermitage. When the Hermit saw him he asked him from whence he came. Sir Lamoake said I came from this valey. Sir said he therefore I greatly meruaile for this twenty winters I saw neuer no knight passe this countrey, but hee was either slaine or villainously wounded, or passed as a poore prisoner. Whose euill customs said Sir Lamoake are forborne, for Sir Tristram slew your Lord Sir Naban and his Son. When was the Hermit glad and all his Brethren, for hee said there was neuer such a Tyrant among Christian men, and therefore said the Hermit this valey and fraunchiese we will hold of Sir Tristram. Soon the morrow Sir Lamoake departed. And as hee rode he saw foure knights fight against one and that one knight defended him well, but at the last the foure knights had him downe. And then Sir Lamoake went betweene them, and asked them why they would slay that one knight, and said it was shame for foure against one. Thou shalt well wit said the foure knights that he is false. What is your tale said Sir Lamoake when I heare him speake also I will say as yee say. Then said Sir Lamoake, Ah knight can yee not excuse you but that yee are a false knight. Sir said he, yea I can excuse me both with my words and with my hand, that will I make good upon one of the best of them, my body to his body. When spake they all at once, we will not icopard our bodies for thee, but wit thou

and his Knights of the round Table.

thou well if King Archur were here himselfe, it would not lye in his power to saue thy life. That is too much said sir Lamoake, but many speake more behind him then they will say to his face, and because of your words yee shall vnderstand that I am one of the simplest of King Archurs Court, in the worship of my Lord now doe your part and in despite of you I will rescue him. And then they lashed all at once to sir Lamoake, but anon at two strooks sir Lamoake slew two of them, and then the other two fled.

Then Sir Lamoake turned againe to that knight and demanded his name. Sir knight said he, my name is sir Frol of the out Isles. When hee rode with sir Lamoake and bare him company. And as they rode by the way they saw a seemely knight that came riding against them, and all in white. Ah said sir Froll, yonder knight iusted lately with me, and smote me downe from my horse, and therefore I will iust with him. He shall not said sir Lamoake by my counsaile, and yee will tell me your quarrell whether yee iusted at his request, or hee at yours. Nay said sir Froll I iusted with him at mine owne request. By my faith said Sir Lamoake, then I will counsell you to meddle no more with him, for me seemeth by his countenance he should be a Noble knight and no iaper, for me thinketh he should bee of the round Table. For all that I will not spare him said sir Froll. And then hee cryed on him and said. Sir knight make thee ready to iust. It needeth not said the knight, for I haue no lust, but yet they sentred their speares, and there the white knight ouerthrew Sir Froll, and then he rode his way a soft pace. When Sir Lamoake rode after him and prayed him to tell him his name, for mee seemeth hee should be of the fellowship of the round Table. Upon a covenant said hee I will tell you my name, so that yee will not discouer my name and also that yee will tell mee yours. When said he, my name is sir Lamoake de Galis, and my name is Lancelot du Lake. When they put vp their swords and kissed heartily together and either made great ioy of other. Sir said Sir Lamoake, and it please you I will doe you seruice. God defend said Sir Lancelot that any of so Noble a blood as yee

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

he should doe mee seruice. When said he more, I am in a quest that I must doe my selfe alone. Now God speed you well said Sir Lamorake and so they departed. When Sir Lamorake came to Sir Froll and horsed him againe, what knight is that said Sir Froll. Sir said hee, it is not for you to know, nor it is no point of my charge. See are the hore vncurtuous said Sir Froll therefore will I depart from you. See may doe as yee list said Sir Lamorake, and yet by my company yee haue saued the fairest flower of your Garland, so they departed.

CHAP. XLI.

How Sir Lamorake slew Sir Froll, and of the couetous fighting with Sir Belleance his Brother.

Then within two or three dayes Sir Lamorake found a knight at a well sleeping, and a Lady sat with him and waited. Night so came Sir Gawaine and tooke the knights Lady, and set her by behind his squire. So Sir Lamorake rode after Sir Gawaine and said to Sir Gawaine turne againe. And then said Sir Gawaine, what will yee doe with me, for I am nephew to King Arthur. Sir said hee, for that cause I will spare you, or else that Lady should abide with me, or else yee should lust with mee. When Sir Gawaine turned him and ranne to him that ought the Lady with his spear. But the knight with pure might smote downe Sir Gawaine, and tooke his Lady with him. All this Sir Lamorake saw and said to himselfe, but if I reuenge my fellow he will say dishonour of me in King Arthurs Court. So Sir Lamorake returned and proffered that knight to fight. Sir said hee, I am ready. And so they came together with all their might and there Sir Lamorake smote the knight through both sides, that he fell downe dead to the ground. When the Lady rode to that knights Brother that hight Sir Belleance le orgulus that dwelled fast thereby and then he told him how his Brother was slaine. Alas said he, I will bee reuenged, and so armed him and mounted on horse backe, and within a while he ouer-tooke Sir Lamorake, and bad him turne and leaue the Lady, for thou and I must play a new play,

and his Knights of the round Table.

play, for thou hast slaine my Brother Sir Froll that was a better knight then euer thou were. It might well be said Sir Lamorake, but this day in the field I was found better. So they rode together and unhorsed each other and dressed their shields and drew their swords and fought mightily two houres long as two mighty knights. When Sir Belleance prayed him to tell him his name. Sir said he, my name is Sir Lamorake de Galis. Ah said Sir Belleance thou art the same that I most hate in the world, for I slew my Sonnes for thy sake, whereas I slayed thy life and now thou hast slaine my Brother Sir Froll. Alas how should I bee accorded with thee, therefore defend thee, for thou shalt dye. there is none other remedy. Alas said Sir Lamorake, full well I ought to know you for yee are the man that most hath done for mee. And therewith Sir Lamorake kneeled downe and besought him of grace. Arise said Sir Belleance, or else there as thou kneelest I shall slay thee. That shall not neede said Sir Lamorake, for I will yeeld me unto you, not for feare of you, nor for your strength, but your goodnesse maketh me full loth to haue to doe with you wherefore I require you for Gods sake and for the high order of knight-hood forgive mee all that I haue offended to you. Alas said Sir Belleance, leaue thy kneeling, or else I shall slay thee without mercy. When they dressed them againe to battaile, neither wounded other sore, that all the ground was bloody, whereas they fought. And at the last Sir Belleance withdrew him backe and sat him downe softly vpon a little hill for he was so faint for bleeding that hee might not stand. When Sir Lamorake threw his shield vpon his backe and asked him what heere. Well said Sir Belleance. Ah Sir yet shall I shew you favour in your disease. Ah Sir Belleance said Sir Lamorake, thou art a foole, for and I had thee at such a vantage as thou hast had mee, I would slay thee, but thy gentlenesse is so good and large that I must needs forgive thee thine euill will. And then Sir Lamorake kneeled downe and unlaced sir it his vberere, and then his owne. And then either kissed other with weeping teares. When Sir Lamorake led Sir Belleance unto an abbey fast by, and there Sir Lamorake would not depart

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

depart from sir Belleaunce till he was hole. And then they swore together that none of them should neuer fight moze one againg the other. So sir Lamorake departed and went vnto the Court of King Arrhur.

CHAP. XLII.

How a young man came into the court of King Arthur and how Sir Kay called him in scorne *La cote male taile*:

There came into the court of King Arthur a young man and a big made, and he was richly besene, and he desired to be made knight of King Arthur, but his ouer garment sate onerthwartly, how bee it, it was good and rich cloth of gold. What is your name said King Arthur. Sir said the young man my name is Brewnor le noyre, and within short space ye shall know that I am come of good kin, It may well bee said Sir Kay the seneschall, but in mockage, ye shall be called *La cote male taile*, that is as much to say, the euill shapen coate. It is a great thing that thou askest said the King. And for what cause wearest thou that rich coate, tell mee, for I can well thinke for some cause it is. Sir said he, I had a father a noble knight, and vpon a day as he rode on hunting, it hapned him for to lay him downe to slepe. And there came a knight that had bene long his enemy. And when he saw he was fast on slepe he all to helved him, and this same coate had my father on the same time, and that maketh this coate to sit so euill vpon me, for the strokes be on it as I found it, and neuer shall bee amended for mee. Thus to haue my fathers death in remembrance I weare this coate till I be reuenged. And because ye are called the most noble King of the world I came to you that ye would make me knight. Sir said sir Lamorake and Sir Gaheris, it were well done to make him knight, for him besemeth well of person and of countenance that he shall proue a good man, and a good and a mighty knight, for Sir as ye be remembred euen such one was Sir Launcelot du lake, when he came first into this Court, and full few of vs knew from whence he came and now he is proued the most man of worship that is in the world, and all your Court and all your round table

and his Knights of the round Table:

table is by Sir Launcelot worshipped and amended, moze then by any knight now liuing. What is truth said King Arthur and to morrow at your request I shall make him knight. So on the morrow there was an hart found, and thither rode King Arthur with a company of knights to sleigh the hart. And this young man that Sir Kay named *La cote male taile* was there left behind with Quene Gueneuor, and so by sodaine aduenture there was a mighty Lyon kept in a strong towre of stone, and it happened that this Lyon at that time brake loose, and came hurling after the Quene and her knights. And when the Quene saw the Lyon, she cried and fled and prayed her knights to rescue her and there was none of them all but twelve that fled, and all the other fled. Then said *La cote male taile*, now I do well that all coward knights be not dead. And therewith he drew out his sword & dressed him before the Lyon. And that Lyon gaped wide and came vpon him ramping to haue slaine him. And he smote him on the middest of the head such a mighty stroke, that he clone it in sunder, and so the Lyon fell downe dead. Then was it told the Quene how that the young man that Sir Kay named *La cote male taile* had slaine the Lyon. With that King Arthur came home. And when the Quene told him of that aduenture, he was well pleased and said. Vpon paine of my life he shall proue a noble man, and a faithfull knight & a true of his promise. And then the King forth with made him knight. Now Sir said this young knight I require you and all the knights of your court, that ye call me by none other name but *La cote male taile*, in so much as Sir Kay hath named me so, and so will I be called, I assent well thereto said the King.

CHAP. XXXXIII.

How a damosell came vnto King Arthurs Court and desired a knight to take on him an enquest, which *La cote male taile*, enterprised.

Then on the same day there came a Damosell into the Kings Court, and shee brought with her a great blacke Chield, with a white hand in the middest, holding a sword. And ther

ther picture was there none in that shield; When King Arthur saw her, he asked her from whence she came, and what she would haue in his court. Sir said the damosell, I haue ridden long and many a day with this blacke shield and many sundry wayes, and for this cause I am come vnto your Court. And he that ought this shield was a right good knight, and this knight had vnderaken to acheiue a great deed of armes, and so it misfortuned him that another good knight met with him by sudaine aduenture; and there they fought long, and either wounded other passing sore, and they were so weary that they left that battaille on euen hand. So this knight which ought this shield saw there was none other way but that he must die, and then he commanded me to beare this shield vnto the Court of King Arthur, he requiring and praying some good knight to take this shield, and that he would fulfill the quest that he was in. Now what say ye vnto the quest said King Arthur, is there any of you here that will take vpon him for to weld this blacke shield. When was there not one that would speake a word. When Sir Kay took the blacke shield in his hand. Sir knight said the damosell, what is your name. Witte ye well said he, my name is sir Kay the sene shall, that well is knowne in many places. Sir said the damosell lay dolone that shield, for witte ye well it faileth not you, for hee must be a better knight then ye that shall weld this shield. Damosell said Sir Kay, witte ye well I take this shield in my hands by your leaue for to behould it, not to that entent, but goe ye where soeuer ye will, for I will not goe with you. Then the damosell stood still a great while, and beheld many of those knights. When speake the knight Sir La cote male taile. Faire damosell I will take vpon me that blacke shield and that aduenture, so that I may know whetherward my iourney should be, for because I was this day made knight, I would take this aduenture vpon me. What is your name faire young knight said the damosell. My name is said hee, Sir La cote male taile. Well may ye be called so said the damosell, the knight with the euill shapen coate, but and thou be so hardy to take vpon thee to beare that blacke shield, and to follow me,

wit

Wit thou well, thy skinn shall be as well helven as thy coate. As for that said sir La cote male taile, when I am so helven I will aske you no salue to heale mee withall. And therewith came into the Court two squires and brought him a great horse and his armour with his speare, and anon hee was armed and tooke his leaue. I would not by my will said the king that ye tooke vpon you that hard aduenture. Sir said he, this aduenture is mine, and the first that euer I tooke vpon me, and that wilt I follow whatsoeuer come of me. When the damosell departed, and sir La cote male taile followed fast after, and within a while he ouertooke the damosell. And anon shee misaid him in the foulest manner.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Sir La cote male taile ouerthrew Sir Dagonet King Archurs foole, and of the rebuke that he had of the damosell.

After then sir Kay ordained sir Dagonet King Archurs foole to follow after sir La cote male taile, and so there sir Kay made him selfe sir Dagonet to be armed and horsed, and bad him follow Sir La cote male taile, and proffer him to Iust, and so he did, and when hee saw Sir La cote male taile he cryed to him, and bad him make him ready to Iust. So sir La cote male taile smot sir Dagonet ouer his horse croup. When the damosell mocked Sir La cote male taile and said. Fie for shame now thou art shamed in King Archurs Court when they send a foole to haue to doe with thee, and specially at the first Iusts. Thus she rode long chiding him. And within a while there came sir Bleoberis the good knight, and there he iusted with sir La cote male taile, and there sir Bleoberis smote him so sore that horse and all fell to the earth. When sir La cote male taile arose vp lightly and dressed his shield and drew his sword, and would haue done the battaille to the vttermost, for hee was wood wroth. Not so said Sir Bleoberis, as at this time I will not fight on foote. When the damosell Maledisaunt rebuked him in the foulest manner, and bad him turne againe coward. As damosell said hee I pray you of mercy to mislay me no

th

more

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

more, my griefe is enough though y^e giue me no more. I call my selfe neuer the worse knight when a maies some faile me, and also I count mee neuer the worse knight of a fall of Sir Bleoberis. So thus hee rode with her two dayes, and by fortune there came Sir Palomides and encountred with him, and he in the same wise serued him as Sir Beoberis had done before. What doest thou herein my fellowship said the Damosell Maledisaunt, thou canst not sit no knight, nor withstand him a buffet, but if it were sir Dagonet. Ah faire Damosell, I am not the worse to take a fall of Sir Palomides, and yet great disworship haue I none, for neither Sir Bleoberis nor yet Sir Palomides would not doe battaile with me on foote. As for that said the Damosell, wit thou well they haue disdaine and scoone to alight from their horses to fight with such a lewd knight as thou art. So in the meane while there came sir Mordred sir Gawains Brother, and so he fell in the company of the Damosell Maledisaunt, and they came before the Castle Orgulus, and there was such a custome that there might no knight come by that Castle, but either he must Iust or be prisoner, or at the least to leese his horse and his harnais. And so there came out of the Castle two knights against them, and Sir Mordred Iusted with the foremost, and the knight of the Castle smote Sir Mordred downe off his horse. And then anon sir La cote male taile iusted with that other knight, and either of them smote other downe horse and man vnto the ground. And then they auoyded their horses. Then either of them tooke others horse. And then Sir La cote male taile rode vnto that knight that smote downe Sir Mordred and iusted with him, and there Sir La cote male taile hurt and wounded that knight passing sore, and put him from his horse to the earth as hee had bene dead. And then he turned vnto him that had met him afore, and that knight tooke the flight toward the Castle, and Sir La cote male taile rode after him into the Castle. And there Sir La cote male taile pursued him so nigh, that hee claue his head downe to his shoulders, and so fell downe dead to the earth.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XLV.

How Sir La cote male taile fought against an hundred Knights, and how he escaped by the meanes of a Lady.

AND so anon there came an hundred knights about him and assailed him. And when he saw that his horse should be slaine, hee alighted and voided his horse, and put the bridell vnder his fete, and so put him out of the gate. And when hee had so done, he hurled in among them all and dressed his backe to a Ladies Chamber wall, thinking himselfe that hee had leauer die there with worship then to abide the rebukes of the Damosell Maledisaunt. And in the meane time as he stood and fought, that Lady whose the Chamber was, went out slyly at a posterne, and without the gates she found sir La cote maletailes horse, and lightly shee gat him by the bridell and tied him to the posterne. And then shee went vnto her Chamber slyly againe to behold how that one knight fought against an hundred knights. And so when shee had beholden him long, she went to a window behind his backe and said. Thou knight lightest wonderous well, but for all that at the last thou must needs die, but and thou canst throught thy mighty prowess winne to yonder posterne, for there haue I fastned thy horse for to abide thee, but wit thou well thou must thinke on thy worship and thinke not to die, for thou maiest not winne vnto that posterne without thou doe nobly and mightily. When sir La cote male taile heard her say so, hee tooke his sword and put his shield before him, and hurled throught the thickest of them. And when he came to the posterne he found there foure knights ready, and at two of the first strookes he slew two of the knights, and the other two fled, and so he wanne his horse and rode from them. And all as it was, it was rehearsed in King Arthurs Court how hee slew twelue knights within the Castle Orgulus, and so he rode on his way. And in the meane while the Damosell said vnto sir Mordred. I wene my foolish knight bee either slaine or taken prisoner. When were they ware where hee came riding. And when he was come vnto them

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

them, he told them how hee had sped and escaped in despite of them all, and some of the best of them will tell no tales. Whou best said the Damosell, that dare I make good, but as a soole and a daffard to all knight-hood they haue let the passe. Pee may proue it said Sir La cote male taile. With that shee sent a currou of hers that rode alway with her for to know the truth of this deed. And so he rode thither lightly, and asked how and in what manner that Sir La cote male taile was escaped out of that Castle. Then all the knights cursed him, and said hee is a fiend and no man, for hee hath slaine heere twelue of our best knights, and wee wend vnto this day that it had beene ouermuch for Sir Lancelot du lake, or for Sir Tristram de Lyones. And in despite of vs all he is departed from vs. With this answer the currou departed, and came againe vnto the Damosell Maledisaunt his Lady, and told her all together how that sir La cote male taile had sped at the Castle Orgulus. And then shee let fall downe her head and said but little.

By my head said sir Mordred to the Damosell, ye are greatly to blame so to rebuke him, for I warne you plainly hee is a good knight, and I doubt not but hee shall proue a Noble knight, but as yet hee may not sit sure on horsbacke. For hee that shall bee a good horsseman, it must come of vsage and exercise. But when hee cometh vnto the strookes of his sword, he is then Noble and mighty, and that saw sir Bleoberis and Sir Palomides, for wit yee well they are fall wily men of armes, and anon they know when they see a young knight by his riding, how they are sure to giue him a fall from his horse or a great buffet. But for the most part they will not fight on foote, with young knights, for they are wighty and strongly armed. For in likewise sir Launcelot du lake when hee was first made knight hee was often put to the worse on horsbacke, but euer on foote he requoted his renowne, and slew and defouled many knights of the round Table. And therefore the rebuke that Sir Launcelot did to many knights, causeth them that bee men of prouesse to beware, for often I haue seene the old proued knights rebuked and slaine by them that

and his Knights of the round Table.

that were but young beginners. Thus they rode alway talking by the way together. Here leaue we off a while of this tale, and speake we of sir Launcelot du lake.

CHAP. XLVI.

How Sir Lancelot came to the Court and heard of Sir La cote male taile, and how he followed after him, and how Sir La cote male taile was prisoner:

As when he was come to the Court of King Arthur, there he heard tell of the young knight Sir La cote male taile how hee slew the Lyon, and also how he tooke vpon him the aduenture of the blacke shield, the which was named at that time the hardiest aduenture of the world. So God me helpe said Sir Lancelot vnto many of his fellows, it is shame to all you Noble knights to suffer such a young knight to take such an aduenture vpon him for his destruction. For I will that ye wit said the Noble knight sir Lancelot that Damosell Maledisaunt hath bozne that shield many a day for to seeke the most proued knights, and that was shee that Breus saunce pitie tooke that shield from her. And after sir Tristram de Lyones rescued that shield and gaue it to her againe. A little before that time Sir Tristram fought with my nephew Sir Blamor de Galis, for a quarrell that was betweene the King of Ireland and him. Then many knights were sorry that Sir La cote male taile was gone to that aduenture. Truly said sir Launcelot I cast me to ride after him. And within seauen dayes Sir Launcelot ouer-tooke sir La cote male taile. And then he saluted him and the Damosell Maledisaunt. And when sir Mordred saw sir Launcelot, he left their fellowship. And so Sir Launcelot rode with them all the day, and euer the Damosell Maledisaunt rebuked sir La cote male taile full vncourteously. And then Sir Launcelot answered for him. And then shee left off sir La cote male taile, and rebuked Sir Launcelot. So this means while Sir Tristram de Lyones sent by a Damosell a letter vnto Sir Launcelot, in excusing him of the wedding of the faire Damosell Honde le blaunch mains, and said in the letter

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

as hee was a true knight hee had neuer to doe fleshly with Isonde le blaunch mains and passing curteously and gentilly sir Tristram wrote vnto Sir Launcelot, alway beseeching him to be his good friend and vnto La beale Isonde of Cornewaile, and that sir Launcelot would excuse him, if so were that he saw her. And within short time by the grace of God said sir Tristram he would speake with La beale Isonde and with him right hastily. When Sir Launcelot departed from the damosell and from sir La cote male taile soz to ouersee that letter and soz to write an other letter vnto Sir Tristram de lioness. And in the meane while sir La cote male taile rode with the damosell vntill they came vnto a Castle which hight Pendragon, and there they saw standing befoze them six knights, and one of them proffered to iust with Sir La cote male taile:

And there sir La cote male taile smot him ouer his horse croup. And after that the six knights set vpon him all at once with their speares, and there they smote Sir La cote male taile downe horse and man, and then they alighted sodainely and set hand vpon him all at once and toke him prisoner, & so led him vnto the castle and kept him as prisoner. And on the morrow sir Launcelot arose and deliuered the damosell with letters vnto Sir Tristram, and then hee toke his way after Sir La cote male taile, and by the way vpon a brydge there was a knight that proffered Sir Launcelot to iust, and Sir Launcelot smote him downe, and then they fought on foot a noble battaile together and a mighty. And so at the last Sir Launcelot smote him downe groueling vpon his hands and knees, and then that knight yelded him, and Sir Launcelot receiued him goodly. Sir said the knight, I require you tell mee your name, for my heart giueth much vnto you. Nay said Sir Launcelot, as at this time I will not tell you my name, vnlesse that ye will tel me your name. Certainly said the knight, my name is Sir Neroueus, that was made knight of my Lord Sir Launcelot du lake. Ah Neroueus de lyle said sir Launcelot, I am right glad that ye are proued a good knight, for wit ye well now my name is sir Launcelot du lake. Alas said Neroueus de lyle, what haue I done, and therewith he fell flatling to his face and would

and his Knights of the round Table.

would haue killed them, but Sir Launcelot would not let him. And then either made great ioye of other. And then Sir Neroueus told Sir Launcelot that he should not goe to the castle Pendragon, and there is a Lord a mighty knight, and hath many knights with him, And this night I heard say that they toke yesterday a knight prisoner that rode with a damosell, and they say hee is a knight of the round table.

CHAP. XLVII.

How Sir Launcelot fought with sixe knights, and after that he fought with Sir Brian, and how he deliuered all the prisoners.

A good faith said Sir Launcelot, that knight is my fellow and him shall I rescue, or else I shall leese my life for him. And therewith he rode forth vntill he came befoze the castle Pendragon, and anon there came sixe knights, and all made ready to set vpon sir Launcelot at once. When sir Launcelot sentred his speare and smote at the foremost that he brake in sunder, and thre of them hit and thre failed. And then Sir Launcelot pass through them and lightly hee turned againe, and smote an other knight throughout the body and through the horse arson more then an ell, and therewith his speare brake. So then all the remnant of the foure knights drew their swords, and full egerly they lashed at sir Launcelot, and at every stroke that Sir Launcelot bestowed they were wounded in sundry wise, so that they auoided their saddels soze wounded. And forthwith he rode hurling into the castle. And the Lord of the Castle that was that time called sir Brian de Galles which was a noble man, and was a great enemy to king Arthur, within a while he was armed and on horse, and then they sentred their speares and hurled together so longly that both their horses fell to the earth. And then they auoided their saddels and horses and dressed their shields, and drew their swords and fang together as wood men, and there were many strokes giuen in a litle while. And at the last Sir Launcelot gaue Sir Brian such a buffet that hee fell vpon his knees and there with Sir Launcelot kept vnto him,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

him, and with great force he pulled off his helme. And when Sir Brian saw that he should beaine, then he yielded him, and put him unto his mercy, and grace. When Sir Launcelot made him to deliuer all his prisoners that he had within his castle and therein Sir Launcelot found thirty knights of King Arthurs Court, and forty ladies, and so he deliuered them and rode his way. And when Sir Launcelot male taile was deliuered, he gat his horse and his harneis and his damosell Maledisant. The meane while Sir Neoueris that Sir Launcelot had fought withall at the bridge sent a damosell after Sir Launcelot for to wit howe he had sped at the castle of Bendragon. And then they that were within the Castle meruailed what knight he was when Sir Brian and his knights deliuered all those prisoners. Haue yee no meruaile said the damosell, for he is the best knight in the world that did this iourney, and wit ye well said she, it was Sir Launcelot du lake. Then was Sir Brian full glad, and so was the Lady and all his knights, that such a noble man should winne them. And then the damosell and Sir Launcelot male taile vnderstood that it was Sir Launcelot that had ridden with them in fellowship, then she remembered her how she had rebuked him, and called him coward, then was she passing heauy and sorrowfull.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Sir Launcelot met with the damosell named *Maledisant* and how he named her the damosell *Bienpensant*,

And then they took their horses, and rode forth a pace after Sir Launcelot, and within two mile they overtook him, and saluted him and greatly they thanked him, and the damosell cried Sir Launcelot mercy of her euill deeds and said. Now I know the source of all true and loyal knight hood is departed betwene Sir Tristram and you. For God knoweth said the damosell that I haue fought you my Lord Sir Launcelot and you Sir Tristram long, and now I thanke God that I haue met with you, and once at Camelot I met with Sir Tristram, and there he rescued this blacke shield with the white hands holding

and his Knights of the round Table.

which Sir Breus sauncopie had taken from me. Now faire damosell said Sir Launcelot, who is your name. Sir said she, there came a damosell from a castle that ye fought withall at the bridge, and she told me your name was Sir Launcelot du lake. Blame haue we then Sir Launcelot, but her Lord Sir Neruous hath told her. The damosell said Sir Launcelot vpon this covenant I will do you, so that ye will not rebuke this knight Sir Launcelot male taile no more, for he is a right good knight, and I know but that he will proue a noble knight, and for his sake that he should be destroyed, I follow him for to succure him in his great neede. Ah, Jesu thank you said the damosell, I will say to you and to him both, I rebuked him for no hate that I hated him, but for great love that I had him, for euer I supposed he had bene too young and too soft to take vpon him these adventures, and therefore by my life I would haue driven him away for the lealouie that I had him, for it may be no young knights had that shall take his adventure to the end. Her dien said Sir Launcelot, well said, where as ye are called the damosell Maledisant, I will call you the damosell Bienpensant. And so they rode forth while til they came to the borders of that countrey of Babiloyne, and there they found a ful faire village with a strong castle like a fortrell. And when Sir Launcelot and they were come to the bridge, there stard forth before them many gentlemen armed that said. Faire Lord ye may not passe ouer this bridge, and this fortrell because of the blacke shield that I see on your backe, and therefore there shall not passe nore more but you at once, therefore choose which of you shall enter first. When Sir Launcelot profered himselfe to enter within this bridge, the damosell said Sir Launcelot male taile, I beseech you let me enter first, for I am the damosell of this fortrell, and if I may speede well, I will send for you, and if it happen that I be beaine, there it goeth. And if so that I am taken prisoner, then may yee come and rescue me. I am loth said Sir Launcelot to let you passe this passage. The damosell said Launcelot male taile, I pray you let me put my body in this

The Historie of Prince Arthur

this aventure. And so he went with Sir Launcelot, and
 he was your speere. So he entred and anon there met with
 him two brethren that one hight Sir Plaine de force, and that
 other hight Sir Plaine de amours, and anon they met with Sir La
 cote male taile and first Sir La cote male taile smote downe Sir
 Plaine de force, and some after he smote downe Sir Plaine de
 amours and then they brieded them together with swords,
 and so they had Sir La cote male taile might and to his did, and
 there was passing and foyning with speeres, and so they began
 full hard to assay Sir La cote male taile, and many great wounds
 they gaue him upon his head and upon his brest, and upon his
 shoulders. And as he might euer amply he gaue sad strokes
 againe. And then the two brethren traced and trauesed for to
 be on both handes of Sir La cote male taile but by fine force and
 mightly prowesse he gat them afore him. And so then when
 he felt himselfe so wounded he doubled his strokes and gaue
 them so many wounds that he fellet them to the earth and
 would haue slaine them had they not called them. And right so
 La cote male taile took the best horse that there was of them
 two, and so rode forth by his way to that other forresse and
 bridge, another he enter into the third brother whose name
 was Sir Plenorius a full noble knight and there they lusted to
 gether, and either smote other downe horse and man to the
 earth. And then they two auoyded their horses and brieded
 their shields and brest their speeres and gaue many sad strokes,
 and one while the one knight was afore on the bridge and an
 other while the other. And thus they fought six houres and
 more and neuer rested, and thus Sir Launcelot and the damoysel
 beheld them. And said the damoysel my knight fighteth pas
 sing sore and ouer long. Now may ye see Sir Launcelot
 that he is a noble knight, for to consider his first battaile and
 his greuous wounds, and so wounded as he is, it is great mer
 uaille that he may endure this long battaile with that good
 knight.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Sir Launcelot was taken prisoner, and after restewed
 by Sir Launcelot, and how Sir Launcelot ouercame foure
 brethren.

meane while Sir La cote male taile sunke downe upon
 the earth, for what for wounds and what for blood he might
 not. When the other knight had pittie of him, and said.
 O my knight dismay you not, for if ye had bene fresh
 and met with me as I was, I know well I should not
 haue beene so long as ye haue bene, and therefore for your
 honour and valiantnesse I shall shew you great kindnesse
 and helpe in all that euer I may. And forthwith the noble
 knight Plenorius took him by in his armes and led him
 to the towre. And then he commanded him the wine, and
 him for to search him and for to stop his bleeding
 wounds. Sir said La cote male taile withdraw you from me.
 I will go to yonder bridge againe, for there will meete you
 in manner knight then euer I was. And he said Sir Ple
 norius here another manner knight behind of your fellowe.
 And he cruelly said La cote male taile there is a much better
 knight than I am. What is his name said Sir Plenorius. He
 know it for me at this time said Sir La cote male taile.
 And the knight, he shall be encountred withall what
 he be. When Sir Plenorius heard a knight call that said.
 Plenorius where art thou, either thou must deliuer me the
 knight that thou hast led into the towre, or else come and
 fight with me. When Sir Plenorius gate his horse, and
 took a great speare in his hand gallopping as the hurle
 wind he came toward Sir Launcelot, and then they began
 to fight their speares and came together like thunder, and
 either other so mightily that their horses fell downe on
 the ground and then they auoyded their horses and bled out
 their speeres, and like two buls they lashed together with
 their strokes and foynes, but euer Sir Launcelot recovered
 him upon him, and Sir Plenorius traced to haue gone about
 him, and Sir Launcelot would not suffer that, but bare him
 backe

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

backer and backer till he came nigh the Towre gate, and then said Sir Launcelot, I know the well for a good knight, but wit thou well thy life and death is in my hands and therefore yeeld thou to me and thy prisoners. The other answered not a word but strooke mightily vpon Sir Launcelots helme, that fire sprang out of his eyes, then Sir Launcelot doubled his strokes so thicke, and smote at him so mightily that hee made him to kucele vpon his knees, and therewith Sir Launcelot kept vpon him and pulled him downe groueling. When sir Plenorius yeelbed him & his Towre and all his prisoners at his will. And then sir Launcelot receiued him and tooke his trough, and then hee rode to the other bidge, and there sir Launcelot lusted with other three of his Brethren, the one hight sir Pillounes and the other hight sir Pellogris, and the thirde hight sir Pellandris, and first on horsebacke sir Launcelot smote them downe and afterwarde he beat them on foote, and made them to yeeld them vnto him, and then he returned vnto Sir Plenorius, and there he found in his prison King Carados of Scotland and many other knights, and all they were deliuered. And then sir La cote male taile came to Sir Launcelot, and then sir Launcelot would haue giuen him all these fortreffes and these bidges. Pay said La cote male taile, I will not haue Sir Plenoris liuelihood, so that he will grant you my Lord Sir Launcelot to come vnto King Arthurs Court and to be his knight and all his Brethern I will pray you my Lord to let him haue his liuelihood, I will well said sir Launcelot, so that hee will come to the Court of King Arthur, and become his man and his five Brethren. And as for you Sir Plenorius, I will undertake said Sir Launcelot at the next feast, so there be a place void that ye shall be knight of the round Table. Sir said Sir Plenorius at the next feast of pentecost I will be at King Arthurs Court, and at that time I will be guided and ruled by King Arthur and he be so pleased. Then Sir Launcelot and Sir La cote male taile rested them there vnto the time that Sir La cote male taile was whole of all his wounds, and there they had merry cheare and good rest and many good games and there were many faire Ladies.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. L.

How Sir Lancelot made *La cote male taile* Lord of the Castle of Pendragon, and after was made Knight of the round Table.

About the meane while there came sir Kay the seneschall and Sir Brandiles & anon they fellowshipped with them. And then within ten dayes departed two knights of King Arthurs Court from all these fortreffes. And as sir Lancelot came by the Castle of Pendragon, there hee put sir Brian de les Iles from his lands, because he would neuer be withold with King Arthur and all that Castle of Pendragon and all the Lands thereof he gaue vnto sir La cote male taile. And then sir Launcelot sent for sir Neroneus that he had made once knight, and he made him to haue all the rule of that Castle and of the countrey vnder La cote male taile. And so they rode vnto King Arthurs Court all together. And at Pentecost next following there was Sir Plenorius and also sir La cote male taile other wise by right called Sir Brewnor le noire both made knights of the round Table, and great lands King Arthur gaue them, and there Sir Brewnor le noire wedded the Damosell Maledisant, and after ther was called Beauuiant. But euer for the most part he was called Sir La cote male taile, and he proued a passing noble knight and a mighty, and many worshipfull deeds he did after in his life, and Sir Plenorius proued a noble knight and full of prouesse. And all the dayes of their life for the most part they waited vpon Sir Launcelot. And Sir Plenorius brethren were euer knights of King Arthur. And also as the french booke maketh mention, sir La cote male taile auenged his fathers death.

CHAP. L I.

How *Labeale Isoud* sent letters vnto Sir *Tristram* by her maiden *Bragwaine*, and of diuers aduentures of Sir *Tristram*.

Now leaue we here off sir La cote male taile, and turne we vnto Sir *Tristram* de Lyones that was in Britaine.

3

When

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

When La beale Isond understood that he was married, she sent vnto him by her maids Bragwaine as pittious letters as could be thought & made, & her conclusion was, that if it pleased Sir Tristram that he would come to her Court and bring with him Isond le blanch mains, and they should be kept as well as she her selfe. When Sir Tristram called vnto him Sir Kay Hedijs and asked him whether he would goe with him into Cornewalle secretly. He answered and said hee was ready at all times. And then he let ordaine priuely a little Wessel, and therein went Sir Tristram, Kay Hedijs, Dame Bragwaine and Gouvernale Sir Tristrams Squire. So when they were in the Sea a contrarious wind blew them on the coasts of North Wales nigh the Castle perillous. When said Sir Tristram here shall wee abide this ten dayes, and Gouvernale my Squire with you, and if so be I come not againe by that day take the next way into Cornewalle for within this forrest are many strange adventures as I haue heard say, and some of them I call mee to proue or I depart, and when I may I shall haue me after you. When Sir Tristram and Sir Kay Hedijs tooke their horses and departed from their fellowship. And so they rode within that forrest a mile and more. And at the last Sir Tristram saw before him a likely Knight and a well made man, all armed sitting by a cleere fountaine or Well and a stronge mighty horse nere vnto him tied to a great Stake, and a man houting and riding by him leading an horse that was laden with speares.

And this Knight that was by the Well seemed by his countenance to be passing heauy. When Sir Tristram rode nere him and said. Faire Knight why sit you so drouping, ye seeme for to be a Knight arraunt by your armes and harneis, and therefore dresse you to iust with one of vs or with both. Therewith that Knight made no words, but tooke his shield and buckled it about his necke, and lightly he tooke his horse and leapt vpon him, and then he tooke a great speare of his squire, and departed his way a furlong. So Sir Kay Hedijs asked leaue at Sir Tristram for to iust first, doe your best said Sir Tristram. So they met together, and there Sir Kay Hedijs had

and his Knights of the round Table.

had a fall, and was sore wounded on high above the paps. When Sir Tristram said Knight thou hast well iusted, now make thee ready to me. I am ready said the Knight, and then that Knight tooke an other great speare in his hand and encountred with Sir Tristram, and there by great force that Knight smote vpon Sir Tristram from his horse, and gaue him a great fall. When Sir Tristram was sore ashamed, and lightly he auoided his horse and put his shield before him and drew out his sword. And then Sir Tristram required that Knight of his Knight-hood to fight on foote & fight with him. I will wel said the Knight, and so he alighted on foote and auoided his horse, and cast his shield vpon his shoulder, and drew out his sword and there they fought a long battaile together nigh two houres. When Sir Tristram said faire Knight hold thy hand, and tell mee of whence thou art, and what is thy name. As for that said the Knight I will bee aduised, but if thou wilt tell me thy name, peradventure I will tell thee mine.

CHAP. LII.

How Sir Tristram met with Sir Lamorake de Galis, and how they fought, and after accorded neuer to fight together.

Now faire Knight said hee, my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones. Sir said the other Knight, and my name is Sir Lamorake de Galis. Ah Sir Lamorake said Sir Tristram, well I haue met and bethinke thee now of the despite that thou doest to mee of the sending of the horne vnto King Markes Court, to the intent to haue slaine or dishonoured my Lady the Queene La beale Isond, and therefore wit thou well said Sir Tristram the one of vs shall die or we depart. Sir said Sir Lamorake, remember that wee were together in the Ile of Gange, and at that time ye promised me great friendship. When Sir Tristram would not make no longer delayes, but iusted at Sir Lamorake, and thus they fought long, till either were weary of other. When Sir Tristram said to Sir Lamorake, in all my life met I neuer with such a Knight that was so big and so well breathed as ye be, therefore said Sir Tristram, it were

were pittie that any of vs both should here be mischeued. Sir said sir Lamorake, for your renowne I will that yee haue the worship of this battaile, and therefore I will yeeld me vnto you. And therewith hee tooke the point of his sword for to yeeld him. May said sir Tristram yee shall not doe so, for I know well your proffers and more of your gentlenesse then for feare and dread yee haue of mee. And therewith sir Tristram proffered him his sword saying, Sir Lamorake as an ouercome knight I yeeld me vnto you, as vnto a man of the most noble prouesse that euer I met withall. May said sir Lamorake, I will doe you gentlenesse, I require you let vs be sworne together that neuer none of vs shall after this day haue to doe with other. And therewith sir Tristram and sir Lamorake swore that neuer none of them should fight against ether for weale nor for woe.

CHAP. LIII.

How Sir Palomides followed the questing beast, and how hee smote downe both Sir Tristram and Sir Lamoracke with one speare.

This meane while there came Sir Palomides the good knight following the questing beast that had in shap and head like a Serpents head and a body like a Liber, buttockes like a Lyon, and footed like a hart, and in his body there was such a noyse as it had been the noyse of thirtie couple of hounds questing, and such a noyse that beast made where soeuer hee went. And this beast euermore Sir Palomides followed, for it was called the quest. And right so as he followed this beast came sir Tristram and sir Lamorake. And to make short tale sir Palomides smote downe sir Tristram and sir Lamorake both with one speare and so departed after the quest Glarisaunt, that was called the questing beast, wherefore these two knights were passing wroth that Sir Palomides would not fight with them on fote. Here may men vnderstand that he of worship, that hee was neuer formed that at euery time might stand, but some time he was put to the worse by euill fortune. And at sometime the worst knight putteth the better knight vnto

a rebuke. So then Sir Tristram and Sir Lamorake gat Sir Kay Hedijs vpon a shield betweene them both and led him vnto a fosters lodge, and there they gave him in charge to keepe him well, and with him they abode thre dayes and more. And then the two knights tooke their horses and all at a crosse they departed. And then said sir Tristram to sir Lamorake, I require you if yee happen to meete with sir Palomides, say vnto him that he shall find me at the same Well there as I met him, and there I sir Tristram shal proue whether he be better knight then I. And so either departed from other and rode sundry wayes, and Sir Tristram rode high thereas Sir Kay Hedijs was and Sir Lamorake rode vntill he came to a Chapell, and there he put his horse to pasture. And anon there came Sir Meliograunce that was King Bagdemagus sonne, and there he put his horse to pasture, and was not ware of Sir Lamorake, and then this knight sir Meliograunce made his moane of the loue that she had vnto Duene Guenener, and there hee made a lamentable complaint. All this heard Sir Lamorake, and on the morrow Sir Lamorake tooke his horse and rode vnto the forrest, and there hee met two knights lying vnder the shadow of the wood. Faire knights said sir Lamorake, what doe yee houe there and watching, and if yee be knights arraunt that will Iust, loe I am ready. May sir knight said they, not so, wee abide not here for to iust with you but we lye here in awaite of a knight that slew our Brother. What knight was that said Sir Lamorake that yee should saue meete withall. Sir said they, it is Sir Launcelot du lake which slew our Brother, and if euer wee may meete with him, hee shall not escape but we shall sleigh him. Yee take vpon you a great charge said Sir Lamorake, for Sir Launcelot is a noble proued knight. And for that said they we doubt not, for there is none of vs but wee are good enough for him. I will not beleue that said Sir Lamorake for I heard neuer yet dayes of my life of no knight but that Sir Lancelot was too big for him.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LIIII.

How Sir *Lamoracke* met with Sir *Meliogrance*, and fought together for the beautie of *Queene Gueneuer*.

Right so as they stood talking thus, Sir *Lamorake* was ware where Sir *Launcelot* came riding straight toward them, then Sir *Lamoracke* saluted him, and he him againe. And then Sir *Lamoracke* asked Sir *Lancelot* if there were any thing that hee might doe for him in those marches. Nay said Sir *Launcelot*, not at this time I thanke you. And so either departed from other and Sir *Lamoracke* rode againe there as he left the two knights and then hee found them hid in the leued wood. Hee on you said Sir *Lamorake* false cowards, it is pittie and shame that any of you should take the high order of knight-hood. So Sir *Lamoracke* departed from them, and within a while he met with Sir *Meliogrance* and then Sir *Lamoracke* asked him why hee loued *Queene Gueneuer* as hee did, for I was not farre from you when yee made your complaint by the Chappell. Did yee so said Sir *Meliogrance*, then will I abide it, I loue *Queene Gueneuer*, what will yee with it, I will proue it and make it good that shee is the fairest Lady and most of beautie in the world. As to that said Sir *Lamoracke*, I say nay thereto, for *Queene Morgause* of *Wikeney* Mother vnto Sir *Gawaine* and his Mother is the fairest *Queene* and Lady that now beareth life. That is not so said Sir *Meliogrance* and that I will proue with my hands vpon thy body. Will yee so said Sir *Lamoracke*, and in a better quarrell keepe I not to fight. And then they departed either from other in great wrath, and then they came running together as it had been thunder, & either smote other so mightily that their horses fell backward vnto the earth. And then they auided their horses and dressed their shields and drew their swords, and then they hurled together as it had been two wild Boozes, thus they fought a great while, for Sir *Meliogrance* was a good knight and a man of great might, but Sir *Lamorake* was too hard and too big for him, and put him alwayes abacke,

but

and his Knights of the round Table.

but either had wounded other wondrous sore, and so as they stood thus fighting, by fortune there came Sir *Launcelot* and Sir *Bleoberis* riding. And then anon Sir *Launcelot* rode betwene them both and asked them for what cause they fought so together, for yee are both knights of King *Arthurs* Court.

CHAP. LV.

How Sir *Launcelot* and Sir *Bleoberis* came riding and found Sir *Lamoracke* and Sir *Meliogrance* fighting, and how Sir *Lamoracke* iusted with King *Arthur*.

Sir said *Meliogrance* I shall tell you for what cause wee doe this battaile. I praised my Lady *Queene Gueneuer*, and said she was the fairest Lady of the world, and Sir *Lamoracke* said nay thereto, for he said that *Queene Morgause* of *Wikeney* was fairer then shee and moze of beautie. Ah Sir *Lamoracke* why sayest thou so, it is not thy part for to dispraise the Princesse that thou art vnder her obeisance and we all. And therewith he alighted on foote and said, for this quarrell make thee ready, for I will proue it vpon thee that *Queene Gueneuer* is the fairest Lady and most of beautie in the world. Sir said Sir *Lamoracke*, I am loath to haue to doe with you in this quarrell, for euery man thinketh his owne Lady fairest, and though I praise the Lady that I loue most, yee should not therfore bee wroth, for though my Lady *Queene Gueneuer* be the fairest in your eye, wit ye well *Queene Morgause* of *Wikeney* is the fairest in mine eye, and so euery knight thinketh his owne Lady fairest, and wit ye well sir yee are the man in the world (except Sir *Tristram*) that I am most loth to haue to doe withall. But if yee will needs fight with mee I shall endure as long as I may. Then spake Sir *Bleoberis* and said. My Lord Sir *Launcelot* I will neuer so misadvised as yee are now, for Sir *Lamoracke* saith but reason and knightly. For I warne you I haue a Lady, and mee thinketh she is the fairest Lady of the world, were this a great reason that yee should be wroth with me for such language. And well ye wote that Sir *Lamoracke* is as noble a knight as I know, and he hath ought you

The Historie of Prince Arthure

you and vs euer good will, and therefore I pray you be good friends. And then said Sir Launcelot vnto Sir Lameracke, I pray you forgiue mee all mine euill will, and if I was misadvised I will amend it. Sir said Sir Lameracke the miends is sone made betwene you and me. And so Sir Launcelot and Sir Bleoberis departed. And sir Meliograunce and sir Lameracke tooke their horses and either departed from other. And within a while came King Arthur and met with sir Lameracke and iusted with him, and there hee smote downe sir Lameracke, and wounded him sore with a speare, and so he rode from him, wherfore sir Lameracke was wroth that he would not fight with him on foote, howe be it sir Lameracke knew not King Arthur.

CHAP. LVI.

How Sir Kay mett with Sir Tristram, and after of the shame spoken of the Knights of Cornewayle, and how they iusted.

Now leaue we off this tale, and speake we of sir Tristram de lyones that as he rode he met with sir Kay the seneschall, and there sir Kay asked sir Tristram of what countrey he was come. Sir Tristram answered that he was of the countrey of Cornewaille. It may well be said sir Kay the seneschall, for yet heard I neuer in no place that euer any good knights came out of Cornewaille. What is euill spoke said sir Tristram de Lyones but it it please you to tell mee your name I require you. Sir wit yee well said Sir Kay that my right name is Sir Kay the seneschall. As that your name said sir Tristram, now witte yee well that yee are called the shamfullest knight of your tongue that now is liuing in the world, howe be it yee are called a good knight, but yee are called vnforsunate, and passing ouerthwart of your tongue. And thus they rode together till they came to a bridge and there was a knight would not let them passe, till that one of them had iusted with him.

And so that knight iusted with sir Kay and there that knight gaue sir Kay a fall from his horse, and that knights name was sir Tor sir Lamerackes halfe brother. And then they two rode to their lodging, and there they found sir Brandiles. And sir Tor

came

and his Knights of the round Table.

came thither anon after. And so as they sate at their supper these foure knights, three of them spake of shame of cornish knights, sir Tristram heard all that they said & said but little, but he thought the more; but at that time he discovered not his name. In the morning sir Tristram tooke his horse and abode them on their way, & there sir Brandiles proffered to iust with sir Tristram, and so sir Tristram smote him downe horse and all to the earth. And then sir Tor le fyle de valher encountered with sir Tristram & there sir Tristram smote him downe from his horse. And then he rode his way, and sir Kay followed him, but he would not of his fellowship. And then sir Brandiles came to sir Kay and said I would full faine know what that knights name is. Come on your way with mee said sir Kay and wee shall pray him for to tell vs his name. So they rode together untill they came nigh to him, and then they were ware where as hee sate by a well, and had put off his helme to drinke at the well. And when he saw them come he laced on his helme lightly, and tooke his horse & proffered them to iust. Kay said sir Brandiles, we iusted late enough with you, wee come not to that entent. But for this we come, to require you of your knighthood for to tell vs your name. Faire knights thence it is your desire, and to please you, yee shall witte that my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones nephew vnto King Marke of Cornewaille. In good time said sir Brandiles, and well yee be found, and witte yee well that we are right glad that wee haue found you, and wee be of a fellowship that would be right glad of your company, for yee are the knight of the world which the noble fellowship of the round table desireth most to haue your company. God thanke them said sir Tristram of their great goodnesse, but I as yet feele well that I am vnable for to be of their fellowship, for I was neuer of such deeds of worthines for to be of the company of such a fellowship. Ah said sir Kay and yee be sir Tristram de Lyones yee are the man now called most of prouesse, except it be sir Launcelot du lake. For he beareth not the life christian ne heathen that can find such another knight to speak of his prouesse and of his hands, and his truth withall. For yet could there neuer creature say of him any dishonour

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and make it good. And thus they talked a great while, and then they departed either from other such waies as vnto them seemed best.

CHAP. LVII.

How King *Arthur* was brought into the forrest perillous, and how Sir *Tristram* saued his life.

Now shall yee heare what the cause was that King *Arthur* came into the forrest perillous, that was in North wales, by the meanes of a Lady her name was *Annwre*, and this Lady came to King *Arthur* at *Cardife*, and she by faire promise and faire behests, made King *Arthur* to ride with her to that forrest perillous, and she was a great fosteresse and many daies she had loued King *Arthur*, and because that she would haue him to lye with her, she came into that countrey. So when the King was gone with her, many of his knights followed after him, and when they missed him, as Sir *Launcelot*, Sir *Brandiles* and many other. And when shee had brought him to her Towre, shee desired him to lye with her. And then the King remembred him of his Lady, and would not lye by her for no craft that shee could make. Then euery day shee would make him ride into that forrest with his owne knights to the intent to haue had King *Arthur* slaine. For when this Lady *Annwre* saw that shee might not haue him at her will, then shee laboured by false meanes to haue destroyed King *Arthur* and slaine him. And then the lady of the lake that was alway friendly vnto King *Arthur*, shee vnderstood by her subtil craft that King *Arthur* was like to be destroyed and therefore this Lady of the lake that hight *Nineue* came into that forrest to seeke Sir *Launcelot* du lake or Sir *Tristram* for to helpe King *Arthur*, for as that day this Lady of the lake knew well that King *Arthur* should be slaine vlesse that he had helpe of one of these two knights, & thus she rode vp and downe till she met with Sir *Tristram*, anon as she saw him she knew him. My Lord Sir *Tristram* said she well be yee met and blessed be the time that I haue met with you, for as this day and within these two houres shall be done the foulest dede that euer was done in this

and his Knights of the round Table.

this land. Oh faire *Damosell* said Sir *Tristram*, may I amend it. Come on with mee saith shee, and that in all the hast yee may, for yee shall see the most worshipfullest knight in the world hard bestead. Then said Sir *Tristram*, I am ready to helpe such a noble man. He is neither better nor worse said the Lady of the Lake but the Noble King *Arthur* himselfe. God defend said Sir *Tristram* that euer hee should be in such distresse. Then they rode together a great pace till they came to a Turret or Castle, and vnderneath that Castle they saw a knight standing on his feete fighting with two knights and so Sir *Tristram* beheld them. And at the last the two knights smote downe the one knight, and the one of them unlaced his helme to haue slaine him. And the Lady *Annwre* gate King *Arthurs* sword in her hand to haue striken off his head. And therewithall came Sir *Tristram* with his sword drawn in his hand crying, Traittresse, traitresse leaue that. And forthwithall Sir *Tristram* smote one of the two knights through the body that hee fell downe dead to the earth. And then hee rushed to the other knight and with the pomell of his sword he smote him so hard that hee fell from his horse and brake his backe in sunder. And in the meane while the *Damosell* of the Lake cryed vnto King *Arthur*, let not that vnttrue Lady escape. So King *Arthur* ouertooke her and with the same sword hee smote off her head. And the *Damosell* of the Lake tooke vp her Head and hung it vp by the haire on her saddle bow. And then Sir *Tristram* horsed King *Arthur* and rode his way forth with him, but hee charged the Lady of the Lake not to discouer his name as at that time.

So when King *Arthur* was horsed hee full heartily thanked Sir *Tristram*, and desired him to tell him his name, but hee would not tell him, but that he was a poore knight aduenturous. And so hee bare King *Arthur* fellowship till he met with some of his owne knights. And within a while he met with Sir *Ector* de maris, and hee knew not King *Arthur* nor Sir *Tristram* and he desired to iust with one of them. When Sir *Tristram* rode vnto Sir *Ector* and smote him downe from his horse: And when he had so done, hee came againe vnto King *Arthur* and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

said. My Lord yonder is one of your owne Knights, hee may beare you fellowshipe another day that deed which I haue done for you I trust vnto God yee shall vnderstand that I will doe you seruice. Alas said King Arthur, let mee know what knight yee are. Not at this time said Sir Tristram. So hee departed, and left King Arthur and sir Ector de maris together.

CHAP. LVIII.

How Sir Tristram came to la beale Isond and how Sir Kay Hedius began to loue la beale Isond, and of the letter that Sir Tristram found.

And then at a day set Sir Tristram and Sir Lamoracke met at the Well, and then they tooke sir Kay Hedius at the fosters house and so they rode with him to the ship where as they left Dame Bragwaine and Gouvernale and so they sailed into Cornewaille altogether, and by the assent and information of Dame Bragwaine when they were landed they rode vnto sir Dinas the seneschall, a good and a trusty friend of sir Tristrams. And so Dame Bragwaine and sir Dinas rode vnto King Markes Court, and told the Queene la beale Isond that Sir Tristram was nigh her in that Country. When for very pure ioy la beale Isond swounded, and when she might speake she said. Gentle knight seneschall helpe that I may speake with him or else my heart will burst. Then sir Dinas and Dame Bragwaine brought sir Tristram and sir Kay Hedius priuely vnto the Court to a Chamber whereas la beale Isond had assigned them. And to tell the ioy that was betweene la beale Isond and sir Tristram, there is no tongue can tell, nor no heart can thinke it, nor no pen can write it. And at the first time that euer Sir Kay Hedius saw la beale Isond, hee was so enamoured vpon her, that he might neuer withdraw the very pure loue. And so at the last as yee shall heare of the Booke be ended, how sir Kay Hedius died for the loue of la beale Isond, and then priuely he wrote vnto her letters and ballads of the most goodliest that were vsed in those dayes. And when la beale Isond vnderstood his letters she had great pittie of his

complaint

his and Knights of the round Table:

complaint and vnadvisedly she wrote an other letter to comfort him withall. And Sir Tristram was all this time in a Murret at the command of la beale Isond and when she might she came vnto sir Tristram. So on a day King Marke played at the chesse vnder a Chamber window, and at that time sir Tristram and sir Kay Hedius were within the Chamber ouer King Marke, and as it misshappened Sir Tristram found that letter that Sir Kay Hedius sent vnto la beale Isond. Also hee found the letter that shee wrought to Sir Kay Hedius, and at that time la beale Isond was in the same Chamber. When Sir Tristram came to la beale Isond and said. Madame here is a letter that was sent vnto you, and here is the letter that ye sent vnto him, that sent you that letter, alas Madame the good loue that I haue loued you, and many lands and riches that I haue forsaken for your loue, now yee are a traitresse to me which doth me great paine. But as for thee sir Kay Hedius I haue brought thee out of Britaine into this countrey, and thy father King Howell I waane his lands, how bee it I wedded mine owne Sister Isond le blaunch mains, for the goodnesse which thee did to mee, and yet as I am a true knight thee is a cleane Virgine for mee, but wit thou well said he vnto Sir Kay Hedius for thy fallshood and treason that thou hast done to mee I will reuenge it vpon thee. And therewith sir Tristram drew out his sword and said. Sir Kay Hedius keepe thee. And then La beale Isond swounded vnto the earth. And when Sir Kay Hedius saw Sir Tristram came vpon him, he saw none other remedy but lept out at a bay window euen ouer the Head where King Marke sate playing at the chesse. And when the King saw one come hurling ouer his head, he said. Fellow what art thou, and what is the cause that thou leapest out of that window. My Lord the King, said Sir Kay Hedius, it fortuneth mee that I was a sleepe in the window aboue your Head, and as I slept I slumbrd, and so I fell downe. And so sir Kay Hedius excused him.

How Sir Tristram departed from Tintagill, and how he sorrowed, and was so long in a forrest till he was out of his mind.

Then Sir Tristram dreaded soze leass he were discovered vnto the King that was there, wherefore hee drew him vnto the strength of the Towre, and armed him in such armour as hee had, soz to fight with them that would withstand him. And so when sir Tristram saw there was no resistance against him, hee sent Gouvernalle soz his horse and soz his speare, and knightly he rode forth openly out of the Castle which was called the Castle of Tintagill, and at the gate he met with sir Gingalin sir Gawaines Sonne. And anon sir Gingalin put his speare in the rest and ranne against sir Tristram and brake his speare. And Sir Tristram at that time had but a sword, and gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme, that he fell downe from his sadell to the earth and his sword fode downe and kered a sunder his horse necke. And then sir Tristram rode forth his way into the forrest. And all this doing saw King Marke. And then anon he sent a Squire vnto the hurt knight, and commanded him to come vnto him and so he did. And when King Marke wist that it was sir Gingalin, hee welcomed him, and gaue him a horse, and asked him what knight it was that had encountred with him. Sir said sir Gingalin, I wote not what knight he was, but well I wote that hee sighed soze and made sorrowfull dole. And then sir Tristram within a while met with a knight of his owne that hight sir Fergus. And when hee had met with him hee made great sorrow, in so much that hee fell downe off his horse in a faine, and in such sorrow hee was thre dayes and thre nights. And then at the last sir Tristram sent vnto the Court by sir Fergus soz to wit what tidings there was. And so as hee rode by the way he met with a Damosell that came from sir Palomides, to knowe & see how Sir Tristram did. And then sir Fergus told her how hee was almost out of his minde. Alas said the Damosell where shall I find him. In such a place shall yee find him said Sir Fergus. And then Sir Fergus

Fergus found Queene Isoud sicke in her bed making the greatest dole that any woman might make. And when the Damosell found Sir Tristram shee made great dole because she might not amend him, soz the more she made of him, the more was his paine. And at the last sir Tristram tooke his horse and rode his way from her, and then was it thre dayes and thre nights, oz that he could find him againe, and then she brought him meate and drinke, but he would none take. And then another time Sir Tristram escaped away from the Damosell, and it happined him to ride by the same Castle where Sir Palomides and Sir Tristram did battaile when la beale Isoud departed them, and there by fortune the Damosell met with Sir Tristram againe making the greatest dole that euer any creature made, and she went to the Lady of the Castle, and told her of the misadventure of Sir Tristram. Alas said the Lady of the Castle, where is my Lord Sir Tristram. Right heere by your Castle said the Damosell. In good time said the Lady, is hee so nigh by, he shall haue meate and drinke of the best, and a harpe & a pipe of his whereupon hee taught mee to play, soz of goodly harping he beareth the price in the world. So this Lady and the Damosell brought him meate and drinke, but he eate but little thereof. So vpon a night he put his horse from him, and then hee unlaced his armour and went into the wildernesse, and brake downe trees and boughes, and otherwhile when hee found the harp that the Lady sent him then would he harp and play thereupon and weepe together. And sometime when Sir Tristram was in the wood that the Lady wist not where hee was, then would she set her downe and play vpon the harp. And so would Sir Tristram come vnto that harp and harken the melodious sound thereof, and sometime he would harpe himself, thus he endured there a quarter of a yeare. And at the last he ran his way, and shee wist not where he was become. And then was he naked and waxed leane and poore of flesh, and so hee fell into the fellowship of herdmen and shepherds, and they would giue him of their meate and drinke. And when he did any shrewd dede they would beat him with rods, and they clipped him with sheares and made him like a foole.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LX.

How Sir Tristram sowled Sir Dagonet in a well, and how Sir Palomides sent a damosell to seeke Sir Tristram, and how Sir Palomides met with King Marke.

And upon a day Sir Dagonet King Arthurs soke came into Coznewaile with two squiers with him, and as they rode through that forrest, they came by a faire well where Sir Tristram was wont to be, and the weather was hot and they alighted downe to drinke of that well. And in the meane while their horses brake loose.

Right so Sir Tristram came to them, and first he sowled Sir Dagonet in that well, & after his squiers, and thereat laughed the shepheards, and forthwith he ran after their horses, and so brought them againe one by one, and right so as wet as they were he made them to leape vp and ride on their way. Thus Sir Tristram endured there halfe a yere naked, and would neuer come to towne nor village. The meane while the damosell that Sir Palomides sent to seeke Sir Tristram went vnto Sir Palomides, and told him all the mischiefes that Sir Tristram endured. Alas said Sir Palomides, it is great pittie that euer so noble a knight should be mischeued for the loue of a Lady. But neuerthelesse I will go and seeke him and comfort him if I may. When a little before that time la beale Isonde had commanded Sir Kay Hedijs out of the countrey of Coznewaile. So Sir Kay Hedijs departed with a dolorous heart. And by aduventure he met with Sir Palomides, and they enfellowshipped together, and either complayned vnto other of their hot loue that they loued la beale Isonde. Now let vs said Sir Palomides seeke Sir Tristram that loueth her as well as we, and let vs proue if we may recouer him. So they rode into that forrest, and thre daies & thre nights they would neuer take their lodging but euer sought Sir Tristram.

And upon a time by aduventure they met with King Marke that was ridden all alone from his men. When they saw him, Sir Palomides knew him, but Sir Kay Hedijs knew him not. Ah

falle

and his Knights of the round Table.

false king said Sir Palomides it is great pittie that thou hast thy life, for thou art a destroyer of all worshipfull knights, and by thy mischiefes and thy vengeance thou hast destroyed that most noble knight Sir Tristram de Lyones, and therefore defend thee said Sir Palomides, for thou shalt die this day. What were shame said King Marke, for ye are both armed, and I am unarmed. As for that said Sir Palomides I shall find a remedy therefore. Here is a knight with me, and thou shalt haue his harneys. Nay said King Marke, I will not haue to doe with you for cause haue ye none to me. For all the mischance that Sir Tristram hath was for a letter that he found, for as to me I did to him no displeasure, and our Lord God knoweth that I am full sorry and displeased for his disease and malady. So when King Marke had thus excused himselfe, they were good friends. And King Marke would haue had the vnto Mintage. But Sir Palomides would not, but turned to the realme of Loggys, and Sir Kay Hedijs said that he would goe into Britain.

Now turne we vnto Sir Dagonet againe, then when hee and his squiers were on horsebacke, he deemed that the shepheards had sent that soke to array them so because they laughed at him, and so they rode vnto the keepers of beasts and all to beate them. Sir Tristram saw them beaten that were wont to giue him meate and drinke, then hee ranne thither and gat Sir Dagonet by the head, and gaue him such a fall, that hee bruised him sore, so that he lay still, and then hee wraist his sword out of his hand, and therewith he ranne vnto one of his squiers & smote off his head, and the other fled, and so Sir Tristram took his way with that sword in his hand running as hee had bene wild wood. When Sir Dagonet rode to King Marke and told him how he had sped in that forrest, and therfore said Sir Dagonet, beware ye King Marke that ye come not about that well in the forrest, for there is a naked soke, and that soke and I soke met together, and he had almost slaine me. Ah said King Marke that is Sir Matto le breune that fell out of his witte, because he lost his Lady. For when Sir Gaheris smote downe Sir Matto and waane his Lady of him neuer since was he in his good minde, and that was pittie for he was a good knight.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LXI.

How it was noysed that Sir *Tristram* was dead, and how
Iseult would haue slaine her selfe,

Then Sir Andret which was cosin vnto Sir *Tristram* made a Lady which was his paramour to say and to noyse it how that she was with Sir *Tristram* so that he dyed. And this tale she brought vnto King *Marke*s Court that she buried him by a well and that so he dyed he besought King *Marke* so to make his cosin Sir Andret King of the countrey of *Lyones*, of the which Sir *Tristram* was Lord of. All this did Sir Andret because he would haue had Sir *Tristram*s lands. And when King *Marke* heard tell that Sir *Tristram* his nephew was dead, he wept and made great sorrow. But when the Quene *Iseult* heard of these tidings, she made such sorrow that she was full nigh out of her minde. And so vpon a day she thought to sleigh her selfe, and neuer so to liue after Sir *Tristram*s death. And so vpon a day *Iseult* gat a sword priuely and bare it into her garden, and there she pight the sword through a plumme tree vnto the hilts, so that it stuck fast that it stood best high. And as she would haue runne vpon the sword so to haue slaine her selfe. All this espied King *Marke* how she knioled downe and said, sweet Lord *Iesu* haue mercy vpon mee, for I may not liue after the death of my loue Sir *Tristram* de *Lyones*, for he was my first loue, and he shall be the last. And with these words came King *Marke* and tooke her in his armes and then hee tooke vp the sword and bare her away with him into a strong towre, and there he made her to be kept, and watched her suerly. And after that she lay long sicke nigh at the point of death. This meane while ranne Sir *Tristram* naked in the forrest with the sword in his hand, and so hee came to an hermitage, and there he laid him downe and slept. And in the meane while the hermit stole away the sword and laide meate downe by him. Thus was he kept there ten daies, and at the last he departed and came to the heardmen againe. And there was a gyant in that countrey that hight *Tauleas*, and for

and his Knights of the round Table.

fear of Sir *Tristram* more then seauen yeare hee durst not much goe out at large but for the most part he kept him in a sure Castle of his owne. And so this Sir *Tauleas* heard tell that Sir *Tristram* was dead, by the noyse of the Court of King *Marke*. And then Sir *Tauleas* went daily at large. And so it happined vpon a day he came to the heardmen wandering and lingering, and there hee set him downe to rest among them. The meane while there came a knight of *Cornewaile* that led a Lady with him, and his name was Sir *Dinaunt*. And when the Giant saw him, he went from the heardman and hid him vnder a tree. And so the knight came to the well, and there hee alighted to rest him. And as soone as he was from his horse, the Gyant Sir *Tauleas* came betweene the knight and his horse, and leapt vpon him. So forthwith hee rode vnto Sir *Dinaunt* and tooke him by the collar, and drew him before him on his horse, and there would haue stricken off his head. When the heardmen said vnto Sir *Tristram*. Helpe vnder knight. Helpe yee him said Sir *Tristram*. Wee dare not say the heardmen. When Sir *Tristram* was were of the sword of the knight where it lay, and thither he ran and tooke vp the sword and smote off Sir *Tauleas* Head, and so went his way to the heardmen againe.

CHAP. LXII.

How King *Marke* found Sir *Tristram* naked, and made him to be borne home to *Tintagill*, and how he was there knowne by a Bracher.

Then the knight tooke vp the Gyants Head and bare it with him vnto King *Marke*, and told him what aduenture betide him in the forrest, and how a naked man rescued him from the grimly Gyant *Tauleas*. Where had ye this aduenture said King *Marke*. Forsooth said Sir *Dinaunt*, at the faine fontaine in your forrest, where many aduenturous knights met, and there is the mad man. Well said King *Marke*, I will see that mad man. So within a day or two, King *Marke* commanded his knights and his hunters, that they

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

they should bee ready on the morrow for to hunt. And on the morrow he went vnto the forrest. And when the king came to the well he found there lying by that well a faire naked man and a sword by him. When the king blew and screked, and therewith his knights came to him. And then the king commanded his knights to take that naked man with fairnesse and bring him to my Castle. So they did softly and faire, and cast mantels vpon Sir Tristram, and so led him vnto the tagill, and there they bathed him and washed him, and gaue him good hot brothes, till they had brought him well to remembrance. But all this while there was no creature that knew Sir Tristram, nor wist not from whence he came. So it hapined vpon a day that the Queene la beale Isond heard of such a man that ranne naked in the forrest, and how the king had brought him home to the Court. And then la beale Isond called to her Dame Bragwaine, and said. Come on with me for we will goe see this man that my Lord hath brought from the forrest the last day. So they passed forth and asked where the sicke man was. And then a Squire told the Queene that hee was in the garden taking his rest, and resteth him against the Sun. So when the Queene looked vpon Sir Tristram she was not remembred of him. But euer she said to Dame Bragwaine, mee seemeth I should haue seene him before this time in many places: But as soone as Sir Tristram saw her, he knew her well enough, and then he turned away his visage and wept. And la beale Isond had alwayes a little brachet with her that Sir Tristram had giuen her the first time that euer she came into Coznewaile, & neuer would that brachet depart from her, but if Sir Tristram was nigh there as la beale Isond was, and this brachet was sent from the kings Daughter of France vnto Sir Tristram for great loue shee had vnto him. And anon as this little brachet felt a saueur of Sir Tristram, shee lept vpon him and licked his learis and his eares, and then shee whined and quested, and shee smelled at his feete and at his hands, and on all the parts of his body that he might come to. Ah my Lady said Dame Bragwaine vnto la beale Isond. Alas alas said she, I well see it is mine owne Lord Sir

and his Knights of the round Table.

Sir Tristram. And thereupon la beale Isond fell to vne in a swoone, and so lay a great while, and when shee might speake she said. My Lord Sir Tristram, blessed be God ye haue your life, and now I am sure ye shall be discouered by this little brachet, for she will neuer leaue you. And also I am sure that as soone as my Lord King Marke shall know you he will banish you out of the countrey of Coznewaile, or else hee will destroy you. For Gods sake mine owne Lord grant King Marke his will, and then draw you vnto the Court of King Arthur, for there are yee beloued. And euer when yee may I shall send vnto you and as yee list yee may come to mee and at all times early and late I will bee at your commaund, to liue as poore a life as euer did Queene or Lady. Oh Padamie said Sir Tristram goe from mee, for much anger and danger haue I escaped for your loue.

CHAP. LXIII.

How King Marke by the aduise of his counsell banished Sir Tristram out of the Countrey of Cornewaile for the terme of ten yeare.

Then la beale Isond departed, but the brachet would not from him. And therewith came King Marke, and the brachet sae vpon him, and brayed at them all. And therewith Sir Andret spake and said. Sir this is Sir Tristram that I see by the brachet. Nay said the king, I can not suppose that it is hee. So the king asked him vpon his faith what he was, and what was his name. So God me helpe said hee, my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones, and now yee may doe with mee what yee list. Ah said King Marke, mee repenteth of your recovery, and then he let call his Barons to iudge Sir Tristram to death. So many of his Barons would not assent thereto, and in especiall Sir Dinas the seneschall and Sir Fergus. And so by the aduise of them all Sir Tristram was banished out of the Countrey of Coznewaile for ten yeare, and thereupon hee took his Oath vpon a Booke before the king and his Barons, And so hee was made to depart out of the Countrey of Coznewaile.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

waile. And there were many Barons brought him into his ship, of the which some were his friends, and some were his foes. And in the meane while there came a knight of King Arthurs, his name was Sir Dinadan, and his coming was to seeke after Sir Tristram. When they shewed him where he was armed at all points going vnto the ship. Now faire knight said Sir Dinadan or ye passe this Court that ye will Iust with me. I require you. With a good will said Sir Tristram, and these Lords will giue mee leaue. So the Barons granted thereto, and then they ranne together, and there Sir Tristram gaue Sir Dinadan a fall. And then he prayed Sir Tristram to giue him leaue to goe in his fellowship. Ye shall be right welcome said Sir Tristram. And so they tooke their horses and rode to their ships together. And when Sir Tristram was in the ship he said thus. Greeete well King Marke and all mine enemies and tell them I will come againe when I may. And well I am rewarded for the fighting with Sir Marhaus, and deliuering all the Country from Seruage. And well I am rewarded for the fetching and costs of la beale Island out of Ireland, and the danger that I was in first and last, and by the way coming home what danger I had to bring againe Queene Island from the Castle, and well I am rewarded when I fought with Sir Bleoberis for Sir Segwarides wife. And well am I rewarded when I fought with sir Blamor de Ganis for King Anguish, father vnto la beale Island. And well am I rewarded when I smote down the good knight Sir Lamorake de Galis at King Markes request. And well am I rewarded when I fought with the king with the hundred knights and the king of Portygalis, and both these would haue put his land in seruage, and by me they were put to a rebuke. And well am I rewarded for the slaying of Taulas the mighty Gygant, and many moe deedes haue I done for him, and now haue I my guardon. And tell the King Marke that many Noble knights of the round Table haue spared the Barons of this countrey for my sake. Also I am not wel rewarded when I fought with the good knight Sir Palomides, and rescued Queene Island from him. And at that time King Marke

his and Knights of the round Table.

told before all his Barons I should haue beene better rewarded. And therewith he tooke the Sea.

CHAP. LXIII.

Now the Damosell sought helpe for to help Sir Launcelot against thirtie knight, and how Sir Tristram fought with them.

And at the next lodging fast by the Sea, there encountred with Sir Tristram and with Sir Dinadan Sir Ector de maris and Sir Bors de Ganis. And there Sir Ector encountred with sir Dinadan and smote him and his horse downe all on an heape to the ground. And then Sir Tristram would haue list with sir Bors de Ganis and sir Bors said hee would not with his good wil iust with no Cornish knights for they are not called men of worship. And all this was done vpon a bridge. And with this came sir Bleoberis and sir Driaunt, and sir Bleoberis proffered to iust with sir Tristram, and there sir Tristram smote downe sir Bleoberis. When said sir Bors de Ganis, I will neuer no Cornish knight of so great valour as that knight which beareth the trappours embroyded with crownes. And then sir Tristram and sir Dinadan departed from them and rode into a forrest, and there met them a Damosell that came for the loue of sir Launcelot to seeke after some Noble knights of King Arthurs Court for to rescue sir Launcelot. And so there was ordained for sir Launcelot by the treason of Queene Morgan le fay to haue slaine sir Lancelot, and for that cause shee ordained thirtie knights for to lye in a waite for Sir Launcelot, and this Damosell knew of this treason. And for this cause the Damosell came for to seeke Noble knights to helpe sir Launcelot for that night or the day after sir Launcelot should come whereas the thirtie knights were. And so this Damosell met with sir Bors, sir Bleoberis, sir Ector and sir Driaunt, and there shee told them of the treason of Queene Morgan le fay. And then they all promised her that they would bee nigh where sir Launcelot should meete with the thirtie knights, & if so be that they set vpon him, we will rescue him as well as we can. So the Damosell departed, & by aduenture

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the damosell met with sir Tristram, & with sir Dinadan & there the damosell told them all the treasure that was obtained for sir Lancelot. Faire Damosell said sir Tristram, bring me to that place where they shall meete with sir Launcelot. When said sir Dinadan what will ye doe, it is not for vs to fight with thirtie knights, and wit yee well I will not thereof, as for to match one knight or two or three is enough and if they be men. But for to match fiftene knights, that will I neuer undertake. He for shame said sir Tristram, doe but your part. Pay said sir Dinadan, I will not thereof, but if ye will lend me your shield for ye beare a shield of Cornewaile, and for the cowardise that is named vnto the knights of Cornewaile ye are ener forborne. Pay said sir Tristram, I will not depart from my shield for her sake that gaue it me. But one thing said sir Tristram I promise thee sir Dinadan, but if thou wilt promise me to abide with me here I shall say thee, for I desire no more of thee but to answer one knight, & if thy heart will not serue thee stand by and looke vpon mee and them. Sir said sir Dinadan I promise you to take on and doe what I may to saue my selfe, but I would to God I had neuer met with you. So then anon these thirtie knights came fast by these foure knights, & they were ware of them and either saw other. And so these thirtie knights let for this cause, that they would not wrauth them if cause were that they had to doe with sir Launcelot. And the foure knights let them passe to this entent, that they would see and behold what they would doe with sir Launcelot. And so the thirtie knights pass on their way, and came by sir Tristram and sir Dinadan. And then sir Tristram cryed on high & said. Lo here is a knight against you for the loue of sir Launcelot. And there he slew two with one speare, and ten with his sword. And then came in sir Dinadan, and he did passing well. And so of the thirtie knights there went but ten away, and they fled. And this battaille saw sir Bors de Ganis, and his three fellows. And then they saw well it was the same knight that had iusted with them at the bridge. When they tooke their horses and rode to sir Tristram, and praised him and thanked him of his good deeds, and they all desired sir

Tristram

and his Knights of the round Table.

Tristram to goe with them vnto their lodging. And hee said nay hee would not goe to no lodging. When they all foure knights prayed him to tell them his name. Faire Lords said said sir Tristram as at this time I will not tell you my name.

C H A P. LXV.

How Sir Tristram and sir Dinadan came to a lodging where they must iust with two Knights.

When sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode forth their way till they came to the shepheards and heardmen, and there they asked them if they knew any lodging or harbour there about. Forsooth faire Lords said the heardmen nigh hereby is a good lodging in a Castle, but such a custome there is, that there shall no knight be lodged, but if he first iust with two knights, and if he be but one knight he must iust with two and when ye bee within, soone shall yee bee matched. So there is an euill lodging said sir Dinadan, lodge where ye will, for I will not lodge there. He for shame said sir Tristram be ye not a knight of the round Table wherefore ye may not with your worship forsake your lodging. Not so said the heardmen, for and if ye be beaten and haue the worse, ye shall not be lodged there, and if ye beate them, ye shall be well lodged. Ah said sir Dinadan, they be two noble knights and then sir Dinadan would not bee lodged there in no manner, but as sir Tristram required him of his knight-hood, and so they rode thither. And to make short tale, sir Tristram and sir Dinadan smote them both down, and so they entred into the Castle and had good cheere as well as they could thinke or desire. And when they were vnarmed and had thought to haue taken their rest, there came in at the gate sir Palomides and sir Gaheris, requiring to haue the custome of the Castle. What is this said sir Dinadan I would haue my rest. What may not be said sir Tristram, now must we needs defend the custome of the Castle, in so much as we haue the better of the Lord of this Castle and therefore said sir Tristram needs must ye make you ready. In the Devils name said sir Dinadan came I into your company. And so therewith

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

they make them ready. And sir Gaheris encountred with Sir Tristram, and there Sir Gaheris had a fall. And sir Palomides encountred with sir Dinadan and sir Palomides gaue sir Dinadan a fall. And then must they fight on foote and that would not sir Dinadan, for hee was soe bruised and hurt of that fall that sir Palomides had giuen him. When sir Tristram unlaced sir Dinadans helme and prayed him to helpe him, I will not said sir Dinadan for I am soe wounded of the thirtie knights that we had but late to goe to doe battaile. But yee sere said sir Dinadan vnto sir Tristram as a mad man and like a man that is out of his minde which would cast himselfe away, and I may curse the time that euer I saw you. For in all the world are not such two knights that be so wood as is sir Launcelot and yee Sir Tristram, for once I fell in the fellowship of Sir Launcelot as I haue now done with you and hee let mee a worke, that a quarter of a yeare and moze I kept my bed. Jesu defend me said sir Dinadan from such two knights, and in speciall from your fellowship. Then said Sir Tristram I will fight with them both. And so Sir Tristram had them both come forth for I will fight with you both. And then sir Palomides and Sir Gaheris dressed them and smote at them both. And then Sir Dinadan smot at Sir Gaheris a stroke or two and turned from him. Nay said sir Palomides, it is too much shame for vs two knights to fight with one, and then he bad sir Gaheris to stand a fide with that knight that had no lust to fight. And then they rode together and fought a great while. And at the last sir Tristram doubled his strokes and droue sir Palomides backe moze then thre great strides. And then by one assent sir Gaheris and Sir Dinadan went betwene them and departed them in sunder. And then by the assent of Sir Tristram they would haue lodged together. But sir Dinadan would not lodge in that castle and then he cursed the time that euer he came in their fellowship. And so he took his horse and his harneys and departed. Then sir Tristram desired the Lords of the Castle to lend him a man for to bring him vnto a lodging. And so they did and ouertooke Sir Dinadan, and rode vnto their lodging two mile thence with a good man in a priory, and there they were

and his Knights of the round Table.

were well at ease. And that same night Sir Bors and sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector and Sir Driaunt abode still in the same place there as Sir Tristram fought with the thirtie knights and there they met with Sir Launcelot the same night, and had made promise to lodge with Sir Colgreuance the same night.

CHAP. LXVI.

How Sir Tristram iusted with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramore le desfrons, and how Sir Gawayne turned Sir Tristram from Morgan le fay.

But as soone as the most noble knight sir Launcelot heard of the shield of Cornewaile, then wist he well that it was Sir Tristram that fought with his enemies, and then sir Launcelot praised Sir Tristram and called him the man of most worship in the world. So there was a knight in that priory that hight Sir Pellinore, and hee desired to know the name of Sir Tristram, but in no wise he could not. And then sir Tristram departed and left Sir Dinadan in the priory, for hee was so weary and so bruised that hee might not ride. And then this knight sir Pellinore said to Sir Dinadan, sithen that yee will not tell mee that knights name, then will I ride after him and make him to tell mee his name, or he shall die therefore. Beware Sir knight said Sir Dinadan, for if yee follow him, yee shall repent it. So that knight Sir Pellinore rode after Sir Tristram and required him to iust with him. When Sir Tristram smote him downe and wounded him through the shoulder, and so past on his way. And on the next day following Sir Tristram met with pursuants and they told him that there was made a great cry of a turnament betwene King Carados of Scotland and the King of Northgalis, and either should iust against other at the Castle of Balauns. And these pursuants sought all the Countrey for the good knights, in especiall King Carados let seeke for Sir Launcelot, and the King of Northgalis let seeke for Sir Tristram. And at that time sir Tristram thought to bee at those iusts and turniments and so by aduenture they met with Sir Kay

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Kay the seneschall and sir Sagamor le desirous, and sir Kay required sir Tristram to iust. And sir Tristram in a manner refused him because hee would not be hurt nor bruised at the great iustes that would bee at the Castle of Maidens, and therefore he thought to keepe him fresh and to rest him. And allway sir Kay called and cryed, Sir Knight of Cornewalle iust with me or else yeeld thee vnto me as recreant and overcome. When sir Tristram heard him say so, he incontinent turned toward him to iust. And when sir Kay saw him come, then he refused him, and turned his backe. When said sir Tristram as I find thee so shall I take thee. And then sir Kay turned him with an euill will. And sir Tristram smote downe sir Kay and rode on his way. When sir Sagamore le desirous rode fast after sir Tristram and perswaded him to iust with him. And then sir Tristram cast downe sir Sagamor from his horse and rode his way.

And this same day hee met with a Damosell that told him that hee should winne great worship of a knight aduenturous which did much harme in all the country. When sir Tristram heard her say so, he was glad to goe with her for to win worship. So sir Tristram rode with that Damosell a fere mile, and then met with him sir Gawaine and therewithall sir Gawaine knew the Damosell that shee was a Damosell of Queene Morgan le fay. So sir Gawaine vnderstood that shee led that knight to some mischief. Faire knight said sir Gawaine whither ride yee with that Damosell. Sir said sir Tristram I wote not whither I shall ride but as the Damosell doth lead mee. Sir said sir Gawaine ye shall not ride with her for shee and her Lady did neuer good but euill. So then sir Gawaine drew out his sword and said. Damosell but if thou tell mee anon for what cause thou ledest this knight with thee, thou shalt die for it anon. I know all your Ladies treason and yours. Percy sir Gawaine said the Damosell, if yee will saue my life I shall tell you all as it is. Say on said sir Gawaine, and thou shalt haue thy life. Sir said shee, my Lady Queene Morgan le fay King Arthurs Sister hath ordained thirty Ladies to seeke and espie after sir Launcelot or

Sir

and his Knights of the round Table.

Tristram, and by the traines of these Ladies who that may come with any of these two knights, that they should turne them with their wiles to Morgan le fayes Castle, saying that they should see deeds of worship, and if any of those knights came there, there be thirty knights lying watching in a Court for to waite vpon sir Launcelot or vpon sir Tristram. Hee for this said sir Gawaine that euer such false treason should bee wrought or dole in a Queene and a Kings sister and a Kings and a Queenes Daughter.

CHAP: LXVII.

Now sir Tristram and sir Gawaine rode to haue fought against all chekierie Knights, but they durst not come out.

Sir said sir Gawaine, will yee stand with mee, and wee will see the mallice of these thirty knights. Sir said sir Tristram, goe yee to them and it please you, and yee shall see I will not faile you, for it is not long agoe sith I and a fellow met with thirtie knights of that Queenes fellowship, and God speed vs for that wee may winne worship. So then sir Gawaine and sir Tristram rode toward the Castle where Morgan le fay was, and euer sir Gawaine deemed well that it was sir Tristram de Lyones, because he heard tell that two knights had slaine and beaten thirtie knights. And when they came before the Castle, sir Gawaine spake on high and said. Queene Morgan le fay send out your knights which yee haue in a watch for sir Launcelot or for sir Tristram. Now said sir Gawaine I know your false treason, and through all places where that I ride men shall know of your false treason, and now let see said sir Gawaine whether yee dare come out of your Castle yee thirtie knights. When the Queene spake and all the thirtie knights at once and said. Sir Gawaine full well wotest thou what thou doest and saiest, for by God we know thee passing well, but all that thou speakest and doest, thou saist it vpon pride of that good knight that is there with thee. For there be some of vs that know full well the hands of that knight ouer all well, and wit thou well sir Gawaine, it

is more for his sake then for thine that we not come out of this castle, for wit ye well Sir Gawaine that knight which beareth the armes of Cornewalle wol know him well and what he is. And then Sir Gawaine and Sir Tristram departed and rode on their way a day or two together, and thereby adventure they met with Sir Kay and Sir Sagramore le desirous, and then they were passing glad of Sir Gawaine, and hee of them, but they wist not what he was with the shield of Cornewalle but by daunting. And thus they rode together a day or two. And then they were ware of Sir Breuse saunce pitie charging a Lady for to haue slaine her for he had slaine her paramour to fore. Hold you all still said Sir Gawain and shew none of you forth, and ye shall see me reward yonder false knight, for if he espie you he is so well horsed that he will escape away. And then Sir Gawaine rode betwene Breuse saunce pitie and the lady and said. False knight leaue her and haue to doe with me. When Sir Breuse saw no more but Sir Gawaine, he sentred his speare and Sir Gawaine against him. And so there Sir Breuse ouerthrew Sir Gawaine and then he rode ouer him and ouerthwart him twentie times, so haue destroyed him. And when Sir Tristram saw him doe so vitaynous a dede, he hurled out against him. And when Sir Breuse saw him with his shield of Cornewalle, he knew well that it was Sir Tristram and then he fled and Sir Tristram followed after him. And Sir Breuse saunce pitie was well horsed that he went his way quit. And Sir Tristram followed him long for saine he would haue haue auenged vpon him. And so when he had long chased him he saw a faire well, and thither he rode for to rest him, and tied his horse vnto a tree.

CHAP. LXVIII.

How the damosell Bragwaine found Sir Tristram sleeping by a well, & how she deliuered letters to him from la beale Isonde.

And then he pulled off his helme and washed his visage and his hands, and so he fell on sleepe. In the meane while came a damosell that had sought Sir Tristram many wayes and

and his Knights of the round Table:

and daies within this land. And when she came vnto the well she looked vpon him, and had forgotten the remembrance of Sir Tristram, but by his horse she knew him, that hight paster well that had bene Sir Tristrams horse many yeates. For when he was mad in the Forrest Sir Fergus kept him. So then the damosell Bragwaine abode still till he was wakned. So when she saw him awake, she saluted him and he her againe, for either knew other of old acquaintance. And then she told him how she had sought him long and farre, and there she told him how she had letters from la beale Isonde. And then anon Sir Tristram read them, and wit ye wel he was glad and mery, for therein was many a piteous complaint. When said Sir Tristram, Lady Bragwayne ye shall ride with me till the turnement be done at the castle of Gaideu and then shall ye haue letters and tidings with you. And then Sir Tristram took his horse and sought lodging, and there he met with a good ancient knight that prayed him to lodge with him. Right so came Gouvernale to Sir Tristram which was glad of that Lady. So this olde knights name was Sir Pellounes and he told of the great turnement that should be at the castle of Gaideu. And there Sir Launcelot and thirtie knights of his blood had ordained shields of Cornewalle. And right so there came one vnto Sir Pellounes and told him that Sir Persides debloise was come home, and then that knight held vp his hand and thanked God of his coming home, and there Sir Pellounes told Sir Tristram that in two yeare he had not seene his sonne Persides. So said Sir Tristram, I know your sonne well for a good knight. So on a time Sir Tristram and Sir Persides came to their lodging both at once, and so they unarmed them and put vpon them their clothing. And then these two knights each one welcomed other. And then Sir Persides understood and knew that Sir Tristram was a knight of Cornewalle, he said I was once in Cornewalle and there I iusted afore King Marke. And so by fortune it happined me at that time to ouerthwete ten knights and then came to me Sir Tristram de Lyones and ouerthrew me, and took my Lady from me, and that shall I neuer forget, but I shall remember me and euer I may see my time. Ah

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

said Sir Tristram now I vnderstand that ye hate sir Tristram, what do me ye, weene ye that sir Tristram, is not able for to withstand your malice. Per said Sir Persides, I know well that sir Tristram is a noble knight, and a much better knight then I am, yet shall I not owe him my good will. Right as they stood thus talking at a bay window of that castle, they saw many knights riding to and fro towards the turneyment. And then was sir Tristram ware of a likely knight riding upon a mighty blacke horse and a blacke covered shield, what knight is that said sir Tristram with the blacke horse and the blacke shield, he seemeth to be a good knight, I know him wel said Sir Persides, he is one of the best knights of the world. It is then sir Launcelot said Sir Tristram. Nay said Sir Persides, it is Sir Palomides that is yet vnbaptized.

CHAP. LXIX.

How Sir *Tristram* had a fall of Sir *Palomides* and how Sir *Launcelot* overthrew two Knights.

Then they saw much people of the countrey follow Sir Palomides. And within a while after there came a squire of the castle that told sir Pelounes that was Lord of the castle that a knight with a blacke shield had smitten downe thirteen knights. Fairs brother said Sir Tristram to sir Persides, let vs cast vpon vs our cloakes, and let vs goe and see the play. Not so said Sir Persides, we will not goe like knaues thither, but we will ride like men and good knights to withstand our enemies. So they armed them and tooke their horses and great speares and thither they went, whereas many knights assailed themselves befoze the turneyment. And anon Sir Palomides saw Sir Persides and then he sent a squire vnto him, and said. Goe thou vnto yonder knight with the greene shield and therein a lyon of gold, and say ye vnto him that I require him to iust with me, and tell him that my name is sir Palomides. When Sir Persides vnderstood the request of sir Palomides he made him ready. And so there anon they met together but Sir Persides had a fall. And then Sir Tristram dressed him

and his Knights of the round Table.

so he reneged vpon Sir Palomides. And that anon saw Sir Palomides which was ready, and so was not Sir Tristram and tooke him at auantage and smote him ouer his horse taile when hee had no speare in his rest. Then start vp Sir Tristram and tooke his horse lightly and was wroth out of measure and was sore ashamed of that fall. And then Sir Tristram sent vnto Sir Palomides by Gouernale his Squire and prayed him to iust with him once againe at his request. Nay said Sir Palomides, as at this time I will not iust with that knight. for I know him better then hee weeneeth and if hee be wroth, hee may reuenge him so morrow at the Castle of Maidens where he shall see me and many other knights. With that came Sir Dinadan, and when hee saw Sir Tristram wroth hee list not to iape. Noe said Sir Dinadan, here may a man proue, hee a man neuer so good yet may hee haue a fall, and he was neuer so wise but hee may be overseene, and he rideth well that neuer fals. So sir Tristram was passing wroth, and said to sir Persides and to sir Dinadan, I will be reuenged vpon him. Right so as they stood talking there came by Sir Tristram a likely knight riding passing soberly and heavily with a blacke shield. What knight is that said sir Tristram to sir Persides. I know him well said Sir Persides, for his name is sir Briaunt of North wales, so hee pass on among other knights of North wales. And there came Sir Launcelot du lake with a shield of the armes of Cornewaille and he sent a Squire to sir Briaunt, and required to iust. I will doe that I may said sir Briaunt. And there Sir Launcelot smote downe sir Briaunt from his horse, and had a great fall. And then sir Tristram meruailed what knight hee was that bare the shield of Cornewaille. What soeuer hee be said sir Dinadan, I warraunt you he is of King Bens blood, the which be knights of the most noble prouesse in the world, for to accompt so many for so many. And then there came two knights of North wales, the one hight sir Hewe de mountaine, and the other hight sir Mardocke de la mountaine and they challenged Sir Launcelot foote hot. Sir Launcelot not refusing them but made him ready, and with one speare he smote them downe both ouer their horse

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

croupe. And so Sir Launcelot rode forth on his way. By my faith said Sir Tristram, he is a good knight that beareth the shield of Coznewaile, and mee seemeth he rideth in the best manner that euer I saw knight ride. So then the King of Northgalis rode hastily vnto Sir Palomides, and prayed him heartily for his loue to iust with that knight that hath done vs of Northgalis despite. Sir said Sir Palomides, I am loath to haue to doe with that knight and the cause why, for as to morrow the great tournament shall bee, and therefore I will keepe me fresh by my will. Pay said the King of Northgalis, I pray you require of iusts. Sir said Sir Palomides, I will iust at your request, and require that knight to iust with mee, and often I haue seene a man haue a fall at his owne request.

CHAP. LXX.

How Sir Launcelot iusted with Sir Palomides and ouerthrew him, and how hee was afterward assailed with twelue knights.

Then Sir Palomides sent vnto Sir Launcelot a squire and required him to iust. Faire fellow said Sir Launcelot to the squire, tell me what is thy Lords name, and which is he: Sir said the squire vnto Sir Launcelot my Lords name is Sir Palomides. In Gods name said Sir Launcelot. For by my knight-hood there is no knight in the world that I haue seene this seauen yeare that I would rather haue to doe withall then with Sir Palomides. And then either of the knights made them ready with two great and huge speares. And then said Sir Dinadan, yee shall see that Sir Palomides will quit him right well. It may bee said Sir Tristram, but I undertake that knight with the shield of Coznewaile shall giue him a fall. I can not beleue it said Sir Dinadan. Right so they spurred their horses and feutred their speares, and either hit other, and there Sir Palomides brake a speare vpon Sir Launcelot, & he sat still and moued not, but Sir Launcelot smote him so mightily, that he made him to auoid his saddle, and the stroke brake his shield & halberke, & he had not fallen he had beene

and his Knights of the round Table.

been slain. Now now said Sir Tristram, I wist well by the manner of their riding both that Sir Palomides should haue a fall. Right so Sir Launcelot rode his way and rode to a well to drinke and to rest him. And they of Northgalis espied him where he rode, and then there followed him twelue knights for to haue mischeued him for this cause, that on the morrow at the tournament of this Castle of Maidens he should not win the victory. So they came suddenly vpon Sir Launcelot, and with he might put vpon him his helme and take his horse, but they were in hand with him. And then Sir Launcelot gat his speare and rode through them, and there he slew a knight and brake his speare in his body. Then he drew his sword and smote on the right hand and on the left hand so that within few strookes hee had slaine other three knights, and the remnant that abode hee wounded them full sore. Thus Sir Launcelot escaped from his enemies of Northgalis, and then he rode forth on his way vnto a friend, and there he lodged him till on the morrow, for hee would not the first day haue to doe in that tournament because of his great labour. And on the first day hee was with King Arthur whereas he set on high vpon a scaffold, for to discerne who was best worthy of his deeds. So Sir Launcelot was with King Arthur, and iusted not the first day.

CHAP. LXXI.

How Sir Tristram behaued him the first day of the tournament, and there he had the prise.

Now turne wee to Sir Tristram de Lyones, that commanded Gouvernail his seruant for to ordaine him a black shield with none other remembrance therein. And so Sir Perides and Sir Tristram departed from their host. Sir Pelounes and they rode early toward the tournament, and then they drew them vnto King Carados side of Scotland. And anon knights began the field, what of the King of Northgalis part, and what of King Carados part, and there began a great partie and then there was hurling and rashing. Right so came in Sir Perides and Sir Tristram and so they fared that the King of North

Northgalis. And then there came in Sir Bleoberis de ganis and Sir Gaheris with them of Northgalis, and then was sir Persides smitten downe and almost slaine, for more then fortie horsemen went ouer him. For sir Bleoberis did great deeds of armes, and sir Gaheris failed him not. When Sir Tristram beheld them and sawe them doe such deeds of armes hee meruailed greatly what they were. Also sir Tristram thought it a shame that sir Persides was so close to, and then hee gate him a great speare in his hand and rode vnto Sir Gaheris and smote him downe from his horse. And then was Sir Bleoberis wroth and gate a speare and rode against Sir Tristram in great Ire, and sir Tristram there met with him and smote Sir Bleoberis from his horse. So then the King with the hundred knights was wroth and hee horsed Sir Bleoberis and Gaheris againe, and there began a great meddle and euer Sir Tristram held them passing short, and euer sir Bleoberis was passing busie vpon Sir Tristram. And there came Sir Dinadan against Sir Tristram, and there hee gaue Sir Dinadan such a buffet that hee solunded in his saddle. So anon Sir Dinadan came to sir Tristram and said, Sir I know you better then yee weene, but here I promise you my faith that I will neuer come against you more for I promise you that sword of yours shall neuer come more on my helme. With that came Sir Bleoberis, and sir Tristram gaue him such a buffet that downe hee laid his Head. And then he caught him by his helme and pulled him vnder his feete. And then King Arthur blew to lodging. And Sir Tristram departed to his pavilion, and Sir Dinadan rode with him then. And Sir Persides & King Arthur and the King vpon both parties meruailed what knight that was with the blacke shield. Many said their aduise and some knew him for sir Tristram and held their peace and would nothing say:

So the first day King Arthur and all the Kings and Lords that were iudges gaue Sir Tristram the prize, how bee it they knew him not, but named him the knight with the blacke shield.

How Sir Tristram returned against King Arthurs part, because he saw Sir Palomides on that part.

So Sir Palomides on the next morrow returned from the partie of King Northgalis and rode to King Arthurs side where was King Carados, and the King of Ireland, and sir Lancelots kinne, and sir Gawains kinne. So sir Palomides sent the Damosell vnto sir Tristram that hee sent to seeke him when hee was out of his minde in the Forrest, and the Damosell asked Sir Tristram what hee was, and also what was his right name. As for that said sir Tristram, tell sir Palomides hee shall not wit at this time, to the time I haue broken two speares vpon him. But let him wit thus much said sir Tristram, that I am the same knight that hee smote down in the evening before the turnament, and tell him plainely, on what part that sir Palomides be, I will be on the contrary part. Sir said the Damosell yee shall vnderstand that Sir Palomides will be on King Arthurs side, where the most noble knights of the world be. In the name of God said sir Tristram. When will I be with the King of Northgalis, because that sir Palomides will be on King Arthurs side, and else would I be on my Lord King Arthurs side but for his sake. So then when King Arthur was come they let blow vnto the field. And then began there a great part, there was running and smiting vpon helmes. And so King Carados iusted against the King with the hundred knights, and there King Carados had a fall, and then was there hurling and rashing, and right so came in King Arthurs knights, and they bare backe the King of Northgalis knights. And then came in Sir Tristram, and hee began so roughly and so bigly that there was not one that might withstand him, and thus sir Tristram endured long. And at the last Sir Tristram haunted among the fellowship of King Ban, and there fell vpon him sir Bors de Ganis, and sir Ector de maris, and sir Blamor de ganis with a great many of other knights. And then sir Tristram smote downe on the right hand and on the

Northgalis. And then there came in Sir Bleoberis de ganis and Sir Gaheris with them of Northgalis, and then was sir Persides smitten downe and almost slaine, for more then fortie horsemen went ouer him. For sir Bleoberis did great deeds of armes, and sir Gaheris failed him not. When Sir Tristram beheld them and sawe theye did such deeds of armes hee meruailed greatly what they were. And sir Tristram thought it a shame that sir Persides was thus to, and then hee gate him a great speare in his hand and rode vnto Sir Gaheris and smote him downe from his horse. And then was Sir Bleoberis wroth and gate a speare and rode against Sir Tristram in great Ire, and sir Tristram there met with him and smote Sir Bleoberis from his horse. So then the King with the hundred knights was wroth and hee horsed Sir Bleoberis and Gaheris againe, and there began a great meddle and euer Sir Tristram held them passing short, and euer sir Bleoberis was passing busie vpon Sir Tristram. And there came Sir Dinadan against Sir Tristram, and there hee gaue Sir Dinadan such a buffet that hee solanded in his saddle. So anon Sir Dinadan came to sir Tristram and said, Sir I know you better then yee weene, but here I promise you my faith that I will neuer come against you more for I promise you that sword of yours shall neuer come more on my helme. With that came Sir Bleoberis, and sir Tristram gaue him such a buffet that downe hee laid his Head. And then he caught him by his helme and pulled him vnder his feete. And then King Arthur blew to lodging. And Sir Tristram departed to his pavilion, and Sir Dinadan rode with him then. And Sir Persides & King Arthur and the King vpon both parties meruailed what knight that was with the blacke shield. Many said their aduise and some knew him for sir Tristram and held their peace and would nothing say.

So the first day King Arthur and all the Kings and Lords that were iudges gaue Sir Tristram the prize, how bee it they knew him not, but named him the knight with the blacke shield.

How Sir Tristram returned against King Arthurs part, because he saw Sir Palomides on that part.

Sir Palomides on the next morning returned from the partie of King Northgalis and rode to King Arthurs side where was King Carados, and the King of Ireland, and sir Lancelot kinne, and sir Gawains kinne. So sir Palomides sent the Damosell vnto sir Tristram that hee sent to seeke him when hee was out of his minde in the forrest, and the Damosell asked Sir Tristram what hee was, and also what was his right name. As for that said sir Tristram, tell sir Palomides hee shall not wit at this time, to the time I haue broken two speares vpon him. But let him wit thus much said sir Tristram, that I am the same knight that hee smote downe in the euening befoze the turnament, and tell him plainely, on what part that sir Palomides be, I will be on the contrary part. Sir said the Damosell yee shall vnderstand that Sir Palomides will be on King Arthurs side, where the most noble knights of the world be. In the name of God said sir Tristram. Then will I be with the King of Northgalis, because that sir Palomides will be on King Arthurs side, and else would I be on my Lord King Arthurs side but for his sake. So then when King Arthur was come they let blow vnto the field. And then began there a great part, there was running and smiting vpon helmes. And so King Carados iusted against the King with the hundred knights, and there King Carados had a fall, and then was there hurling and rashing, and right so came in King Arthurs knights, and they bare backe the King of Northgalis knights. And then came in Sir Tristram, and hee began so roughly and so bigly that there was not one that might withstand him, and thus sir Tristram endured long. And at the last Sir Tristram haunted among the fellowship of King Ban, and there fell vpon him sir Bors de Ganis, and sir Ector de maris, and sir Blamor de ganis with a great many of other knights. And then sir Tristram smote downe on the right hand and on the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the left hand, that all the Lords and Ladies spake of his noble deeds. But at the last sir Tristram should haue had the worst had not the king with the hundred knights bene his good friend and then he came with his fellowship and rescued sir Tristram and brought him away with the knights that bare the shields of Cornewaille. And then sir Tristram saw an other fellowship by them selues, and there were as good as forty knights together, and sir Kay the Sene shall was their gouernour. And then sir Tristram rode in among them all, and there he smote downe sir Kay from his horse, and there he fared among those knights like a grey hound among conies. So sir Launcelot found knight that was sore wounded upon the head. Sir said sir Launcelot who wounded you so. Sir said he, a knight that beareth a blacke shield, and I may curse the time that euer I met with him, for he is a Diuell and no man. So sir Launcelot departed from him and thought to meete with sir Tristram, and so he rode with his sword drawn in his hand to seeke sir Tristram, and then he espied him how he hurled here and there, and at euery stroke sir Tristram well might smote downe a knight. O mercy Iesu said king Arthur with the time I bare armes saw I neuer no knight doe so meruailous deeds of armes. If I should set vpon this knight said sir Launcelot to himselfe, I should shame my selfe. And therewith sir Launcelot put vp his sword. And the the king with the hundred knights & an hundred more of Northgalis set vpon twentie knights of sir Launcelors kinne, and those twentie knights held them alway together as wild swine, and none would faile other. And when sir Tristram beheld the noblenesse of those twentie knights, he meruailed of their noble deeds, for he saw well by their fare, and by their rule that they had leauer to vie then to auoide the field. Now Iesu said sir Tristram, well may he be valiant and full of prowesse that hath such a sort of noble knights to his kinne, and full like is he to be an noble man that is their leader and gouernour, he meant it by sir Launcelot du lake. So when sir Tristram had beholden them long, he thought it shame to see the hundred knights battering vpon twentie knights. And then sir Tristram rode to the king with the hundred knights

and his Knights of the round Table.

and said to him. Sir I pray you leaue your fighting with those twentie knights, for ye shall winne no worship of them, for ye be too many, and they too few, and wit ye well they will not out of the field I see by their countenance and worship get ye none and ye slep them, therfore leaue your fighting with them, for to encrease my worship I will ride to the twentie knights to helpe them with all my might and power. As he said the knight with the hundred knights ye shall not doe so. Now I see your courage and curtesie I will withdraw my knights for your pleasure, for euermore a good knight will fauour another, and like will draw to like and semblable.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How Sir Tristram found Sir Palomides by a well and brought him with him to his lodging.

Then the king with the hundred knights withdrew his knights. And all this while and long before sir Launcelot had watched vpon sir Tristram with a very purpose to haue fellowship with him. And so then suddainely sir Tristram sir Dinadan and Gouvernail his man rode on their way into the forrest that no man perceiued where they went. So then king Archur blew vnto lodging, and gaue the king of Northgales the prize, because that sir Tristram was on his side. And then sir Launcelot rode here and there so wood as a lyon that feutred his fill because he had lost sir Tristram, and so he returned vnto king Archur. And then in all the field was such a noise, that the wind thereof might be heard two mile thence, how the Lords and Ladies cried, the knight with the blacke shield hath wonne the field. Alas said king Arthur where is that knight become, it is shame to all those in the field so to let him scape away from you, but with gentlenesse and curtesie ye might haue brought him vnto me to the castle of maidens. When the noble king Archur went vnto his knights and comforted them in the best manner that he could, and said. My faire fellows be not dismaied, how be it if ye haue lost the field this day, and many were hurt and sore wound

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

ted and many were hole. My fellows said King Arthur, looke that ye bee of good chere for to morrow will I bee in the field with you and reuenge you of your enemies. So that night King Arthur and his knights rested themselves. The damo- sell that came from la-beale Isonde vnto Sir Tristram, all the while the turneyment was a doing, was with Quene Gueneuer and euer the Quene asked her for what cause she came into that countrey. Madame said she, I come for none other cause but for my Ladie la beale Isonde to wit of your welfare. For in no wise she should not tell the Quene that she came for Sir Tristrams sake. So this Lady dame Bragwaine toke her leaue of Quene Gueneuer, and so she rode after Sir Tristram; And as she rode through the forrest she heard a great erie of a man. And then she commanded her squire to goe into the forrest to wit what that noyse was. And so hee came to a well, and there found hee a knight bound vnto a tree crying as hee had bene out of his mind, and his horse and his harneyes standing by him. And when he espied the squire, therewith he abayed and brake himselfe loose, and toke his sword in his hand and ranne to haue slaine that squire. And the squire toke his horse and fled as fast as euer hee might vnto dame Bragwaine againe and tould her of his aduventure. So shee rode vnto Sir Tristrams pavilion, and told Sir Tristram what aduventure he had found in the forrest. Alas said Sir Tristram, upon my head there is some good knight at mischief. And then Sir Tristram toke his horse and his sword & rode thither, and there he heard how the knight complained vnto himselfe and said. I wofull knight Sir Palomides what misadventure befalleth me, that thus am defouled with falshood and treason, through Sir Bors and Sir Ector. Alas said he why liue I so long. And then he gat his sword in his hand and made many strange signes and tokens, and so through his raging hee threw his sword into that fountaine and then Sir Palomides waited and waung his hands. And at the last for pure sorrow hee ranne into that fountaine ouer his nauell and sought after his sword. So Sir Tristram saw that and ranne vpon Sir Palomides and held him fast in his armes. What art thou said Sir Palomides that so holdeth me.

I

and his Knights of the round Table.

I am said Sir Tristram, a man of this forrest that would thee no harme. Alas said Sir Palomides I may neuer win worship where Sir Tristram is, for euer whereas hee is and if I be there then get I no worship, and if hee bee away for the most part I haue the græ, vnlesse that Sir Launcelot du lake be not there and Sir Lamoracke. Then said Sir Palomides, once in Ireland Sir Tristram put me to the worst, and another time in Coznes waile and in other places in this land. What would ye doe said Sir Tristram if ye had Sir Tristram here. I would fight with him said Sir Palomides and ease my heart vpon him, and yet for to say the sooth Sir Tristram is the gentyllest knight in the world liuing. What will ye doe said Sir Tristram, will ye goe with mee to my lodging. Nay said he, I will goe to the king with the hundred knights, for he rescued me from Sir Bors de ganis and Sir Ector and els he had I bene slaine trayterously. Sir Tristram said to Sir Palomides such kind words that he went with him vnto his lodging. When Gouvernale went before and charged dame Bragwaine to goe out of the way to her lodging, and bid ye Sir Persides that hee make him no quarrels. And so they rode together till they came to Sir Tristrams pavilion, and there Sir Palomides had all the chere that might be had at that night. But in no wise Sir Palomides might not know what Sir Tristram was. And so after supper they went to rest, and Sir Tristram for great trauaile slept till it was day. And Sir Palomides might not sleepe for anguish, and in the dawning of the day hee toke his horse priuily and rode his way to Sir Gaheris and to Sir Sagramore le desirous where as they were in their pavilions, for they thre were fellows at the beginning of this turneyment. And then on the morrow the king blew vnto the turneyment vpon the third day.

CHAP. LXXIII.

How Sir Tristram smote downe Sir Palomides, and how he iusted with King Arthur, and other feates.

So the king of Northgalis and the king with the hundred knights they two encountered with King Carados & with the king

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

King of Ireland and there the King with the hundred knights smote downe King Carados, and the King of Northgalis smote downe the King of Ireland. With that came in Sir Palomides, and when hee came he made great worke, for by his embented shield he was well knowne. So came in King Arthur, and did great deeds of armes together, and put the King of Northgalis, and the King with the hundred knights to the word. With that came in Sir Tristram with his blacke shield, and anon he iusted with Sir Palomides, and there by his force Sir Tristram smote Sir Palomides ouer his horse taile. When King Arthur cryed, knight with the blacke shield make thee ready to mee, and in the same wise Sir Tristram smote downe King Arthur. And then by force of King Arthurs knights the King and Sir Palomides were remounted. So King Arthur with a great eger heart gat a speare in his hand, and there vpon the one side hee smote Sir Tristram ouer his horse. And then full fast Sir Palomides came vpon Sir Tristram as hee was on foote, to haue ouer-riden him. And Sir Tristram was ware of him, and there he stepped aside, and with great Ire hee gate him by the arme and pulled him downe from his horse. And then Sir Palomides lightly arose, and then they dashed together mightily with their swordes, and many Kings, Quenes and Lords stood and beheld them. And at the last Sir Tristram smote Sir Palomides vpon the helme three mighty strookes, and at euery strooke that hee gaue him he said. Haue this for Sir Tristrams sake. With that Sir Palomides fel to the earth groouling. And then came the King with the hundred knights, and brought Sir Tristram a horse, and so was he horsed againe. By then was Sir Palomides horsed, and with great Ire hee iusted at Sir Tristram with his speare as it was in the rest, and gaue him a great dally with his speare. So Sir Tristram aduised his speare and gate him by the necke with both his hands and pulled him cleane out of his saddle, and so bare him before him the length of ten speares and then in the presence of them all he let him fall at his aduenture. So Sir Tristram was ware of King Arthur with a naked sword in his hand, and with his speare Sir Tristram ran on King Arthur,

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and King Arthur boldly abode him, and with his sword hee smote at two his speare, and therewith Sir Tristram was astonied, and so King Arthur gaue him three or foure great strookes or hee might get out his sword. And at the last Sir Tristram drew his sword and assailed King Arthur passing hard. With that the great presse departed, then Sir Tristram rode here and there and did great feats, and eleuen of the good knights of the blood of King Ban that was of Sir Launcelots kinne that day Sir Tristram smote downe that all the estates meruailed of his great deedes, and all cryed vpon the knight with the blacke shield.

CHAP. LXXV.

How Sir Launcelot hurt Sir Tristram, and how after, Sir Tristram smote downe Palomides.

Then this cry was so great that Sir Lancelot heard it, and then gat hee a great speare in his hand and came towards the cry. And then Sir Launcelot cryed on high, knight with the blacke shield make thee ready for to iust with me. When Sir Tristram heard him say so, hee gat his speare in his hand, and either put down their heads and came together as thunder, and Sir Tristrams speare brake in peeces, and Sir Launcelot by male fortune strook Sir Tristram on the side a deep wound nigh to the death, but yet Sir Tristram auoyded not his saddle, and so the speare brake. And therewithall Sir Tristram that was wounded gat out his sword and rushed to Sir Launcelot and gaue him three great strookes vpon the helme that the fire sprang out, and Sir Launcelot stooped low his head toward his saddle bow. And therewithall Sir Tristram departed from the field, for he felt him so wounded that hee wend he should haue died. And Sir Dinadan espied him, and followed him into the forrest. And Sir Launcelot abode & did many meruallous deeds. So when Sir Tristram was departed by the forrest, hee he alighted and unlaced his harnais and refreshed his wound. Then wend Sir Dinadan that he should haue died. Day nay said Sir Tristram, Sir Dinadan neuer dread thee, for I am heart hole

and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and of this wound I shall soone be hole by the grace of God. By then sir Dinadan was ware where sir Palomides came riding straight vpon them. And then sir Tristram was ware that sir Palomides came for to haue destroyed him. And so sir Dinadan gaue him warning, and said. My Lord sir Tristram, yee are so sore wounded, that yee may not haue to doe with him, therefore I will ride against him and doe what I may, and if I am slaine yee may pray for my soule, and in the meane while yee may withdraw ydd and goe into the Castle, or into the forrest that hee shall not meete with you. Sir Tristram smiled and said. I thanke you sir Dinadan of your good will but hee shall wit that I am able to handle him. And anon hastily he armed him and tooke his horse and a great speare in his hand & said to sir Dinadan adieu, & rode toward sir Palomides a soft pace. And when sir Palomides saw that, he made a countenance to amend his horse, but he did it for this cause, for hee abode sir Gaheris that came after him, and when hee was come, hee rode toward sir Tristram. And sir Tristram sent vnto sir Palomides and required him to iust with him, and if hee smote downe sir Palomides he would doe no more to him. And if it so happen that sir Palomides smote downe sir Tristram he bad him doe his uttermost. So they were accorded and met together, and sir Tristram smote downe sir Palomides, and had a grieuous fall, so that he lay still as he had beene dead. And then sir Tristram ranne vpon sir Gaheris, and hee would not haue iusted, but whether hee would or not sir Tristram smote him ouer his horse croupe, that he lay still as though he had beene dead. And then sir Tristram rode his way, and left sir Perfides Squire within the pavilions, and sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode to an old knights place to lodge them. And the old knight had five sonnes at the turnament, for whom he prayed God heartily for their coming home. And they came home all five well beaten.

And when sir Tristram departed for to goe into the forrest, sir Launcelot held alway the towze like hard, as a man enraged that tooke no heede to himselfe, and wit yee well there was many a Noble knight against him. And when King

Arthur

and his Knights of the round Table.

Arthur saw sir Launcelot doe so meruailous deeds of armes, then hee armed him, and tooke his horse and armour and rode into the field to helpe sir Launcelot, and so many knights came in with King Arthur. And to make short tale the King of Northgales in conclusion and the King with the hundred knights were put to the worst. And because sir Launcelot abode and was the last in the field, the prize was giuen him. But sir Launcelot would neither for King, Queene, nor knight haue the prize. But where the cry was cried through the field sir Launcelot, sir Launcelot hath wonne the field this day. Sir Launcelot lets make another cry contrary to that cry. Sir Tristram hath wonne the field, for he began first, and last he hath endured and so hath he done the first day, the second and the third day.

CHAP. LXXVI.

How the prize of the third day was giuen to sir Launcelot, and sir Launcelot gaue it to sir Tristram.

Then all the estates and degrees high and low said great worship of sir Launcelot, for the honour that hee did vnto sir Tristram, and for that honour doing to sir Tristram hee was at that time more praised and renowned, than if hee had ouerthrowen five hundred knights, and all the people wholly for his gentlenesse, first the estates both high and low, and after the communalty cryed at once sir Launcelot hath wonne the field, whosoever say nay. Then was sir Launcelot wroth and ashamed, and therewith hee rode vnto King Arthur. Alas said the King, we are all dismayed that sir Tristram is thus departed from vs. By God said King Arthur hee is one of the noblest knights that ever I saw hold speare or sword in hand, and the curteouslest knight in his fighting for full hard I saw him said King Arthur as he smote sir Palomides vpon his helme thrice that hee abashed his helme with his strooke, and also he said heere is a strooke for sir Tristram, and thus he said thrice. And then King Arthur, sir Launcelot and sir Dodinas le seruage tooke their horses to seeke sir Tristram, and by the meanes of sir Perfides, he had

it

told

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

told King Arthur where Sir Tristram was in his pavilion. But when they came there, Sir Tristram and Sir Dinadan were gone. When King Arthur and Sir Launcelot were heavy and returned againe to the Castle of Maidens making great mone for the hurt done to Sir Tristram, and his subdaire departing. So God me helpe said King Arthur, I am more heauie that I can not meete with him, then for all the hurts that all my knights haue had at the turnament. Right so came Sir Gaheris and told to King Arthur how Sir Tristram had smitten downe Sir Palomides, and it was at Sir Palomides owne request. Alas said King Arthur that was great dishonour to Sir Palomides, in as much as Sir Tristram was soze wounded, and now may we all Kings and knights and men of worthip say that Sir Tristram may bee called a noble knight, and one of the best knights that euer I saw dayes of my life. For I will that ye all Kings and knights know said King Arthur, that I neuer saw knight doe so meruailously as hee hath done all these three dayes, for he was the first that began, & that longest held on, saue this last day. And though he was hurt, it was a manly aduenture of two noble knights. And when two noble men encounter needs must the one haue the worst like as God will suffer at that time. As for me said Sir Launcelot, for all the lands that euer my Father left me, I would not haue hurt Sir Tristram, if I had knowne him at that time, that I hurt him was for that I saw not his shield, for if I had seene his blacke shield, I would not haue medled with him for many causes, for late he did as much for mee as euer knight did, and that is well knowne that he had to doe with thirty knights and no helpe saue Sir Dinadan. And one thing shall I promise you said Sir Launcelot, Sir Palomides shall repent it as in his unkind dealing for to follow that Noble knight that I by mishap hurt thus. Sir Launcelot said all the worthip that might bee said by Sir Tristram. And then King Arthur made a great feast to all them that would come. Thus let we passe King Arthur, and a little we will turne vnto Sir Palomides, that after he had a fall of Sir Tristram, hee was neere hand enraged and out of his wit for despite of Sir Tristram, and so hee followed him by

and his Knights of the round Table.

by aduenture. And as hee came by a riuer in his woodnes hee would haue made his horse to haue lept ouer, and the horse failed footing and fell in the riuer, wheretoze Sir Palomides was adread least that hee should haue bene drowned, and then he auoided his horse and swamne to the land, and let his horse goe downe by aduenture.

CHAP. LXXVII.

How Sir Palomides came to the Castle where Sir Tristram was, and of the quest that Sir Launcelot and ten Knights made for Sir Tristram.

And when hee came to the land he put off his harnies and late roaring and crying as a man out of his minde. Right so there came a Damosell euen by Sir Palomides that was sent from Sir Gawaine & his Brother vnto Sir Mordred that lay sicke in the same place with the old knight where Sir Tristram was. For Sir Persides hurt so Sir Mordred ten dayes before, and if it had not bene for the loue of Sir Gawaine and his Brother, Sir Persides had slaine Sir Mordred. And so this Damosell came by Sir Palomides. And shee and hee had language together the which pleased neither of them. And so the Damosell rode her way till shee came to the old knights place, and there shee told that old knight how shee had met with the wooddest knight by aduenture that euer shee met withall. What thing bare hee in his shield said Sir Tristram. It was endented with white and blacke, said the Damosell. Ah said Sir Tristram that was the good knight Sir Palomides, for well I know him said Sir Tristram for one of the best knights now liuing in this realme. When the old knight tooke a little hackney and rode for Sir Palomides, and brought him vnto his manour. And then full well knew Sir Tristram Sir Palomides, but he said but little for at that time Sir Tristram was walking vpon his feete and well attended of his hurts, and alwayes when Sir Palomides saw Sir Tristram he would behold him full meruailously, and euer him seemed that he had seene him, and then would he say to Sir Dinadan, and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and euer I may meete with Sir Tristram, he shall not escape my hands. I meruaile said Sir Dinadan that yee boast behind sir Tristram, for it is but late that hee was in your hands, why would yee not hold him while yee had him, for I saw my selfe twice or thrice that yee gat but little worship of sir Tristram. And then was Sir Palomides ashamed. So leaue wee them a little while in the Castle with the old knight Sir Darras.

Now shall wee speake of King Arthur, that said to Sir Launcelot, had not ye bene we had not lost sir Tristram, for he was heere daily vnto the time ye met with him, and in an euill time said King Arthur yee encountred with him. By Lord Arthur said Sir Launcelot, ye put vpon me that I would bee causer of his departing, God knoweth it was against my will, but when men bee hot in deeds of armes, often they hurt their friends as well as their foes. And my Lord said Sir Launcelot, yee shall vnderstand that Sir Tristram is a man that I am loath to offend, for hee hath done for me more then euer I did for him, as yet. When Sir Launcelot made to bring forth a Booke, and then Sir Launcelot said. Heere be tenne knights that will sweare vpon a Booke neuer to rest one night where wee rest another these twelue moneths till wee find Sir Tristram. And as for mee said Sir Launcelot I promise you vpon this booke, that if I may meete with him either by fayrenesse or foulnesse I shall bring him with me vnto this Court, or else I shall die therofore. And the names of these ten knights that had undertaken this quest were these following. First Sir Launcelot, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Blamor de Ganis, and Sir Lucas the Butler, Sir Ewayne, Sir Galihad, sir Lyonell, and sir Galihodin. So these ten noble knights departed from the Court of King Arthur. And so they rode vpon their quest all together untill they came to a Crosse that stood betweene foure high wayes, and there departed the fellowship in foure parts for to seeke Sir Tristram. And as sir Launcelot rode by aduenture he met with the Damosell Dame Bragwaine, the which was sent into that Countrey for to seeke Sir Tristram, and shee fled.

and his Knights of the round Table.

fled as fast as her palfray might runne. So sir Launcelot met with her & asked her why she fled. Ah faire knight said Dame Bragwaine. I flee for dread of my life, for heere followeth me sir Breuse saunce pittie for to slay me. Hold you nigh me said Sir Launcelot. And when sir Launcelot saw sir Breuse he cryed on him and said. Thou false knight destroyer of Ladies & Damosels, now thy last dayes bee come. When sir Breuse saunce pittie saw Sir Launcelots shield, he knew it well, for at that time he bare not the armes of Cornuwaile, but he bare his owne shield. And then sir Breuse saunce pittie fled, and Sir Launcelot, followed after him. But Sir Breuse was so well horsed that when him list to flee he still might well flee, and so abide when him list. And then Sir Launcelot returned vnto Dame Bragwaine, and shee thanked him of his great labour.

CHAP: LXXVIII.

How Sir Tristram, Sir Palomides and Sir Dinadan were taken and put in prison.

Now will wee speake of Sir Lucas the Butler, which by fortune came riding to the same place where Sir Tristram was, and hee came for none other entent but for to aske harbour. So the Porter asked what was his name. Tell your Lord that my name is Sir Lucas the Butler, a knight of the round Table. So the Porter went vnto Sir Darras Lord of the place, and told him who was there to aske harbour. May nay said Sir Daname (that which was nephew vnto sir Darras) tell him that hee shall not lodge here but let him wit that I sir Daname will meet with him anon, and bid him make him ready. So sir Daname came forth on horsebacke, and there they met together with speares, and sir Lucas smote downe sir Daname ouer his horse croupe, and then he fled into the palace, and sir Lucas rode after him and asked after him many times. When sir Danadan said to sir Tristram, it is shame to see the Lords cosin of this place defouled. Abide said sir Tristram & I shall redresse it. And in the meane while sir Dinadan was on horse backe, and he iusted with sir Lucas the Butler,

THE HISTORIE OF PRINCE ARTHUR

and there Sir Lucas smote Sir Dinadan through the thicke of the thigh, and so hee rode his way, and Sir Tristram was wroth that Sir Dinadan was hurt, and followed after and thought to auenge him. And within a while he ouertooke Sir Lucas and had him turne. And so they met together that Sir Tristram hurt Sir Lucas passing sore and gaue him a fall. With that came Sir Ewaine a gentle knight, and when he saw Sir Lucas so hurt, he called Sir Tristram to iust with him. Faire knight said Sir Tristram tell me your name I require you. Sir knight, wit yee well my name is Sir Ewaine le fils du Roy Vrein. Ah said Sir Tristram, by my will I would not haue to doe with you at no time. Yee shall not so, said Sir Ewaine but that yee shall haue to doe with me. And when Sir Tristram saw none other but he rode against him and overthrew Sir Ewaine and hurt him in the side, and so he departed vnto his lodging againe. And when Sir Dinadan vnderstood that Sir Tristram had hurt Sir Lucas, he would haue ridden after Sir Lucas for to haue slaine him, but Sir Tristram would not suffer him. When Sir Ewaine let ordeine an horse-litter and brought Sir Lucas vnto an Abbey of Gavis, and the castle therby hight the castle of Gavis, of the which Sir Bleoberis was Lord. And at that castle Sir Launcelot promised all his fellows to mete in the quest of Sir Tristram. So when Sir Tristram was come to his lodging there came a damosell and tolde vnto Sir Darras that thre of his sonnes were slaine at the turneyment, and two greuously wounded that they were neuer like to helpe themselves, and all this was done by a noble knight that bare the blacke shield, and that was he that bare the prife. So came there one and told Sir Darras that the same knight was with in him that bare the blacke shield. So Sir Darras went vnto the chamber of Sir Tristram, and there he found his shield and thewed it to the damosell. Ah Sir said the damosell that same is he that slew your thre sonnes. So without any tarrying Sir Darras put Sir Tristram, Sir Palomides, and Sir Dinadan within a strong prison, and there Sir Tristram was like to haue died of great sicknesse, and Sir Palomides would euery day re- proue Sir Tristram of old hate that had bene betwene them.

And

and his Knights of the round Table.

And alway Sir Tristram spake faire and said but little. But when Sir Palomides saw the falling of sicknesse of Sir Tristram, then was he heauy for him, and comforted him in the best wise that he could. And there came forthie knights to Sir Darras that were of his kinne, and they would haue slaine Sir Tristram and his two fellows, but Sir Darras would not suffer it, and kept them in prison, and meate and drinke they had enough. So Sir Tristram endured there great paine, for sicknesse had vnder- taken him, and that is the greatest paine that a prisoner may haue, for all the while a prisoner may haue his health of his body he may endure vnder the mercy of God and in hope of good deliuerance, but when sicknesse toucheth a prisoners body, then a prisoner may say all wealth is him bereft, and then hath he cause to waile and to wepe. And so did Sir Tristram when sicknesse had taken him, then he toke such sorow that almost he died.

CHAP. LXXIX.

How King Marke was sorry of the good renowne of Sir Tristram and how some of King Arthurs Knights iusted with Knights of Cornewaile.

Now will we leaue Sir Tristram, Sir Palomides and Sir Dinadan in prison, and speake we of the other knights that sought after Sir Tristram in many diuers parts of this land. And some went in Cornewaile. And by aduenture Sir Gaheris nephew vnto King Arthur, came vnto King Marke, and there he was well receiued, and sate at King Marke olone table and ate of his olone meate. And then asked King Marke Sir Gaheris what tidings there were of him in the realme of Logris. Sir said Sir Gaheris the king reigneth as a noble knight, and now but late there was a great turneyment and iusts as yee I saw in the realme of Logris, and the most noble knights were at the iusts. But there was one knight that did meruailously thre dayes, & he bare a black shield, and of all knights that euer I saw he proued the best knight. When said King Marke, that was Sir Launcelot, or Sir Palomides the Danim. Not so said Sir Gaheris, for Sir Launcelot and Sir Palomides

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

des both were on the contrarie part against the knight with the blacke shield. When it was sir Tristram said the king. *Pea* said sir Gaheris. And therewith the king smote downe his head, and in his heart he feared soze that sir Tristram should get such worship in the realme of Logris, where thzough he himselfe should not be able to withstand him. Thus sir Gaheris had great chere with king Marke and with the Quene la beale Mond the which was glad of sir Gaheris words, for well shee wist by his deeds, and manners that it was sir Tristram. And then the king made a feast royall, and unto that feast came sir Ewaine le fils du Roy Vreine, and some folke called him sir Ewaine le blaunce mains. And this sir Ewaine challenged all the knights of Cornewaille. When was king Marke wood wroth that he had no knights to answer him. Then sir Andret nephew unto king Marke lept vp and said, I will incounter with sir Ewaine. When he went and armed him and horsed him in the best manner as hee right well could. And so there sir Ewaine met with sir Andret and smot him downe, that he soloned on the earth. When was king Marke soze and wroth out of measure that hee had no knight to reuenge his nephew sir Andret. So the king called vnto him sir Dinas the seneschall, and prayed him for his sake to take vpon him to iust with sir Ewaine. Sir said sir Dinas I am full loath to haue to doe with any knight of the rounde table. Yet said the king for my lone sake vpon thee to iust with him. So sir Dinas made him ready, and anon they encountred together with great speares, but sir Dinas was ouerthrowen horse and man, and had a great fall on the earth. Who was wroth but king Marke. Alas said he, haue I no knight that will encounter with yonder knight. Sir said sir Gaheris for your sake I will iust. So sir Gaheris made him ready and when hee was armed hee rode forth into the field. And when sir Ewaine saw sir Gaheris shield hee rode vnto him and said. Sir yee doe not your part, for the first time that yee were made knight of the rounde table yee swore that yee would not haue to do with your fellowship wittingly. And pardy sir Gaheris yee know me well enough by my shield, and so to doe I know you by your shield, and though yee

would

and his Knights of the round Table.

would breake your oath, I will not breake mine, for there is not so much as one here, nor yet that shall thinke I am afraid of you, but I will fight with you. And yet we will offer combat. When was sir Gaheris armed, and so forth with every knight went his way, and sir Ewaine rode into the country. When king Marke armed him and took his horse and his speare with a squire with him. And then he rode after sir Ewaine, and suddenly as a gap he came vpon him as hee that was not ware of him, and there he smote him almost through the body, and there left him lying on the ground. So within a while there came sir Kay and found sir Ewaine, and asked him how he was hurt. I wote not said sir Ewaine why nor wherefore, but by treason I am sure I gat this hurt, for here came a knight suddenly vpon me as I was ware, and suddenly hurt me. When was there come sir Andret so to see king Marke. When that four knight said sir Kay and I wist it were thou that thus traytorously hast hurt this noble knight, thou shouldest neuer passe my hands. Sir said sir Andret it was not I that hurt him, and that I will repute me vnto himselfe. Hee vpon you false knights said sir Kay for all yee of Cornewaille be wrought wroth. So sir Kay made sir Ewaine to be carried to the Abbey of the black crosse, and there he was healed of his wounds. And then sir Gaheris took his leaue of king Marke, but as he departed he said sir, king yee did a foule shame to you and your court when yee banished sir Tristram out of this countrey, for yee needed not to haue doubted no knight and hee had bene here. And so he departed.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of the treason of King Marke, and how sir Gaheris smote him downe and sir Andret his cosin.

Then there came sir Kay the seneschall vnto king Marke, and there hee had good chere outwardly. Now faire Lords said king Marke, will yee goe proue any adventures in the Forrest of Paris, in the which I know an hard adventure as I knew any. Sir said sir Kay I will proue it. And sir Gaheris said he would be aduised, for king Marke was alway full of treason.

S

treason. And therewith Sir Gaheris departed and rode his way. And by the same way that Sir Kay should ride he laid him down to rest, charging his squire to watch upon Sir Kay, and warn him when he cometh. So with a while Sir Kay came riding that way. And then Sir Gaheris took his horse and met him and said. Sir Kay you are not wise to ride at the request of King Marke, for he dealeth all with treason. Then said Sir Kay. I require you let me passe this adventure. I will not fail you said Sir Gaheris. And so they rode that till to a lake that was that time called the perillous lake; and there they abode under the shadow of the wood. The meane while King Marke within the castle of tintagill auoyded all his barons and all other, save such that were prynces with him were all auoyded out of his chamber. And then he let call his nephew Sir Andret, and had arme him and horse him lightly, and by that time it was midnight. And so King Marke was armed in blacke, his horse and all. And so at a priuy porter they two issued out with their berlets with them and rode till they came to the lake. When Sir Kay espied them first and got a speare and profered to iust, and King Marke rode against him, and hit each other full hard, for the moone shone as faire as the bright day. And there at that tyme Sir Kay's horse fell downe, for his horse was not so big as the King's horse was; and Sir Kay's horse broused him full boze. When Sir Gaheris was full wroth that Sir Kay had a fall. And then he cried, Sir knight sit thou fast in thy saddle, for I will revenge my self to if I can. When King Marke was afferd of Sir Gaheris, and with an ax he will King Marke rode against him. And Sir Gaheris gaue him such a stroke that he fell downe. So then forthwith Sir Gaheris rode vnto Sir Andret, and smot him from his horse quite and cleane a speares length, so that his helme smote in the earth well halfe a foote deepe, and had nigh broken his necke. And therewith Sir Gaheris alighted, and set Sir Kay againe upon his horse. And then Sir Gaheris and Sir Kay went bath on foote to King Marke and Sir Andret had them so to yeeld them and tell them their names, or else they should die. And then with great paine Sir Andret ake first and said. What knight that smote

smote downe Sir Kay, is King Marke of Coznewaile, and therefore beware what yee doe. And I am Sir Andret his cousin. He saide vnto you both said Sir Gaheris, for a false traitour and false treason hath thou wrought, and he both, vnder a fained shere that yee made vs, it were great pitie said Sir Gaheris that thou shouldst liue any longer, saue my life said King Marke and I will make amends and consider that I am a King and a knight. At that tyme more than said Sir Gaheris to saue thy life, thou art a King anoynted with crome, and therefore thou shouldst hold with all men of worship, and therefore thou art worthy to die. With that he lashed at King Marke without saying any more. And he couered him with his shield and defended him as he might. And then Sir Kay lashed at Sir Andret. And therewith King Marke yielded him vnto Sir Gaheris, and then he knelt downe & made his oath vpon the crosse of the sword that neuer while he liued he would be against arrant knights. And also he swore to be good friend vnto Sir Tristram, for euer he came into Coznewaile. By then Sir Andret was on the earth, and Sir Kay would haue slaine him. But he said Sir Gaheris, let him not I pray you. At that tyme pitie said Sir Kay that he should liue any longer, for this is nigh cousin vnto Sir Tristram, and euer he hath bene a traitour vnto him, and by him he was exiled out of Coznewaile and therefore I will kepe him said Sir Kay. We shall not said Sir Gaheris, thence I haue giuen the King his life, I pray you to giue him his life. And therewith Sir Kay let him goe. And so Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris rode forth their way vnto Sir Dinas the seneschall, for because they heard say that he loued well Sir Tristram there they rested them. And sooke after they rode vnto the realme of Logris. And so within a litte while they met with Sir Launcelot, which had alwayes bene Bragwaine with him, to that entent he went for to haue met the sooner with Sir Tristram. And Sir Launcelot asked them what tidings in Coznewaile and whether they heard of Sir Tristram or not. Sir Kay and Sir Gaheris answered and said that they had not heard of him. When they told Sir Launcelot word by word of their adventure, so Sir Launcelot smiled and said, hard it is to take out of the flesh that is set in the bone. And so nide them mery together.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LXXXI.

How after that Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides and Sir Dinadan had bene long in prison, they were deliuered out.

Now leaue we off this tale and speake we of sir Dinas that had within the Castle a paramour, and shee loued him, the knight better then him. So when sir Dinas went out on hunting shee slipped downe by a colwell, and tooke with her two brachets, and so shee went to the knight that shee loued, and he her againe. And when sir Dinas came home he missed his paramour, and his two brachets, then was he more wroth for his two brachets then he was for the Lady. So then he rode after the knight that had his paramour, and bad him for to turne and iust. So sir Dinas smote him downe, that with the fall hee brake one of his legs and an arme. And so then his Lady and his paramour cryed vnto Sir Dinas mercy, and said shee would loue him better then euer shee did. Day nay said sir Dinas I shall neuer trust them that once haue betrayed me, and therefore as yee haue begun so end, for I will neuer meddle with you. And so sir Dinas departed and tooke his brachets with him and rode so his Castle.

Now leaue we him and turne we vnto Sir Launcelot, that was right heauy that he could heare no tidings of sir Tristram, for all this while hee was in prison with sir Darras, and sir Palomides and sir Dinadan. When Dame Bragwaine tooke her leaue to goe into Cornewaille, and sir Launcelot sir Kay and sir Gaheis rode for to seeke sir Tristram in the country of Bourluse. Now speaketh this tale of sir Tristram and of his two fellows, for euery day sir Palomides brayled and said language against sir Tristram. I wernatle said sir Dinadan of thee sir Palomides, and thou hadst sir Tristram heere, thou wouldst doe him no harme, for and a Wolfe and a Sheepe were together in prison, the Wolfe would suffer the Sheepe to bee in peace. And wit thou well said sir Dinadan this same is sir Tristram at a word, and now maist thou doe thy best with him and let see now how yee can thift with your hands.

Then

and his Knights of the round Table.

Then was Sir Palomides abashed and said little. Sir Palomides and Sir Tristram, I haue heard much of your manger against mee, but I will not meddle with you at this time by my will, because I dread the Lord of this place that hath vs in gouernaunce, for and I dread him more then I doe thee soone should it be thift, so they pleased themselves. And with that came in a Damosell and said gentle knights be glad and make good cheere, for ye are sure of your liues, and that heard I say of my Lord sir Darras. And then were they glad all three, for daily they wend to haue bene put to death. When sir Tristram felt sicke, that he thought to haue died. When sir Dinadan wept, and so did sir Palomides under them, making great sorow. So a Damosell came into them and found them mourning. And then she went to sir Darras and told him how the mighty knight that bare the blacke shield was likely for to die. That shall not bee said sir Darras, for God defend when any knights come to me for succour that I should suffer them to die within my prison, therefore said sir Darras vnto the Damosell fetch that knight & both his fellows before me. And then anon when sir Darras saw sir Tristram before him, he said. Sir knight I me repent of thy sickness, for thou art called a full noble knight, and so it seemeth by thee. And wit ye well it shall neuer be said that sir Darras hath destroyed such a noble knight as thou art in prison, how be it thou hast slaine three of my Sonnes, whereby I was greatly agrieved. But now thou shalt goe hence and thy fellows and all your harnais and your horses haue bene faire and cleane kept, and ye shall goe wheresoeuer it please you vpon this cotenant that thou sir knight shalt promise me for to be good friend vnto me and my Sonnes that be on liue, and also thou shalt shew and tell mee what is thy name, and of thy being.

Sir said he as for mee my name is sir Tristram de Lyones, and in Cornewaille was I borne, and King Meliodas was my father, and I am nephew vnto King Marke. And as for the death of your Sonnes I might not doe withall for and they had bene the next kinne that I haue I might haue done non other wise. And if I had slaine him by treason or trechery, I had

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

beene worthy to haue died. All this I consider said sir Darrat, that all that yee did was by force of knight-hood, and that was the cause I would not put you to death. But sithen yee bee the good knight sir Tristram, I pray you heartily for to bee my good friend and to my somes. Sir said sir Tristram, I promise you by the faith of my body euer while I liue I will doe you seruice, for ye haue done to vs but as a naturall knight ought to doe. And then sir Tristram reposed him there till hee was amended of his sicknesse. And when he was whole and strong they tooke their leaue, and euery knight tooke his horse and so departed, and rode together till they came vnto a crosse-way. Now fellows said sir Tristram, heere will wee depart in sundry wayes. And because sir Dinadan had the first aduventure of him I will begin.

CHAP. LXXXII.

How Sir *Dinadan* rescued a Lady from Sir *Breuselancepittie*,
and how Sir *Tristram* receiued a shield of *Morgan le fay*.

AND so as Sir Dinadan rode by a well, he found a Lady making great mone, what ayleth you said sir Dinadan. Sir knight said the Lady I am the wofullest Lady of the world for within these five dayes here came a knight called sir Breuselancepittie, and hee slew mine owne brother, and euer sith he hath kept mee at his owne will, and of all men in the world I hate him most, and therefore, I require you of your knight-hood for to avenge me, for he will not tarry, but will be heere anon. Let him come said sir Dinadan, & because of the honour of all women I will doe my part. With this came sir Breuselancepittie and when hee saw a knight with his Lady, he was wood woth, and said to sir Dinadan. Sir knight keepe thee from mee. So they hurled together as thunder, and either smote other passing sore. But Sir Dinadan put him through the shoulder a greuous wound, and so euer sir Dinadan might turne him to sir Breuselancepittie was gone and fled. And then the Lady prayed him to bring her to a Castle there beside but foure mile hence. And so Sir Dinadan brought her

and his Knights of the round Table.

her there, where shee was welcome for the Lord of that Castle was her Uncle. And so sir Dinadan rode his way vpon his aduventure.

Now turne wee from this tale vnto Sir Tristram that by aduventure came to a Castle to aske lodging, wherein was Queene Morgan le fay. And so when sir Tristram was let into that Castle hee had good cheere all that night. And on the morrow when he would haue departed the Queene said. Wilt thou well yee shall not depart lightly, for yee are here as a prisoner. Jesu defend mee said Sir Tristram, for I was but late agoe prisoner. Faire knight said the Queene, yee shall abide with me till I know what yee are, and from whence ye come. And euer the Queene would set sir Tristram on her side, and her paramour on the other side, and euer Morgan le fay would behold Sir Tristram, and thereat the knight was iealous, and was in will suddainly to haue runne vpon Sir Tristram with a sword, but hee left it for shame. So the Queene said to Sir Tristram, tell mee thy name and I shall suffer thee to depart when thou wilt. Upon that couenant I will tell you, my name is sir Tristram de Lyones. Ah said Morgan le fay and I had wist that, thou shouldest not haue departed as soone as thou shalt but sithen I haue made a promise, I will hold it, with that thou wilt promise mee to beare a shield vpon thee that I shall deliuer thee vnto the Castle of the hard rock, where King Arthur hath cryed a great turnament, and there I pray you that yee will bee, and to doe as much deeds of armes as yee may doe.

For at that Castle of Paitens sir Tristram yee did meruallous deeds of armes as euer I heard knight doe. Madam said sir Tristram, let me see the shield that I shall beare. So the shield was brought forth, and the shield was goldish with a King and a Queene therein painted, and a knight standing aboue them vpon the Kings head with one foote and the other vpon the Queenes head. Madam said Sir Tristram, this is a faire shield and a mightie. But what signifieth this King and this Queene and that knight standing vpon both their heads. I shall tell you said Morgan le fay, it signifieth King Arthur

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Arthur and Queene Gueneuer, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and seruage. Who is that knight said Sir Tristram. That shall yee not know at this time said the Queene. But Queene Morgan le fay loued Sir Launcelot best and euer shee desired him, and he would neuer loue her, nor doe nothing at her request, and therefore shee held many knights together for to haue taken him by strength. And because shee deemed that Sir Launcelot loued Queene Gueneuer as paramour, and shee him againe, therefore Queene Morgan le fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke to the entent that King Arthur might vnderstand the loue betwene them. So sir Tristram tooke that shield and promised her to beare it at the turnament at the Castle of the heerd roch, but Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against sir Launcelot, but after ward he knew it.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

How Sir Tristram tooke with him the shield, and also how hee slew the paramour of Morgan le fay.

SO then Sir Tristram tooke his leaue of the Queene, and tooke the shield with him. And then came the knight that held Queene Morgan le fay as paramour, and his name was sir Hemison, and hee made him ready for to follow after sir Tristram. My faire friend said Morgan le fay, ride not after that knight for certainly ye shall winne no worship of him. He vpon him coward said sir Hemison, for I will neuer good knight came out of Coznewaile, but if it were sir Tristram de Lyones. What and that hee said Morgan le fay. Pay nay said hee, hee is with la beale Isond, this is but a daffish knight. Alas my faire friend, yee shall find him the best knight that euer yee met withall, for I know him better then yee doe. And for your sake said Sir Hemison I shall slay him or else beate him well. Ah faire friend said Queene Morgan le fay, mee repenteth that yee will follow that knight, for I feare mee sore of your againe comming. With that this knight rode his way wood wroth and he rode after sir Tristram

and his Knights of the round Table.

As fast as he had beene chased with knights. When Sir Tristram heard a knight come after him so fast, he returned about and saw a knight comming against him. And when he came nigh vnto sir Tristram, hee cryed on high. Sir knight keepe thee from mee. When they rushed together as it had beene thunder, and sir Hemison bzised his speare vpon Sir Tristram, but his harneis was so good that he might not hurt him. And so sir Tristram smote him harder and bare him through the body and fell ouer his horse croupe. And then Sir Tristram turned for to haue done more with his sword, but hee saw so much blood goe from him that him seemed hee was likely to die, and so hee departed from him and came vnto a faire mannoe to an old knight and there Sir Tristram lodged.

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

How Morgan le fay buried her paramour, and how Sir Tristram praysed Sir Launcelot and his kinne.

NOW leaue we to speake of sir Tristram and speake we of the knight that was wounded to the death, and then his varlet alighted and tooke off his helme, and then he asked his Master whether there were any life in him. There is in me life said the knight but it is very little, and therefore leape thou by behind me, and when thou hast holpen me vp, then hold me fast that I fall not and bring me to Queene Morgan le fay for the deepe draughts of death draw to my heart that I may no longer liue, for I would faine speake with her or euer I died, for else my soule will be in great perill and I die.

And with full great paine his varlet brought him vnto his Castle, and there sir Hemison fell downe dead. And when Queene Morgan le fay saw him dead shee made great sorrow out of measure. And then shee dispoyled him vnto his shirt. And so she let him to be put in a Tombe, and about the Tombe she let write. Here lyeth Sir Hemison slaine by the Noble hands of Sir Tristram de Lyones.

Now turne wee vnto sir Tristram that asked the knight his

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Arthur and Queene Gueneuer, and a knight that holdeth them both in bondage and seruage. Who is that knight said Sir Tristram. That shall yee not know at this time said the Queene. But Queene Morgan le fay loued Sir Launcelot best and euer shee desired him, and he would neuer loue her, nor doe nothing at her request, and therefore shee held many knights together for to haue taken him by strength. And because shee deemed that Sir Launcelot loued Queene Gueneuer as paramour, and shee him againe, therefore Queene Morgan le fay ordained that shield to put Sir Launcelot to a rebuke to the entent that King Arthur might vnderstand the loue betwene them. So sir Tristram tooke that shield and promised her to beare it at the turnament at the Castle of the heard roch, but Sir Tristram knew not that shield was ordained against sir Launcelot, but afterward he knew it.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

How Sir Tristram tooke with him the shield, and also how hee slew the paramour of Morgan le fay.

SO then Sir Tristram tooke his leaue of the Queene, and tooke the shield with him. And then came the knight that held Queene Morgan le fay as paramour, and his name was sir Hemison, and hee made him ready for to follow after sir Tristram. My faire friend said Morgan le fay, ride not after that knight for certainly yee shall winne no worship of him. He vpon him colward said sir Hemison, for I wist neuer good knight came out of Cornewalle, but if it were sir Tristram de Lyones. What and that be hee said Morgan le fay. Nay nay said hee, hee is with la beale Ifond, this is but a daffish knight. Alas my faire friend, yee shall find him the best knight that euer yee met withall, for I know him better then yee doe. And for your sake said Sir Hemison I shall slay him or else beate him well. Ah faire friend said Queene Morgan le fay, mee repenteth that yee will follow that knight, for I feare mee sore of your againe comming. With that this knight rode his way word wroth and he rode after sir Tristram

as

and his Knights of the round Table:

as fast as he had beene chased with knights. When Sir Tristram heard a knight come after him so fast, he returned about and saw a knight comming against him. And when he came nigh vnto sir Tristram, hee cryed on high. Sir knight keepe thee from mee. When they rushed together as it had beene thunder, and sir Hemison ^{clier} bated his speare vpon Sir Tristram, but his harnets was so good that he might not hurt him. And so sir Tristram smote him harder and bare him through the body and fell ouer his horse croupe. And then Sir Tristram turned for to haue done more with his sword, but hee saw so much blood goe from him that him seemed hee was likely to die, and so hee departed from him and came vnto a faire mannor to an old knight and there Sir Tristram lodged.

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

How Morgan le fay buried her paramour, and how Sir Tristram praysed Sir Launcelot and his kinne.

NOW leaue we to speake of sir Tristram and speake we of the knight that was wounded to the death, and then his varlet alighted and tooke off his helme, and then he asked his varlet whether there were any life in him. There is in me life said the knight but it is very little, and therefore leape thou vp behind me, and when thou hast holpen me vp, then hold me fast that I fall not and bring me to Queene Morgan le fay for the deepe bzaughts of death draw to my heart that I may no longer liue, for I would faine speake with her or euer I died, for else my soule will be in great perill and I die.

And with full great paine his varlet brought him vnto his Castle, and there sir Hemison fell downe dead. And when Queene Morgan le fay saw him dead shee made great sorrow out of measure. And then shee dispoled him vnto his witt. And so she let him to be put in a Tombe, and about the Tombe she let write. Here lyeth Sir Hemison slaine by the Noble hands of Sir Tristram de Lyones.

Now turns we vnto sir Tristram that asked the knight his

h

hoof

hoost if he saw of late any knight aduenturous. Sir said hee the last night here lodged with mee sir Ector de maris and a Damofell with him, and that Damofell told mee that he was one of the best knights of the world. It is not so said sir Tristram, for I know foure better knights of his owne blood, and the first is sir Launcelot du lake the best knight, and sir Bors de ganis, sir Bleoberis, sir Blamor de Ganis, and sir Gaheris.

Ray said his hoost, sir Gawaine is a better knight then hee. It is not so said sir Tristram, for I haue met with them both, and I felt sir Gaheris for the better knight, and sir Lamoracke I call him as good as any of them, except sir Launcelot. Why haue ye not sir Tristram said his hoost, for I account him as him as good as any of them. I know him not said sir Tristram, thus they talked and boured as long as them list and then they went to rest. And on the morrow sir Tristram departed and took his leane of his hoost and rode toward the Roch daire, and none aduenture had Sir Tristram but that, and so hee rested not till hee came to the Castle where hee saw a hundred Tents.

BY MICHAEL. LXXXV.

How Sir Tristram at a turnament bare the shield that Morgan le fay had deliuered him.

Then the King of Scotland and the King of Ireland beto againt King Arthur's knights, and there began a great nicdole. So came in Sir Tristram rushing and did meruallous deeds of armes, for hee smote downe many knights, and euer he was before King Arthur with that shield. And when King Arthur saw that shield hee meruailed so what entent it was made. But Queene Gueneuer denied as it was, wherefore shee was heauy. And then was there a Damofell of Queene Morgan in a Chamber by King Arthur, and when she heard King Arthur speake of that shield then shee spake openly to King Arthur. Sir King wit ye well this shield was ordained for you to warne you of your shame and dishonour, and that

belongeth to you and to your Queene. And then anon the Damofell piked her away priuely, that no man wist where shee was become. And then was King Arthur sad and woof, and asked from whence that Damofell came. There was not one that knew her, nor wist where shee was become. Then Queene Gueneuer called to her sir Ector de Maris, and there shee made her complaint to him and said. I wot well this shield was made by Morgan le fay in despite of mee and of sir Launcelot, wherefore I dread sore leaill I should be destroyed. And euer the King beheld sir Tristram that did such deeds of armes that hee wounded sore what hee might be, and well hee wist it was not Sir Launcelot. And it was told him that Sir Tristram was in little Britaine with Ronde le blaunch mains, for hee deemed and hee had beene in the Realme of Loggis Sir Launcelot or some of his fellowes that were in the quest of Sir Tristram, that they should haue found him or that time. So King Arthur had meruaile what knight hee might be, and euer King Arthur's eyes were on that shield. And that espyed the Queene, and that made her sore asfeard. But euer Sir Tristram smote downe knights that it was great wonder to behold both on the right hand and on the left hand, that vnieth no knight might withstand him. And the King of Scotland and the King of Ireland began to withdraw them. When King Arthur espyed that, hee thought that the knight with the strange shield should not escape him. So hee called vnto him Sir Gawaine le blaunch mains and bad him arme him and make him ready. So anon King Arthur and Sir Ewaine metted them before Sir Tristram, and required him to tell them where hee had that shield. Sir said hee, I had it of Queene Morgan la fay, Sister vnto King Arthur.

BY MICHAEL. LXXXVI.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LXXXVI.

How Sir Tristram iusted and smote downe King Arthur and Sir Ewaine, and would not tell them his name.

Then said King Arthur, if yee can deserue what yee beare, yee be worthy to beare those armes. As for that said Sir Tristram, I will answere you. This shield was giuen me vnder the of Quene Morgan le fay, as for me I cannot deserue these armes for it is no point of my charge, and yet I trust to God to beare them with worship. Truly said King Arthur yee ought not to beare no armes, but if ye wilt what ye beare. But I pray you tell me your name. To what intent said Sir Tristram. For I would wit said King Arthur. Sir said Sir Tristram, yee shall not wit as at this time. When shall ye and I doe battaile together said King Arthur. Why said Sir Tristram will yee doe battaile with mee but if I tell you my name, that little needeth you and ye were a man of worship, for ye haue sene me this day that I had great trouble, hold he it I will not faile you, and haue yee no doubt that I feare you not, though yee thinke ye haue mee at a great advantage, yet shall I right well endure you. And therewithall King Arthur drew his shield and his speare, and Sir Tristram against him, and then they came right eagerly together. And there King Arthur brake his speare vpon Sir Tristrams shield. But Sir Tristram hit King Arthur againe, that horse and man fell to the ground. And there was King Arthur wounded on the left side a great wound and a perillous. Then when Sir Ewaine saw that his Lord King Arthur lay vpon the ground so wounded, he was passing heauy. And then hee drew his shield and his speare and cryed aloud vnto Sir Tristram and said, Sir knight defend the. So they came together as thunder, and Sir Ewaine brake his speare vpon Sir Tristrams shield all to peeces. And Sir Tristram smote him harder and swer with such a might that he bare him cleane out of his saddle, that he fell downe to the earth. With that Sir Tristram turned him about and said. Faire knights

and his Knights of the round Table.

Knights I had no neede for to iust with you, for I haue had enough to doe this day. Then arose King Arthur and went vnto Sir Ewaine and said to Sir Tristram. Wee haue as wee haue deserued, for through our pride wee demaunded battaile of you, and yet wee knew not your name. Neuer thelesse said Sir Ewaine by the holy roode hee is a strong knight in mine aduise as any now liuing. Then Sir Tristram departed and in euery place hee asked, and demaunded after Sir Launcelot but in no wise hee could not beare of him whether hee were dead or a liue, wherefore Sir Tristram made great moane and sorrow. So Sir Tristram rode by a forest, and then was he ware of a faire Towre by a maries on that one side, and on that other side a faire meadow, and there hee saw tenne knights fighting together. And euer the neerer hee came hee saw how there was but one knight did battaile against nine knights, and that one knight did so meruailously that Sir Tristram had great wonder that euer one knight might doe so great deeds of armes.

And then within a little while hee had slaine halfe their horses and unhorsed them, and their horses ranne into the fields and forest. When Sir Tristram had great pittie vpon that one knight that endured so great paine, and euer hee thought it should be Sir Palomides by his shield. And so hee rode vnto the knights and cryed to them, and bad them cease their battaile, for they did themselves great shame, so many knights to fight with one knight. Then answered the spallier of those knights whose name was Sir Breuse saunce pittie, that was at that time the most mischeuous knight liuing, and thus hee said. Sir knight what haue yee to doe to meddle with vs, and therefore if yee be wise depart on your way, as yee came, for this knight shall not escape from vs. What were pittie said Sir Tristram, that so good a knight as hee is should be slaine so cowardly. And therefore I warne you I will succour him with all my puissance.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP: LXXXVII.

How Sir Tristram, and Sir Palomides met, and how they promised to fight together within fourteene dayes after.

So Sir Tristram alighted from his horse because they were son foote, that they should not slay his horse. And then hee dressed his shield with his sword in his hand, and hee smote on the right hand and on the left hand passing soze, that well nigh at euery strooke he strake downe a knight. And when they had felt his strookes, they fled all with sir Breuse saunce pittie vnto the Towre. And Sir Tristram followed fast after with his sword in his hand. But they escaped into the Towre and shut Sir Tristram without the gate. And when Sir Tristram saw this, hee turned backe vnto Sir Palomides and found him sitting vnder a tree soze wounded. Ah faire knight said Sir Tristram well be yee found. O mercie Sir said Sir Palomides of your great goodnesse, for yee haue rescued mee of my life, and saued mee from death. What is your name said Sir Tristram. Sir said hee, my name is Sir Palomides. O Jesu said Sir Tristram thou hast a faire grace of me this day that I should rescue thee, and thou art the man in the world which I most hate. But now make thee ready, for I will doe battaile with thee. What is your name said Sir Palomides. My name is Sir Tristram, your mortall enemy. It may bee so said Sir Palomides, but ye haue done ouer much for mee this day that I should fight with you, for in as much as yee haue saued my life it will bee no worship for you to haue to doe with mee. For yee are fresh, and I am soze wounded. And therefore and yee will needs haue to doe with mee, assigne me a day and I shall meeete with you without any faile. Yee say well said Sir Tristram. Now I assigne you to meeete me in the medow by the riuer of Camelot where Merlin set the peron. So they were both agreed. Then Sir Tristram asked Sir Palomides why those nine knights did battaile with him. For this cause said Sir Palomides. As I rode on mine adventures in a forrest heere beside, I espied where

and his Knights of the round Table.

whereas lay a dead knight, & a Lady weeping beside him. And when I saw her making such dole, I asked her who slew her Lord. Sir said she, the most falsest of the world now liuing. And he is the most villaine that euer any man heard speake of. And men call him Sir Breuse saunce petie.

Then for pittie I made the damosel to leape vpon her palfrey, and I promised her to be her warrant and to helpe her for to bury her Lord. And so sodainely as I came riding by this Towre there came out sir Breuse saunce pittie and sodainely hee strooke me from my horse. And then so that I might recouer my horse againe, this knight Sir Breuse slew the damosell. And so I took my horse againe, and I was sore ashamed and so began the meddle betwene vs. And this is the cause wherefore we did this battaile. Tell said Sir Tristram now I vnderstand the manner of your battaile. But in any manner of wise let it not be out of your remembrance the promise that yee haue made with mee to doe battaile with mee this day fourteene dayes. I shall not faile you said Sir Palomides. Tell said Sir Tristram as at this time I will not assaile you till yee be out of the danger of your enemies. So they mounted vpon their horses and rode together into that forrest, and there they found a faire well with cleare water burbeling. Faire sir said Sir Tristram, to drinke of that water haue I a lust. And then they alighted from their horses, and then were they ware by thent where stood a great horse tied to a tree, and euer he neyed, and then were they ware of a faire knight armed vnder a tree, lacking no peece of harneys, saue his helme lay vnder his head. By God said Sir Tristram, vnder lieth a well farung knight, what is best to doe. Awake him said Sir Palomides. So Sir Tristram wakned him with the end of his speare. And so the knight arose vp hastily, and put his helme on his head, and gat a great speare in his hand, and without any more words hee hurled vnto Sir Tristram, and smote him cleane from his saddle to the earth, and hurt him on the left side, that sir Tristram lay in great perill. Then he galloped farther, and set his course, and came hurling vpon Sir Palomides, and there he strake him apart through the body, that he fell from his horse vnto the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the ground. And then this strange knight left them there, and tooke his way through the forrest. With this sir Palomides and sir Tristram were on foote, and gat their horses againe, and either asked counsaile of other what was best to doe. By my head said sir Tristram, I will follow after this strong knight that thus hath shamed vs. Well said sir Palomides, and I will rest mee hereby with a friend of mine. Beware said sir Tristram vnto sir Palomides that yee faile not that day that yee haue set with me to do battaile for as I deeme yee will not hold your day, for I am much bigger then yee are. As for that said sir Palomides, be it as he may, for I feare you not, for and I bee not sicke nor prisoner, I will not faile you: but I haue cause for to haue more doubt of you, that yee will not meete with me, because yee ride after yonder strong knight. And if that yee meete with him, it shall bee an hard aduenture if euer yee escape his hands. Right so sir Tristram and sir Palomides departed asunder, and either tooke diuers waies.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

How Sir *Tristram* sought the strong knight that had smitten him downe and many other knights of the round table.

Sir Tristram rode long after this strong knight. And at the last he saw whereas lay a lady ouerthwart a dead knight. Faire lady said sir Tristram, who hath slaine your lord. Sir said she heere came a knight riding as my lord and I rested vs heere, and asked him of whence he was, and my lord said, of King Archurs Court. Wherefore said the strong knight I will iust with thee, for I hate all those that be of King Archurs Court. And my lord which lieth heere dead mounted vpon his horse, and the strong knight and my lord encountered together, and there he smote my lord throughout the body with his speare And thus he hath brought me in great woe and damage. What me repenteth, said sir Tristram of your great woe, but I require you tell me your lords name. Sir said she his name is sir Galadoun that would haue proued a good knight. So departed sir Tristram from that dolorous lady

and his Knights of the round Table.

lady, and had good lodging. When on the third day sir Tristram met with sir Gawaine and with sir Bleoberis in a forrest at a lodge. And either were sore wounded. When sir Tristram asked sir Gawaine and sir Bleoberis if they met with such a knight with such a cognisance with a couered shield. Faire sir said those knights such a knight met with vs to our great damage. And first he smote downe my fellow sir Bleoberis and sore wounded him because he had mee I should not haue to doe with him, for why he was ouer strong for mee. What strong knight tooke his words at scoone, and hee said that hee said it for mockery. And then they rode together, and so hurt my fellow. And when hee had done so, I might not for shame but I must iust with him. And at the first course he cast me downe and my horse to the earth. And there hee had almost slaine me. And from vs hee tooke his horse and departed. And in an euill time hee met with mee and with him. Faire knights said sir Tristram so hee met with mee and with another knight that was called sir Palomides, and hee smote vs both downe with one speare, and hurt vs full sore. By my faith said sir Gawaine by my counsaile yee shall let him passe, and seeke him no further. For at the next feast of the round Table vpon paine of my head yee shall find him there. By my faith said sir Tristram, I shall neuer rest till that I haue found him. And then sir Gawaine asked him his name. And hee answered and said, my name is sir Tristram de Lyones. And so either told other their names. And then departed sir Tristram, and rode forth his way. And by fortune in a meddow sir Tristram met with sir Kay the Seneschall and sir Dinadan. What tidings with you faire knights said sir Tristram. None that are very good said the knights. Why so said sir Tristram, I pray you tell me, for I ride to seeke a knight. What cognisance beareth hee said sir Kay. Yee beareth said sir Tristram a couered shield close with a cloth. By my head said sir Kay, that is the same knight that met with vs, for this night wee were lodged within a widowes house, and there was that same knight lodged. And when hee with that wee were of King Archurs Court,

Sir Tristram alighted from his horse because they were
on foote, that they should not slay his horse. And then hee
dressed his shield with his sword in his hand, and hee smote
on the right hand and on the left hand passing sore, that well
nigh at every strooke he strake downe a knight. And when
they had felt his strookes, they fled all with sir Breuselance
pittie vnto the Towre. And Sir Tristram followed fast after
with his sword in his hand. But they escaped into the Towre
and shut Sir Tristram without the gate. And when Sir Tri-
stram saw this, hee turned backe vnto Sir Palomides and
found him sitting vnder a tree sore wounded. Ah faire knight
said Sir Tristram well be yee found. Gnamercy Sir said Sir
Palomides of your great goodnesse, for yee haue rescued
mee of my life, and saued mee from death. What is your
name said Sir Tristram. Sir said hee, my name is Sir Palo-
mides. Iesu said Sir Tristram thou hast a faire grace of me
this day that I should rescue thee, and thou art the man in the
world which I most hate. But now make thee ready, for I
will doe battaile with thee. What is your name said Sir
Palomides. My name is Sir Tristram, your mortall enemy.
It may bee so said Sir Palomides, but ye haue done ouer-
much for mee this day that I should fight with you, for in as
much as yee haue saued my life it will bee no worship for
you to haue to doe with mee. For yee are fresh, and I am
sore wounded. And therefore and yee will needs haue to doe
with mee, assigne me a day and I shall meeete with you with-
out any faile. Yee say well said Sir Tristram. Now I assigne
you to meeete me in the medow by the riuer of Camelot where
Merlin set the peron. So they were both agreed. Then Sir
Tristram asked Sir Palomides why those nine knights did
battaile with him. For this cause said Sir Palomides. As I
rode on mine aduentures in a Forrest heere beside, I espied
where

Then for pitee I made the damoysel to leape vpon her palfrey,
and I promised her to be her warrant and to helpe her for to
bury her Lord. And so sodainely as I came riding by this To-
wer there came out sir Breuselance pitee and sodainely hee
strooke me from my horse. And then for that I might recouer
my horse againe, this knight Sir Breuselance slew the damoysel.
And so I took my horse againe, and I was sore ashamed and
so began the meddole betwene vs. And this is the cause where-
fore we did this battaile. Well said Sir Tristram now I vn-
derstand the manner of your battaile. But in any manner of
wise let it not be out of your remembrance the promise that ye
haue made with me to doe battaile with mee this day fourtene
daies. I shall not faile you said Sir Palomides. Well said Sir
Tristram as at this time I will not assaile you till ye be out of
the danger of your enemies. So they mounted vpon their
horses and rode together into that Forrest, and there they found
a faire well with cleare water burbeling. Faire sir said Sir
Tristram, to drinke of that water haue I a lust. And then they
alighted from their horses, and then were they ware by them
where stood a great horse tied to a tree, and euer he neyed, and
then were they ware of a faire knight armed vnder a tree, lac-
king no peece of harneys, saue his helme lay vnder his head. By
God said Sir Tristram, yonder lieth a well faring knight,
what is best to doe. Awake him said Sir Palomides. So Sir
Tristram waked him with the end of his speare. And so the
knight arose vp hastily, and put his helme on his head, and
gat a great speare in his hand, and without any more words
he hurled vnto Sir Tristram, and smote him cleane from his
saddle to the earth, and hurt him on the left side, that sir Tristram
lay in great perill. Then he galloped farther, and set his course,
and came hurling vpon Sir Palomides, and there he strooke
him apart through the body, that he fell from his horse vnto
the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the ground. And then this Strong Knight left them there, and toke his way through the forrest. With this Sir Palomides and Sir Tristram were on fote, and gat their horses againe, and either asked counsaile of other what was best to doe. By my head said Sir Tristram, I will follow after this Strong Knight that thus hath shamed vs. Well said Sir Palomides, and I will rest mee here by with a friend of mine. Beware said Sir Tristram unto Sir Palomides that ye saile not that day that ye haue set with me to do battaile for as I deeme ye will not houlde your day, for I am much bigger then ye are. As for that said Sir Palomides, be it as he may, for I feare you not, for and I be not sicke nor prisoner, I will not saile you: but I haue cause for to haue more doubt of you, that ye will not meete with me, because ye ride after yonder Strong Knight. And if that ye meete with him, it shall be an hard aduenture if ever ye escape his hands. Right so Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides departed asunder, and either toke diuers waies.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

How Sir *Tristram* sought the Strong Knight that had smitten him downe and many other Knights of the round table;

So Sir Tristram rode long after this Strong Knight. And at the last he saw whereas lay a Lady ouerthwart a dead Knight. Faire Lady said Sir Tristram, who hath slaine your Lord. Sir said she heere came a Knight riding as my Lord and I rested vs heere, and asked him of whence he was, and my Lord said, of King Archurs Court. Wherefore said the Strong Knight I will iust with thee, for I hate all those that be of King Archurs Court. And my Lord which lieth heere dead moued vpon his horse, and the Strong Knight and my Lord encountered together, and there he smote my Lord throughout the body with his speare. And thus he hath brought me in great woe and damage. That me repenteth, said Sir Tristram of your great woe, but I require you tell me your Lords name. Sir said she his name is Sir Galadoun that would haue proued a good Knight. So departed Sir Tristram from that dolorous Lady

and his Knights of the round Table:

and had good lodging. Then on the third day Sir Tristram met with Sir Gawaine and with Sir Bleoberis in a lodge. And either were sore wounded. When Sir Tristram asked Sir Gawaine and Sir Bleoberis if they met such a Knight with such a cognisance with a couered helme. Faire Sir said those Knights such a Knight met with our great damage. And first he smote downe my fellow Bleoberis and sore wounded him because he had mee I durst not haue to doe with him, for why he was ouer Strong. That Strong Knight tooke his words at scoone, and said that hee said it for mockery. And then they robe together, and so hurt my fellow. And when hee had done so, I durst not for shame but I must iust with him. And at the first course he cast me downe and my horse to the earth. And hee had almost slaine me. And from vs hee tooke his horse and departed. And in an euill time hee met with mee and with him. Faire Knights said Sir Tristram so hee met with mee and with another Knight that was called Sir Palomides, and hee smote vs both downe with one speare, and hee fell sore. By my faith said Sir Gawaine by my counsaile ye shall let him passe, and seeke him no further. For at the next feast of the round Table vpon paine of my head ye shall find him there. By my faith said Sir Tristram, I shall not rest till that I haue found him. And then Sir Gawaine told him his name. And hee answered and said, my name is Sir Tristram de Lyones. And so either told other their names. And then departed Sir Tristram, and rode forth his way. And by fortune in a meddow Sir Tristram met with Sir Kay the Seneschall and Sir Dinadan. What tidings with you Sir Knights said Sir Tristram. None that are very good Sir Knights. Why so said Sir Tristram, I pray you tell me for I ride to seeke a Knight. What cognisance beareth said Sir Kay. Hee beareth said Sir Tristram a couered helme with a cloth. By my head said Sir Kay, that is the Knight that met with vs, for this night wee were lodged in a widows house, and there was that same Knight. And when hee wist that wee were of King Archurs Court,

The Historie of Prince Arthur

Court, hee spake of the King great bilany, and especially of Queen Gueneuer. And then on the morrow was waged battaile for the same cause with him. And at the first encounter (said sir Kay) he smote me downe from my horse, and hurt me passing sore. And when my fellow sir Dinadan saw mee so smitten downe and hurt, hee would in no wise reuenge mee, but fled fast away from mee. And thus hee is departed and gone. And then sir Tristram required them to tell him their names. And so either told other their names. And sir Tristram departed from sir Kay and sir Dinadan, and so he passed through a great forrest into a plaine, till he was ware of a priory, and there rested him with a good man five dayes.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

How Sir Tristram smote downe Sir Sagramore le desirous and Sir Dodinas le sauvage.

AND then hee sent his man that hight Gouvernale, and commanded him to goe to a Cittle there beside to fetch him new harneis, for it was long time before that sir Tristram had not beene refreshed, his harneis was bruised and broken. And when Gouvernale his seruant was come with his appa-
rell, hee tooke his leaue of the Widdow, and mounted on horse-backe, and rode his way early in the morning. And by suddaine aduenture sir Tristram met with sir Sagramore le desirous and with sir Dodinas le sauvage. And when these two knights met with sir Tristram, they questioned with him, and asked him if hee would iust with them. Faire knights said sir Tristram with a good will I would iust with you, but I haue promised a dayes neere hand to doe battaile with a strong knight, and therefore I am loath to haue to doe with you. For and it misfortuned mee heere to be hurt of you I should not be able to doe my battaile which I promised. As for that said sir Sagramore, maugre your head yee shall iust with vs: or yee passe from vs. Well said sir Tristram if ye enforce me thereto, I must do what I may. And then they dressed their shields, and came running to-
gether

and his Knights of the round Table.

other with great ire. But through Sir Tristrams great force hee strooke sir Sagramore from his horse. When he ranne
other with his horse and said vnto sir Dodinas. Sir knight
thee ready. And so through his force Sir Tristram
strooke sir Dodinas from his horse. And when he saw them
lye on the ground, hee tooke his bridle, and rode forth on
may, and his man Gouvernale with him. So anon as Sir
Tristram was past, sir Sagramore and sir Dodinas gat a-
round their horses, and mounted vp lighty and followed after
sir Tristram as fast as they could. And when Sir Tristram
saw them come so fast after him, hee returned with his horse
to them, & asked them what they would haue, it is not long
since I smote you downe to the ground at your owne re-
quest and desire, I would haue ridden by you, but yee would
enforce me, and now mee seemeth yee would doe more hat-
red with me. What is truth said sir Sagramore and sir Do-
dinas for we will be reuenged of the despite that ye haue done
to faire knights said sir Tristram, that shall little grieue you,
all that I did to you yee caused me to doe it. Wherefore I
require you of your knight-hood leaue me at this time, for I
dare if that I doe battaile with you, I shall not escape with-
out great hurts, and as I suppose ye shall not escape all losse.
This is the very cause why that I am so loth to haue to doe
with you. For I must fight within these three dayes with as
strong a knight and as valiant as any is now liuing. What
said is that said Sir Sagramore and Sir Dodinas that yee
shall fight with. Faire knights said sir Tristram, it is a good
knight called sir Palomides. By my head said Sir Sagramore
and Sir Dodinas ye haue cause to dread him, for yee shall find
him a passing good knight and a valiant. And because ye shall
haue to doe with him, wee will forbear you as at this time,
else yee should not lightly escape from vs. But gentle
said sir Sagramore tell vs your name. Sir said hee my
name is sir Tristram de Lyones. Ah said sir Sagramore and sir
Dodinas well be ye saund, for much worship haue we heard of
you. And then either tooke their leaue of other, & departed forth
on their way.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XC.

How Sir *Tristram* met at the Peron with Sir *Launcelot* and how they fought together, not knowing the one the other.

Then departed Sir *Tristram* and rode straight vnto Camelot to the Peron which *Merlin* had made before, where Sir *Lanceor* (that was the Kings Sonne of Ireland) was slaine by the hands of *Balin*. And in the same place was the faire *Columbe* slaine, that which was loue vnto Sir *Lanceor*, for after he was dead, he tooke his sword and thrust it through his body. And by the craft of *Merlin* he made to enter this knight Sir *Lanceor* and his faire Lady *Columbe* vnder a stone. And at that time *Merlin* prophesied, that in that same place should fight two of the best knights that ever were in King *Arthurs* dayes and the truest louers. So when Sir *Tristram* came to the tombe where Sir *Launceor* and his Lady were there buried, hee looked about after Sir *Palomides*. When was hee ware of a seemely knight that came riding against him all in white, with a couered shield, when he came nigh vnto Sir *Tristram* hee said on high yee hee welcome Sir knight and well and truly haue yee holden your promise. And then they dressed their shields and their speares, and came together with all the might that their horses could runne. And they met so fiercely that both horses and knights fell to the earth. When as soone as they might they auoided their horses, and put their shields before them, and they strake together with bright swords, like men that were of might, and either wounded other wondrous sore, that the blood ranne vpon the grasse. And thus they two fought the space of foure houres, that neither of them would speake vnto other one word. And of their harnes they had helwen off many peeces. *Alas* he said *Gouernale*, I haue great meruaile of the strokes that my Master hath giuen vnto your Master. By my head said Sir *Launcelots* seruant your Master hath not giuen so many but your master hath receiued as many as mee. *Alas* he said *Gouernale*, it is too much for Sir *Palomides* to suffer as Sir *Launcelot*,

and his Knights of the round Table.

Launcelot, and yet were it pittie that either of these good knights should destroy others blood. So they stood and wept together with the blood of their bodies. When at the last Sir *Launcelot* said. Sir knight, yee fight wondrous as euer I saw knight therefore I require you if it please you tell me your name. When said Sir *Tristram*, I am full toth to say any man my name. Truly said Sir *Launcelot*, and as ye required, I was neuer toth to tell my name. It is said quoth Sir *Tristram*, then I require you tell me your name. Sir said he my name is Sir *Launcelot* du lake. *Alas* said Sir *Tristram*, what haue I done, for ye are the man in the world that I most loue. Now faire knight said Sir *Launcelot* tell me your name. Truly said he my name is Sir *Tristram* de lyones. *Oh* *Jesus* said Sir *Launcelot*, what aduenture is befallen mee. And therewithall Sir *Launcelot* kneeled downe and yeelded him by his sword. And so either gaue other kisses. And then they both forthwith went to the stone where they laye downe vpon it, and tooke off their helmes for to leaue them, and either kissed other an hundred times. And anon after they tooke by their helmes and rode straight to Camelot. And there met with Sir *Gawaine* Sir *Galahad* which made promise vnto King *Arthur* neuer to come to the Court till they had brought Sir *Tristram* with

CHAP. XCI.

How Sir *Launcelot* brought Sir *Tristram* to the Court and of the great ioy that King *Arthur* and other made for the coming of Sir *Tristram*.

Arthur againe said Sir *Launcelot* for your quest is done, I haue met with Sir *Tristram*. Doe here is his owne man. When was Sir *Gawaine* glad, and said vnto Sir *Tristram* yee are right heartily welcome, for also yee haue eased me greatly of my labour. For what cause said Sir *Tristram* brought yee into this Countrey. Faire Sir said Sir *Tristram*, I came into this countrey because of Sir *Palomides*, for hee and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

I assigned at this day to have done battaile together at the Veron, and I meruaile that I heare nothing of him, and thus by adventure my Lord Sir Launcelot and I did meete together. With this came King Arthur and when hee wit that Sir Tristram was there, then hee ranne vnto him and tooke him by the hand and said: Sir Tristram yee hee as welcome as any knight that euer came vnto this Court. And when King Arthur had heard how Sir Launcelot and hee had foughten, and either had wounded other wonderous sore, then the King made great moane. Then Sir Tristram told the King how hee came thither for to haue had to doe with Sir Palomides.

And then he told the King how he had rescued him from nine knights and Sir Breuse saunce picie, and hee found a knight lying by a well, and that knight smote downe Sir Palomides and mee, but his shield was couered with a cloth. So Sir Palomides left me, and I followed after that knight. And in many places I found where as he had slayne many knights, and had also forisfured many. By my head said Sir Gawaine, that same knight smote mee downe and Sir Bleoberis, and hurt vs both wonderous sore. Ah said Sir Kay, that same knight smote me downe and hurt me passing sore, and saine would I haue knowne him, but I might not. Iesus mercy said King Arthur then what manner of knight was that with the couered shield. I know him not said Sir Tristram. And so said they all. Now said King Arthur, if yee know not then, doe I, for I assure you that it was Sir Launcelot du lake. When all together at once looked vpon Sir Launcelot and said. Yee haue beguiled vs with your couered shield. It is not the first time said King Arthur that hee hath done so. My Lord said Sir Launcelot, truly wit yee well I was the same knight that bare the couered shield. And because I would not be knowne that I was in your Court, I said no worship of your court. What is truth said Sir Gawaine, Sir Kay, and Sir Bleoberis. Then King Arthur tooke Sir Tristram by the hand and led him vnto the round table. Then came Queene Gueneuer and many Ladies

and his Knights of the round Table.

And all these Ladies said all with one voice, welcome Sir Tristram, welcome said the Damosels, welcome knights, welcome said King Arthur, for one of the knights and gentlest of the world, and knight of the worship. For of all manner of hunting thou bearest best. And of all measures of blowing thou art the best. And of all the termes of hunting and hauking thou art the beginner. Of all instruments of musicke yee be the best. Therefore gentle knight said King Arthur yee are heartily welcome vnto this Court. And also I pray you King Arthur graunt me a boon. It shall bee at your commandment said Sir Tristram. Well said King Arthur, I desire of you that yee will abide in my court. Sir Tristram, thereto am I loth, for I haue to doe in many places. Not so said King Arthur, yee haue promised it me, say not say nay. Sir said Sir Tristram, I will as ye will. Then went King Arthur vnto the sieges about the round table and looked in euery siege which were voides that lacked knights. And the King then saw in the siege of Marhaus that it was the siege of the noblest knight Sir Tristram. And King Arthur made Sir Tristram knight of the round table with great noblenesse and great feast as might bee. For Sir Marhaus was slaine afore by the hands of Sir Tristram in an land, and that was full well knowne at that time in the Court of King Arthur, for this Sir Marhaus was a worthy knight. And euill deeds hee did vnto the Countrey of Cornewalle, Sir Tristram and hee fought together so long trasing and traueling, till they fell both to the earth. For they were so sore wounded, that they might not stand for bleeding. And Sir Tristram by his recovery, and Sir Marhaus died through the stroke of his spear. So leaue wee off Sir Tristram and speake wee of Sir Lancelot.

CHAR.

How for the despite of Sir Tristram King Marke came with two Knights into England, and how he slew one of his Knights.

Then King Marke had great despise of the renowne of Sir Tristram. And then he chased him out of Cornewalle, yet was he nephew unto King Marke, but hee had great suspicion on Sir Tristram for his Duene la beale Isoude, for him seemed there was too much love betwene them. So when Sir Tristram went out of Cornewalle into England, King Marke heard of the great prouesse that Sir Tristram did there, the which grieved him sore. So he sent on his part to espie what deeds he did. And the Duene sent priuely on her part spies for to know what deeds he had done, for great love was betwene them twaine. So when the messengers were come home, they told the truth as they heard, he passed all other knights, but if it were the noble knight Sir Lancelot. Then King Marke was right hente of these tidings. The Duene la beale Isoude was passing glad. Then in great despite he took with him two good knights and two squires, and disguised himselfe, and took his way into England to the entent to sleie Sir Tristram. And one of these two knights hight Sir Bersules, and that other knight was called Sir Amant. So as they rode King Marke demanded a knight that he met where he would slay King Arthur. He said at Camelot. Also he asked the knight after Sir Tristram, whether he heard of him in the Court of King Arthur. With yee well said the knight, yee shall finde Sir Tristram there for a man of as great worship as now liueth, for though his prouesse he wane the turnement of the rattle of weapons, that standeth by the hard roch, & when he hath wonne with his owne hands thirtie knights that were men of great honour. And the last battaile that euer he did, he fought with Sir Launcelot, and that was a meruailous battaile. And not by force Sir Launcelot brought Sir Tristram vnto the Court. And of him King Arthur made passing great ioy and hath made him knight of the round table. And his seate was where the good knight Sir Marhaus seate was, When

Then was King Marke passing beaue and soze when he heard of the honour of Sir Tristram, and so they departed. When said King Marke and his two knights. Now will I tell you my counsell yee are the men that I trust most vnto on liue. And I will that yee wit, my coming hither is to this entent, for to destroy Sir Tristram by wiles or by treason. And it shall be if he euer escape our hands. Alas said Sir Bersules, what meanes yee, for to be set in such a way, yee are shamefully disposed. For Sir Tristram is the knight of most worship we know now liuing, and therefore I warne you plainly I will neuer consent for to doe him to death, and therefore I will yeeld my seruice and forsake you. When King Marke heard him say so, sodenly he drew his sword and said. A false traitour, and smote Sir Bersules on the head, so that his sword went to his teeth. When Sir Amant the knight saw him doe this villainous deed and his squires, they said al it was fould done mischeuously, wherefore wee will doe no more seruice and thou well wee will appeach thee of treason before King Arthur. Then was King Marke wonders wroth, and would slay Sir Amant. But hee and the two squires held them together, and set nought by his malice. When King Marke saw he might not be reuenged on them, he said thus vnto Sir Amant. Wit thou well and thou appeach mee of treason, I will neuer defend me afoze King Arthur. But I require thee tel not my name that I am King Marke what soeuer come thou. As for that said Sir Amant I will not discover your name. And so they departed. And Sir Amant and his fellows took the body of Sir Bersules and buried it.

How King Marke came to a fountaine, where as he found Sir Lamoracke complaining for the love of King Lots wife.

Then King Marke rode till hee came to a fountaine, and there he reposed him, and stood in a doubt whether hee should ride vnto King Arthurs Court or not, or returne againe to his countrey. And as he thus rested him by that fountaine, there

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

there came by him a knight well armed upon horsebacke and he alighted and tied his horse vnto a tree, and sate him downe by the bancke of the fountaine, and there hee made great languor and moone, and made the pittifullest complaint of loue that euer man heard, and all this while was hee not ware of king Marke, and this was a great part of his complaint. Hee cried and wept saying. O faire Quene of Dykeney king Lots wife, and mother vnto Sir Gawaine, and vnto Sir Gaheris, and mother vnto many other, for your loue I am in great paine. When king Marke arose and went nere to him and said. Knight yee haue made a pitious complaint. Truly said the knight, it is well an hundred part more rewsfull then my heart can utter. I require you said king Marke tell me your name. Sir said he as for my name I will not hide it from no knight that beareth shield, and my name is Sir Lamoracke de ganis. But when Sir Lamoracke heard king Marke speake, then wist he well by his speech that he was a Cornish knight. Sir said Sir Lamoracke, I vnderstand by your tongue yee are of Coznewaile, wherein dwelleth the shamefullest king that liueth, for hee is a great enemy vnto all good knights. And that proueth well for hee hath chased out of that countrey Sir Tristram which is the worshipfullest knight that liueth, and all knights of him speake worship, and for a ielousie of his Quene hee hath chased him out of his countrey. It is pitie said Sir Lamoracke that euer such a false knights coward as king Marke is should be matched with such a faire Lady and good as la beale Isonde is, for all the world speaketh of him, and of her worship as any Quene may haue, I haue not to doe in this matter said king Marke neither nought will I speake thereof. Well said Sir Lamoracke. Sir can yee tell mee any tidings. I can tell you said Sir Lamoracke, that there shall be a great turnement in haste beside Camelot at the Castle of Iagent. And the king with the hundred knights and the king of Ireland as I suppose maketh it. When came there a knight that was called Sir Dinadan, and he saluted them both. And when hee wist that king Marke was a knight of Coznewaile, hee reproued him for the loue of king Marke a thousand fold more then

and his Knights of the round Table.

then did sir Lamoracke. When hee proffered to iust with king Marke. And hee was full loth thereto, but Sir Dinadan egged him so, that hee iusted with Sir Lamoracke. And sir Lamoracke smote king Marke so soze on his shield that hee beare on the speare end ouer his horse croupe. And then king Marke arose againe and followed after Sir Lamoracke. But sir Dinadan would not iust with Sir Lamoracke but he told king Marke that Sir Lamoracke was Sir Kay the Seneschall. That hee told to said king Marke, for he is much bigger then Sir Kay. So he followed after and ouertooke him and then hee bad him abide, what will yee doe said Sir Lamoracke. Sir said hee, I will fight with a sword for yee haue shamed me with your name. And there with they dashed together. And sir Lamoracke suffered him and forbore him long. And king Marke passing hastily, and smote him many thicke strokes. When Sir Lamoracke saw that hee would not stinthe hee waxed somewhat wroth, and doubled his strokes, for hee was one of the noblest knights of the world. And he beate him so soze vpon the helme, that his head hung nigh vnto the sable bow. When Sir Lamoracke saw him fare so, thus he said sir knight what chere with you, me thinketh yee haue nigh your fill of fighting. It were pitie to do you any more harme for yee are but a meane knight, there fore I giue you leaue for to goe where as yee list. Sir Lamoracke said king Marke for you and I are not matches. When Sir Dinadan mocked with king Marke, and said to him. We are not able for to match a good knight. As for that said king Marke, at the first time that I iusted with this knight yee refused him. Thinke yee that it is ashamme to mee, said Sir Dinadan. Nay Sir, it is euer worship vnto a knight for to refuse that thing the which hee may not attaine. Therefore your worship had bene much more for to haue refused him as I did. For I warne you plainly he is able to beate such fine as you and I be. For yee knights of Coznewaile be no men of worship as other knights are, and because that yee are not men of worship, yee hate all men of worship. For neuer was there used in your countrey such a knight as is Sir Tristram.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XCIIII.

How King Marke, Sir Lamoracke and Sir Dinadan, came into a Castle and how King Marke was knowne there.

Then they rode forth all together King Marke, Sir Lamoracke and Sir Dinadan, till that they came vnto a brydge. And at the end of that brydge stood a faire Tour. When saw they a knight on horse backe well armed braundishing a speare, trying and proffering himselfe to iust. Now said Sir Dinadan vnto King Marke yonder are two brethren, and the one is called Sir Alleine, and that other is called Sir Trian, that will iust with any that passeth this passage. Now proffer your selfe said Sir Dinadan vnto King Marke, for alwayes yee are laid to the ground. Then was King Marke ashamed, and therewith he feutred his speare and ranne against Sir Trian, and there either brake their speares all to peeces and and passed through anon. Then Sir Trian sent to King Marke another speare for to iust more, but in no wise would he iust againe. Then they came into the Castle all three knights, and they prayed the Lord of the Castle of harbour. Yee are heartily welcomne said the knights of the Castle for the loue of the Lord of this Castle that high sir Tor le sie Aries. And they came into a faire Court well repaired. And they had passing good chere, till the leintenant of the Castle (that was called Sir Berlufes) espied King Marke of Cornewaille. Then said Sir Berlufes, Sir knight I know you better then yee weene, for yee are King Marke that slew my father before mine eyes. And also yee would haue slaine me if I had not escaped into a wood. But wit yee well for the loue of the Lord of this Castle, I will neither hurt you nor harme you, nor none of your fellowship. But wit ye well that when yee bee past this lodging I will hurt you and I may, for ye slew my father traitterously. But first for the loue of Sir Lamoracke that honourable knight that here is lodged, ye shall haue none euill lodging. And it is pittie that ye should bee in the company of good knights, for ye are the most vilginous knight of King

and his Knights of the round Table.

that is now knowne on liue, ye are and euer hath beene a de-
stroyer of good knights, and all that ye doe and goe about, is
for treason:

CHAP. XCV.

How Sir Berlufes met with King Marke, and how Sir Dinadan tooke his part.

When was King Marke soze ashamed, and said but little
againe. But when Sir Lamoracke and Sir Dinadan wist
that it was King Marke, they were sorrie of his fellowship. So
after supper they went vnto their lodging. And on the morrow
they arose early, and King Marke and Sir Dinadan rode to-
gether. And thre mile from their lodging there met with
them three knights, and Sir Berlufes was one and the two
were his two cosins. Sir Berlufes saw King Marke, and then he
rode on high. Traytour keeps thee from mee, for wit thou
well that I am Berlufes. Sir knight said Sir Dinadan, I
counsel thee to leaue off at this time, for hee goeth vnto King
Arthur. And because I haue promised to conduct him vnto my
lord King Arthur, needs I must take his part how be it I
haue not his conditions, and faine I would bee from him. Well
said Sir Dinadan said Sir Berlufes, me repenteth that ye will take
part with him but now doe your best. And then he hurled vnto
King Marke, and smote him soze vpon the helme, that he bare
him cleane out of his saddle to the earth. That saw Sir
Dinadan, and hee feutred his speare and ranne to one of Sir
Berlufes fellows, and smote him downe out of his saddle. Then
Sir Dinadan turned his horse and smote the third knight in
the same wise to the earth. For Sir Dinadan was a good
knight on horse backe and there began a great battaile, for
Sir Berlufes and his fellows held them together strongly on
the one side. And so through the great force of Sir Dinadan,
King Marke had Sir Berlufes to the earth, and his fellows
were also. And had not beene Sir Dinadan, King Marke would haue
slaine him. And so Sir Dinadan rescued him of his life, for
King Marke was but a murtherer. And so they tooke their
departed, and left Sir Berlufes soze wounded.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

When King Marke and Sir Dinadan had ridden about four mile they came vnto a bidge whereas housed a knight on horse-backe and ready to iust. Loe said sir Dinadan vnto King Marke yonder houeth a knight that will iust, for there shall none passe this bidge but hee must iust with that knight. It is well said quoth King Marke for this iusting falleth with thee. Sir Dinadan knew well that the knight was a noble knight, and faine he would haue iusted, but hee would rather that King Marke had iusted with him, but by no manner of meanes King Marke would iust with him. Then Sir Dinadan might not refuse him in no manner. And then either dressed their speares and their shields, and smote together, so that through fine force Sir Dinadan was smitten to the earth. And lightly hee arose vp againe, and gat his horse and required that knight for to doe battaile with their swords. And hee answered and said. Faire knight as at this time I may not haue to doe with you no more. For the custome of this passage is such. Then was Sir Dinadan passing wroth with him, that he might not be reuenged on that knight. And so hee departed. And in no wise would that knight tell his name. But euer Sir Dinadan thought that hee should know him by his shield that it should bee Sir Tor.

CHAP. XCVI.

How King Marke mocked Sir Dinadan. And how they met with six Knights of the round table.

As they rode on their way King Marke then began for to smocke Sir Dinadan, and said to him, I wend ye knights of the round Table might in no wise find their matches. Yee say well said Sir Dinadan, as for you on my life I call you none of the best knights. But sith yee haue such a despise at mee. I require you to iust with me for to proue my strength. Not so said King Marke for I will not haue to doe with you in no manner of wise. But I require you of one thing, that when yee come vnto King Arthurs Court, discover not my name, for am I there soze hated. It is the more shame vnto you

and his Knights of the round Table.

you said Sir Dinadan, that yee gouerne your selfe so shamefully, for I see by you that yee are full of cowardise and ye are a great murderer, and that is the greatest shame that a knight may haue, for neuer knight being a murtherer hath worship, nor neuer shall haue. For I saw but late agone throught my force yee would haue slaine Sir Berluses, a better knight then yee are, or euer yee shall be, and more of prowesse. Thus they were forth talking till they came vnto a faire place whereas stood a knight, and hee praied them to take their lodging with him. So at the request of the knight, they rested them there, and made them well at ease, and had great chere. For all arraunt knights were welcome to him and especially all those knights that were of King Arthurs Court. When Sir Dinadan demanded of his host what was the knights name that kept the bidge. For what cause demand you it said his host. For it is not yet long agoe said Sir Dinadan sith that I iusted with him, and hee gaue me a fall. Ah faire knight said his host, thereof yee ought to haue no meruaile, for hee is a passing good knight, and his name is Sir Tor Sonne of Aries le vassher. Ah said Sir Dinadan, was that Sir Tor for truly so me thought euer. Right so as they stood thus talking together, they saw coming riding toward them ouer a plaine, six knights of King Arthurs Court, well armed at all points, and there by their shields Sir Dinadan knew them well. The first was the good knight Sir Ewaine the Sonne of King Vriens. The second was the noble knight sir Brondiles. The third was Ozana le cuerhardy. The fourth was sir Ewaine les aduenturous. The fifth was sir Agraualine. The sixth was sir Mordred brother to sir Gawaine. When sir Dinadan had seene these six knights, he thought to himselfe hee would bring King Marke by some wiles to iust with one of them. And anon they tooke their horses and ranne after these knights well a thre mile English.

Then was King Marke ware where they sat all sir about a well, and ate and dranke such meate as they had, and their horses walking, and some were tied, and their shields being in diuers places about them. Loe said sir Dinadan, yonder

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

I see knights arraunt that will iust with vs. God forbid said King Marke, for they beene sir, and we are but two. As for that said sir Dinadan, let vs not spare, for I will assay the force most. And therewith he made him ready. When King Marke saw him so doe, as fast as sir Dinadan rode toward them, King Marke rode from them with all his might. So when sir Dinadan saw that King Marke was gone, he set his speare out of the rest, and threwe the shield vpon his backe and came riding to fellowship of the round Table. And anon Sir Ewayne knew Sir Dinadan, and welcomed him, and so did all his fellowship:

CHAP. XCVII.

How the six Knights Sir Magonet to iust with King Marke
and how King Marke refused him.

AND they asked him of the aduentures, and whether hee had scene Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram. So God mee helpe said Sir Dinadan, I saw none of them sith I departed from Camelot. What knight is that said sir Brandiles, that suddainly departed from you and rode ouer yonder field? Sir said hee, it is a knight of Cornewaile, and the most horrible coward that euer bestrode horse. What is his name said all the knights. I wote not said sir Dinadan. So when they had rested them and spoken together, they tooke their horses, and rode to a Castle where dwelled an old knight that made all arraunt knights good cheere. When in the meane while that they were talking came into the Castle sir Grasset le fise de dieu, and there hee was welcome, and they asked him whether hee had scene Sir Launcelot or sir Tristram. Sirs answered hee, I saw him not sith hee departed from Camelote. So as Sir Dinadan walked and beheld the Castle thereby in a Chamber hee espied King Marke, and then he rebuked him and asked why he departed so. Sir said hee, for I durst not abide because there were so many, but how sped yee said King Marke. Sir said Sir Dinadan there were better friends then I wend the had beene. Who is Captaine of that fellowship said the King. When for to feare him Sir Dinadan said it was Sir Launcelot.

and his Knights of the round Table:

Launcelot. Oh Jesu said King Marke wight I know Sir Launcelot by his shield. Yea said Sir Dinadan for hee beareth a shield of silver and blacke beads. All this he said for to feare King for Sir Launcelot was not in the fellowship. Now may you said King Marke that yee will rise in my fellowship. What am I loth to doe said sir Dinadan because yee for my fellowship. Right so Sir Dinadan went from King Marke and went to his owne fellowship. And so they mounted on their horses and rode forth there way, and talking of the Cornish knight. For Sir Dinadan told them that hee was in the Castle whereas they were lodged. It is well said quoth Sir Grasset, for here haue I brought Sir Dagonet King Arcturs foole, that is the best fellow and meriest in the world. Tell yee doe well said Sir Dinadan, I haue told the Cornish knight that here is Sir Launcelot. And the Cornish knight told me what shield hee beare. Truly I told him that hee beare the same shield that sir Mordred beareth. Will yee doe said sir Mordred, I am hart and may not well beare my shield nor my harneis, and therefore put my shield and harneis vpon Sir Dagonet, and let him set vpon the Cornish knight.

That shall be done said sir Dagonet by the faith I owe to God. Then anon Sir Dagonet was armed Sir Mordreds armes and his shield, and he was set vpon a great horse and a spear in his hand. Now said Sir Dagonet shew mee the knight, and I trow I shall beare him downe. So all these knights rode vnto a woods side, and abode till King Marke came by the way. When they put forth Sir Dagonet, and hee came on as fast as his horse might runne streight to King Marke. And when hee came nigh vnto King Marke, he cried as hee were wood and said. Keepe the knight of Cornewaile for I will slay thee. Anon as King Marke beheld his shield he said to himselfe, yonder is Sir Launcelot, alas now I am destroyed. And therewith hee made his horse to runne as fast as hee might through thicke and thinne. And euer sir Dagonet followed King Marke crying and rating him as a woodman through a great forrest. And when Sir Ewayne and Sir

The Historie of Prince Arthure

Brandiles saw Sir Dagonet chase so King Marke, they laughed all as they had beene wood. And then they took their holses and rode after, for to see how Sir Dagonet sped. For they would not for no good that Sir Dagonet were hurt, for King Arthur loved him passing well, and made him knight with his owne hands. And at every turneyment he made King Arthur laugh. When the knights rode hewe and there trying and chaffing after King Marke that all the foreste rang of the noise.

CHAP. XCIII.

How Sir Palomides by adventure met with King Marke, flying and how he buerthrew Sir Dagonet and other Knights.

So King Marke rode by fortune by a well in that way where stood a knight arrant on horsebacke armed at all points with a great speare in his hand. And when he saw King Marke come flying he said, knight returne againe for shame, and stand with me and I shall be thy warrant. A faire knight said King Marke, let me passe by thee, for yonder cometh after me the best knight of the world with the blake bended shield. He for shame said the knight he is none of the worthy knights. And if were Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram, I should not doubt to meete the better of them both. When King Marke heard him say so, he turned his horse and abode by him. And then that strong knight beare a speare against Sir Dagonet, and smote him so sore that he beare him over his horse taile, and nere hand had broken his necke. And anon after him came Sir Brandiles, and when he saw Sir Dagonet haue that fall, he was passing wroth, and cried, kepe thee. And so they hurled together wonderous sore. But the knight smot Sir Brandiles so sore that he went to the earth horse and man. Sir Ewaine came after and saw all this. Jesu said he yonder is a strong knight. And then they feutred their speares, and this knight came so egerly that he smote downe Sir Ewaine alone. Then came Ozana with the hardy heart, and he was smitten downe. Now said Sir Griflet, by my counsaile let vs send vnto yonder knight arrant, and wit whether he be of King Archurs court,

and his Knights of the round Table.

Now it is Sir Lamoracke de Galis. So they sent vnto him, and prayed the strange knight to tell his name, and where he were of King Archurs court. He said, I am not. As for my name they shall wit but tell them then I am a knight arrant as they are. And let the wit that I am no knight of King Archurs court. And so he quiet rode againe to them and rehearsed vnto them his story. By my head said Sir Agrawaine hee is one of the strongest knights that euer I saw, for hee hath ouerthrolne many noble knights, and needs we must encounter with him for shame. So Sir Agrawaine feutred his speare, and that other was ready and smote him downe over his horse taile to the earth. And in the same wise he smote Sir Ewaine les auoures and Sir Griflet. Then had he serued them all but onely Sir Diuadan, for hee was behind the other company, and Sir Griflet for hee was unarmed. So when this was done the knight rode on his way a soft pace. And alwayes King Marke rode after him praising him much. But he would answere no words, but sighed wonderous sore, hanging down his head toward the ground, taking no heed to the words that King Marke said. Thus they rode well a threemile English, and then this knight called to him a page and said to him, Ride vnto yonder manner that standeth so faire, and recomme me vnto the Lady of that manner, and pray her for to giue mee some refrelshing of good meates and drinikes. And hee aske thee what knight that I am, tell her that I am the knight that followeth the glatissant beast, that is to say in English the questing beast. For what beast there soeuer hee went hee was quelled in the belly with such a noise, as if that it had beene about a thirtie couple of hounds. And then the page went as he was bidden, and came to the manner and saluted the Lady, and he told her from whence hee came. And when she vnderstood that hee came from the knight which followed the questing beast, O sweete Jesu said shee when shall I see the noble knight? He were some Sir Palomides. Alas will hee not abide with me. And therewith she wept and soluned and made passing great dole. And then as soone as she might shee gaue the varlet all that hee asked. And then the varlet returned vnto Sir Palomides,

The Historie of Prince Arthure

es, for hee was a barbet of King Marke. And as soone as hee awoke, hee told that the knights name was Sir Palomides. I am well pleased said King Marke, but hold thee still and say nothing. Then they alighted and set downe and reposed them a while. And anon therewith King Marke fell on slepe. When Sir Palomides saw him sound on slepe, hee took his horse and rode his way, and said to them. I will not be in the company of a sleeping knight. And so hee rode forth a great pace.

CHAP. XCIX.

How King Marke and Sir Dinadan heard Sir Palomides making great sorrow and mourning for la beale Ifonde.

Now returne wee vnto sir Dinadan that found these seven knights passing heauy. And when hee wist how they had sped, hee was as heauy as they. My Lord Sir Ewaine said sir Dinadan, I dare lay my head it is Sir Lamoracke de Galis, I promise you all that I shall find him and hee may be found in this countrey. And so Sir Dinadan rode after this knight. And so dyd King Marke that sought him throught the forrest. So as King Marke rode after Sir Palomides, he heard a noise of a man that made great dole. When King Marke rode as nigh that noise as hee might and as hee durst. When was he ware of a knight that was descended off his horse and had put off his helme, and there hee made a piteous complaint and a dolorous of loue.

Now leaue we of that and talke wee of Sir Dinadan, which rode to seeke Sir Palomides. And as hee came within a forrest hee met with a knight that chased a doere. Sir said Sir Dinadan haue ye not met with a knight that had a shield of silver and Lyons heads therein. Yee saie knight said the other, with such a knight met I but a while agoe, and straight yonder way he went. Sir I thanke you said Sir Dinadan, for might I find the tract of his horse, I should not faile to find that knight. Might so as Sir Dinadan rode late in an enenning hee heard a dolefull noyse, as it were of a man. When Sir Dinadan rode toward that noyse, and when he came nigh vnto that

and his Knights of the round Table.

that noyse, he alighted from his horse and went nere him on foot. When Sir Dinadan was ware of a knight that stood vnder a tree and his horse tied by him, and the helme of his head. And alwaies that knight made a dolefull complaint as a knight made knight. And alwaies hee made his complaint of la beale Ifond the Queene of Cornewaile, and said. Ah faire lady why loue I thee, for thou art the fairest Lady of all other Ladies, and yet shewed you neuer loue to me nor hountie. And yet must I loue you, and I may not blame you faire lady, for mine eyes beene cause of this sorrow, and yet to loue I am but a foole, for the best knight of the world loueth you, and him yee loue againe, that is sir Tristram de Lyones. And the falsest king and knight is your husband, and the most coward and full of treason is your Lord King Marke. Alas that euer so faire a Lady and pearlesse of any other should be matched with the most vilanous king and knight of the world. All this language heard King Marke what Sir Palomides said vnto him, wherefore hee was a dread. When hee saw sir Dinadan and hee espied him, that hee would tell Sir Palomides that it was King Marke, and therefore hee withdrew him, and took his horse and rode to his men where as hee had commanded them for to abide. And so he rode as fast as hee might to Camelot. And the same day hee found there Sir Amant the knight there ready, that befoze King Arthur had appealed him of treason. And so lightly King Arthur commanded them to doe battaile together, and by misadventure King Marke smote Sir Amant through the body, and yet was Sir Amant in the rightwise quarrell.

And right so hee took his horse and departed from the Court for dread of Sir Dinadan that hee would tell Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides what hee was. When were there Maidens which la beale Ifond had sent to Sir Tristram that knew Sir Amant well.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthure

CHAP. C.

How King Marke had slaine Sir Amant wrongfully before King Arthur and how Sir Launcelot fetcht King Marke to King Arthur.

Then by the licence of King Arthur they went vnto him, and spake with him. For while the franchion of the speare strake within his body, hee spake. A fayre Damoselle said he recomended mee vnto la beale Iland, and tell her that I am slaine for the loue of her and of Sir Tristram. And there he told the Damoselle how cowardly King Marke had slaine him and Sir Berles his fellow. And for that cause I appealed him for treason. And here I am slaine in a righteous quarrell. And all was because Sir Berles and I would not consent by treason to slay that noble knight Sir Tristram. When the two Baldens cryed aloud that all the Court might heere it and said. Oh sweet Lord Iesu which knoweth all things hid and unknowne, why sufferest thou so false a Traytour to vauquish and slay a true knight that fought in a righteous quarrell. When anon sprang vnto the King and the Quene and vnto Lords and Ladies, that it was King Marke that had slaine Sir Amant and Sir Berles afore hand, wherefore they did their battaile. When was King Arthur wroth out of measure, and so were all the other knights. But when Sir Tristram knew all the matter hee made great dole out of measure, and wept for sorrow for the noble knights sir Berles and Sir Amant. When Sir Launcelot espied that sir Tristram wept, hee went hastily vnto King Arthur and said. Sir I pray you giue mee leaue to returne againe vnder king and knight king Marke vnto your presence againe. I require you said King Arthur fetch him againe to mee, but I would not that yee slew him for my worship. When sir Launcelot armed him in all the hast, and mounted vpon a great horse, and tooke a speare in his hand and rode after king Marke. And from thence a thre mile English, Sir Launcelot ouertooke him and had him turne recreant king and knight. And whether thou wilt or not thou

shalt

and his Knights of the round Table.

shalt goe with me to King Arthurs Court. King Marke returned and looked vpon sir Launcelot and said. Faire Sir what is your name, what thou well said hee, my name is sir Launcelot du lake, and therefore defend thee. And so when king Marke wist that it was the noble knight Sir Launcelot that came so fast vpon him with a speare, hee cryed then aloud and said. I yeeld me vnto the honourable knight Sir Launcelot. But sir Launcelot would not heere him, but came fast vpon him. King Marke saw that, and made his defence, but tumbled downe out of his saddle to the earth as a sacke, and there he lay still, and cryed Sir Launcelot mercy. Arise recreant knight and king said sir Launcelot. I will not fight said the king, but whether yee will I will goe with you. Alas alas said Sir Launcelot that I may not giue thee one buffet for the loue of Sir Tristram and of la beale Iland, and for the two knights that thou hast slaine trayterously. And so he mounted vpon his horse, and brought him vnto King Arthurs Court. And there King Marke alighted in the same place, and threw his helme from his head vpon the earth and his sword, and fell flat vnto the earth before King Arthurs feete, and put him in his grace and mercy. So God mee helpe said King Arthur yee are welcome in a manner, and in a manner yee are not welcome. In this manner yee are welcome, that yee come hither mangre your head as I suppose. What is truth said King Marke, or else had I not bene heere. For my Lord Sir Launcelot, brought mee hither by his force, and to him I am bounden as recreant. Well said King Arthur, yee vnderstand yee ought to doe me seruice, homage and feault, and neuer ye would doe me none, but euer yee haue bene against mee, and a destroyer of my knights. Now how will yee acquit you. Sir said King Marke, right as your highnesse will require me to my power I will make a large amends. For hee was a false speaker and a false dissembler. When for great pleasure of sir Tristram to make them two accorded, the King withheld King Marke as at that time, and made a broken lous day be-
weene them.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. CII

How Sir Dinadan told Sir Palomides of the battaile betwene Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram.

Now turne wee againe vnto Sir Palomides how Sir Dinadan comforted him in all that euer he might from his great sorrow. What knight be yee said Sir Palomides. Sir I am a knight arraunt as yee are, that hath sought you long by your shield. Here is my shield said Sir Palomides, wit ye well and if yee will ought therewith I shall defend it. Nay sir Dinadan, I will not haue to doe with you but in good manner. And if that yee will, yee shall find mee soone ready. Sir said sir Dinadan whetherward are yee riding this way. By my Head said sir Palomides, I wote not, but as fortune leaueth mee. Heard yee or saw yee not of sir Tristram. So God me helpe of sir Tristram I both heard and saw, and not for then we loued not inwardly together, yet at my mischiefe sir Tristram rescued mee from my death. And yet or and I departed by both our assents wee assigned a day that we should haue met at the stony graue that Merlin set by Camelot, and there to haue done battaile together, how be it I was letted said sir Palomides, that I could not hold my day, the which grieved me sore, but I haue a large excuse, for I was prisoner with a Lord, and many other moe, and that shall sir Tristram right well vnderstand, that I brake it not for feare or cowardise. And then sir Palomides told sir Dinadan the day that they should haue met together. So God me helpe said sir Dinadan, that same day met sir Launcelot and sir Tristram at the same graue of ston. And there was the most mightiest battaile that euer was seene in this land betwene two knights, for they fought more then foure houres, and there they bled both so much blood that all men meruailed that euer they might endure it. And so at the last by both their assents they were made friends and sware brotheren for euer. And no man can iudge the better knight. And now is sir Tristram made a knight of the round Table. and hee sitteth in the siege of the noble knight

and his Knights of the round Table.

Knicht Sir Marhaus. By my Head said Sir Palomides, Sir Tristram is farre bigger then Sir Launcelot, and the hardier knight. Haue yee assaied them both, said Sir Dinadan, I haue seene sir Tristram fight said Sir Palomides, but neuer Sir Launcelot to my witting. But at the fountaine where sir Launcelot lay and slept, there with one speare hee smote downe sir Tristram and also sir Palomides, but at that time they knew not the one the other. Faire knight said sir Dinadan, as for sir Launcelot and sir Tristram let them bee, for the most of them will not be lightly matched of no knight that I knowe liuing. So said Sir Palomides, God defend but and I haue a quarrell to the better of them both, I would with as good will fight with them as with you. Sir said sir Dinadan. I require you tell mee your name, and in good faith I shall haue you company till that wee come to Camelot, and there ye shall haue great worship at the great and noble tournament. For there shall bee Queene Gueneuer and la beale Isond of Cornewalle. Wit ye well sir knight said sir Palomides, for the loue of la beale Isond I will bee there, or else not, but I shall not haue to doe in King Archurs Court. Sir said sir Dinadan, I shall ride with you and doe you seruice, so that yee will tell me your name. Sir knight yee shall vnderstand that my name is sir Palomides Brother vnto sir Saire the good knight and sir Segwarides and bee Sarafins borne both of father and mother. Sir said sir Dinadan, I thanke you heartily for the telling of your name. For I am glad that I know your name and what ye be. And heere I promise you by the faith that I owe to God yee shall not be hurt by me by my will, but much more rather aduanced vnto great honour and worship, and thereto will I helpe you with all my power I promise you, doubt yee not, and certainly vpon my life I will winne great worship in the Court of King Arthur, and bee right welcome. So then they dressed on their helmes and put on their shields and mounted vpon their horses, and tooke the broad way toward Camelot, and then were they ware of a Castle that was faire and rich, and also passing strong as any was within this Realme.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. CII.

How Sir *Lamoracke* iusted with diuers Knights of the castle, wherein was *Morgan le fay*.

Sir Palomides said Sir Dinadan here is a castle that I well know, and therein dwelleth Quene Morgan le fay King Arthurs sister, and King Arthur gaue her this Castle, the which hee hath repented him thence a thousand times; for thence King Arthur and shee haue bene at debate and grieue. But this castle could hee neuer get nor winne of her by no manner of engine, and euer as shee might shee made warre on King Arthur. And all dangerous knights shee with holdeth with her for to destroy all those knights that King Arthur loueth, and there shall no knight passe this way but he must iust with one knight, or with two or thre. And if it happen that King Arthurs knight be beaten, he shall lose his horse and his harneys and all that hee hath, and hard if hee escape that said Sir Palomides, this is a shamefull custome and a villanous blance for a Quene to vse, and namely to make such warre vpon her owne brother which is called the floure of chualtrie that is Chastien or heathen, and with all my heart I would destroy that shamefull custome. And I will that all the world know it that shee shall haue no seruice of mee. And if that shee send out any knights as I suppose shee will for to iust they shall haue both their hands full. And I shall not faile you said Sir Dinadan vnto my puissance vpon my life. So as they sate on horse backe before the castle ther came a knight riding with a red shield and two squiers afoze him. And then hee came straight vnto Sir Palomides the good knight and said vnto him. Faire and gentill knight arrant, I require thee hee shall be prisoner. So God me helpe for the loue thou owest vnto the true order of knightthod, that thou wilt not haue to doe heere with these men of this Castle (this was Sir Lamoracke de Galis that said thus) for I came hitherto to seeke this deed, and it is my request, and therefore I beseech the knight let me deale with it, and if I bee beaten reueng mee. In the name of God

and his Knights of the round Table.

God said Sir Palomides, let see how yee will speede and wee shall behold your deeds. When anon there came forth a knight of the castle, and he proffered to iust with the knight with the red shield. And anon they encountred together, and hee with the red shield smote him so hard that he beare him ouer vnto the earth. Therwith anon came an other knight of the Castle, and hee was smitten so soze that he auoided his saddle. And forthwith came the third knight, and the knight with the red shield smote him vnto the ground. Then came Sir Palomides and brought him that hee might helpe him to iust. Faire knight said he vnto him, suffer me as at this time to haue my will, for and they were twentie knights I shall not doubt them. And vpon the wals of the castle there were many Lords and Ladies which cried and said. Well haue yee iusted yee knight with the red shield. But as soone as the knight had smitten them alone, his squiers tooke their horses and auoided the sadels and bridels of their horses, and turned them into the Forrest and made the knights to be kept to the end of the iusts. Right so came out of the castle the fourth knight and freshly proffered to iust with the knight with the red shield. And he was ready, and hee smote him so hard that horse and man fell to the earth, and the knights backe brake with the fall and his necke also. Then said Sir Palomides, that yonder is a passing good knight, and the best iuster that euer I saw. By my head said Sir Dinadan he is as good as Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram whatsoever knight hee bee.

CHAP. CIII.

How Sir Palomides would haue iusted for Sir *Lamoracke* with the Knights of the castle.

Then forthwith came out of the Castle a knight with a shield bended with blacke and with white. And anon the knight with the red shield and hee encountred together so hard that he smote the knight of the Castle through the body, and brake the horse backe. Faire knight said Sir Palomides yee haue ouermuch in hand, therefore I pray you let mee iust,

for yee had need to rest you. Why sir said the knight, seme yee that I am weake and feeble, and sir me seemeth yee proffer me wrong and to mee shame when I doe well enough, I tell you now as I told you before, for and they were twentie knights I shall beate them, and if I be beaten or slaine then may ye reuenge mee. And if yethinke that I be weary, and that yee haue an appetite to iust with mee, I shall find you iusting enough. Sir said sir Palomides, I said it not because that I should iust with you, but me seemeth that yee haue ouermuch in hand. And therefore if yee were gentle said the knight with the red shield yee should not proffer me shame. Therefore I require you that yee will iust with me, and yee shall find that I am not weary. Sith yee require mee said sir Palomides, take heede to your selfe. When those two noble knights came together as fast as their horses might runne, and the knight smote sir Palomides so sore on the shield that the speare went into his side and made a great wound and a perillous. Another with sir Palomides auoided his saddle. And that knight turned vnto Dinadan. And when hee saw him coming, he cryed aloud and said. Sir I will haue to doe with you. But for all that hee left not, but came running straight vpon him. Whis saying sir Dinadan put forth his speare and all to sheuered it vpon the knight with the red shield. But the knight smote sir Dinadan againe so hard vpon the shield that heere him cleane ouer his horse taile. But the knight would not suffer his squiers to meddle with their horses, because they were arraunt knights. When hee dressed him againe to the Castle, and iusted with seauen knights moe, and there was none of them might withstand him, but beare them to the earth. And of these twelue knights he slew in plaine iusts foure. And the eight knights hee made them to swere on the crosse of a sword, that they should neuer moze vse the euill custome of the Castle. And when hee had made them to swere that oath, he let them passe. And euer stood the Lords and the Ladies on the Castle wals crying and saying. Knight with the red shield, yee haue meruailously well done, as euer wee saw knight doe. And therewith came a knight out of the Castle

unarmed

and his Knights of the round Table.

unarmed and said. Knight with the red shield, ouer much damage hast thou done to vs this day, therefore returne whither thou wilt; for heere are no moe that will haue to doe with thee for we repent sore that euer thou camest here, for by thee is done the old custome of this Castle. And with that word he returned againe into the Castle, and locked the gates. When the knight with the red shield turned and called the ladies and so past forth on his way and rode a great pace. And when hee was past sir Palomides went vnto sir Dinadan and said, I had neuer such a shame of no knight that euer I met, and therefore I call me to ride after him, and to be reuenged with my sword. For on horse backe I deeme I shall get no worship vpon him. Sir Palomides said sir Dinadan yee shall not meddle with him by my counsaile, for yee shall get no worship of him, and for this cause, yee haue seene him this day that hee hath had ouer much to doe and hath ouer much traualled. By almightie Iesus said sir Palomides, I shall neuer bee well at ease till that I haue had to doe with him. Sir said sir Dinadan, I shall giue you my beholding. Well said sir Palomides, then shall yee see how we shall reuenge our knights. So they tooke their horses of their pages and rode after the knight with the red shield. And downe in a valey beside a fountaine they were ware where hee alighted to rest him; and had done off his helme for to drinke at the fontaine.

CHAP. CIIII.

How Sir Lamoracke iusted with Sir Palomides, and how he hurt him grievously.

Then Sir Palomides rode fast till hee came nigh him, and then hee said. Knight remember of the shame yee did to mee right now at the Castle therefore dresse thee, for I will haue to doe with thee. Faire knight said hee vnto sir Palomides, of mee yee may winne no worship, for yee haue seene this day that I haue traualled sore. As for that said sir Palomides I will not let, for wit ye well I will be reuenged. Well said the knight, I may happen to endure you.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

And therewith he mounted vpon his horse, and tooke a great speare in his hand and made him ready for to iust. Nay said sir Palomides, I will not iust, for I am sure at iusting I get no prise. Faire Knight said that knight, it would beseeme a knight to iust and fight on horse backe. We shal see what I will doe said sir Palomides. And therewith hee alighted downe on foote and dressed his shield before him and pulled out his sword. When the knight with the red shield descended downe from his horse and dressed his shield before him, and drew out his sword. And then they came together a soft pace and wonderously they lashed together passing thicke, the mountenance of an houre or that they breathed. When they traced and trauesed and wared wonderous wroth, and either behight others death. They helued so fast with their swords, that they cut in sunder halfe their shields and mayles, that the bare flesh in some places stood aboue their harness. And when sir Palomides beheld his fellows sword ouercovered with his blood, it greened him full soze. Sometime they forned and sometime they strooke as wild men. But at the last sir Palomides wared faint because of the first wound that he had at the Castle with a strooke of a speare. For that wound greened him wonderous soze. Faire Knight said sir Palomides me seemeth we haue assayed either other passing soze, and it may please thee I require thee of thy knight-hood for to tell me thy name. Sir said the knight vnto sir Palomides, that am I loth for to doe, for thou hast done me wrong and no knight-hood to proffer me battaile, considering my great trauaile. But and thou wilt tell me thy name, I will tell thee mine. Sir said he wit thou wilt my name is sir Palomides. Ah sir ye shall vnderstand my name is sir Lamoracke de Galis, son and heire vnto the good knight and king, king Pellinore, and sir Tor the good knight is mine halfe brother. When sir Palomides heard him say so, he kneeled downe and asked him mercy, for outragiously haue I done to you this day, considering the great deeds of armes that I haue scene you doe, shamefully and unknighly haue I required you to doe battaile with me. Ah sir Palomides said sir Lamoracke ouermuch haue ye done and said to me. And there-
with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with hee embraced him with both his hands and said. Sir Palomides the worthy knight in this land is no better then yee, nor of more proweesse. And me repenteth that wee haue fought together. So it doth mee said sir Palomides, and yet I am surer wounded then yee be, but as for that no force, for I shall stand thereof bee whole. But certainly I would not for the best Castle in this Land but that you and I had met, for I shall loue you the better all the dayes of my life afore all other knights except my brother sir Safer. I except the same said sir Lamoracke of my brother sir Tor. When came sir Dinadan and made great ioy of sir Lamoracke. When their squires dressed their shields and their harness, and staunched their wounds. And thereby in a priory they rested them well and easily all that night.

CHAP. CV.

How it was told sir Launcelot that sir Dagonet chased King Marke, and how a knight ouerthrew him and six knights.

Now turne we againe, when sir Ewaine and sir Brandiles with his fellows came vnto king Arthurs Court, they told sir Launcelot and sir Tristram how sir Dagonet chased king Marke, and how the strong knight hit them downe all hauen with one speare. There was great laughing and sport of king Marke and sir Dagonet. All they could not tell what might it was that had rescued king Marke. When they asked king Marke if hee knew him. And he answered and said. Hee nameth himselfe the knight that followeth the questing beast, and on that name hee sent one of his barlets into a place where that his mother is. And when she heard from whence hee came shee made a passing great dole, and dispatched vnto my barlet his name and said. O dære Sonne sir Palomides why wilt thou not once see me, and therefore said king Marke, it is to vnderstand that his name is sir Palomides the noble knight. When were all these leauen knights passing that they knew his name.

Now let vs turne againe for on the morrow they tooke their
horses

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

horses both Sir Lamoracke Sir Palomides and Sir Dinadan, with their squires and varlets, till they saw a faire Castle which stood vpon a mountaine well closed. And there they rode, and there they found a knight that hight Sir Galahad, which was Lord of that Castle. And there they had good cheere, and were well at ease. Sir Dinadan said Sir Lamoracke, what will yee doe. Sir said Sir Dinadan, I will to morrow goe toward the Court of my Lord King Arthur. By my head said Sir Palomides, I will not ride these three dayes, for I am sore hurt and much haue I bled, and therefore I will rest me a while. Truly said Sir Lamoracke and I will abide here with you, and when yee ride then will I ride vntil that yee tarrie not to long, then I will take my horse. Therefore I pray you Sir Dinadan abide and ride with vs. By my faith said Sir Dinadan, I will not abide, for I haue such a talent vnto Sir Tristram that I may not abide long from him. Ah Sir Dinadan said Sir Palomides, now doe I vnderstand that yee loue my most fall enemy and therefore how should I trust to you. Well said Sir Dinadan, I loue my Lord Sir Tristram aboue all other, and him will I serue and doe honour. So shall I find Sir Lamoracke, in all that may be in my power. So on the morrow Sir Dinadan rode vnto the Court of King Arthur. And by the way as hee rode he saw where stood an arraunt knight, and made him ready for to iust. Not so said Sir Dinadan, for I haue no will for to iust. With me shall yee iust said the knight, or that yee passe this way. Whether aske ye iusts by loue or by hate. The knight answered and said, wit ye well I aske it for loue and not for hate. It may well be so said Sir Dinadan, but yee proffer me hard loue, when ye will iust with me with a sharpe speare. But faire knight said Sir Dinadan, sith ye will iust with mee, meete with me in the Court of King Arthur, and there shall I iust with you. Well said the knight, sith ye will not iust with me, I pray you tell mee your name. Sir knight said he, my name is Sir Dinadan. Ah said the knight, full well I know you for a right good knight and a gentle. And wit you well I loue you heartily. When shall here be no iust betwene

and his Knights of the round Table:

betwene vs said Sir Dinadan. So they departed, and that same day hee came to Camelot, where King Arthur lay, and there hee saluted the king and the Queene, Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. And all the Court was glad of Sir Dinadan, for hee was gentle, wise and curteous, and a good knight. And in especiall the valliant knight Sir Tristram loued Sir Dinadan passing well aboue all other knights except Sir Launcelot. When the king asked Sir Dinadan what adventures hee had seene. Sir said Sir Dinadan I haue seene many adventures, and some King Marke knoweth, but not all. When the king harkned Sir Dinadan how he told that Sir Palomides and he were before the Castle of Morgan le fay, and how Sir Lamoracke took the iusts afoze them and how he so iusted twelue knights, and of them he slew foure and after he smote downe Sir Palomides and mee both. I may not beleue that (quoth King Arthur) for Sir Palomides is a passing good knight. What is truth said Sir Dinadan, but yet I saw him more better proued for hand. And then he told King Arthur all the battaile, and how Sir Palomides was more weaker and more hurt, and lost more of his blood. And without doubt said Sir Dinadan, the battaile any longer endured, Sir Palomides had there been slaine. Oh Iesu said King Arthur this is to me a great maruaile. My Lord said Sir Tristram, maruaile yee no thing thereof, for at mine aduise there is not a vallanter knight in all the world liuing. For I know his might. And Sir I will say to you, I was neuer weary of no knight but if he were Sir Launcelot and there is no knight in the world (except Sir Launcelot) I would that did so well as Sir Lamoracke. So God mee helpe said King Arthur, I would that that knight Sir Lamoracke came vnto this Court. My Lord said Sir Dinadan, he will be here in short space and Sir Palomides also. But I feare me that Sir Palomides may not yet come.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. CVI.

How King *Arthur* let doe crie a iust and how Sir *Lamoracke* came in and ouerthrew Sir *Gawaine* and many more.

Then within three dayes after that King *Arthur* made a iusting at a priory, and there made them ready many knights of the rounde table. For Sir *Gawaine* and his brother made them ready to iust. But Sir *Tristram*, Sir *Launcelot* nor Sir *Dinadan* would not iust, but suffred Sir *Gawaine* for the loue of King *Arthur* with his brethren for to winne the degree if they might. Then on the morrow they appaiailed them to iust Sir *Gawaine* and his foure brethren, and did there great deeds of armes. And sir *Ector de Maris* did meruailously well, but Sir *Gawaine* passed all that fellowship. Wherefore King *Arthur* and all the knights gaue Sir *Gawaine* the honour at the beginning. Right so King *Arthur* was ware of a knight and two squires that came out of a forrest side, with a shield couered with leather, and then hee came sily and hurtled here and there, and anon with one speare he smote downe two knights of the rounde table. When with his hurtling he lost the couering of the shield. Then was the king and all other ware that he beare the red shield. *Jesus* said king *Arthur*, see where rideth a stout knight hee with the red shield, and there was crying. Beware the knight with the red shield. So with swa while he had ouerthrowen the three brethren of Sir *Gawaine*. So God mee helpe said King *Arthur*, me seemeth yonder is the best knight that euer I saw with that he saw him encounter with Sir *Gawaine*, and he smote him downe with so great force, that hee made the horse to auoide the saddle. Now now said the king Sir *Gawaine* hath a fall well were me and I knew what knight he were with the red shield. I know him well said Sir *Dinadan*, but as at this time yee shall not know his name. By my head said Sir *Tristram* hee iusteth better then Sir *Palamides*. And if ye list to knowe his name, wit ye well his name is Sir *Lamoracke de galis*. As they stode thus talking Sir *Gawaine* and he encountred together againe, and there hee smote

and his Knights of the round Table.

smote Sir *Gawayne* from his horse and bused him sore. And in the sight of King *Arthur* hee smote downe twentie knights befor Sir *Gawaine* and his brother. And so clearly was the pisse giuen to him as a knight peerelesse. Then silyly and meruailously Sir *Lamoracke* withdrew him from all the fellowship into the forrest. All this espied king *Arthur*, for his ment neuer from him. Then king *Arthur*, Sir *Launcelot*, Sir *Tristram* and Sir *Dinadan* took their hackneys and rode right after the good knight Sir *Lamoracke de Galis*, and they found him. Then said king *Arthur*. A faire knight well ye are found, and when hee saw the king, hee put off his helme and saluted him. And when he saw Sir *Tristram* he alighted from his horse and ranne vnto him for to take him by the thighes. But Sir *Tristram* would not suffer him but he alighted so that he came. And either took other in armes, and made great lope of each other. The king was glad and in likewise was all the fellowship of the round table except Sir *Gawaine* and his brethren. And when they wist that it was Sir *Lamoracke*, they had great despite, and were wonderous wroth with him, because hee had put them vnto dishonour that day. Where Sir *Gawaine* called priuely in counsaile all his brethren and to them said thus. If hire brethren here may yee see whom we hate king *Arthur* loueth, and whome that wee loue he hateth. And wit yee well my faire brethren, that this Sir *Lamoracke* will neuer loue vs, because we slew his father king *Pellinor*, for wee deemed that he slew our father king of *Orkney*. And for the despite of king *Pellinor* Sir *Lamoracke* did this to our mother, therefore I will bee reuenged. Sir Sir *Gawaine* brethren, let vs see how yee will or may bee changed, and yee shall find vs ready. Well said Sir *Gawaine*, you will and wee shall espie our time.

CHAP. CVII.

How King *Arthur* made King *Marke* to bee accorded with Sir *Tristram*, and how they departed to ride toward *Cornewaile*.

Now passe wee over this matter and leaue wee of Sir *Gawaine* and his brethren, and speake wee of King *Arthur*,
A a a

The Historie of Prince Arthur

thur, that vpon a day said to king Marke. Sir I require you and pray you for to giue me a gift that I shall aske you. Sir said king Marke, I will giue you what soeuer yee desire and it bee in my. Sir grantercy said king Arthur, this will I aske you that yee will be good Lord vnto sir Tristram, for hee is a man of great honour, and that yee will take him with you into Coznewaile, and let him see his friends, and there cherish him for my sake. Sir said king Marke, I promise you by the faith of my bodie, and by the faith I owe vnto God and vnto you I shall worship him for your sake in all that I can or maie. Sir said king Arthur, and I will forgive you all the euill that euer I nought you, and so hee that yee will sweare that vpon a booke before mee, with a god will said king Marke. And then he swoze vpon a booke before him and all his knights. And therewith king Marke and Sir Tristram tooke either other by the hand handfastned together. But for all this king Marke thought falsly, as it shall be well proued afterward. For he put sir Tristram in prison, and cowardly would haue slaine him. When soone after king Marke toke his leaue for to ride into Coznewaile. And sir Tristram made him ready for to ride with him, wherefore the most part of the round table were angry and heauy and in especiall Sir Launcelot, and sir Lameracke and Dinada were wroth out of measure. For well they wist that king Marke would sleie or desire sir Tristram. Alas said sir Dinadan that my Lord Sir Tristram shall depart. And Sir Tristram toke such sorrow, that he was amased like a foole. Alas said Sir Launcelot vnto king Arthur what haue yee done, for yee shall losse the most man of worship that euer came into your court. It was his owne desire said king Arthur, and therefore I might not doe withall. For I haue done all that I can, and made them to be accorded. Accorded said Sir Launcelot he vpon that accord, for yee shall heare that hee shall sleie sir Tristram, or els put him in prison. For he is the most coward and the most villainous king and knight that is now liuing. And therewith sir Launcelot departed and came to king Marke and said to him thus. Sir king wit thou well the noble knight Sir Tristram shall go with thee, beware I red thee of treason.

For

and his Knights of the round Table.

For and thou mischeue or sleie that knight by any manner of falshood or treason, by the faith that I owe vnto our Lord Iesu Christ and vnto the high order of knighthood, I shall sleie thee with mine owne hands. Sir Launcelot said the king ouermuch haue yee said to me, and I haue swozne and said ouer largely before king Arthur, in hearing of all his knights, that I should not sleie nor betray him, it were to mee ouermuch shame to breake my promise. For say well said Sir Launcelot but yee are called so false and full of treason, that no man can beleue you. Forsooth it is full well knownen wherefore ye came into this countrey, and for none other cause but for to sleie Sir Tristram. So with great dole king Marke and sir Tristram roode together for it was sir Tristram wills and his meanes to goe with king Marke, and al was to the entent to see le la beale floud for without the sight of her Sir Tristram might not endure.

CHAP. CVIII.

How Percinall was made Knight of King Arthur. And how a domb maide speake and brought him to the round table.

Now turne wee againe vnto Lameracke, and speake wee of his betherne. Sir For was king Pellenores first sonne, begotten on Aries wife the cowheard, for she was a battard. And Sir Aglaual was his first sonne begotten in wedlocke Sir Lameracke Doruar, and Percinall all these were his sonnes also in wedlocke. So when king Marke and sir Tristram were departed from the Court, there was made great dole and sorrow for the departing of Sir Tristram. When the king and all his knights made no manner of toy eight daies after. After at the eight dayes end there came to the Court a knight with a young squire with him. And when this knight was unarmed he went vnto the king, and required him for to make that young squire a knight. Of what linnage is he come said king Arthur. Sir said the knight hee is the sonne of king Pellenor, that did you sometime good seruice. And hee is brother vnto Lameracke de Galis the good knight. Well said king Arthur, for what cause desire yee that of me, that I should make

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

make him a knight wit you well my Lord the King that the yong squire is Brother to me as well as to sir Lamoracke, and my name is sir Aglaualc. Sir Aglaualc said King Arthur, for the loue of Sir Lamoracke and for the loue of his father hee shall be made knight to morrow now tell me said King Arthur what is his name. Sir said the knight, his name is Percival de galis. So on the morrow the King made him knight in Camelot. But the King and all his knights thought it would be long or he proued a good knight. Then at the dinner when the King was set at the table, and every knight after hee was of prowesse, the King commanded him to bee set among the meane knights. And so was sir Percival set as the King commanded. Then was there a maide of the Queenes Court that was come of high blood. And shee was dour and had neuer spoken word. Right so shee came streight into the Hall, and went vnto Percival and tooke him by the hand and said aloud that the King and all the knights might heare it. Arise sir Percival the noble knight and Good knight and goe with mee. And so he did. And there shee brought him vnto the right side of the siege perillous, and said. Faire knight take here thy siege for that appertaineth vnto thee and vnto none other. Right so she departed and asked a Priest. And when shee was confessed and houseled then she died. When the King and all the Court made great ioy of sir Percival.

CHAP. CIX.

How Sir Lamoracke lay with Kings Lots Wife, and how Sir Gaheris slew her, which was his owne Mother.

NOW turne wee vnto Sir Lamoracke which was much prayesed there. Then by the meanes of Sir Gawaine and his brethren, they sent for their Mother there beside fast by a Castle beside Camelot. And all was to the entent for to slay Sir Lamoracke. The Queene of Orkeny was there but a while but Sir Lamoracke wist of her being, and was full faine. And for to make an end of this matter he sent vnto her, and there betweene them was a night appointed that Sir

Lamoracke

and his Knights of the round Table.

Lamoracke should come to her. Whereof was ware Sir Gaheris, and hee rode before the same night, and waited vpon Sir Lamoracke. And then hee saw where he came all armed, and where Sir Lamoracke alighted, hee tied his horse to a preuy posterne. And then hee went into a Parlour and armed him. And then he went vnto the Queenes bed. And there made of him passing great ioy, and he of her againe, for either loued other passing sore. So when the knight Sir Gaheris saw his time he came vnto their beds side all armed, with his sword naked, and sodainely he gate her mother by the faire and strooke off her head.

When Sir Lamoracke saw the hot blood dash vpon him the which hee loued passing well yee may right well thinke that hee was sore abashed and dismayed of that dolorous knight. And therewith Sir Lamoracke lept out of his bed in his shirt as a man all dismayed saying to them thus. Ah Sir Gaheris knight of the round table, full foule and euill haue yee done, and to you a great shame. Alas why haue yee slaine your owne Mother which bare you with more right yee should haue slaine mee. The offence hast thou done said Sir Gaheris, notwithstanding a man is borne to offer her seruice, but yet thou shouldest beware with whom thou meddest, for thou hast put mee and my brethren to a shame. And thy father slew our father. And thou to lye by our Mother, it is much shame for vs to suffer. And as for thy father King Pellinor my Brother Sir Gawaine and I slew him. Yee did him the more wrong said Sir Lamoracke, for my father slew not your father, it was Balan le sauage and as yet my fathers death is not yet reuenged. Leane these words said Sir Gaheris, for and thou speake felonously I will slay thee, but because thou art naked I am ashamed to slay thee. What wilt thou well in what place that I may get thee, I shall slay thee. And now my father is quite of thee, and therefore withdraue thee and take thine armour that thou were gone. Sir Lamoracke saw that there was none other boote fast armed him, and took his horse and rode his way, making great sorrow, but for shame and doloure he would not ride vnto King Arthurs Court, but rode

an

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

An other way. But when it was knowne that Sir Gaheris had slaine his Mother, King Arthur was passing wroth, and commanded him to goe out of his Court. Wit yee well Sir Gawaine was wroth that Sir Gaheris had slaine his Mother, and let Sir Lamoracke escape. And for this matter was the King passing wroth, and so was Sir Launcelot, and many other of the round table. Sir said Sir Launcelot, here is a great mischief befallen by felony, and by forcast treason that your Sister is thus shamefully slaine. And I dare say that it was wrought by treason, and I am sure yee shall leese that good knight Sir Lamoracke which is right great pittie. I wote well and I am sure, if Sir Tristram wist it, he would neuer more come within your Court againe, the which should grieve you much more then all your knights. God defend said King Arthur that I should leese Sir Lamoracke or Sir Tristram, for then were gone two of my chiefe knights of the round table. Sir said Sir Launcelot I am sure that yee shall leese Sir Lamoracke, for Sir Gawaine and his brethren will slay him by one meanes or other, for they among them haue concluded and sworn to slay him, and euer they may see their time. That shall I let said King Arthur.

CHAP. CX.

How Sir *Agrauaine* and Sir *Mordred* met with a Knight flying, and how they both were ouerthrowne, and Sir *Dinadan*.

Now leaue wee of Sir Lamoracke and speake of we Sir Gawaines brethren, and speciall of Sir Agrauaine and Sir Mordred. As they rode on their adventures they met with a flying knight soze wounded, & they asked him what tidings. Faire knights said hee, here cometh a knight after me that will slay mee. With that came Sir Dinadan riding to them by adventure, but hee would promise him no helpe. But Sir Agrauaine and Sir Mordred promised him to rescue him. Therewith came that knight freight vnto them. And anon he proffered soz to iust. That saw Sir Mordred and rode to him but he strooke Sir Mordred ouer his horse taile. That saw Sir
Agrauaine

and his Knights of the round Table.

Agrauaine and freight he rode toward that knight. And right so as hee serued Sir Mordred, so hee serued Sir Agrauaine, and said to them. Sir wit you well both that I am Sir Breuse saunce pitie that hath done this to you. And yet he rode ouer Sir Agrauaine five or six times. When Sir Dinadan saw this, hee must needs iust with him for shame. And so Sir Dinadan and hee encountred together, that with pure strength Sir Dinadan smote him ouer his horse taile. When he tooke his horse and fled. For hee was on foote one of the valiantest knights in King Archurs dayes, and a great destroyer of all good knights. Then rode Sir Dinadan vnto Sir Mordred and vnto Sir Agrauaine. Sir knight said they well haue yee done, and well haue yee reuenged vs, wherefore wee pray you tell vs your name. Faire knights said he, yee shall know that mine name is Sir Dinadan, when they vnderstood that it was Sir Dinadan, they were more wroth then they were before, for they hated him out of all measure because of Sir Lamoracke. For Sir Dinadan had such a custome that hee loued all good knights that were valiant, and hee hated all those that were destroyers of good knights that there were none that hated Sir Dinadan, but those that were called murderers. Then spake the hurt knight which Sir Breuse saunce pitie had chased, whose name was Sir Dalan, and he said. If thou be Sir Dinadan thou slewest my father. It may well bee so said Sir Dinadan, but then it was in my defence, and at his owne request. By mee head said Sir Dalan thou shalt die. therefore. And therewithall he dresled his speare and his shield. And for to make short tale Sir Dinadan smote him downe from his horse that his necke was nigh broken. And in the same wise hee smote Sir Mordred and Sir Agrauaine. And after in the quest of the Sangreall cowardly and felonously they slew Sir Dinadan, the which was right great damage, for he was a great boulder, and a passing good knight. And so Sir Dinadan rode to a Castle that hight Beale valet and there he found Sir Palomides that was not yet whole of the wound that Sir Lamoracke gaue him. and there Sir Dinadan told Sir Palomides all the things that he heard & saw of Sir Tristram, & how he was gone
25 b with

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

with King Marke, and with him hee hath all his will and desire. Therewith Sir Palomides wroth, for he loved la beale Isond, and then he will that sir Tristram enjoyed her.

CHAP. CXII.

How King Arthur with the Queene and Sir Launcelot receiued letters out of Cornewaile, and of the answeare againe thether.

NOW leaue of mee Sir Palomides and Sir Dinadan in the Castle of Beale valet, and turne wee againe vnto King Arthur. There came a Knight of Cornewaile whose name was Fergus, and a fellow of the round table, and there hee told King Arthur and Sir Launcelot good tidings of Sir Tristram, and there were brought goodly letters, and how he left him in the Castle of Tintagill. Then came the Damosell that brought goodly letters vnto King Arthur and vnto Sir Launcelot. And there shee had passing good cheere of King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer, and of Sir Launcelot. Then they wrote goodly letters againe. But Sir Launcelot had euer Sir Tristram beware of King Marke. For euer hee called him in his letters King Fox, as who saith, he fareth all with wiles and treason. Whereof Sir Tristram in his heart thanked Sir Launcelot. Then the Damosell went vnto la beale Isond and beare her letter from the King and the Queene and Sir Launcelot whereof shee was in passing great ioy. Faire Damosell said la beale Isond, how fareth my Lord King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer, and the Noble Knight Sir Launcelot du lake. She answered and said much the better that yee and Sir Tristram be in ioy. God reward them said la beale Isond, for Sir Tristram suffereth great paine for me, and I for him. So the Damosell departed, and brought letters to King Marke. And when hee had read them and understood them, hee was wroth with Sir Tristram de Lyones, for hee deemed that he had sent the Damosell vnto King Arthur, for King Arthur and Sir Launcelot in a manner threatened King Marke. And asking Marke read these letters he deemed treason by Sir Tristram. Damosell said King Marke, will yee ride and beare letters from

and his Knights of the round Table.

me vnto King Arthur. Sir said shee I will be at your commandement for to ride when yee will. She say well to King Marke. Come againe to morrow said the King and your letters. Then shee departed and told them how she should ride againe with letters vnto King Arthur. Then Tristram and la beale Isond said, wee pray you that when you haue receiued your letters, that yee will come by vs, that wee may see the priuie of yours letters. All that I doe yee wrote well Madame, I must doe so. Sir Tristram, for I haue beene long his owne maide. And so on the morrow the Damosell went to King Marke to haue had the letters, and to depart. I am not aduised said King Marke at this time to send my letters. Then priuely and secretly she sent letters vnto King Arthur and vnto the Queene Gueneuer and vnto Sir Launcelot. So the varlet departed, and found the King and Queene in Wales at Carlion. And then as the King and the Queene were at masse the varlet came with the letters. And then when masse was done the King and the Queene opened the letter priuely to themselves. And the beginning of the Kings letter spakeondrous short vnto King Arthur and bad him enter with him selfe and with his wife and his knights, for hee was able enough to rule and keepe his wife.

CHAP. CXIII.

How Sir Launcelot was wroth with the letter that hee receiued from King Marke, and Sir Dinadan that made a tale of King Marke.

AND when King Arthur understood the letter, hee mused vpon many things, and thought vpon his Sisters Lordes Queene Morgan la fay, that shee had said betwene Queene Gueneuer and Sir Launcelot du lake. And in his mind hee studied a great while. And then hee bethought him againe how his Sister was his most enemy, and that hee hated the Queene and Sir Launcelot. And so hee put all that out of his thought. And then King Arthur read the letter

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Letter againe, and the letter claue said, that King Marke tooke sir Tristram for his mortell enemy, wherefore hee put King Arthur out of doubt he would bee reuenged on sir Tristram. When was King Arthur wroth with King Marke. And when Queene Gueneuer had read her letter, and vnderstood it shee was wroth out of measure, for the letter spake shame by her and by Sir Launcelot. And so priuily shee sent the letter to sir Launcelot. And when hee witte the entent of the letter, he was so wroth that he laid him downe vpon his bed to sleepe. whereof sir Dinadan was a ware, for it was his manner to bee priuy with all good knights. And as sir Launcelot slept, he stole the letter out of his hand, and read it word by word. And then hee made great sorow for anger. And so Sir Launcelot awaked and went to a window and read the letter againe, which made him angry. Sir said Sir Dinadan, wherefore bee yee angry, discover your heart to me, for soth yee wote well that I owe you good will, how bee it I am a poore knight and a seruant to you and to all good knights, for though I bee not of worship my selfe, yet I loue all those that bee of worship, It is truth said sir Launcelot, ye be a trusty knight and for great trust I will shew you my counsaile. And when sir Dinadan vnderstood all, he said Sir this is my counsaile. Set yee right nought by all these threathings, for King Marke is so vilanous that by faire speach shall neuer no man get ought of him. But yee shall see what I shall doe, I will make a lay for him, and when it is made I shall make an harper to sing it before him. So anon hee went and made it and taught it an harper that hight Elyot, and when hee could it, hee taught it to many harpers. And so by the will of Sir Launcelot and of King Arthur, the harpers went straight vnto Wales and Cornewalle to sing the lay that Sir Dinadan made by King Marke, which was the worst lay that euer harper sung with harpe or with any other instrument.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXIII.

Sir Tristram was hurt. And of a warre made to King Marke. And of Sir Tristram, how he promised to rescue him.

Now turne we againe vnto sir Tristram and King Marke. As sir Tristram was at the iustes and turnement, it soe happened that he was soe wounded, both with a speare and with a sword. But yet he swanne alwaies the degree. And soe to rest hee went to a good knight that dwelled in Cornewalle in a castle, whose name was Sir Dinas the Senehall. When by misfortune there came one of Scythoyne with a great number of men of armes and an hedious host. And they entred nigh vnto the castle of Wintagill. And their Captaines name was sir Dinas a good man of armes. When king Marke vnderstood that his enemies were entred into his land, hee made great sorow and dole, for in no wise by his will hee would not send for Sir Tristram, for he hated him deadly. So when his counsaile was that they deuised and castled many perilles of the strength of his enemies. And they concluded all at once and said vnto King Marke thus. Sir wit yee well that yee must send for Sir Tristram the good knight or else they will neuer be overcome. For by Sir Tristram they must be fought withall or else wee shall loose against the streame. Well then said King Marke, I will do by your counsaile. But yet hee was full loth thereto, but hee was constrained him for to send for him. When was he sent for in all the hast that might be, that he should come to King Marke. When sir Tristram vnderstood that the King had sent for him, he mounted vpon a soft hackney and rode to King Marke. When he was come, the King said thus. Faire nephew Sir Tristram this is all. Heere be come our enemies of Scythoyne that are heere nigh hand. And without any tarying they must be met with shortly, or else they will destroy this countrey. Sir said Sir Tristram wit yee well that all my power is at your commandment, and wit yee well Sir these eight dayes may I beare none armes, for my wounds bee not as yet all garded and hole, and by that day I shall doe what I may.

P. 10

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

¶ We say well said King Marke, then goe you againe and rest you and make you fresh and I shall goe and meete the sestoins with all my power. So King Marke departed soz to goz to Wintagill, and sir Tristram went to rest him. And the king made a great host, and departed them in thre. The first part led Sir Dinas the seneschall, and sir Andre led the second part, and sir Argus led the thirde part, and hee was of King Markes blood. And the sestoins had thre great and mighty battailes, and many good men of armes. And so King Marke by the aduise of his knights issued out of the Castle of Wintagill vpon his enemies. And the good knight Sir Dinas rode out befoze and slew two knights with his owne hands. And then began the battaile, and there was great breaking of speares, and smiting of good knights. And euer was Sir Dinas the seneschall the best of all King Markes part. And thus the battaile endured long with mortallitie. But at the last King Marke and Sir Dinas were they neuer so loth they withdrew them to the Castle of Wintagill with great slaughter of people, and the sestoins followed them fast that ten then were put within the gates and foure slaine with the portcoileis. Then King Marke sent soz sir Tristram by a barlet, that told him all the mortallitie. When sir Tristram sent the barlet againe, and bad him tell King Marke that hee would come as soone as he were hole, soz no sooner could hee doe him good. Then King Marke had his answer. There with came sir Elias, and bad King Marke yelde by the Castle, soz yee may hold it no while. Sir Elias said the king, so will I yield by the Castle, if that I be not soone rescued. Anon King Marke sent againe soz rescue vnto sir Tristram. By then sir Tristram was hole, and hee had gotten him ten good knights of King Arthurs, and with them, hee rode to the Castle of Wintagill. And when he saw the great host of sestoins hee meruailed greatly. And then sir Tristram rode by the woods and by the ditches as secretly as hee might, till he came nigh the gates. And there drested a knight vnto him, when hee saw that sir Tristram would enter. And sir Tristram smote him downe dead, and so he serued thre moe. And euery each of those ten knights slew a man of armes. So

and his Knights of the round Table.

¶ Sir Tristram entred into the Castle of Wintagill. And when King Marke wist that sir Tristram was come, hee was right glad of his comming and so was all the fellowship. And of this they made great ioye.

CHAP. CXV.

¶ Sir Tristram ouercame the battaile. And how sir Elias desired a man to fight body for body.

¶ On the morrow Elias the Captaine came and bad King Marke come out and doe battaile, soz now the good knight Tristram is entred. It will be a shame to thee said sir Elias to see thy walls. When King Marke understood him, hee was wroth and said not one word, but went vnto sir Tristram and asked him counsaile. Sir said sir Tristram, will yee that I give you an answer. I will well said King Marke. When said sir Tristram vnto the messenger thus. Beare thy Lord word to the King and me, that we will doe battaile with him to morrow in the plaine field. What is your name said the messenger. What thou well my name is sir Tristram de Lioness. Where with the messenger departed, and told his Lord sir Elias what he had heard. Sir said Tristram to King Marke, I pray you give me leaue soz to haue the rule of the battaile. I pray you take the rule said King Marke. Then sir Tristram let depart the battailes in what manner it should bee. He let depart the host in foure parts. And ordeyned Sir Dinas the Seneschall to be the foreward, and other knights to rule the remnant. And the same night sir Tristram hent all the sestoines ships vnto the hold water. Anon as sir Elias wist it, hee said it was of sir Tristrams doing, soz he casteth that we shall neuer escape. Heers some of vs, therefore faire fellows fight freely to the death, and discomfort yee not, soz one knight though he be the best knight of the world, he may not haue to doe with vs. When they ordeyned their battailes in foure parts wonderfull well apparailled and garnished with men of armes. Thus they with in issued, and they without set fræly vpon them. And there sir Dinas did great deeds of armes. Not soz then Sir Dinas

The Historie of Prince Arthur

Dinas & his fellowship were put to the worst. With that came Sir Tristram and slew two knights with one speare. Then he slew on the right hand and on the left hand that men meruailed that euer he might doe such deeds of armes. And then he might see sometime the battaile was driuen a bow draught from the Castle and sometime it was at the gates of the castle. When came Elias the captaine rushing heere and there, and hit King Marke so soze vpon the helme that hee made him to auoide the saddle. And then sir Dinasgate King Marke vpon againe on horsebacke. Therewith came sir Tristram like a Lion, and there he met sir Elias the captaine, and smote him so soze vpon the helme that he auoided his sad. And they fought till it was night, and for great slaughter and for wounded people euery partie drew to their rest. And when King Marke was come within the Castle of Wintagill, hee lacked of his knights an hundred. And they of without two hundred. And they serched the wounded men on both parties. And then they went to counsaile, & wit ye well either partie were lothe to fight any more so that either partie might escape with their worship. When Sir Elias the captaine vnderstood the death of his men hee made great dole. And when hee wist that they were loth to goe vnto battaile againe, then was he swroth out of measure. When this sir Elias the captaine sent word vnto King Marke in great despite and anger whether he would find a knight that would fight for him body for body and if that he might slay King Marke knight, he to haue the truage of Cornewaile yearely. And if that his knight slay mine, I fully release my claime for euer hereafter. And then the messenger departed vnto King Marke & told him how that his Lord and captaine, sir Elias had sent him word for to find a knight to do battaile with him body for body. When King Marke vnderstood the messenger, he bad him abide and he should haue his answer. When called he al his baronage together to wit what was best to doe. They said all at once, to fight in a field wee haue no lust, for had not heene sir Tristrams prowerse, it had beene likely that we neuer should haue escaped and therfore sir as we desire it were well done to find a knight that would do battaile with him, for he knightly prosereth.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXVI.

How Sir Elias and Sir Tristram fought together for the Truage of Cornewaile, and how Sir Tristram slew Sir Elias in the field.

Withstanding all this said, no knight could be found that would fight with him. Sir King said they all, heere is no knight that dare fight with sir Elias. Alas said King Marke then am I utterly shamed and utterly destroyed, with-out that my nephew Sir Tristram will take the battaile vpon him. Wit ye will said they all, he had yester day ouermuch in hand, and he is weary for trauaile, and soze wounded. Whereupon said King Marke. Sir said they, hee is in his bed for to rest him. Alas said King Marke, but if I haue the succour of my nephew sir Tristram, I am utterly destroyed for euer. Therewith one went to sir Tristram and told him where hee was. What King Marke had said. And therewith Sir Tristram came lightly, and put vpon him a long gowne, and came to King Marke and all the Lords. And when hee saw him all so dismaied, hee asked King Marke and the Lords what tidings was with them. Neuer worse said King Marke. And therewith he told him all how hee had word of sir Elias to find a knight to fight for the truage of Cornewaile, and none durst find. And as for you said King Marke and all the Lords, we may not demand no more of you for shame. For through your hardinesse yester day, ye haue saued all our liues. Sir said Sir Tristram, now I vnderstand yee would haue my reward, reas on would that I should doe all that lieth in my power to doe, sauing my worship and my life, how be it I am very soze bruised and hurt. And sith sir Elias prosereth so largely, I shall fight with him, or else I shall be slaine in the same field, or else I shall deliuer Cornewaile from the truage. And therefore lightly call to mee his messenger, and he shall bee answered. For as yet my wound be greene, and they will be more sozer seauen dayes hereafter then they be now, and therefore hee shall haue his answer, then I will

C c

doc

The Historie of Prince Arthurs

doe battaile with him to morrow. When the messenger that was departed was brought before King Marke. Hearken vnto my wordes fellow said Sir Tristram. Doe fast vnto the Lord and bid him to make true assurance on his part for the truage, as the King here shall make vpon his part. And that tell vnto thy Lord Sir Elias, that I Sir Tristram King Arthurs knight and knight of the round table, will as to morrow mete with thy Lord on horse backe for to doe battaile as long as my horse may endure, and after that to doe battaile with him on foote to the uttermost. When the messenger beheld Sir Tristram from the top to the toe. And therewith he departed and came vnto his Lord, and told how hee was answered of Sir Tristram. And therewith was made hostage on both parties, and made it as sure as it might bee, that whether part had the victory, so to the end. And then were both the hostes assembled on both parties of the field without the Castle of Wintagill. And there was none armed but Sir Tristram and Sir Elias. So when the appointment was made, they departed that one from that other, and they came together with all the might that their horses might runne, and either knight smote other so hard, that both horses and knights went vnto the earth. Not for then they both lightly arose vp and dressed their shields on their shoulders with naked swords in their hands, and they dashed together like as there had beens a flaming fire about them. Thus they traced and trauesed, and helmed on helmes and humberks, and cut away many peeces and cantels of their shields, and either wounded other passingly sore, so that the hote blood fell fresh vpon the earth. And by then they had foughten the mountenance of an houre Sir Tristram wared faint and for blood and gage sore abacke. What saw Sir Elias and followed freshly vpon him, and wounded him in many places. And euer Sir Tristram traced and trauesed, and went forward him here and there and couered him with his shield as he might all weakely, that all men said he was overcome. For Sir Elias had giuen him twenty strokes against one. When was there great laughing on the Selloins part,

and his Knights of the round Table.

at a great feast on King Marke part. Alas said King Marke, how are all hamed and destroyed for euens. For Sir Tristram was so matched, but if it were Sir Lancelot. Thus as they stood and beheld both parts, that one part laughing, and the other part weeping, Sir Tristram remembred him of his lady la beale Isoud that looked vpon him, and how hee was likely neuer to come in her presence. When he pulled his shield which before did hang full low. And then hee dashed vp his shield vnto Sir Elias, and gaue him many sad strokes, twentie against one, and all to brake his shield and his humberke, that the hote blood ranne downe to the earth. And then began King Marke to laugh and all Cornish men, and that other part began to wepe. And euer Sir Tristram said to Sir Elias, yeeld thee. When when Sir Tristram saw hee so staggering on the ground, hee said. Sir Elias I am not so sore for thee, for thou art a passing good knight as euer met withall, except Sir Launcelot. Therewithall Sir Elias fell to the earth there and he died, what shall I doe said Sir Tristram to King Marke, for this battaile is at an end. When they saw Sir Elias part departed. And King Marke tooke of them many prisoners for to redresse the harmes and dammages that he had of them. And the remnant he sent in to their countrey to comfort out their fellows. When was Sir Tristram searched and well healed, yet for all this King Marke would faine haue Sir Tristram. But for all that euer Sir Tristram saw hee by King Marke, yet would hee neuer be ware of his prison, but euer would hee be there as la beale Isoud was.

CHAP. CXVII.

How at a great feast King Marke made an harpe came and sung the lay that Dinadan had made.

Now let vs ouer passe this matter, and speake wee of the harpe that Sir Launcelot and Sir Dinadan had sent into Camelot with the lay. And the great feast that King Marke made the day of the victory which hee had because the Selloins were so put out of his countrey. When came Elior

The Historie of Prince Arthur

the harper with the lay that Sir Dinadan had made, and secretly brought it unto Sir Tristram de Lyones, and told him of the lay that Sir Dinadan had made by King Marke. And when Sir Tristram heard it, hee said. O Lord Jesu that Sir Dinadan can make wonderous well good and ill, there as it shall be. Sir said Eliot, dare I sing this song before King Marke. For upon my perill said Sir Tristram, yf song shall be thy warrant. When as King Marke was at theate, Eliot the harper came in. And because hee was a curious harper, men heard him sing the same lay that Sir Dinadan had made, the which spake the most vilanie by King Marke of his treason that euer man heard. When the harper had sung his song to the end, King Marke was wonderous wroth with him, and said. When harper how durst thou be so bold on thy head to sing this song before me. Sir said Eliot, wit you well I am a minstrell, and I must doe as I am commanded of these Lords that I beare the armes of. And Sir King wit you well that Sir Dinadan knight of the round table made this song, and he made me to sing it before you. Thou saiest well said King Marke, I charge thee that thou bie thee fast out of my sight. So the harper departed and went unto Sir Tristram and told him how he had sped, and then Sir Tristram let make letters goodly as hee could deuise unto Sir Lancelot, and unto Sir Dinadan. And so he let conduct Eliot the harper out of the countrey. But for to say that King Marke was wonderous wroth hee was. For hee deemed that the lay that was sung before him, was made and ordained by Sir Tristrams counsaile, wherefore he thought to slay him and all his well willers in that Countrey.

CHAP. CVXIII.

How King Marke slew by treason his brother Boudwine for good seruice that he had done to him.

Now turne we to an other matter which befell betwene King Marke & his brother, that was called the good prince Sir Boudwine, which all the people of the countrey loved passing wel. So it be, upon a time that the marchants saualins landed in

and his Knights of the round Table.

the country of Cornwaite soone after that the bestowes were set. And then the good Prince Sir Boudwine at the landing place he raised the countrey priuely and hastily. And as it was day hee let put wild fire in the of his olue ships, and suddenly hee pulled up the sailes, and with the wind hee drave those ships to be driven among the paue of the Saracens. And to make short the tale those ships set on fire all the other ships that none were saued. And at the point of the day the good Prince Sir Boudwine with all his fellowship set upon the Marchants with shouts and cries, and slew to the number of forty thousand and left none alieue. And when King Marke wist this, hee was wonderous wroth that his brother should winne such worship. And because thit this Prince was better beloued then he in all that countrey, and also Sir Boudwine loved well Sir Tristram, therefore hee thought to slay him. And thus hastily as a man being out of his wit and lacking naturall reason, sent for the noble Prince Sir Boudwine and Anglides his wife and commanded them to bring their yong Sonne with them, that hee might see him. And all this hee did to the intent to slay the Child, as well as his father, for hee was the falsest traitour that euer was. Alas for his goodnesse and for his good deeds, this gentle Prince Sir Boudwine was slaine. So when he came with his wife Anglides, the king made them faire semblance as they had dined. And when they had dined, King Marke sent to his brother, and said to him. Brother how sped you when your miscreants arrived by you, mee seemeth it had bene your part to haue sent mee word, that I might haue bene at that iourney, for it had bene reason that I might haue had the honour, and not you. Sir said the Sir Prince Boudwine it was so that I had taried till I had sent for you, the miscreants had destroyed my countrey. Thou liest false traitour said King Marke for thou art euer about to win worship from me and put me to dishonour, and thou cherishest that I hate. And there with hee strooke him to the heart with a dagger, and he neuer after spake word. When the Lady Anglides his wife made great dole & swoned, for shee saw her Lord slaine also her face.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

When was there no more to do but that prince Boudwine was despoiled brought to burials, but Anglides priuely gat her husbands doublet and his shirt, and that she kept secretly. When was there much sorrow and crying, and great dole made Sir Tristram, sir Dinans, and sir Fergus, and so did all the knights that were there, for that prince was passingly welbeloued. So la beale Isond sent to Anglides prince Boudwins wife, and had her auoided lightly, or else her young son Alisaunder Lorfelin should be slaine. When she heard this, she took her horse and her youngchild Alisaunder, and rode her way with such poore men as durst ride with her.

CHAP. CXIX.

How Anglides Boudwins wife escaped with her young sonne Alisaunder Lorfelin, and came to the Castle of Arundell.

Notwithstanding when King Marke had done this deed, yet he hathought him to doe more vengeance, and with his sword in his hand hee sought from chamber to chamber to find Anglides and her young sonne. And when shee was mist, he called a good knight that his he Sir Sadocke, and charged him upon paine of death to fetch Anglides againe and her young sonne. So Sir Sadocke departed, and rode after Anglides, and within ten mile he quer took her, and had her turne againe and ride with him vnto King Marke. Alas faire knight said shee, what shall yee winne by my sonnes death, or by mine. I haue had ouermuch paine and to great a losse. Madame said Sir Sadocke of your losse is dole and pitie, but. Madame said Sir Sadocke would you depart out of this countrey with your son Alisaunder, and keepe him till hee bee of age, that hee may reuenge his fathers death, then would I suffer you to depart from me, so ye promise me for to reuenge the death of prince Boudwin. A gentle knight, Jesu thankethee, and if my sonne Alisaunder liue to be a good knight, he shall haue his fathers doublet and his shirt with the bloody markes, And I shall giue him such a charge, that hee shall remember it while he liueth. And therewith Sir Sadocke departed from her, and either bee

and his Knights of the round Table.

take offer to God. And when Sir Sadocke came to King Marke he told him faithfully that he had deuoted young Alisaunder to God. And thereof King Marke was full glad. Now turne we vnto Anglides, which rode both night and day by aduenture out of Coznewaile, and in a little and in few places shee rested herself. But euer shee deue southward vnto the sea side, till at last she came to a castle that was called Dagounce, and now it is called Arundell in Southsex. And the constable of the castle welcomed her, and said shee was welcome to her owne castle. And there was Anglides worshipfully receiued. For the constables wife was his high cousin to her. And the constables name was Bellanger, and the countable told dame Anglides that the same Castle was hers by right enheritance. When dame Anglides endured yeares and winters till that her sonne Alisaunder was big and strong. There was none so mighty in all that countrey, neither there was none that might doe no manner of mastery afoze him.

CHAP. CXX.

How Anglides gaue the bloody doublet vnto Alisaunder her sonne the same day that hee was made Knight, and the charge with all.

Then upon a day Sir Bellanger the constable came vnto dame Anglides and said. Madame it were time that my son Alisaunder were made a knight for he is a passing strong young man. Sir said Anglides, I would hee were made knight, but then I must giue him the most charge that euer sinfull mother gaue to her child. Doe as yee list said Sir Bellanger. I shall giue him warning that hee shall bee made knight. It will be well done that hee may bee made knight at Lady day in lent. I am content that it bee so said dame Anglides, and I will pray you for to make ready therefore. So the countable came vnto Alisaunder and told him that he should at Lady day in Lent bee made knight. God be thanked, said Alisaunder, these are the best tidings that euer were told me. When the countable Sir Bellanger ordeined twentie

The Historie of Prince Arthure

of the greatest Gentle mens Sonnes and the best bozne men of the countrey, that should all be made knights that same day that Alisaunder was made knight. So on the same day that Alisaunder and his twentie fellows were made knights, at the offering of the masse there came dame Anglides vnto her sonne, and said vnto him these words. Faire sonne I charge thee vpon my blessing and vpon the high order of knight-hood that thou takest here this day, that thou vnderstand what I shall say and charge thee withall. Therewithall she pulled out a bloody doublet and a bloody shirt that were bebled withold blood. And when Sir Alisaunder saw this hee start backe and waxed pale, and said faire mother what may this meane. I shall tell thee faire sonne said she, this was thine owne fathers doublet and shirt that hee weare vpon him that same day that he was slaine. And there shee told him why and wherefore, and how that for his goodnesse King Marke slew him with his dagger before my face in my presence, and therefore this shall be your charge, the which I shall giue to you now.

CHAP. CXXI.

How it was told King Marke of Sir Alisaunder, and how hee would haue slaine Sir Sadokes for sauing of his life.

NOW I require thee and charge thee vpon my blessing and vpon the high order of knight-hood, that thou be reuenged on King Marke for the death of thy father. And therewith she swoned. When Sir Alisaunder lept vnto his mother and tooke her vp in his armes and said. Faire mother yee haue giuen mee a great charge, and heere I promise you that I shall bee auenged vpon King Marke when I may, and that I promise vnto God and vnto you. So this feast was ended. And the constable by the aduise of Anglides let puruey that sir Alisaunder was well horsed and well armed. When he iusted with his twentie fellows that were made knights with him. But for to make short tale he ouerthrew all those twentie knights, so that none of them might withstand him a buffet. When one of those knights departed for to goe to King Marke, and told him

and his Knights of the round Table.

all how Sir Alisaunder was made knight, and all the things that his mother gaue him, as ye haue hart before. Alas the traitour said King Marke, I weend that yong traitour had bene dead. Alas whom may I trust. And therewithall King Marke tooke a sword in his hand and sought Sir Sadoke from Chamber to Chamber to slay him. When Sir Sadoke saw King Marke come with his sword drawne in his hand, hee said thus. Beware King Marke thou come not neere me, for thou well that I saued Alisaunder his life, of which I will neuer repent mee, for thou falsly and cowardly slewest his father Boudwine, and traitourly for his good deeds. Wherefore I pray God send Sir Alisaunder might & strength to bee reuenged vpon thee. And now beware King Marke of yong Sir Alisaunder, for hee is made a knight. Alas said King Marke, that euer I should here a traitour say so before me. And therewith foure of King Markes knights drew their swords to slay Sir Sadocke. But anon Sir Sadocke slew them all in King Marke presence. And so Sir Sadocke passed forth into his Chamber and tooke his horse and his harnais, and rode his way a good pace. For there was neither Sir Tristram nor Sir Dinas the Seneſhall. nor Sir Furgus that would Sir Sadocke any euill will. When was King Marke wroth, and sought to for destroy sir Alisaunder, and also Sir Sadocke that had saued his life. For King Marke dread and hated sir Alisaunder most of any man that liued. When Sir Tristram vnderstood that sir Alisaunder was made knight, anon forwith he sent him a letter praying him and charging him that hee would draw him vnto the Court of the Noble King Archur so that he would put him in the gouernance of sir Launcelot. And so this letter was sent to Sir Alisaunder from his cousin Sir Tristram. And at that time hee thought to doe after his commandement and counsaile. When King Marke called the knight which had brought him the tidings from Sir Alisaunder, and commanded him for to abide still in that Countrey. Sir said the knight, needs must I doe so, for in mine owne Countrey I dare not come. So force said King Marke I shall giue thee here double as much land as thou haddest in thine owne

The Historie of Prince Arthur

alone countrey. But within short space sir Sadoeke met with that false knight and slew him. Wherewith King Marke was wonderous wroth out of measure. Then hee sent vnto Queene Morgan le fay and vnto the Durene of Northgalis praying them in letters that they two sorceresses would set all the countrey in a saire, with Ladies that were enchanteresses, and by such as were dangerous knights, as Malgrin, and Breuse sauncespie, that he no more see Sir Alisaunder Lorfelan, should escape them, but that either he should be taken or slaine. This ordinance made King Marke to destroy the young knight Sir Alisaunder.

CHAP. CXXII.

How Sir Alisaunder wanne the prise at a turnament, and of Morgan le fay. And how hee fought with sir Malgrin and slew him.

Next tyme wee againe vnto Sir Alisaunder, that at his departing his Mother tooke him his Fathers bloody shirt, and that alwayes hee beare with him till his dying day, in token for to thinke vpon his Fathers death. So sir Alisaunder was purposed for to ride to London (by the counsaile of sir Tristram) vnto sir Launcelot. And by fortune hee went by the Sea side, and rode wrong. And there hee wanne at a turnement the degree which turnament king Carados made. And there hee smote downe King Carados and twentie of his knights, and also sir Sufere a good knight, which was sir Palomides brother the good knight. All this saw a Damosell, and said she saw the best knight iust that euer she saw. And euer as he smote downe knights, he made them for to sweare to weare no harness in a twelue months and a day. This is well said quoth Morgan le fay, this is the knight that I would saue see. And so hee tooke her palfrey and rode a great while, and shee rested her in her pavilion. So there came foure knights. And two were armed and two were unarmed, and they told Morgan le fay their names. The first was Sir Elias de Gomeret, the second was Sir Carde Gomeret, those

and his Knights of the round Table.

two were armed. And the other twaine were of Camilard, and sent vnto Queene Gueneuer, and the one hight sir Guy, and the other hight sir Garaune, and those were unarmed. Where these foure knights told Queene Morgan le fay, how a young knight had smitten them downe by a Castle. For the Damosell of the Castle said that he was but late made knight and young. But as we suppose but if it were sir Tristram or sir Launcelot, or sir Lamoracke the good knight, there is none that might sit him a buffet with a speare. Well said Queene Morgan le fay I shall meete with that knight or it be long time and hee dwell in that Countrey.

So tyme we vnto the Damosell of the Castle, that when Sir Alisaunder Lorfelan had for iusted the foure knights, shee called him vnto her, and said. Sir knight, wilt thou for my sake iust and fight with a knight of this Countrey, the which hath bene long time an euill neighbour vnto me, and his name is called Sir Malgrin. And he will not suffer me to be married in no manner of wise for all that I can doe, or any thinge for my sake. Damosell said Sir Alisaunder, and hee while I am here, I will fight with him and my poore body will iopard for your sake. When forthwith she sent for him for he was at her command. And when either had a sight of other they made them ready for to iust, and they came together full egerly, and Malgrin buffetted his speare vpon Sir Alisaunder, and Sir Alisaunder smote him againe so hard that hee threw him quite from his saddle to the earth. But this Sir Malgrin arose lightly and dressed his shield and drew his sword, and bad him alight, saying. Though thou haue the better on mee on horse backe, yet shalt thou finde that I shall be like a knight on foote. It is well said quoth sir Alisaunder. And so lightly he auoided his horse, and betooke him in his varlet. And then they rushed together like two wild bores and smote vpon their helmes and shields long time the space of three houres, that neuer man could say which was the better knight. And in the meane while came Queene Morgan la fay to the Damosell of the Castle and they beheld the battaile. But this Sir Malgrin was an old roted knight.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

And hee was called one of the dangerous knights of the the world to doe battaile on foote. But on horse there were found many better. And euer this Sir Malgrin awaited to slay Sir Alisaunder. And so hee wounded him wonderous soze, that it was meruaile that euer he might stand on his feete, for hee had bled so much blood. For Sir Alisaunder fought wildly and not wittily. And that other was a felonious knight and awaited him and smote him soze. And sometime they rushed together with their shields like two Rammes by Woozes and fell both downe groveling to the earth. Now knight said sir Malgrin hold thy hand a while, and tell mee what thou art. I will not said Sir Alisaunder, but if me list. But tell mee thy name, and why thou keepst this countrey, or else thou shalt die of my hands. What thou wilt said Malgrin, that for the Maidens loue of this Castle I haue slaine ten knights by mishap. And by outrage and pride of my selfe I haue slaine ten other knights. So God me helpe said Sir Alisaunder, this is the foulest confession that euer I heard knight make, nor neuer heard I speake of other men of such a shamefull confession, wherefore it were great pittie and great shame to me that I should let thee liue any longer. Wherefore keepe thee as well as thou maiest, for I promise thee faithfully as I am a true knight either thou shalt slay me or else I shall slay thee. When againe they lashed together fiercely. And at the last sir Alisaunder smote sir Malgrin to the earth, and then hee rashed off his helme, and lightly smote off his head. And when hee had thus done and ended this battaile, anon hee called vnto him his varlet, the which brought him his horse. And then wanting to be strong enough, would haue mounted but he fell downe flat to the earth, for feeblenesse. The Damosell of the Castle seeing that, laid Sir Alisaunder in a horse little, and led him to the Castle, for hee had neither force nor might to stand upon the ground. For hee had fiftene great wounds, and in especiall one of them was like to be his death.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXXIII.

Now Queene Morgan le fay had Sir Alisaunder in her castle, and how shee healed his wounds.

Then Queene Morgan le fay searched his wounds, and gaue him such an oyntment that he should haue died. And in the morning after when shee came to him, hee complained him soze. And then shee put other oyntments vpon him, and then was he out of his paine. When came the damosell of the castle and said vnto Morgan le fay. I pray you helpe me that this knight might wed mee. For hee hath wonne mee with his hands. Wee shall see said Morgan le fay what I shall say. When Morgan le fay went to Sir Alisaunder and bad him in any wise that he should refuse this damosell if she desire to wed you, for she is not for you. So the damosell came and desired of him marriage. Damosell said Sir Alisaunder, I thanke you, but yet I call me not to marriage in this countrey. Sir said she, when yee will not marry mee, I pray you, in so much as yee haue wonne me, that yee will giue me vnto a knight of this countrey that hath beene long my friend, and he hath loued me many yeares. With all my heart said Sir Alisaunder, I will assent thereto. When was the knight sent for, his name was sir Graine le grose. And anon he made them to handfast and to wed together. When came Queene Morgan le fay to Alisaunder, and bad him arise, and put him in a horse litter. And gaue him such a drinke that in three daies and three nights hee waked not but slept. And so shee brought him vnto her owne castle which at that time was called la beale regard. When Queene Morgan le fay came to Sir Alisaunder, and asked him if he would saue be whole. What would hee sicke said sir Alisaunder, and he might be whole well said Queene Morgan le fay, then shall yee promise me by your knight hood, that this day twelue moneths and a day, he shall not passe the compasse of this castle, and without doubt he shall lightly be whole. I assent said sir Alisaunder, and there hee made her a promise. When was hee soone whole. And when Sir Alisaunder was whole, then hee repented him of his oath because

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

because hee might not bee reuenged of King Marke. Right so there came a Damosell that was cousin vnto the earle of Wale, and shee was cousin to Queene Morgan le fay. And by right that castle of la beale regard should haue bene hers by true inheritance. So this damosell sentred into this castle where Sir Alisaunder lay, and there shee found him vpon his bed passing heauy and all sad.

CHAP. CXXIII.

How Sir Alisaunder was deliuered from Queene Morgan le fay, by the meanes of a damosell.

Sir knight said the damosell if yee would be merry. I could tell you good tidings. Well were me said sir Alisaunder and I might heare of good tidings, for I stand as a prisoner by my promise. Sir said she wit you wel that ye be a prisoner and worse then ye weene. For my Lady my cousin Morgan le fay, keepeth you here for none other intent but for to doe her pleasure with you, when it liketh her. O Jesu defend me said Sir Alisaunder from such pleasure, for I had leuer cut away my hangers, rather then I would doe her such a pleasure. So God helpe mee said the damosell and yee would loue me, and be ruled by me, I shall make your deliuerance with your worship. Tell me said Sir Alisaunder, by what meanes, and yee shall haue my loue. Faire knight said she, this castle of right ought for to be mine, and I haue an vnkle that is a mightie earle, for hee is earle of Wale, and of all folkes he hateth most Morgan le fay, and I shall send vnto him, and pray him that for my sake he will destroy this castle for the euill customes that hee vsed therein, and then will hee come and set vnto the fire on euery part of the castle, and I shall get you out at a preuy posterne, and there yee shall haue your horse and your harneys, yee say well damosell said Sir Alisaunder. And then shee said, yee may keepe the roome of this castle these twelue moneths and a day, then breake yee not your oath. Cruelly faire damosell said sir Alisaunder, ye say soth, and then he killed her, and did to her pleasure as it pleased them both at times and leisure. So anon

and his Knights of the round Table.

shee sent to her vnkle, and bad him come and destroy that castle. For he would haue destroyed that castle long before that shee had not the damosell bene. When the earle vnderstood her letters, hee sent her word againe, that vpon such a day he would come and destroy that castle. So when the day came shee called Sir Alisaunder a posterne, where through hee should see into a garden, and there he should finde his armour and his horse. When the day came that was set, thither came the Earle of Wale with foure hundred knights, and set on fire all the parties of the Castle that or they ceased they lost not a stone standing. And all this while that the fire was in the castle, hee abode still the garden. And when the fire was done, hee let make a crie that he would keepe that peece of earth, there as the castle of la beale regard was twelue moneths and a day from all manner knights that would come. So it hapned that there was a Duke that Anserous and he was of the kinne of sir Lancelot. And this knight was a great pilgrim, for euery yere he would be at Jerusalem. And because he vsed all his life for to goe on pilgrimage, men called him Duke Anserous the pilgrim. And this Duke had a Daughter that hight Ali, which was a passing faire woman. And because of her father, she was called Alis la beale pilgrim. And anon as shee heard of this crie, she went to King Arthurs Court and there shee openly in hearing of many knights. What what knight may ouercome the knight that keepeth the peece of earth, will hee me and all my lands, when the knight of the round Table heard her say thus many were glad, for she was passing faire, and of great lands. Right so the letter in castles and houses as fast vpon her side, as sir Alisaunder did vpon his side. When she ordeined her pavilion streight by the peece of earth that Sir Alisaunder kept, so she was not so faine there, but she came a knight of King Arthurs Court, that hight Sagamore le desirous, and hee profered to iust with Sir Alisaunder, and they encountred, and sir Sagamore le desirous brouised his speare vpon Sir Alisaunder, but Sir Alisaunder smote him such that he auoided his sodle. And when la beale Ali saw that so well shee thought him a passing goodly knight on horseback.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

horse-backe. And when she lept out of her pavilion and tooke Sir Alisaunder by the bydle, and thus she said. Faire knight I require thee of the knight-hood, shew me thy visage. I dare right well shew my visage said Sir Alisaunder. And then he put of his helme. And when she saw his visage, then she said Oh sweete Jesu thee I must loue and none other. When she shew mee your visage said he.

CHAP. CXXV.

How Sir Alisaunder met with Alis la beale pilgrim, and how hee iusted with two Knights. And after of him and of Sir Mordred.

Then she unwimpled her visage. And when Sir Alisaunder saw her hee said. Here haue I found my loue and my Lady. Truly faire Lady said hee. I promise you to be your knight, and none other that beareth life. Now gentle knight said she tell mee your name. Faire Lady said hee my name is Sir Alisaunder Lorfelin. Now faire Damosell said hee, tell mee your name. My name is said shee, Alis la beale pilgrim. And when wee bee more at our hearts ease both ye and I shall tell each other of what blood we be come. So there was great loue betweene them. And as they thus talked together, there came a knight that hight sir Harfouise le berbusse, and he asked part of Sir Alisaunders speares. Then Sir Alisaunder encountred with him and at the first stroke Sir Alisaunder smote him ouer his horse croupe. And then there came another knight that hight Sir Hewgon, and there Sir Alisaunder smote him downe as hee did the other. When Sir Hewgon proffered to doe battaile on foote. And Sir Alisaunder ouercame him with three strokes, and there would haue slaine him, had he not yeelded him. So then sir Alisaunder made both those knightes to sweare to weare none armour in a twelue moneths and a day. Then Sir Alisaunder alighted downe from his horse and went for to rest him. When the Damosell that had holpen sir Alisaunder out of the Castle, in her play told dame Alis altogether, how he was a prisoner of the Castle

and his Knights of the round Table.

of the beale regard. And there shee told how she gate him out of the Castle. Sir said Alis la beale pilgrim, mee seemeth ye are beholding vnto this Damosell. That is truly said sir Alisaunder; and there la beale alis told him of what blood shee was come. Sir wit ye well said shee that I am of the blood of King Ban, that was father vnto that noble knight Sir Lancelot. Truly faire Lady said sir Alisaunder, my mother told mee that my father was brother to a king and I am nigh cousin to sir Tristram. This while came there three knights that one hight Vains, and that other hight Harnis de les marches, and the third hight Perin de la mountaine. And with one speare sir Alisaunder smote them downe all three and gaue them fals that they had no lust to fight on foote. So he made them to sweare to weare no armour in twelue moneths. So when they were departed Sir Alisaunder beheld his Lady Alis on horse-backe as shee stood in her pavilion, and then he was enamoured vpon her that hee wist not whether he was on horse-backe or on foote. Right so came the false knight Sir Mordred, and saw that Sir Alisaunder was allotted on his horse; and therewithall all tooke his horse by the bydle and rode him here and there, and had thought to haue led him out of the place to haue shamed him. When the Damosell that had holpen him out of the Castle saw how shamefully he was led, shee let arme her, and set a shield on her shoulder. And with shee mounted vpon his horse, and gate a naked sword from him. And she thrust vnto Sir Alisaunder with all her might, and shee gaue him such a buffet that he thought the fire was out of his eyes. And when Sir Alisaunder felt that shee looked about him, and drew out his sword. And when she saw that shee fled, and Sir Mordred also into the Castle, and the Damosell fled into her pavilion. So when sir Alisaunder vnderstood himselfe how the false knight would haue shamed him, had not the damosell bene, then was he pained with himselfe that Sir Mordred had so escaped his hand. But then Sir Alisaunder and dame Alis had good game of the Damosell, how sadly shee hit him vpon the helme. When Alisaunder iusted thus day by day, and on foote hee did many

The Historie of Prince Arthur

battailes with many knights of King Arthurs Court, and with many knights strangers. Therefore to tell all the batailles that he did it were ouer much to rehearse them all. For euery day within those twelue moneths he had to doe with one knight or other. And some day hee had to doe with three or foure. And there was neuer knight that put him to the worse. And at the twelue months end he departed with his Lady Alis la beake pilgrim. And the Damosell would neuer goe from him. And so they went into their Countrey of Benoy and liued there in great ioy.

CHAP. CXXVI.

How Sir Galahalt the haut Prince did doe cry a iusts in Surluse, and Queene Gueneuers Knights should iust against all them that would come.

But King Marke would not stint till that he had slaine him by treason. And by Alis he gate a child which hight Bellengerus le Beuse. And by fortune he came to the Court of King Arthur, and proued a passing good knight. And he reuenged his father death. For the false King Marke slew both Sir Tristram and Sir Alysander Lorefelin falsly and feloniously. And it happined so that Sir Alysander had neuer grace nor fortune for to come vnto King Arthurs Court. For if he had come vnto Sir Launcelot, all knights said that knew him that hee was one of the the strongest knights that was in King Arthurs dayes, and great sorrow was made for him.

So let wee of him passe, and turne wee vnto another tale. So it befell that Sir Galahalt the haute Prince was Lord of the Countrey of Surluse, wherefore came many good knights. And his Noble Prince was a passing good mark of armes, and euer hee held a noble fellowship together. And then he came vnto King Arthurs Court, and told him all his intent, how this was his will. How hee would let doe cry a iusts in the Countrey of Surluse. The which Countrey was within the Lands of King Arthur, and there hee asked leaue for to let cry a iusts. I will well giue you leaue said King Arthur. But

and his Knights of the round Table.

wilt you well that I may not bee there. Sir said Quene Gueneuer please it you of your goodnesse to giue me licence for to bee at that iusts. With a right good will, said King Arthur, so that Sir Galahalt the haute Prince take you vnto his gouernance. Sir said Sir Galahalt, I will as you will. Sir then said Quene Gueneuer. I will take such knights with mee as please me best. Doe as yee list said King Arthur: so anon the Quene commanded Sir Launcelot for to make him ready with such knights as he thought best. So in euery good towne and Castle of this land was made a cry. That in the Countrey of Surluse Sir Galahalt the Haute Prince should make iusts that should last eight dayes. And how the Haute Prince with the helpe of Quene Gueneuers knights should iust against all manner of men that would come. When the crye was knowne, Kings, Princes, Dukes, and Carles, Barons, and many noble knights made them ready to bee at that iusts. And at the first day of iusting there came in Sir Dinadan disguised, and did many great deeds of armes.

CHAP. CXXVII.

How that Sir Launcelot fought in the turnament. And how Sir Palomides did there deeds of armes for a damosell.

Then at the request of Quene Gueneuer and King Bagdemagus Sir Launcelot came into the range but hee was all disguised. And that was the cause that few folke knew him. And there met hee with Sir Ector de Maris his owne brother, and either brake their speares vpon other to their hands. And then either of them gate another great spere, and then Sir Launcelot smote downe Sir Ector de Maris his owne brother. That saw Sir Bleoberis, and hee smote Sir Launcelot such a buffet vpon the helme, that hee wist not well where hee was. Then Sir Launcelot was wroth, and smote Sir Bleoberis so sore vpon the helme, that his head bowed downe backward, and hee smote off another buffet that hee auoided his saddle. And so he rode by

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and thrust forth to the thickest. When the King of Northgalis saw sir Ector and sir Bleoberis lye on the ground, then hee was wonderous wroth, for they came on his part against them of Surlyse. So the King of Northgalis ranne to Sir Launcelot, & brake a speare vpon him all in peces. Therewith Sir Launcelot ouertooke the King of Northgalis and smote him such a buffet on the helme with his sword, that he made him to auoid his horse, and anon the King was horsed againe. So both King Bagdemagus and the King of Northgalis parties hurled together. And then began a strong meddle, but they of Northgalis were farre bigger. When Sir Launcelot saw his part goe to the worst, hee throng into the thickest presse with a sword in his hand, and there hee smote downe on the right hand and on the left hand and pulled downe knights, and rased off their helmes that all men had wonder that euer one knight should doe such deeds of armes. And when sir Meliagaunt that was Sonne vnto King Bagdemagus saw how Sir Launcelot fared, meruailed greatly. And when he vnderstood that it was hee, hee wist well that hee was disguised for his sake. When this Sir Meliagaunt prayed a knight to slay Sir Launcelots horse, either with a sword or with a speare. At that same time King Bagdemagus his ffather met with a knight that high Saufeise a good knight, vnto whom he said. Now faire Saufeise encounter with my Sonne sir Meliagaunt, and giue him large payment. For I would that he were well beaten of thy hands that hee might depart out of the field. And so then Sir Saufeise encountred with Sir Malagaunt, and either smote other downe. And then they fought on foote together and there Sir Saufeise had wonne Sir Meliagaunt, had not rescue come there. So then sir Galahalt the haute Prince blew to lodging, and euerie knight vnarmed him and went to the great feast. When in the meane while there came a Damofell vnto the Haute Prince, and complained that there was a knight the which hight Goneris, that withheld from her all her Lands. And that same knight was there present and cast his gloue to him, or to any that would fight in her name. So the Damofell tooke vp the gloue all heauily

and his Knights of the round Table.

for default of a Champion. When there came a varlet to her and said. Damofell will ye doe after mee. Full faine said the Damofell. When goe to such a knight that lyeth heere beside in an hermitage and that followeth the questing beast, and pray him to take the battaile vpon him, and anon I wot well hee will take it vpon him and graunt to you. So anon shee tooke her palfrey, and within a while shee found that knight, that was Sir Palomides. And when shee had requied him, hearmed him and rode with her and made her to go to the haute Prince to aske leaue for her knight to doe battle. I will well said the haute Prince: And then the knights were ready in the field to iust on horse-backe. And either gate a great speare in their hands, and met together so fiercely that their speares all to sheuered. And then they drew their swords, and Sir Palomides smote Sir Goneris downe to the earth, and then he rased off his helme and smote off his Head. When they went to supper, and the Damofell loued Sir Palomides as paramour. So then Sir Palomides disguised him in this manner. In his shield hee beare the questing beast, and in all his trappours. And when hee was thus ready he sent to the haute Prince to giue him leaue to iust with other knights, but hee was in doubt of Sir Launcelot. The haute Prince sent him word againe that hee should bee welcome, and that Sir Launcelot should not iust with him. When sir Galahalt the haute Prince let cry what knight someuer hee was that smote downe Sir Palomides should haue his Damofell to himselfe.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How Sir Galahalt and Palomides fought together, and of Sir Dinadan and Sir Galahalt.

Here beginneth the second day. And as sir Palomides came into the field Sir Galahalt the haute prince was at the rang end, and met with Sir Palomides, and hee with him with great speares. And then they came so hard together, that their speares all to sheuered. But Sir Galahalt smote him

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

so hard, that he beate him backward ouer his horse. But yet hee lost not his stirrups. When they drew their swords and lashed together many a sad stroke, that many worshipfull knights left their businesse to behold them. But at the last sir Galahad the haute prince smote a stroke of might vnto sir Palomides soze vpon the helme, but the helme was so hard that the sword nothing might bite but slipped, and smote of the head of the horse of sir Palomides. And when the haute prince saw the good knight fall vnto the earth, he was right soze ashamed of that stroke. And therewith hee alighted vnto from his horse, and prayed the good knight sir Palomides to take that horse of his gift, and to forgive him that dede. Sir said sir Palomides, I thanke you of your great goodnesse, for euer of a man of worship a knight shall neuer haue disworship. And so he mounted vpon that horse, and the haute prince had an other right sone. Now said the haute prince, I release vnto you that maiden, for ye haue wonne her. A sir said sir Palomides, the damosell and I are at your commandement. So they departed and sir Galahad did great dedes of armes. And right so there came sir Dinadan and encountred with sir Galahad the haut prince. And either came to other so hard with their speares, that their speares brake to their hands. But sir Dinadan had wend the haute prince had bene more weary then he was. And then hee smote many sad stroke at the haute prince. But when sir Dinadan saw that he might not get him to the earth, he said. O Lord I pray you leaue me and take an other. The haute prince knew not sir Dinadan, and left goodly for his faire words, and so they departed. But sone there came an other, and told the haute prince that it was sir Dinadan. Forsooth said the haute prince, therfore am I heauy that he is so escaped from me. For with his mocks and tapes now shall I neuer haue done with him. And then sir Galahad rode fast after him, and bad him abide sir Dinadan for king Archurs sake. Pay said sir Dinadan, so God me helpe we meete no moze together this day. When in that wrath the haute prince met with sir Meliagaunt, and he smote him in the throte, that and hee had not fallen, his necke had broken. And with the same speare he

and his Knights of the round Table.

smote vnto an other knight. When came in they of Northgates and many strangers, and were like to haue put them off forluse vnto the worst. For sir Galahad the haute prince had overmuch in hand. So there came in the good knight sir Simon the valiant, with fourty knights, and he beate them all backe. When Quene Gueneuer and sir Launcelot let blou vnto lodging: and euer knight vnarmed him and dressed him to the feast.

CHAP. CXIX.

How sir Archad appealed sir Palomides of treason, and how sir Palomides slew him.

When sir Palomides was vnarmed, he asked lodging for himselfe and the damosell. And anon sir Galahad the haute prince commanded them to lodging. And hee was not sone to his lodging, but there came a knight that high sir Archad he was brother to sir Gouveris that sir Palomides was in the damosells quarell. And this knight sir Archad called sir Palomides traitour and appelled him for the death of his brother. By the leaue of the haute prince said sir Palomides, I shall answer the. When the haute prince understood their quarrell, hee bad them goe to dinner and as sone as ye haue dined, loke that either knight be ready in the field. So when they had dined, they were both armed, and took their horses. And the Quene and the haute prince and sir Launcelot were set to behold them. And so they let run their horses, and there sir Palomides beate sir Archad on his speare ouer his horse taile. And than sir Palomides alighted and drew his sword. But sir Archad might not rise. And there sir Palomides raised of his helme and smote off his head. When the haute prince and Quene Gueneuer went to supper. Then king Artur sent away his sonne sir Meliagaunt, because that sir Launcelot should not meete with him, for hee hated sir Launcelot and that knew hee not.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP: CXXX.

Of the third day, and how Sir *Palomides* iusted with Sir *Launcelot*, and of other things.

Now beginneth the third day of iusting, and at that day King Bagdemagus made him ready, and there came against him King Marfili, that had in gift an Island of Sir Galahad the Haute Prince, and this Island had the name Domitaine. When it befell that King Bagdemagus and King Marfili of Domitaine met together with speares, and King Marfili had such a buffet that he fell ouer his horse croup. When there came in a knight of King Marfili to reueng his Lord, and King Bagdemagus smote him downe horse and man to the earth. So there came an Earle that hight sir Aroule and Sir Breuse and an hundred knights with them of Domitaine and the knig of Northwales was with them, and all these were against them of Surluse. And then there began a great battaile, and many knights were cast vnder the horses feete, and euer King Bagdemagus did best, for he began first, and euer hee held on sir Gaheris sir Gawaines Brother smote euer at the face of King Bagdemagus. And at the last King Bagdemagus hurled and smote downe Sir Gaheris horse and man to the earth. And then by aduenture sir Palomides the good knight met with sir Blamore de Ganis sir Bleoberis Brother, and there either of them smote other with their speares, that both horses and knights fell to the earth. But Sir Blamore had such a fall, that hee had almost broken his necke. For the blood brast out of his nose, mouth and eares. But at the last hee recovered by the helpe of good surgions. When there came in Duke Chalins of Claraunce, and in his gouernance came a knight which hight sir Elias le Noyre. And there encountred with him King Bagdemagus, and he smote sir Elias that hee made him to anke his saddle. So the Duke Chalins of Claraunce did there great deeds of armes. And of so late as he came in the third day there was no man that did so well as he except King Bagdemagus and sir Palomides,

and his Knights of the round Table:

so that the prize was giuen that day vnto King Bagdemagus. And then they blew vnto lodging, and vnarmed them and went to the feast. Right so there came sir Dinadan and mocked and taped at King Bagdemagus, that all knights laughed at him. For he was a great bourder, and well louing all good knights. And as they had dined there came a varlet bearing foure speares on his backe, and hee came to Sir Palomides and said. Sir, here is a knight here by hath sent you the choise of foure speares, and requireth you for your Ladies sake to take that one halfe of these speares, and iust with him in the field. Well said sir Palomides, I will not faile him. When Sir Galahad wist of this, hee bad sir Palomides make him ready. So Duke Gueneuer, the Haute Prince and Sir Launcelot were set vpon scaffolds to giue the iudgement of these two knights. When Sir Palomides and the strange knight came together that their speares brake vnto their hands, when therewith either of them tooke a great speare and all to shered them in peeces. And then either tooke a great speare. And then the knight smote downe sir Palomides horse and man to the earth. And as he would haue passed ouer him, the strange knights horse stumbled and fell downe vpon sir Palomides. When they drew their swords and lashed together dangerous fore a great while. When sir Galahad the Haute Prince and sir Launcelot said they saw neuer two knights fight better then they two did. But euer the strange knight wadded his strokes, and put sir Palomides backe. Where with the Haute Prince cried hoo. And then they went vnto lodging. And when they were vnarmed they knew it was the noble knight sir Lamoracke. When sir Launcelot knew that it was sir Lamoracke, hee made much of him. For aboue all earth hee loued him best except sir Tristram. When Duke Gueneuer commended him, and so did all other knights, and made much of him, except sir Gawaines brotheren. When Duke Gueneuer said vnto sir Launcelot. Sir, I require you that and ye iust any more, that yee iust with none of the blood of my Lord King Arthur. So hee promised he would not as at that time.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the fourth day, and of many great feates
of armes.

NOW beginneth the fourth day. Then came into the field the King with the hundred knights, and all they of Northgalis, and the Duke Chaleins of Claraunce, and King Marfill of Domitane. And there came Sir Sifere Sir Palomides Brother, and there hee told him tidings of his Mother, and how hee appealed an Castle before King Arthur, for he made warre on our Father and Mother, and there I slew him in plaine battaile. And so they went into the field, and the Damosell with them, and there came to encounter against them, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, and Sir Ector de Maris. And Sir Palomides encountred with Sir Bleoberis, and either smote other downe. And in the same wise did Sir Sifere and Sir Ector, and those two couples did battaile on foote. Then came in Sir Lamoracke, and he encountred with the King with the hundred knights and smote him quite ouer his horse taile. And in the same wise he serued the King of Northgalis. And also he smote downe King Marfill. And so ever hee flinted he smote downe with his speare and with his sword thirtie knights. So when Duke Chaleins saw Sir Lamoracke doe so great prowesse, hee woulde not meddle with him for shame. And then hee charged all his knights upon paine of death that none of them should touch him, for it were shame to all good knights and that knight were shamed. Then the two Kings gathered them together, and all they set upon Sir Lamoracke, and he failed them not, but raising heere and there smiling on the right hand and on the left hand, and drased off many helmes. And so the Haute Prince & Quene Gueneuer said they saw neuer no knight doe such dedes of armes on horse-backe. Alas said Sir Launcelot unto King Bagdemagus. I will arme me and helpe Sir Lamoracke. And I will ride with you said King Bagdemagus. And when they two were on horse-backe they came unto Sir Lamoracke, which stood among thirtie knights,

and his Knights of the round Table.

knights, and well was him that might reach him a buffet. And ever he smote ful mightily againe. Then came there into presse Sir Launcelot & he threw downe Sir Mador de la port, & with the truncheon of that speare he ouerthrew many good knights and there King Bagdemagus smote on the right hand and on the left hand meruailously well. And then the three Kings drew backe. And therewith the Haute Prince let blow unto lodging. And all the Heraulds gaue Sir Lamoracke the degree. And all this while fought Sir Palomides & Sir Bleoberis de ganis. And Sir Sifere and Sir Ector fought on foote. Pencer were there foure knights euener matched. And then were they departed and hap unto their lodging and barned them. And so they went to the great feast. But when Sir Lamoracke was come unto the Court Quene Gueneuer tooke him in both her armes and said. Sir well haue yee done this day. Then came the Haute Prince, and he made of him great ioy. And in likewise did Sir Dinadan, for hee wept for ioy. But the ioy that Sir Launcelot made of Sir Lamoracke no man there might tell. So they went unto their rest. And on the morrow after Sir Galahad the Haute Prince let blow unto the field.

CHAP. CXXXII.

Of the fifth day, and how Sir *Lamoracke*
behaued him.

HERE beginneth the fifth day. So it befell that Sir Palomides came in the meane season and proffered to iust there asking Arthur was in a Castle there beside Surluse, and there encountred with him a worshipfull Duke. And there Sir Palomides smote him ouer his horse croupe, so that he fell to the earth. And this Duke was vnkle unto King Arthur. Then Sir Elis his Sonne rode vnto Sir Palomides. And Sir Palomides serued Sir Elis in the same wise. So when Sir Ewaine saw this he was wonderous wroth, then hee tooke his horse and encountred with Sir Palomides. And Sir Palomides smote him so hard, that hee went vnto the earth horse and man. And for to make short tale, hee smote downe three brethren

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

theren of Sir Gawaines that is to saie, Sir Mordred, Sir Gaheris and Sir Agrawaine. And Iesu said King Arthur, this is a great despite of a Sarasin, that he shall thus smite downe my blood. And therewith King Arthur was wood wroth, and thought to haue made him repay to iust. What espied Sir Lamoracke that King Arthur and his blood were discomfited, and anon he was ready, and asked Sir Palomides if he would iust any more. Why should I not saie Sir Palomides. When they hurled together and brake their speares, and all to shewed them, that all the castle rang of their iusts. When either of them gat a great speare in their hands. And they came so fierly together, that Sir Palomides speare all to brake, and Sir Lamorackes did hold. Therewith Sir Palomides lost his stirrups, and lay upright on his horse backe. And then Sir Palomides returned againe and toke his damosell. And Sir Sais returned his way. So when hee was departed King Arthur came vnto Sir Lamoracke, and thanked him of his goodnesse, and praised him to tell him his name. Sir said Sir Lamoracke, wit you well I owe you my seruice, but as at this time I will not abide heere, for I see of mine enemies many about mee. Alas said King Arthur now I wot well it is said Sir Lamoracke, de galis. And Sir Lamoracke abide with mee, and by my crowne I shall neuer faile thee, and not so hard in Sir Gawaines head, nor none of his brethren to doe thee any wrong. Sir said Sir Lamoracke, wrong haue they done to me and to you both. That is truth said King Arthur, for they slew their owne mother and my sister, which me soze grieveth. It had bene much fairer and better that yee had wedded her, for yee are a Kings sonne as well as they. And Iesu said the noble knight Sir Lamoracke vnto King Arthur, her death shall I neuer forget. I promise you and make mine auow vnto God that I shall reuenge her death as soone as I see time convenient. And if it were not at the reuerence of your highnesse I should now haue bene reuenged vpon Sir Gawaine and his brethren. Truly said King Arthur I will make you to accord. Sir said Sir Lamoracke, as at this time I may not abide with you. For I must goe vnto the iusts, where as Sir Launcelot is and the haute prince Sir Galahad. When there was a damosell

which

and his Knights of the round Table.

which was daughter vnto King Ban And there was a knight called Sir Corfabrin which hight Sir Corfabrin and he loued the damosell, in no wise he would suffer her to be married. For euer this Sir Corfabrin noyed her, and named her that she was out of her mind. And thus he letted her that she might not be married.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

How Sir Palomides fought with Sir Corfabrin for a Lady, and how Sir Palomides slew Sir Corfabrin.

Then by fortune this damosell heard tell that Sir Palomides did much for damosels sakes: so she sent to him a pence, and prayed him to fight Sir Corfabrin for her loue, and he would haue her and her lands of her fathers that should fall vnto her. When the damosell sent to Sir Corfabrin and bad him goe vnto Sir Palomides, that was a wanton as well as he. And she gaue him warning that she had sent him her pence. And if he might overcome Sir Palomides, she would wed him. When Sir Corfabrin wist of her deeds, then was hee wood wroth and angry, & rode to surtise, where Sir Galahad the haute prince was, and there he found Sir Palomides ready, which had the pence: so there they waged battaile either with other afoze Sir Galahad. Well said the. When Haute prince this day must noble knights iust, they blew to iusts, & in came Sir Dinadan & met with Sir Gerin a good knight, and Sir Dinadan smote him downe over his horse croupe. And Sir Dinadan ouerthrew foure knights more. And there hee did great deeds of armes. And he had such a custome that he loued euery good knight, and euery good knight loued him againe. So then when the Haute prince saw Sir Dinadan do so well, he sent vnto Sir Launcelot, and bad him strike downe Sir Dinadan, and when yee haue done striking him afoze mee, and Queene Gueneuer. When Sir Launcelot did as hee was required. When Sir Lamoracke and hee smote downe many knights, and rased of helmes, and done all the knights afoze them. And so Sir Launcelot smote downe Sir Dinadan, and made his men to vnarme him, and so brought him to the Queene, and to the Haute prince. And they laughed at Sir Dinadan, so soze that they might not stand.

Well

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Well said Sir Dinadan, yet haue I no shame, for the old squire sir Launcelot smote me downe. So they went to dinner, and all the Court had a good sport at sir Dinadan. When dinner was done, they let blow to the field to behold sir Palomides and sir Corsabrin. Sir Palomides pight his pennell in the midst of the field, and then they hurled both together with their speares as it were thunder, and either smote other downe to the earth. And then they drew their swords and dressed their shields, and lashed together mightily as mightie knights, that well nigh there was no pæce of harness would hold them. For this Sir Corsabrin was a passing felonious knight. Sir Corsabrin said Sir Palomides, wilt thou release mee yonder Damofell and the pennell. When was Sir Corsabrin wroth out of measure, and gaue vnto Sir Palomides such a buffet that hee made him to kneele vpon one of his knees. When Sir Palomides arose vp lightly, and gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme that he fell downe to the earth, and therewith hee rased off his helme and said. Deeld thee, or else thou shalt die of my hands. Fie on thee said Sir Corsabrin, doe the worst that thou canst. When hee smote off his head. And therewithall came a stench out of his body when the soule departed, so that there might no body abide the saueur. So was the corpe had away and buried in a wood, because he was a pagin. When they blew vnto lodging, and Sir Palomides was vnarmed. When hee went vnto Quene Gueneuer, to the Haute Prince, and vnto sir Launcelot. Sir said the Haute Prince, here haue yee seene this day a great miracle by sir Corsabrin, what saueur there was when the soule departed from the body. Wherefore sir wee will require you for to take the holy baptism vpon you. And I promise you all knights will let the more by you, and say more worship by you. Sir said sir Palomides I will that yee all know that into this Land I am come to be Christened, and in my heart I am a Christian, and Christened will I be. But I haue made such a vow that I may not be Christened till that I haue done seauen true battailes for Iesus sake, and then will I be Christened. And I trust God will take mine intent for I

meane

and his Knights of the round Table.

meane truly. When sir Palomides prayed Quene Gueneuer and sir Galahad the Haute Prince to sup with him. And so did both sir Launcelot and sir Lomoracke and many other good knights. So on the morrow they heard their masse, and blew to the field. And then the knights made them ready.

CHAP. CXXXIIII.

Of the sixth day, and what then was done.

Here beginneth the sixth day. When came there sir Gaheris, and there encountred with him sir Osaill of Surluse, and sir Gaheris smote him ouer his horse croupe. And then either party encountred with other, there was many speares broken, and many knights cast from their horses downe to the ground. So there came sir Dornard and sir Aglouile, which were brethren vnto sir Lomoracke and they met with other two knights, and either smote other so hard that all foure knights and horses fell to the ground. When sir Lomoracke saw his two brethren downe, he was wroth out of measure, and then he tooke a great speare in his hand, and therewith he smote downe foure good knights, and then his speare brake. When he drew out his sword, and smote about him on the right hand and on the left hand, and rased his helme, and pulled downe many knights, that all men meruailed of such deedes of armes as hee did. For hee fared so that there were many knights that fled.

When hee horsed his brethren againe and said to them. Brethren yee ought to be ashamed to fall so from your horses what is a knight but when hee is on horse backe, I set not by a knight when hee is on foote. For all the battailes that are done on foote are but pelers battailes, for there should no knight fight on foote but if it were for treason, or else if hee were giuen thereto by force. Wherefore faire brethren sit fast vpon your horses, or else fight neuer more before me. During these wordes there came in Duke Chalcis of Clarence. And there encountred with him the Earle Vlbawes of Surluse, and either of them smote other downe. When the knights of both parties

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Parties horsed their Lords againe, for Sir Ector and Sir Bleoberis were on foote waiting vpon the Duke Chaleins of Clarence. And the King with the hundred knights was with the Carle Vibawes. With that came sir Gaheris, and lashed at the King with the hundred knights, and hee at him againe. Then came the Duke Chaleins and departed them. When they blew vnto lodging, and the knights vnarmed them, and drew them to their dinner. And in the midst of their dinner in came Sir Dinadan and hee began to rayle. When he beheld the Haute Prince that seemed to be wroth with some fault that he saw. For he had a custome that he loued no fish and because he was serued with fish the which he hated, therefore he was not merry. And when Sir Dinadan had well espied the Haute Prince, he saw where was a fish with a great head, and he serued the Haute Prince with that fish, and then he said vnto him, thus. Sir Galahad well may I liken you vnto a Wolfe, for he will neuer eate no fish but flesh. When the Haute Prince laughed at his words. Well said Sir Dinadan vnto sir Launcelot what Dinell doe you in this Countrey, for here may no meane knights winne no worship for thee. And I ensure thee that I shall neuer meete thee no more, nor also with thy great speare, for I may not sit in my saddle when that speare met with me. And if I be so happy, I shall be ware of that boystrous speare that thou bearest. Well said Sir Launcelot, make euer good watch. God forbid that euer wee meete, but if it be at a dish of meate. When laughed Quene Gueneuer and the Haute Prince, that they might not sit at the table. Thus they made great ioy till on the morrow and then they heard masse and blew to the field. And Quene Gueneuer and all the estates were set, & iudges armed cleane with their shields for to keepe the right.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXXXV.

Of the seauenth battaile, and how Sir Launcelot being disguised like a Maide smote downe Sir Dinadan.

Now beginneth the seauenth battaile. There came in the Duke Cambines, and there encountred with him Sir Launce, that was counted a good knight, and they met so hard that either bare other downe horse and man. Then came there the Carle of Lamball and holpe the Duke againe to horse. When came there Sir Ollyll of Surlusse, and hee smote the Carle Lamball downe from his horse. When they began to doe great deeds of armes, and many speares were broken, and many knights were cast to the earth. When the King of Northwailes and the Carle Vibawes smote together that all the iudges thought it was like mortall death. This meane while Quene Gueneuer and the Haute Prince and sir Launcelot made Sir Dinadan to make him ready to iust. I would ride into the field said sir Dinadan, but then one of you will meete there with me. Perdieu said the haute Prince, ye may behold and see how that we sit here as iudges with our felos. And alway mayst thou behold whether that wee sit here or not. So sir Dinadan departed and tooke his horse and met with many knights and did passing will. And as hee was departed sir Launcelot disguised himselfe, and put vpon his armour a maidens garment freshly attired. When Sir Launcelot made Sir Galahadin to lead him throughe the raungell. And all men had wonder what Damosell it was. And so as Sir Dinadan came into the raunge sir Launcelot, that was in the Damosels aray gate Sir Galahodins speare and ranne vnto sir Dinadan. And alway Sir Dinadan looked vp whereas sir Launcelot was. And than he saw one sit in the seed of Sir Launcelot all armed. But when sir Dinadan saw a manner of Damosell, hee dread perils that it was sir Launcelot disguised. But sir Launcelot came vpon him so fast, that he smote him ouer his horse croupe. And then with great scoynes they gate Sir Dinadan into the Forrest there

CG

beside,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

beside, and there they despoiled him unto his shirt, and put upon him a womans garment, and so they brought him in to the field. And then they blew unto lodging. And every knight went and unarmed him. Then was Sir Dinadan brought in among them all. And when Queene Gueneuer saw sir Dinadan so brought in among them all, then she laughed so heartily that she fell downe, and so did all that were there. Tell said sir Dinadan unto sir Launcelot, thou art so false that I can neuer beware of thee. Then by the assent of them all they gaue sir Launcelot the prize. The next was sir Lamoracke de Galis. The third was sir Palomides. The fourth was King Bagdemagus. So these foure noble knights had the prize. And there was great ioy and great nobley in all the Court. And on the morrow Queene Gueneuer and sir Launcelot departed vnto King Arthur. But in no wise sir Lamoracke would not goe with them. I shall undertake said sir Launcelot that and yee will goe with vs vnto King Arthur shall charge Sir Gawaine and his brethren neuer to doe you hurt. As for that said sir Lamoracke, I will not trust sir Gawaine nor none of his brethren. And wit you well sir Launcelot, and it were not for my Lord King Arthurs sake, I would match sir Gawaine and all his brethren well enough. But to say that I shall trust them, that shall I neuer. And therefore I pray you recommend me vnto my Lord King Arthur and vnto all my Lords of the round Table. And in what place soener I come I shall doe your seruice vnto my power. And sir it is but late that I was reuenged when my Lord King Arthurs kinne were put vnto the worst by Sir Palomides. When Sir Lamoracke departed from sir Launcelot, and either wept at their departing.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

How by treason Sir *Tristram* was brought vnto a tournament for to haue bene slaine, and how he was put in prison.

NOW turne wee from this matter and speake we of Sir *Tristram*, of whom this booke is principall of. And leaue we the King and the Queene sir Launcelot and sir Lamoracke, And

and his Knights of the round Table.

And now here beginneth the treason of King Marke that hath ordained against Sir *Tristram*. There was cried by the coasts of *Cornelwaile* a great tournament and iusts. And all was done by sir Galahad the Haute Prince and King Bagdemagus, to the entent to slay Sir Launcelot, or else utterly destroy him and shame him, because Sir Launcelot had alway the higher degree. Therefore this Prince and the King made these iusts against Sir Launcelot. And thus their counsaile was discovered vnto King Marke, whereof he was full glad. And then King Marke bethought him that he would haue Sir *Tristram* vnto that tournament disguised, that no man should know him. To that entent that the Haute Prince should wend that Sir *Tristram* were Sir Launcelot. So at these iusts there came in Sir *Tristram*, and at that time Sir Launcelot was not there. But when they saw a knight disguised doe such deeds of armes, they weend that it had bene Sir Launcelot. And in especiall King Marke said it was Sir Launcelot plainly. Then there set vpon him both Bagdemagus and the Haute Prince, and their knights, that it was wonder that euer Sir *Tristram* might endure that paine. Notwithstanding for all the paine that Sir *Tristram* had he wanne the degree at that tournament and there hee hurt and bruised many knights, and they also hurt him and bruised his wounds sore. So when the iusts was all done, they knew well that it was Sir *Tristram* de Lyones. And all that were on King Markes parte were glad that Sir *Tristram* was so hurt. And the other were sorie of his hurt. For Sir *Tristram* was nothing so sore behated as was Sir Launcelot in the Realme of England. Then came King Marke vnto Sir *Tristram* and said. Sir nephew I am full sorie of your hurts. God thanke you my Lord said Sir *Tristram*. And then King Marke made Sir *Tristram* for to bee put in an horse litter, in signe of great loue, and said. Faire nephew I shall bee your lech my selfe. And so hee rode forth with Sir *Tristram*, and brought him to a Castle by day light. And then King Marke made Sir *Tristram* for to eate, and then after he gaue him a drinke, the which as soone as hee had drunke it, hee fell on sleepe.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

And when it was night, he made him soz to be caried into an other Castle, and there he put him in a strong prison, and there he ordeined a man and a woman soz to giue him his meate and his drinke. So there he was a great while. Then was Sir Tristram missed, and no creature wist where he was become. When the Quene la beale Isoud heard how Sir Tristram was missed, pruely she sent unto Sir Sadocke, and prayed him to espie where Sir Tristram was. When Sir Sadocke wist that Sir Tristram was missed, anon hee had knowledge that he was put in prison by King Marke and the traitours of Pagonus. Then Sir Sadocke and two of his cosins laid them in an embusment fast by the Castle of Tintagill in armes. And by fortune there came riding by them King Marke and soure of his nephewes, and a certaine of the traitours of Pagonus. When Sir Sadocke espied them, he brake out of the bushment and set vpon them. And when King Marke espied Sir Sadocke he fled as fast as he might. And Sir Sadocke slew all the soure nephewes vnto King Marke. But these traitours of Pagonus slew one of Sir Sadocks cosins, and gaue another a great wound in the necke. But Sir Sadocke smote the other to death. When Sir Sadocke rode on his way vnto a Castle that was called Lyones. And there he espied of the treason and felony of King Marke. So they of the Castle rode with Sir Sadocke till they came vnto a Castle that hight Albzay. And there in the Towne they found Sir Dinas the Seneschall, that was a good knight. But when Sir Sadocke had told Sir Dinas of all the treason of King Marke, hee desired such a King, and said hee would giue vp his Lands that hee held of him. And when hee had said these words, all manner knights said as Sir Dinas. When by his aduise and by Sir Sadockes hee let russe all the Towres and Castles within the Countrey of Lyones, and assembled all the people that they might make.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

How King Marke let doe counterfeit letters from the Pope, and how Sir Percinalls deliuered Sir Tristram out of prison.

Returne we vnto King Marke, that when he was escaped from Sir Sadocke he rode vnto the Castle of Tintagill, and there he made great cryes and noyse, and cried vnto haruells all that were able to beare armes. When they sought and found where were dead soure cosins of King Markes and the traitours of Pagonus. When the King let bury them within a Chappell. When the King let cry in all the Countrey that he would of him to goe vnto armes, soz he understood vnto warre he must needs. When King Marke heard and understood how Sir Sadocke and Sir Dinas were risen in the Countrey of Lyones. He remembred him of wiles and treason. Doe thus he did. He let doe make and counterfeit letters from the Pope and made a strange Clarke to beare them vnto King Marke. The which letters specified that King Marke should make him ready vpon paine of cursing with his host soz to come to the Pope to helpe to goe to Jerusalem, soz to make warre vpon the Saracins. When this Clarke was come by the meanes of King Marke. Anon forthwith King Marke bad him to say thus. What and hee would goe warre vpon the Saracins, he should be had out of prison, and to haue all his power. When Sir Tristram understood this letter, then he said thus to the Clarke. Ah King Marke, euer hast thou bene a traitour, and euer wilt be. But Clarke said Sir Tristram, say thou thus vnto King Marke. Sithen the apostle Pope hath sent soz him, bid him to goe thither himselfe. For tell him like a traitour King as hee is, that I will not goe at his command get I out of my prison as I may. For I see I am well rewarded soz my true service. Then the Clarke returned vnto King Marke, and told him of the answer of Sir Tristram. Well said King Marke, yet shall hee be begiled. So hee went into his Chamber, and counterfeited others letters. And the letters specified that the Pope desired Sir

GG 3

Tristram

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Tristram to come himselfe to make warre vpon the sarasins. When the cleрке was come againe vnto Sir Tristram and tooke him these letters. When Sir Tristram beheld these letters, and anon he espied that they were of King Markes counterfeiting. Ah said Sir Tristram, false hast thou beene euer King Marke, and so wilt thou end. When the cleрке departed from Sir Tristram and came to King Marke againe. By then there were come foure wounded knights with in the castle of Wintagill and one of them his necke was nigh broken in twaine, another had his arme striken away, the thirde was bozned through with a speare, and the fourth had his teeth striken in twaine. And when they came afoze King Marke, they cried and said. King why sleepest thou not, for al this countrey is risen clereley against thee. When was King Marke wroth out of measure. And in the meane while there came into that countrey sir Perciuale de Galis to seeke Sir Tristram. And when he heard say that Sir Tristram was in prison, Sir Perciuale made cleerely the deliuerance of Sir Tristram by his knightly meanes. And when he was so deliuered, hee made great ioye of Sir Perciuale, and so did each of other. Sir Tristram said vnto Sir Perciuale, and yee will abide in these marches, I will ride with you. Nay said Sir Perciuale, in this countrey may I not tary for I must needs into Wales. So Sir Perciuale departed from Sir Tristram, and rode straight to King Marke, and told him how he had deliuered Sir Tristram. And also hee told the King how hee had done himselfe great shame, for to put Sir Tristram in prison, for hee is now the knight of most renowne in all the world liuing. And wit yee well that the most noble knights of the world loue Sir Tristram, and if that he will make warre vpon yee, yee may not abide it. That is truth said King Marke, but I may not loue Sir Tristram because hee loueth my Queene and my wife la beale Isond. Ah hee for shame said Sir Perciuale, say yee neuer no more so. Are yee not vnlie vnto Sir Tristram and, hee your nephew. Yee should neuer thinke that so noble a knight as Sir Tristram is, that hee would do himselfe so great a vilanie for to helde his vnkles wife, how hee it said Sir Perciuale, he may loue your Queene suncleste, because that shee is called one of the fairest Ladies

and his Knights of the round Table.

Ladies of the world. And then Sir Perciuale departed from King Marke. And so when hee was departed King Marke hee thought him of moze treason. Notwithstanding that King Marke granted Sir Perciuale neuer by no manner of meanes to hurt Sir Tristram. And then anon King Marke sent vnto Sir Dinas the Seneschall that hee should put downe all the people that he had raised, for hee sent him an oath that hee would goe himselfe vnto the Pope of Rome for to ware vpon the sarasins. And this is a farzer warre than thus to raise the people against your King. When Sir Dinas the Seneschall vnderstood that King Marke would go vpon the sarasins, then he anon in all the hait hee might put downe all this people. And when the people were departed, euery man to his home, then King Marke espied where was Sir Tristram with la beale Isond. And there by treason King Marke let take him and put him in prison contrary to his promise that hee made vnto Sir Perciuale, when la beale Isond vnderstood that Sir Tristram was in prison shee made as great sorrow as euer made Lady or gentlewoman. When Sir Tristram sent a letter vnto la beale Isond, and prayed her to be his good Lady. And if it pleased her to make a vessel ready for her and him he would goe with her to the realme of Logris, that is in this land, when la beale Isond vnderstood Sir Tristrams letters and his intent, she sent him an other and bad him be of good comfort, for she would do make the vessel ready and all things to that purpose. When la beale Isond sent vnto Sir Dinas and vnto Sir Sadocke, and prayed them in any wise to take King Marke and put him in prison vnto the time that she and Sir Tristram were departed vnto the realme of Logris. When Sir Dinas the Seneschall vnderstood the treason of King Marke, he promised her againe and sent to her word that King Marke should be put in prison. And as they had deuised, so it was done. And then Sir Tristram was deliuered out of prison and anon in all the hait la beale Isond and Sir Tristram went and toke their counsell with those that they would haue with them when they departed.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

How that Sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* came into England, and how that Sir *Launcelot*, brought them vnto Ioyous gard.

Then *la beale Isond* and Sir *Tristram* tooke their vessel and came by water into this countrey. And so they were not in this countrey foure dayes vnt there came a crie of iusts and turnement, which king *Arthur* let make. When Sir *Tristram* heard tell of that turneyment, hee disguised himselfe and *la beale Isond* and rode vnto that turneyment. And when he came there, hee saw many knights iust and turney. And so Sir *Tristram* dressed him vnto the raine. And for to make short conclusion he ouer threwe fourtene knights of the round table. And when sir *Launcelot* saw how all these knights were ouerthrowne, sir *Launcelot* dressed him vnto Sir *Tristram*. What saw *la beale Isond* how that Sir *Launcelot* was come into the field. When *la beale Isond* sent vnto sir *Launcelot* a ring, and had him wit that it was sir *Tristram de Lioness*. Then when sir *Launcelot* vnderstood that Sir *Tristram* was there, hee was right glad, and would not iust. When Sir *Launcelot* espied whether that sir *Tristram* rode, and then hee rode after him. And then either made of other right great ioy. And so sir *Launcelot* brought sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond* vnto Ioyous gard, the which was his owne castle that hee had wonne with his owne hands. And there sir *Launcelot* put that castle into their gouernance as their owne. And wit you well that castle was right well garnished and furnished for a king and a Quene there to haue sojourned. And Sir *Launcelot* charged all his people to honour them and loue them as they would doe him selfe. So Sir *Launcelot* departed and rode to King *Arthur*. And then he told quene *Gueneuer* how hee that iusted so well at the last turneyment was Sir *Tristram*. And there hee told her how hee had with him *la beale Isond* maugre king *Marke*. And so Quene *Gueneuer* told all this vnto her Lord King *Arthur*. When King *Arthur* wit that Sir *Tristram* was escaped and come from King *Marke*, and had brought *la beale Isond* with him

and his Knights of the round Table.

him then was he passing glad. So because of Sir *Tristram* king *Arthur* let make a crie, that on Day day should be a turneyment before, the castle of *Lonazep*. And that castle was fast by Ioyous gard. And thus king *Arthur* deuised, that all the knights this land, of cornewaile, and of north wales, should iust against all these countrys. Ireland, Scotland, and the remnant of wales, and the countrey of *Goze of furluse*, and of *Lilinoise*, and they of *Northumberland*, and all they that held lands of King *Arthur* on this halfe the sea. When this crie was made, many knights were glad and many were not glad. Sir said sir *Launcelot* vnto king *Arthur*, by this crie which ye haue made, ye will put vnto that be about you in great leopordy for there be many knights that haue great enuie at vs therefore when we shall meete at that day of iusts, there will be hard shift among vs. As for that said king *Arthur* I care not there shall we proue who shall be best of his lands. So when sir *Launcelot* vnderstood wherefore king *Arthur* made this iusting, then he made such puruaunce that *la beale Isond* should behold the iusts in a secret place that was honest for her estate.

Now turne we vnto Sir *Tristram* and *la beale Isond*, how they made great ioy daily together with all manner of mirthes that they could deuise. And euery day Sir *Tristram* would ride on hunting. For Sir *Tristram* was that time called the best chacer of the world, and the noblest blower of an horne of all manner of measures. For as booke report of Sir *Tristram* came all the good termes of venery, and of hunting, and the fles and measures of blowing of an horne. And of him we had first all the termes of halowing, and which were beasts of chase, and beasts of venery, and which were vermines, and all the blasts that long to all manner of games. First to the coupling, to the seeking, to the rechace, to the flight, to the death, and to strak. And many other blasts, and termes, that all manner of gentlemen haue cause to the worlds end to praise Sir *Tristram* and to pray for his soule.

and
the
the
the

Wh

CHAP.

How by the counsell of la beale Ifond Sir Tristram rode armed
and how hee met with Sir Palomides.

So upon a day la beale Ifond said vnto Sir Tristram, I mer-
Suaile me greaitle said she, that ye remember not your selfe,
how that ye bee here in a strange countrey and here be many
perilous knights, and also well ye wote that King Marke is
full of treason, and that ye will ride thus for to chace and hunt
unarmed, ye might be destroyed. My faire Lady and my loue
I crie you mercy, I will no more doe so. So then Sir Tristram
rode daily on hutting armed, and his men bearing his shield
and his speare. So on a day a little before the moneth of May
Sir Tristram chased an hart passing egerly, and so the hart pas-
sed by a faire well. And then Sir Tristram alighted, and put
off his helme for to drinke of that well. Right so he heard and
saw the queeting beast come vnto the well. So when Sir Tri-
stram espied that beast, he put his helme vpon his head, for he
dremed he should here of Palomides. For that beast was in the
quest right so Sir Tristram saw where came a knight all ar-
med vpon a noble courser. And he saluted him, and they spake
of many things. And this knights name was Sir Breuse saunce
pittie. And right so forth with there came to them the good
knight Sir Palomides and elther saluted other and spake faire
that one to that other. Faire knights said Sir Breuse saunce pi-
tie, I can tell you things what is that said those knights.
Sirs wit you well said he that King Marke is put in prison by
his owne knights, and all was for love of Sir Tristram, because
King Marke had put Sir Tristram twice in prison. And on Sir
Perceual deliuered the noble knight Sir Tristram out of prison.
And at the last time the Queene la beale Ifond deliuered him,
and went cleerely away with him in this realme. And all this
while King Marke the false traitour was in prison. As this truth
said Sir Palomides, then hastily shall wee here of Sir Tristram.
And as for to say that I loue la beale Ifond paramours I dare
make good that I doe, and that she hath my seruice aboute all
other

other Ladies and shall haue the terme of my life. And right
as they stood talking, they saw before them where came
a knight all armed vpon a great horse, and one of his men
bore his shield and the other his speares. And anon as that
knight espied them, hee gate his shield and a speare, and
dressed him to iust. Faire fellows said Sir Tristram yonder
is a knight that will iust with vs, let see which of vs shall
encounter with him, for I see well he is of King Arthurs
court. It shall not be long or hee bee met withall said Sir
Palomides, for I found neuer no knight in my quest of this
glassing beast, but and he would iust I neuer refused him. As
well may I said Sir Breuse saunce pittie follow that beast as
ye. When shall ye doe battaile with me said Sir Palomides.
So Sir Palomides dressed him vnto the other knight Sir
Bleoberis that was a full noble knight and nigh kinne vnto
Sir Launcelot. And so they met so hard that Sir Palomides fell
in the earth horse and man. When Sir Bleoberis cried a loude
and said Make the ready thou false traitour knight Sir
Breuse saunce pittie, for wit thou well certainly I will haue
to doe with thee to the uttermost, for all the noble knights
and ladies which thou hast falsly betrayed. When this false
knight and traitour Sir Breuse saunce pittie heard him say so,
he took his horse by the bridle and fled his way as fast as
his horse might runne. For hee was soze afraid of him.
When Sir Bleoberis saw him flee he followed fast after him
through thicke and thunn. And by fortune as Sir Breuse
saunce pittie fled thus, hee sat before him three knights of
the round Table. Of the which the one knight Sir Ector de
Maris, that other knight Sir Perceual de Galis, and that other
knight Sir Harry lescilake, a good knight and a hardy.
And as for Sir Perceual de Galis hee was called that time
one of the best knights of the world, and the best assured.
When Sir Breuse saw those three knights, hee rode straight
vnto them, and cried aloud vnto them, and prayed them of
themselves, what need haue ye said Sir Ector. Ah faire knights
said Sir Breuse, heere followeth mee the most traitour knight
and most coward, and most of vilany, his name is Sir Breuse
saunce

The Historie of Prince Arthur

saunce pittie. And if that hee may get mee, he will slay mee without any mercy or pittie. Abide heere with vs said Sir Percival, and we shall warrant you. When were they ware of Sir Bleoberis that came riding in all the hast that he might. When Sir Ector put himselfe forth soe to iust afore them all. And when Sir Bleoberis saw that they were foure knights, and hee but himselfe alone, hee stood in a doubt whether he would turne or hold his way. When he said to himselfe, I am a knight of the round Table, and rather then I should shame mine Word and my blood, I will hold my way whatsoeuer fall thereof. And so then Sir Ector dressed his speare and smote either other passing soe. But Sir Ector fell to the earth. That Sir Percival, and hee dressed his horse toward him all that ever he might do. But Sir Percival had such a stroke, that both horse and man fell to the earth. When Sir Harry saw that they were both on the earth he said unto himselfe, that Sir Breuse saunce pittie was neuer of such prowesse. So Sir Harry dressed his horse, and they met together so strongly, that both horses and knights fell to the earth. But Sir Bleoberis horse began to recouer againe. That said Sir Breuse and hee came hurking and smote him ouer and ouer, and would haue slaine him as hee lay on the ground. When Sir Harrys file like arose lightly, and tooke the bridell of Sir Breuse horse and said. Fie for shame, strike neuer a knight when he is on the ground. For this knight may be called no shamefull knight of his deeds and acts. For yet as men may see there as he lyeth upon the ground, hee hath done worchipfull, and put vnto the worlde passing good knights. Wherefore will I not let said Sir Breuse saunce pittie. Thou shalt not chuse said Sir Harry as at this time. And when Sir Breuse saunce pittie saw that he might not chuse, nor haue his unhappy will, he spake faire. And then Sir Harry let him goe. And then Sir Harry made his horse to runne ouer Sir Bleoberis and rashed him vnto the earth as though he would haue slaine him. And when Sir Harry saw him doe so villaniously he cried. Traitor knight leaue off for shame of thy selfe. And as Sir Harry would haue taken his horse soe to fight with Sir Breuse, then Sir Breuse ranne vpon him

and his Knights of the round Table.

as hee was halfe vpon his horse, and smote him downe both horse and man to the earth, and had neere slaine Sir Harry the good knight. That said Sir Percival, and then he cried. Traitor knight what dost thou. And when Sir Percival was vpon his horse, Sir Breuse tooke his horse and fled all that he might. And Sir Percival and Sir Harry followed after him fast. But euer the longer they chased the further they were behind. When they turned againe and came to Sir Ector de maris and Sir Bleoberis. Ah faire knight said Sir Bleoberis, why haue yee succoured this false knight and traitour. Why said Sir Harry, what knight is hee, for well knowe he is a false knight said Sir Harry and a coward and traitorous knight. Sir said Sir Bleoberis, he is of all cowards the most coward, and a deuourer of Ladies, and a destroyer of good knights, and specially of King Archers. What is your name said Sir Ector. My name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. Alas said Sir Ector, forgive it mee, for I am Sir Ector de maris. When Sir Percival and Sir Harry made great ioy that they had met with Sir Bleoberis, but all they were heauy that Sir Breuse was escaped them, whereof they made great dole and sorrow.

CHAP. CXI.

Of Sir Palomides, and how hee met with Bleoberis and with Sir Ector and of Sir Percival.

Right so as they stood thus, there came Sir Palomides, and when hee saw the shield of Sir Bleoberis lye vpon the earth. When said Sir Palomides, he that bloweth that shield, let him dreffe him to mee, for hee smote me downe heere fast by a fountaine, and therefore I will fight with him on foote. I am all ready said Sir Bleoberis here to answer thee, for wit thou well Sir knight it was I, and my name is Sir Bleoberis de Ganis. Well art thou met said Sir Palomides. I wit thou well my name is Sir Palomides the Sarasin. And either of them hated the other to the death. Sir Palomides said Sir Ector, wit thou well there is neither thou nor no knight that beareth life that smyth any of our blood, but he shall die for it. Wherefore and then

list to fight goe seeke Sir Launcelot, or Sir Tristram and there shall ye find your matches, with them haue I met said Sir Palomides, but I had neuer no worship of them, was there neuer no manner knight, said Sir Ector but they that euer matched with you. Yee said Sir Palomides there was the third a good knight as any of them, and of his age hee was the best that euer I found. For and hee might haue liued till that he had bene an hardier man, there liueth no knight now such, and his name was Sir Lamoracke de Galis. And as he had iusted at a tournament there hee ouerthrew me and thirtie knights mee, and there hee wanne the degree. And at his departing there met him Sir Gawaine and his bretheren, and with great paine they slew him feloniously, vnto all good knights great damage. And when Sir Percival heard that his brother Sir Lamoracke was dead, hee sell ouer his horse mane in a sorrow, and there hee made the most greatest dole that euer made a knight. And when Sir Percival arose vp, hee said. Alas my good and noble brother Sir Lamoracke, now shall wee neuer meete together, I trow in all the world a man might not find such a knight as hee was of his age. And it is too much to suffer the death of our father King Pellinore, and now the death of our good brother Sir Lamoracke. When in the meane while there came a harlet from King Arthurs Court, and told them of the great tournament that should be at Lonazap, and how there Lands of Cornelwaile and Northwailes should be against all them that should come.

CHAP. CXLI.

How Sir Tristram met with Sir Dinadan, and of their deuises and what he said vnto Sir Gawaines bretheren.

Now turne we vnto Sir Tristram that as hee rode on hunting hee met with Sir Dinadan that was come into that Countrey for to seeke Sir Tristram. When Sir Dinadan told Sir Tristram his name, but Sir Tristram would not tell his name, wherefore Sir Dinadan was wroth, for such a foolish knight as ye are said Sir Dinadan, I saw but late to day lying by

a well, and hee faced as hee had kept there hee say like a foolgerning man would not speake, and his shield lay by him, and said I was hee was a knaue. Ah said Sir said Sir Tristram are ye not a louer? spake hee vpon that craft, said Sir Dinadan. What is euill said quoth Sir Tristram, for a knight may neuer bee of pro velle, but if hee bee a louer. It is well said Sir Dinadan, now tell mee your name sith ye be a knaue, said Sir Tristram I shall loe battaile with you. And for that said Sir Tristram it is no reason to fight with me but I tell you my name shall ye not know as at this time. Hee said Sir Dinadan, art thou a knight and darest not tell me thy name, therefore I will fight with thee. As for that said Sir Tristram, I will be aduised, for I will not fight but if ye list, and if I doe battaile said Sir Tristram, ye are not able for to withstand mee. Hee on the other side said Sir Dinadan, and thus as they still hounded they saw a knight come riding against them. Lo said Sir Tristram see where cometh a knight riding that will iust with you. Anon as Sir Dinadan beheld him, he said. It is the same dosing knight that I saw by the well neither sleeping nor waking. Well said Sir Tristram, I know that knight full well with the golden shield of asure, he is the kings sonne of Northumberland, whose name is Sir Elinogris, and he is as great a louer as I know, and hee loueth the kings Daughter of Wales a fine lady. And now I suppose said Sir Tristram, and ye reuise him hee will iust with you. And then shall ye proue whether a louer be a better knight or ye, that will not loue anybody. Well said Sir Dinadan, now shall thou see what I can doe. And therewith Sir Dinadan spake on his and said. My knight make thee ready to iust with me, for it is the custom of all arrant knights one for to iust with another. Hee said Sir Elinogris is that the rule of you arrant knights to make a knight to iust whether he will or not. When Sir Dinadan, as for that make thee ready, for heere is for ye. And therewith they spurred their horses, and met together so hard that Sir Elinogris smote so vpon Sir Dinadan, that Sir Tristram rode to Sir Dinadan and said to him. You

is it with you now. He thinketh that the lover hath right well sped, He by on the colward said Sir Dinadan, and if thou be as my good knight now reuenge my shame. Day said Sir Tristram, I will not iust as at this time, but take your horse and let vs goe from hence. God defend me said Sir Dinadan from thy fellowship, for I neuer sped well sith I met with thee. And so they departed. Well said Sir Tristram peradventure I could tell you tidings of Sir Tristram, God defend me said Sir Dinadan from thy fellowship. For Sir Tristram were much the worse and hee were in thy company. And then they departed. Sir said Sir Tristram, yet it may happen that I shall meete with you in other places. And so Sir Tristram rode vnto Joyous gard, and there heard in that Towne great noise and crie, what meaneth these noise said Sir Tristram. Sir said they heere is a knight of this Castle which hath bene long among vs, and right now he is slaine with two knights, and for none other cause but that our knight said that Sir Lancelot was a better knight then was Sir Gawaine. That was but simple a cause said Sir Tristram, to slay a good knight because he said well by his Master. That is but a little remedy vnto be said the men of the Towne. For if Sir Lancelot had bene heere, soone we should haue bene reuenged vpon those false knights, when Sir Tristram heard them say so, incontinent he sent for his shield and for his speare, and lightly within a little while he had overtaken them, hee had them turne and amend that they had misdone, what amends wouldst thou haue said that one knight. And therewith they tooke their course, and either met other so hard, that Sir Tristram smote downe that knight ouer his horse croupe. When the other knight dressed him vnto Sir Tristram. And in the same wise as he serued the first knight, so he serued him. And then they gate them vpon their feete as well as they might, and dressed their shields and their swords to doe their battaile vnto the uttermost. Knights said Sir Tristram, ye shall tell mee of whence ye are and what bee your names. For such men ye might bee, ye should hard escape my hands, and ye might bee such men of such a Countrey that for all your euill dedes ye should passe quite,

quite, wilt thou well Sir knight said they, wee feare vs not to tell thee our names, for my name is Sir Agrauaine le desirous, my name is Sir Gaheris, brother vnto the good knight Sir Gawaine. And we be nephewes vnto the noble King Archur, well said Sir Tristram for King Archurs sake I shall let you passe at this time. But it is great shame said Sir Tristram, that Sir Gawaine and ye that be coine of a great blood, that ye are brethren are so named as ye bee, for ye be called the greatest destroyers and murderers of good knights that bee in all this Realme. For it is but late agone (as I heard say) that Sir Gawaine and ye slew among you a better knight than euer ye were, which was the noble knight Sir Lancelot de Galis. And it had pleased God said Sir Tristram, should I had bene by Sir Lancelot at his death. When heeldest thou haue gone the same way as hee did said Sir Gaheris. Faire knights said Sir Tristram, then had it bene as to haue been many more knights then ye are. And therewith Sir Tristram departed from them and rode toward Joyous gard. And so when he was departed they tooke their horses and said the one to the other. Wee will ouertake him and be reuenged vpon him in the despite of Sir Lancelot.

CHAP. CLXII.

How Sir Tristram smote downe Sir Agrauaine and Sir Gaheris and how Sir Dinadan was sent for the Queene la beale Isoud.

And when they had overtaken Sir Tristram, and Sir Agrauaine had him turne traitour knight. That is euill said both Sir Tristram. And he therewith drew out his sword, and smote Sir Agrauaine such a mightie buffet vpon the helme that hee tumbled downe from his horse in a towne and had a grienous wound. And then Sir Tristram turned him vnto Sir Gaheris, and he smote his sword and his helme together with such a might that Sir Gaheris fell out of his saddle. And so Sir Tristram rode straight vnto Joyous gard, and there he alighted and vnto him. So Sir Tristram told la beale Isoud of all his adventures as ye haue heard before. And when she heard him tell

till of Sir Dinadan, shee said. Is not that hee that made the song by King Marke. What same, is he said Sir Tristram, for hee is all men the best boubder and taper and is also a good knight of his hands and the best fellow that I know, and all good knights loue his fellowship. Alas said she why brought yee not him with you. Haue yee no care said Sir Tristram, for he rideth for to seeke mee in this Countrey, and therefore hee will not away till that he hath met with mee. And there Sir Tristram told la beale Isond how Sir Dinadan held against all louers. And euen so there came in a barlet and told Sir Tristram, how there was come in an aruant knight into the Towne with such colours vpon his shield that is Sir Dinadan said Sir Tristram wit yee what yee shall doe said Sir Tristram send yee for him my Lady Isond and I will not bee seene, and yee shall heare the meriest knight that euer yee spake withall, and the maddest talker, and I pray you heartily that yee make him good cheere: then anon la beale Isond sent into the Towne and prayed Sir Dinadan that hee would come into the Castle and rest him with his Lady. With a good will said Sir Dinadan. And so he mounted vpon his horse and rode into the Castle, and there hee alighted and was vnarmed and brought into the Castle. Anon la beale Isond came vnto him, and either saluted other. When she asked him of whence he was. Madame said Sir Dinadan, I am of King Archurs Court, and knight of the round Table, and my name is Sir Dinadan. What doe yee in this Countrey said la beale Isond. Madame said hee, I seeke the noble knight Sir Tristram, for it was told me that he was in this countrey. It may well bee, said la beale Isond, but I am not ware of him. Madame said Sir Dinadan, I meruaile of Sir Tristram and mee other louers, what ayleth them to be so mad and so allotted vpon yowen. Why said la beale Isond, are yee a knight and hee yee no louer, it is thine vnto you, why before yee may not be called a good knight, but if that yee make a quarrell for a Lady. God defend mee said Sir Dinadan, for the toy of loue is to short, and the sorrow and what cometh thereof endureth ouer long. Ah said la beale Isond, say yee not so, for here fast by was the

good knight Sir Bleoberis, which fought with three knights for a Damofels sake, and hee wanne her before the King of Northumberland. It was so said Sir Dinadan, for yowen him well for a good knight and a noble, and come of noble blood. For all hee noble knights of whom hee is come, that is Sir Launcelot du lake. Now I pray you said la beale Isond tell me wil ye fight for my loue with three knights that are mee greut wrong. And in so much as yee be a knight King Archurs Court, I require you to doe battaile with me. Now Sir Dinadan said, I shall say vnto you, yee are as good a Lady as ener I saw any, and much satter then is my Queene Gueneuer but wit yee well at one word that I will not fight for you with three knights, Iesu defend mee. And la beale Isond laughed and had good game at him. So hee had the cheere that shee might make him. And there he lay all that night. And on the morrow earely Sir Tristram armed him. And la beale Isond gaue him a good helme. And then hee promised her that hee would meeete with Sir Dinadan, and they two would ride together vnto Lonazep where the turnament should be. And there shall I make ready for you, where yee shall see the turnament. When departed Sir Tristram with his squires that beare his shield and his speares which were great and long.

CHAP. CXLIII.

How Sir Dinadan met with Sir Tristram, and how with iustling with Sir Palomides, Sir Dinadan knew him.

Then after that Sir Dinadan departed and rode his way at a great pace till hee had overtaken Sir Tristram. And when Sir Dinadan had overtaken him, he knew him anon, and hated his fellowship of him aboue all other knights. Ah said Sir Dinadan art thou that colward knight which I met with yesterday, keepe thee, for thou shalt iust with me maugre thy horse. Well said Sir Tristram, and I am loath to iust. And they let their horses runne. And Sir Tristram missed of him suddenly. And Sir Dinadan brake his speare vpon Sir Tristram. And therewith Sir Dinadan began to draw out his sword. Not

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

so said sir Tristram, why are yee so wroth, I will not fight. He on the coward said sir Dinadan, thou shalt see all knights. As for that said sir Tristram, I care not, for I will waite vpon you and bee vnder your protection for because yee are so good a knight yee may save mee. The Diuell deliuer me of the said sir Dinadan, for thou art as goodly a man of armes and of thy person as euer I saw, and the most coward that euer I saw, what wilt thou doe with those great speares that thou carriest with thee. I shall giue them said sir Tristram to some good knight when I come to the turnament. And if I see you doe best, I shall giue them to you. So thus as they rode talking they saw where came a knight arraunt before them dresing him for to iust. He said sir Tristram, yonder is one will iust, now dresse thee to him. A shame betide the said sir Dinadan. Nay not so said sir Tristram, for that knight seemeth a shrew. When shall I said sir Dinadan. And so they dresed their shields and their speares. and they met together so hard, that the other knight smote down sir Dinadan from his horse. He said sir Tristram, it had beene better that yee had left. He on the coward said sir Dinadan. When sir Dinadan start vp and gate his sword in his hand, and proffered to doe battaile on foote. Whether in loue or in wrath said the other knight. Let vs doe battaile in loue said sir Dinadan. What is your name said that knight, I pray you tell mee. What yee well my name is sir Dinadan. Ah sir Dinadan said that knight, and my name is sir Gareth the yongest Brother vnto sir Gawaine. When either made of other great ioy, for this sir Gareth was the best knight of all those Bretheren, and he proued a full good knight. When they tooke their horses, and there they spake of sir Tristram, how he was such a coward. And every word sir Tristram heard and laugh them to scozne. When were they ware to here there came a knight before them well horsed and well armed. Faire knights said sir Tristram looke betweene you who shall iust with yonder knight, for I warne you I will not haue to doe with him. Then shall I said sir Gareth. And so they encountred together, and there that knight smote downe sir Gareth ouer his horse croupe.

Now

and his Knights of the round Table.

Now now said sir Tristram vnto sir Dinadan, dresse thee and reuenge the good knight sir Gareth. What shall I not said sir Dinadan, for hee hath stricken downe a much bigger knight then I am. I said sir Tristram, now sir Dinadan I see and perceiue full well that your heart faileth you, therefore now, shall yee see what I shall doe. And then sir Tristram hurled vnto that knight, and smote him quite from his horse. And when sir Dinadan saw that hee meruiled greatly and then hee deemed in himselfe that it was sir Tristram. When the knight that was on foote dresed his shield and drew out his sword for to doe battaile. What is your name said sir Tristram. What you well said the knight, my name is sir Palomides. What knight hate ye most said sir Tristram. Sir knight said hee I hate sir Tristram to the death, for and I may meete with him the one of vs shall die. Yee say well said sir Tristram, and wit yee well that I am sir Tristram de Lioness, and now doe your worst. When sir Palomides heard him say so, hee was astonied, and then hee said thus. I pray you sir Tristram forgiue mee mine euill will. And if I liue I shall doe you seruice aboue all other knights that be liuing, and there as I haue owed you euill will, me soze repenteth I wot not what aileth me. For me seemeth that yee are a good knight, and none other knight that nameth himselfe a good knight should not hate you. Wherefore I require you, and pray you sir Tristram, take no displeasure at mine unkind words. sir Palomides said sir Tristram, ye say well, and well I wote ye are a good knight, for I haue seene you proued, & many great enterprises haue yee taken vpon you, and and ye owe me well haue yee achieved them. Wherefore said sir Tristram, euill will ye may right it, for I am ready at your hand. Not so my Lord sir Tristram I will doe you knightly seruice in all things as ye will commande me. And so will I take you said sir Tristram. And so they rode forth on their way talking of many things. My Lord sir Tristram said sir Dinadan, foule haue ye mocked me. For God knoweth I came into this country for your sake and by the aduise of my Lord sir Launcelot, & yet would not sir Launcelot, tell me the certaine of you, where

I

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

I should find you Truly said Sir Tristram, Sir Launcelot with well enough where I was, for I abode within his owne castle of Joyous gard.

CHAP. CXLIII.

How they approached the castle of Lonazep, and of other deuises of the death of Sir Lamoracke.

THUS they rode vntill they were ware of the castle of Lonazep, and than were they were of foure hundred tents and pavilions and meruailous great ordinaunce. So God me helpe said Sir Tristram, yonder I see the greatest ordinaunce that euer I saw. Sir said Sir Palomides, me seemeth there was as great an ordinaunce at the castle of Maidens vpon the rock where yee wanne the prize, for I saw my selfe where yee fought thirtie knights. Sir said Sir Dinadan, and sir Surluse at that turneyment that Sir Galahalt of the long Isles made, the which lasted seuen daies was as great a gathering as is here, for there were many nations. Who was the best said Sir Tristram, Sir it was Sir Launcelot du lake and the noble knight Sir Lamoracke de Galis, Sir Launcelot wanne the degre, I doubt not said Sir Tristram, so that he had not bene ouermatched with many knights. And of the death of Sir Lamoracke said Sir Tristram, it was ouer great pittie. For I dare say that hee was the cleaneest knighted man, and the best winded of his age that was on liue, for I knew him that hee was the biggest knight that euer I met withall, but if it were Sir Launcelot. Alas said Sir Tristram full woe is me of his death, and if they were all the cosins of my Lord King Arthur that knew him they should die for it, and all those that were consenting to his death. And for such things said Sir Tristram, I feare to draw vnto the Court of my Lord King Arthur, I will that yee wit it said Sir Tristram to Sir Gareth, Sir I blame you not said Sir Gareth for wel I vnderstand the vengeance of my brethren Sir Gawaine, Sir Agraaine, Sir Gaheris and Sir Mordred but for me said Gareth, I meddle not of their matters, there is none of them that loueth me, and I vnderstand they be mur therers of good I lest their knight company, & would God I had bene by

and his Knights of the round Table.

by said Sir Gareth when the noble knight Sir Lamoracke was slaine. Now as Iesu be my helpe said Sir Tristram, it is well said of you, for I had leauer then all the gold betwene this and home I had bene there. Truly said Sir Palomides, I would I had bene there and yet hee had neuer the degree at no iusts there as he was, but hee put mee to the worse on foote, or on horsebacke, and that day that he was slaine he did the most deeds of armes the euer I saw a knight doe all the daies of my life. And when the degre was ginen him by my Lord king Arthur, Sir Gawaine and his three brethren, Sir Agraaine, Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred in a priuy place, and there they slew his horse and so they fought with him on foote more then three houres, both before him and behind him. And Sir Mordred gaue him his death wound behind him at his backe and all to helmed him. For one of his squiers told me that saw it. He vpon treason said Sir Tristram, for it killeth my heart to heere this tale. So doth it me said Sir Gareth, brethren as they be mine I shall neuer leue them nor draw me to their fellowship for that deed. Now speake we of their deeds said Sir Palomides, and let him be, for his life yee may not get againe. What is there more pittie said Sir Dinadan, for Sir Gawaine and his brethren except you Sir Gareth hate all the good knights of the round table for the most part. For well I wote and they might priuely, they hate my Lord Sir Launcelot and all his kinne, and great prince despite they haue at him and that is my Lord Sir Launcelot well woe of, and that causeth him to haue the good knights of his killed about him.

CHAP. CXL.

How they came to Humber banke and how they found there a ship, in which ship lay the dead body of King Hermance.

SIR said Sir Palomides let vs leaue off this matter, and let vs see how we shall doe at this turneyment. By intine aduise said Sir Palomides let vs foure held together against all that will come. Not by my counsell said Sir Tristram for I see by their pavilions there will be foure hundred knights, and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

doubt yee not but there will bee many good knights, and he he neuer so valiaunt and big, yet he may bee overmatched, and so haue I some full oft, yea when they went best to haue worne worship they lost it, for manhood is thought woorth but if it bee mebled with wisdom, and as for me it may happen I shall keepe my head as well as, an other. Thus they rode till they came to Zumberbanke, where they heard a doleful crie. When were they ware in the wind where came a rich vessell covered ouer with red silke, and the vessell landed fast by them. Where with sir Tristram and his company alighted. So sir Tristram went before into the vessell. When he came within he saw a faire bed richly covered, and thereupon lay a seemely dead knight all armed save the head, all bobled with deadly wounds upon him, which seemed to bee a passing good knight. How may this bee said sir Tristram, that this knight is thus slaine. When he was ware of a letter in the dead knights hand. Masters mariners said he what meaneth that letter. Sir said they in that letter yee shall here and know how he was slaine, and for what cause, and what was his name. But wit yee well no man shall take that letter and read it but if he be a good knight, and that hee will faithfully promise to reuenge his death, else shall there no knight see that letter open. Wit yee well said sir Tristram we may reuenge his death, and if it bee as yee say, it shall bee reuenged. And therewith sir Tristram toke the letter out of the knight hand, and it said thus. Hermance King and Lord of the red Citie, I send to all Knights arraunt recommendation, and vnto you noble Knights of King Arthurs court, I beseech them all among them to find one Knight that will fight for my sake with two brethren that I brought vp of nought, and feloniously and traitourously they haue slaine mee wherefore I beseech one good Knight to reuenge my death. And hee that reuengeth my death, I will that hee haue my red Citie and all my castles. Sir said the mariners, wit yee well that this thing and knight that here lyeth was a right worshipfull man, and of full great prowesse and full well he loued all manner of knights arraunt. So God me helpe said sir Tristram, here is a piteous case, and full faine I would take this enterpryse vpon me, but

and his Knights of the round Table.

I have made such a promise, that needs I must be at this great tournament or else I am shamed. For wel I wot for my sake my King Arthur let make these iusts and turneyment in this country. And well I wot that worshipfull estates will bee at that turneyment for to see me. Wherefore I feare me for to take this enterpryse vpon me, that I shall not come againe be times of these iusts.

Sir said sir Palomides, I pray you giue me this enterpryse and yee shall see me atchieue it worshipfully, or else I shall die in this quarrell. Well said sir Tristram, and this enterpryse I giue you, with this that yee bee with me at this turneyment that shall be as at this day seuen dayes. Sir said sir Palomides, I promise you that I shall be with you at that day if I bee vnslaine or vnmaimed.

CHAP. CXLVI.

How sir Tristram with his fellowship came and were with an host, which after fought with sir Tristram, and of other matters.

And then departed sir Tristram, sir Gareth and sir Dinadan, and left sir Palomides in the vessell. And so sir Tristram beheld the mariners how they sayled ouer long Zumber. And when sir Palomides was out of their sight, he toke their horses and beheld about them, and then were ware of a knight that came riding against them vnarmed, and nothing about him but a sword. And when this knight came nigh them he saluted them, and they him againe. Faire knights said that knight, I pray you in so much as yee are knights arraunt, that yee will come and see my Castle, and such as yee find there I pray you heartily. And so as they went with him to his Castle. And there they were brought into the Castle. And there they were brought to the hall that was well apparaled. And so they were vnarmed, and set at a bord. And when this knight saw sir Tristram, anon he knew him. And when this knight wared pale and woorth at sir Tristram. When sir Tristram saw his host make such chere, he mar-

nailed greatly and said. Sir mine host what chere make ye. Will it thou well sayd he. I fare much the worse for thee. For I know the well Sir Tristram de Lyones, thou saw my brother, and therefore I giue thee summons that I will slei thee, and I may get thee at large. Sir knight said Sir Tristram, I am not aduised that euer I slew any brother of yours. And if ye say that I did it I will make you amends unto my power. I will none of your menys said the knight, but keepe thee from me. So when hee had dined Sir Tristram asked his armes and departed. And so they rode forth on their way. And within a little while Sir Dinadan, saw where came a knight riding all armed and well horsed without shield: Sir Tristram said sir Dinadan, take heed to your selfe, for I undertake that you der commeth your host that will haue to doe with you. Let him come said sir Tristram, I shal abide him as well as I may. Anon that knight when he came nigh Sir Tristram he cried to him, and bad him abide and keepe him well: so they hurled together, but Sir Tristram smote the other knight so fore that he beare him to the ground. And that knight arose lightly and took his horse againe, and so rode fierly to Sir Tristram and smote him twice full hard vpon the helme. Sir knight said sir Tristram, I pray you to leaue off and smite me no more, for I would bee leath to deale with you, and I might chide. Sir Tristram haue your meate and your drinke within my body. For al that hee would not leaue. And then Sir Tristram gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme, that he tumbled vpside downs from his horse that the bridle fell out of the ventailles of his helme. And there he lay still likely to haue died. When Sir Tristram said mee repented soze of this buffet that I smote so fore, for as I suppose he is dead. And so they departed and rode forth on their way. So they had not riden but a while but they saw comming against them two full like knights, well armed and horsed, and goodly seruants about them. The one was sir Berraunc le apres, and he was called the king with the hundred knights, and that other was sir Segwarides which were renowned two noble knights. So as they came either by other, the king looked vpon sir Dinadan, which at that time had Sir Tristram

helme

helme vpon his shoulder, which helme the king had scene be- fore with the Quene of Northwales, and that Quene the king loued as paramour, and that helme the Quene of Northwales had giuen vnto Iabeale Isond, and the Quene la beale Isond gaue it vnto sir Tristram. Sir knight said sir Berraunc, where had ye that helme. What would you therewith said sir Dinadan. For I will haue to doe with thee said the king, for the loue of her that owe that helme, and therefore keepe thee. So they departed and came together with all the might that their horses could runne. And so the king with the hundred knights smote sir Dinadan horse and all to the earth. And then he commanded his seruant to goe and take the helme off and the varlet went and unbuckled his helme what wilt thou doe said sir Tristram leaue that helme. No what entent said the king will ye meddle sir knight with that helme. Will ye well said sir Tristram, that helme shall not depart from mee or that I shal be bought. When make you ready to iust with mee said sir Berraunc to sir Tristram. So they hurled together and there Sir Tristram smote him downe ouer his horse taile. And then the king arose lightly and gat his horse againe lightly, and then he strooke fierly at sir Tristram many sad strokes and then sir Tristram gaue sir Berraunc such a buffet vpon the helme that he fell downe ouer his horse, soze astoned. No said sir Dinadan that helme in unhappie to vs twaine, for I had a fall for it, and now sir king ye haue an other fall. When sir Segwarides asked the king shall iust with me. I pray thee said sir Gareth to sir Dinadan let mee haue this iusts: sir said sir Dinadan, I pray you take it as for me. What is no reason said sir Tristram, for this iusts should bee yours. At a word said sir Dinadan I will non thereof. When sir Gareth dyessed him to sir Segwarides, and there sir Segwarides smote sir Gareth, that horse and man fell to the earth. Now said sir Tristram to sir Dinadan iust with me knight. I will not meddle said sir Dinadan. When will I said sir Tristram. And then Sir Tristram ranne to him & gaue him a fall. And so they left them on foote. And Sir Tristram rode vnto Joyous gard and there Sir Gareth would not of his iusts he haue gone into the Castle, but Sir Tristram would

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

not suffer him to depart. And so they alighted and unarmed them and had there great cheere. But when sir Dinadan came afoze la bealelfond, hee cursed the time that euer he bare the helme of Sir Tristram. And there hee told her how Sir Tristram had mocked him. Then was there good laughing and sport at Sir Dinadan that they wist not what to doe to kepe them from laughing.

CHAP. CXLVII.

How Sir Palomides went for to fight with two brethren for the death of King Hermance.

NOW will we leaue them mery within Joyons gard, and speake wee at Sir Palomides. When Sir Palomides sailed euen a long Iunber vnto the Coast of the sea, where was a faire castle. And at that time it was early in the morning afoze day. Then the mariners went vnto Sir Palomides that was fast on sleepe. Sir Knight said the mariners, yee must arise, for here is a castle into the which ye must goe. I assent me thereto said Sir Palomides. And therewithall hee ariued. And then he blew his bozne the which the marines had giuen him. And when they that were within the Castle heard that bozne, they put forth many knights, and there they stood vpon the wals and said with one voice, welcome be ye to this castle. And then it wared cleere day, and Sir Palomides entred into the castle. And within a while he was well serued with many diuers meates. And then sir Palomides heard about him much weeping and great dole. What may this meane said sir Palomides, I loue not to heare such sorow, and saue would I know what it meaneth: so there came befoze him one, whose name was sir Ebell that said thus. What ye well sir Knight this dole & sorow is here made euery day, & for this cause. We had a king that hight Hermance and hee was king of the red Citie, and this king that was our Lord, was a noble knight, large and liberall of his expence. And in the world hee loued no thing so much as he did arraunt knights of King Archurs court, and all iusting, hunting, and all manner of knightly games. For a kind alking and knight had neuer the rule of poore people

and his Knights of the round Table.

as he was. And because of his goodnesse and gentylnesse we be-
lieue him and euer shall doe. And all things and estates may
be of our king, for hee was destroyed in his owne default,
and hee cherished the of his blood he had yet liued with great
riches and rest. But all estates may beware by our king. But
also said sir Ebell, that we shall giue all other warning by his
death. Tell me said sir Palomides, in what manner was your
Lord slain, and by whome, sir said sir Ebell, our king brought
with him two children two men that now are perillous knights and
these two knights our king had in great fauour, that hee loued
him noz trusted no man of his blood so well, noz none other
that was about him. And by these two knights our king was
ruined. And so they ruled him and his land poasably. And
neuer would they suffer none of all his blood for to haue any rule
of our king. And also he was so free and so gentle, and they
so false and deceiuable, that they ruled him as they list. And
they spied the Lords of our kings blood, and departed from him
to their owne liuelode. When these two traitours under-
stood that they had dzinen all the Lords of his blood from him,
they were not pleased with that rule, but then they sought to
doe more, as it is euer an old law. Give a churle rule, he will
not therewith be sufficed. For whatsoever he be that is ruled by
a vilaine bozne, & the Lord of that soile be a gentleman bozne,
that same vilaine will destroy all the gentlemen about him.
Therefore all estates and Lords be well ware whome ye take
about you. And if yee be a knight of King Archurs court, re-
member this tale, for this is the end and conclusion. My Lord
and king rode vnto the forrest by the aduise of these false
traitours. And there he chased at the red dere all armed of all
pieces full like a good knight. And so for labour hee wared dry,
and then hee alighted and dranke at a well. And when hee
was alighted by the assent of these two false traitours, the one
of his right Helius sodainly smote our king through the body
with a speare, and so they left him there. And when they
were departed then by fortune I came vnto the well and
found my Lord and king wounded vnto the death. And when
I heard his complaint I let bring him to the water side

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and in that same ship I put him alieue. And when my Lord King Hermaunce was in that vessell, he required mee for the true faith that I owed vnto him for to write a letter in this manner.

CHAP. CXLV.

The copy of the letter written for to reuenge the Kings death. And how Sir Palomides fought for to haue the battaile.

Recomending vnto King Arthur and vnto all the knights arraunt beseeching them all in the name of King Hermaunce, King of the red City, and how he by felony and treason through two knights of his court, and of mine owne bringing vp, and of mine owne doing, that some worshipfull knight will reueng my death, in so much as I haue bene neuer to my power well willing vnto King Arthurs court. And who that will aduenture his life with these two traitours for my sake in one battaile. I King Hermaunce King of the red City freely gillie all my lands and tenements that euer I possessed in all my life. This letter said Sir Ebell I wrote by my Lords comandement and then he receiued his maker. And when he was dead, hee commanded mee or euer he were cold to put this leter fast in his hand. And then he commanded me to put forth that same vessell downe Dumber, and that I should giue these mariners in command neuer to stint untill that they came to Logris where all the noble knights shall assemble at this time, and ther shall some good knight haue pity vpon me, and reuenge my death, for there was neuer King slayer nor traitorously slaine then I am heere to my death. This was the complaint of our King Hermaunce. Now said Sir Ebell yee know all how that our King was betrayed. wee require you for Gods sake haue pittie on his death, and worshipfully reueng his death, & then may ye possesse all these lands. For we all wot well that yee may sleie those two traitours, the red City & all that be therein will take you for their Lord. Truly said Sir Palomides, it grieueth my heart for to heere you tell this dolefull tale. And to say the truth, I saw the same letter that yee spake of. And one of the best knights of the world

and his Knights of the round Table.

that letter to mee. And by this command I am come hither to reuenge your Kings death, and therefore haue done and done where I shall find those traitours, for I shall neuer rest till I haue beene in hand with them. And Sir Ebell then take your ship againe, and that shippe bring you to the delectable Ile, fast by the red Cittie, and that he here shall pray for you and abide your againe coming. For this same Castle and yee speede well must needs be yours. For our King Hermaunce let make this castle for the love of the two false traitours, And so we haue it with strong hand, and therefore full sore are we threatned. Wot yee what ye haue said Sir Palomides, what seuer come of me, looke that ye keepe well this castle. For and if my fortune me to bee slaine in this quest, I am sure there will come one of the best knights of the world for to reueng my death, and that is Sir Tristram of Lyones or else Sir Launcelot du lake. When Sir Palomides departed from the Castle. And as hee came nigh vnto the City, there came out of a ship a goodly knight all armed against him, with his shield vpon his shoulder, and his hand vpon his sword, and when as hee came nigh Sir Palomides he said. Sir knight I praye ye heere, in this country, leaue this quest, for it is mine or mine it was, or it was yours, and therefore I will not fight with you. Sir knight said Sir Palomides, it may well bee that the quest was yours or it was mine, but when the letter was taken out of the dead Kings hand, at that time by likelyhood there was no knight had undertaken to reuenge the death of King Hermaunce. And so at that time I promise to reuenge his death, and so I shall, or else I am shamed. He say well said Sir knight, but wit yee well then will I fight with you, and that is the better knight of vs both let him take the battaile and I assent me said Sir Palomides. And then they dressed in their armour and drew out their swords, and lashed together as men of might. And thus they fought more then an houre. And at the last Sir Palomides waxed biggish and wounded, so that then hee smote that knight such a blow that hee made him to kneele vpon both his knees. And that knight spake on high and said Gentle knight hold thy

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

thy hand. Sir Palomides was courteous and withdrew his hand. When this knight said wit ye well Sir knight that ye be better worthye to haue this battaile then I, and I require thee of thy knight hood to tell mee thy name: Sir my name is Sir Palomides; a knight of King Arthurs Court and of the round table, that hither am come to reuenge the death of this dead king

CHAP. CXLVIII.

Of the preparation of Sir *Palomides* and the two bretheren that should fight with him

As well be ye found said the knight vnto Sir Palomides, for of all knights that bee now liuing (except thee) I had leuest haue you. The first is Sir Launcelot du lake, the second is Sir Tristram, de Lioness, and the third is my nigh cousin Sir Lamorake de Galis. And I am brother vnto King Hermaunce that is dead, and my name is Sir Herminde. It is well said quoth Sir Palomides, and ye shall see how I shall speede. And if I see there aine, goe ye vnto my Lord Sir Launcelot, or vnto my Lord Sir Tristram and pray them to reuenge my death, for as for Sir Lamorake him shall ye neuer see in this world. Alas said Sir Herminde, how may that be. He is aine said Sir Palomides by Sir Gawaine and his bretheren. So God me helpe said Sir Herminde there was not one for one that slew him. That is truth said Sir Palomides, for they were foure dangerous knights that slew him, as Sir Gawaine, Sir Agrauiaine, Sir Gaheris, and Sir Mordred but Sir Gareth the fift brother was not there, which is the best knight of them all. And so Sir Palomides told Sir Herminde all the manner, and how they slew Sir Lamorake all only by treason. So Sir Palomides tooke his ship, and arriued vp at the delectable Ile. And in the meane while Sir Herminde the Kings brother arriued vp at the red Citty, and there he told them how there was coming a knight of King Arthurs to reuenge King Hermaunce death, and his name is Sir Palomides the good knight, that for the most part followeth the beast Glafisaint. When all the Citty made great joy. For much had they hard of Sir Palomides

and his Knights of the round Table.

Palomides, and of his noble prowesse. So they let adaine a messenger and sent to the two bretheren, and bad them make them ready, for there was come a knight that would fight with them. So the messenger went vnto them where they were in a castle there beside. And there hee told them how there was a knight come of King Arthurs Court for to fight with them. At once. Hee is right welcome said they all. But tell mee pray you if it bee Sir Launcelot or any of his blood. Hee is none of his blood said the messenger. When came we the lesse said the two bretheren. For with none of the blood of Sir Launcelot we kepe not to haue to doe withall. Well said the messenger, that his name is Sir Palomides, the which is not yet christened a noble knight. Well said they, and if he be now unchristened, he shall neuer be christened. So they appointed for to be at the Citty within two dayes. And when Sir Palomides was come vnto the Citty, they made passing great joy of him. And when they beheld him and saw that hee was well made cleanly and unmaimed of his limmes, and neither to yong nor to old. And so all the people praised him. And though he was unchristened, yet hee beloued in the best manner, and was faithful and true of his promise and also wel conditioned. And because hee made his auow that hee would neuer be christened vnto the time that he had atchieued the beast Glafisaint, which was a wonderfull beast, and a great signification, for Merlin prophesied much of that beast. And also Sir Palomides auowed neuer to take full christendome vnto the time that he had done ten battailes within the lists. So within the third day there came to this Citty these two bretheren. The one hight Sir Helius, and that other hight Sir Helake, the which were men of great prowesse how be it they were false and full of treason, and but poore men bozne yet were they noble knights of their hands.

And with them they brought fortie knights to the entent they should be big enough for the red Citty. Thus come the two bretheren with great bondance and pride, for they had put the red Citty in feare and damage. When they were brought vnto the lists. And Sir Palomides came into the place, and thus

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

he said. Bee ye the two bretheren Sir Helius and Sir Helake that slew your King and Lord Sir Hermaunce by felony and treason for whom I am come hither for to reuenge his death. Wilt thou well said Sir Helius and Sir Helake, that wee are the same knights which slew King Hermaunce. And wilt thou well Sir Palomides saye that we shall handle thee so or thou depart, that thou shalt wish that thou were christned. it may well be said Sir Palomides, for yet I would not die or I were christned, and yet so am I not afraid of you both. But I trust to God that I shall die a better christian man then any of you both. And doubt ye not said Sir Palomides, either ye or I shall be left dead in this place.

CHAP: CL.

Of the battaile of Sir *Palomides* and the two bretheren, and how the two bretheren were slaine

Then they departed and the two bretheren came against Sir *Palomides*, and hee against them as fast as euer their horses might runne. And by fortune Sir *Palomides* smote Sir *Helake* through his shield and through the best more then a fadome. All this while Sir *Helius* held by his speare, and for pride and presumption he would not smite Sir *Palomides* with his speare. But when he saw his brother lye on the ground and saw he might not helpe himselfe then he said vnto Sir *Palomides* helpe thy selfe. And therewith hee came hurling vnto Sir *Palomides* with his speare and smote him quite from his saddle. When *Helius* rode ouer Sir *Palomides* two or three times whereof Sir *Palomides* was sore ashamed and gat the horse of Sir *Helius* by the bzidle, and therewith the horse arered, and Sir *Palomides* holpe after and so they fell both to the ground. But anon Sir *Helius* start vp lightly and smote Sir *Palomides* a mighty stroke vpon the helme, so that hee made him to fall vpon one of his sides. When they booth lashed together many sad strokes and traces and trauced now backward now sieling, hurling together like two wilde boares. And that same time they fell both groueling on the earth. Thus they fought still with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with out any resting two large houres and neuer breathed again. And then Sir *Palomides* wared faint and weary. And Sir *Helius* wared passing strong, and doubled his strokes, and moue Sir *Palomides* ouerthwart and end long all the field that they of the Citty when they saw Sir *Palomides* in this case, they wept and cried and made a sorrowfull doale. And that other partie made great joy. Alas said the men of the Citty that this noble knight should thus be slaine for our Kings sake. And as they were thus weeping and crying, Sir *Palomides* that had endured well an hundred strokes, that it was wonder that hee stood vpon his feete. And at the last Sir *Palomides* beheld as well as hee might the common people how they wept for him. And then he said vnto himselfe. Ah fie for shame Sir *Palomides* wherefore hangest thou thy head so low. And therewith hee beare by his shield and looked Sir *Helius* in the visage, and smote him a great stroke vpon the helme, and after that an other and an other. And then he smote Sir *Helius* with such a might, that hee fell vpon the ground groueling. And then hee start lightly to him and dashed off his helme from his head, and there he smote him such a buffet that hee reparted his head from the body. And then were the people of the Citty the joyfullest people that might bee. So they brought him vnto his lodging with great solemnitie, and there all the people became his men. And then Sir *Palomides* prayed them all for to take hede vnto the Lorde of King *Hermaunce*. For saire sirs wit ye well I may not at this time abide with you, for I must in all the hast be with my Lord King *Arthur* at the Castle of *Lonazep* which I haue promised. So then were the people full heauie of his departing. For all that Citty proffered Sir *Palomides* the third part of their goods, so that he would abide with them. But in no wise at that time hee would abide. And so Sir *Palomides* departed. And then hee came vnto the Castle whereas Sir *Ebell* was lieutenant. And when they that were in the Castle knew how Sir *Palomides* had sped, there was a joyfull meyny. And Sir *Palomides* departed and came to the Castle of *Lonazep*. And when he wist that Sir *Tristram* was not there, he tooke his way vnto *Bumber* and came vnto *Joyous gard*, whereas Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Tristram was and la beale Ifond. so Sir Tristram had commanded, that what knight arraunt came within Joyous gard as in the towne that they should warne Sir Tristram thereof: so there came a man to the towne and told Sir Tristram how there was a knight in the towne that was a passing goodly knight. What manner of man is hee said Sir Tristram, and what signe beareth hee. So the man told Sir Tristram all the tokens of him. What is Sir Palomides said Sir Dinadan, it may well be said Sir Tristram. Goe yee to him said Sir Tristram unto Sir Dinadan. So Sir Dinadan went unto Sir Palomides, And there either made of other great joy. And so they lay together that night, and on the morrow early came Sir Tristram and Sir Gareth, and there they tooke them in their beds, and so they arose and brake their fast.

CHAP. CLT.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides Sir Breuse saunce pittie,
and how Sir Tristram and la beale Ifond went to Lonazep.

AND then Sir Tristram desired Sir Palomides for to ride into the fields and woods: so they were accorded for to rest them in the Forrest. And so when they had played them a great while, they rode unto a faire well. And anon they were ware of an armed knight that came riding against them, and there either saluted other. When this armed knight spake unto Sir Tristram, and asked him where were those knights that were lodged in Joyous gard. I wot not what they are said Sir Tristram. What knights are ye said that knight, for me seemeth that yee are no knights arraunt, because that yee ride unarmed. Whether we be knights or not, we list not to tell thee our names. Wilt thou not tell me thy name said that knight, then keepe thee, for thou shalt die of my hands. And therewith hee gat his speare in his hand, and would haue runed through Sir Tristram. What saw Sir Palomides and smote his horse ourthwart the middell of the side, that man and horse fell to the ground. And therewithall Sir Palomides alighted and drew out his sword to haue slaine him. let bee said Sir Tristram, slay him

and his Knights of the round Table.

not, the knight is but a scole, it were shame for to slay him. He take away his speare said Sir Tristram and let him take his horse and goe where he will. So when this knight arose hee was soze of that fall, and so hee tooke his horse by the bridel. And when he was up, then he turned his horse, and required Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides to tell him what knights they were. Now wit yee well said Sir Tristram that my name is Sir Tristram de Liones, and this knights name is Sir Palomides. When hee wist what they were, he smote his horse with the spurs because they should not aske him his name, and so rode fast away through thick and thin. Then came there by then a knight with a bended shield of a sure, whose name was Sir Epinogris and he came toward them a great gallop. Whither are yee riding said Sir Tristram, my faize Lord said Sir Epinogris. I follow the falsest knight that now beareth life, wherefore I requite your tell me if yee saw him. For he beareth a shield with a chace ouer it. So God me helpe said Sir Tristram, such a knight departed from vs not a quartet of an houre agoe. We pray you tell vs his name. Alas said Sir Epinogris why let yee him escape from you, and he is so great foe unto all arraunt knights, and his name is Sir Breuse saunce pittie. A hee for shame said Sir Palomides, alas that euer he escaped my hands, for he is the man in the world that I hate most. When euery knight mad great sorrow to other. And so Sir Epinogris departed and followed the chace after him. When Sir Tristram and his three fellows rode to Joyous gard, and there Sir Palomides talked unto Sir Tristram of his battaile, how he had sped at the red Citie. And as yee haue heard before, so was it ended. Truly said Sir Tristram, I am glad that yee haue so well sped, for yee haue done right worshipfully. Well said Sir Tristram, wee must forward to morrow. And then he deuised how it should be, and Sir Tristram deuised to send his two pallions for to set them fast by the well of Lonazep, and therein shall be the Queene la beale Ifond. It is well said quoth Sir Dinadan. But when Sir Palomides heard of that, his heart was rauished out out of measure notwithstanding hee said but littell. So when they came to Joyous gard Sir Palomides,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Palomides would not haue gone into the castle. But as Sir Tristram took him by the finger and led him into the castle. And when Sir Palomides saw Quene la beale Isond, he was sorawished, that vnnethes hee might speake. So they went vnto their meat, but Sir Palomides might not eate, and there was all the cheare that might be had. And on the morrow they were apparaled to ride toward Lonazep. So Sir Tristram had three Squires, and la beale Isond had three Gentle women, and so both la beale Isond and they were richly apparalled, to and other people had they none with them but varlets to beare their shields and their speares. And thus they rode forth. So as they rode before them they saw a rowle of knights, it was the knight Sir Galihodin with twentie knights with him. Faire felowes said Sir Galihodin, poudre cometh foure knights, and a rich and a full faire Lady, I am in will to take that Lady from them. What is not of the best counsaile said one of Sir Galihodins men, but send yee to them and wit what they will say, and so it was done. So came a squire to Sir Tristram and asked them whether they would iust or else leese their lady. Not so said Sir Tristram tell your Lord that I bid him come with as many as he be, & winne her and take her. Sir said Sir Palomides, and it please you, let mee haue this deed and I shall undertake them all foure. I wil that ye haue it (said Sir Tristram) at your pleasure. Now goe and tell your Lord Sir Galihodin, that this same knight shall on countre with him this fellowes

CHAP. CLII.

How Sir Palomides iusted with Sir Galihodin and after with Sir Gawaine, and smote them downe.

Then the squire departed and told Sir Galihodin his answer. And then he dressed his shield and put forth a speare, and Sir Palomides another. And there Sir Palomides smote Sir Galihodin so hard, that he smote both horse and man to the earth, and there he had a great fall. And then there came another knight, and in the same wise he serueth him, and so he serued the third and the fourth that hee smote them over their horses croupes. And alwaies Sir Palomides speare was whole.

Then

and his Knights of the round Table.

Then there came five knights more of Sir Galihodins men? and would haue beene reuenged vpon Sir Palomides. Let bee said Sir Galihodin, not so hardy none of you all to meddle with this knight. For he is a man of great bountie and honour. And if hee would, yee all were notable to medle with him. And so they held them still. And Sir Palomides was alway ready to iust. And when he saw they would no more, hee rode vnto Sir Tristram. Might well haue yee done said Sir Tristram, and worshipfully haue yee done as a good knight should doe. This Sir Galihodin was nigh cousin vnto Sir Galahad the hant prince. And this Sir Galihodin hath beene a king within the countrey of Surluse. So as Sir Tristram, Sir Palomides and la beale Isond rode together, they saw before them foure knights, and euery knight had his speare in his hand. The first was Sir Gawaine the second was Sir Ewaine, the third was Sir Sagramore le desirous, and the fourth was Sir Dodinas le sauage. When Sir Palomides beheld them that they were ready to iust, he prayed Sir Tristram for to giue him leaue to haue to doe with them as long as he might hold him on horsebacke, and if I bee smitten downe I pray you reuenge me. Well said Sir Tristram, I will as yee will, and yee are not so faine for to haue worship, but I would as faine encrease your worship. And therewith, Sir Gawaine put forth his speare and Sir Palomides another. And so they came so egerly together, that Sir Palomides smote Sir Gawaine to the ground horse and man. And in the same wise he serued Sir Ewaine, Sir Dodinas and Sir Sagramore. All these foure knights Sir Palomides smote downe with diuers speares. And then Sir Tristram departed toward Lonazep. And when they were departed, then came thither Sir Galihodin with his ten knights vnto Sir Gawaine and there hee told him all how he had sped, I marvel me much said Sir Gawaine what knights they be that are so araided in Greene. And that knight vpon the white horse smote me do wne said Sir Galihodin and my three fellows. And so he did to mee said Sir Gawaine and well I wot said Sir Gawaine that either he that is vpon the white horse is Sir Tristram, or else Sir Palomides, and that gay beaute Lady is Quene la beale Isond. Thus they

talked

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

talked of one thing and of other, and in the meane while Sir Tristram passed forth on till hee came to the well where his two pavilions were set, and there they alighted, and there they saw many pavilions and great arate. When sir Tristram left there Sir Palomides and Sir Gareth with la beale Isond and sir Tristram and sir Dinadan rode to Lonazep to heere tidings, and sir Tristram rode upon Sir Palomides white horse. And when he came to the castle, sir Dinadan heard a horne blow, and by that horne drew many knights. Then sir Tristram asked a knight what ment the blast of that horne. sir said that knight, it is all those that shall hold against King Arthur at this turneyment. The first is the King of Ireland and the King of Surluse, the King of Liffnoyse, the King of Northumberland and the King of the best part of Wales, and with many other countries And all these draw them vnto a counsaile, to understand what gouernance they should be of. But the King of Ireland whose name was Marhale, a father vnto the good knight Sir Marhaus which Sir Tristram knew, had all the speech that Sir Tristram might heere it, he said. Lords and fellows let vs looke vnto our selfe or wit ye well that King Arthur is sure of many good knights, or else he would not with so few knights haue to doe with vs therfore by my counsaile let every King haue a standard and cognisance by himselfe that every knight draw to his naturall Lord, and then may every King and captain helpe his knights, if they haue need. And when sir Tristram had heard all their counsaile, he rode vnto King Arthur for to heare of his counsaile.

CHAP. CLIII.

How Sir *Tristram* and his fellowship came vnto the turneyment of Lonazep. And of diuers other iusts and matters.

But sir Tristram was not so soone come to the place, but Sir Gawaine and Sir Galihodin went vnto King Arthur and told him that the same greene knight in the greene harness with the white horse smote vs two downe and sire of our fellows this same day. Well said King Arthur, and then he called Sir

and his Knights of the round Table.

Tristram and asked him what was his name. Sir said sir Tristram, ye shall hold me excused as at this time, for ye shall know my name. And then Sir Tristram returned and went his way. A meruaile me much said King Arthur that your knight will not tell me his name, but goe thou Sir Griflet to Sir de dieu and pray him to speak with me betwene vs tising. Then Sir Griflet rode after him and quertooke him and said to him that King Arthur prayed him to speake with him secretly apart. Upon that covenant said Sir Tristram I will speake with him, that I will returne, againe so that ye will excuse mee not to desire to here my name. I shall undertake for Sir Griflet that hee wil not greatly desire of you. So they rode together till they came vnto King Arthur. Faire sir said King Arthur what is the cause that ye will not tell mee your name. Sir said Sir Tristram without a cause I will not hide my name. Upon what partie will ye hold said King Arthur. Truly my Lord said sir Tristram I can not tell you yet on what partie I will be, vntill I come into the field. And there as my hart giueth me there will I hold. But to morrow ye shall see me on what part I shall come. And therewith he turned and went to his pavilion. And on the morrow they armed them all in greene, and came into the field. And their young knights began to iust and did many worshipfull dedes. then spake sir Griflet vnto Sir Tristram, and prayed him to giue him leaue to break his spear, for he thought shæ to bare his spere hole againe when Sir Tristram heard him say so. hee laughed and said. I pray you doe your best. When Sir Gareth toke his horse and was ready to iust. That saw a nephew vnto the King of the hundred knights his name was Sir Selises, and a good man of armes, so this knight Sir Selises dressed him vnto Sir Gareth. And they two met together so hard, that either smote on the other horse and all to the ground. So they were both hurt and hurt. And there they lay till that the King with the hundred knights holpe Sir Selises vp. And Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides holpe vp Sir Gareth againe. And so they rode to their pavilions, and then they unlaced his face. And when la beale Isond saw Sir Gareth hurt in the

face hee asked him what ayed. Madame said Sir Gareth y had a great buffet, and as I suppose I gaue him another as good againe, but none of my fellowship God thanke them would not rescue mee. Forsooth said Sir Palomides, it belonged not to none of vs as this day to Iust, for there haue not this day Iusted nor yoked knights, and needs, ye would Iust, and when the other partie saw that yee proffered your selfe to Iust, they sent one to you a passing good knight of his age. For I know him well, his name is Sir Selises, and worshippingly yee met with him, and neither of you are dishonoured, and therefore refresh your selfe that yee may be ready and whole to Iust to morrow. As for that said Sir Gareth I shal not faile you, and I may bestrebe my horse.

CHAP. CLIV.

How Sir Tristram and his fellowship Iusted, and of the noble feates that they did in that turnement.

Now upon what partie said Sir Tristram is it best we be with as to morrow. Sir said sir Palomides, ye shal haue mine aduise to be against King Arthur as to morrow, for on his part will bee sir Launcelot and many good knights of his blood with him. And the more men of worship that they bee, the more worship shall we winne. What is full knightly spoken said sir Tristram. And right so as yee counsaile me, so will wee doe: In the name of God said they all: so that night they were lodged with the best. And on the morrow when it was day they were arated in greene trappours, shields and speares and la beale Ifond was in the same colour and her three damosells. And right so these foure knights came into the field end long, and through. And so they led la beale Ifond where she should stand, and behould all the Iusts in a bay window. But alway she was bewimpled that no man might see her visage. And then these three knights rode straight unto the partie of the King of Scotland. When King Arthur had seene them doe all this, hee asked sir Launcelot what were those knights and that Queene. Sir said Sir Launcelot, I can not shew you

no certaintie, but if sir Tristram or sir Palomides, wit yee well of a certaine it borne they and la beale Ifond. When King Arthur called sir Kay and said, go and wit how many knights there be here lacking of the round table, for by the sieges thou mayest know: so sir Kay went, and saw by the writing in the hedges that there lacked ten knights, and these be their names that be noted here, Sir Tristram sir Palomides, Sir Perciuaile, sir Gaheris, sir Epinogris, sir Mordred, sir Dinadan, sir Lacote maile taile, and sir Pelleas the noble knight. Well said King Arthur, some of these I dare undertak are here this day against vs. When come there two bretheren, cosins unto sir Gawaine, that one hight sir Edward. and that other hight sir Sadocke, the which were two good knights. And they asked of King Arthur that they might haue the first Iusts, for they were of Dkeney. I am pleased said King Arthur. When sir Edward encountred with the King of Scots, one whose part was sir Tristram and sir Palomides. And sir Edward smote the King of Scots quite from his horse. And sir Sadock smote down the King of North Wales and gaue him a wonderous great fall, so that there was a great crie on King Arrhurs part and made Sir Palomides falling woorth. And so sir Palomides dressed his shield and his speare and with all his might he met with sir Edward of Dkeney, that hee smote him so hard that his horse might not stand on his feete, and so both his horse and he fell to the ground. And then with the same speare sir Palomides smot down sir Sadock over his horse croup, Whereupon said King Arthur what knight is that arayed al in greene, he hath Iusted ful mightily. What ye said sir Gawaine hee is a good knight, and yet shall yee see him Iust better or hee depart. And yet shall said sir Gawaine another bigger knight in the same colour then he is. For that same knight said sir Gawaine that smote downe right now my two cosins, hee smote mee downe within these two dayes and feauen of my fellowes more. This meane while as they were talking there came into the place sir Tristram upon a black horse. And or euer hee stinted hee smote downe with one shot fore good knights of Dkeney which were of the kin of sir Gawaine. And sir Gareth and sir Dinadan euer each of them

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

smote. So came the King of Northgalis, and he rode straight smote downe a good knight. And Jesu said King Arthur, ponder knight which rideth vpon the blacke horse doeth meruailously well. Abide you said sir Gawaine, that knight with the blacke horse began not yet. When Sir Tristram made to be set on horse backe againe those two knights which sir Edward and Sir Sadocke had unhorsed at the beginning: And then Sir Tristram drew out his sword and rode into the thickest of the presse against them of Deney, & there he smote downe many knights and rashed off helmes, and pulled away their shields and hurled downe many knights. He fared so that King Arthur and all other knights had great meruaile when they saw one knight doe so great deeds of armes. And Sir Palomides failed not to doe his part on the other side, but did so meruailously well, that all men had wonder of him. And there King Arthur likned Sir Tristram which rode at that time vpon a blacke horse like vnto a wood Lion. And he likned Sir Palomides that rode vpon a white horse vnto a wood libbard. And hee likned Sir Gareth and sir Dinadan vnto two eger wolues. But the custome was such among them, that none of the Kings would helpe other, but all the fellowship of euery standard to helpe other as they might. But euer sir Tristram did so many deeds of armes that they of Deney waxed weary of him, and so withdrew them vnto Lonazep.

CHAP. CLV.

How Sir *Tristram* was unhorsed and smitten downe by Sir *Launcelot*. and after that Sir *Tristram* smote downe King *Arthur*.

Then was the crye of heraulds and all manner of common people, the greene knight had done right meruailously, and beaten all them of Deney. And there the heraulds numbred that Sir *Tristram* that sate vpon the blacke horse had smitten downe with speares and swords thirtie knights. And Sir *Palomides* had smitten downe twenty knights. And the most part of those fiftie knights were of the house of King *Arthur* and proued knights. So God me helpe said King *Arthur* vnto sir *Launcelot*, this is a great shame to vs to see our knights to beate so many knights of mine, and there

and his Knights of the round Table.

make you ready, for wee will haue to doe with them. Sir *Launcelot*, wit yee well that there are two passing knights. And great worship were it not to vs now to doe them, for they haue this day sore trauailed. As for said King *Arthur* I will be reuenged and therfore take you Sir *Bleoberis* and sir *Ector*, and I will be the fourth to King *Arthur*. Sir said sir *Launcelot*, ye shall find me ready, and my brother sir *Ector*, and my cousin sir *Bleoberis*. And when they were ready and on horsebacke, now chose said King *Arthur* vnto Sir *Launcelot*, with whom yee will encounter withall I will make with the greene knight vpon the blacke horse, that was Sir *Tristram*, and my cousin sir *Bleoberis* shall matche the greene knight vpon the white horse, that was Sir *Palomides*. And my brother sir *Ector* shall match with the greene knight vpon the white horse, that was sir *Gareth*. When must I said King *Arthur* haue to doe with the greene knight vpon the grisild horse, and that was sir *Dinadan*. Now let euery man take heed to his fellow said Sir *Launcelot*. And so they fasted forth together: and there encountred sir *Launcelot* against sir *Tristram*, so that Sir *Launcelot* smote Sir *Tristram* so vpon the shield that hee beare horse and man to the ground. But sir *Launcelot* wend it had beene Sir *Palomides*, and so he passed forth. And then sir *Bleoberis* encountred with Sir *Palomides*, and he smote him so hard vpon the shield that Sir *Palomides* and his white horse tumbled to the ground. Then sir *Ector de Maris* smote sir *Gareth* so hard that downe hee fell from his horse. And then King *Arthur* encountred with sir *Dinadan*, and hee smote him quite from his sabell, that hee fell downe to the earth. And then the noise turned a while how that the greene knights were slaine. When the King of Northgalis saw that Sir *Tristram* had a fall, then hee remembered him how great deeds of armes Sir *Tristram* had done, then hee made ready many knights, for the custome and crye was such, that what knight were smitten downe and might not be horsed againe by his fellows or by his owne strength, that as that he should be prisoner vnto the partie that had smitten him downe. So came the King of Northgalis, and hee rode straight vnto

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

unto Sir Tristram, and when hee came nigh him, hee alighted downe sodainly and he tooke Sir Tristram his horse and said thus. Noble knight I know thee not of what countrey thou art, but for the noble deeds that thou hast done this day take thee my horse and let me, doe as well as I may. For as I can helpe me thou art better worthy to haue my horse then my selfe. Gra mercy said Sir Tristram, and if I may I shall quite it you. Looke that ye goe not farre from me, and as I suppose I shall winne you an other horse. And therewith Sir Tristram mounted vpon his horse, & there he met with King Arthur, and hee gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme with his sword that King Arthur had no power to keepe his sadell. And then Sir Tristram gaue the King of Northgalis King Arthurs horse. When was there great presse about King Arthur for to horse him againe. But Sir Palomides would not suffer King Arthur to bee horsed againe, but euer Sir Palomides smote on the right hand and on the left hand mightely as a noble knight. And in the meane while Sir Tristram rode through the thickest of the presse, and smote downe knights on the right hand and on the left hand, and rased off helmes, and so passed forth to his pavilions, and left Sir Palomides on foote. And Sir Tristram changed his horse and disguised himselfe all in red, horse and harnais.

CHAP. CLVI.

How Sir Tristram changed his harnais and it was all red, and how hee demeaned him, and how Sir Palomides slew Sir Launcelots horse.

And when the Quene la beale Isoud saw Sir Tristram was unhorsed and wist not where hee was then she began to weepe. But Sir Tristram when hee was ready came galping lightly into the field, and then la beale Isoud, espied him And so hee did great deeds of armes with a great speare, so that Sir Tristram smote downe five knights or euer that hee stinted. When Sir Launcelot espied him readyly that is was Sir Tristram, and then he repented him that hee had smitten him downe. And so Sir Launcelot went out of the presse for to rest him, and lightly

and his Knights of the round Table.

And when he came againe. And so when Sir Tristram came to the field through his great force, he put Sir Palomides vpon his horse, and Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan, and then they began to meruailous deeds of armes. But Sir Palomides nor his two horses wist not who had holpen him on horsebacke againe. Neuer Sir Tristram was nigh them and succoured them, and not him, because he was changed into red armour. And all while Sir Launcelot was away. So when la beale Isoud saw that Sir Tristram was againe vpon his horse, shee was glad, and then shee laughed and made good chere. And happened Sir Palomides looked vp toward her where shee was in the window, and hee espied how shee laughed, and then hee tooke such a reioysing in himselfe that hee smote down, with his speare and with his sword all that euer hee met, through the sight of her he was so enamoured in her loue, that he seemed at that time that if both Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelot had bene both against him, they should haue wonne the worship of him. And in his heart Sir Palomides wished that with his worship he might haue to do with Sir Tristram be- fore al men, because of la beale Isoud. When Sir Palomides began to double his strength, & hee did so meruailously that all men had wonder at his deeds. And euer hee cast vp his eie to la beale Isoud. And when he saw her make such chere, hee fared like a Lion, that there might no man withstand him. And then Sir Tristram beheld how that Sir Palomides bestured him, and then hee said to Sir Dinadan. So God me helpe said Sir Palomides hee is a valiant good knight and a well enduring, but such deeds I saw him neuer doe, nor neuer heard I tell that hee did so much in his day. It is his day said Sir Dinadan, and hee would say noe more vnto Sir Tristram, but to him selfe, he said, and if ye knew whose loue hee doth, all these deeds of armes, some would Sir Tristram abate his courage. Alas said Sir Tristram, that Sir Palomides is not christened. So said King Arthur and so all the people that beheld him. When all people gaue him praise as for the best knight that day, that hee passed both Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram. Well said Sir Dinadan to him selfe, all this worship that Sir Palomides hath here this day hee may

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

way thanke the Quene I found, for had she bene away this day, sir Palomides had not gotten the prize this day. Right so there came in the field Sir Launcelot du lake, and saw and heard the noyse and crie and great worship that sir Palomides had, he dressed him against sir Palomides with a great and mightie speare and along, and thought to smite him downe. And when Sir Palomides saw Sir Launcelot come vpon him so fast, he ranne vpon Sir Launcelot as fast with his sword as he might. And as sir Launcelot should haue stricken him he smote his speare aside, and smote it a two with his sword. And Sir Palomides rushed to sir Launcelot, and thought to haue put him to a shame. And with his sword he smot of his horse necke that Sir Launcelot rode vpon. And then Sir Launcelot fell vnto the ground. When was the crie huge, and great so how sir Palomides the sarasin hath smitten downe Sir Launcelots horse. Right so were there many knights wroth with sir Palomides, because he had done that dede. Therfore many knights held there against that it was vnknighly done in a turnement to kil a horse wilfully, but if it had bene done in a plaine battaile body for body

CHAP: CLVII.

What Sir Launcelot said vnto Sir Palomides, and how that the prize of that day was giuen vnto Sir Palomides.

And when sir Ector de Maris saw Sir Launcelot his brother haue such a despite, and set on foote then he gat a speare egerly and ranne against sir Palomides, and he smote him so hard, that he beare quite from his horse. What saw sir Tristram which was in red harneis, and he smote Sir Ector de Maris quite and cleane from his horse. When Sir Launcelot dressed his shield vpon his shoulder and with his sword in his hand came straight vpon sir Palomides right fierly, and said. Wit thou well that thou hast done mee this day the greatest despite that euer any knight did to mee in turnement or in Ruffs, and therefore I will bee auenged vpon thee, therefore take heed vnto thy selfe. Ah mercy noble knight said sir Palomides and so gegint me my vnkind dede, for I haue no power

and his Knights of the round Table.

might to withstand you. And I haue done so much this day that wel I know that I neuer did so much nor neuer will againe in all my life dayes. And therefore most noble knight I require thee spare me as this day, and I promise you that I shall euer bee your knight while my life lasteth. And if thou wilt me from my worship as now yee put me from the great worship that euer I had or euer shall haue in my life dayes. Sir Launcelot, I see for to say the truth ye haue done me euillouly wel this day, and I vnderstand a partie for whose sake yee doe it, and well I wot that loue is a great mistresse. And if that my Lady were here as shee is not, wif yee well said Sir Launcelot that ye should not haue borne away the worship. Beware that your loue bee not discovered, for and Sir Tristram may know it, ye will repent it. And sith my quarell is not here, ye shall haue this day the worship as for mee considering the great trauaile and paine that ye haue had, it were no worship for me to put you from it. And therewith sir Launcelot suffered sir Palomides to depart. When Sir Launcelot by great force and might gat his owne horse trauger twentie knights. So when Sir Launcelot was hoised hee did many excellent dedes of armes & so did Sir Tristram, & sir Palomides likewise. When sir Launcelot smote downe with a speare the King of Ormadan and the King of Scotland, and the King of Wales, and the King of Northumberland, and the King of Liffnoyse. So when sir Launcelot and his fellows smote downe well for the knights. When came the King of Ireland and the King of the straight Marches to rescue sir Tristram and sir Palomides. Then began a great medle, and many knights there wer smit downe on both parties, and alwayes sir Launcelot spared sir Tristram, and he spared him. And sir Palomides would not medle with sir Launcelot. And so there was hurling here and there. And then King Arthur sent out many knights of the round table. And sir Palomides was euer in the foremost front. And sir Tristram did so strongly and so well, that the King and the knights had great meruaile of him. And then the King let him to lodging. And because that sir Palomides began first, hee went not rode out of the field to rest him, but euer

The Historie of Prince Arthur

he was doing meruailously well. both on foote and on horsebacke and longest duringe. King Arthur and all the Kings gaue Sir Palomides the honour and the degree as for that day. When Sir Tristram commanded Sir Dinadan to fetch the Queene la beale Ifond & bring her to his two pavilions that stood by the well. And so Sir Dinadan did as hee was commanded. But when Sir Palomides vnderstood and wist that Sir Tristram was in the red armour and vpon the red horse, wist yee well that he was right glad and so was Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan for they all wend that Sir Tristram had bene taken prisoner. And then euery knight drewe to their Anne. And then King Arthur and euery knight speake of those knights. But aboue all other knights they gaue Sir Palomides the degree, And all the knights that knew Sir Palomides, had wonder of his deeds. Sir said Sir Launcelot vnto King Arthur, as for Sir Palomides and hee bee the greene knight, I dare well say as for this day he is best worthy to haue the degree, for hee rested him neuer, nor neuer changed his weed, and he began first and longest held on. And yet well I wote said Sir Launcelot that there was a farre better knight then hee, and that shall be well proued as wee depart vpon paine of my life. Thus they talked on either partie And so Sir Dinadan railed with Sir Tristram and said. What Diuell is vpon thee this day. For Sir Palomides, strength feebled neuer this day, but euer he doubled his strength.

CHAP. CLVIII.

How Sir Dinadan prouoked Sir Tristram to doe well.

As thou Sir Tristram saiest all this day as thought thou were a sleepe and therefore I call thee coward. Well Sir Dinadan said Sir Tristram I was neuer called coward or now of none earthly knight in all my life. And wist thou well Sir I call my selfe neuer the more coward, though Sir Launcelot gaue me a fall. For I outcept him of all knights. And doubt ye not Sir Dinadan, and if Sir Launcelot haue a good quarell, he is ouer good for any knight that is now liuing. And yet of his saffrance, largnesse, bountie and curtesie I call him knight peerles

and his Knights of the round Table.

And so Sir Tristram was in manner wroth with Sir Dinadan. But all this language Sir Dinadan said, because hee was angry Sir Tristram, for to cause him to waken his spirits, and to be wroth. For well knew Sir Dinadan that and Sir Tristram were thoroughly wroth, Sir Palomides should not get the prise on the morrow. And for this entent Sir Dinadan said all his saying and language against Sir Tristram. Truly said Sir Palomides, as for Sir Launcelot of his noble knight hood, his courtesie, prouesse and gentlenesse I know not his peere. For this day said Sir Palomides, I did full vncureuously to Sir Launcelot and full vnknighly, and full knightly and curteously hee came againe. For and he had bene as vngentle to me as he was to him, this day I had wonne no worship, and therefore said Sir Palomides, I shall be Sir Launcelots knight while I liue. This talking was in the houses of kings. But all Kings, Knights and knights said, of cleere knight hood & pure strength, of curtesie and curtesie Sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram beare the prynces. And all knights that euer were in King Archurs dayes, there were neuer knights in King Archurs dayes did so many deeds as they did not ten knights did not halfe the deeds that they did: And there was neuer knight in their dayes that required Sir Launcelot or Sir Tristram of any quest, for they were not to their shame but they performed their desire.

CHAP. CLIX.

How King Arthur and Sir Launcelot came to see the Queene la beale Ifond, and how Sir Palomides smote downe King Arthur

On the morrow Sir Launcelot departed and Sir Tristram and la beale Ifond were ready with Sir Palomides and Sir Gareth. And so they rode all in greene full freshly besene vnto the forest. And Sir Tristram left Sir Dinadan sleeping in his bed. And as they rode it hapned that King Arthur and Sir Launcelot came in a window and they saw Sir Tristram and la beale Ifond. Sir said Sir Launcelot ponder rideth the fairest Lady of the world, except your Queene dame Gueneuer. Who is she said King Arthur. Sir said hee, it is Queene Ifond, which

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

out slept my Lady your Duene, she is percelle. Take your horse said King Arthur and aray you at all points as I will doe, and I promise you said the King I will see her. When anon they were armed and horsed, and either took a speare and rode vnto the forest. Sir said Sir Launcelot, it is not good that yee goe to nigh them, for wit yee well there are two as good knights as now are liuing, and therefore sir I pray you be not to hasty, for peradventure there will come a knight bee displeased and we come suddenly vpon them. For that said King Arthur, I will see her, for I take no force whome I greene. Sir said sir Launcelot, yee put your selfe in great jeopardy. As for that said the King, wee will take the aduantage. Right so anon the King rode and came vnto her, and graciously saluted her and said, God saue you faire Lady. Sir said, yes yee are welcome. Then the king beheld her and liked her wonderfull well with that came Sir Palomides to King Arthur and said, Thou vncourteous knight what seekst thou heer, thou art vncourteous to come vpon a Lady thus suddenly therefore withdraw thee. King Arthur took no heed of Sir Palomides words but alway he looked vpon Duene Ildon. When Sir Palomides was wroth, and therewith hee took a speare and came hurling vpon King Arthur, and smote him downe with his speare. When Sir Launcelot saw the despite of Sir Palomides he said to himselfe I am loth to haue to doe with yonder knight and not for his owne sake, but for Sir Tristrams sake. And one thing I am sure of, if I smite downe Sir Palomides, I must haue to doe with Sir Tristram, & that were quer much for me to match them both for they are two noble knights. Notwithstanding whether I live or die, needs must I reuenge my Lords and so will I whatsoeuer befall of me. And there with sir Launcelot cried to Sir Palomides, keepe thee from me. And then sir Launcelot and sir Palomides encountred together with two speares full strongly. But sir Lancelot smote sir Palomides so hard, that he went quit out of the saddle, and had a great fall. When Sir Tristram saw sir Palomides haue such a fall, he said vnto sir Launcelot, Sir knight keepe thee for I must needs iust with thee. As for that with mee said Sir Launcelot, I will not faile you,

and his Knights of the round Table.

no dread I haue of you, but I am full loth to haue to doe with you, and I might choose. For I will that yee wit that I must reuenge my speciall Lord that was vnhorsed vnwarly and vnrightly, and therefore though I haue reuenged the fall take yee no displeasure therein, for he is to me such a friend that I may not see him shamed. Anon Sir Tristram understood well by his person and by his knightly words that it was Sir Launcelot du lake. And verily Sir Tristram deemed that he had bene King Arthur, he that Sir Palomides had smitten downe. And then Sir Tristram put his speare from him, and put Sir Palomides againe on horsebacke, and Sir Launcelot put King Arthur againe on horsebacke and so departed. So God mee helpe said Sir Tristram vnto Palomides, yee did not worshipfully when yee smote downe that knight so suddenly as yee did. And wit yee well yee did your selfe great shame. For the knights came hether of their gentillesse for to see a faire Lady, and that is euery good knights duty, to behold a faire Lady. And thou had not to doe to play with a wretched before my Lady, wit thou well it will turne to anger, for he that thou smote downe was the King, and that other was the good knight sir Launcelot. But I shall not forget the words of sir Launcelot when hee called him a man of great worship, thereby I knew that it was King Arthur. And as for sir Launcelot and there had bene five hundred knights in the medow he would not haue refused none of them, and yet he said that he would refuse me, by that againe I wist that it was sir Launcelot for euer he forbearth me in euery place, and sheweth me great kindnesse. And of all knights I outtake none (say what men will say) he beareth the floure of all chivalry tell it him who will, and he be well angred and that him selfe to do his uttermost, without fauour, I know him not on line but that sir Lancelot is ouer hard for him, be it on horsebacke or on foot. I may neuer beleue said Sir Palomides that King Arthur will ride so prauely as doth a poore arraunt knight. I said sir Tristram ye know not yet my Lord King Arthur, for all knights may learn to be a good knight of him, and therefore yee may bee soze of your vnkind words to so noble a King.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

A thing that is done may not be vndone said Sir Palomides. When sir Tristram sent Quene Mond vnto her lodging in the priorie there to behold all the turnement.

CHAP. CLX.

Now the second day Sir Palomides forlooke Sir Tristram and went to the contrary part against him.

Then there was a cry made vnto all knights that when they heard a horne blow, that they should make iusts as they did the first day. And like as the brethren sir Edward and Sir Sadoke began the iusts the first day, Sir Vwaine the kings sonne Vrein and Sir Lucan the Butler began the iusts the second day. And there at the first encounter Sir Vwaine smote downe the kings sonne of Scotland And sir Lucan ranne against the king of Wales, and they brake their speates all to peeces, and they were both so fierse that they hurled together, that they fell both to the ground. When they of Wykeney hoised againe sir Lucan. And then came there in Sir Tristram de Lioness, and then sir Tristram, smote downe Sir Vwaine and Sir Lucan. And sir Palomides smote downe other two knights. And in like wise Sir Gareth smote downe other two knights. When said King Arthur vnto Sir Launcelot du lake. Wonder thre knights doe passing well, and namely the first that iusted. Sir said sir Launcelot, that knight beginneth not yet, but ye shal see him doe this day meruailous deedes of armes. And then came into the place the Dukes sonne of Wykeney, and then they began for to doe many deedes of armes. When, Sir Tristram saw him so begin, hee said vnto Sir Palomides, how feele ye your selfe, may you doe this day as yee did yester day. Nay said Sir Palomides, I feele my selfe so weary and so sore bzuisd of the deedes of yester day, that I may not endure as I did yester day. What mee repenteth said sir Tristram for I shall lack you this day. Sir said Sir Palomides trust not to me for I may not doe as I haue done All these words said sir Palomides for to deceiue sir Tristram. Sir said Sir Tristram vnto Sir Gareth, then I must trust vpon you, wherefore I beseech you

and his Knights of the round Table.

you be not farre from me to rescew mee. And if neede bee said Sir Gareth I shall not faile you in all that I may doe. When sir Palomides rode by himselfe and in despite of sir Tristram hee put himselfe in the thickest presse among them of Wykeney. And there he did so meruailous deedes of armes, that all men had great wonder of him. For there might none stand him a stroke. When Sir Tristram saw Sir Palomides do such deedes hee had great meruail of him, & said. He is weary of my company. So sir Tristram beheld him a great while, and did but little else for the noise and crie was so huge and great, that sir Tristram meruailed greatly from whence came the strength that sir Palomides had there in the field. Sir said sir Gareth vnto sir Tristram, remember ye not of the words that sir Dinadan said vnto you yester day, when he called you coward. For sooth sir, he said it for none euill. For ye are the man in the world that he most loueth, and all that hee said was for your worship, and therefore said Sir Gareth vnto sir Tristram let me know this day what ye be, and wonder yee not so vpon sir Palomides for he enforceth himselfe for to winne all the worship and honour from you. I may well beleeue said sir Tristram. And sith I vnderstand his euill will and his enuie, yee shall see if that I enlarge my self, that the noise shal be left which now is vpon him. When sir Tristram rode into the thickest of all the presse, and then he did meruailously well, and did so great deedes of armes, that all the people there said that sir Tristram did double the deedes of armes that sir Palomides had done afore hand. And then the noise went plaine from sir Palomides, and all the people cryed vpon sir Tristram. Oh Jesu said the people, see how Sir Tristram smiteth downe with his peare so many knights. And see said they all how many knights he smiteth downe with his sword, and of how many knights hee ratheth off their helmes and their shields. And so hee beate all those of Wykeney afore him. How now said sir Launcelot vnto King Arthur I told you that this day there should a knight play his pagent. Wonder woth a knight, ye may see how he doth knightly, for hee hath strength and wind. So God mee helpe said King Arthur to sir Launcelot, yee say sooth, for I saw neuer a better knight, for

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

he passeth farre sir Palomides: Sir wit ye well said sir Launcelot, it needes must be so of right, for it is himselfe that noble knight sir Tristram. I may right well beleue it said King Arthur. But when sir Palomides heard that the noyse and the crye was returned from him hee rode out a part and beheld sir Tristram. And when sir Palomides saw sir Tristram doe so maruailous wel, he wept passing soze for dispite for hee wist well that he should winne no worship that day. For wel knew Sir Palomides when sir Tristram put forth his strength and his manhood, he should get but little worship that day:

CHAP. CLXI.

How Sir *Tristram* departed out of the field and awaked Sir *Dinadan* and changed his aray all into blacke.

Then came there King Arthur and the King of Northgalis and Sir Launcelot du lake and Sir Bloberis, sir Bors de galis, and sir Ector de Maris, these thre knights came into the field with the noble knight sir Launcelot. And then sir Launcelot with the thre knights of his kin did so great deeds of armes, that all the noyse began vpon sir Launcelot. And so they beate the King of Wales and the King of Scots farre a back and made them to auoide the fiede. But sir Tristram and Sir Gareth abode still in the fiede, and endured all that euer there came, that all men had great wonder that any knights might endure so many strokes. But euer Sir Launcelot and his thre kinsmen by the commandement of Sir Launcelot fought bare sir Tristram. When said King Arthur, that is Sir Palomides that endureth so well. Nay said Sir Launcelot wit ye well it is the good knight sir Tristram de lioness. For yonder ye may see how Sir Palomides beholdeth and houeth and doth little or nought. And sir ye shall vnderstand that Sir Tristram wreneth in this day to beate vs all out of the field. And as for me said Sir Launcelot, I shall not beate him, beate him who so will: sir said Sir Launcelot vnto King Arthur, ye may see how sir Palomides houeth yonder as though hee were in a dreame, wit ye well he is full heauie that Sir Tristram doth such deeds of

and his Knights of the roud Table:

of armes. Then is hee is but a foole said King Arthur, for neuer was Sir Palomides, nor neuer shall be of such prowesse as Sir Tristram is of. And if hee haue any enuie at Sir Tristram and cometh in with him vpon his side hee is a false knight. As King Arthur and sir Launcelot thus spake, Sir Tristram rode priuily out of the presse that none espied him but la beale Mond and Sir Palomides, for they two would not let their eyes goe from Sir Tristram. And when Sir Tristram came to his pavillions, he found Sir Dinadan in his bed a sleepe, awake said Sir Tristram, yee ought for to bee ashamed so to sleepe when knights haue done in the field. When Sir Dinadan arose lightly and said. What will yee that I shall doe. Make you ready said Sir Tristram for to ride with mee into the field. So when Sir Dinadan was armed, hee looked vpon Sir Tristrams helme and vpon his shield, and when hee saw so many strokes vpon his helme and vpon his shield, hee said. In good time was I thus a sleepe, for had I bene with you I must needs for shame there haue followed you, more for shame then for any prowesse that is in me, that I see well now by the strokes that I should haue bene truly beaten as I was yesterday. Leauie your iapes said Sir Tristram, and come off, that we were in the field again. What said sir Dinadan, is your heart plucked vp now, yesterday ye fared as though yee had dreamed. So then sir Tristram was arrayed all in black harnesse. Oh Jesu said sir Dinadan, what ayleth you this day, me seemeth that yee bee wilder now then ye were yesterday. When Sir Tristram smiled and said vnto sir Dinadan, Awaite well vpon me if ye see me ouermatched like that ye euer behind me, and I shall make you ready way by Gods grace. So sir Tristram and sir Dinadan took their horses. All this espied sir Palomides both their going and their coming, and so did la beale Mond, for thee knew sir Tristram aboue all other.

CHAP. CLXII.

How Sir Palomides changed his shield and his armour for to hurt Sir Tristram and what Sir Launcelot did to Sir Tristram.

So then sir Palomides saw that sir Tristram was disguised, then he thought to doe him a shame. So Sir Launcelot rode vnto

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

unto a knight that was soze wounded which sat vnder a faire well from the field. Sir Knight said Sir Palomides I pray you that you will lend mee your armour and your shield, for mine is ouer well knowne in this field and that hath done me great damage, and yee shall haue mine armour and my shield, that is as sure as yours. I will well said the knight that yee haue mine armour and my shield if they may doe you any auaile: so sir Palomides armed him hastily in that knights armour, and take his shield that shined as bright as any chrisall or silver, and so hee came riding into the field. And then there was neither Sir Tristram nor none of King Archurs partie that knew Sir Palomides. And right so as Sir Palomides was coming into the field sir Tristram smote downe three knights euen in the sight of Sir Palomides. And then sir Palomides rode against Sir Tristram and either met with other with great speares and brake them vnto their hands, and then they dressed them together with swords full egerly. When Sir Tristram meruailed much what knight hee was that did battaile with him so mightly. Then was Sir Tristram passing wroth for he felt him passing strong, so that he deemed he might not haue to doe with the remnant of the knights becaue of the strength of sir Palomides. So they lashed together and gaue many sad strokes the one to the other. And many knights meruailed what hee might bee that so encountred with the black knight sir Tristram. Full well knew la beale Isond that there was sir Palomides that fought with Sir Tristram, for shee espied all in her window where that shee stood as sir Palomides changed his harnais with the wounded knight. And then shee began to wepe for the despite of Sir Palomides, that there shee frowned. When came in Sir Launcelot with the knights of Orkeney. And when the other partie espied sir Launcelot they cryed. Returne returne heere cometh Sir Launcelot du lake. So there came knights that said vnto him Sir Launcelot ye must needs fight with yonder knight in the black harnais, which was sir Tristram for hee had almost overcome that good knight that fighteth with the silver shield, and that was sir Palomides. When Sir Launcelot rode betwene Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides

And

and his Knights of the round Table.

And Sir Launcelot said vnto Sir Palomides. Sir knight let me haue the battaile, for yee haue neede to rest you. Sir Palomides knew sir Launcelot well and so did sir Tristram. But because that sir Launcelot was a farre hardier knight then himselfe, therefore hee was glad, and offered sir Launcelot to fight with Sir Tristram. For well wist he that sir Launcelot knew not sir Tristram. And there hee hoped that sir Launcelot should beate or shame sir Tristram, whereof sir Palomides was full well aspaied. And sir Launcelot gaue Sir Tristram full many sad strokes, but sir Launcelot knew not that he was sir Tristram, but Sir Tristram knew well that hee was Sir Launcelot. And thus fought they long together, that la beale Isond was well out of her mind for sorow. When sir Dinadan told Sir Gareth how that knight in the blacke harnais was Sir Tristram, and this is Sir Launcelot that fighteth with him which needes must haue the better of him. For sir Tristram hath had to much trouble this day. When let vs smite him downe said Sir Gareth. So it is better that wee doe said Sir Dinadan, rather then Sir Tristram should bee shamed. For yonder houeth the strong knight with the silver shield for to fall vpon Sir Tristram if neede bee. When forth withall Sir Gareth rushed vpon Sir Launcelot and gaue him a great stroke vpon his helme so hard that hee was all stoned. And then came sir Dinadan with a great speare and hee smote Sir Launcelot such a buffet, that horse and all fell to the ground. Oh Jesu said Sir Tristram to sir Gareth and to sir Dinadan. Fie for shame why haue ye smitten downe so good a knight as hee is, and namely when I had to doe with him. For ye doe your selfe great shame, and him no dishonour, for I held him resonable hot though yee had not holpen me. And then came sir Palomides that was disguised and smote downe Sir Dinadan from his horse. When sir Launcelot because that Sir Dinadan had smitten him downe afoze hand, he assayled sir Dinadan passing soze. And sir Dinadan defended him mightily. But well vnderstood Sir Tristram that Sir Dinadan might not endure Sir Launcelot, wherefore Sir Tristram was sorry. When came Sir Palomides fresh vpon sir Tristram, and when Sir Tristram saw him coming, he thought

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

to deliuer him at once. because he would helpe Sir Dinadan, for he stood in great perill with Sir Launcelot. When sir Tristram hurled vnto sir Palomides, and gaue him a great buffet, and Sir Tristram gat sir Palomides and pulled him downe vnderneath him, and so fell sir Tristram with him, and sir Tristram leapt vp lightly and left sir Palomides, and went betwene sir Launcelot and sir Dinadan, and then they began to doe battaile together. Right so sir Dinadan gat sir Tristrams horse and said on high, so that sir Launcelot might heare it. My Lord sir Tristram, take your horse. And when sir Launcelot heard him name sir Tristram. Oh Jesu said sir Launcelot, what haue I done, I am dishonoured. Ah my Lord sir Tristram said sir Launcelot why were yee disguised, ye haue put your selfe in great perill this day. But I pray you noble knight pardon me, for and I had knowne you, wee had not done this battaile. Sir said sir Tristram this is not the first kindnesse ye haue shewed me, and so they were both horsed againe. Then all the people on the one side gaue sir Launcelot the honour and the degree, and the other side all the people gaue vnto the noble knight sir Tristram the honour and the degree. But sir Launcelot said nay thereto, for I am not worthy to haue this honour, for I will report me vnto all knights that sir Tristram hath bene longer in the field then I, and he hath smitten downe many moe knights this day then I haue done. And therefore I will giue sir Tristram my voice and my name, and so I prate you all my Lordes and fellowes so to doe. And then was there the hole voice of Dukes and earles, barons and knights, that Sir Tristram this day is proued the best knight.

CHAP. CLXIII.

How Sir Tristram departed with la beale Isond, and how Sir Palomides followed and excused him.

Then they blest vnto lodging and Quene Isond was led into her pavillions. But wit you well that shee was wondrous wroth out of measure with sir Palomides, for she had seen all his treason from the beginning vnto the ending. And all
this

and his Knights of the round Table.

this while neither sir Tristram neither sir Gareth, nor sir Dinadan knew not of the treason of Sir Palomides. But afterward ye shall here that there befell the greatest debate betwene sir Tristram and sir Palomides that might be. So when the turnement was done Sir Tristram, sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan rode with la beale Isond vnto their pavillions, and alway Sir Palomides rode with them in their company disguised as hee was. But when Sir Tristram had espied him, that hee was the same knight with the shield of silver, the which held him so hot that same day. Sir knight said Sir Tristram, wit ye well that here is none of vs that hath any neede of your fellowship, and therefore I pray you depart from vs: sir Palomides answered againe as though he had not knowen sir Tristram. Wit ye well sir knight that from this fellowship will I not depart, for one of the best knights of the world commanded me to bee in this company, and till he discharge me of my seruice I will not be discharged. By that Sir Tristram knew that it was sir Palomides: Sir Palomides said sir Tristram, are yee such a knight, ye haue bene named wrong for ye haue bene called a gentle knight and as this day yee haue shewed me great vngentlenesse, for ye had almost brought me vnto my death. But as for you I suppose I should haue done wel enough, but Sir Launcelot with you was ouermuch for mee, for I know no knight liuing but Sir Launcelot is ouer good for him, and hee will doe his uttermost. Alas said sir Palomides, are ye my Lord sir Tristram. Ye sir, & that ye know well enough. By my knight hood said sir Palomides vntill now I knew you not for I wend that yee had bene the King of Ireland, for I wote well that yee beare his armes. His armes I bare said Sir Tristram, and that will I stand by, for I wan them once in a field of a full noble knight whose name was sir Marhaus, and with great paine I wan that good knight, for there was none other recovery, but sir Marhaus died through false leeches, and yet neuer hee yelded him to me. Sir said Sir Palomides, I wend yee had bene tarred vpon sir Launcelots partie, and that caused me to turne. Ye say well said Sir Tristram, and so I take you, and I forgine if yeu. So then they rode vnto their pavillions, and when they

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

were alighted they vnarmed them and washed their faces and hands, and to set them at their table, and went to meate. And when la beale Isond saw sir Palomides shee changed her colour and for wrath she might not speake. Anon sir Tristram espied her countenance and said. Madame for what cause make ye vs such cheere, wee haue beene soze trauailed this day. By deare Lord said la beale Isond, for gods sake be yee not displeased with mee, for I may none other wise doe, for I saw this day how yee were betrayed, and nigh brought vnto your death. Truly sir I saw every deale, how and in what wise, and therefore sir how should I suffer in your presence such a felon and traitour as sir Palomides is, for I saw him with mine eye how hee beheld you when yee went out of the field. For alway hee looked still vpon his horse till hee saw you come in againeward. And then forth with I saw him ride to the hurt knight and changed harneys with him, and then straight I saw him how hee rode into the field. And anon as hee had found you, hee encountred with you, and thus wilfully sir Palomides did battle with you, and as for him sir I was not greatly asfeard, but I dread sir Launcelot that knew you not. Madame said sir Palomides yee may say what ye will, I may not contrary you, but by my knighthood I knew not sir Tristram. Sir Palomides said sir Tristram I will hold you excused but well I wote yee speared me but little, but all is pardoned on my part. Then la beale Isond held downe her head and said no more.

CHAP. CLXIV.

How King *Arthur* and Sir *Launcelot* came into their pavilions as they sate at supper, and of Sir *Palomides*.

AND therewithall two knights armed came into their pavilions and there they alighted both and came in armed at all peeces. Faire knight said sir Tristram ye are too blame to come thus armed at all peeces vpon vs while wee are at our meat, if yee would any thing, when we were in the field yee might haue ealed your hearts. Not so said the one of these knights, wee come not for that entent, but wit yee well sir

Tristram

and his Knights of the round Table.

Tristram we be come hither as your friends, and I am come here said the one Sir to see you, and this knight is come for to see la beale Isond. When said sir Tristram, I require you doe off your helmes that I may see you. What will we doe at your desire said the knights. And when their helmes were off, sir Tristram thought that he should know them. Then said sir Dinadan p. iuely vnto sir Tristram. Sir that is sir Launcelot du lake that spake vnto you first, and the other is my Lord King Arthur. When said sir Tristram vnto vnto la beale Isond. Madame arise, for heere is my Lord King Arthur. Then the king and the queene kissed, and sir Launcelot and sir Tristram embraced either other in armes, and then there was love without measure. And at the request of la beale Isond King Arthur and sir Lancelot were vnarmed. And then was there mery talking. Madame said King Arthur, it is many a day sith that I haue desired to see you. For ye haue bene praised for so faire, & now I dare say ye are the fairest that euer I saw, and sir Tristram is as faire and as good a knight as any that I doe know therefore me seemeth ye are right well beset together. Sir God thanke you said sir Tristram and la beale Isond of your great goodnesse and largenesse, for ye are pearles. And thus they talked of diuers things, and of all the whole iusting. But for what cause (said King Arthur) were yee sir Tristram against vs, yee are a knight of the round table, of right yee should haue bene with vs. By Lord said sir Tristram, here is sir Dinadan and sir Gareth of *Wkeney*, your owne nephews caused me to be against you. My Lord King Arthur said sir Gareth, I may well beare the blame, but it was sir Tristrams owne deeds. What may I repent said sir Dinadan, for this unhappy sir Tristram brought vs to this turneyment, and many great buffets hee caused vs to haue. When King Arthurs and sir Launcelot laughed that they might not sit. What knight was that said King Arthur that held you so short, he with the shield of silver. Sir said sir Tristram, heere hee sitteth at this beere. What said King Arthur was it sir Palomides. Wit yee well it was hee said la beale Isond. So God me helpe said King Arthur, that was unknighly done of you of so good a knight, for I heard much

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

much people call you a courteous knight. Sir said Sir Palomides, I knew not sir Tristram, because hee was so disguised: so God me helpe said Sir Launcelot, it may well be, for I knew not Sir Tristram. But I marvelle why hee turned on our partie. What was done for the same cause said Sir Launcelot. As for that said sir Tristram I haue pardoned him, and I would hee right loth to leaue his fellowship, for I loue his company. So they left off and talked of other maters. And in the euening King Arthur and sir Launcelot departed vnto their lodging. But wit yee well Sir Palomides had great enuie for all that night he had no rest in his bed, but wailed and wept out of measure. So on the morrow sir Tristram, Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan arose early and then went vnto sir Palomides chamber and there they found him fast on slepe, for hee had all night watched, and it was scene vpon his cheekes that hee had wept full sore. Say nothing said Sir Tristram for I am sure hee hath taken anger and sorrow for the rebuke that I gaue him and la beale Ifond:

CHAP. CLXV.

How Tristram and Sir Palomides did the next day, and how King Arthur was ynhorsed.

And then sir Tristram let call sir Palomides, and bad him make him ready, for it was time to goe vnto the field. When they were ready they were armed and clothed all in red both la beale Ifond and they all. And so they led her passing freshly through the field into the Wrioze where was her standing. And then they heard thre blasts blow, and every King and knight dressed him vnto the field. And the first that was ready to fust was Sir Palomides, and sir Kainus le strange, a knight of the round table, and so they two encountred together, but sir Palomides smote Sir Kainus so hard that hee smote him quite ouer his horse croupe. And forthwith sir Palomides smote downe an other knight, and then hee brake his speare and drew out his sword and did wonderful well. And then the noise began greatly vpon sir Palomides. Lo said King Arthur,

and his Knights of the round Table:

thur, yonder Sir Palomides beginneth to play his pagent. So God me helpe said King Arthur, hee is a passing good knight. And right as they stood thus talking, in came sir Tristram as thunder, and hee encountred with sir Kaye the senehall and there smote him downe quite from his horse, and with the same speare Sir Tristram smote downe thre knights more, and then hee drew out his sword and did meruailously. And then the noise and crie changed from sir Palomides and turned vnto Tristram and all the people cried. Oh Tristram, Oh Tristram. And then was Sir Palomides cleane forgotten. When now said Sir Launcelot vnto King Arthur, yonder rideth a knight that platieth his pagents. So God me helpe said King Arthur to sir Launcelot, yee shall see this day that yonder two knights shall doe here many wonders. Sir said sir Launcelot the one knight waiteth vpon the other, and enforceth himselfe through enny to passe the noble knight sir Tristram, and yee know not the priuy enuy that sir Palomides hath vnto him. For all that the noble sir Tristram doth, is through cleane knight-hood. And when sir Gareth and sir Dinadan did wonderful deeds of armes as two noble knights, so that King Arthur speake of them great honour: the kings and knights of Sir Tristrams side did passing well, and held them truely together. Then King Arthur and sir Launcelot tooke their horses and dressed them, and gate them into the thickest of the presse. And there Sir Tristram unknowing smote down King Arthur. And then sir Lancelot would haue rescued him, but ther were so many vpon him, that they pulled him downe from his horse. And then the King of Ireland and the King of Scotland did there paine to take King Arthur and Sir Launcelot prisoners. When Sir Launcelot heard them say so, hee fared as it had bene an hangrey Lyon, for hee fared so that no knight durst come nigh him. Then came Sir Ector de maris and hee beare a speare against Sir Palomides, and brake it vpon him all to shewers. And then Sir Ector came againe and gaue Sir Palomides such a baw with his sword, that hee stouped downe vpon his saddle both, & forth withal sir Ector pulled downe sir Palomides with his feet, and then sir Ector gat sir Lancelot an horse and brought him

him the horse, and had him mount vpon him. But Sir Palomides kept before him and gate the horse by the bzidell, and lept into the sadell. So God me helpe said Sir Launcelot, yee are better woorthy to haue that horse then I. Then sir Ector brought Sir Launcelot an other horse. Grantevye gentle brother said Sir Launcelot. And so when hee was horsed againe, with one speare he smote downe foure knights, and then Sir Launcelot brought vnto King Arthur one of the best of the foure horses. Then Sir Launcelot with King Arthur and with a few of his knights of sir Launcelots kinne did meruailous deeds of armes. For that time Sir Launcelot smote downe and pulled downe thirtie knights. Notwithstanding, the other partie held them so fast together that King Arthur and his knights were overmatched. And when Sir Tristram saw what labour King Arthur and his knights did, and most specially the noble deeds that Sir Launcelot did with his owne hands, hee meruailed greatly thereof.

CHAP. CLXVI.

How Sir Tristram turned to King Arthurs side, and how Sir Palomides would not.

Then sir Tristram called vnto him sir Palomides, sir Gareth and sir Dinadan and said thus vnto them. My faire fellows wit yee well that I will turne vnto King Arthurs partie, for I saw neuer so saw men doo so well. And it will be shame to vs knights that be of the round table, to see our Lord King Arthur and that noble knight sir Launcelot, to bee dishonoured. It will be well done said sir Gareth and sir Dinadan. Doe your best said Sir Palomides, for I will not change my part that I come in withall. That is for my sake said sir Tristram, God speed you well in your iourney. And so departed Sir Palomides from them. Then Sir Tristram Sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan turned to Sir Launcelot. And then sir Launcelot smote downe the king of Ireland quite from his horse. And after that Sir Launcelot smote downe the king of Scotland and the king of Wales. And then King Arthur ranne vnto

and his Knights of the round Table.

to sir Palomides, and smote him quite from his horse. And then sir Tristram beare downe all that he met. sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan did there as noble knights. When all the parties began to flee. Alas said sir Palomides that euer I should see this day, for now haue I lost all the worship that I wanne. And then sir Palomides went his way wailing. And so withdrew him till hee came to a well, and there he put his horse from him and did off his armour, and wailed and wept like as hee had bene a wood man. Then many knights gaue the price vnto sir Tristram. And there were many that gaue the price vnto sir Launcelot. Faire Lords said sir Tristram, I thanke you of the honor that ye would giue me, but I pray you hartely that ye wil giue your voice vnto sir Launcelot, for by my faith sir Tristram, I will giue sir Launcelot my voice. But sir Launcelot would not haue it. And so the prise was giuen betweene them both. Then euery man rode vnto his lodging. And Sir Bleoberis & Sir Ector de Maris rode with sir Tristram and quene la beale Iond vnto their pavilions. When as sir Palomides was at the well wailing and weeping, there came to him the King of Wales and the King of Scotland, and when they saw sir Palomides in that rage. Alas said they that so noble a man as ye be should be in this arate. And then those two kings gat sir Palomides horse againe, and made him to arme him and mount vpon his horse. And so hee rode with them, making great dole. So when Sir Palomides came nigh the pavilions there as sir Tristram and la beale Iond were, then Sir Palomides prayed the two kings to abide there a while till hee had spoken with Sir Tristram. And when hee came vnto the gate of the pavilions, there Sir Palomides said all on high. Where art thou sir Tristram de Lyones. Sir said sir Dinadan that is sir Palomides. What Sir Palomides said sir Tristram, will yee not come in heere among vs. He on the traitour said sir Palomides, for wit thou well and it were day light as it is night. I would slee thee with mine own hands, and if euer I may get thee said sir Palomides, thou shalt die for this daies deed. Sir Palomides said sir Tristram, ye blame me wrongfully, for had ye donne as I did, yee had wonne worship. But sith yee giue me so large warning,

The Historie of Prince Arthur

ing. I shall be well ware of you. He on thæ traitour said sir Palomides and therewith departed. When on the morrow Sir Tristram, sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector sir Gareth and Sir Dinadan what by water and what by land they brought la beale Isond vnto Joyous gard and there rested them seven dayes and made all the mirths and disports that they could deuise. And King Arthur and his knights drem vnto Camelot. And Sir Palomides drem with the two kings. And ever hee made the greatest dole that any can thinke. For hee was not all onely so dolorous for the departing from la beale Isond, but hee was a part as sorrowfull to depart from the fellowship of sir Tristram, for sir Tristram was so kind and so gentle, that when sir Palomides remembred him thereof, he might not be merry.

CHAP. CLXVII.

How Sir Bleoberis and Sir Ector reported to Quene Gueneuer the beauty of la beale Isond.

And so at the seven nights end Sir Bleoberis and sir Ector departed from sir Tristram and from the Quene la beale Isond, and these two knights and Sir Gareth and sir Dinadan abode with sir Tristram. And when Sir Bleoberis and sir Ector were come there as Quene Gueneuer was lodged in a Castle by the sea side, and through the grace of God the Quene was recovered of her malady. then she asked the two knights from whence they came. They said that they came from sir Tristram and from la beale Isond. How doth sir Tristram (said Quene Gueneuer) and la beale Isond. Truly said those two knights hee doth as a noble knight should doe, and as for the Quene la beale Isond, shee is pearelesse of all Ladies, for to speake of her beantie, bountie and mirth, and of her goodnesse, we saw neuer her match as far as we haue riden and gone. Oh mercy Iesu said Quene Gueneuer, so saith all the people that hath seene her and spoken with her, I would to God that I had part of her conditions, and it misfortuned mee of my sicknesse while that turnement endured. And as I suppose I shall neuer see in all my life such an assemble of knights and Ladies as ye had

and his Knights of the round Table.

had there. When the knights told her how sir Palomides won the degree a the first day with great noblenesse, and the second day sir Tristram won the degree. and the third day sir Launcelot won the degree. Well said Quene Gueneuer who did best of all these three daies. So God me helpe said the knights, sir Launcelot and Sir Tristram had least dishonour. And wit yee well sir Palomides did passing well and mightily. but he turned against the partie that he came withall, and that caused him to lose a great part of his worship, for it seemeth that sir Palomides is passing enuious. When shall hee neuer win worshippe said Quene Gueneuer, for and it happen an enuious man to win worship, he shall hee dishonoured twice therefore. And for this cause all men of worship hate an enuious man, and will shew him no fauour, and hee that is curteous, kind and gentle, hath fauour in euery place.

CHAP. CLXVIII.

How Sir Palomides complained by a Well, and how Sir Epinogris came and found him, and of both their sorrowes.

Now leaue off this matter, and speake we of Sir Palomides that rode and lodged with him the two kings, where of the kings were right sorrowfull. When the King of Ireland sent a man of his vnto sir Palomides, and gaue him a great courser. And the King of Scotland gaue him great gifts, and saide they would haue had Sir Palomides to haue abiden with them, but in no wise hee would not abide, and so hee departed and rode as aduentures would guide him, till it was nigh none. And then in a Forrest by a Well sir Palomides saw where lay a wounded knight, and his horse bound by him which made the greatest dole that euer he heard man make, for euer hee wept and sighd as though hee would die. Then Sir Palomides rode nere him and saluted him mildly and said. Faire knight why waile you so, let mee my lye downe and waile with you, for doubt ye not I am much more heauier then ye are. For I dare say (said sir Palomides) that my sorrow is an hundred fold more then yours is, and therefore let vs complaine either to

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

other. First said the wounded knight, I require you to tell me your name, for and ye be none of the noble knights of the round table, ye shall neuer know my name whatsoeuer come of me. Faire knight said Sir Palomides, such as I am be it better or bee it worse, wit ye well that I am sir Palomides, sonne and heire vnto sir Astolbor and sir Safire and sir Segwarides are my brethren, and wit ye well as for my selfe I was neuer christened, but my two brethren bo truly christened. Oh noble knight said that knight, well is me that I haue met with you, and wit ye wel that my name is sir Epinogris the kings sonne of Dorset thumberland. Now sit ye downe said sir Epinogris, and let vs either complaine vnto other. Then sir Palomides began his complaint. Now shall I tell you said sir Palomides what woe I endure. I loue the fairest Queene and Lady that euer beare life, and wit ye well her name is la beale Isond King Markes wife of Cornewalle. That is great folly said sir Epinogris for to loue Quene Isond, for one of the best knights in the world loueth her that is Sir Tristram de lioness. That is truth said sir Palomides for none knoweth that better then I doe for I haue bene in Sir Tristrams fellowship this moneth and la beale Isond together. Alas said Sir Palomides unhappie man that I am, now haue I lost the fellowship of sir Tristram for euer, and the loue of la beale Isond for euer, and am neuer like to see her more. And sir Tristram and I bee either to other mostall enemies. Well said sir Epinogris, sith that ye loued la beale Isond, loued she euer againe by any thing that ye could thinke or wit, or els did ye euer reioyce her in any pleasure. Nay by my knighthood said Sir Palomides I neuer espyed that euer shee loued mee more then all the world nor neuer had I pleasure with her but the last day she gaue me the foulest rebuke that euer I had, the which shall neuer goe from my heart, and yet I well deserued that rebuke. for I had not done knightly, and therefore I haue lost the loue of her and of sir Tristram for euer. And I haue many times enforced my selfe to do many deeds for la beale Isonds sake, & she was the causer of my worship wining. Alas said sir Palomides, now haue I lost all the worship that euer I wan, for neuer shall befall mee such proues as I had in the fellowship of sir Tristram

C H A P.

and his Knights of the round Table.

C H A P. CLXIX.

How Sir Palomides brought vnto Sir Epinogris his Lady. And how Sir Palomides and Sir Safire were assailed

Now may said Sir Epinogris your sorrow is but lapes to my sorrow for I reioyced my Lady and wan her with my hands, and lost her againe alas the day. Thus first I wan her said Sir Epinogris. My Lady was an Carles daughter. And as this Carle and two of his knights came from the turnement of Lonazep, and for her sake I set vpon this Carle and vpon his two knights, my Lady then being present, and so by fortune there I slew the Carle and one of the knights and the other knight fled, and so that night I had my Lady. and on the morrow as shee and I tooke our rest by this well side, there came here vnto me an arvaunt knight, his name was sir Helior le preste, an hardy knight. And this same Sir Helior challenged mee for to fight for my Lady. And then we went to battell first on horseback, and then on foote. But at the last Sir Helior wounded mee so sore, that he left me for dead, and so hee toke my Lady with him. And thus my sorrow is farre more then yours, for I haue reioyced and ye reioyced neuer. What is truth said sir Palomides, but sith that I can neuer recouer my selfe, I shall promise you if I can meete with Sir Helior, I shall get you your Lady againe or else he shall beate me. Then Sir Palomides made Sir Epinogris to take his horse and so they rode vnto an hermitage, and there Sir Epinogris toke his rest. And in the meane while sir Palomides walked priuily for to rest him vnderneath the leaues. And there beside hee saw a knight coming with a shield that hee had scene Sir Hector de maris beate afore hand and there came afor him about ten knights. And so these ten knights houred vnder the leaues for heate. And anon after there came a knight with a greene shield, and there in a white Lyon leading a Lady vpon a palfrey. When this knight with the greene shield the which seemed to be master of these knights rode fierly after Sir Helior for it was he that had hurt Sir Epinogris. And when he came nigh Sir Helior,

he

The Historie of Prince Arthur

hee bad him defend his Lady, I will defend her said sir Helior vnto my power. And so they ranne together, so that either of these two knights smote other downe horse and all vnto the ground. And then they gat vp lightly and drew out their swords and they lashed together mightily more then an houre. All this Sir Palomides saw and beheld, but euer the knight with Sir Ectors shield was bigger, and at the last this knight smote Sir Helior downe and then that knight unlaced his helme for to haue stricken off his head. And then he cried mercy and prayed him to saue his life. When Sir Palomides pressed him vpon his sate, for hee wist well that that said Lady was Sir Epinogris Lady and hee had promised him for to get her againe. When Sir Palomides went straight vnto that Lady and took her by the hand and asked her whether she knew one that hight Sir Epinogris. Alas said she that euer he knew me, or I him, for I haue for his sake lost my Lordship and also his life that hee hath lost greueth me most of all. Not so Lady said Sir Palomides come on with me, for here is sir Epinogris in this hermitage. Well is me said the Lady and he be on liue. With that wilt thou with that Lady said the knight with Sir Ectors shield. I will doe with her where mee list said sir Palomides. With that thou wel said that knight thou speakest ouer largely, as though thou seemest to haue me at a batage becruse thou sawest me doe battaile but late. Weneest thou knight to haue that Lady away from me so lightly, nay thinke it neuer, and thou were as good a knight as Sir Launcelot, or Sir Tristram or Sir Palomides, but thou shalt winne her dearer then euer did I. And so they went to battaile on foote, and there they gaue many sad strokes, and each wounded other passing sore. And thus they fought still more then an houre. When sir Palomides had maruaile what knight he might be that was so strong, and so wel breathed, and thus said Sir Palomides. Knight I require thee tell me thy name. With that thou wel said that knight I dare tel thee my name, so that thou wilt tell me thy name. I will said sir Palomides. Truly said that knight, my name is Sir Safire, come vnto king Artabor, and Sir Palomides and Sir Segwarides are my bretheren. Now wit you well my name is Sir Palomides.

and his Knights of the round Table

des. Then Sir Safire knelted downe vpon both his knees, and prayed him of mercie. And then they unlaced their helmes, and either kissed other weeping. And in the meane while Sir Epinogris arose out of his bed, for hee heard them by the strikes. And so he armed him for to helpe sir Palomides if neede were.

CHAP. CLXX.

How Sir Palomides, and Sir Safire conducted Sir Epinogris to his Castle and of other aduentures

And then sir Palomides took the Lady by the hand and brought her vnto Sir Epinogris, and there was great ioy betweene them, for either solued for ioy when they were met. Faire knight and Lady said Sir Safire it were pittie to depart you, Jesu send you ioy either of other. O mercie gentle knight said Sir Epinogris, and much more thanke be vnto my Lord Sir Palomides, the which thus hath throught his promise made mee to get my Lady. When Sir Epinogris required sir Palomides and his brother Sir Safire for to ride with them vnto his Castle for the safegard of his person. Sir said sir Palomides, we will be ready for to conduct you, for because that yee are so sore wounded. And so was Sir Epinogris horsed and his Lady behind him vpon a soft ambling horse. And then they rode straight vnto his Castle where they had good cheere and were in ioy, as great as euer sir Palomides and Sir Safire euer had in their life dayes. So on the morrow sir Palomides and Sir Safire departed and rode as fortune would lead them: and so they rode all that day vntill after noone. And at the last they heard a great weeping & a great noise down in a manor. Sir said Sir Safire, let vs wit what noyse this may be. I wil wel said sir Palomides. And so they rode forth till they came to a faire gate of a manor and ther sat an old man saying his prayerson beades. When sir Palomides and sir Safire alighted downe and left their horses and went within the gates, and there they saw full golly men weeping.

Faire fellows said Sir Palomides, wherfore weepe ye and mak this sorrow. And one of the knights of the castle beheld sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Palomides and knew him, and then he went to his fellows and said. Faire fellows wit ye well all we haue in this Castle the same knight that slew our Lord at Nonajep, for I know him well, it is Sir Palomides. When they went to harness all that might beare harness, some on horsebacke and some on foote, to the number of threescore. And when they were ready, they came freshly vpon sir Palomides and vpon Sir Safire with a great noise, and said thus. Keepe thee Sir Palomides, for thou art knowne, and by right thou must be dead, for thou hast slaine our Lord, and therefore wit thou well, we will slay thee, therefore defend thee. When sir Palomides and Sir Safire the one set his backe vnto other, and gaue many great strokes, and also took many great strokes. And thus they fought with twentie knights and sortie gentlemen and yeomen, nigh two houres. But at the last though they were loth Sir Palomides and Sir Safire were taken and yeldded and put in a strong prison. And within thre dayes twelue knights passed vpon them. And they found Sir Palomides, guilty and Sir Safire not guilty of their Lords death. And when Sir Safire should bee deliuered, there was great dole betweene Sir Palomides and him. And many pitteous complaints Sir Safire made at his departing, that there is no maker can rehearse the tenth part. Faire brother said Sir Palomides, let bee thy dolour and thy sorrow and if I bee ordained for to die a shamefull death, welcome be it, but and I had wist of this death that I am deemed vnto, I should neuer haue yeldded me. So Sir Safire departed from his brother with the greatest dolour and sorrow that euer made knight. And on the morrow they of the Castle ordained twelue knights to ride with Sir Palomides vnto the father of the same knight that sir Palomides slew. And so they bound his leggs vnder an old steds belly. And then they rode with Sir Palomides vnto a castle by the sea side, which Castle hight Pelownes, and there Sir Palomides should haue iustice done on him. Thus was their ordenance. And so they rode with Sir Palomides fast by the Castle of Joyous gard. And as they passed by that Castle there came riding out of that Castle by them one that knew sir Palomides. And when that knight saw Sir Palomides bound vpon

all

and his Knights of the round Table.

on a crooked courser, the knight asked sir Palomides for what cause hee was so led. Ah my faire fellow and knight said Sir Palomides, Ride toward my death for slaying of a knight at the turnement of Nonajep. And if I had not departed from my lord Sir Tristram as I ought not to haue done, now might I haue bene sure to haue had my life saued. But I pray you sir knight recommend mee vnto my Lord Sir Tristram and vnto my Lady Quene la beale Isond, and say to them if I euer trespassed vnto them, I aske them forgiveness. And also I beseech you recommend mee vnto my Lord King Arthur, and vnto all the fellowship of the round table vnto my power. When that knight wept for pittie of Sir Palomides. And then with hee rode to Joyous gard as fast as his horse might runne. And lighty that knight descended downe from his horse and went vnto sir Tristram and there hee told him all as yee haue heard before. And euer the knight wept as he had bene mad.

CHAP. CLXXI.

How Sir Tristram made him ready for to rescue Sir Palomides, but Sir Launcelot rescued him or he came

AS Sir Tristram heard how Sir Palomides went to his death he was heauie to heare that and said. Howbeit I am wroth with Sir Palomides, yet will not I suffer him to die so shamefull a death, for he is a full noble knight. And then anon Sir Tristram was armed, and tooke his horse and two squires with him, and rode a great pace vnto the Castle Pelownes where Sir Palomides was iudged to death. And these twelue knights which led Sir Palomides passed by a Well whereas Sir Launcelot was, which was alighted there and had tied his horse vnto a tree, and tooke his helme to drinke of that water. And when hee saw these knights come, hee put on his helme hee suffered them to passe by him. And then hee was ware how Sir Palomides was bound and led shamefully to death. Ah Iesus said Sir Launcelot what misadventure is befallen him that hee is thus led toward his death. For soth said sir Launcelot, it were shame to mee to suffer this noble knight to die, and I

might

might

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

might helpe him, therefore I will helpe him whatsoeuer come of it, else I shall die for Sir Palomides sake. And then Sir Launcelot mounted vpon his horse and gat his speare in his hand, and rode after the twelue knights that led sir Palomides. Faire knights said Sir Launcelot, whether lead yee that knight, if becometh him fullill to ride bound. When these 12. knights sodenly turned their horses and said to Sir Launcelot: sir knight we counsell thee not to medle with this knight, for hee hath deserued death and vnto the death hee is indged. What me repenteth said Sir Launcelot, that I may not horrow him with fairnesse for hee is ouer good a knight to die such a shamefull death. And therefore faire knight said Sir Launcelot, keepe your selfe as well as ye can, for I will rescue that knight, or else die for him. And then they began for to dresse their speares, and sir Launcelot smote the foremost downe horse and man. And so hee serued thre moe with one speare and then that speare brake. And therewith all sir Launcelot drew out his sword, and then hee smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and within a while he left none of those knights but that they were laid vnto the earth, and the most part of them were sore wounded. And then Sir Launcelot tooke the best horse that he found and loosed Sir Palomides of his bands, and set him vpon that horse, and so they returned againe vnto Joyous gard. When was Sir Palomides ware of Sir Tristram how he came riding. And when sir Launcelot saw him, he knew him right well. But Sir Tristram knew not him, because that Sir Launcelot had vpon his shoulder a golden shield. So Sir Launcelot made him ready to iust with sir Tristram, because that sir Tristram should not wend that he were sir Launcelot. When Sir Palomides cried out a loud vnto sir Tristram. O my Lord I require you iust not with this knight, for this good knight hath saued me from the death. When sir Tristram heard him say so hee came a soft trotting pace toward them. And then Sir Palomides said O my Lord sir Tristram much aue I beholden vnto you, that of your great goodnesse that yee would proffer your noble body to rescue me undeserued, for I haue greatly offended you. Notwithstanding said Sir Palomides, here met

and his Knights of the round Table.

met we with this noble knight, that worshipfully and manly rescued me from twelue knights, and smote them all downe and wounded them sore.

CHAP. CLXXII.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Launcelot with Sir Palomides came to Joyous garde, and of Sir Palomides, and of Sir Tristram.

Faire knight said Sir Tristram vnto Sir Launcelot du lake, of whence be ye. I am knight arraunt said Sir Launcelot, that rideth to seeke aduentures. What is your name said Sir Tristram. Sir said sir Launcelot, as at this time I will not tell you. When Sir Launcelot said vnto sir Tristram and vnto sir Palomides. For either of you are met together I will depart from you. Not so said Sir Tristram. I pray you of your knight hood to ride with me vnto my Castle. What ye well said sir Launcelot, I may not ride with you, for I haue many dees to doe in other places, that at this time I may not abide with you. A mercy Jesu said sir Tristram I require you as yee bee a true knight vnto the order of knight hood that ye will sport you with mee this night. When Sir Tristram had a graunt of Sir Launcelot, how be it, though hee had not desired him he would haue ridden with them or else soone he would haue come after them. For sir Launcelot came for none other cause into that countrey but for to see Sir Tristram. And when they were come within Joyous garde, they alighted, and their horses were led into a stable, and then they vnarmed them. And when sir Launcelot had put off his helme sir Tristram and sir Palomides knew him. When sir Tristram tooke sir Launcelot in his armes, and in like wise did la beale Isond. And sir Palomides kneeled downe vpon his knees and thanked sir Launcelot when sir Launcelot saw sir Palomides kneele, he lightly tooke him vp & said. What thou well Sir Palomides, I & any knight in this land of worship ought of very right to succour and rescue so noble a knight as yee are proued and renowned throughout all this realme endlong and werthwart. And then was was there great ioy among them. And the oftner that Sir Palomides saw la beale Isond,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the heuier hee wared day by day. When sir Launcelot within three or foure dayes departed. And with him rode sir Ector de Maris. And sir Dinadan and sir Palomides were left there with sir Tristram a two monethes and moze. But euer sir Palomides faded and mourned, that all men had great maruaile wherefore he faded so away. So vpon a day in the dawning sir Palomides went to the Forrest by himselfe alone, and there he found a Well, and then he looked into the Well, and in the water he saw his visage how hee was disturbed and faded, and nothing like as he was wont to bee.

What may this meane said sir Palomides. And thus he said to himselfe. A Palomides Palomides, why art thou defamed, thou that was wont to be called one of the fairest Knights of the world. Now I will no moze leade this life, for I loue that the which I may neuer get nor recouer. And therewith hee laide him downe by the well. And then he began to make a rime of la beale Isond and him. And in the meane while sir Tristram was that same day ridden into the forrest to chace the hart of greese. But sir Tristram would neuer moze ride on hunting vnarmed, because of sir Breuselaunce pitie. And so as sir Tristram rode into that Forrest vp and downe, hee heard one sing merbailously loud. And that was Sir Palomides that lay by the Well. And then sir Tristram rode softly thither, for he dreamed that there was some Knight arraunt that was at the well. And when Sir Tristram came nigh him, hee descended downe from his horse, and tied his horse fast vnto a tree, and then hee came nere, him on foote. And anon hee was ware where as lay sir Palomides by a Well and sung loud and merrily. And euer the complaints were of the Quene la beale Isond, the which were maruailously well made, and ful and dolefully and pitiously sad. And all the while song the noble Knight Sir Tristram hard from the beginning vnto the ending, the which grieved him right sore. But then at the last when sir Tristram had heard all sir Palomides complaints, he was wroth out of measure, and had thought to haue slaine him there as hee lay. But Sir Tristram remembred himselfe that sir Palomides was unarmed, and [of the noble name that sir Palomides had, and the
name

and his Knights of the round Table.

name that he had himselfe, and then he made a restraint of his anger. And so he went vnto Sir Palomides a soft pace and said. Sir Palomides I haue hard al thy complaints al thy treason that thou hast owed mee so long. And wilt thou well therefore thou shalt die. And if it were not for shame of Knighthood thou shouldst not escape my hands, for now I know well thou hast awaited me with treason. Tell mee said sir Tristram how thou wilt aquite thee. Sir said sir Palomides, thus I will aquite me. As for Quene la beale Isond ye shall wit that I loue her aboue all other Ladies of the world. And well I wot it shall befall me for her loue, as it befell to the noble Knight Sir Kay hedious, that died for the loue of la beale Isond. And now sir Tristram I wil that ye wit that I haue loued the Quene la beale Isond many a day, and she hath bene the causer of all my worship or else I had bene the most simplest Knight in the world for by her and because of her I haue won the worship that I haue. For when I remembred me of la beale Isond I wanne the worship where soeuer I came for the most part. And yet I had neuer reward nor bounty of her dayes of my life, and yet haue I been her Knight guardonlesse. And therefore sir Tristram for any death I dread not, for I had as rather die as liue. And if I were armed as thou art, I should lightly doe battaile with thee. Well haue ye uttered your treason said. Sir Tristram. I haue done you no treason said sir Palomides for loue is free for all men, and though I haue loued your Lady, shee is my Lady as well as yours, how be it I haue wrong if any wrong be, for ye reioyce her and haue your desire of her, and so had I neuer, nor neuer am like to haue. And yet shall I loue her to the uttermost daies of my life as well as yee.

CHAP. CLXXII.

How there was a day set betweene Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides for to fight and how Sir Tristram was hurt.

Then said sir Tristram, I will fight with you vnto the uttermost I graunt said sir Palomides for in a better quirell keepe I neuer to fight, for and I die of your hands, of a better
knights

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Knights hands may I not be staine. And sithen I vnderstand that I shall neuer reioyce the Quene la beale Isond, I haue as good a will to die as to liue. When set yee a day of battaile said Sir Tristram. This day fiftene dayes said Sir Palomides will I meete with you here by in the medow vnder Joyous gard. He for shame said Sir Tristram will yee set so long a day, let vs fight to morrow. Not so said Sir Palomides, for I am feeble and leane and haue bene long sick for the loue of la beale Isond, and therefore I will rest mee till that I haue my strength againe. So then Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides promised faithfully to meete atja Well as that day fiftene dayes. I wel remember said Sir Tristram to Sir Palomides, that yee brake me a promise when that I rescued you from Sir Bruse saunse pitie and the nine knights, and then yee promised me to meete at the peron and the graue beside Camelot, whereat that time yee failed of your promise. Well ye well said Sir Palomides vnto Sir Tristram, I was as that day in prison, so that I might not hold my promise. So God mee helpe said Sir Tristram, and ye had kept your promise, this work had not bene here at this time. Right so departed Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides. And so Sir Palomides tooke his horse and his harnais and rode vnto King Arthurs Court. And there Sir Palomides gat him foure knights and thre sergeants of armes. And so hee returned againe to ward Joyous gard. And in the meane while Sir Tristram chased and hunted at all manner of venery. and about a thre dayes afoze that the battaile should be. as Sir Tristram chased an Hart, ther was an archer shot at the Hart, and by misfortune he smote Sir Tristram in the thickest of the thigh and wounded him righ soze, and the arrow flew Sir Tristrams horse. And when Sir Tristram was so soze hurt, hee was passing heauie, and wit yee well hee bled soze. And then hee tooke an other horse and rode straight vnto Joyous gard with full great heauinesse, moze for the promise that hee had made with Sir Palomides, as to doe battaile with him within thre dayes after. then for any hurt that hee had in his thigh. Wherefore there was neither man nor woman that might chere him with any thing that they could make vnto him, neither Quene la beale Isond. For euer Sir

Tristram

and his Knights of the round Table.

Tristram deemed that Palomides had smitten him so because hee should not be able to doe battaile with him at the day set.

CHAP. CLXXIIII.

How that Sir Palomides kept his day for to haue foughten, but Sir Tristram might not come, and of other matters.

But in no wise there was no knight about Sir Tristram that would beleue that euer Sir Palomides would hurt Sir Tristram, neither by his hands nor by none other consenting. When when the fifteenth day was come, Sir Palomides came to the Well with foure knights with him of King Arthurs Court, and thre sergeants of armes. And for this intent Sir Palomides brought the knights with him and the sergeants at armes, for they should beare record of the battaile betwene Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides. And the one sergeant brought his helme, the other his speare, and the third his sword. So Sir Palomides came into the field, and there he abode nigh two houres. And then he sent a squire vnto Sir Tristram and desired him to come into the field for to hold his promise. Where the squire was come to Joyous gard, and that Sir Tristram hard of his comming, hee commanded that the squire should come to his presence there as hee lay in his bed. My Lord Sir Tristram said Sir Palomides squire, wit ye well my Lord Sir Palomides abideth you in the field, and he would wit whether yee will doe battaile or not. Ah my faire brother said Sir Tristram, wit thou well that I am right heauie for these tidings, therefore tell Sir Palomides, and I were well at ease I would not lye here, nor hee should haue no neede for to send for mee, and I might either ride or goe. And because thou shalt say that I am no lye. Sir Tristram shewed him his thigh that the wound was sixe enthes deepe. And now thou hast seene my hurt, tell thy Lord that this is no fained matter. And tell him that I had rather then all the gold of King Arthur, that I were whole and sound. And tell Sir Palomides that as soone as I am whole I shall seeke him endlong and overthwart, and that I promise you as I am true knight: and if euer I may meete with him

He

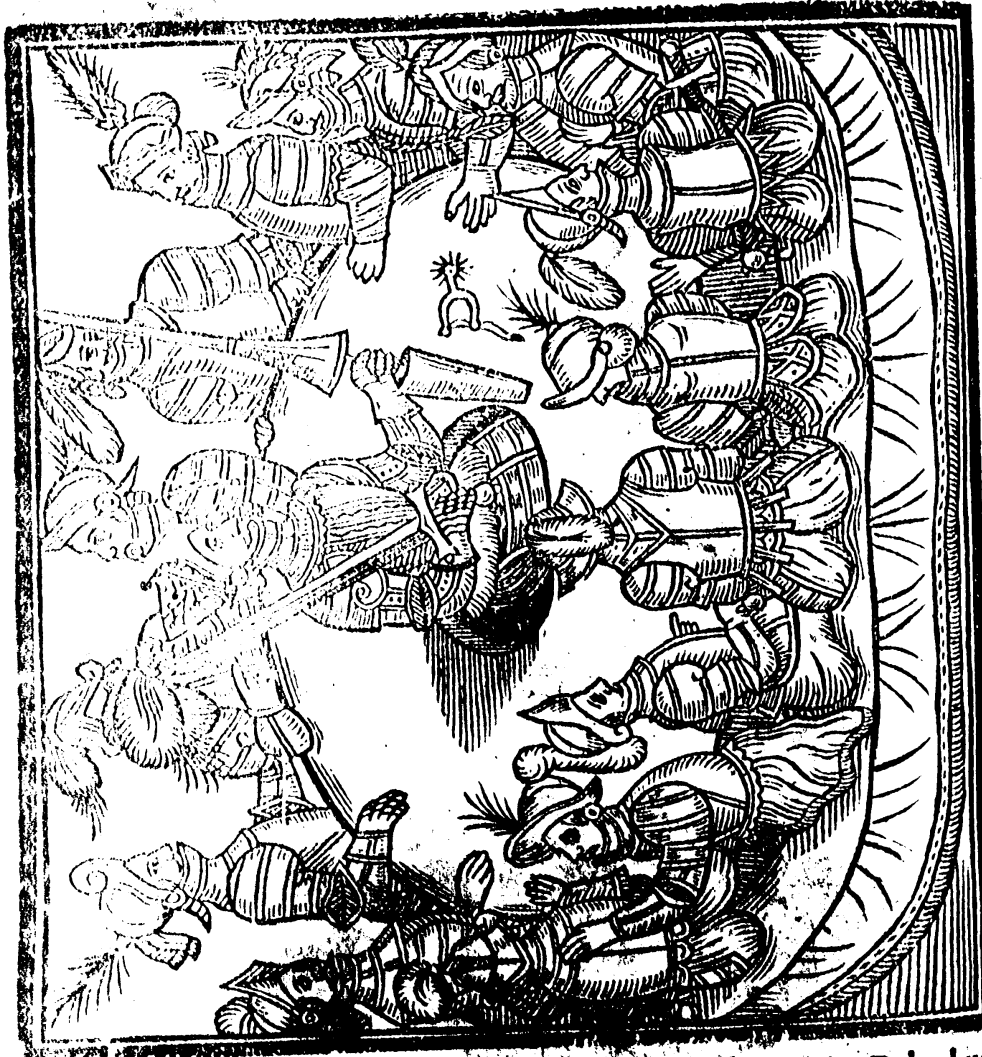
hee

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

he shall haue battaile of me his fill. And when Sir Palomides wist that Sir Tristram was hurt hee was glad and said. Now am I sure I shall haue no shame. for I wot well I would haue had no handling of him, and by likelyhood I must needes haue had the worse. For hee is the hardiest knight in battaile that is now liuing except sir Lancelot. And then departed Sir Palomides wheras fortune would lead him. And within a moneth Sir Tristram was whole of his hurt. And then he tooke his armour and rode from countrey to countrey, and all the strange aduentures he achiened wheresoener he rode. And alwaies hee enquired after Sir Palomides, but of all that quarter of Sommer Sir Tristram could neuer meete with Sir Palomides, but thus as Sir Tristram sought and enquired after Sir Palomides Sir Tristram achiened many great battailes, where through all the noyse fell to Sir Tristram, and it ceased of sir Launcelot. And therefore sir Launcelots bzytheren and his kinsmen would haue slaine sir Tristram, because of his great fame. But when Sir Launcelot wist how his kinsmen were set he said to them openly. Wit ye well that and the enuie of you all to be so hardy to waite vpon my Lord sir Tristram with any hurt, shame or vilany as I am true knight, I shall slay the best of you with mine owne hands. Fie for shame would ye for his noble deeds, awaite vpon him to slay him. Jesu defend said Sir Launcelot that euer any noble knight as sir Tristram is should be destroyed with treason. Of this the noyse and fame sprang into Cornwaile, and among them of Liones, whereof they were passing glad and made great ioy. And then they of Liones sent letters vnto sir Tristram of recommendation, and many great gifts to maintaine sir Tristrams estate. And euer now and then sir Tristram resorted vnto Joyous gard, whereas la beale Moud was that loued him as her selfe.

FINIS.

King *Arthur* and his valiant Knights of the round Table.
Sir Tristram. Sir Launcelot. Sir Galahad. Sir Perciual.
Sir Gawain. Sir Ector. Sir Bors Sir Lionel. Sir Grief.
Sir Gaheris. Sir Tor. Sir Acolon. Sir Ewaine. Sir Marhaus.
Sir Pelleas Sir Sagris. Sir Turquine Sir Kay. Sir Gareth



Sir Beaumans. Sir Bersunt. Sir Palomides. Sir Beleobus.
Sir Lallomare. Sir Galahalt. Sir Lamoracke. Sir Fro.
Superabilis. Sir Paginet. Sir Belyoure.

THE MOST ANCIENT AND FAMOUS HISTORY OF THE RENOWNED PRINCE

ARTHUR

King of Britaine,

The Third Part.

Wherein is declared his Life and Death,
 with all his glorious *Battailes* against the
 Saxons, Saracens and Pagans,
 which (for the honour of his
 Country) he most wor-
 thily atcheiued.

As also, all the Noble Acts, and Heroicke
 Deeds of his Valiant KNIGHTS of
 the ROUND TABLE.

Newly refined, and published for the delight, and
 profit of the READER.

LONDON,

Printed by *William Stansby*,
 for *Iacob Bloome*, 1634.

THE CONTENTS AND Chapters of the third.

PART.

- H**ow Sir *Launcelot* rode on his adventures, and how he holp
a dolorous Lady from paine. And how he fought: with a
dragon. chap. 1
- How Sir *Launcelot* came vnto King *Pelles*, and of the *Sancgreall*
and how hee begate *Galabad* vpon faire *Elaine* King *Pelles*
daughter. chap. 2
- How Sir *Launcelot* was displeased when hee knew that hee had
laien by dame *Elaine*, and how she was deliuered of *Galabad*
chap. 3
- How Sir *Bors* came to dame *Elaine* and saw *Galabad* and how
he was fed with the *Sancgreall*. chap. 4
- How Sir *Bors* made Sir *Pediner* to yeeld him, and of meruailous
adventures that he had, and how he achiued them. chap. 5
- How Sir *Bors* departed, and how Sir *Launcelot* was rebuked of
Queene *Guenener*, and of his excuse. chap. 6
- How Dame *Elaine* *Galabads* mother came in great state vnto
Camelot and how Sir *Launcelot* behaued him there. chap. 7
- How dame *Brisen* by enchantment brought Sir *Launcelot* to
dame *Elaines* bed. And how Queene *Guenener* rebuked him.
chap. 8
- How dame *Elaine* was commanded by Queene *Guenener* for
to auoide the Court, and how Sir *Launcelot* became mad.
chap. 9
- What sorrow Queene *Guenener* made for Sir *Launcelot*, and
how he was fought by Knights of his kinne. cap. 10
- How a seruant of Sir *Aglouales* was slaine, and what vengeance
Sir *Aglouale* and Sir *Percinale* did therefore. chap. 11
- How Sir *Percinale* departed secretly from his brother, and how
hee loosed a Knight bound with a chaine, and of other things.
chap. 12

The Table.

How Sir *Percivale* met with Sir *Ector*, and how they fought long together, and how they had almost slaine each other. chap. 13

How by miracle they were both made whole by the comming of the holy vessell of the Sancgreall. chap. 14

How Sir *Lancelot* in his madnes tooke a sword and fought with a Knight, and after lept in a bed. chap. 15

How Sir *Lancelot* was caried in a horse litter, and how Sir *Lancelot* rescued Sir *Bliant* his host. chap. 16

How Sir *Lancelot* fought against a boore and slew him, and how he was hurt, & after brought vnto an hermitage. chap. 17

How Sir *Lancelot* was knowen by dame *Elane*, and how hee was borne into a chamber, and after healed by the holy Sancgreall. chap. 18

How Sir *Lancelot* after that hee was whole and had his minde, he was ashamed, and how dame *Elaine* desired a castle for him. chap. 19

How Sir *Lancelot* came into Ioyous Ile, and there hee named himselfe *le Cheualier mal fat*. chap. 20

Of a great turnement in the Ioyous Ile, and how Sir *Percivale* fought with him. chap. 21

How each of them knew other, and of their great courtesie. And how his brother Sir *Ector* came vnto him, and of their ioy. chap. 22

How Sir *Bors* and Sir *Lionell* came to King *Brandagere*, and how Sir *Bors* tooke his sonne *Helene le blanke*, and of Sir *Lancelot*. chap. 23

How Sir *Lancelot* with Sir *Percivale* and Sir *Ector* came to the Court and of the great ioy of him. chap. 24

How *la beale Isoud* counselled Sir *Tristram* to goe vnto the court of the great feast of Penrecost. chap. 25

How Sir *Tristram* departed vnarmed and met with Sir *Palomides* and how they smote each other, and how Sir *Palomides* forbore him. chap. 26

How that Sir *Tristram* gat him harnis of a Knight which was sore hurt, and how hee overthrew Sir *Percivale*. chap. 27

How Sir *Tristram* and Sir *Palomides* fought long together and after

was recorded, & how Sir *Tristram* made him to be christened. chap. 28

How at the Vigill of the feast of Penrecost entred into the Hall before King *Arthur* a damosell and desired Sir *Lancelot* for to come & dub a Knight, and how he went with her. chap. 29

How the letters were found written in the siege perillous, and of the meruailous aduenture of the sword in a stone. chap. 30

How Sir *Gawaine* assaied to draw out the sword. And how an old man brought in Sir *Galahad*. chap. 31

How the old man brought Sir *Galahad* vnto the siege perillous and set him therein, and how all the Knights meruailed therof. chap. 32

How King *Arthur* shewed the stone houting on the water to Sir *Galahad* and how he drew out the sword. chap. 33

How King *Arthur* had all the Knights together for to lust in the meadow beside Camelot or they departed. chap. 34

How the Queene desired to see Sir *Galahad* and how after all the Knights were replenished with the holy Sancgreall, and how they auowed the enquest of the same. chap. 35

How great sorrow was made of the King and the Queene and ladies for the departing of the Knights, and how they departed. chap. 36

How Sir *Galahad* gat him a shield And how they sped that pre- pared to take downe that shield. chap. 37

How Sir *Galahad* departed with the shield. And how King *E-*laine had receiued the shield of *Joseph of Aramathy*. chap. 38

How *Joseph* made a Crosse vpon the white shield with his blood, and how Sir *Galahad* was by a Munke brought to a tombe. chap. 39

Of the meruaile that Sir *Galahad* heard and saw in the tombe, and how he made *Melias* Knight. chap. 40

Of the aduenture that Sir *Melias* had and Sir *Galahad* reuenged him, and how Sir *Melias* was caried into an Abbey. chap. 41

How Sir *Galahad* departed and how he was commanded to goe vnto the Castle of Maidens for to destroy the wicked custome. chap. 42

How Sir *Galahad* fought with the Knights of the Castle, and destroyed

The Table.

- destroyed the wicked custome: chap.43
 How sir *Gawaine* came vnto the Abbey for to follow after Sir
Galabad and how hee was shriuen vnto an hermite. chap.44
 How sir *Galabad* met with sir *Launcelot* and with sir *Percinale*
 and smote them both downe and departed from them. chap.45
 How sir *Launcelot* halfe sleeping and halfe waking saw a sicke
 man borne in a horse litter, and how hee was healed with the
 Sancgreall. chap.46
 How a voice speake to sir *Launcelot*, and how he missed his horse
 and his helme, and after went on foote. chap.47
 How sir *Launcelot* was shriuen of his sinnes, and what sorrow he
 made. And of the good ensamples that were shewed him. chap.48
 How sir *Percinale* came vnto a Recluse and asked her counsaile
 and how she told him that she was his aunt. chap.49
 How *Merlin* likned the round table to the world, and how the
 Knights that should achieue the Sancgreall should be knowne: chap.50
 How a yeoman desired him to get againe an horse, and how sir
Percinale hackney was slaine, & how he gat an horse. chap.53
 Of the great danger that sir *Percinale* was in by his horse, and
 how he saw a serpent and a Lyon fight. chap.54
 Of the vision that sir *Percinale* saw, and how his vision was ex-
 pounded, and of his Lyon. chap.55
 How sir *Percinale* saw a ship comming toward him and how the
 Lady of the ship told him of her disseritance. chap.56
 How sir *Percinale* promised her helpe, and how he required her
 of loue, and how he was saued from the same seend. chap.57
 How sir *Percinale* for pennance roue himselfe through the thigh.
 And how the damosell was knownen for the Deuill. chap.58
 How sir *Launcelot* went into a Chappell, where hee found dead
 in a white shirt, a man of religion of an hundred winters old. chap.59
 How men would haue hewen a dead man, and it would not bee,
 and how that sir *Launcelot* tooke the haire of the dead man. chap.60
 Of a vision that sir *Launcelot* had and how he told it to an hermit,
 and desired counsaile of him. chap.61

The Table.

- How the hermit expounded to sir *Launcelot* his vision, and told
 him that sir *Galabad* was his sonne. chap.62
 How sir *Launcelot* iusted with many Knights, and how hee was
 taken. chap.63
 How sir *Launcelot* told his vision vnto a woman, and shee ex-
 pounded it vnto him. chap.64
 How sir *Gawaine* was nigh wery of the queit of the Sancgreall,
 and of his meruailous dreame. chap.65
 Of the vision that sir *Ector de Maris* had, and how he iusted with
 Sir *Vaineles anoures* his sworne brother. chap.66
 How sir *Gawaine* and sir *Ector* came vnto an hermitage for to bee
 confessed. And how they shewed to the hermit their visions. chap.67
 How the hermit *Nacien* expounded their vision. chap.68
 Of the good counsaile that the hermit gaue vnto them: chap.69
 How sir *Bors* met with an hermit, and how hee was confessed
 vnto him, and of the pennance that was enioyned him. chap.70
 How sir *Bors* was lodged with a Lady and how hee tooke vpon
 him for to fight against a champion for her land. chap.71
 Of a vision that sir *Bors* had that night and how hee fought and
 ouercame his aduersary: chap.72
 How the Lady was restored vnto her lands by the battaile of Sir
Bors, and of his departing, and how hee met sir *Lionell* taken
 and beaten with thornes and also of a maide which should
 haue beene deuoured. chap.73
 How Sir *Bors* left to rescue his brother and went to rescue the
 damosell. And how it was told that Sir *Lionell* was dead. c.74
 How sir *Bors* told his dreame which hee had dreamed, vnto a
 priest, and of the good counsaile that the priest gaue him. c.75
 How the Deuill in a womans likenesse would haue had sir *Bors* to
 haue layen by her, & how by Gods grace he escaped. chap.76
 Of the holy communication of an abbot vnto sir *Bors*, and how
 the abbot counsailed him. chap.77
 How sir *Bors* met with his brother Sir *Lionell*. And How Sir
Lionell would haue slaine sir *Bors* his brother. chap.78
 How sir *Colgremance* fought against sir *Lionell* for to saue sir *Bors*
 and how the hermit was slaine. chap.79
 How

The Table.

- How Sir *Lionell* slew Sir *Colgreane*, and how after hee would
ahue slaine his brother Sir *Bors*. chap. 80
- How a voice was heard that charged sir *Bors* not to touch him,
and of a cloud that came betweene them. chap. 81
- How sir *Galahad* fought at a turnement, and how he was knowen
of sir *Gawaine* and sir *Ector de maris*. chap. 82
- How sir *Galahad* rode with a Damosell, and came into a shippe
where as sir *Bors* and sir *Percinable* were in. chap. 83
- How sir *Galahad* entred into the ship, and of a faire bed that was
therein, with other meruailous things and of a sword. chap. 84
- Of the meruailous of the sword and of the scabbard. chap. 79
- How King *Pelles* was smitten through both the thighs because
he drew the sword, and of meruailous histories. chap. 86
- How *Salomon* tooke *Dauids* sword by the counsaile of his wife,
and of other meruailous matters. chap. 87
- Of the wonderfull tale of King *Salomon* and his wife. chap. 88
- How sir *Galahad* and his fellowes came vnto a Castle, and how
they were fought withall, and how they slew their enemies,
and of other matters. chap. 89
- How the three Knights with sir *Percinales* sister came into the
waist forrest and of an hart & fouer Lyons, and of other things. chap. 90
- How they were desired of a strange custome, the which would
not obey And how they fought & slew many Knights. chap. 91
- How Sir *Percinales* sister bled a dish full of blood for to heale a
gentlewoman, whereof she died, and how the body was put
into a ship. chap. 92
- How sir *Galahad* and sir *Percinable* found in a castle many tombs
of maidens that had bled to death. chap. 93
- How sir *Launcelot* entred into the ship, where Sir *Percinales*
sister lay dead. And how hee met with sir *Galahad* his sonne. chap. 94
- How a Knight brought vnto sir *Galahad* an horse, and bad him
come from his father Sir *Launcelot*, chap. 95
- How sir *Launcelot* was before the doore of the chamber, wherein
the holy Sancgreall was. chap. 96
- How sir *Launcelot* had layen twentie foure dayes and as many
nights

The Table.

- nights as a dead man, and of other matters. chap. 97
- How sir *Launcelot* returned toward Logris, and of other aduen-
tures that hee saw in the way. chap. 98
- How sir *Galahad* came vnto King *Mordrains* and of other mat-
ters and adventures. chap. 99
- How sir *Percinable* and sir *Bors* met with sir *Galahad*, and how
they came to the Castle of Corbonek, and of other matters. chap. 100
- How sir *Galahad* and his fellowes were fed with the Sancgreall,
and how our Lord appeared to them, and of other matters. chap. 101
- How sir *Galahad* anoynted with the blood of the speare the mai-
med King and of other adventures. chap. 102
- How they were fed with the Sancgreall while they were in
prison, and how sir *Galahad* was made King. chap. 103
- Of the sorrow that sir *Percinable* and sir *Bors* made when sir
Galahad was dead. And of the death of sir *Percinable*, and of
other matters. chap. 104
- Of theioy that King *Arthur* and Queene *Gueneuer* had of the
achiuement of the Sancgreall. And how sir *Launcelot* fell to
his old loue againe. chap. 105
- How the Queene commanded Sir *Launcelot* to auoid the Court,
and of the sorrow that sir *Launcelot* made. chap. 106
- How at a dinner the which the Queene made, there was a Knight
poisoned the which Sir *Mador* laide vpon the Queene. chap. 107
- How Sir *Mador* apeached the Queene of treason, and there was
no Knight would fight for her at the first time. chap. 108
- How the Queene required Sir *Bors* to fight for her, and how hee
granted her vpon a condition, and how hee warned sir *Laun-
celot* thereof. chap. 109
- How oneday Sir *Bors* made him ready for to fight for Queene
Gueneuer and how an other discharged him when hee should
fight. chap. 110
- How sir *Launcelot* fought against sir *Mador de la port* for the
Queene, and how he ouercame Sir *Mador* and discharged the
Queene. chap. 111
- How the truth was knowen by the damosell of the lake, and of
diuers

The Table.

- diuers others matters. chap. 112
 How sir *Launcelot* rode to *Astolat*, and receiued a sleeue to beare
 vpon his helme at the request of a maide. chap. 113
 How the turneyment began at *Winchester*, and what Knights
 were at the lusts and of other matters. chap. 114
 How sir *Launcelot* and sir *Lanaine* entred into the field against
 them of King *Arthurs* Court, and how sir *Launcelot* was hurt. chap. 115
 How sir *Launcelot* and sir *Lanaine* departed out of the field, and
 in what icopardy sir *Launcelot* was. chap. 116
 How sir *Launcelot* was brought vnto an hermite for to be healed
 of his wound and of other matters. chap. 117
 How sir *Gawain* was lodged with the Lord of *Astolat*, and there
 hee had knowledge that it was sir *Launcelot* that beare the
 red sleeue. chap. 118
 Of the great sorrow that sir *Bors* made for the hurt of sir *Laun-*
celot. And of great anger that Queene *Gueneuer* had because
 sir *Launcelot* beare the red sleeue. chap. 119
 How sir *Bors* sought sir *Launcelot* and found him in the hermitage
 and of the lamentation betweene them. chap. 120
 How sir *Launcelot* armed him, for to assay himselfe if hee might
 beare armes, and how his wound brake out againe. chap. 121
 How sir *Bors* returned and told tidings of sir *Launcelot*, and of
 the turnement, and vnto whom the prize was giuen. chap. 122
 Of the great lamentation that the faire waide of *Astolat* made
 when sir *Launcelot* should depart, and how she die for his
 loue. chap. 123
 How the corps of the faire maide of *Astolat* was buried before King
Arthur, and of the burying, and how sir *Launcelot* offered the
 masse peny. chap. 124
 How sir *Launcelot* after that hee was hurt of a woman
 came vnto an hermite, and of other matters. chap. 125
 Of a great lusts done all the Christmass, and of a great lusts and
 turneyment ordained by King *Arthur*, and of sir *Launcelot*. chap. 126
 How King *Arthur* meruailed him much of the iusting and tur-
 neyment in the field, and how hee rode and found sir *Launcelot*. chap. 127

The Table.

- the loue is likned vnto summer. chap. 128
 Queene *Gueneuer* rode on Maying with certaine Knightes
 the round table, clothed all in greene. chap. 129
 Sir *Meliagrance* tooke Queene *Gueneuer* and all her
 knights which were sore hurt in fighting. chap. 130
 Sir *Launcelot* had word how the Queene was taken, and
 how sir *Meliagrance* layed an embushment for sir *Launcelot*. chap. 131
 How sir *Launcelot* horse was slaine, and how sir *Launcelot*
 rode in a Chariot for to rescue the Queene. chap. 132
 How sir *Meliagrance* required forgiuenesse of Queene *Guene-*
uer, and how she appeased sir *Launcelot*, and of other matters. chap. 133
 How sir *Launcelot* came in the night to the Queene, and lay with
 her, and how sir *Meliagrance* appeached the Queene of
 treason. chap. 134
 How sir *Launcelot* answered for the Queene, and waged battaile
 against sir *Meliagrance*. And how sir *Launcelot* was taken
 in a trap. chap. 135
 How sir *Launcelot* was deliuered out of prison by a Lady, and
 how hee tooke a white courser, and came for to keepe his day. chap. 136
 How sir *Launcelot* came the same time that sir *Meliagrance*
 rode him in the field, and dressed him to battaile. chap. 137
 How sir *Vyre* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court for to be healed
 of his wounds, and how King *Arthur* would begin to handle
 him. chap. 138
 How King *Arthur* handled sir *Vyre* and after him many other
 knights of the round table. chap. 139
 How sir *Launcelot* was commanded by King *Arthur* to handle
 sir *Vyre*, and anon hee was whole, and how they thanked
 him. chap. 140
 How there was a part made of an hundred Knights against an
 hundred Knights, and of other matters. chap. 141
 How sir *Lanaine* and sir *Mordred* were busie vpon Sir *Gawaine*
 and how they closed the loue betweene sir *Launcelot* and Queene
Gueneuer. chap. 142
 How

The Table.

- diuers others mattes. *chap. 112*
 How sir *Launcelot* rode to *Astolat*, and receiued a fleecue to beare
 vpon his helme at the request of a maide. *chap. 113*
 How the turneyment began at *Winchester*, and what Knights
 were at the Iusts and of other matters. *chap. 114*
 How sir *Launcelot* and sir *Lauaine* entred into the field against
 them of King *Arthurs* Court, and how sir *Launcelot* was hurt. *chap. 115*
 How sir *Launcelot* and sir *Lauaine* departed out of the field, and
 in what icopardy sir *Launcelot* was. *chap. 116*
 How sir *Launcelot* was brought vnto an hermite for to be healed
 of his wound and of other matters. *chap. 117*
 How sir *Gawain* was lodged with the Lord of *Astolat*, and there
 hee had knowledge that it was sir *Launcelot* that beare the
 red fleecue. *chap. 118*
 Of the great sorrow that sir *Bors* made for the hurt of sir *Laun-*
celot. And of great anger that Queene *Gueneuer* had because
 sir *Launcelot* beare the red fleecue. *chap. 119*
 How sir *Bors* sought sir *Lancelot* and found him in the hermitage
 and of the lamentation betweene them. *chap. 120*
 How sir *Launcelot* armed him, for to assay himselfe if hee might
 beare armes, and how his wound brake out againe. *chap. 121*
 How sir *Bors* returned and told tidings of sir *Launcelot*, and of
 the turnement, and vnto whom the prise was giuen. *chap. 122*
 Of the great lamentation that the faire waide of *Astolat* made
 when sir *Launcelot* should depart, and how shee died for his
 loue. *chap. 123*
 How the corps of the faire maide of *Astolat* arriued before King
Arthur, and of the burying, and how sir *Launcelot* offred the
 masse peny. *chap. 124*
 How sir *Launcelot* after that hee was hurt of a gentlewoman
 came vnto an hermite, and of other matters. *chap. 125*
 Of a great Iusts done all the Christmasse, and of a great Iusts and
 turneyment ordained by King *Arthur*, and of sir *Launcelot*. *chap. 126*
 How King *Arthur* meruailed him much of the iustling and tur-
 neyment in the field, and how hee rode and found sir *Launco-*
lot. *chap. 127*

The Table.

- How true loue is likned vnto summer. *chap. 128*
 How Queene *Gueneuer* rode on Maying with certaine Knight^s
 of the round table, clothed all in greene. *chap. 129*
 How Sir *Meliagrance* tooke Queene *Gueneuer* and all her
 Knights which were sore hurt in fighting. *chap. 130*
 How Sir *Launcelot* had word how the Queene was taken, and
 how Sir *Meliagrance* layed an embushment for sir *Lancelot*. *chap. 131*
 How sir *Launcelot*'s horse was slaine, and how sir *Launcelot*
 rode in a Chariot for to rescue the Queene. *chap. 132*
 How sir *Meliagrance* required forgiuenesse of Queene *Guene-*
uer, and how shee appealed sir *Launcelot*, and of other matters. *chap. 133*
 How sir *Launcelot* came in the night to the Queene, and lay with
 her, and how sir *Meliagrance* appeached the Queene of
 treason. *chap. 134*
 How sir *Launcelot* answered for the Queene, and waged battaile
 against sir *Meliagrance*. And how sir *Launcelot* was taken
 in a trap. *chap. 135*
 How sir *Launcelot* was deliuered out of prison by a Lady, and
 how hee tooke a white courser, and came for to keepe his day. *chap. 136*
 How sir *Launcelot* came the same time that sir *Meliagrance*
 abode him in the field, and dressed him to battaile. *chap. 137*
 How sir *Vrre* came vnto King *Arthurs* Court for to bee healed
 of his wounds, and how King *Arthur* would begin to handle
 him. *chap. 138*
 How King *Arthur* handled sir *Vrre* and after him many other
 Knights of the round table. *chap. 139*
 How sir *Launcelot* was commanded by King *Arthur* to handle
 his wounds, and anon hee was whole, and how they thanked
 God. *chap. 140*
 How there was a part made of an hundred Knights against an
 hundre dKnights, and of other matters. *chap. 141*
 How sir *Agraine* & sir *Mordred* were busie vpon Sir *Gawaine*
 for to disclose the loue betweene sir *Launcelot* and Queene
Gueneuer. *chap. 142*

The Table.

- How sir *Agrawaine* disclosed their loue vnto King *Arthur*, and how that King *Arthur* gaue them licence for to take him. chap. 143
- How sir *Lancelot* was espied in the Queenes chamber, and how sir *Agrawaine* and sir *Mordred* came with 12. Knights to sleie him. chap. 144
- How sir *Lancelot* slew sir *Colgrenaunce*, and armed him in his armour. And after slew sir *Agrawaine* and twelue of his felowes. chap. 145
- How sir *Lancelot* came to sir *Bors* and told him how hee had sped, and in what aduenture he had beene, and how he escaped chap. 146
- Of the counsaile and aduise which was taken by Sir *Lancelot* and his friends for to saue the Queene. chap. 147
- How sir *Mordred* rode hastily vnto the King for to tell him of the fray and death of sir *Agrawaine* his brother and of other things. chap. 148
- How sir *Lancelot* and his kinsmen rescued the Queene from the fire, and how hee slew many Knights. chap. 149
- Of the sorrow and lamentation of King *Arthur* for the death of his two nephewes and other good Knights, and also for the Queene his wife. chap. 150
- How King *Arthur* at the request of sir *Gawaine* concluded to make warre against sir *Lancelot*, and laid siege to his Castle, called Ioyous gard. chap. 151
- Of the communication betweene King *Arthur* and sir *Lancelot*, and how King *Arthur* reproveth him. chap. 152
- How the cosins and kinsmen of sir *Lancelot* exhorted him for to goe out to doe battaile, and how they made them ready. chap. 153
- How sir *Gawaine* iusted and sinote downe sir *Lionell*, and how sir *Lancelot* horsed King *Arthur*. chap. 154
- How the Pope sent downe his Bulls for to make peace, and his sir *Lancelot* brought the Queene vnto King *Arthur*. chap. 155
- Of the deliuerance of the Queene to the King by sir *Lancelot* & what language sir *Gawaine* gaue sir *Lancelot*. chap. 156
- Of the communication betweene Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Lancelot*, with much other language. chap. 157

The Table.

- How Sir *Lancelot* departed from King *Arthur* and from Ioyous gard for to goe ouer the sea, and what Knights went with him. chap. 158
- How Sir *Lancelot* passed ouer the Sea into his owne land, and how he made great Lords of the Knights that went with him. chap. 159
- How King *Arthur* and Sir *Gawaine* made a great host ready to goe ouer sea to make warre on Sir *Lancelot*. chap. 160
- What message Sir *Gawaine* sent vnto sir *Lancelot*, & how King *Arthur* laid siege vnto Benwike and of other matters. chap. 161
- How Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Lancelot* did battaile together, and how Sir *Gawaine* was hurt. chap. 162
- Of the sorrow that King *Arthur* made for the warre, and of another battaile, where also Sir *Gawaine* had the worke. chap. 163
- How Sir *Mordred* presumed and tooke on him to bee King of England and would haue married the Queene. chap. 164
- How after that King *Arthur* had tidings, hee returned and came to Douer, where Sir *Mordred* met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir *Gawaine*. chap. 165
- How after Sir *Gawaine*'s goast appeared vnto King *Arthur*, and warned him that he should not fight as at that day. chap. 166
- How by misadventure of an adder the Battaille began where Sir *Mordred* was slaine, and King *Arthur* wounded to death. chap. 167
- How King *Arthur* commaunded to cast his sword Excalibur in the water and how hee was deliuered vnto Ladies in a barge. chap. 168
- How Sir *Bedivere* found King *Arthur* dead on the morrow in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit. chap. 169
- Of the opinion of some men, of the death of King *Arthur*, and how Queene *Gueneuer* made her a Nunne in Almesbury. chap. 170
- How when Sir *Lancelot* heard of the death of King *Arthur* and of Sir *Gawaine*, he came into England. chap. 171
- How Sir *Lancelot* departed for to seeke Queene *Gueneuer* and how hee found her at Almesbury. chap. 172
- How Sir *Lancelot* came vnto the Hermitage where the Archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he tooke the halite vnto him. chap. 173

The Table.

- How sir *Agrawaine* disclosed their loue vnto King *Arthur*, and how that King *Arthur* gaue them licence for to take him. chap. 143
- How sir *Launcelot* was espied in the Queenes chamber, and how sir *Agrawaine* and sir *Mordred* came with 12. Knights to sleie him. chap. 144
- How sir *Launcelot* slew sir *Colgrenaunce*, and armed him in his armour. And after slew sir *Agrawaine* and twelue of his felowes. chap. 145
- How sir *Launcelot* came to sir *Bors* and told him how hee had sped, and in what aduenture he had beene, and how he escaped chap. 146
- Of the counsaile and aduise which was taken by Sir *Launcelot* and his friends for to saue the Queene. chap. 147
- How sir *Mordred* rode hastily vnto the King for to tell him of the fray and death of sir *Agrawaine* his brother and of other things. chap. 148
- How sir *Launcelot* and his kinsmen rescued the Queene from the fire, and how hee slew many Knights. chap. 149
- Of the sorrow and lamentation of King *Arthur* for the death of his two nephewes and other good Knights, and also for the Queene his wife. chap. 150
- How King *Arthur* at the request of sir *Gawaine* concluded to make warre against sir *Launcelot*, and laid siege to his Castle, called Ioyous gard. chap. 151
- Of the communication betweene King *Arthur* and sir *Launcelot*, and how King *Arthur* reproveth him. chap. 152
- How the cosins and kinsmen of sir *Launcelot* exhorted him for to goe out to doe battaile, and how they made them ready. chap. 153
- How sir *Gawaine* iusted and smote downe sir *Lionell*, and how sir *Launcelot* horsed King *Arthur*. chap. 154
- How the Pope sent downe his Bulls for to make peace, and his sir *Launcelot* brought the Queene vnto King *Arthur*. chap. 155
- Of the deliuerance of the Queene to the King by sir *Launcelot* & what language sir *Gawaine* gaue sir *Launcelot*. chap. 156
- Of the communication betweene Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Launcelot*, with much other language. chap. 157

The Table.

- How Sir *Launcelot* departed from King *Arthur* and from Ioyous gard for to goe ouer the sea, and what Knights went with him. chap. 158
- How Sir *Launcelot* passed ouer the Sea into his owne land, and how he made great Lords of the Knights that went with him. chap. 159
- How King *Arthur* and Sir *Gawaine* made a great host ready to goe ouer sea to make warre on Sir *Launcelot*. chap. 160
- What message Sir *Gawaine* sent vnto sir *Launcelot*, & how King *Arthur* laid siege vnto Benwike and of other matters. chap. 161
- How Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Launcelot* did battaile together, and how Sir *Gawaine* was hurt. chap. 162
- Of the sorrow that King *Arthur* made for the warre, and of another battaile, where also Sir *Gawaine* had the worke. chap. 163
- How Sir *Mordred* presumed and tooke on him to bee King of England and would haue married the Queene. chap. 164
- How after that King *Arthur* had tidings, hee returned and came to Douer, where Sir *Mordred* met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir *Gawaine*. chap. 165
- How after Sir *Gawaine*'s goast appeared vnto King *Arthur*, and warned him that he should not fight as at that day. chap. 166
- How by misadventure of an adder the Battaille began where Sir *Mordred* was slaine, and King *Arthur* wounded to death. chap. 167
- How King *Arthur* commaunded to cast his sword Excalibur in the water and how hee was deliuered vnto Ladies in a barge. chap. 168
- How Sir *Bedivere* found King *Arthur* dead on the morrow in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit. chap. 169
- Of the opinion of some men, of the death of King *Arthur*, and how Queene *Gueniuer* made her a Nunne in Almesbury. chap. 170
- How when Sir *Launcelot* heard of the death of King *Arthur* and of Sir *Gawaine*, he came into England. chap. 171
- How Sir *Launcelot* departed for to seeke Queene *Gueniuer* and how hee found her at Almesbury. chap. 172
- How Sir *Launcelot* came vnto the Hermitage where the Archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he tooke the halfe vnto him. chap. 173

The Table.

How Sir *Launcelot* went with his seven fellowes to *Almesbury*,
and found *Queene Gueneuer* dead whom they brought to
Glastinbury. chap. 174

How Sir *Launcelot* began for to waxe sicke, and after died, and
then his body was borne vnto *Ioyous gard*, there to bee buried.
chap. 175

How Sir *Bitor* found Sir *Launcelot* his brother dead. And how
Constantine reigned next after King *Arthur*. And of the end of
this booke.

FINIS.



THE
MOST ANCIENT AND
FAMOUS HISTORIE OF
THE RENOWNED
PRINCE
ARTHUR King of
Britaine.

The third Part.

CHAP. I

How Sir *Launcelot* rode on his aduentures, and how he holpe a
dolorous Lady from paine. And how he fought with a dragon



Now leaue wee off Sir *Tristram*, de *Liones* and
speake we of Sir *Launcelot* du lake, and Sir *Ga-*
lahad Sir *Launcelots* sonne, how hee was begot-
ten, and in what maner. Afore the time that
Sir *Galahad* was begotten or born, there came
in an *Hermit* vnto King *Arthur* on *Whitsun-*
day as the knights sat at the round table. And when the *Her-*
mit saw the siege perilous, hee asked the King and all the
knights why that siege was voide. King *Arthur* and all the
knights answered, there shall neuer none sit in that siege but
one, but if he be destroyed. Then said the *Hermit*, wot yee not
what he is. *Pay* said King *Arthur* and all the knights we wot
not who he is that shall sit therein. Then wot *A* said the *Her-*

A

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

mit, for he that shall sit in that siege is yet vnborne and vngotten, and this same yeare he shall be gotten that shall sit in that siege perillous, and hee shall win the Sancgreall. When the Hermit had made this mention he departed from the Court of King Arthur. And then after the feast Sir Launcelot rode on his adventures, till vpon a time by adventure hee passed ouer the brydge of Cozbin. And there he saw the fairest Tower that euer he saw, and there vnder was a faire towne full of people, and all the people men and women cried all at once. We are welcome sir Launcelot du lake the floure of all knighthood, for by thee all we shall be holpen out of danger. What meane yee said sir Launcelot that yee crye so vpon me. Ah faire knight said they all, here is within this Tower a dolorous Lady that hath bene there in paines many winters. For euer shee boyleth in scalding water. And but late said all the people Sir Gawaine was here and he might not helpe her, and so he left her still in paine. So may I said Sir Launcelot, leaue her in paine as well as sir Gawaine hath done. Nay said the people wee know well that it is sir Launcelot that shall deliuer her. Well said Sir Launcelot, then shew me what I shall doe. Then they brought Sir Launcelot into the Tower. And when he came to the chamber there as this Lady was, the dowres of iron vnlacked and vnbolted, and so sir Launcelot went into the chamber that was as hot as any stew, and there Sir Launcelot took the fairest Lady by the hand that euer he saw, and shee was all naked as a needell. And by enchantment Quene Morgan le fay and the Quene of Northgalis had put her there in those paines, because she was called one of the fairest Ladies in that Countrey. And there shee had bene well fife yeares, and neuer might shee bee deliuered out of her great paines vnto the time that the best knight of the world had taken her by the hand. When the people brought her clothes. And when shee was arrayed Sir Launcelot thought shee was the fairest Lady in the world, but if it were Quene Gueneuer. When this Lady said vnto sir Launcelot. Sir if it please you will yee goe with mee here by into a Chappel that we may giue lauding and praising vnto Almighty God. Madame said sir Launcelot, come on with me

and his Knights of the round Table:

me, I will goe with you. So when they came there, they gaue thanks vnto God, and all the people learned and gaue thanks vnto God, and said. Sir knight sigh yee haue deliuered this Lady, yee shall deliuer vs from a serpent that is here in a tombe. When Sir Launcelot took his shield and said Bring me thither and what I may doe vnto the pleasure of God and you I will doe it. So when Sir Launcelot came there, he saw written vpon the tombe letters of gold that said thus. Here shall come a libbard of Kings blood and hee shall slay this serpent, and this libbard shall engender a Lyon in this foraine countrey the which Lyon shall passe all other knights. So then sir Launcelot lift vpon the tombe, and there came out an horrible and a fenly dragon spitting fire out of his mouth.

When Sir Launcelot drew out his sword and fought with the dragon long, and at the last with great paine sir Launcelot slew the dragon. Where withall came King Pelles the good and noble knight and saluted sir Launcelot, hee him againe. Faire knight said the king what is your name, I require you of your knighthood tell me.

CHAP. II.

How Sir Launcelot came vnto King Pelles, and of the Sancgreall, and how hee begate Galahad vpon faire Elaine King Pelles daughter.

Sir said sir Launcelot, wit ye well my name is Sir Launcelot du lake. And my name is Sir Pelles, king of the foraine countrey, and nigh cousin vnto Ioseph of Arimathy. When either of them made much of other, and so they went into the Castle for to take their repast. And anon there came in a dove at a window, and in her bill there seemed a little sencer of gold and there withal there was such a savour as though all the spere of the world had bene there. And forthwithall there was vpon the table all manner of meates and drinckes that they could thinke vpon: so there came a damosell passing faire and young, and she beare a vessell of gold betweene her hands, and thereto the king kneeled deuoutly and said his prayers, and so

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

did all that were there. Oh Jesu said sir Launcelot, what may this meane. This is (said King Pelles) the richest thing that any man hath liuing. And when this thing goeth about the round table shall bee broken. And wit ye well said King Pelles, that this is the holy Sancgreall which ye haue heere seene. So King Pelles and sir Launcelot led their liues the most part of that day. And full faine would King Pelles haue found the meanes to haue had Sir Launcelot for to haue laien by his daughter faire dame Elaine, and for this entent. The King knew wel that Sir Launcelot should get a child vpon his daughter the which should be named Sir Galahad the good knight, by whom all the foraine countrey should bee brought out of danger, and by him the holy Graile would bee achieved. Then came there forth a Lady which was called dame Brisen, and shee said vnto King Pelles. Sir wit ye well that Sir Launcelot loueth no Lady in the world but onely Quene Gueneuer, and therefore ye must worke by my counsaile and I shall make him to lye with your daughter Elaine, and he shal not wit but that he lyeth with Quene Gueneuer. Oh the most fairest Lady dame Brisen said King Pelles, hope ye to bring this about. Sir said shee, vpon paine of my life let mee deale. For this dame Brisen was one of the greatest enchamentresses that was that time in the world liuing. Then anon by dame Brisens wit, shee made one to come to Sir Launcelot that he knew well. And this man brought him a ring from Quene Gueneuer like as he had come from her, and such a one for the most part as hee was wont to weare. And when Sir Launcelot saw that token, wit ye well he was neuer so faine. Where is my Lady Quene Gueneuer said sir Launcelot, she is in the Castle of Caer said the messenger but fye mile hence. Then sir Launcelot thought to be there that same night. And then this dame Brisen by the commandement of King Pelles let send his daughter to that castel with twenty-fye knights. Then sir Launcelot against night rode vnto that Castle and there anon he was receiued worshipfully, with such people vnto him seeming as were about Quene Gueneuers secret. So when Sir Launcelot was alighted, he asked where the Quene was. So dame Brisen said she was in her bed. And then the people

and his Knights of the round Table.

ple were auoided, and Sir Launcelot was led vnto his chamber. And then dame Brisen brought Sir Launcelot a cuppe full of wine. And as soone as hee had drunke that wine hee was so affoted and so mad that hee might make no delay but without any let hee went to bed. And hee wend that the Lady Elaine had bene Quene Gueneuer. Wit ye well that Sir Launcelot was glad, and so was the Lady dame Elaine that shee had gotten Sir Launcelot in her armes, for well shee knew that the same night should be gotten vpon her Sir Galahad, that should proue the best knight of the world. And so they lay together vnto sixe of the cloke on the morrow. And all the windowes and holes of that chamber were stopped, that no manner of light might be seene. And then sir Launcelot remembred him, and he arose and went to the window.

CHAP. III.

How Sir Launcelot was displeased when hee knew that hee had laien by dame Elaine, and how she was deliuered of Galahad.

And anon as he had vnshut the window the enchamentment was gone, then hee knew himselfe that hee had done amisse. Alas said hee that I haue liued so long, now am I shamed. So then hee gate his sword in his hand and said. Thou traitresse what art thou that I haue layen by all this night, thou shalt die right heere of my hand. When this faire Lady dame Elaine skipped out of her bed all naked and kneeled downe befoze Sir Launcelot and said. Faire courteous knight come of Kings blood, I require your haue mercy vpon mee. And as thou art renowned the most noble knight of the world slea me not, for I haue in my wombe him by thee that shall bee the most noblest knight of the world. Ah thou false traitresse said Sir Launcelot, why hast thou thus betrayed mee. Anon tell mee what thou art, shee answered and said. Sir I am Elaine the daughter of King Pelles. Well said Sir Launcelot, I will forgiue you this deeds, and therewith hee took her vp in his armes and kissed her, for

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Shee was a faire Lady and there to lussy and young, and wise as any was that time liuing. So God me helpe said Sir Launcelot, I may not put this blame to you but her that made this enchantment vpon me, as betwene you and me, and I may find that same Lady Buisen, shee shall lose her head for her witchcraft, for there was neuer knight so deceiued as I am this night. And so sir Launcelot arayed him and armed him, and tooke his leaue mildly of that youg Lady dame Elaine, and so he departed. Then shee said, my Lord Sir Launcelot I beseech you see me as soone as you may, for I haue obeyed me vnto the prophesie that my father told me, and by his commandement to fulfill this prophesie I haue giuen the greatest richesse and the fairest floure that euer I had, that is my maidenhood, which I shall neuer haue againe, and therefore gentle knight owe me your good wil. And so sir Launcelot arayed him and was armed and tooke his leaue mildly of that young lady dame Elaine, and so he departed and rode till hee came to the castle of Corbin where her father was. And as soone as her time came shee was deliuered of a faire child. And they christened him and named him Galahad. And wit yee well that child was well kept and well nourished, And hee was thus named Galahad, for because sir Launcelot was so named at the font stone, and after that the Lady of the lake confirmed him Sir Launcelot du lake. Then after that this Lady Elaine was deliuered and churched there came a knight vnto her, whose name was sir Bromell le plech, which was a great Lord, and he had loued that Lady long, and he euermore desired her that he might wed her, and so by no meanes she could put him off. Till vpon a day she said, to sir Bromell. Wit yee well sir knight I will not loue you, for my loue is set vpon the best knight of the world. Who is he said sir Bromell. Sir said she, it is sir Lancelot du lake that I loue and none other, therefore woe me no longer. He say well said sir Bromell and sithence yee haue tould me so much yee shall haue but little ioy of sir Lancelot, for I shall sleigh him where euer I meet him. Sir said the Lady Elaine, doe to him not reason. Wit ye wel my Lady said sir Bromell, I promise you the. 12. moneths I shall keepe the bridge of Corbin, for sir Lancelots sake, that he shall neither come nor go to you but I shall meet with him. CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. IIII.

How Sir Bors came to dame Elaine and saw Galahad and how he was sed with the sancgreall.

Then as it befell by fortune and aduenture Sir Bors de Ga-
nis which was nephew vnto sir Launcelot came ouer that bridge, and ther sir Bromell and sir Bors iusted. And sir Bors smote sir Bromell such a buffet that he bare him ouer his horse taile. And then sir Bromell like as an hardy knight pulled out his sword and dressed his shield to doe battaile with Sir Bors. And then sir Bors alighted and auoybed his horse. And there they dashed together many sad strokes. And long thus they fought till at the last sir Bromell was laid vnto the ground. And there Sir Bors began for to unlace his helme for to sleigh him. When sir Bromell cried sir Bors mercy, and yeelded him. Well said sir Bors vpon this couenant thou shalt haue thy life. So thou goe vnto sir Launcelot vpon whitsunday that next cometh, and yeeld the vnto him as a knight recreant I will doe so said sir Bromell, and that he sware vpon the crosse of the sword and so he let him depart. And sir Bors rode vnto King Pelles that was within Corbin. And when the King and dame Elaine his daughter knew that sir Bors was nephew vnto Sir Launcelot they made him great cheere. Then said dame Elaine: We meruaile much where sir Launcelot is, for he came neuer here but once. Peruaile not said sir Bors, for all this halfe yeare he hath bene in prison with Quene Morgan le fay King Arthurs sister. Alas said dame Elaine, that me soze repenteth. And euer sir Bors beheld the child that shee had in her armes: and euer him seemed it was passing like sir Launcelot. Truly said dame Elaine, wit yee well that this child he gate vpon me: When sir Bors wept for ioy, and he prayed vnto God the child might proue as good a knight as his father, was. And so ther came in a whit done and she beare a little sencer of gold in her bill. And anon there was all manner of meates and drinkes: and there was a maiden that bare the sancgreall and she said openly. Wit ye well Bors that this child is Galahad, that shall sit

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

At in the siege perilous and all o shall achine the Sangreall. And hee shall be much better then euer was sir Launcelot du lake, that his owne father. And then they kneeled downe and made their deuotions, and there was such a sauour as all the spicery in the world had bene there. And when the doue toke her flight, the maiden bailed away with the Sangreall as she came. Sir said sir Bors vnto King Pelles, this castle may well be called the castle aduenturous, for here be many strange aduentures. That is truth said King Pelles. For well may this place be called the aduenturous place. for heere come but few knights that goe away with any worship be hee neuer so strong here hee may be proued. And but late agoe sir Gawaine the good knight gate but little worship here. For I let you to wit said King Pelles, here shall no knight winne no worship but if hee be of worship him selfe, and of good liuing, and that loueth God, and dreadeth God, and else hee getteth no worship here, be hee neuer so hardy. That is a wonderfull thing said sir Bors, what yee meane in this countrey I wote not, for yee haue many strange aduentures, therfore I will lie in this Castle this night. Wee shall not doe so said King Pelles, by my counsell. For it is hard and yee escape without a shame. I shall take the aduenture that will be fall me said sir Bors. When I counsaile you said King Pelles, for to be confessed cleane. As for that said sir Bors I will be confessed with a good will. So sir Bors was confessed, and for all women sir Bors was a virgine saue for one, which was the daughter of King Brandegoris and on her hee gat a child that hight Elaine And saue for her sir Bors was a cleane maide. And so sir Bors was led to bed into a faire large chamber, and many doores were shut about that chamber. And when sir Bors espied all those doores, hee made all the people to auoide for he might haue no body with him, but in no wise sir Bors would vnaime him, but so laid him vpon the bed. And right so he saw come in a light which he might wel see a speare great and long which come straight vpon him pointlong. And so sir Bors seemed that the head of the speare bent like a taper. And anon or sir Bors wist, the speare head smote him into the shoulder an hand breadth in depnesse that wound grieved sir Bors passing sore,

and his Knights of the round Table.

sore, and then he laid him downe againe for paine. And anon therewithall came a knight, all armed with his shield on his shoulder, and his sword drawn in his hand, and he said to sir Bors. Arise sir knight and fight with mee. I am sore hurt said sir Bors, but yet I shall not faile thee. And then sir Bors start up and dressed his shield, and then they lashed together mightely a great while And so at the last sir Bors beare him alwaies backward vntill hee came to a chamber doore, and there that knight went into that chamber and ther rested him a great while. And when he had rested him, he came out freshly againe, and began a new battaile with sir Bors mightely and strongly.

CHAP. V.

How Sir Bors made Sir Peduier to yeeld him, and of meruailous aduentures that he had, and how he achieved them.

Then sir Bors thought hee should no more goe into that chamber to rest him, and so sir Bors dressed him betweene the knight and the chamber doore, and there sir Bors smote him so sore that hee fell downe. And then that knight yeelded him to sir Bors. What is your name said sir Bors Sir said that knight, my name is sir Peduere of the straight marches. So sir Bors made him sweare that at whatesunday next comming for to bee at the court of King Archur and yeeld him there as prisoner and ouercome knight, by the hands of sir Bors. So thus departed sir Peduere, of the straight marches. And then sir Bors lay him downe for to rest him. And then he heard and felt much noyse in that chamber. And then sir Bors espied that there came in he wist not whether at the doores or windowes alshot of arowes and quarels so thicke, that hee had great meruaile of it, and there fell many vpon him, and hurt him in the bare places. And then sir Bors was ware where came in an hedious lyon. So sir Bors dressed him vnto the lyon. And anon the lyon bereft him of his shield. And with his sword sir Bors smote off the lyons head. Right so sir Bors forthwith saw a dragon in the court passing horrible, and there seemed letters of gold witten in his forehead. And sir Bors thought that the letters made a signification of his Lord King Archur.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Right so there came an horrible libbard and an old, and there they fought long and did a great battaile together. And at the last the dragon spit out of his mouth as it had bene well an hundred dragons. And lightly all the small dragons slew the old dragon and teare him all to pices. And anon forthwith there came an old man into the hall, and hee sat him downe in a faire chaire and there seemed to bee two great adders about his neck. And then the old man had an harpe, and there he sung an old song, how Ioseph of Aramathy come into this land. And when he had sung, the old man bad Sir Bors to goe from thence, for here shall ye haue no moe aduentures, and full worshipfully haue yee done, and better shall yee doe hereafter. And then Sir Bors seemed that there came the whitest Doue that euer he saw with a little golden sencer in her mouth. And anon there withall the tempest ceased and passed, that before was meruailous to heere. So was at the Court ful of good sauors. Then Sir Bors saw foure faire children that bare foure tapers, and an old man in the midst of the children with a sencer in his owne hand, and a speare in his other hand. And that same spear was called the speare of vengeance.

CHAP. VI.

How Sir Bors departed, and how Sir *Launcelot* was rebuked of Queene *Guenenur*, and of his excuse.

Now said that old man vnto sir Bors, goe ye vnto your cousin sir Lancelot and tell him of this aduenture, the which had bene most conuenient for him of all earthly knights, but sinne is so foule in him that hee may not achieue such holy dedes, for had not bene his sinne, he had passed all the knights that euer was in his dayes. And tell thou Sir Launcelot that of all worldly aduentures hee passeth in manhood and prowesse all other, but in these spiritual matters, hee shal haue many his better. And when Sir Bors saw foure gentlewomen coming by him proudly besene. And hee saw whereas they entred into a chamber where was great light, as it were a summer light, and the woman kneled downe before an alter of silver with foure

and his Knights of the round Table:

foure pillowes and as it had bene a bishop kneeling downe before that table of silver. And as Sir Bors looked ouer his head, he saw a sword like silver naked hewing ouer his head. And the clerenesse thereof smote so in his eyes, that at that time Sir Bors was blind, and there he heard a voyce that said. Goe thou hence thou Sir Bors, for as yet thou art not worthe to bee in this place. And then hee went backward to his bed till on the morrow. And on the morrow King Pelles made great ioy of Sir Bors, and then hee departed and rode to Camelot. And there hee found Sir Launcelot du lake, and told him of the aduentures that he had done with King Pelles at Corbin.

So the noyse sprang in King Arthurs Court that sir Lancelot had gotten a child vpon faire Elaine, the daughter of King Pelles. Wherefore Queene Gueneuer was wroth and gaue many rebukes vnto sir Launcelot, and called him false knight. And then sir Launcelot told the Queene all and how hee was made to lye by her, by enchantment in likenesse of the Queen. So the Queene held sir Launcelot excused. And as King Arthur had bene in France, and had made warre vpon the mighty King Claudas, and had wonne much of his lands. And when the King was come againe, he let crie a great feast, that all lordes and Ladies of England should bee there, but if it were such as were rebellious against him.

CHAP. VII.

How Dame Elaine Galahads mother came in great estate vnto Camelot and how Sir *Launcelot* behaued him there.

And when Dame Elaine, the daughter of King Pelles hard of this feast shee sent vnto her father and required him that hee would giue her leaue for to ride vnto that feast. The king answered I will well that yee goe thither. But in any wise as ye loue me and will haue my blessing, that ye bee well besen in the richest wise. And look that ye spare for no cost, as is and yee shall haue all that you needeth. Then by the aduise of of Dame Brisen her maid, all thing was apparraled vnto the purpose, and there was neuer no Lady more richly besen then

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

shee was. So shee rode with twentie knights and and ten Ladies and gentlewomen to the number of an hundred horses. And when shee came to Camelot King Arthur and Quene Gueneuer said and all the knights that dame Elaine was the fairest and the best besene Lady that ever was in that Court. And anon as King Arthur wist that shee was come hee met her and saluted her, and so did the most part of al the knights of the round table, both sir Tristram Sir Bleoberis and Sir Gawaine, and many moe that I will not rehearse. But when Sir Launcelot saw her, hee was soze ashamed and that because hee drew his sword on the morrow when hee had lye by her, that hee would not see her, nor yet speake to her. And yet sir Launcelot thought shee was the fairest woman that hee saw in his life daies. But when dame Elaine saw that Sir Launcelot would not speake to her, shee was so heauy that shee wend her heart would haue burst. For wit ye well that out of measure shee loued him. And then dame Elaine said vnto her gentlewoman dame Brisen, the unkindnesse of Sir Launcelot nere hand sleith me. A peace madame said dame Brisen, I will vnder take that this night he shall lye with you and ye would hold you Will. That were me leuer said dame Elaine then all the gold that is aboue the earth. Let me deale said dame Brisen. So when dame Elaine was brought vnto Quene Gueneuer either made other good cheare by countenance but nothing wit h hearts. But all men and women speake of the beautie of dame Elaine, and of her great riches. Then at night the Quene commanded that dame Elaine should sleepe in a chamber nigh vnto her chamber, and all vnder one roofe. And so it was done as the Quene had commanded. Then the Quene sent for sir Launcelot, and bad him come to her chamber that night or else I am sure said the Quene that ye will go to your Ladies bed dame Elaine, by whom ye gate Galahad. A madame said Sir Launcelot, neuer say ye so. For that I did was against my will. When said the Quene, I wke that ye will come to me when I send for you. Madame said Sir Launcelot I shall not faile you but I shall bee ready at your command. This bargaine was not so soone done and made betweene them. But dame Brisen knew it by her crafts and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and told it to her Lady dame Elaine. Alas said shee how shall I doe. Let me deale said dame Brisen for I shall bring him by the hand euen vnto your bed, and he shall weene that I am Quene, Gueneuers messenger. Now well is me said dame Elaine for of all the world I loue none so much as I doe Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. VIII.

How dame Brisen by enchantment brought Sir Launcelot to dame Elaines bed. And how Quene Gueneuer rebuked him.

So when the time came that all the folke were abed, Dame Brisen came vnto sir Launcelots bed side and said. Sir Launcelot du lake be ye a sleepe, my Lady Quene Gueneuer lyeth and waiteth vpon you. A faire Lady said sir Launcelot, I am ready to goe with you where ye will haue me. So Sir Launcelot threwe vpon him a long gowne, and tooke his sword in his hand. And then dame Brisen tooke him by the finger and led him vnto her ladies bed dame Elaine. And then shee departed and left them in the bed together. Wit ye well the Lady was glad. and so was Sir Launcelot for hee wend that hee had another in his armes. Now leauen we them kissing and cliping as it was a kindly thing, and speake wee of Quene Gueneuer, that sent one of her gentlewomen vnto Sir Launcelots bed. And when shee came there, she found Sir Launcelots bed cold and he was away. So she came againe vnto the Quene, and told her all how shee had spedd. Alas said the Quene, where is that knight become. Then the Quene was nigh out of her wit, and then shee writhed and weltred as a mad woman, and might not sleepe a foure or five houres. When sir Launcelot had a condition that hee vsed of custome, hee would clatter in his sleepe and speake oft of his Lady Quene Gueneuer. So Sir Launcelot had waked so long as it had pleased him, then by course of kind hee slept and dame Elaine both. And in his sleepe hee talked and clattered as a May of the loue that had bene betwene Quene Gueneuer and him. And so as hee talked so lowd the Quene heard him there as she lay in her chamber. And then shee heard him so clatter, shee was night woad and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

out of her mind, and for anger and paine wist not what to doe. And then she coughed so leud that sir Launcelot awaked, and he knew her hemming. And then she knew well that hee lay not by the Quene. And therewith he lept out of his bed as hee had bene a woodman in his shirt. And the Quene met him in the floze & thus she said. False traitour knight, that thou art, loke thou neuer abide in my court and auoid my chamber, and not so hardy thou false traitour knight that thou art, euer thou come in my sight. Alas said Sir Launcelot, and therewith hee tooke such a hartily sorow at her words that he fell downe to the floze in a swond. And therewith Quene Gueneuer departed. And when sir Launcelot awaked of his swond hee lept out at a bay window into a gardin, and therewith thoznes he was all to scratched in his visage and his body. And so hee ran forth hee wist not whether, and was wild wood as euer was man. And so he ranne two yeaeres, and neuer man might haue grace to know him.

CHAP. IX.

How dame *Elaine* was commanded by Queene *Gueneuer* for to auoide the Court, and how Sir *Launcelot* became mad.

Now turne we vnto Quene Gueneuer and vnto dame Elaine. When when dame Elaine heard Quene Gueneuer so rebuke Sir Launcelot, and also she saw how hee swounded, and after lept out of a bay window, then she said vnto Quene Gueneuer. Madame ye are greatly to blame for sir Launcelot, for now ye haue lost him. For I saw and heard by his countenance that he is mad for euer. Alas madame ye doe great sinne, and to your selfe great dishonour, for ye haue a Lord of your owne, and therefore it is your part for to loue him aboue all other. For ther is no Quene in all this world that hath such an other King as ye haue. And if it were not, I might haue the loue of my Lord Sir Launcelot. And a cause I haue to loue him, for hee hath my maidenhead, and by him I haue bozne a fayre sonne and his name is Galahad, and hee shall be in his time the best knight in the world. I warne and charge you dame Elaine said the Quene that when it is day light to auoide my court. And

for

and his Knights of the round Table.

for the loue ye owe to sir Launcelot, discouer not your counsell, for and ye doe, it will be his death. As for that dame Elaine, I dare undertake he is marred for euer and that haue ye made, for ye now I are not like to reioyce him. For hee made the most piteous grone when hee lept out at yonder bay window that euer I heard man make. Alas said faire Elaine, alas said Quene Gueneuer, for now I wot well wee haue lost him for euer. So on the morrow dame Elaine tooke her leaue to depart and she would no longer abide. When King Arthur brought her on her way with more then an hundred knights through a great forrest. And by the way she told sir Bors de ganis all how it betide that same night, and how Sir Launcelot lept out at a bay window extraught out of his wit. Alas said Sir Bors where is my Lord sir Launcelot become. Sir said Dame Elaine I cannot tell you. Alas said Sir Bors betweene you both ye haue destroyed that good knight. As for me said dame Elaine I said neuer nor did neuer thing that should in any wise displease him, but with the great rebuke that Quene Gueneuer gaue him I saw him sowne to the ground. And when he awake hee tooke his sword in his hand naked saue the shirt and lept out at a window with the sorowfullest grone that euer I hard any man make. Now fare well dame Elaine said Sir Bors, and hold my Lord King Arthur with a tale as long as ye may, for I will turne againe vnto Quene Gueneuer and giue her an heat, and I require you as ye will haue my seruice, make good watch and espie if ye may see my Lord Sir Launcelot. Truly said dame Elaine I will doe all that I may, for as saine would I know where hee is become as you or any of his kinne, or as Quene Gueneuer, and a good cause I haue thereto as well as any other. And wit ye well said dame Elaine to Sir Bors, I would leese my life for him rather then he should be hurt. But alas I feare me that I shall neuer see him, and the chiefe causer of all this is dame Gueneuer. Madante said dame Brisen (the which had made the enchantment before betweene sir Launcelot and her) I pray you heartely let Sir Bors depart and gie him with all his might as fast as he may to seeke Sir Launcelot, for I warne you he is cleane out of his mind, and yet hee shall

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

shall be wel holpen, and but by miracle. Then wept Dame Elaine, and so did Sir Bors de ganis. And so they departed. And Sir Bors rode straight vnto Queene Gueneuer. And when she saw Sir Bors shee began to weepe as shee had bene wood. He vpon your weeping said Sir Bors for ye weepe neuer but when there is no boote. Alas said Sir Bors that euer Sir Launcelots kinne saw you. For now haue ye lost the best knight of all our blood, and he that was the leader of vs all and our succour. And I dare well say and make it good that all King christen nor heathen may not find such a knight, for to speake of his noblenesse curtesie with his beauty and gentlenesse. Alas said Sir Bors, what shall we doe that be of his blood. Alas said Sir Ector de maris, alas said Sir Lionell.

CHAP. X.

What sorrow Queene Gueneuer made for Sir Launcelot, and how he was sought by Knights of his kinne.

And when the Quene heard them say so, shee fell to the ground in a deadly sound. And then Sir Bors took her & dawed her. And when shee was come to her selfe againe shee kneeled afoze the three knights, and held by both her hands, & besought them to seeke him and not to spare for no goods but that he be found, for I wot well he is out of his minde. And sir Bors Sir Ector Sir Lyonell departed from the Quene, for they might not abide no longer for sorrow. And then the Quen sent them treasure enough for their expences. And so they took their horses and their armour and departed. And then they rode from countrey to countrey, in forrests and in wildernesses and in wayes, and euer they laid watch as wel both at forrests and at all maner of men as they rode to harken and to enquire after him, as he that was a naked man in his shirt, with a sword in his hand. And thus they rode well nigh a quarter of a yere endlong and ouerthwart in many places, forrests and wildernesses, and oftentimes were euill lodged for his sake, and yet for all their labour and seeking could they neuer here word of him. And wit ye well these three knights were passing sorry.

and his Knights of the round Table

So then at the last Sir Bors and his fellows met with a knight that hight Sir Melion de tartare. Now faire knight said Bors whether be ye going, for they knew neither other afoze time. He said Sir Melion, I am in the way toward the Court of King Arthur. Then he prayd you said Sir Bors that yee will tell my Lord King Arthur and my Lady Quene Gueneuer, and all the fellowship of the round table, that we cannot in no wise here tell where Sir Launcelot is become. Then Sir Melion departed from them, and said that he would tel the King and the Quene and all the fellowship of the round table as they had desired him. So when Sir Melion was come vnto the Court of King Arthur hee told the King and the Quene and all the fellowship of the round table, what Sir Bors had said of sir Launcelot. Then Sir Gawaine, Sir Ewaine, Sir Sagramore le desirous, Sir Aglouale, and sir Perciualle de galis took vpon them by the great desire of King Arthur, and in especiall by the quarre to seeke throught out all England Wales, and Scotland, to find Sir Launcelot. And with them rode eightene knights more to beare them fellowship. And wit ye well that they lacked no maner of spending. And so were they twenty-three knights. Now returne we vnto sir Lancelot, and speake we of his care and woe, and what paine that he endured, for cold, henger and thirst he had plenty. And thus as these noble knights rode together, they by one assent departed a supper, and then they rode by two, by three, by foure and by fife. And euer they assigned where they should meete. And so sir Aglouale and Sir Perciualle rode together vnto their mother which was a Quene in those dayes: and when shee saw her two sonnes. for ioi shee wept right tenderly, and then she said vnto them. Ah my deare sonnes when your father was slaine he left me foure sonnes, of the which now bee two slaine, and for the death of my noble sonne Sir Lamorake shall my heart neuer bee glad. And then she kneeled downe vpon both her knees befoze Sir Aglouale and Sir Perciualle, and besought them to abide at home with her. Ah sweete mother said Sir Perciualle, we may not abide here, for we bee come of Kings blood on both parties, and therefore mother it is our kind to hunt at armes and noble deedes. Alas my

The Historie of Prince Arthur

shall be wel holpen, and but by miracle. Then wept Dame Elaine, and so did Sir Bors de gauis. And so they departed. And Sir Bors rode straight vnto Quene Gueneuer. And when she saw Sir Bors she began to weep as shee had bene woe. He vpon your weeping said Sir Bors for ye weep neuer but when there is no boote. Alas said Sir Bors that euer Sir Lancelots kinne saw you. For now haue ye lost the best knight of all our blood, and he that was the leader of vs all and our succour. And I dare well say and make it good that all King christen nor heathen may not find such a knight, for to speake of his noblenesse curtesie with his beauty and gentlenesse. Alas said Sir Bors, what shall we doe that he of his blood. Alas said Sir Ector de maris, alas said Sir Lionell.

CHAP. X.

What sorrow Quene Gueneuer made for Sir Lancelot, and how he was sought by Knights of his kinne.

As when the Quene heard them say so, shee fell to the ground in a deadly sound. And then Sir Bors took her & dawe her. And when shee was come to her selfe againe shee kneeled afore the three knights, and besought both her hands, & besought them to seeke him and not to spare for no goods but that he be found, for I wot well he is out of his minde. And Sir Bors Sir Ector Sir Lyonell departed from the Quene, for they might not abide no longer for sorrow. And then the Quene sent them treasure enough for their expences. And so they took their horses and their armour and departed. And then they rode from countrey to countrey, in forrests and in wildernesses and in wayes, and euer they laid watch as wel both at forrests and at all manner of men as they rode to baken and to enquire after him, as he that was a naked man in his shirt, with a sword in his hand. And thus they rode well nigh a quarter of a yeare endlong and ouerthwart in many places, forrests and wildernesses, and oftentimes were euill lodged for his sake, and yet for all their labour and seeking, could they neuer here word of him. And wit ye well these three knights were passing sorry.

So

and his Knights of the round Table.

At the last Sir Bors and his fellows met with that hight Sir Melion de tartare. Now faire knight whether be ye going, for they knew either other afore. Sir Melion said, I am in the way toward the Court of King Arthur. Then we pray you said Sir Bors that ye will tell King Arthur and my Lady Quene Gueneuer, and the fellowship of the round table, that we cannot in no wise tell where Sir Lancelot is become. Then Sir Melion departed from them, and said that he would tel the King and the Quene and all the fellowship of the round table as they had bid him. So when Sir Melion was come vnto the Court of King Arthur hee told the King and the Quene and all the fellowship of the round table, what Sir Bors had said of Sir Lancelot. Then Sir Gawaine, Sir Ewaine, Sir Sagramore le desous, Sir Agloulle, and Sir Perciualle de galis took vpon them the great desire of King Arthur, and in especiall by the Quene to seeke through out all England Wales, and Scotland, to find Sir Lancelot. And with them rode eightene knights to beare them fellowship. And wit ye well that they lacked no manner of spending. And so were they twenty-three knights. Now returne we vnto Sir Lancelot, and speake we of his sorrow and woe, and what paine that he endured, for cold, hunger, thirst he had plenty. And thus as these noble knights rode together, they by one assent departed a sunder, and then they departed by two, by three, by foure and by fife. And euer they assiged where they should meete. And so Sir Agloulle and Sir Perciualle rode together vnto their mother which was a Quene of those dayes: and when shee saw her two sonnes, for toy shee was right tenderly, and then shee said vnto them. Ah my deare sonnes when your father was slaine he left me foure sonnes, of which now bee two slaine, and for the death of my noble son Sir Lancelot shall my heart neuer bee glad. And then shee kneeled downe vpon both her knees befoze Sir Agloulle and Sir Perciualle, and besought them to abide at home with her. Ah sweete mother said Sir Perciualle, we may not abide here, for we be come of Kings blood on both parties, and therefore moost it is our kind to hunt at armes and noble deedes. Alas my sweete

C

The Historie of Prince Arthur

Swete sonnes said she, for your sakes I shall lese my likeing and lust and wind and weather I may not endure, what for the death of your father King Pellinore that was shamefully slaine by the hands of Sir Gawaine and his brother Sir Gaheris, and they slew him not manfully, but by treason. And my deare sonnes this is a pitteous complaint for mee of your fathers death considering also the death of Sir Lamorake, which of knighthood had but few fellows. Now my deare sonnes haue this in your minds. Then there was great weeping and sobing in the Court when they should depart, and she fell down in a swoon in the midst of the Court.

CHAP. XI.

How a servant of Sir Aglouales was slaine, and what vengeance Sir Aglouale and Sir Perciuaile did therefore.

AS soone as she came againe to her selfe, she sent a squire after them with spending enough for them. And when the squire had overtaken them, they would not suffer him to ride with them, but sent him home againe to comfort their mother, praying her meekely of her blessing. And so this squire was benighted, and by misfortune hee hapned to come vnto a Castle where dwelled a Baron. And so when the squire was come into the Castle the Lord asked him from whence hee came and whom he serued. By Lord said the squire, I serue a good knight that is called Sir Aglouale, the squire said it to a good intent, weening vnto the squire to haue bene the more forborne for Sir Aglouales sake, then that he had answered hee had serued the Queene Sir Aglouales mother. Well my fellow said the Lord of that Castle, for Sir Aglouales sake thou shalt haue an euill lodging, for Aglouale slew my brother, and therefore thou shalt die in part of payment. And then the Lord commanded his men to haue him out of the Castle and there they slew him out of mercy. Right so on the morrow came Sir Aglouale and Sir Perciuaile riding by a church-yard where men and women were busie and beheld the dead squire, and thought to bury him. What is there said Sir Aglouale that ye behold so fast

and his Knights of the round Table.

A man start forth and said. Faire knight here lyeth a squire slaine shamefully this night. Now was he slaine faire fellow Sir Aglouale. By faire Sir said the man, the Lord of this castle lodged this squire this night, and because hee said hee would seruant vnto a good knight that is with King Arthure, his name is Sir Aglouale, therefore the Lord commanded to slay him, and for this cause he is slaine. Gramercy said Sir Aglouale, and lightly shall yee see his death reuenged, for I am the knight for whom this squire was slaine. When Sir Aglouale called vnto him Sir Perciuaile and had him alight quick. And so they alighted both. And so they went on faste into the Castle. And as soone as they were within the Castle gate Sir Aglouale had the porter goe into his Lord and tell him that Sir Aglouale for whom this squire was slaine this night. Then the porter told this vnto his Lord whose name was Sir Goodwin, anon he armed him, and then he came into the court. Which of you is Sir Aglouale. Here am I said Sir Aglouale. For what cause said Sir Aglouale slewest thou this my mothers squire. I slew him said Sir Goodwin because of thee, thou slewest my brother Sir Gaudelyn, as for thy brother said Sir Aglouale I auow it I slew him, for he was a traitor knight and a betrayer of Ladies and of good knights, and for the death of my squire thou shalt die. I desie thee said Sir Goodwin. And then they lashed together as egerly as it had bene two wild Lyons: and Sir Perciuaile fought with all the intent that would fight: and so within a while Sir Perciuaile slaine all that would withstand him. For Sir Perciuaile had such strokes that were so rude that there durst no man stand by him. And within a little while Sir Aglouale had beheaded Sir Goodwin to the earth, and there hee unlaced his helme and took off his head. And then they departed and toke their horses. And then they let carry the dead squire vnto a Priory, and there they buried him.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XII.

How Sir Perciuaile departed secretly from his brother, and how hee loosed a Knight bound with a chaine, and of other things.

And when this was done they rode into many countreys, neuer enquiring after Sir Launcelot, but in no wise they could here of him. And at the last they came to a castle hight Cardigan, and there sir Perciuaile and sir Aglouale were lodged together, and priuely about midnight Sir Perciuaile came to sir Aglouales squier and said artle and make thee ready, for thou and I will ride away secretly. Sir said the squier, I would faine ride with you where yee would haue mee, but and my Lord your brother take me, he will sleie me. As for that care thou not said Sir Perciuaile, for I shall bee thy warrant. And so they rode till it was after noone, and then they came vpon a brydge of stone, and there hee found a knight that was bound with a chaine fast about the wast vnto a pillar of marble. A faire knight said that bound knight, I requier thee loose mee of my bands. What knight are yee said Sir Perciuaile, and for what cause are yee so bound. Sir I shall tell you said that knight. I am a knight of the round table, and my name is Sir Percides, and thus by aduventure I came this way, and here I lodged in this Castle at the brydge foote, and therein dwelleth, an vncurtuous Lady, and because she proffered me to be my paramour, and that I refused her, shee set her men vpon mee sodainly so that I might come to my weapon, and thus they bound me and heere I wot well I shall die, but if some man of worship breake my bands. Wee yee of good cheare said sir Perciuaile, and because yee are a knight of the round table as well as I, I trust to God to breake your bands and there with sir Perciuaile drew out his sword, and strooke at the chaine with such a might that hee cut a two the chaine and went throught sir Percides halberke, and hurt him a little. O Jesu said Sir Percides, that was a mightie stroke as euer I felt, for had not the chaine bene yee had slaine me. And therewithall Sir Percides

saw

and his Knights of the round Table.

that knight comming out of the Castle all that hee might see. Beware said Sir Percides, yonder commeth a man that will haue to doe with you. Let him come said Sir Perciuaile and so he met with that knight in the midst of the brydge, and sir Perciuaile gaue him such a buffet, that hee smote him quite from his horse and ouer a part of the brydge, that had not bene a little better vnderneath the brydge that knight had been drownded. And then sir Perciuaile took the knights horse and made Percides to mount vpon him. And so they rode vnto the castle where he had the Lady deliuer sir Percides seruants, or else he would haue all that he might find. And so for feare shee deliuered them. When was Sir Perciuaile ware of a Lady that stood in a garden. A madaine said sir Perciuaile, what hse and custome is there in a Lady for to destroy good knights but if they will bee her paramour. Forsooth it is a shamefull custome of a Lady. And that I had not a great matter in hand I should for doe her euill customes. And so sir Percides brought Sir Perciuaile to his owne castle. And there hee made him the best cheare he could deuise all that night. And on the morrow when sir Perciuaile had heard masse and broken his fast, hee bad sir Percides ride vnto King Arthur, and tell the King how yee mette me, and tell my brother sir Aglouale how I rescued you, and bid my brother that he seeke not after me, for tell him that I am in the quest for to seeke sir Launcelot du lake, and though he seeke mee, he shall not find me, and tell him that I will nee see him nor the court till I haue found Sir Launcelot. Also bid Sir Kay the Seneschall and Sir Mordred, that I trust vnto me to be of as great worthynesse as either of them. For tell them that I shall neuer forget their mocks and scoornes that they made me that day when I was made knight, and tell them that I will neuer see that court till men speake of me more worshipfully than they did of any of them both. And sir Percides departed from sir Perciuaile, and then hee rode vnto King Arthur, and told him of Sir Perciuaile. And when Sir Aglouale heard him tell of his brother sir Perciuaile, he said. Hee departed from me vnto the

and 1177

1177

C 3

CHAP.

The Historie of Princes A. A. R. V. A.

CHAP. XIII.

How Sir Percivale met with Sir Ector, and how they fought long together, and how they had almost slaine each other.

Sir said Sir Percivale, on my life hee shall proue a noble knight as any is now living. And when hee saw Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, Sir Percivale said thus. My faire Lords both Sir Percivale greeteth you well both, and he sendeth you word by me, that he trusteth vnto God or ever hee cometh to the court againe to be of as great noblenesse as ever ye were both, and moe men to speak of his noblenesse then ever did of yours. It may well be said Sir Kay and Sir Mordred, but at that time when he was made knight, he was full unlikely to proue a good knight. As for that said king Arthur, he must needs proue a good knight, for his father and his brethren were noble knights. Now will we returne vnto Sir Percivale that rode long, and in a forrest he met a knight with a broken shield, a broken helme, and as soone as either saw other readily, they made them ready to iust, and so hurled together with all the might of their horses, and met together so hard that Sir Percivale was smitten to the earth. And then Sir Percivale arose lightly and cast his shield vpon his shoulder and drew his sword, and had the other knight alight and bore battaile to the uttermost. Till ye more said the knight, and therewith he alighted and put his horse from him, and then they came together an easie pace, and there they lashed together with their swords, and sometime they strooke and sometime they foined, and either gave other many great wounds. Thus they fought nere halfe a day and neuer rested them but little, and there was none of them both that had lesse wounds then fifteen and they bled so much that it was meruaile that they stode vpon their feete. But this knight that fought with Sir Percivale was a proued knight and a well fighting, and Sir Percivale was young, and strong not knowing in fighting as the other was. When Sir Percivale spake first and said. Sir knight hold thy hand a littell while still, for we haue fought for a simple matter and quarrell ouer long,

and his Knights of the round Table.

and therefore I requier thee of gentlenesse tell me thy name, for I was neuer of this time matched: So God me send, said the other knight and neuer before this time was there no manner of knight the which wounded and hurt so dangerously as thou hast done, and yet haue I fought in many battalles, and now shalt thou wit that I am a knight of the round table and my name is Sir Ector de Maris, brother to the good knight Sir Launcelot du lake. Alas said Sir Percivale, and my name is Sir Percivale de galis, that haue made my quest for to seeke Sir Launcelot, now am I seker that I shall find my quest, for ye haue slaine me. It is not so said Sir Ector, for I am slaine by your hands, and may not liue, therefore require you said Sir Ector vnto Sir Percivale, ride ye vnto a prioste and bring me a priest that I may receiue my soule, for I may not liue. And when ye come vnto the prioste, for King Arthur tell not my brother Sir Launcelot how I haue slaine me, for then he will be your mortall enemy, but I may say that I was slaine in my quest as I sought him. Thus said Sir Percivale ye say that thing that neuer will be, for I am so faint for bleeding that vntill I may stand, how can I then take my horse.

CHAP. XIII.

How by miracle they were both made whole by the comming of the holy vessell of the Sancgreall.

When they made both great dole out of measure. This will not auailed said Sir Percivale, and then he kneeled downe and made his prayers deuoutly vnto all mightie God, for hee was one of the best knights of the world that was at that time, in whome the very faith stood most in. Right so there came by the holy vessell of the Sancgreall with all maner of sweetnesse and labour but they could not readily see who beare that holy vessell, but Sir Percivale had a glimmering of that vessell, and the maiden that beare it, for hee was a perfect cleane maide. And forthwith they were both as whole of limme and hide as when they were in their life dayes, wherefore they gave thanks

The Historie of Prince Arthur

unto almightie God right deuoutly. And Iesu said Sir Perciuaile, what may this meane that wee bee thus healed, and right now we were at a point of dyinge? I wol well (said Sir Ector) what it is. It is an holy vessel that is borne by a maiden, and therein is a part of the holy blood of our Lord Iesus Christ blessed might hee bee, but it may not bee sene said Sir Ector but it be by a perfect man. So God me helpe said Sir Perciuaile, I saw a damosell as me thoughall in whit with a vessel in both her hands, and forthwithall I was whole. So then they took their horses and their harnes and amended it as well as they might that was broken and so they mounted upon their horses and rode talking together, and here Sir Ector told Sir Perciuaile how hee had sought his brother Sir Launcelot, and neuer could haue knowledge of him. In many strange adventures haue I been in this quest, and so either tould other of their adventures.

CHAP. XV.

How Sir Launcelot in his madnes tooke a sword and fought with a Knight, and after lepte in a bed.

AND now leaue we a little of Sir Ector and Sir Perciuaile, and speake wee of Sir Launcelot that suffred and endured many sharpe showers, which euer ranne wild wood from place to place and liued by fruit and such as he might get and dranke water two yere. And other clothing had he but little, saue his shirt and his breech. And thus as Sir Launcelot wandered here and there, hee came into a faire medow where he found a pavilion, and there vpon a tree hung a whit shield, and two swords hung therby, and two speares there leaned against a tree. And when Sir Launcelot saw the swords, anon hee lepte to the one sword and tooke it in his hand and drew it out, and then hee layd at the shield that all the medow range of the dint that he gaue with such a noyse as ten knights had fought together. When there came forth a dwarfe and lepte vnto Sir Launcelot and would haue had the sword out of his hand. And then Sir Launcelot toke him by both the shoulders and threwe him to the ground vpon his necke, that hee had almost broken his necke.

And

and his Knights of the round Table.

Withall the dwarfe cried for helpe. When came forth a knight and well apparalled in scarlet, furred with ermine. And anon as he saw Sir Launcelot he deemed that hee was out of his wit, and then he said with faire spech. Good day to thee, and of warme cloathes then to weld that sword. And that said Sir Launcelot, come thou not nigh mee, for and thou wilt thou wilt I will slay thee. And when the knight saw that hee was so backward with the pavilion then the dwarfe armed him lightly, and so the knight went by force and might to take the sword from Sir Launcelot. And so he came sleeping out, and when Sir Launcelot saw him all armed with his sword in his hand, Sir Launcelot smote him with such a might, and hit him vpon the helme so that the stroke troubled his braines. And therewith the sword brake in thre and the knight fell to the ground as if he had beene dead, the blood brast out at his mouth, nose, and eyes. And then Sir Launcelot ranne into the pavilion, and he crept into the warme bed, and in that bed there was a woman, and lightly shee gat her smocke and ranne out of the pavilion. And when shee saw her Lord lye on the ground, like to a dead man, then shee cried and wept as though she had bene mad. And with her noyse the knight awaked out of his slowe, and hee quickly with his eyes. And then hee asked her where that man was that had giuen him such a buffet, for such a buffet he neuer of mans hand. Sir said the dwarfe, it is no hurt to him, for hee is a man out of his wit, and doubt he hath bene a man of great worship, and for some hard word that he hath taken he is fallen mad. And me seemeth to the dwarfe that hee resembleth much vnto Sir Launcelot. For him I saw at the great turnement beside London defend said that knight that ever the noble knight Launcelot should be in such a plight. But whatsoeuer he be he shall doo him no harme will I none doe him. And this knight was Sir Blaunt, then he said vnto the dwarfe, Doe thou bring me horsebacke vnto my brother Sir Selaine that is at the castle of Blanche and tell him of mine adventure, and bid him

D

him

The Historie of Prince Arthur

him bring with him an horse litter, and then will we beare this knight vnto my Castle.

CHAP. XVI.

How Sir Launcelot was caried in a horse litter, and how Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bliaunt his host.

So the dwarfse rode fast and came againe, and brought Sir Seliuante with him, and five men with an horse litter. And so they took vp the fetherbed with Sir Launcelot, and so carryed it with them to the Castle Blancke. And he neuer walked untill hee was within the Castle, and then they bound his hands and his feet and gaue him good meates and good drinks, and brought him againe to his strength and his faireness. But in his wit they could not bring him againe, nor to know himselfe. Thus Sir Launcelot was there more then a yere and a halfe honestly arrayed and faire faren withall. When vpon a day this Lord of that Castle Sir Bliaunt took his armes on horsebacke with a speare to seeke aduentures. And as hee rode in a forrest there met him two knights aduenturous. The one was Sir Breuse saunce piccie, and his brother Sir Bertlor, and these two ranne both at once vpon Sir Bliaunt, and brake both their speares vpon his body, and then they drew out their swords and made a great battaile and fought long together. But at the last Sir Bliaunt was sore wounded, and felt himselfe faint, and then he fled on horsebacke toward his Castle. And as they came hurling vnto the Castle where Sir Launcelot lay in a window and saw two knights laid vpon Sir Bliaunt with their swords. And when Sir Launcelot saw that, yet as good as hee was, hee was sozry for his word Sir Bliaunt. And then Sir Launcelot brake his chaines from his legges and from his armes. And in the breaking he hurt badly his hands. And so Sir Launcelot ranne out at a posterne, and there he met with the two knights that chased Sir Bliaunt and there hee pulled downe Bertlor with his bare hands from his horse and therein withall hee waished his sword out of his hands, and so hee leapt vnto Sir Breuse, and gaue him such a buffet vpon the head, that he tumbled backward ouer his horse

and his Knights of the round Table.

And when Sir Bertlor saw his brother haue such a wound at a spear in his hand and would haue run Sir Launcelot downe. That saw Sir Bliaunt, and strooke off the hand of Sir Bertlor. And then Sir Breuse and Sir Bertlor gat their horses and fled. When Sir Seliuante came and saw what Sir Launcelot had done for his brother, then he thanked God, and so did other that euer they did him any good. But when Sir Bliaunt saw that Sir Launcelot was hurt with the breaking of his chaines, then hee was sozry that he had bound him. And hee said Sir Seliuante for hee is happle and gracious. Where he made great ioy of Sir Launcelot, and they bound him no more. And so he abode there halfe a yere and more. And in an early Sir Launcelot was ware where came a great boze with many hounds nigh him. But the boze was so bigg that he might no hounds teare him, and the hunters came blowing their hornes both on horseback and on foote. And when Sir Launcelot was ware where on of them alighted vpon his horse to a tree, and leane his speare against the

CHAP. XVII.

Sir Launcelot fought against a boore and slew him, and he was hurt, and after brought vnto an hermitage.

When Sir Launcelot and found the boze bound to a tree, with a speare leaning against a tree, and a sword tied vnto the bole. And then Sir Launcelot leapt into the saddle, and took his speare in his hand, and then hee rode after the boze. When Sir Launcelot was ware where the boze set his arse vnto the fast by an hermitage. When Sir Launcelot ranne at the boze with his speare. And therewith the boze turned him about and rone out the lungs and the heart of Sir Launcelots. And Sir Launcelot fell to the earth, and as euer Sir Launcelot got from his horse the boze rone him on the browne vnto the huckle bone. And then Sir Launcelot was vnto the boze he gat him on his feete, and drew out his sword, and strooke off the bozes head at one stroke. And therewith he met the hermit, and when he saw him haue such a wound, then

The Historie of Prince Arthur

then the hermit came unto Sir Launcelot and benoaned him, and would haue had him, but his hermitage. But when Sir Launcelot heard him open he, he was so sorry with his wound that he came upon the hermit, to haue him healed. And then the hermit came away. And when Sir Launcelot might not ouer take him, hee threw his sword after him, for Sir Launcelot might not go farther for bleeding. When the hermit turned againe and asked Sir Launcelot how he was hurt. Follow said Sir Launcelot, this wound hath bitten me right sore. When come with me said the hermit and I shall heale you. Goe thy way said Sir Launcelot, and deale not with mee. And then the hermit ranne his way fast, and in his way he met with a good knight with many men. Sir said the hermit, here is fast by my place the goodliest man that ever I saw, and hee is sore wounded with a boze, and yet hee hath laine the boze, but well I wot said the hermit, and hee bee not holpen that goodly man shall die of that wound, and that were full great pittie. When that knight at the desire of the hermit gat a cart, and in that cart that knight put the boze and Sir Launcelot, for Sir Launcelot was so feeble that they might right easely deale with him. And so Sir Launcelot was brought to the hermitage, and the hermit healed him of his wound. But the hermit might not finde Sir Launcelot sustentance, and so he entreated and waied feeble, both of his body and of his wit for default of sustentance, and waied more woer then he was aforehand. And then upon a day Sir Launcelot ranne his way into the forest. And by aduenture came into the Cittie of Colbin, where dame Elaine was that had borne Galahad Sir Launcelots sonne. And so when hee was entred into the towne, he ranne through the towne to the Castle, and there all the young men of the Cittie ranne after Sir Launcelot, and there they threw stones at him, and gaue him many sad strokes. And as Sir Launcelot might reach any of them, he threw them so that they woulde neuer more come in his hands, for of some he brake their legges and some their armes, and so fled into the Castle. And then came out knights and squires for to rescue Sir Launcelot, and when they beheld him and looked upon his person, they thought they saw neuer so goodly a man. And when they

and his Knights of the round Table

so many wounds upon him, they all demed that hee was a man of worship. And then they ordained cloathes for his body, and straw underneath him, and a little house, and every day they would throw him meate, and set him drink. There were sawe or non that would bring meate to him. And so Sir Launcelot was known by dame Elaine, and how he was in a chamber, and after healed by the holy Sangreal. And then King Pelles had a nephew whose name was Castor, and he desired of the King his uncle for to be made knight. And so at the request of this Castor the King made knight at the feast of Candlemasse. And when Castor was knight that same day he gaue many golunes. And so Sir Launcelot sent for the fools that was Sir Launcelot. And when hee came afore Sir Castor, hee gaue Sir Launcelot a robe of gold, and all that belonged unto him, and when Sir Launcelot was like a knight, he was the seemliest man in all the world, and none so well made. So when hee saw his time, hee went into the garden, and there Sir Launcelot lay him downe to sleepe. And so at after noone dame Elaine came into the garden for to play them. And as they played up and downe, one of dame Elaines maidens espyed a goodly man by the well sleeping, and anon she went unto dame Elaine. Peace said dame Elaine, say no word, for hee brought me Elaine whereas he lay. And when Elaine beheld, anon shee fell in remembrance of him, and shee berily for Sir Launcelot, and therein she fell on her knees heartily that shee sank downe to the ground. And when shee wept a great while, then she arose and called her father, and said she was sick. And so she went out of the garden and went straight unto her father, and there she took him by the hand, and then shee said, O father, now haue I got your helpe, and thus if that you helpe mee, I will be your sonne for ever. What is that daughter said King Pelles, thus it is. In your garden I went for to sport me, and

The History of Prince Arthur

And there by the well I found Sir Launcelot du lake sleeping. I may not beleue it said king Pelles. Sir said she, truly he is ther, and me seemeth that hee should bee distraught out of his wit. When hold you still said king Pelles and let me deale. Then the king called vnto him such as hee most trusted a foure persons and Dame Elaine his daughter. And when they came to the well and beheld Sir Launcelot, anon dame Brisen knew him. Sir said dame Brisen wee must be wise and ware how wee deale with him, for this knight is out of his mind, and if that we awake him rudely, what hee will doe, we all know not, but yee shall abide, and I shall throw such an enchantment vpon him, that hee shall not awake within the space of an houre. And so shee did. Then within a little while after king Pelles commanded that all the people should auoide, that none should bee in that way there as the king should come. And so when all this was done, these foure men and these ladies laid hand vpon sir Launcelot. And so they beare him into a toure, and so into the chamber, where as was the holy vessell of Sangreal, and by force Sir Launcelot was lathe by that holy vessell. And then there came an holy man and vncouered the vessell. And so by myracle and by vertue of that holy vessell Sir Launcelot was all healed and recovered. And when hee was awaked hee groined, and sighed sore, and complained greatly that hee was passing sore.

CHAP. XIX.

How Sir Launcelot after that he was whole and had his minde, he was ashamed, and how dame Elaine desired a castle for him.

AND when sir Launcelot saw king Pelles and dame Elaine hee wared ashamed, and thus hee said. O good Lord Iesu how came I heere, for God sake my Lord let me wit how I came heere. Sir said dame Elaine, into this countrey yee came like a mad man all out of your wit, and heere yee haue bene kept as a foole, and no creature heere knew what yee weere till that by fortune a maide of mine brought mee vnto you where as yee lay sleeping by a well side, and anon as I verily beheld you I knew you and then I told my father, and so yee were brought

and his Knights of the round Table:

brought before this holy vessell, & by the vertue of it thus were healed. O Iesu mercy said Sir Launcelot, if this bee sooth how many be there that know of my woodnesse. So God mee said dame Elaine, no more but my father & I and Dame Brisen. Now for Christs loue said sir Launcelot keepe it secret and let no man know it in the world, for I am sore ashamed that I haue bene thus miscaried, for I am banished out of the countrey of Logris for euer, that is to say, out of the countrey of England. And so sir Launcelot lay more then fourtnight or more hee might stir for sozenesse. And then vpon a day hee said to dame Elaine these words. Faire Lady Elaine, for your sake I haue had much trauaile, care and anguish, I neede not to hearse it, yee know well how, notwithstanding I know full that I haue done foule to you when I drew my sword vpon you for to haue slaine you on the morrow, when I had laine with you. And all was the cause that yee and dame Brisen made me folge by you maugre my head, and as yee say that night I slahad your sonne was gotten. That is truth said dame Elaine. Now will yee for my loue said Sir Launcelot, goe vnto your father and get me a place of him wherein I may dwell, for in the court of king Arthur may I neuer come. Sir said Dame Elaine, I will liue and dye with you and onely for your sake, if my life might not auaille you, and that my death might auaille you, wit yee well I would dye for your sake. And I will goe to my father, and I am sure there is nothing that I can desire of him but I shall haue it. And where yee be my Lord sir Launcelot, doubt yee not but I will bee with you withall the seruice that I may do. So forthwith thee went vnto her father and said: Sir my Lord Sir Launcelot desireth to bee heere by you in some castle of yours wel daughter said the king, with it is he desire to abide in these marches, hee shall bee in the castle of Blaunt, and there shall yee bee with him, and twentie of the greatest Ladies that be in this countrey, and they shall bee of the greatest blood, and also yee shall haue ten knights with you, my daughter I will that yee wit, wee all bee honoured by the blood of the noble knight Sir Launcelot.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XX.

How Sir *Launcelot* came into Ioyous ile, and there he named himselfe *le Cheualler mall fet*.

Then went dame Elaine vnto sir Launcelot, and told him al how her father had deuised for him and her. When came the knight Sir Castor (that was nephew vnto King Pelles) vnto sir Launcelot, and asked him what was his name. Sir said Sir Launcelot my name is *le Cheualler mall fet*. That is as much to say, the knight that hath trespassed. Sir said Sir Castor, it may well bee so, but mee seemeth that your name should be Sir Launcelot du lake, for or now I haue seene you. Sir said Sir Launcelot yee are not as a gentle knight, I put case my name were sir Launcelot and that it list mee not to discover my name, what should it grieue you to keepe my counsaile, and yee not hurt thereby. But wit yee well and euer it lye in my power I shall grieue you, and that I promise you truly. When sir Castor kneeled downe and asked Sir Launcelot mercy, for I shall neuer vtter what yee bee as long as yee bee in these partes. When sir Launcelot pardoned him. And then after this King Pelles with ten knights, and dame Elaine, and twentie Ladies rode vnto the castle of Blaunt, that stood in an Iland enclosed with iron, with a faire water deepe and large. And when they were there, sir Launcelot let call it the Ioyous Ile, and there hee was called none other wise but *le Cheualler mall fet*, the knight that hath trespassed. When Sir Launcelot let make him a shield all of sabels, and a Queene crowned in the middelt all of silver, and a knight cleane armed kneeling before her, and euery day once for any mirths that all the Ladies might make him, hee would looke towards the realme of Logris, where as King Arthur, and Queene Gueneuer were. And then would hee fall on a weeping as though his heart should all to breake. So it bee fell that time that Sir Launcelot heard of a iusting fast by his castle within fere mile. When he called vnto him a dwarfe, and bad him goe vnto that iusting, and or euer the knights depart, look that thou make

and his Knights of the round Table.

make there a crie in hearing of all the knights that bee there, that there is a good knight in Ioyous Ile, that is the castle Blaunt, and say that his name is *le Cheualler mall fet* that will iust against all knights that will come. And who that putteth that knight to the worse shall haue a faire maiden and a *harlawen*.

CHAP. XXI.

Of a great turnement in the Ioyous Ile, and how Sir *Percinale* fought with him.

When this crie was made vnto Ioyous Ile drew many knights to the number of fise hundred. And wit yee well that there was neuer scene in King Arthurs daies one knight that did such deds of armes as Sir Launcelot did thre dayes together. For hee had the better hand of fise hundred knights, and yet there was none slaine of them. And after that sir Launcelot made them all a great feast. And in the meane while came Sir Percinale de Galis, and sir Ector de maris vnder the castle that was called the Ioyous Ile. And so as they beheld that faire castle they would haue gone into it, but they might not for the broad water, and brydge could they none find. When they saw on that other side a Lady with a sparhawk vpon her hand. And Sir Percinale called vnto her, and asked her who was within that Castle. Faire knight said the Lady, heere within this Castle is the fairest Lady in this land, and her name is Dame Elaine. Also we haue in this Castle the fairest knight, and the mightest man that is (I dare well say) now liuing, and hee calleth himselfe *le Cheualler mall fet*. Now came hee into this marches said sir Percinale. Truly said the damosell, hee came into this countrey like a mad man with dogs and boyes chasing him throug out the Citie of Corbin. And by the hoig vessell of the Sangreall, hee was brought into his wit againe, but hee will not doe battaile with no knight but by vnderne or byngone. And if yee list to come into the castle said the damosell, yee must ride vnto the further side of the castle and there shall yee find a vessell that shall beare you and your horses. When they departed and came vnto the vessell. And then Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Perciuale alighted and said vnto sir Ector de Maris, yee shall abide me heere vntill I know what manner of knight hee is, for it were a great shame vnto vs in as much as hee is but one knight, and wee should both doe battaile with him. Doe as yee list said sir Ector de Maris, here shall I abide you vntill that I heere of you againe. Then sir Perciuale passed the water. And when hee came vnto the castle gate, he said to the porter. Go thou vnto the good knight within the castle, and tell him that heere is come an arraunt knight to iust with him. Sir said the porter, ride yee within the castle, and there shall yee find a common place for iusting, that Lords and ladies may behold you. So anon as sir Launcelot had warning, he was soone ready. And there sir Perciuale and sir Launcelot encountred with such a might, and their speares were so rude, that both the horses and the knights fell to the ground. And then they auoided their horses and drew out their swords, and hewed away cantels of their shields, and hurled together with their shields like two wild bores, and either wounded other passing sore. And at the last sir Perciuale spake first when they had fought more then two houres. Faire knight said sir Perciuale, I require thee tell me thy name, for I met neuer with such a knight as yee are. Sir said sir Launcelot my name is Le cheualler mall fet. Now tell me your name said sir Launcelot, require you as yee are a gentle knight. Truly said sir Perciuale, my name is Sir de Galis de Galis, which is brother vnto the good knight Sir Lamoracke de Galis, and King Pellinore was our father, and Sir Aglaule is my brother. Alas said sir Lancelot, what haue I don, to fight with you that are a knight of the round table, that sometime was your fellow in King Arthurs Court.

CHAP. XXII.

How each of them knew other, and of their great courtesie. And how his brother Sir Ector came vnto him, and of their ioy.

As therewithall Sir Launcelot kneled downe vpon his knees and threwe away his shield and his sword from him. When sir Perciuale saw him doe so, hee meruailed what hee meained, and thus hee said vnto him. Sir knight whatsoeuer thou

and his Knights of the round Table:

thou bee, I require thee vpon the high order, of knighthood, tell me your right name. When sir Launcelot answered and said. God me help, my name is Sir Launcelot du lake, king Bans sonne of Benwicke. Alas said Sir Perciuale, what thing haue I done, I was sent by Duene Gueneuer for to seeke you, and so I haue sought you nigh this two yeare. And yonder is sir Ector de maris your brother abideth me on the other side of the water. Now Sir I pray you for Gods sake said sir Perciuale forgive me mine offence that I haue here done. It is soone forgiven said Sir Launcelot. When Sir Perciuale sent for sir Ector de Maris. And when Sir Launcelot had a sight of him, hee ranne vnto him and took him in his armes. And then sir Ector kneled downe, and either wept vpon other that all had great pittie to behold them. When came dame Elaine and there she made them the greatest cheere that she could deuise. And there she told sir Ector and sir Perciuale how and in what manner sir Launcelot came into that countrey, and how hee was there healed. And there it was knowen how long sir Launcelot was with sir Blisart and with Sir Seluanr, and how hee first met with them, and how hee departed from them because of a boze. And how the heremite healed Sir Launcelot of his great wound, and how that hee came to Corbin.

CHAP. XXIII.

How Sir Bors and Sir Lionell came to King Brandegore, and how Sir Bors tooke his sonne Heline le Blanke, and of Sir Launcelot.

Now leaue wee of Sir Launcelot in Joyous Ale, with the faire Lady dame Elaine and Sir Perciuale and sir Ector playing with them and returne we vnto Sir Bors de ganis and Sir Lionel, which had sought sir Launcelot nigh by the space of two yeare, and neuer could they heare of him. And so as they rode thus by aduenture they came vnto the house of King Brandegore, and there Sir Bors was well knowen, for he had gotten a child of the kings daughter fiftene yeare before, and his name was Heline le Blanke. And when Sir Bors saw that child, it lieth him passing wel. And so those two knights had good cheere

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

of king Brandegore. And on the morrow after sir Bors came afoze king Brandegore and said. Heere is my sonne Helaine le Blancke, that as it is said hee is my sonne And sith it is so, I will that yee wit I will haue him with me vnto king Archurs Court. Sir said the king, ye may well take him with you, but hee is ouer tender of age. As for that said sir Bors, I will haue him with mee and bring him vnto the house of most worship of the world. So when sir Bors should depart, there was made great sorrow for the departing of Helaine le Blancke and great weeping was there made. But sir Bors and sir Lionell departed. And within short space after their departing they came to Camelot whereas at that time was king Arthur. And when king Arthur vnderstood that Helaine le Blancke was sir Bors son and nephew vnto king Brandegore, then king Arthur let make him knight of the round table. And so he proued a good knight and an aduenturous.

Now will wee turne vnto our matter of Sir Launcelot. It befel vpon a day Sir Ector and sir Perciuaile came vnto sir Launcelot and asked him what he would doe, and whether hee would goe with them vnto king Arthur or not. Nay said Sir Launcelot, that may not be by no meanes. For I was so euill intreated at the Court, that I cast me neuer to come there moze. Sir said Sir Ector I am your olone brother, and ye are the man in the world that I loue most, and if I vnderstood that it were your disworship, yee may right well vnderstand that I would neuer counsaile you thereto, but king Arthur and all his knights, and in especiall Quene Gueneuer made such dole and sorrow that it was maruaile to heare and see. And yee must remember the great worship and renowne that yee bee of, how that yee haue bene moze spoken of then any other knight that is now liuing. For there is none that beareth the name now but yee and sir Tristram. Therefore brother said Sir Ector, make you ready to ride vnto the Court with vs. And I dare well say there was neuer knight better welcome vnto the Court then yee. And I wot well and can make it good said sir Ector it hath cost my Lady the Quene twentie thousand pound the seeking of you. Well brother said Sir Launcelot I will

and his Knights of the round Table.

doe after your counsell and ride with you. So then they take their horses and made them ready, and tooke their leaue of king Pelles and of dame Elaine: And when sir Launcelot should depart Dame Elaine made great sorrow. My Lord Sir Launcelot said Dame Elaine, at this saue feast of Pentecost shall your sonne and mine Galahad be made knight, for he is full fiftene winters old. So as yee list said Sir Launcelot God giue him grace to proue a good knight. As for that said Dame Elaine, I doubt not but hee will proue the best man of his kinne, except one. Then shall he be a man good enough said sir Launcelot.

CHAP. XXIV.

How Sir Launcelot with Sir Perciuaile and Sir Ector came to the Court and of the great ioy of him.

Then they heparted and within fise dayes tourney they came to Camelot which is called in englysh Winchester. And when Sir Launcelot was come among them, the king and all the knights made great ioy of him. And there sir Perciuaile de galis and sir Ector de Maris began to tell of all the aduentures how Sir Launcelot had bene out of his mind all the time of his absence. how he called himself le cheuallere mal fet, as much to say the knight had trespassed: and in thre dayes sir Launcelot smote downe fise hundred knights. And euer as sir Ector and sir Perciuaile told these tales of sir Launcelot, Quene Gueneuer wept as shee would haue died. Then after ward the Quene made great ioy. Wherupon said king Arthur I maruaile for what cause yee Sir Launcelot went out of your mind, I and many other demed that it was for the loue of faire Elaine the daughter of king Pelles, by whom it is noyed that ye haue gotten a child, & his name is Galahad. And men say he shall doe meruailes. My Lord said sir Launcelot if I did any folly, I haue found that I sought. And so the king held him still and spake no moze. But al sir Launcelots kin knew for whom he went out of his mind. And then there were great feasts made and great ioy. And many great Lords and Ladies when they heard that sir Launcelot was come to the Court againe made great ioy.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XXV.

How la beale Ifond counselled Sir Tristram to goe vnto the court of the great feast of Pentecost.

NOW will wee leaue off this matter and speake we of Sir Tristram and of Sir Palomides that was the sarasin vnchristened. When Sir Tristram was come home vnto Joyous gard from his aduentures. And this while that sir Launcelot was mist two yere and more, and Sir Tristram beare the renowne through all the realme of Logris, and many strange aduentures befell him, and full well and manly and worshipfully he brought them to an end. So when hee was come home, la beale Ifond told him of the great feast that should be at Pentecost next following, and there she told him how Sir Launcelot had bene mist two yere and more, and that while hee had bene out of his mind, and how he was holpen by the holy vessel of the Sancgreall. Alas said Sir Tristram that caused some debate betwene him and Quene Gueneuer. Sir said la beale Ifond, I know it all, for Quene Gueneuer sent me a letter, in the which she wrote mee all how it was, for to require you to seeke him. And now blessed bee God said la beale Ifond, hee is whole and sound and come againe vnto the Court. Whereof am I glad said sir Tristram and now shall ye and I make vs ready. For both ye and I will be at the feast, sir said la beale Ifond, and it please you I will not be there for through me ye are marked of many good knights and that causeth you to haue much more labour for my sake then nedeeth you. When will I not be there said Sir Tristram, but if yee be there: God defend said la beale Ifond, for then shall I bee spoken of shame among all quenes and Ladies of estate, for yee which are called one of the noblest knights of the world, and ye a knight of the round table, how may yee bee mist at that feast. What shall be said among the knights. Se how Sir Tristram hunteth and hawketh and courteth within the Castle with his Lady, and forsaketh his worship. Alas shall some say, it is pittie that euer he was made knight, or that euer he should haue the loue of a Lady. Also what shall

Quenes

and his Knights of the round Table.

Quenes and Ladies say of me, it is pitie that I haue my life, that I will hold so noble a knight as yee are from your worship. So God me helpe said Sir Tristram to la beale Ifond it is passing well said of you, and nobly counsell. And now I well vnderstand that yee loue me. And like as yee haue counselled me, I will doe apart thereafter. But there shall no man nor child ride with mee but my selfe alone. And so will I ride on teweleday next comming, and no harnois of warre but my spear and my sword.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Sir Tristram departed vnarmed and met with Sir Palomides, and how they smote each other, and how Sir Palomides forsooke him.

AND so when the day came, Sir Tristram took his leaue of his Lady la beale Ifond. And shee sent with him foure knights, and within halfe a mile hee sent them againe. And within a mile after sir Tristram saw before him where sir Palomides had stricken downe a knight, and had almost wound him to death. When Sir Tristram repented him that he was vnarmed. And then hee houned still. With that Sir Palomides saw sir Tristram and cried on high: Sir Tristram now be we met. For or wee depart we will redresse our old sores. As for that said Sir Tristram, there was neuer yet christian man that might make his boast that euer I fled from him and withthou well sir Palomides thou that art a sarasin shall neuer make thy boast that Sir Tristram de lioncs shall flee from thee. And there withall Sir Tristram made his horse to run with all his might, and hee straight vpon Sir Palomides, and brake his speare vpon him in an hundred peeces, and forthwith Sir Tristram drew his sword, and then he turned his horse and strooke at sir Palomides five great strokes vpon his helme. And then Sir Palomides stood still and beheld sir Tristram, and marvelled of his hardnesse and of his great folly. And then sir Palomides said to himselfe, and Sir Tristram were armed, it were hard to cease him of this battaille, and if I turne againe and slay him, I am named wheresoeuer that I goe. When Sir Tristram spake and

said

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

said. Thou coward knight what callest thou to doe. Why wilt thou not doe battaile with mee for haue thou no doubt I shall endure all thy malice. Ah sir Tristram said sir Palomides full well thou wotest I may not fight with thefor shame, for thou art here naked & I am armed and if I slep thee, the dishonour shall be mine. And well wotest thou said sir Palomides to sir Tristram that I know thy strength and thy hardinesse to endure against a good knight. That is truth said sir Tristram I understand well thy valiantnesse. Yee say well said sir Palomides, now I require you tell me a question that I shall aske you. Tell me what it is said sir Tristram, and I shall answer you the truth as God mee helpe I put the case said sir Palomides that ye were armed at all points as well as I am, and I naked as ye be, what would ye doe to me now by your true knighthood. Ah said sir Tristram, now I understand thee well sir Palomides for now I must say mine owne iudgement, and as God me blisse that shall I say, shall not be said for feare that I haue of thee. But this is all. Wilt thou well sir Palomides, as at this time thou shouldest depart from me, for I would not haue to doe with thee. No more will I said sir Palomides, and therefore ride forth on thy way. As for that I may choose said sir Tristram, either to ride or to abide. But sir Palomides said sir Tristram I maruaile of one thing that thou art so good a knight, that thou wilt not be christened, and thy brother sir Saffire is christened:

CHAP. XXVII.

How that Sir *Tristram* gat him harnis of a Knight which was sore hurt, and how he ouerthrew Sir *Percivale*.

As for that said sir Palomides I may not yet be christened, for one anow which I haue made many yeares agoe, how bee it in my heart I beleue in Iesu Christ and his milke mother Mary, but I haue but one battaile to doe. And when that is done, I will be christened with a good will. By my head said sir Tristram, as for one battaile thou shalt seeke it no longer. For God defend said sir Tristram that through my default thou

and his Knights of the round Table:

shouldest any longer liue thus a sarasin. For yonder is a knight which ye sir Palomides haue hurt and smitten downe. Now helpe mee that I wore armed in his armour, and I shall fullfill thine anowes. As yee will said sir Palomides, so will it bee. So they rode both vnto that knight that sat on a horse. And then sir Tristram saluted him, and he full weakly answered him againe. Sir said sir Tristram I require you that you will tell me your name. Sir said he my name is sir Galleron of Galway, and am a knight of the round table, so God me helpe said sir Tristram I am right heauie for your hurts. But it is all, I must pray you to lend me all your whole armour, yee see that I am vnarmed, and I must doe battaile with a knight. Sir said the hurt knight, yee shall haue it with a good will. But yee must beware, for I warne you that this knight is strong. Sir said sir Galleron, I require you tell me your name and what is that knights name that hath beaten you. Sir as for my name it is sir Tristram de Lioness, and as for that knights name that hath hurt you is sir Palomides brother the good knight sir Saffire, and yet is sir Palomides vnarmed. Alas said sir Galleron, that is pittie that so good a knight and so noble a man of armes should be vnchristened. So yee helpe said sir Tristram. either yee shall slep mee, or I shall slep you, but that he shall be christened or we depart in sunder. Lord sir Tristram said sir Galleron, your great renowne and worship is well knowne through many realmes, and God forbid you this from worship and shame. When sir Tristram armed sir Galleron the which was a noble knight, and had many daies of armes. And he was a large knight of flesh and bone. And when hee was vnarmed hee stood vpon his feete he was hurt in the backe with a speare. Yet as well as sir Galleron might he armed sir Tristram. And then sir Tristram mounted vpon his owne horse, and in his hand he gat sir Galleron's speare. And therewithall sir Palomides was ready, and they came hurling together and either smote other in the midst of their shields, and therewithall sir Palomides speare broke, and sir Tristram smote downe the horse. And then sir Palomides as soone as he might auoide his horse and dressed his

ff

Shield

The Historie of Prince Arthur

shield and drew out his sword. What saw Sir Tristram and there with he alighted, and tied his horse to a tree.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Sir Tristram and Sir Palomides fought long together and after accorded, and how Sir Tristram made him to be christened

Then they came together as two wild bores tashing the one the other, tracing and traivering like two noble men which oft had bene well proved in battaile. But alway Sir Palomides vnder the might of Sir Tristram and therfore he suffered him not to breath him. What they fought more then two houres. But often Sir Tristram smote such strokes at Sir Palomides that hee made him to kneele. And Sir Palomides brake and cut away many peeces of Sir Tristrams shield, and then Sir Palomides wounded Sir Tristram, for he was a well fighting man. When Sir Tristram was wroth but of measure, and then he rushed vnto Sir Palomides with such a might that Sir Palomides fell groweling on the ground, and there withall he leapt vp lightly vpon his fate. And then Sir Tristram wounded Sir Palomides passing sore through the shoulder. And alway Sir Tristram fought still in like hard. And Sir Palomides failed not, but gaue him many sad strokes. And at the last Sir Tristram doubled his strokes, and by fortune Sir Tristram smote Sir Palomides sword out of his hands. And if Sir Palomides had swooped for his sword Sir Tristram had slaine him. When Sir Palomides stood and beheld his sword with a full so boldfull heart. How now said Sir Tristram vnto Sir Palomides, now haue I thee at a vantage as thou hadst mee to day, but it shall neuer be said in no court, nor among no good knights that Sir Tristram shall slay any knight that is weaponlesse, therfore take thou thy sword and let vs make an end of this battell. When spake Sir Palomides vnto Sir Tristram. As for to doe this battaile I dare right well end it. But I haue no lust to fight any more. And for this cause said Sir Palomides. The offence that I haue done vnto you is not so great but and if it please you wee may bee friends. All that I haue offended is and was

and his Knights of the round Table

the loue of the Quene la beale Isoud, King Markes wife. As for her I dare well say thee is perelless above all other ladies, and also I proffer her neuer no dishonour. And by her because of her I haue gotten the most part of my worship. And thence I offended neuer as to her owne person. And as for the offence which I haue done, it was against your owne son. And for that offence ye haue giuen mee this day many wounds and sad strokes, and some I haue giuen you againe. Now I dare well say I felt neuer no man of so great a might and strength, nor so well breathed, but if it were the noble knight Sir Launcelot du lake. Wherefore I require you Lord Sir Tristram, forgive mee all that I haue offended vnto you. And this day haue me vnto the next Church, and I will bee cleane confessed, and after that see you that I truly baptized. And then wee will ride altogether vnto the court of my Lord King Arthur, so that wee may bee there at the feast of Pentecost. Now take your horse said Sir Tristram as ye haue said, so shall it bee done. And all your euill will I forgive it you as I doe. And here within this mile is the Suffrigan of Carleill, which shall giue you the Sacrament of the churche. When they tooke their horses and Sir Galleron rode with them. And when they came afore the Suffrigan, Sir Tristram told him their desire. When the Suffrigan commanded to be brought a great vessell with water, and when he had halowed it, hee confessed cleane Sir Palomides. And Sir Tristram and Sir Galleron were his Godfathers. And then soone after they departed riding toward Camelot, where the noble King Arthur and Quene Gueneuer were keeping a Court royall of the noble knights of the world. And for the most part all the knights of the round table were there at that time. And so the King and all the court were glad that Sir Palomides was christened. And at the same feast in came Sir Galahad and sat in the siege prious. And so therewithall departed and disuered all the fellowship of knights of the round table. And Sir Tristram turned againe toward Joyous gard. And Sir Palomides followed after the questing beast.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XXIX.

How at the Vigill of the feast of Pentecost entred into the Hall before King Arthur a damosell and desired Sir Launcelot for to come and bud a Knight, and how he went with her.

At the vigill of Pentecost when all the fellowship of the Round table were come vnto Camelot, and there they all heard their seruice, & then all the tables were couered, ready to set thereon the meate. Right so entred into the Hall a full faire gentlewoman on horsebacke, that had riden full fast, for her horse was all to best wet. Then shee there alighted and came befoze King Arthur and saluted him. And then the King said. Damosell God blesse you. Sir said shee, for Gods, sake shew me where sir Launcelot is. Ponder may yee see him said King Arthur. Then shee went vnto Sir Launcelot and said sir Launcelot I salute you on King Pelles behalfe, and I require you to come with me heere by into a forrest. When sir Launcelot asked her with whome that shee dwelled. I dwell said shee with King Pelles. What is your will with me said Sir Launcelot. Yee shall know and vnderstand said shee when ye come thither. Well said he, I shall gladly goe with you. So sir Launcelot had his squier to saddle his horse and bring his armour. And in all the hast he did his commandement. Then came the Quene vnto sir Launcelot and said. Will ye leaue vs at this high feast. Madame said the gentlewoman, wit yee well he shall be with you to morrow by diuner time. If I will said the Quene that hee should not bee with vs heere to morrow, hee should not goe with you by my good will. Right so departed sir Launcelot with the gentlewoman and rode till they came into a forrest and in to a great balley, where he saw an Abbey of nunnes. And there was a squier ready to open the gates. And so they entred in and disconded from their horses, and there came a faire fellowship about, sir Lancelot and welcomed him, and were passing glad of his coming. And then they led him into the Abbesses chamber and vnarmed him. Right so hee was was lying vpon a bed two of his cosins, Sir Bors and Sir Lionell and then he awaked them. And when they saw him they made great toy: Sir said

and his Knights of the round Table.

Bore vnto sir Launcelot what aduenture hath brought you hither, for we wend to morrow to haue found you at Camelot. God me helpe said Sir Launcelot, a gentlewoman hath brought me hether, but I know not the cause. In the meane tyme as they stood thus talking together there came in twelue ladies which brought with them Galahad, the which was passing faire and well made that vniuersal men in the world might see his match. And all those Ladies wept. Sir said the Quene, wee bring here this child the which ye haue nourished, wee pray you for to make him a Knight. For of a more chier mans hand may hee not receiue the order of Knight. Sir Launcelot beheld that young squire and saw hee was as chere and demure as a dove, with all maner of good fetures, and hee wend of his age neuer to haue seene so faire a man of his age. Then said sir Lancelot, cometh this desire of himselfe and all they said yea. When shall hee said Sir Launcelot receiue the high order of Knighthood as to morrow at the reueiling of the high feast. That night sir Launcelot had passing chere, and on the morrow at the houre of prime at gala-dinner he made him knight and said. God make him a good knight for beantie faileth him not as any that liueth.

CHAP. XXX.

How the letters were found written in the siege perillous, and of the miruailous aduenture of the sword in a stone.

When the letters were found written in the siege perillous, and of the miruailous aduenture of the sword in a stone. Sir said Sir Lancelot, will ye come with me vnto the court of my Lord King Arthur. Nay said hee, I will not goe with you as at this time. When he departed from the court he toke his two cosins with him. And so they came vnto Camelot by the houre of vnderne on Whittsunday. By that tyme the King and the Quene were gone to the minster to see their seruice: When the king & the Quene were passing chere of Sir Bors and Sir Lionell and so was all the fellowship. When the king and all the knights were come from the seruice the barons spied in the sieges of the round table all about the court with letters of gold. Were ought to set he, and he ought

The Historie of Prince Arthur

to sit here: And thus they went so long untill they came vnto the siege perillous where they found letters newly writtten of gold that said: Foure hundred winters and soure and fiftie accomplished after the passion of our Lord Iesu Christ ought this siege to be fulfilled. When they all said. This is a full meruailous thing and an aduenturous. In the name of God said Sir Launcelot. And then hee accounted the tearme of the writing from the birth of our Lord vnto that day. It seemeth me said Sir Launcelot, this siege ought to be fulfilled this same day, for this is the feast of Pentecost after the hundred and foure and fiftie yeare, and if it would please all parties, I would that none of these letters were seene this day, till hee bee come that ought to achieve this aduenture. When made they for to ordeine a cloth of silke for to couer these letters in the siege perillous. When the King had hast vnto dinner. Sir said Sir Kay the steward, if yee goe now vnto your meate, ye shall breake the old custome of your court. For yee haue not bled vpon this day to sit at your meate or that yee haue seene some aduenture. Yee say truth said King Arthur, but I had so great ioy of Sir Launcelot and of his cousins, which be come to the court whole and sound that I bethought me not of mine old custome. So as they stood speaking, in came a squier and said vnto the King. Sir I bring vnto you meruailous tidings. What be they said King Arthur. Sir there is heere beneath at the riuer a great stone which I saw flete aboue the water, and therein saw I a sword sticking. When said the King I will see that meruaile. So all the knights went with him. And when they came vnto the riuer, they found there a stone fleting as it had bene of red marbre, and therein stuck a faire and a rich sword, and in the point thereof were precious stones wrought with subtil letters of gold. When the barons read the letters, which said in this wise. Neuer shall man take mee hence, but onely hee by whom I ought to hang, and hee shall be the best knight of the world. When the King had seene these letters he said vnto Sir Launcelot. Faire Sir this sword ought to be yours, for I am sure that yee be the best knight of the world. When Sir Launcelot answered soberly. Certainly Sir it is not my sword. Also Sir wit yee well I haue

and his Knights of the round Table.

no hardinesse to set my hand to it, for it belongeth not to me by my side. Also who assaileth for to take that sword and touch of it, hee shall receiue a wound by that sword, that hee shall not be whole long after. And I will that ye wit that this day will be the aduentures of the Sancgreal (that is called the holy vessel) begin.

CHAP. XXXI.

Now Sir Gawaine assaied to draw out the sword. And how an old man brought in Sir Galadad.

Now my faire nephew said the King vnto Sir Gawaine assay ye once for my loue. Sir said hee saue your grace I will doe that. Sir said the King assay to take the sword at my command. Sir said Sir Gawaine, your command I will obey. And therewithal he took the sword by the handell, but he might not draw it. I thanke you said King Arthur vnto Sir Gawaine. Now Sir Gawaine said Sir Launcelot, now wit yee well that the sword shall touch you so sore, that ye shall will yee had never your hand thereto, for the best Castle of this realme. Sir said Sir Gawaine, I might not withstand mine vncles will and commandment. But when King Arthur heard this, he repented much. And then hee had Sir Perciuaile that hee should assay for his loue. And he said gladly for to beare Sir Gawaine fellow. And therewithall he set his hand vpon the sword and drew it strongly. But he might not once moue it. When were there any that durst be so hardy to set their hands thereto. Now yee goe vnto your dinner said Sir Kay vnto King Arthur. This meruailous aduenture haue ye seene. So the King and all the knights went vnto the Court. And euery knight knew his place, and set them therein. And the young men that were knights serued them. So when they were serued and the sieges fulfilled saue onely the siege perillous. And there was a meruailous aduenture, that all the doores and the windows of the pallace shut by themselves. But for all that the light was not greatly darked and therewith they were all abashed one and other. When King Arthur spake first and said.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

By God faire fellows and Lords we haue seene this day meruailes, but of night I suppose we shall see greater meruailes. In the meane while came in a good old man and an ancient clothed all in white. And there was no knight that knew from whence hee came. And with him hee brought a young knight both on foote in red armes, without sword or shield, save a scabbard hanging by his side and these words hee said. Peace be with you faire Lords. Then the old man said vnto king Arthur Sir I bring you heere a young knight that is of Kings lineage and of the kindred of Ioseph of Arimathy, wherefore the meruailes of this court and of strang realmes shall be fully accomplished.

CHAP. XXXII.

How the old man brought Sir Galahad vnto the siege perillous and set him therein, and how all the Knights meruailed thereof.

The King was right glad of his words, and said vnto the good man. Sir yee bee right hartely wellcome and the young knight with you. Then the old man made the young knight to vnrme him, and hee was in a cote of red sendell and beare a mantell vpon his shoulder that was furred with fine ermines, and put that vpon him. And the old man said vnto the young knight. Sir follow after. And anon he brought him vnto the siege perillous, where beside sate Sir Launcelot. And the good old man lift vp the cloth and found there letters that said. This is the siege of Sir Galahad the good knight. Sir said the old man wit yee well this place is yours. And then he set him downe surely in that siege, And then hee said to the old man Sir yee may now goe your way, for yee haue well done that yee were commanded to doe. And recommand mee vnto my graundfere King Pelles and vnto my Lord Pechere and say vnto them on my behalfe that I shall come and see them as soone as I may. So the good man departed, and there met him twentie noble squiers, and so they tooke their horses and went their way. When all the knights of the Round Table meruailed them greatly of Sir Galahad that hee durst sit there in that siege perillous and was so tender of age, and wist not from whence

and his Knights of the round Table.

he came, but all onely by God and said he this is by whom the Sancgreall shall be achieved, for there sat neuer none but that was mischieued. When Sir Launcelot beheld his sonne, he had great ioy of him. When Sir Bors told his fellows, by the name of my life this young knight shall come vnto great ship. This noyse was great in all the Court, so that it came to the Quene. When shee had great meruaile what knight it might bee that durst aduenture him to sit in the siege perillous. Shee said vnto the quene that hee resembled much vnto Sir Launcelot. I may well suppose said the Quene that sir Launcelot begat him vpon King Pelles daughter, by the which hee was made to lye by enchantment and his name is sir Galahad, should faine se him said the Quene, for he must needs be a noble man, for so is his father that him begat, I report me vnto all the knights of the round table. So when dinner was done and that the king and all were risen, the king went vnto the siege perillous and lift by the cloth, and found there the name of sir Galahad, and then hee shewed it vnto Sir Gawaine and his faire nephew now haue wee amoeg vs sir Galahad the good knight that shall worship vs all, and vpon paine of my life shall achieve the Sancgreall, as sir Launcelot hath done vnto vnderstand. Then came King Arthur vnto Sir Galahad and said. Sir yee bee welcome, for yee shall winne many good nights vnto the quest of the Sancgreall, and ye shall achieve it neuer knight might bring to an end. Then the king tooke him by the hand, and went downe from the pallace to shew sir Galahad the aduenture of the Stone.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How King Arthur shewed the stone housing on the water to Sir Galahad and how he drew out the sword.

The Quene heard thereof and came after with many Ladies, and shewed the stone which housed on the water. Sir said the king to Sir Galahad, here is a great meruaile as euer I saw, and right good knights haue assayed and failed: Sir said Sir Galahad, that is no meruaile, for this aduenture

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

adventure is not theirs but mine, and for the the surety of this sword I brought none with mee, for here by my side hangeth the scabard. And anon he laid his hand on the sword and lightly drew it out of the stone, and then he put it into the scabard and said vnto the king. Now it goeth better then it did aforehand. Sir said the king then a shield God shall send vnto you. Now haue I said Sir, Galahad that sword that sometime was belonging vnto the good knight Sir Balin le Savage, and he was a passing good man of his hands, and with that sword he slew his brother Balan and that was great pittie for hee was a good knight, and either slew other through a dolorous stroke that Sir Balan gaue vnto my grandfather King Pelles, the which is not yet whole, nor shall not bee till I heale him. Therewith the king and all other espied where came riding downe the river a Lady on a white palfrey toward them, and she saluted the king and the Quene, and asked if sir Launcelot was there. And then sir Launcelot answered himselfe I am here faire Lady. When she said all weeping. Your great doings be changed with to day in the morning. Damosell why say yee so said sir Launcelot. I say you sooth said the Damosell, for yee were this day the best knight in the world, but who should say so now, should be openly proued a lyer, for there is one better then ye, and well it is proued by the adventure of the sword, wherto ye durst not set your hand, and that is the charge and leauing of your name, wherefore I make vnto you a remembrance, that ye shall not waene from hence forth that ye bee the best knight of the world. As touching that said sir Launcelot, I know wel I was neuer the best. Yes said the Damosell that were ye, and yet are of any sinful man of the world. And sir, king Nacien the hermit sendeth thee word that to thee shall befall the greatest worship that euer befell king in Brittain, and shall tell you wherefore, for this day the Sanggreall appeared in this thy house, and fed thee and all thy fellowship of the round table. And so the damosell tooke her leaue and departed the same way that she came.

CHAP

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Now King Arthur had all the Knights together for to iust in the medow beside Camelot or the departed.

Now said the king I am sure at this quest of the Sanggreall, shall all ye of the round table depart, and neuer shall ye againe whole together, therefore I will see you all together in the medow of Camelot, for to iust and to play, that after your death men may speake of it, that such knights were wholly together such a day. And vnto that tennelle and at the kings request they accorded all and tooke their hearneis that longed to iusting. But all the meaning the king was to see sir Galahad proued, for the king deemed hee should not lightly come againe vnto the Court after his departing. So were they all assembled in the medow, both more and lesse. Then sir Galahad by the prayer of the king and the quene did vpon him a noble Jefferance, and also hee did on his helme, but shield would hee take none for no praiser of the king. And then sir Gawaine and other knights prayed him for to take a speare. And so hee did. And the Quene was in a chamber with all her Ladies for to behold that turnement. Where Galahad dressed him in the middell of the medow and there began to breake speares meruailously, that all men had won of him, for hee there surmounted and exceeded all other knights, for within a little while he had throwen downe many knights of the round table saue twaine that was sir Launcelot and sir Perciualc.

CHAP. XXXV.

Now the Quene desired to see sir Galahad and how after all the knights were replenished with the holy Sanggreall, and how they auowed the enquest of the same.

Then the king at the Quenes request made him to alight, and to vnlace his helme, that Quene Gueneuer might see him in the visage. And when she beheld him she said, soothly I

62

dar

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

bare well say that Sir Launcelot begat him, for neuer two men resembled more in limesse, therefore it is no meruaile though hee bee of great prowesse. So a Lady that stood by the Quene said that shee for Gods sake ought hee of right to be so good a knight. For sooth said the Quene for he is of all parties come of the best knights of the world, and of the highest linage. For Sir Launcelot is come but of the eight degree from our Lord Iesu Christ and Sir Galahad is of the ninth degree from our Lord Iesu Christ, therefore I dare well say that they be the greatest gentlemen of all the world. And then the king and all the estate went home unto Camelotminster. And so after that they went to supper. And euery knight sat in their place as they were before hand. When anon they heard cracking and crying of thunder, that him thought the place should all to rine. In the midst of the blast entred a sunne beame more cleare by seauen times then euer they saw day, and all they were alighted of the grace of the holy Ghost. When began euery knight to behold other, and either saw other by their shining fairer then euer they saw other, not for then there was no knight that might speake any word a great while. And so they looked euery man on other as they had bene dombe. When they entred into the hall the holy grail couered with white samite, but there was none that might see it, nor who beare it, and there was all the hall fulfilled with good odours: And euery knight had such meate and drinke as hee best loued in this world, and when the holy grail had bene borne through the hall, then the holy vessel departed suddenly, that they wist not where it became. When had they breath to speake, & the king yelded thanks unto God of his grace that hee had sent them. Certainly said king Arthur wec ought greatly to thanke our Lord Iesu Christ for that hee hath shewed vs this day at the reuerence of this high feast of Pentecost. Now said sir Gawaine, we haue bene serued this day of what meates and drinkes we thought on, but one thing beguiled vs, we might not see the holy grail, it was so preciousely couered, wherefore I will make heere auow, that to morrow without any longer abiding I shall labour in the quest of the Sancgreall, that I shall hold me out a twelue moneths

and

and his Knights of the round Table

any day, or more if neede be, and neuer that I returne againe into the court til I haue sene it more openly then it hath bene sene heere. And if I may not speed I shall returne againe, as what may not be against the will of our Lord Iesu Christ. Then they of the round table heard sir Gawaine say so, they wote the most part of them and auowed the same. And anon as king Arthur heard this, he was greatly displeased for he wist that they might not gaine say their auowes. Alas said king Arthur vnto sir Gawaine, yee haue nigh slaine me with the bow you promise that yee haue made, for though you yee haue bee mee of the fairest fellowship and the truest of knighthood neuer were sene together in any realme of the world, for when they shall depart from hence, I am sure that all shall be more in this world, for there shall many die in the quest and so it forethinketh me a little, for I haue loued them well as my life, wherefore it shall grieue me right sore the separation of this fellowship, for I haue had an old custome to haue them in my fellowship.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Now great sorrow was made of the King and the Quene and la- for the departing of the Knights, and how they departed. And so therewith the teares fell into his eyes and said. sir Gawaine sir Gawaine, yee haue set me in great sorrow, for I haue great doubt that my true fellowship shall neuer be more heere againe. A said Sir Launcelot, comfort your self for it shall be vnto vs as a great honour, and much more if we died in any other places, for of death wee be sicker. Ah said Launcelot said the king the great loue that I haue had vnto all the dayes of my life maketh me to haue such dolefull heart. For neuer christian king had neuer so many worthy knights as I haue had this day at the round table and this is to mee great sorrow. When the Quene, Ladies and gentlewoman wist these tidings, they had such sorrow and heauiness that no tongue might tell it, for those knights had holden them in honour and charitie, but among all other Quene

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Gueneuer made great sorrow. A meruaille said shee, my Lord will suffer them to depart from him. Thus was all the court troubled, because those knights should depart, and many of those Ladies that loued knights would haue gone with their louers. And so had they done, had not an old knight come among them in religious clothing, and then he speake all on high and said. Faire Lords that haue swozne in the quest of the Sancgreall, thus sendeth your Patron the hermit word that none in this quest led Lady nor gentlewoman with him, for it is not to do in so high a seruice as they labour in, for I warne you plaine hee that is not cleane out of sinne hee shall not see the misteries of our Lord Iesu Christ. For this cause they left ther Ladies and gentlewomen. After this the Quene came vnto sir Galahad and asked him of whence hee was and of what countrey. He told her of whence hee was, and son vnto sir Launcelot she said hee was, As to that hee said neither yee nor may. So God me helpe said the Quene, of your father yee need not to shame you, for hee is the goodliest knight and of the best men come, and of the sterne of all parts of kings, and of so therefore yee ought of right to hee of your deeds a passing good man and certainly shee said, yee resemble him much. Then was sir Galahad little ashamed, and said vnto the Quene Madame, in as much as yee know it of a certaintie, wherefore doe yee aske it mee, for hee that is my father shall be knownen openly, and all betimes. And then they went to rest them. And in the honour of the highnesse of sir Galahad hee was led into King Arthurs chamber, and there he rested him in his owne bed, And as some as it was day light the king arose for hee had taken no rest of all that night for sorrow. When went hee vnto sir Gawaine and vnto sir Launcelot that were risen for to heere masse. And then king Arthur said againe. Ah sir Gawaine sir Gawaine yee haue betrayed mee, for neuer shall my court bee amended by you, but yee will neuer be soze for me, as I am for you, and therewith the teares began to runne downe by his visage, and therewith the king said. Ah knight sir Launcelot, I require thee that thou wilt counsaile mee, for I would this quest were vndone and it might be. Sir said sir Launcelot yee saw yester day

and his Knights of the round Table:

many worthy knights that then were swozne, that they may at leaue it in no manner of wise. What wot I well said the king but it shall so heauy me their departing that I wot well there shall no manner of toy remedy me. And then the king and the Quene went to the minister. So anon sir Launcelot and sir Gawaine commanded their men to bring their armes. When they were all armed saue their shields and their armes, then they came to their fellowship, which all were in the same wise for to goe to the minister to heere their vice. When after the seruice was done, the king would wit many had taken the quest of the sancgreall, and to account hee praied them all. Then found they by tale an hundred fiftie, and all were knights of the round table. And then they put on their helmes and departed, and recomanded them wholly vnto the Quene. And there was weeping and great sorrow. When the Quene departed into her chamber so that man should perceiue her great sorrowes. When sir Launcelot missed the Quene hee went into her chamber. And when he saw him shee cried aloud. O sir Launcelot ye haue betrayed me and put mee to death, for to leaue thus my Lord. A dame said sir Launcelot, I pray you bee not displeased, for I shall come againe as soone as I may with my worship. Alas hee that euer I saw you, but hee that suffred death vpon the crosse for all mankind, be to you good conduct and safetie, and all the whole fellowship. Right so departed sir Launcelot, and round his fellowship that abod his coming. And so they mounted vpon their horses and rode through the streets of Camelot, and there was weeping of the rich and poore, and they returned away and might not speake for weeping. So when a while they came to a Citie and a Castle that hight Vagon, there they entred into the castle. And the Lord of that Citie was an old man that hight Vagon, and hee was a good lord of his living and set open the gates, and made them all the more cheere that hee might. And so on the morrow they were agreed that they should depart euery each from other. And so they departed on the morrow with weeping and mourning. And euery knight took the way that him best liked.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Sir Galahad gat him a shield And how they sped that presumed to take downe that shield.

NOW rideth Sir Galahad yet without shield, and so he rode foure dayes without any aduenture. And at the fourth day after euen song he came to a white Abbey, and there he was receiued with great reuerence and led to a chamber, and there he was vnarmed, and then was he ware of two knights of the round table, one was King Bagdemagus, and that other was Sir Vwayne. And when they saw him they went vnto him and made of him great solace and so they went to supper. Sir said Sir Galahad, what aduenture brought you hither? Sir said they it is told vs that within this place is a shield that no man may beare about his necke but if that he be mischiewed or dead within thre daies, or else maimed for ever. Ah Sir said King Bagdemagus, I shall beare it to morrow for to assay this strange aduenture. In the name of God said Sir Galahad, Sir said King Bagdemagus, and I may not achue the aduenture of this shield yee shall take it vpon you, for I am sure yee shall not faile. Sir said Sir Galahad I agree right well thereto, for I haue no shield. So on the morrow they arose and heard masse. When King Bagdemagus asked where the aduenturous shield was. Anon a munke led him behind an alter, where the shield hung as white as any snow, but in the mids was a red crosse. Sir said the Munke, this shield ought not to be hangd about no knights necke, but hee be the worthiest knight of the world, and therefore I counsaile you knights to be well aduised. Well said King Bagdemagus, I wote well that I am not the best knight of the world, but yet shall I assay to beare it. And so he beare it out of the ministry, and then he said vnto Sir Galahad if it will please you I pray you abide here still, till yee know how I shall speed. I shall abide yee here said Sir Galahad. When King Bagdemagus toke with him a squier the which should bring tidings vnto Sir Galahad how he sped. When when they had ridden a two mile and came in a faire valey

and his Knights of the round Table.

before an hermitage, then they saw a goodly knight come from that partie in white armour horse and all, and hee as fast as his horse might runne with his speare in the hand King Bagdemagus dressed his speare against him, and it vpon the white knight. But the other strooke him so that hee brake the mayles and thrust him through the shoulder, for the shield couered him not as at that time, so he beare him from his horse and there with he alighted toke the white shield from him saying, knight thou halt the selfe great folly for this shield ought not to be borne by him that shall haue no peere that liueth. And then hee to King Bagdemagus squier and said. Weare this shield for the good knight Sir Galahad that thou left in the abbey, keepe him well from mee. Sir said the squier, what is his name? Take thou no heede of my name said the knight, it is not for thee to know, nor none earthly man. Now faire said the squier, at the reuerence of Iesu Christ tell me for what cause this shield may not be borne, but if the bearer therof be mischiewed. Now sith thou hast coured me so said the knight the shield behoueth to no man but vnto Sir Galahad. When they went vnto King Bagdemagus and asked him whether hee were soze wounded or not. I am soze wounded said he, and full sore I shall escape from the death. When he set his horse and brought him with great paine to an abbey. When was he taken he softly and vnarmed and laid in a bed, and his wound looked vnto for he lay there long and escaped hard with life.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Sir Galahad departed with the shield. And how King E-
lialake had receiued the shield of Ioseph of Aramathy.

Sir Galahad said the squier, that knight that wounded king Bagdemagus sendeth you greeting and bad that yee should keepe this shield, where through great aduentures shall befall. Blessed be God, and fortune said Sir Galahad, and then hee alked his armour and mounted vpon his horse, and hung the white shield about his necke, and commended them to God.

And Sir Vwaine said he would beare him fellowship if it pleased him. Sir said Sir Galahad, that may ye not, for I must go alone save this squire that shall beare mee fellowship. And so departed Sir Vwaine. When within a while came Sir Galahad there as the white knight abode him by the hermitage, and every each saluted other curteously. Sir said Sir Galahad by this shield have fall many meruailes. Sir said the knight, it befell after the passion of our Lord Jesu Christ thirtie years that Ioseph of Aramathe the gentle knight, that took downe our Lord from the Crosse, and at that time hee departed from Jerusalem with a great part of his kindred with him. And so they laboured till they came to a Citie that hight Sarras. And at that same houre that Ioseph came unto Sarras, there was a king that hight Euelake, that had great warres against the Saracins, and in especiall against on Sarasin, the which was king Euelakes cosin, a rich king and a mighty, the which marched nigh this land and his name was called Tollome le seintes. So upon a day these two met to doe battaile.

When Ioseph the son of Ioseph of Aramathe went unto king Euelake, and told him that he would be discomfited and slaine, but if he left his belaeue of the oute law, and belaeue upon the new law. And then he shewed him the right belaeue of the holy Trinity, the which he agreed with al his hart, & ther this shield was made for king Euelak, in the name of him that died upon the Crosse. And then through his good belaeue hee had the better of king Tollome. For when king Euelake was in the battaile there was a cloath set afore the shield, and when he was in the greatest perill, hee let put away the cloath, and then anon his enemies saw a figure of a man upon the Crosse, where through they were discomfited. And so it befell that a man of king Euelakes had his hand smitten off, & beare his hand in his other hand. And Ioseph called that man unto him, and bad him goe with god deuotion and touch the Crosse. And as soone as that man had touched the Crosse with his hand, it was as whole as neuer it was before. When some after there fell a great meruaile that the Crosse of the shield at one time vanished a way that no man wist where it became. And then was the king Euelake baptised

and for the most part all the people of that Citie. So after Ioseph would depart and king Euelake would go with whether he would go or not. And so by fortune they came this land, which at that time was called great Brittain. There they found a great felon panim that put Ioseph in prison. And by fortune tidings came unto a worthy man that he had heard of Ioseph, and so he came into the land great Brittain, and dishereted his felon panim and consoling him. And therewith delivered Ioseph out of prison. And so that all the people were turned to the Christian faith.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Now Ioseph made a Crosse vpon the whith shield with his blood, and how Sir Galahad was by a Mynke brought to a tombe.

Not long after that Ioseph was laid in his death bed and when king Euelake saw that he made great sorrow and for the love I have left my countrey, and sith thou shalt leave this world, leaue mee some token that I may thinke on what will I doe right glably said Ioseph. Now bying me that I took you when ye went into the battaile and king Tollome. When Ioseph bled sore at the nose that might not by no meanes bee stened. And there vpon that shield he made a Crosse of his owne blood. Now may ye remembre that I loue you, for ye shall neuer see this shield but that ye shall thinke on mee, and it shall be alwayes, as it is now, and neuer shall no man beare this shield at his necke but hee shall repent it, vnto the time that Sir Galahad the good knight beare it, and the last of my linnage shall haue it about his necke, the which shall many meruailes doe. Now said king Euelake, where shall I put this shield this worthy knight may haue it. Ye shall leaue it there vnder the hermit shall be put after his death. For either the good knight come the fiftene day after that hee shall be the order of knighthood, and so that day that they set, is the day that ye haue his shield. And in the same abbey lyeth

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Nacien the hermit. And then the white knight vanished away. Anon as the squire had heard these wordes, he alighted from his hackney and knoeled downe at Sir Galahads feete, and besought him that hee might goe with him till that hee had made him a knight, if I would not refuse you and then will ye make me a knight said the squire, and that high order by the grace of God shall be well set vpon me. And Sir Galahad graunted him, and then they returned againe vnto the abbey that they came from. And there men made full great ioy of Sir Galahad. And anon as hee was alighted there was a Monk brought him vnto a tombe in a Church yard, where as was such a noyse that who heard it should very nigh be mad or lose his strength. And Sir said he I deeme it is a fiend.

CHAP. XL.

Of the meruaile that Sir Galahad heard and saw in the tombe, and how he made *Melias* Knight.

Now leade mee thither said Sir Galahad. And so they did, all armed saue his holme. Now said the good man, goe to the tombe and lift it vp. And so hee did, and heard a great noyse and pittoully hee said that all men might heare it. Sir Galahad the seruant of God, come thou not nere me, for thou shalt make me goe againe there where I haue bene so long. But Sir Galahad was nothing afraid, but quickly list vp the stone, and there came out a foule smoke, and after hee saw the foulest figure leyt out thereof that euer hee saw in the likeness of a man and then hee blessed him, and wist well that it was a fiend of hell. Then heard hee a voice that said. Galahad I see thee about thee so many Angels that my power may not hurt thee. Right so Sir Galahad saw a body all armed lye in the tombe, and beside him there lay a sword. Now saire brother said Sir Galahad, let vs remoue this cursed body, for it is not worthy to lye in the Church yard, for hee was a false christian man. And therewith they all departed and went to the abbey. And anon as hee was vnarmed, a good man came and set him downe by him and said, sir I shall tell you what betokeneth all that

and his Knights of the round Table.

that ye saw. That couered body betokeneth the hardnesse of the world, and the great sinne that our Lord found in the world, for there was such wretchednesse, that the father loued not the sonne, nor the sonne loued not the father, and that was one of the causes that our Lord took flesh and blood of a chaste maiden. For our sinnes were so great at that time, that well may all be but wickednesse. Truly said Sir Galahad I beleue you right well. So Sir Galahad rested him there all that night. And on the morrow he made the squire knight and asked him his name, and of what kindred he was come. Sir said he, men call me *Melias de lile*, and I am the sonne of the King of Denmarke. Now saire Sir said Sir Galahad, sith yee be come of Kings and Quenes, now looke that knight hood be well set vpon you, for ye ought to be a mirour vnto all chualry. Sir said *Melias* yee say sooth. But Sir sith ye haue made mee knight ye must of right graunt me my first desire that is reasonable. Ye say sooth said Sir Galahad. Then said Sir *Melias*, that ye will suffer me to ride with you in this quest of the Sancgreal, till that some aduenture repart vs.

I graunt you said Sir Galahad. Then men brought Sir *Melias* his armour and his speare and his horse. And so Sir Galahad and he rode forth all that weeke are they found any aduenture. And then vpon a Sunday in the morning as they were departed from an abbey, they came vnto a Crosse which departed two waies. And on that Crosse were letters writen that said thus. Now yee knights arraunt the which goeth for to take aduentures, see here two waies, that one way defendeth thee that thou goe not that way, for hee shall not goe out of that way againe, but if hee be a good man and a worthy knight, and if thou goe on the left hand, thou shalt not there lightly win prouesse, for thou shalt in this way be soone assayed. Sir said Sir *Melias* vnto Sir Galahad, if liketh you to suffer me for to take the way on the left hand tell it me, for there I shall well proue my strength. It were better said Sir Galahad, that yee rode not that way for I deeme I should better escape in that way then ye. Nay I pray you my Lord, let me haue that aduenture. Take in Gods name said Sir Galahad.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XLI.

Of the aduenture that sir *Melias* had and sir *Galahad* reuenged him, and how Sir *Melias* was caried into an Abbey.

And then sir *Melias* rode into an old forrest, and therein he rode two daies and more, and then hee came into a faire medow, and there was a faire lodge of bowes, and then hee espied in that lodge a chaire wherein was a crowne of golde subtilly wrought. Also there was clothes couered vpon the earth, and many delicious meats were set thereon. Sir *Melias* beheld this aduenture, and thought it meruailous, but hee had no hunger, but of the crowne of gold hee tooke much keepe, and therewith hee stouped downe and tooke in vp and rode his way withit. And anon he saw a knight come riding after him that said. knight set downe that crowne which is not yours, and therfore defend you. Then sir *Melias* blessed him, and said. faire Lord of heauen helpe and saue thy new made knight. And then they let their horses runne as fast as they might, so that the other knight smote Sir *Melias* through the halberke and through the left side that hee fell to the earth nigh dead. And then hee tooke the crowne and went his way and Sir *Melias* lay still, and had no power to stirre.

In the meane while by fortune there came sir *Galahad* and found him there in perill of death, and then he said. Ah sir *Melias* who hath wounded you, therfore it had beene better to haue ridden that other way. And when Sir *Melias* heard him speake, hee said. Sir for Gods loue let me not die in this forrest, but beare me vnto the Abbey here bestoe, that I may be confessed and haue my rights. It shall be done said sir *Galahad*, but where is he that hath wounded you. With that sir *Galahad* heard in the leaues cry on high, knight keepe the from mee. Ah Sir said sir *Melias*, beware, for that is hee that hath slaine me. Sir *Galahad* answered. Sir knight come on your perill. Then either dressed them to other, and came together as fast as their horses might runne. And sir *Galahad* smote him so that his speare went through his shoulder, and smote him downe of his horse

and his Knights of the round Table.

horse, and in the falling Sir *Galahad*s speare brake. With that came out of the leaues an other knight, and brake a speare vpon Sir *Galahad* or hee might turne him. And then sir *Galahad* drew out his sword and smote off the left arme of him, so that it fell vnto the ground, and then hee fled and Sir *Galahad* followed fast after him. And then hee returned againe vnto Sir *Melias*, and there he alighted and dressed him softly vpon his horse before him, for the trouchion of the speare was in his body and Sir *Galahad* start vp behind him and held him in his armour, and so brought him to an abbey, and there he unarmed him and brought him to his chamber and then hee asked his saluour. And when hee had receiued him hee said vnto Sir *Galahad*. Sir let death come when it pleaseth God. And therewith he drew out the trouchion of the speare out of his body, and then hee was slouened. Then came there an old Monk which sometime had bene a knight, and beheld Sir *Melias* and anon he ransacked him, and hee said vnto Sir *Galahad*. I shall heale him of his wound by the grace of God within the space of seven weekes. Then was Sir *Galahad* glad and unarmed him and said hee would abide ther three dayes. And hee asked Sir *Melias* how hee rode with him. Then hee said hee was turned vnto helling, God be thanked.

CHAP. XXXXII.

How Sir *Galahad* departed and how he was commaunded to goe vnto the Castle of Maidens for to destroy the wicked custome.

Now will I depart said sir *Galahad* for I haue much to doo and for many good knights be full busie about it, and this knight and I were in the same quest of the sangreall. Sir *Galahad* vnderstand, for his sinne hee was thus wounded, and I meruaille said the goodman, how ye durst take vpon you so rich a thing as the high order of knight hood without cleane confession and that was the cause ye were so bitterly wounded. For the way on the right hand betokeneth the hie way of our Lord Iesu Christ, and the way of a true and good liuer. And the other way betokeneth the way of sinners and misbelouers. And when the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the Diuine saw your pride and presumption for to take you in the quest of the holy Sancgreall, that made you for to bee ouerthrowen, for it may not be achieved but by vertuous living. Also the writing on the crosse was a signification of heauenly deeds and of knightly deeds in Gods workes, and pride is the head of all deadly sinnes that caused this knight to depart Sir Galahad, and where thou tookest the crowne of gold, thou sinned in conceitnesse and in theft, and these were no knights deeds. And this holy knight Sir Galahad the which fought with the two knights, and the two knights both signifie the two deadly sinnes which were entierly in the knight Sir Melias, and they might not withstand you, for yee are without deadly sinne. Now departed Sir Galahad from thence & betooke them all vnto God Sir Melias said. My Lord Sir Galahad, as soone as I may ride I shall see you. God send you good helpe said Sir Galahad. And so he tooke his horse and departed and rode many iourneys forwarde and backward, as aduenture would leade him And at the last it hapned him to depart from a place of a Castle that was named abblasour, and hee had not heard no masse, the which hee was alwayes wont to heare of that hee depart out of any Castle or place. And kept that for a custome. When Sir Galahad came vnto a mountaine where hee found an old Chapell, and found there no body, for all was desolate. And there hee kneeled before the alter, and besought God of holome counsaile. So as hee prayed hee heard a voice that said thus. Go now thou aduenturous knight vnto the Castle of Maidens and there doe thou away all the wicked customes.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Sir Galahad fought with the Knights of the Castle, and destroyed the wicked custome.

Then as Sir Galahad heard this hee thanked God, and tooke his horse, and hee had not ridden but halfe a mile, he saw in a valey before him a strong Castle with deepe ditches, and there ranne beside a faire riuer, the which hight Seuarnie, and there hee met with a man of great age, and either saluted other,

and his Knights of the round Table.

and Sir Galahad asked him what was the Castles name. Sir said he, it is the Castle of Maidens. What is a cur Castle said Sir Galahad, and all they that beene conuersant in, for all petie is out therof and all hardinesse and miserie is therein. Wherefore I counsell you Sir knight said Sir Galahad, to returne againe. Sir said Sir Galahad, wit yee I shall not returne againe. When looked Sir Galahad on his armour that nothing failed him, and then he put his shield on him, and anon there met him seven Maidens, that said to him. Sir knight yee ride herein a great folly, for yee are the waters for to passe ouer. Why should I not passe here this water said Sir Galahad. And so he departed away from thence, and then he met with a Squier that said. Sir knight I am come to destroy the wicked custome of this Castle. Sir said the squier, and yee will abide by that, ye shall be inough to doe. Doe yee now said Sir Galahad and haue matter. When the squier entred into the Castle. And anon there came out of the castle seven knights, and all were armed, and when they saw Sir Galahad they cried. Knight come thee, for we assure thee nothing but death. Why said Sir Galahad, will yee all haue to doe with me at once. Yea said they all, for therto maist thou trust. When Sir Galahad put on his speare, and smote the foremost to the earth, that altho hee had broken his necke. And therewith all the other knights on his shield great strokes, so that all their speares brake. Then Sir Galahad drew out this sword and set vpon them so hard, that it was meruaile to see it, and so through great force made them to forsake the field, and Sir Galahad chased them vntill they entred into the Castle, and so passed through the Castle at another gate. And there met Sir Galahad an old man clothed in religious clothing the which said to him. Sir knight heere the keyes of the Castle. When Sir Galahad opened the gates, and saw so much people in the streete, that hee might number them, and they said. Sir yee bee welcome, for long we wee abidden heere our deliuerance. And then there came vnto

The Historie of Prince Arthur

unto him a gentlewoman and said. These knights be fled, but they will come againe this night and here begin againe there euill and wicked custome. What will yee that I shall do said Sir Galahad? Sir said the Gentlewoman, that yee send after all those knights hether that hold their lands off this Castle, and make them sweare for to vse the custome that were used heretofore of old time. I will well said Sir Galahad. And then the gentlewoman brought him an horne of Auory, richly bounden with gold and said. Sir blow yee this horne, which will be heard two mile about this Castle. And when Sir Galahad had blowne the horne hee set him downe vpon a bed. Then came there a priest vnto sir Galahad and said. Sir it is past a seauen yeare that these seuen brethren came into this castle, and here bozowed with the Lord of this Castle which hight the duke Lianour. And hee was Lord of all this countrey. And so when they espyed the dukes daughter that was a faire woman. Then by their false couine they made debate betwene themselves, and the duke of his goodnesse would haue departed them. And there they slew him and his eldest sonne. And then they toke the maiden and the treasure of the Castle. And then by great force they held all the knights of this Castle against their will vnder their obeissance, and in great seruage and truage, robbing and pilling the poore common people of all that they had. So it hapned vpon a day that the dukes daughter said. Yee haue done to me great wrong to sleigh mine okone father and my brother, and this to hold our lands. Not so then said shee, yee shall not hold this Castle for many yeares. For by one knight yee shall hee overcome. Thus shee prophesied seuen yeare before. Well said the seuen knights, sithence yee say so, there shall neuer Lady nor knight passe this Castle, but they shall abide mauer their heads, vnto therefore, till that knight bee come by whom wee shall leaue this Castle. And therefore it is Castle the maidens Castle, for they haue deuoured many maidens. Now said Sir Galahad, is shee heere for whom this Castle was lost. Nay said the priest shee died within three nights after that she was thus enforced. And sithence haue they kept her young sister which endureth great paine with moe other Ladies. By this were

and his Knights of the round Table:

the knights of the countrey come. And then hee made to doe homage and fealty to the Dukes daughter. And set in great ease of heart. And on the morrow there came one Sir Galahad, & told him how sir Gawaine and sir Gareth & sir Waine had slaine the seuen brethren. I suppose well said sir Galahad. And then he toke his armour and his horse and committed them to God.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Now Sir Gawaine came vnto the Abbey for to follow after Sir Galahad and how he was shriuen vnto an hermit.

Now saith the story, after that Sir Gawaine was departed hee rode many diuers iourneys both toward and from. And so at the last hee came vnto the abbey whereas Sir Galahad had the white shield. And there Sir Gawaine learned the very way for to follow after Sir Galahad. And so he rode to the abbey whereas Sir Melias lay sicke, and there Sir Melias told sir Gawaine of the meruailous aduenture that Sir Galahad had done. Truly said sir Gawaine, I am not happie if I toke not the way that he went for and I may meete with him. I will not depart from him lightly. For al the meruailous aduentures sir Galahad atchieueth. Sir said one of the Monks will not bee of your fellowship. Why said sir Gawaine, sir hee is for ye be wicked and sinfull, and hee is blissefull. Right then they stood thus talking together there came in riding sir Gareth. And then they made great ioy either of other. And on the morrow they heard masse, and so departed. And by the way they met with sir Vwaine le auoutres. And there sir Vwaine told sir Gawaine how hee had met with none aduenture sithence he departed from the Court. For we said sir Gawaine. And then they promised other of these three knights not to depart till that they were in the quest, but if fortune caused it. So they departed and rode by fortune till that they came vnto the Castle of Maidens. And there the seauen brethren espyed the three knights. And then they said. Sithence we be banished by one knight from this Castle, wee shall destroy all the knights of King Arthurs that we may overcome for the loue

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

of Sir Galahad: And therewith the twelue knights set vpon the thre knights. And by fortune Sir Gawaine one of the seauen brethren, and each of his follovers slew an other, and so slew the remnant. And then they toke their way vnder the Castle. And there they lost the way that Sir Galahad rode, and euery one of them departed from other. And Sir Gawaine rode till he came to an hermitage. And there he found the good man saying his euon-song of our Lady. And there Sir Gawaine asked harbour for charitie. And the good man graunted it him gladly. When the good man asked him what hee was, and from whence he came. Sir said hee, I am a knight of King Arthurs Court, that am in the quest of the Sangreall, and my name is Sir Gawaine. Sir said the good man, I will wit how it standeth betwene God and you: Sir said Sir Gawaine, I will with a good will shew you my life and it please you. And there hee told the good man how a Monk of an abbey called him a wicked knight. He might right well say it, said the good man. For when ye were first made knight ye should haue taken you vnto knightly deedes and vertuous living and ye haue done the contrary, for ye haue liued mischieuously many winters. And the noble knight Sir Galahad is a maiden, and neuer sinned, and that is the cause he shall achieue whersoener he goeth, that ye nor none such shall not attaine, nor none of your fellowship. For yee haue vsed the most vntruest life that euer I heard knight liue. For truly had yee not bene so wicked as yee are, neuer had the seuen brethren bene slaine by you and by your two fellows. For Sir Galahad himselte all alone beate them all seuen that day before. But his living is such that hee shall sleyn no man lightly. Also I may say to you the Castle of maidens betoken the good soules that were in pri' on afore the incarnation of Christ. And the seauen knights betoken the seauen deadly sinnes which reigned that time in the world. And I may liken the good knight Sir Galahad vnto the sonne of the high father that light within a maiden, and brought all the soules out of the woful Castle. So did Sir Galahad deliuered all the maidens out of the woful Castle, now Sir Gawaine said the good man, thou must doe penance for thy sinnes. Sir what penance shall

and his Knights of the round Table.

shall I doe. Such as I will giue said the good man. Say said Sir Gawaine, I may doe no penance, for wee knights aduenturous often suffer great woe and paine. Well said the good man, and then he held his peace and betooke him vnto God. And by aduenture hee met with Sir Aglourale and Sir Grislet two knights of the round table. And they two had riden foure days without finding of any aduenture. And at the fift day they departed. And euery each hold as fell them by aduenture.

CHAP. XLV.

How Sir Galahad met with Sir Launcelot and with Sir Perciuaile and smote them both downe and departed from them.

When Sir Galahad was departed from the Castle of maidens, he rode till he came vnto a wast forrest and there hee met with Sir Launcelot and Sir Perciuaile, but none of them both knew him not, for hee was new disguised. Right so Sir Launcelot his father dressed his speare and brake it vpon his sonne Sir Galahad: And Sir Galahad smote him so hard againe, that he smote downe both horse and man. And then he drew his sword and dressed him vnto Sir Perciuaile, and smote him so on the helme, that it rone the crosse of Steele, and if the sword had not swerued, Sir Perciuaile had bene slaine, and with the stroke he fell out of his saddle. These iustes were done before the Hermitage where a recluse dwelled: And when she saw Sir Galahad ride, shee said: God bee with thee the best knight of the world. Ah certainly said she all a loud, that Sir Launcelot and Sir Perciuaile might heare it: and yonder two knights had knowne thee as well as I doe, they would not haue encountred with thee. When Sir Galahad heard her say so, hee was sore a-dread to be knowne. Therewithall hee smote his horse with his spurs and rode a great pace froward them. When perceined they both that it was Sir Galahad, and vp they gat on their horses, and rode fast after him: But within a while he was out of their sight. And then they turned againe with an heauie cheere. Let vs aske some tidings said Sir Perciuaile at yonder recluse. Doe as ye list said Sir Launcelot. When Sir Perciuaile came on

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

to the reclus, she knew him well enough, and in likewise she knew sir Launcelot. But sir Launcelot rode ouerthwart and endlong in a wild forrest, and held no path, but as wild aduventure led him. And at the last he came vnto a stone crosse, which departed two wayes in wast land. And by the crosse was a stone that was of marble. But it was so darke that Sir Launcelot might not well know what it was. When sir Launcelot looked by him and saw an old chappell, and there hee wend to haue found people. And so sir Launcelot tied his horse to a tree and there hee put off his shield and hung it vpon a tree, and then hee went vnto the chappell doore and found it wasted and broken. And within he found a faire alter ful richly arrayed with cloth of silk, and there stood a faire candlestick which beare six great candels, and the candlestick was of silver. And when sir Launcelot saw this light, hee had a great will for to enter into the chappell but hee could find no place where hee might enter. When was he passing heauie and dismaied. When hee returned and came againe to his horse, and tooke off his saddle and his bridle and let him pasture. And unlaced his helme, and vngirded his sword and laid him downe to sleepe vpon his shield before the crosse.

CHAP. XLVI.

How Sir *Launcelot* halfe sleeping and halfe waking saw a sicke man borne in a horse litter, and how hee was healed with the Sancgreall

AND so hee fell on sleepe, and halfe waking and halfe sleeping hee saw come by him two palfreyes both faire and white, the which beare a litter, therein lying a sicke knight. And when he was nigh the crosse, he there abode still. All this sir Launcelot saw and beheld, for hee slept not verily, and hee heard him say. Oh swete Lord when shall this sorrow leaue me, and when shall the holy vessell come by me where through I shall be blessed, for I haue endured thus long, for little trespasse. And thus a great while complained the knight, and all waies sir Launcelot heard it. With that sir Launcelot saw the candlestick with the six tapers come before the crosse, but he

could

and his Knights of the round Table.

could see no body that brought it. Also there came a table of silver and the holy vessell of the sancgreall, the which Sir Launcelot had seene before that time in King Perchours house. And therewithall the sicke knight set him vpright, and held vp both his hands and said. Faire swete Lord which is here within the holy vessell, take heede to mee that I may be hole of this great malady. And therewith vpon his hands and vpon his knees he went so nigh that he touched the holy vessell and kissed it. And anon he was hole, and then he said. Lord God I thank thee, for I am healed of this malady. Soe when the holy vessell had bene there a great while, it went vnto the chappell againe into the candlestick and the light, so that Sir Launcelot wist not where it became, for he was ouer taken with sinne that hee had no power to arise against the holy vessell, wherefore after ward many men said of him shame. But hee tooke repentance after ward. When the sicke knight dressed him vpright and kissed the crosse. When anon his squire brought him his armes and asked his Lord how he did. Certainely said hee, I thinke God right heartily, for through the holy vessell I am healed. But I haue right great meruaile of this sleeping knight, which hath had neither grace nor power to awake during the time that this holy vessell hath bene here present. I dare it right well say, said the squire, that this same knight is defouled with some manner of deadly sinne, whereof he was neuer confessed: By my faith said the knight, whatsoeuer he be, he is unhappie, for as I deeme hee is of the fellowship of the round table, the which is entred into the quest of the Sancgreall. Sir said the squire, here I haue brought you all your armes saue your helme and your sword and therefore by mine assent now may ye take this knights helme and his sword, and so he did. And when he was cleane armed, he tooke Sir Launcelots horse, for he was better then his owne. And so they departed from the crosse.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XLVII.

How a voice speake to Sir Launcelot, and how he missed his horse and his helme, and after went on foote,

Then anon sir Launcelot awaked and set himselfe vp right and he thought him what hee had there scene, and whether it were dreames or not. Right so he heard a voice that said. Sir Launcelot more hardy then is the stone, and more bitter then is the wood and more naked and bare then is the leafe of the fig tree, therefore go thou from hence, and withdraw thee from this holy place, and when Sir Launcelot heard this hee was passing heauy, and wist not what to doe. And so he departed soe weeping, and cursed the time that hee was borne, for then hee dreamed neuer to haue had more worship. For the words went vnto his heart, till that hee knew wherefore that hee was so called. When sir Launcelot went to the crosse and found that his helme his sword, and his horse was taken away. And then hee called himselfe a very wretch, and most unhappy of all knights. And there he said. My sinne and my wretchednesse hath brought me vnto great dishonour. For when I sought worldly adventures and worldly desires, I euer achieved them, and had the better in euery place, and neuer was I discomfited in no quarell, were it right or wrong. And now I take vpon mee the adventures of holy things. And now I see and vnderstand that mine old sinne hindreth mee and also shamed mee, so that I had no power to stire nor to speake when the holy blood appeared before me. So thus hee sorrowed till it was day, and heard the foules of the ayre sing. When was hee somewhat comforted. But when sir Launcelot missed his horse and his harneys, then wist he well that God was displeased with him. When hee departed from the crosse on foot into a wild forrest. And so by prime hee came vnto an high mountaine, and there he found an hermitage and an hermite therein, which was going to masse. And then Sir Launcelot kneled downe vpon both his knees and cried our Lord mercy for his wicked workes that he had done. So when masse was done, Sir Launcelot called the hermite to him and

and his Knights of the round Table.

prayed him for charitie to here his confession. With a good will the good man. Sir said he, bee ye of King Arthurs Court, and of the noble fellowship of the round table. For sooth, my name is Sir Launcelot du lake which hath beene right well said off, and greatly magnified. And now it is so, my good fortune is changed. For I am the most wretch and captife of the world. When the hermit beheld him, and had great mercy. Hee how hee was so sore abashed. Sir said the hermit ye ought to thanke God more then any knight liuing. For he hath caused you to haue more worldly worship then any knight that now liueth. And for your presumption to take vpon you in dead sinne for to bee in his presence, where his flesh and his blood was, that caused you ye might not see it with your worldly eyes. For he will not appere where such sinners bee, but if it be vnto their great hurt, and vnto their great shame: And there is no knight liuing that ought for to giue vnto god so great thanks as ye. For hee hath giuen vnto you beautie, samelinetie and great strength aboue all other knights, and therefore ye are the more beholding vnto God then any other man to loue him and to dread him for your strength and manhood will little avenge you and God be against you.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Sir Launcelot was shruen of his sinnes, and what sorrow he made. And of the good ensamples that were shewed him.

Then Sir Launcelot wept and made full heauy cheere and said. Now I know well ye tell me truth. Sir said the good man, hide none old sinne from me. When said sir Launcelot, that were me full loth to discover. For this fourteene yeares I neuer discovered any thing which I haue vsed. And that may I now wit my shame and my misadventure. And then hee told there that good man all his life, & how hee had loued a Quene vnumfurably many yeares, and all my great deeds of armes that I haue done, I did the most part for the Quenes sake, and for her sake would I doe battaile, were it right or wrong, and neuer did I battaile all onely for Gods sake, but for to winne

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

worship, and to cause mee to bee the better beloued, and little or nought I thanked God of it. When sir Launcelot said, I pray you counsaile me. I will counsaile you said the hermit, if yee will ensure mee that yee will neuer come in that Quenes fellowship as much as yee may forbear. And then Sir Launcelot promised the Hermit by his faith, that hee would no more come in her company. Looke that your heart and your mouth accord said the good man, and I shall ensure you that yee shall haue more worship then euer yee had. Holy father said Sir Launcelot, I meruaile of the voice that said to mee meruailous words, and yee haue heard here before. Haue yee no meruaile thereof said the good man, for it seemeth well that God loueth you for men may vnderstand that a stone is hard of kind, and namely one more then an other, and that is to vnderstand by sir Launcelot, for thou wilt not leaue thy sinne for no goodnesse that God hath sent thee therfore thou art more harder then any stone, and neuer would thou bee made soft neither by water nor by fire, and that is the heate of the holy ghost may not enter in thee. Now take heed in all the world men shall not find one knight to whom our Lord hath giuen so much grace as our Lord hath giuen you. For hee hath giuen you fairenesse with seemelinesse. He hath giuen you wit and discretion for to know good from euill. Hee hath giuen you prowesse and hardinesse, and hath giuen you to worke so largely, that yee haue had at all times the better where soeuer yee came. And now our Lord will suffer you no longer, but that ye shall know him whether ye will or not. And why the voice called thee bitterer then wood, for where ouermuch sin dwelleth there may be but little sweetness, wherefore thou art likned to an old rotten tree. Now I haue shewed thee why thou art harder then the stone, and bitterer then the tree. Now I shall shew thee why thou art more naked and bared then the fig tree. It befell that our Lord Iesu Christ preached on Palme Sunday in Ierusalem, and there hee found in the people that al hardnesse was herbolued in them & there hee could not find one in all the towne that would herboloue him, and then hee went without the towne and found in the midde of the way a fig tree, the which was right faire and well garnished

and his Knights of the round Table.

garnished with leaues, but fruite had it none. When our Lord cursed the tree that bare no fruite, that betokeneth the fig tree into Ierusalem, that had leaues and no fruite. So thou Sir Launcelot, when the holy grail was brought before thee, hee found in thee no fruite, neither good thought nor good will, and spoiled with leachery. Certainly said Sir Launcelot all that Dame said is true, and from henceforward, I cast mee by the grace of God neuer to bee so wicked as I haue bene, but as to know knighthood and to doe feates of armes. When the good man entoynd Sir Launcelot such penance as hee might doe, and to shew knighthood. And so hee assayed sir Launcelot, and prayed him to abide with him all that day, I will well said Sir Launcelot, for I haue neither helme nor horse nor sword. As he that said the good man, I shall helpe you or to morrow at noon of an horse and all that belongeth vnto you. And then Sir Launcelot repented him greatly.

CHAP. I. L.

How Sir Percinale came vnto a Recluse and asked her counsaile and how she told him that she was his aunt.

Now saith the tale that when Sir Launcelot was ridden after Sir Galahad his sonne, the which had all these adventures here aboue rehearsed, Sir Percinale returned againe vnto the recluse, where he deemed to haue tidings of that knight which Sir Launcelot followed. And so hee kneeled at her window, and anon the recluse opened it, and asked sir Percinale what hee would. Madame said hee, I am a knight of King Arthurs Court, and my name is sir Percinale de Galis. So when the recluse heard his name shee made passing great ioy of him, for greatly shee loued him before all other knights of the world for so of right she ought to doe, for shee was his aunt. And then he commanded that the gates should be opened to him and then sir Percinale had all the cheere that she might make him, and al that was in her power was at his commandement. So on the morrow Sir Percinale went vnto the recluse and asked her if she knew that knight with the white shield. Sir said shee why would

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

would yee wit. Truly madame said Sir Perciuaile, I shall neuer bee well at ease till that I know of that knights fellowship, and that I may fight with him. For I may not leaue him so lightly. For I haue the shame yet. Ah Sir Perciuaile said she, would yee fight with him I see well yee haue great will to bee slaine as your father was through outrageousness. Madame said Sir Perciuaile, it seemeth by your words that yee know me. Yee said shee, I well ought to know you, for I am your aunt, all though I bee in a priory place. For I was sometime called the Queene of the wast lands, and I was called the Queene of most riches in the world. And it pleased me neuer so much my riches as doth my pouertie. When Sir Perciuaile wept for very great pitie when he knew shee was his aunt. Ah faire nephew said shee, when heard yee any tidings from your mother. Truly said hee, I heard not of her in a great while but I haue dreamed of her much in my sleepe, and therfore I wot not whether she be dead or aliue. Certainly faire nephew said shee your mother is dead. For after your departing from her shee toke such a sorow, that anon after shee was confessed she died. Now God haue mercy vpon her soule said Sir Perciuaile, it soze sozethinketh mee, but all wee must change our life. Now faire aunt tell me what is the knight, I deeme it bee hee that beare the red armes on whit Sunday. Well ye well said his aunt that is hee, for otherwise hee ought not to doe but to goe in red armes and that same knight hath no peere, for hee worketh all by miracle. And he shall neuer be overcome of no earthly mans hands.

CHAP. L.

How Merlin likned the round table to the world, and how the Knights that should achieue the Sancgreall should be knowne.

Also Merlin made the round table in token of the roundnesse of the world. For by the round table is the world signified by right. For all hee world christen and heathen resort vnto the round table, and when they are chosen to be of the fellowship of the round table, they thinke them moze blessed and moze in worship then if they had gotten halfe the world, and ye haue

and his Knights of the round Table.

signe that they haue lost their father and their mothers, all their kinne, and their wiues and their children for to your fellowship it is well seene by you, for sith ye departed your mother, ye would neuer see her, ye found such a fellowship at the round table. When Merlin had ordained the round table, he said by them that should be fellowes of the round table, the truth of the Sancgreall shall be well knowne. And he asked him how man might know them that should best be achieueing of the Sancgreall. When said he there should be three white bulls that should achieue it, and the two should be lions, and the third should be chaff: And that one of them should passe the father, as much as the Lyon passeth the hard, both of strength and of hardiness. They which Merlin say so, said thus vnto Merlin. Sithence there shall be such a knight thou shouldest ordaine by thy craft a siege no man should sit therein, but he only which shall passe all knights. And then Merlin answered that he would doe so, when he made the siege perilous, in which Sir Galahad sat meate vpon whit Sunday last past. Now madame said Sir Perciuaile, so much haue I heard of you, that by my good will I will neuer haue to doe with Sir Galahad but I dare not depart you this horse but if yee would take him from mee. What not doe said Sir Perciuaile. And so they departed. And Sir Perciuaile sat him downe vnder a tree, and made sorow out of nature. And as he was there, there came a knight riding on a horse that the yeoman led, and he was cleane armed.

CHAP. LIII.

How a yeoman desired him to get againe an horse, and how Sir Perciuailes hackney was slaine, and how he gat an horse.

So anon the yeoman come riding after as fast as euer he might and asked Sir Perciuaile if hee saw any knight riding on his blacke steede. Yea forsooth said he, why aske yee of me. Ah Sir said the yeoman, that steede hee hath taken from me by strength wherefore my Lord will slay mee in what place soeuer hee findeth mee. Well said Sir Perciuaile, what wouldst

wouldest thou that I should doe, thou seest well that I am on
foote, but and I had a good horse I should bring him sone a-
gaine. Sir said the yeoman, take mine hackney and doe the best
ye can and I shall follow you on foote, to wit how ye shall speed.
Then Sir Percivale mounted upon that hackney and rode as
fast as he might. And at the last hee saw that knight, and then
he cried knight turne againe. And he turned and set his speare
against Sir Percivale, and he smote the hackney in the midst
of the brest, that hee fell downe dead to the earth, and there he
had a great fall. And the other rode his way. And then Sir Per-
civale was woe wyth, and cried. Abide thou wicked knight
coward and false hearted knight, turne againe and fight with
me on foote. But he answered not but past forth his way. When
Sir Percivale saw he would not turne, he cast away his helme
and his sword, and said. Now am I very wretch, cursed and
most unhapie above all other knights. So in this sorow he a-
bode all that day till it was night, and then hee was faint and
laid him downe and slept till it was midnight. And then he a-
waked, and saw before him a woman that said unto him right
fierly, Sir Percivale what doest thou here. He answered and
said, I doe neither good nor euill. If thou wilt ensure mee said
she, that thou wilt fulfill my will when I shall summon thee, I
shall lend thee mine owne horse, which shall beare thee whether
thou wilt. Sir Percivale was glad of her proffer, and ensured
her to fulfill all her desire. When abide me heere said shee, and
I shall goe and fetch you an horse. And so she came sone again
and brought an horse with her that was blacke. When Sir
Percivale beheld that horse he marvelled, that he was so great
and so well apparalled: and not for then hee was so heard by that
he leapt upon him, and took no heape to himselfe. And so anon
as he was upon him, he thrust to him with his spurres, and so
rode by a forrest, and the moone shined cleare and within an
houre and lesse he beare him foure dayes iourney thence, til he
came to a rough water that roared, and his horse would haue
borne him into it.

great danger that Sir Percivale was in by his horse, and
how he saw a serpent and a Lyon fight.
And when Sir Percivale came nigh the brimme and saw
the water so boystous, he doubted to passe over it. And
hee made the signe of the Crosse on his forehead. When
he felt him so charged, he shooke off Sir Percivale, and he
went into the water crying and roaring and making great so-
und, and it seemed to him that the water bent. When Sir Per-
civale perceived that it was a feend, which would haue brought
him to his perdition. When he commended himselfe unto God
he prayed our Lord to kepe him from all such temptations.
So he prayed all that night till on the morrow that it was
day. When he saw he that he was on a wild mountaine which was
about the sea nigh all about, that hee might see no land a-
round him which might releue him, but wild beasts. And then
he went into a valley, and there he saw a young serpent bring a
Lyon by the necke and so hee came by Sir Percivale.
And as sone as Sir Percivale saw this, he marvelled
and bled him thither. But anon the Lyon had overtaken the
serpent and began battaile with him. And then Sir Percivale
thought to helpe the Lyon for hee was the most naturall beast
of the foor. And there gaue the serpent such a buffet that he had
a deadly wound. When the Lyon saw that, hee made no sem-
blance to fight with him, but made him all the cheare that a
man might make. When Sir Percivale perceived that,
he took downe his shield which was broken and then he put
it before him, for to gather wind, for he was greatly chased with
the serpent. And the Lyon went all way about him saluting like
a man. And then he straked him with his hand upon the necke
and upon the shoulders, and gaue thanks unto God of the fel-
lowship of the beast. And about noone the Lyon took his little
bed and trusted him and beared him unto the place that hee
dwelt in. And then was Sir Percivale alone. And as the sto-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

re telleth, hee was one of the men of the world at that time that most beloued in our Lord Iesu Christ. For in those dayes there were but few folk that beloued perfectly in Almighty God our saviour and redeemer Iesu Christ. For in those dayes the son spared not the father no more in consideration then a stranger. And so the noble knight Sir Perciuaile comforted himselfe in our Lord Iesu Christ, and besought God that no temptation should bring him nor peruert him out of Gods service, but for to endure and perseuer as his true champion. Thus when Sir Perciuaile had prayed, hee saw the Lyon come toward him, and then he couched downe at his fete. And all that night the Lyon and he slept together. And when Sir Perciuaile slept he dreamed a meruailous dreame, that there met with him two Ladies, and the one sat vpon a Lyon, and that other sat vpon a serpent, and the one of them was young, and the other was old, and the youngest him thought said. Sir Perciuaile, my Lord saluteth thee and sendeth thee word that thou array thee and make thee ready for to morrow thou must fight with the strongest champion of the world, and if thou bee overcome, thou shalt not be quite for losing of any of thy members, but thou shalt be shamed to the worlds end. And then he asked her who was her Lord. And she said the greatest Lord of the world. And so she departed suddenly, and wist not where she became.

CHAP. LV.

Of the vision that Sir Perciuaile saw, and how his vision was expounded, and of his Lyon.

Then came forth the other Lady that rode vpon the serpent, and shee said. Sir Perciuaile I complaine mee of you that ye haue done to me, and haue not offended vnto you. Certainly madame said hee, vnto you nor no Lady I neuer offended. Yes said she I shall tell you why. I haue nourished in this place a great while a serpent, which serued me a great while, and yesterday ye slew him, for the Lyon was not yours. Madame said Sir Perciuaile, I know well that the Lyon is not mine, but I did it for the Lyon is of a more gentiler nature then the serpent, and

and his Knights of the round Table.

therefore I slew him, me seemeth I did not amisse against Madame said hee what would ye that I did. I would said that for the amends of my beast that yee become my man. Then he answered that will I not graunt you. So said she, yee were neuer but my seruant, saue sith yee receiued the grace of our Lord Iesu Christ, and therefore I ensure you in what place soeuer I may find you without keeping; I take you as hee that sometime was my man. And so wee parted from Sir Perciuaile, and left him sleeping, the which was traauailed of his vision. And on the morrow hee rose and blessed him, and he was passing feeble. Then was Sir Perciuaile in the sea and saw a ship come sailing toward him. Sir Perciuaile went vnto the ship, and found it couered with white samite, and without, with white samite, and at the border stood an old man clothed in a surplis in the likenesse of a priest. Sir Perciuaile, ye be welcome. God keepe you said the good man. Sir said the old man, of whence bee yee. Sir said Sir Perciuaile, I am of King Arthurs Court and a knight of the round table, the which am in the quest of the Sancgreall, and here I am in great duresse and misery, and neuer am I like to scape out of this wilderness. Doubt ye not said the good man, if yee bee so true a knight as the high order of knight- hood requireth, and also of heart as yee ought and should be, yee should not doubt nor mistrust that none enemy should hurt nor feare you. What are yee said Sir Perciuaile. Sir said the old man, I am of a strange countrey, and hither I come to comfort you. Sir said Sir Perciuaile, what signifieth my dreame that I dreamed this night. And there he told him altogether. He that rode vpon the Lyon (said the good man) betokeneth the law of holy Church, that is to vnderstand, Faith, good hope, beloue and baptisme. For shee seemed yonger then the serpent, it is great reason, for shee was bozne in the resurrection of the passion of our Lord Iesu Christ. And for great loue he came to thee to warne thee of the great battaile that shall fall thee. With whom shall I fight said Sir Perciuaile. With the most champion of the world said the old man for as the Lady said, but if thou quite thee well, thou shalt not be quite by losing

looking of one member, but yet thou shalt be shamed to the world's end And she that rode vpon the serpent signifieth the old law, and that serpent betokeneth a feend, and why shee blamed thee that thou slewest her seruant, it be tokneth nothing. The serpent that thou slewest betokeneth the Diuell that thou rodest vpon to the roch, and when thou madest the signe of the crosse ther thou slewest him and put away his power. And when shee asked thee amends and to become her man, and thou saidest thou wouldst not, that was to make thee to beleue on her and leaue thy baptism. So hee commanded Sir Perciuale to depart. And so hee lept ouer the boord, and the ship and all went away he wist not whether. When hee went vpon to the roch and found the lion that alway kept him fellowship and had great ioy of him.

CHAP. LVI.

How sir Perciuale saw a ship comming toward him and how the Lady of the ship told him of her disheritance.

By that sir Perciuale had abidden there till midday he saw a ship come rowing in the sea as all the wind of the world had driven it. And so it droue vnder that roch: And when Sir Perciuale saw this, he hied him thither and found the ship couered with silke moze blacker then any beare, and therein was a gentlewoman of great beautie, and shee was richly beset, that none might be better. And when shee saw Sir Perciuale, shee said who brought you into this wilderness where yee be neuer like to passe hence, for yee shall die heere for hunger and mischiese. Damosell said Sir Perciuale, I serue the best man in the world, and in his seruice he shall not suffer me to die, for who that knocketh shall enter, and who that asketh shall haue, and who that seeketh him, he hideth him not. And then shee said. Sir Perciuale wot ye what I am. Yea said Sir Perciuale. How who told yee my name said shee. Damosell said Sir Perciuale, I know you better then ye wene. And I come out of the wast forrest, where I found the red knight with the white shield said the damosell. Ah damosell said hee with that knight would I meete passing faine. Sir said shee, and yee will ensure mee by the faith yee owe vnto knighthood, that yee shall doe my will what

at time I shall summon you, I shall bring you to that knight. I said hee I shall promise you your desire. Well said shee, I tell you, I saw him in the forrest chasing two knights to water, the which is called Portraie and has droue them into water for dread of death. And the two knights passed ouer, the red knight passed after, and there was his horse drownd, and hee through great strength escaped vnto the land: Thus told him, and Sir Perciuale was passing glad thereof. When hee asked him if hee had eaten any meate lately. Nay truly hee said he, I haue eaten no meate nigh these three dayes, late here I spake with a good man that fed me with his bread and holy words, and refreshed me greatly, Ah Sir knight said shee, that same man is an enchaunter and a multiplier of words, for and yee beleue him yee shall plainly be shamed, and die in this rocke for pure hunger, and be eaten with wild beasts, and yee be a yong man and a goodly knight, and I shall speake you, and yee will. What are yee said Sir Perciuale, that comforteth mee this great kindnesse. I am (said shee) a gentlewoman that am disherited, which was sometime the richest man of the world. Damosell said Sir Perciuale who hath disherited you, for I haue great pitie of you: Sir said shee, I was belied with the greatest man of the world and he made me so poor and so cleare, that there was none like me, of that great beautie I had a little pride, moze then I ought to haue had. So I said a word that pleased him not, and then hee would not suffer mee to be any longer in his company and so droue mee from mine heritage, and so disherited me, and he had neuer no more of me nor of none of my counsaile, nor of my court and silence Sir knight it hath befallen me so, through mee and mine. I haue taken from him many of his men, and made them become my men, for they aske neuer nothing of me but I giue it them, that and much moze. Thus I and all my seruants warre against him night and day. Wherefore I know now no good knight nor no good man but I get them on my side and I may, because I know that thou art a good knight, I beseech thee helpe me and for yee be a fellow of the round table where yee ought not to faile no gentlewoman that is disherited, and if she besought you of helpe.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LVII.

How Sir Percivale promised her helpe, and how he required her of loue, and how he was saued from the same scend:

Then Sir Percivale promised her all the helpe that he might. And then she thanked him. And at that time the weather was hote. And then she called vnto her a gentlewoman, and bad her to bring forth a pavilion. And so she did, and plight it vpon the grauell. Sir said shee now may yee rest you in this heate of the day. Then hee thanked her, and shee put off his helme and his shield, and there he slept a great while. And then he awoke & asked her if she had any meate. And shee said yea, yee shall haue meat enough. And so ther was set vpon the table much meate. And there was so great plentie that Sir Percivale had great meruaile thereof. For there was all manner of meats that he could thinke on. Also he dranke there the strangest wine that euer he dranke as him thought. And there withall hee was a little chafed moze then he ought to be. With that he beheld the gentlewoman, and him thought that she was the fairest creature that euer he saw. And then Sir Percivale proffered her loue, and praised her that shee would bee his loue. And then she refused him in a manner when hee required her, for because hee should bee the moze ardent on her. And hee ceased not to pray her of loue. And when shee saw well chafed, then shee said, Sir Percivale, wit yee well that I shall not fulfill your will, but if yee sweare from hence forth yee shall bee my true seruant and to doe nothing but that I shall commande you. Will yee ensure me this as yee bee a true knight. Yea faire Lady said he, by the faith of my body. Well said shee now shall yee do with mee whatsoever shall please you. And now wit yee well that yee are the knight in the world that I most desired. And then two squiers were commanded to make a bed in the mids of the pavilion. And anon shee was unclothed and laide therein. And then Sir Percivale laide him downe by her naked. And by aduenture and grace hee saw his sword lye vpon the ground all naked, in whose pomell was a red crosse, and the

figure

and his Knights of the round Table.

me of the crosse therein, and bethought him of his knight, and on his promise made befoze hand vnto the good man. he made a signe of the crosse on his forehead, and there all the pavilion turned vpside downe. And then it changed into a smoke and a blacke cloud. And then hee was dead and out aloud.

CHAP. LVIII.

How Sir Percivale for pennance roue himselfe through the thigh. And how the damosell was knowen for the Deuill

Faire sweete father Iesu Christ, let me not bee shamed, that I was neuer lost had not thy grace ben. And then he looked into the ship and saw her enter therein which said, Sir Percivale haue betrayed me. And so shee went with the wind roaring and crying, that it seemed that all the water bent after her. Then Sir Percivale made great sorrow, and drew his sword to him saying. Siththence my flesh will bee my master, I will punish it, and therewith he roue himselfe through the thigh at the blood start about him, and said. Oh good Lord take this recompensation of that I haue done against thee my good Lord. So then he clothed him and armed him, and called himselfe wretch, saying. How nigh I had lost that which I should neuer haue gotten againe, which is my virginittie, for that may neuer bee recovered after it be once lost. And then hee stopped the bleeding wound with a peece of his shirt. And thus as hee made his moane hee saw the same ship from the Orient come at the good man was in the day befoze. And then was the noble knight ashamed with himselfe, and therewith hee fell in a swoone. And when hee awoke hee went vnto him weakly, and so he saluted this good man. And then hee asked Sir Percivale how he had done sith hee departed from him. Sir said hee was a gentlewoman that led mee into deadly sinne, and so hee told him all. Know yee not her said the old man. Nay said he but tell I was the scend sent her hither to shame mee. Oh good knight said he, thou art a foole, for that gentlewoman was the eldest scend of hell, the which hath power aboue all Devils and

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

that was the old Lady that thou sawest in thy vision riding by, on a serpent. Then hee told Sir Percivale how our Lord Iesu Christ beate him out of heauen for his sinne, the which was the most brightest Angell of heauen, and therefore hee lost his heritage, and that was the champion that thou foughtest with, all, the which had overcome thee, had not the grace of God been. Now beware Sir Percivale, and take this for an ensample. And then the good man vanished away. When Sir Percivale took his armour and entred into the shippe, and so departed from thence.

CHAP. LIX.

How Sir *Launcelot* went into a Chappell, where he found dead in a white shirt, a man of religion of an hundred winters old.

NOW when the hermite had kept sir *Launcelot* thre dayes, the hermite gat him a horse a helme and a sword. And then he departed about the houre of noone, and then hee saw a little house, and when hee came nere hee saw a chappell, and ther beside he saw an old man that was cloathed al in white ful richly, then sir *Launcelot* said God saue you God keep you wel said the good man, and make you a good knight. Then sir *Launcelot* alighted and entred into a chappell, and there he saw an old man dead in a white shirt of passing fine cloth. Sir said he this good man that is here dead ought not to bee in such clothing as ye see him in, for that he bzake the oath of his order, for he hath bene more then an hundred winters a religious man. And then the good man and sir *Launcelot* went into the chappel, and the good man took a stole about his necke, and a booke, and then he coniuered on that booke, and with that they saw an hidious figure and an horrible, that there was no man so hard hearted nor so hardy but that he would haue bene asfeard. When said the fænd thou hast trauailed mee greatly, now tel mee what thou wilt with me. I will said the good man, that thou tell me how my fellow became dead, and whether hee bee saued or damned. When hee said with an horrible voice hee is not lost but saued. How may that be said the good man, it seemed to mee that hee dned not well, for he bzake his order for to were a shirt, where

and his Knights of the round Table.

he ought to were none. And who that trespasseth against our lord doth not well. Not so said the fænd, this man that lyeth here dead was come of great linage. And there was a Lord that hight the Earle de Vale that held great warre against this mans nephew, which hight *Aguarus*. And so this *Aguarus* saw that Earle was bigger then he, then he went for to take counsell of his uncle. And said. Which lieth now here dead as ye may see, and then he asked leaue and went out of his hermitage for to maintaine his nephew the mightie Earle. And so it hapned that this man that lyeth here dead did so much by his wisdom and hardinesse that the Earle was taken and thre of his Lords by force of this dead man.

CHAP. LX

How men would haue hewen a dead man, and it would not bee, and how that Sir *Launcelot* tooke the haire of the dead man.

THEN was there peace betwæne the Earle and this *Aguarus* and great suretie, that the Earle should neuer warre against him. When this dead man that there lyeth came to this hermitage againe. And then the Earle made two of his nephews for to be auenged vpon this man. So they came vpon a day and found this dead man at the sacring of the masse, and they abode till he had said his masse, and then they set vpon him and drew out their swords for to haue slaine him. But there would no sword bite on him, no more then vpon a gad of Steele, for the Lord which hee serued, preserved him. Then made they a great fire, and did off his clothes and the haire of his back. And then this dead man the hermite said vnto them. Alone ye to burne mee it shall not lye in your power, nor to perish mee as much as a thred and there were any vpon my body. No said one of them, it shall be assayed. And then they spoiled him and put vpon him this shirt and threw him in the fire, and he lay al that night till it was day in that fire, and yet was he not dead. And so on the morrow I came and found him dead, but I found neither thred nor skinne perished. And so took him out of the fire with great feare, and laid him here as ye may see, and now ye

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

may suffer me to goe my way for I haue told you the truth. And then he departed with an horrible tempest. When was the good man and sir Launcelot moze gladder then they were before, and then Sir Launcelot dwelled with the good man that night. Sir said the good man, be ye not sir Launcelot du lake, yea Sir said he. What seeke ye in this countrey said the good man. Sir said Sir Launcelot. I goe to seeke the aduentures of the Sancgreall. Well said hee seeke it may yee well, but though it were here, ye shall haue no power to see it, no moze then a blind man should see a bright sword, and that is long of your sunne, and else were ye moze abler then any man liuing. And then Sir Launcelot began to wepe. When said the good man, were yee confessed sith ye entred into the quest of the Sancgreall. Ye said Sir Launcelot. When on the morow when the good man had sung his masse, they buried the dead man. Then said sir Launcelot. Father what shall I doe. Now said the good man, I require you take this haire that was this holy mans, and put it next your skinne, and greatly it shall preuaile you. Sir and I will doe it said sir Launcelot. And I charge you said the good man that yee eate no flesh as long as yee bee in the quest of the holy Sancgreall, nor ye shall drinke no wine, and that ye heare masse dayly, and ye may doe it. So he took the haire and put it vpon him, and so he departed at euen song time, and so he rode into a forrest, and there he met with a gentlewoman riding vpon a white palfrey. And shee asked him: Sir knight whether ride yee. Certainly damosell said Sir Launcelot, I wot not whether I ride, but as fortune leadeth me. Ah sir Launcelot said she, I wot what aduenture ye seeke, for ye were afore time moze nearer then ye be now, and yet shall ye see it moze openly then euer ye did, and that shall ye vnderstand in short time. When sir Launcelot asked her where hee might bee harboured that night. Yee shall none find this day nor night, but to morow ye shall find good herborow, and ease you of that yee bee in doubt of. And then he commended her vnto God. When he rode till that he came to a crosse, and took that for his host as for that night.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. LXI.

Of a vision that Sir Launcelot had and how he told it to an hermit, and desired counsaile of him.

And hee put his horse to pasture, and took off his helme and his shield and made his prayers to the crosse that he might neuer againe fall in deadly sinne. And so hee laid him downe to sleepe. And anon as he was a sleepe, it befell him that he had a vision. What him thought there came a man before him all becompassed of starres, and that man had a crowne of gold on his head, and that man led in his fellowship seauen kings and two knights, and all these worshipped the crosse kneeling vpon their knees, holding vp their hands toward heauen, and all they said. Faire swete father of heauen, come and visit vs and yeld vnto vs euerie each as we haue deserved. When sir Launcelot looked vp to heauen, and him seemed that the clouds opened, and that an old man came downe with a company of Angells and alight among them, and gaue vnto euerie each his blessing, and called them his seruants and good and true knights. And when this old man had said thus, hee came to one of those knights and said, I haue lost all that I haue set vpon thee, for thou hast ruled thee against mee as a warriour, and used wrong warres with vaine glozy, moze for the pleasure of the world then to please me, therefore thou shalt be condemned without thou yeld me my treasure. At this vision saw sir Launcelot at the crosse. And on the morow hee took his horse and rode till midday, and there by aduenture he met with the same knight that took his horse, his helme and his sword, when hee slept, when the Sancgreall appeared afore the crosse. And when Sir Launcelot saw him, hee saluted him not faire, but cried on high knight keepe thee, for thou hast done to mee great unkindnesse. And then they put before them their speares and Sir Launcelot came so fierly vpon him that he smote him and his horse downe to the earth that he had almost broken his necke. When sir Launcelot took the knights horse that was his owne before hand and descended from the horse that hee sat vpon

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

upon, tooke his horse, and tied the knights owne horse to a tree that hee might find that horse when hee was risen. When Sir Launcelot rode till night, and by adventure he met an hermite, and each of them saluted other, and there hee rested with that good man all night, and gaue his horse such as hee might get. When said the good man vnto sir Launcelot, of whence be ye. Sir said he, I am of King Arthurs Court, and my name is sir Launcelot du lake that am in the quest of the Sancgreall, and therefore I pray you to counsaile me of a vision the which I had at a crosse. And so he told him all.

CHAP. LXII

How the hermit expounded to Sir Launcelot his vision, and told him that Sir Galahad was his sonne.

NOW sir Launcelot said the good man, there thou mightest haue vnderstand the high linage that thou art come off, and thy vision betokeneth this. After the passion of Iesu Christ fortie yeares. Ioseph of Arimathey preached the victorie of King Euclake. that hee had in the battaile the better of his enemies, and of the seauen kings and the two knights. The first of them is called Napus a right holy man. And the second hight Nacien in remembrance of his grandfire, and in him dwelled our Lord Iesu Christ. And the thirde was called Pelias le grose. And the fourth hight Licias. And the fifth hight Ionas, hee departed out of his countrey and went into Wales, and tooke the daughter of Manuell, whereby he had the land of Gaule, and hee came to dwell in this countrey, and of him came King Launcelot thy grandfire, which there wedded the kings daughter of Ireland and hee was as worthy a man as thou art, and of him came King Ban thy father, the which was the last of the seauen kings. And by thee Sir Launcelot it signifieth that the Angels said that thou were none of the seauen fellowships. And the last was the ninth knight, hee was signified to a Lyon. for hee should passe all manner of earthly knights, that is Sir Galahad which thou begat vpon King Pelles daughter, and thou ought to thank God more then any other man liuing. For an earthly sinner thou

and his Knights of the round Table.

thou hast no peer in knighthood, nor neuer shall be, but little thank hast thou giuen vnto God for all the great vertues that God hath lent thee. Sir said Sir Launcelot, yee say that the good knight is my sonne. What oughtest thou to know said the good man, and no man better, for thou knewest the daughter of king Pelles sleightly, and on her thou begatest Galahad, and that was he that at the feast of Pentecost sat in the siege perillous, and therefore make thou it known openly that hee is one of thy begetting on King Pelles daughter, for that will bee thy worship and honour vnto thy kindred, and I counsaile you in no place presse not vpon him to haue to doe with him. Well said Sir Launcelot me seemeth that good knight should pray for me vnto the high father that I fall not to sinne againe. Trust thou well said the good man, that thou farest much the better for his prayer, but the sonne shall not beare the wickednesse of the father, nor the father shall not beare the wickednesse of the sonne but euery each shall beare his owne burthen, and therefore pray thou onely vnto God, and hee will helpe thee in all thy needs. And then Sir Launcelot and he went to supper and laid him to rest, and the haire picked so sir Launcelots skinned that it grieved him full sore, but hee tooke it meekly, and suffered the paine. And so on the morrow he heard his masse, and tooke his armes, and so tooke his leaue.

CHAP. LXIII.

How Sir Launcelot iusted with many Knights, and how hee was taken.

AND then hee mounted vpon his horse and rode into a forest, and held no his way. And as he looked afore him, hee saw a faire plaine, and beside that plaine stood a faire Castle, and before that Castle were many pavilions of silke and of divers hew. And him seemed that hee saw there five hundred knights riding on horsebacke, and there was two parties. They that were of the Castle were all in blacke, their horses and their trappours black. And they were with us, were all vpon white horses with white trappours. And euery each hurled to other

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

other, whereof Sir Launcelot meruailed greatly. And at the last him thought that they of the castle were put vnto the worst. And then thought Sir Launcelot for to helpe the weaker part, in encreasing of his chivalry. And so Sir Launcelot thrust in among the parties of the Castle, and smote down a knight both horse and man to the earth. And then he rushed here and there and did meruaillous deedes of armes. And then hee drew out his sword and strooke many knights to the earth, so that all those that saw him meruailed that euer one knight might doe such deedes of armes. But alway the white knights held them nigh about sir Launcelot, for to weary him and winne him.

And at the last as a man may not euer endure, Sir Launcelot waxed so faint of fighting and of traveling, and was so weary of great deedes, that hee might not lift vp his armes for to giue one stroke, so that hee wend neuer to haue bozne armes. And then all they took him and led him away into a forrest and there they made him to a light and to rest him. And then all the fellowship of the Castle were overcome for the default of him. and then they said all vnto sir Launcelot. Blessed be God that hee bee now of our fellowship for wee shall hold you in our pryson. And so they left him, with few words. And then Sir Launcelot made great sorrow and said. Neuer or now was I at turneyment nor iusts, but that I had the better, and now I am shamed, and then he said. Now I am sure, that I am more unfuller then euer I was. Thus he rode sorrowing, and halfe a day he was in despaire, till that hee came into a deepe valey, and when Sir Launcelot saw hee might not ride vp into the mountaine, he alighted there vnder an apple tree, and there hee left his helme and his shields and put his horse to pasture, and then hee laid him downe to sleepe, and then him thought there came an old man before him which said. Ah Sir Launcelot of euill faith and poore beleue, wherefore is thy will turned toward thy deadly sinne. And when he had thus said, he vanished away, and Sir Launcelot wist not where he became. When he awaked him, and took his horse and as he rode that way, he saw a chappell where was a recluse, which had a window that she might see by to the altar, and all aloud she called Sir Launcelot, because

and his Knights of the round Table.

because he seemed a knight arraunt. And then he came, and she asked him what he was, & of what place, and what he sought.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Now Sir Launcelot told his vision vnto a woman, and she expounded it vnto him.

And then he told her altogether word by word, and the truth how it befell him at the turnement, and after hee told her his vision that hee had that night in his sleepe. And asked her for to tell him what it might meane, for hee was not well content with it. Ah sir Launcelot said shee as long as yee were knight, of earthly knighthood, yee were the most meruaillous man of the world and the most aduenturous, now said the Lady, sith that yee bee set among the knights of heavenly aduentures, if aduenture fell the contrary of that turnement, haue thou no meruaile for that turnement yesterday was but a tokening of our Lord Iesus Christ, and not for then there was none enchantment, for they at the turnement were earthly knights. The turnement was a token for to see who should haue most knights, either Eliazar the sonne of good king Dacles, or Augustus the sonne of king Harlon. But Eliazar was not clothed in white, and Augustus was clothed in blacke, the which we are come. All what this betokeneth I shall tell thee. On the day of Pentecost when King Arthur held his court, it befell that earthly kings and knights took a turnement together, that is to say, the quest of the Sancgreall. The earthly knights were they the which were clothed all in blacke, and the conering betokeneth the sinnes, wherof they bee not confessed. And they with thee couering of white betokeneth virginittie, and they that chose chastite, and thus was the quest begun in them. When thou beheldest the sinners, and the good men. And when thou sawest the sinners overcome, thou enclinest, vnto that part, for bobance and pride of the world, and all that must be left in the quest. For in this quest thou shalt haue many fellows and thy betters, for thou art so feeble of euill trust, and good beleue. This made it when thou were there where they took thee and led thee into the forrest.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

And anon there appeared the Sancgreall vnto the white knights but thou were so feeble of good beleene and faith, that thou might not abide it, for all the teaching of the good man, but anon thou turned vnto the sinners. And that caused thy misadventure that thou shouldest know good from euill, and the vaine gloire of the world, the which is not worth a peare. And for great paine thou madst great sorow that thou hadst not overcome all the white knights with the couering of white, by whome was betokened virginitee, and chastitie, and therefore God was wroth with thee, for God loueth not such deeds in his quest. And this bishon signifieth that thou were of euill faith and of poore beleue, thee which will make thee to fall into the deepe pit of Hell, if thou keepe thee not. Now haue I warned thee of thy vaine gloire and of thy pride, that thou hast many times erred against thy maker. Beware of everlasting paine, for of all earthly knights I haue most pittie of thee for I know well thou hast not the peere of any earthly sinfull man. And so he commanded Sir Launcelot to dinner. And after dinner hee commended her vnto God and tooke his horse, and so rode into a deepe valey, and there he saw a riuer and an high mountaine, and through the water he must needs passe the which was full hidious, and then in the name of God he tooke the water with a good heart. And when he came ouer he saw an armed knight, horse and man as blacke as any deare, and without any word speaking, hee smote Sir Launcelots horse to the earth, and so hee passed forth and wist not where hee became. And then hee tooke his helme and his shield and thanked God of his aduenture.

CHAP. LXV.

How Sir Gawaine was nigh wery of the quest of the Sancgreall, and of his meruailous dreame.

Now when Sir Gawaine was departed from his fellowship, he rode long without any aduenture. For hee found not the tenth part of aduentures as hee was wont to doe. For Sir Gawaine rode from Whitsunday vnto Michaelmasse, and all that while could he find none aduenture that pleased him.

and his Knights of the round Table.

So vpon a day it befell that sir Gawaine met with sir Ector de Maris, and either of them made great ioy of other, so that it were meruaile to tell. And they two talked the one vnto the other, and complained them greatly that they could find none aduentures. Truly said Sir Gawaine vnto Sir Ector, I am nigh weary of this quest, and loth I am to follow any further. One thing meruaileth me said Sir Ector, I haue met with twentie knights fellows of mine, & they all complaine as I do. Meruaile (said sir Gawaine) where sir Lancelot your brother is. Truly said Sir Ector I cannot heere of him, nor of Sir Calahad, Sir Perciuaile, nor of sir Bors. Let them be said Sir Gawaine, for they haue no earthly peares. And if one thing were not in Sir Launcelot, he had no fellow of none earthly man. But hee is as we be, but if that he take more paine vpon him. But and if all these foure knights be met together, they will be loth that any men met with them. For if those knights faile of the Sancgreall, it is in wast of all the remnant of vs knights of the round table to recouer it. Thus Sir Ector de Maris and Sir Gawaine rode more then eight dayes together. And vpon a saturday they found an old chappell the which was all to wasted and broken, that it seemed that no man repaired thither and there they alighted, and set their speares at the chappell dore, and there those two knights entred into the chappell, & there they were in their orations a great while. And some after they set them downe in the sieges of the chappel. And so as sir Ector and Sir Gawaine speake of one thing and another, for heauinesse they fell on slepe. And there befell them both full strange and meruailous aduentures in dreame. And first of Sir Gawaine. Him seemed that hee came into a meddow full of herbes and flowers, and there hee saw a racke of buls to the number of an hundred and fifty. The which were proud and blacke, saue thre of them were white. And one of the thre had a blacke spot. And the other two were so faire and so white that they might be no whiter. And these thre buls which were so faire were tied with two strong cords. And the remnant of the buls said among them. Let vs goe hence to seeke better pasture. And so some went and some came againe, but they

The Historie of Prince AATHUR

they were so leane that they might not stand by right. And of the buls that were so white, that one came againe and no mo. But when this white bul was come againe, among the other there arose by a great cry for lacke of wind that failed them. And so they departed, one heere and an other there. This vision befell Sir Gawaine that night.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the vision that Sir Ector de Maris had, and how hee iusted with Sir *Vwaine les anontres* his sworne brother.

But to Sir Ector de Maris befell an other vision the contrary. For it seemed him that his brother Sir Launcelot & hee alighted out of one chaire and lept upon two horses. And the one said unto the other. Go wee to seeke that we shall not find. And him thought that a man beate Sir Launcelot and spoiled him, and clothed him in an other array, the which was all full of knots, and set him upon an asse. And so hee roode till hee came to the fairest well that euer hee saw. And then Sir Launcelot alighted and would haue drunken of that well. And when he stooped to drinke of that water, the water sank from him. And when Sir Launcelot saw that, he returned and went thither from whence hee came. And in the meane while thus alway sleeping Sir Ector dreamed that his brother Sir Launcelot roode unto the time they came to a rich mans house where as at that time was a wedding, and there hee saw a king that said, Sir knight, here is no place for you. And then hee turned againe unto the chaire that he came from. Thus within a little while, both Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector awaked out of their sleepe. And each of them told other of their vision, the which meruailed them greatly. Truly said Sir Ector, I shall neuer be mery till I heere tidings of my brother Sir Launcelot. Now as they sate thus talking, they saw an hand shewing unto the elbow, and the hand was couered with red samit, and upon the same hand hung a bridell not rich. And held within the fist a great candle which burnt full cleare, and so passed before them and entred into the chappell. And then it vanished away,

and his Knights of the round Table.

away, and they wist not where it became. And anon there came downe a voice which said unto them. Knights full of euill faith and poore of belieue, these two things haue failed you, and therefore yee may not come unto the adventures of the holy *Sancreall*, then first spake Sir Gawaine and said. Sir Ector haue yee heard these words. He truly said Sir Ector, I haue heard all. Now goe we said Sir Ector unto some hermit that will tell vs of our vision, for it seemeth me wee labour all in vaine. And then they departed and roode into a valey, and there they met with a squier that roode upon a hackney. And they saluted him faire and courteously. Sir said Sir Gawaine, can yee teach vs unto any hermit. Here within a little mountaine is one said the squier but it is so rough that there may no horse go thither, and therefore yee must goe on foote. But there shall yee find a poore house. And there is Nacien the hermit, which is the holiest man in all this countrey. And so they departed either from other. And then they came in a valey where as they met with a knight well armed, which proffered them to iust as farre as hee saw them. In the name of God said Sir Gawaine sith I departed from Camelot, there was not one that proffered me to iust but one. Now Sir said Sir Ector, let me iust with him. Nay said Sir Gawaine yee shall not, but if I be beaten. It shall not forsethinke me then if yee goe after me. And then either of them dressed to other for to iust, and came together as fast as their horses might runne, and brake their shields and their mayles and that one more then that other. And Sir Gawaine was wounded in the left side. But the other knight was smitten through the best, and the speare came out on the other side, & so they fel both out of their saddles downe to the ground & in the falling they brak both their speares. The anon Sir Gawain arose and set his hand unto his sword, and cast his shield before him. But all for nought was it, for the knight had no power for to arise against him. Then said Sir Gawaine yee must yeelde you as an ouercome man, or else I may slea you. Ah Sir knight said hee, I am but dead, for Gods sake and of your gentlenesse lead me heere by unto a Abbey, that I may receiue my creature. Now said Sir Gawaine, I know not house of religion heere, by

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Sir said the knight, set mee vpon a horse before and I shall teach you the way. Then Sir Gawaine set him vp in the saddle. And so Sir Gawaine lept vpon the same horse behind him for to susteine him. And so long they rode till they came to an Abbey, where as they were receiued. And anon this hurt knight was vnarmed and receiued his creator and maker. When this knight that was wounded to death praised sir Gawaine to draw out of his body the trunchion of the speare. Then sir Gawaine asked him what manner of knight he was, and what was his name, as hee that knew him not. When the hurt knight answered. I am (said hee) of King Archurs Court, and haue bene a fellow of the round table, and thou and I were swozne brethren together, and now Sir Gawaine thou hast slaine mee. And wit you well that my name is Sir Ewaine le auoutres, which sometime was sonne vnto king Vrience, and haue laboured me in the quest of the Sancgreall, as thy selfe sir Gawaine and many other knights haue done. And my death I pray to God he will forgive it thee. For now from hence forth it shall be said, that the one swozne brother hath slaine the other.

CHAP. LXVII.

How Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector came vnto an hermitage for to be confessed. And how they shewed to the hermit their visions.

Alas said Sir Gawaine, that euer this misadventure is thus be fallen me. No force said sir Vwaine sith I shall die this death, of a more worshipfuller mans hands might I not die. But when yee come vnto the Court, recommend me vnto my Lord King Arthur, and vnto all those of the round Table that be left alieue. And for the old brotherhood thinke on mee. When sir Gawaine began to wepe, and in likewise did sir Ector. And then sir Vwaine himselfe and Sir Gawaine together drew out the trunchion of the speare, and anon the soule departed from the body. When Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector right worshipfully buried him as men ought to bury a Kings sonne. And made his name to be written vpon his tombe, and by whom hee was slaine. So then departed Sir Gawaine, and Sir Ector

and his Knights of the round Table.

For as heauie as they might be for their misadventure. And so they rode till that they came vnto the rough Mountaine, and there they tied their horses and went on foote vnto the hermitage. and when they come vp and saw a poore house, and beside the chappell there was a little courtlage whereas Nacien the hermite gathered wortts, as he that had tasted none other meat a great while. And when he espied the arraunt knights, hee came toward them and full courteously saluted them, and they him againe. Faire Lords said the Hermite, what aduventure hath brought you hither. Sir said Sir Gawaine, to speak with you for to be confessed. Sirs said the Hermite, I am ready. When they told him so much, that he wist well what they were. And then hee thought for to counsaile them if hee might. When began Sir Gawaine first, and told him of his vision which hee had in the chappell. And Sir Ector told him all as it is before rehearsed. Sir said the Hermite vnto sir Gawaine, the faire meadow and the rache therein ought to be vnderstanded the round table, & by the meadow ought to be vnderstood humilitie and patience. Those be the things that be alwaies greene and quicke. For men may not at no time surmount nor ouercome humilitie and patience. Wherefore was the round table ordained and found. And the chivalry hath bene at all times. So by the fraternitie and brotherhood which was there that she might not be vanquished nor ouercome. For men said that she was founded in patience and in humilitie. And at the rache did eate an hundred and fiftie bulls. But they eate not in the meadow because their hearts should be set and grounded of humilitie and patience. And all those bulls were very proud and blacke except only three. By the bulls is to vnderstand the fellowship of the round table, which for their great finnes and for their outrageous wickednesse be blacke. Blacknesse is for to say without good & vertuous works. And the three which were white bulls, except onely one the which was bespotted. The two white bulls betoken Sir Galahad and Sir Perciualle, for they two be maidens, cleane without any spot or wenne. And the thirde that had a spot signifieth Sir Bors de Ganis, which trespassed neuer but once in his virginite. But euer sithence hee kept himselfe so

well in chastitie, that all his offence is forgiven him, and his misdoings. And wherefore those three were tied by their necks, for because that they be three knights in virginitie and in chastitie, and there is no manner of pride smitten in them. And all the blacke bulls which said go we hence, they were those which at Pentecost at the high feast took upon them to goe in the quest of the holy Sancgreall without any confession, they might not enter into the meadow of humilitie and patience. And therefore they returned into the wast countries. That signifieth death. For there shall die many of them. Every each of them shall slay other of them for sinne, and they that shall escape shall bee so cleane, that it shall bee great meruaile to see them. And of the three bulls without spot, the one shall come againe and the other two neuer.

CHAP. LXVIII.

How the hermite Nacien expounded their vision.

Then spake the Hermite Nacien vnto Sir Ector de Maris. Sooth it is that Sir Launcelot and ye are coming downe of one chaire. The chaire betokeneth mastership and Lordship, the which he came downe from. But ye two knights said the Hermite ye goe to take that yee shall neuer find, which is the Sancgreall. For it is the secret thing of the Lord Iesu Christ. That is to meane, that sir Launcelot fell downe from his horse. Yee hath left pride said the hermite, and hath taken him vnto humilitie. For he hath cryed mercie for all his sinnes, and hath soze repented him. And our Lord hath visited and clothed him in his clothing, the which is full of knots. That is hard haire that he weareth dayly. And the asse that he rode vpon is a beast of humilitie. For God would not ride vpon no steepe nor vpon no palfrey. So in ensample that an asse betokeneth mekenesse that thou sauest Sir Launcelot thy brother ride vpon in thy slepe dreaming. And also the Well whereas the water fawke from him when he should haue taken thereof, and when hee saw that hee might not haue it, hee returned thether from whence hee came. For the well betokeneth the high grace of God

the more that men desire to take it the more shall be their paine. So when he came nigh vnto the Sancgreall, he makede that he that held him not a man worthy to be so nigh the holy Well. For hee had bene so defouled in deadly sinne by the space of many yeares. Yet when he kneeled downe for to drink of the Well, there hee saw great prouidence of the Sancgreall, because he had serued so long the Deuill, he shall haue benediction twentie foure dayes long, for that he hath bene the Deuill's seruant twentie foure yeares. And then soone after hee shall returne vnto Camelot out of this countrey, and there shall hee see a part of such things as he hath found.

Now will I tell you what betokeneth the hand with the candle and the bzidle. That is to vnderstand the holy Ghost where charitie is euer. And the bzidle signifieth abstinence. For when he is bzidled in a christian mans heart, he holdeth him self that he falleth not into deadly sin. And the candle which beareth cleanness and light signifieth the right way of our Lord Iesu Christ. And then he went and said, knights of poore and wicked beleue, these three things faileth chastitie, abstinence, and truth, therefore yee may not attaine that high adventure of the holy Sancgreall.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of the good counsaile that the hermite gaue vnto them.

Certainly said sir Gawaine soothly haue yee said, and that I feele I openly. Now I pray you good man and holy father tell me why we met not with so many adventures as we were wont to doe, and commonly haue the better. I shall tell you said the good man. The adventure of the Sancgreall which many other haue undertaken the quest thereof, and find nothing. The cause is, for it appeareth not to sinners, wherfore they faile not though yee faile thereof and many other. For yee are a false knight, and a great murtherer, and to good men doeth other things then murther. For I dare well say as much as Sir Launcelot hath bene, sith that hee went in the quest of the Sancgreall, hee neuer slew man nor woman, till

the time he come to Camelot againe. For he hath taken vpon him to forsake sinne. And were not that hee is bristable, but by his thought he is like to turne againe, should he next to achieve it, saue Sir Galahad his sonne. But God knoweth well his thought and his bristableness and yet shall hee die a full holy man. And no doubt he hath no fellow of no earthly sinful man. Sir said Sir Gawaine, it seemeth mee by your words, that for our sinnes it will nothing auaille vs to trauaile in this quest. Truly said the good man, there be an hundred such as yee be, that neuer shall preuaile but to haue shame. And when they heard these words, they commended him to God. Then the good man called againe Sir Gawaine and said. It is long time passed sith that yee were made knight, and neuer sith thou seruest thy maker, and now thou art so old a tree, that in thee is neither lease nor fruit, wherefore bethinke thee that thou yeld vnto our Lord the bare rinde, sith the scend hath the leaues and the fruit. Sir said Sir Gawaine, and I had leisure I would speak with you, quit my fellow here Sir Ector is gone befoze, and abideth mee yonder beneath the hill. Well said the good man thou were better to be counsellled. Then Sir Gawaine departed and came to Sir Ector, and so they tooke their horses and rode till they came to a fosters house which harboured them right well. And on the morrow they departed from their host, and rode long oz they could find any aduventure.

CHAP. LXX.

How Sir Bors met with an hermite, and how hee was confessed vnto him, and of the pennance that was enioyned him.

So when Sir Bors was departed from camelot, he met with a religious man riding vpon an Ass and Sir Bors saluted him. And anon the good man knew full well that hee was one of the knights arraunt that was of the quest of the Sancgreall. What are ye said the goodman. Sir said Sir Bors, I am a knight that faine would be counsailed in the quest of the Sancgreall. For hee shall haue much earthly worship that may bring it to good end. Certainly said the good man that is sooth, for hee shall

the best knight of the world, and the fairest of all the fellowship. But wit yee well there shall none attaine it but by himselfe, that is pure confession. So rode they together till they came to an Hermitage, and there hee praised Sir Bors to all that night with him. And so hee alighted and put a his armour and prayed him that hee might be confessed. So they went both into the chappell, and ther he was cleane shewed. And they ate bread and dranke water together. So said the good man I pray thee that thou wilt eate other till thou sit at the table where as the Sanct shall bee. Sir said Sir Bors I agree mee thereto. How wot ye that I shall sit there. Yes said the good man, know I well, but there shall bee but few of you fellows with you. All is welcome said Sir Bors that God sendeth me. So said the good man, in stead of a shirt, and in signe of chastity, yee shall haue a garment thereof I pray you do off all clothes and your shirt. And so hee did. And then hee tooke a scarlet coate, so that should bee in stead of a shirt, till hee had fulfilled the quest of the Sancgreall. And the good man found him in so meruailous a life and so stable, that hee called thereof and felt that hee was neuer corrupt in fleshly things, but in one time that hee begat Heline le Blanke. Then hee shewed him and tooke his leaue, and so departed. And so a little while thence hee looked vpon into a tree, and there he saw a passing great bird vpon an old tree, and it was passing drie, without leaues. And the bird sat aboue and had birds the which were dead for hunger. So smote hee himselfe with his bill the which was great and sharpe. And so the great bird bled till hee died among his birds. The young birds betoken the blood of that great bird. When Sir Bors saw this, hee wel it was great tokening for when he saw that the great bird did not arise, then hee tooke his horse and rode forth his way. So about euen song time by the aduventure he came vnto a castle and an hie and there was hee lodged gladly.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. LXXI.

How Sir Bors was lodged with a Lady and how hee tooke vpon him for to fight against a champion for her land.

As when hee was vnarmed, they they led him into an high toure wher was a lusty young Lady and a faire. And shee receiued him with great ioy, and made him to sit downe by her. And so hee was set to his supper with flesh and many dainties. And when sir Bors saw that, hee bethought him of his penance, and bad a squier to bring him water. And so he did as he was bidden and hee made sopps therein and ate them. A said the Lady I trow yee like not my meate, Des truely said Sir Bors, God thanke you madame, but I may eat no other meate this day. When she speake no more as at that time, for shee was loth to displease him. Then after supper they speake of one thing and other. With that there came a Squier and said Madame yee must puruey you to morrow for a champion, for else your sister will haue this Castle, and also your lands, except yee can find a knight that will fight to morrow in your quarrell against Sir Pridan le noire. When she made great sorrow and said. Ah Lord God wherfore graunt you to hold my land whereof I should now be disherited without reason and right. And when Sir Bors had heard her say thus hee said. I shall comfort you Sir said she, I shall tell you. There was here a king that hight Aniause, the which held al this land in his keeping. So it mishapned that hee loued a gentlewoman, a great deale elder then I am. So hee tooke vnto her all his land in keeping, and all his men to gouerne, and shee brought vp many euill customes, whereby shee put to death a great part of his kinsmen. And when he saw that, hee let chase her out of this land and betooke it to me, and all this land in my guiding. But anon as this worthy king was dead, this other Lady began to war vpon mee and hath destroyed many of my men and turned them against me, that I haue wel nigh no men left And I haue nought else but this high toure that she left me. And yet she hath promised me that she will haue this Toure, without

and his Knights of the round Table

I can find a knight to fight with her Champion. Now tell mee Sir Bors, what is that Sir Pridan le noire. Sir said she, he is the most doubted man of this land, Now may yee send her word that yee haue found a knight that shall fight with that Sir Pridan le noire in Gods quarell and yours. When the Lady was not a little glad and sent word that shee was puruated. And that night. Sir Bors had good but in no bed would he come, hee layd him on the floure, nor neuer would hee doe other wise then hee had met with the quest of Sanggreall.

CHAP. LXXII.

Reuision that Sir Bors had that night and how hee fought and ouercame his aduersary.

As then anon as hee was on sleepe him befell a vision. Him thought there came to him two birds the one was as white as any swanne and that other was meruailous black, but was not so great as that other, but in the likenesse of a rauen. When the white bird came to him and said. If thou wouldst giue me meat and serue me I should giue thee all the riches of the world, and I shall make thee as faire and as white as I am. When the white bird departed and went away. And then there came to him the blacke bird and said. And thou wilt serue me to morrow and haue me in no dispite, though I be blacke, for wite thou well that more auaieth my blacknesse, then the others whitnesse. And then shee departed. And he had an other vision: Him thought that he came vnto a great place which seemed a chappell, and there hee found a chaire set on the left side which was worne eaten and feeble. And on the right hand were two flowers like to lilies, and the one would haue taken from the other her whitnesse, but a good man parted them, that the one touched not the other. And then out of euery floure came many floures and fruit great plentie. When him thought the good man said. Should not hee doe great folly, that would let these two floures perith for to succour the rotten tree that it fell vnto the ground. Sir said he, it seemeth me that this might not faile. Now keepe thee well said the good man that thou neuer

The Historie of Prince Arthur

see such an aduenture befall this. When Sir Bors awaked and made the signe of the crosse in the mids of his forehead and so hee arose and clothed him And there came the Lady of the place, and shee saluted him, and Sir Bors her againe And so they went to a chappell and there heard there seruice: And anon there came a cōpany of knights that the Lady had sent for, for to leade Sir Bors vnto battaile. When Sir Bors asked his armour. And when he was armed, shee praised him for to take his refection. Paymadame said hee, that shall I not do till I haue done my battaile by the grace of God. And so hee lept vpon his horse. And so departed all the knights and men with him, And as soone as these Ladies met together, shee which Sir Bors should fight for; complained to her and said. Hadame yee haue done me great wrong to bereue me of my lands, that King Aniause gaue me and full soth I am there should bee any battaile yee shall not chose said the other Lady, or else your knight shall withdraw him. When there was the crie made, which partie that had the better of those two knights, his Lady should make all the lands to reioyce. Now departed the knight here and the other there. When they came together with such a randome that they perced their shoulders and theirs hanberkes, and their speares flew in pieces, and they wounded either other sore. When hurled they together so that they fell both to the ground and their horses betweene their legs. And anon they arose and set their hands to their swords, and smote each other vpon the heads, that they made great wounds and deepe, that the blood ranne downe by their bodies, for there found Sir Bors more greater defence in that knight then hee wend for that Sir Priden was a full good knight and hee wounded Sir Bors full euill and hee him againe. But euer this Sir Priden held the stoure as like hard. That perceiued Sir Bors, and suffered him till hee was nigh attaint. And then he ranne vpon him more. And the other went backward for dread of death. So in his withdrawing hee fell byright. And Sir Bors drew his helme so strongly that he rent it from his head, and gaue him great strokes with the flat of his sword vpon the visage, and bad him to yield him, or else he should slay him. When hee cried him
mercy,

and his Knights of the round Table.

and said. Forge knight for gods loue slay me not, and shall ensure thee neuer more to warre against thy Lady, but alway shall bee toward her. And Sir Bors let him bee. When the Lady fled with all her knights.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Now the Lady was restored vnto her lands by the battaile of Sir Bors, and of his departing, and how hee met Sir Lionell taken and beaten with thornes and also of a maide which should haue bene deuoured.

So then came Sir Bors vnto all that held lands of his Lady, and said that he should destroy them but if they did such seruice vnto her as belonged to her lands. So they did their homage, and they that would not were chased out of their land. When it befell that young Lady come to her estate againe by the mightie prowesse of Sir Bors de ganis. So when all the country was set in peace, then Sir Bors took his leaue and departed, and shee thanked him greatly, and would haue giuen him great riches, but he refused it. When hee rode all that day till night & came vnto an herborow vnto a lady which knew him well enough, and made of him great ioy. And on the morrow as soone as the day appeared Sir Bors departed from thence, and rode into a forest vnto the houre of midday. And there befell him a meruailous aduenture. So hee met at the departing of the wayes two knights that led Sir Lionell his brother all naked bound vpon a strong hackney and his hands bound before him; & euery each of them held in his hand thornes where with they went beating him so sore that the blood trailed downe in more then an hundred places of his body so that hee was all bloody before & behind. But hee said neuer a word, as hee which was great of heart, he suffered all that they did to him, a though hee had felt none angnish. Anon Sir Bors dressed him for to rescue him that was his brother. And so hee looked on the other side of him, and saw a knight which brought a faire gentlewoman, and would haue set her in the thickest place of the forest, for to haue bene the more surer out of the way from them

them that sought him. And she which was no thing assured cried with an high voice. Saint Mary succour your maide. And anon she espied whereas Sir Bors de Ganis came riding. And when hee came nigh her, shee denied that he was a knight of the round table, wherefore she hoped to haue had some comfort. And then she coniuered him by the faith that hee ought to him in whose seruice yee are entred, and for the faith that yee owe to the high order of knighthood, and for the noble King Arthurs sake, which as I suppose made you a knight, that thou helpe me, and suffer me not to be shamed of this knight. When Sir Bors heard her say thus, he had much sorrow that hee wist not what to doe. For if I let my brother be in aduenture, hee must be slaine, and that would I not for all the earth. And if I helpe not the maide, shee is shamed for euer, and also she leaseth her virginittie, the which shee shall neuer get againe. When list hee by his eyes and said al weeping. Fairest Maist Lord Iesu Christ whose liege-man I am, keepe Sir Lionell my brother that none of these knights sleigh him. And for pittie of you and of your Ladies sake I shall succour this maide.

CHAP. LXXIIII.

How Sir Bors left to rescue his brother and went to rescue the damosell. And how it was told that Sir Lionell was dead.

AND so hee dressed him vnto the knight the which led the gentlewoman, and then he cried to him. Sir knight lay your hand off that maide, or else yee be but dead. And then the knight set downe the maide, and was all armed at all partes, saue hee lacked his speare, then hee dressed his shield and drew out his sword. And Sir Bors smote him so hard, that it went through his shield and habergeon on the left shoulder, and through great strength Sir Bors beate him downe to the earth. And at the pulling out of Sir Bors speare, there hee sloued. When came Sir Bors to the maide and said. How seemeth it you of this knight, yee be deliuered of him at this time. Now said she, I pray you leade mee there as this knight had mee. I shall gladly doe it said Sir Bors, and tooke the horse of the wounded

knights set the gentlewoman vpon him, and brought her there as shee desired to be. Sir knight said shee, haue better speed then yee wend. For if I had lost my maidenhead, faine hundred I should haue died for it. What knight was he that had you in the forest, said Sir Bors. By my faith said she, he is my cousin, so that I not with what engin the fiend enchaufed him, and yesterday he tooke me from my father priuely. For I nor none of my fathers men mistrusted him. And if he had taken from mee my maidenhead, he should haue died for the sinne, and his body buried and dishonoured for euer. As shee stood thus talking with him, there came twelue knights seeking after her. And when shee told them all how Sir Bors had deliuered her. When they had they great ioy, and besought him to come to her father a great Lord, and he should be right welcome. Truly said Sir Bors that may not be at this time. For I haue a great aduenture to doe in this countrey. So hee commended them to God and departed. So then Sir Bors rode after Sir Lionell his brother by the trace of their horses. Thus hee rode seeking a great while. When hee overtooke a man which was clothed in a religious clothing, & rode vpon a strong blacke horse, blacker then a bear, and said Sir knight what seeke ye. Sir said Sir Bors, I seeke my brother that I saw within a little space agoe beaten with two knights. Ah sir Bors discomfozt you not nor fall into any vaine hope, for I shall tell you tidings such as they be, truly he is dead. When hee shewed him a new slaine body lying in a thicke bush, and it seemed him well that it was the body of Sir Lionell. And then hee made such sorrow that hee fell to the ground in a swoone, and lay there a great while. And when hee came to himselfe againe hee said. Faire brother sithence the company of you and mee is departed, shall I neuer haue ioy at my heart, and now he that I haue taken vnto my master he be my helpe. And when hee had said thus, hee tooke vp the body in his armes and put it vpon the arse of the saddle. And then hee rode vnto the man. Canst thou tell me the way vnto some chappell, where that I may bury this body. Come on said the man, here is one fast by. And so long they rode till they saw a faire Towre, and before it there seemed an old feeble Chappell. And then

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

then they alighted both, and put into a Tombe of marble.

CHAP. LXXV.

How Sir Bors told his dreame which hee had dreamed, vnto a priest, and of the good counsaile that the priest gaue him.

NOW leaue we him here said the good man, and goe we vnto harbour, till to morrow, and then will we come hither againe to doe him seruice. Sir said sir Bors be ye a priest. *Yea* forsooth said he. Then I pray you said sir Bors, that ye will tell me a dreame which befell mee the last night. Say on said hee. Then sir Bors began to tell him of the great bird in the forrest. And after told him of his birds one white, another blacke, and of the rotten tree, and of the white flowers. Sir said the priest I shall tell you a part now, and the other deale to morrow. The white foule betokeneth a gentlewoman faire and rich, which loued thee as paramour, and hath loued thee long. And if thou warne her loue, she shall goe die anon. If thou haue no pittie on her, that signifieth the great bird the which shall make thee for to warne her. Now for no feare nor for no dread that thou hast of God, thou shalt not warne her, but thou wouldest not doe it for to bee holden chaste, for to conquer the praise and the vaine glozy of the world, for that shall befall thee now if thou warne her, that Sir Launcelot the good knight thy cosin shall die. And therefore men shall now say that thou art a mandevyl, both of thy brother sir Lionell and of thy cosin Sir Launcelot du lake, the which thou mightest haue saued and rescued full easily but thou wienest to rescue a maide which pertaineth no thing to thee. Now looke thou whether it had bene greater harme of thy brothers death, or else to haue suffered her for to haue lost her maidenhead. When he asked him, hast thou heard the tokens of thy dreame the which I haue told to thee. *Yea* forsooth said sir Bors, all your exposition and declaration of my dreame I haue well vnderstood and heard. When said the man in the black cloathing, then is it in my default if sir Launcelot thy cosin die. Sir said Sir Bors, that were me loth. For wit ye well there is nothing in the world but I had leauer doe it then

to

and his Knights of the round Table:

As my Lord sir Launcelot to die in my default. Choose yee betwix the one or the other said the good man. And then he led sir Bors into an high Tower. And there hee found knights and ladies. Those ladies said hee was welcome. And so they vnto armed him, and when he was in his doublet, men brought him a mantell furred with ermines, and put it about him. And then they made him good cheare, that he had forgotten all his sorrow and anguish, and only set his heart in these delights and daunces, and tooke no more thought for his brother sir Lionell, neither for sir Launcelot his cosin. And anon came out of a chamber to him the fairest Lady that euer hee saw, and more richer than he then euer he saw Quene Gueneuer or any other Lady of estate. Now sir Bors said they, here is the Lady to whom we owe our seruice, and I trow she be the richest Lady and the fairest of the world, and the Lady which loueth you best aboue all other knights, for shee will haue no knight but you. And when he vnderstood that language, he was all abashed, not for that shee saluted him and hee her. And then they sat downe together and spake of many things, in so much that she besought him to be her loue, for she had loued him aboue all earthly men, and she should make him richer then euer was man of his age. When sir Bors vnderstood her words hee was right euill at ease, which in no manner would not breake his chastitie, so hee wist not how to answer her.

CHAP. LXXVI.

How the Deuill in a womans likenesse would haue had Sir Bors to haue layen by her, and how by Gods grace he escaped.

Ablas said shee, Sir Bors shall ye not doe my will. *Yea* dame said Sir Bors, there is no Lady in the world whose will I will fulfill as of this thing, for my brother lieth dead which was late aaine. Ah Sir Bors said shee, I haue loued you for the great beautie I haue seen in you, & great the hardinesse I haue heard of you, that needs ye must lye by me this night, and therefore I pray you graunt it mee. Truly said Sir Bors I shall not doe it in no manner of wise. When she made such sorrow

row

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

row as though she would haue died. Well Sir Bors said shee, vnto this haue ye brought me nigh to mine end. And therewith shee tooke him by the hand, and bad him behold her, and yee shall see how I shall die for your loue. Ah said Sir Bors, that shall I neuer see. When shee departed and went vp into a high battilment, and led with her twelue gentlewomen. And when they were aboue one of the woman cried and said. Ah sir Bors gentle knight haue mercy on vs all, and suffer my Lady to haue her will, and if yee doe not, wee must suffer death with our Lady, for to fall downe from this high Tower, and if yee suffer vs to die for so little a thing, all Ladies and gentlewomen will say of you dishonour. When Sir Bors looked upward and they seemed all Ladies of great estate and riches and well besene. When had he of them great pittie. Not for that he was counsailed within himselfe, that leuer then he had lost his soule they had all lost their soules. And so with that they fell downe all at once vnto the earth. And when hee saw that sodaine chance, he was right sore abashed, and had thereof right great mervaille. And with that he blessed his body and his visage, and anon he heard a full great noyse and a great crie, as though all the fendes of hell had bene about him. And therewith hee saw neither Tower nor Lady nor gentlewomen, nor no chappell where he did bring his brother vnto. When held hee vp both his hands to heauen and said. Faire father God, I am right grievously escaped. And then hee tooke his armes and his horse and rode forth his way. When hee heard a clocke smite on his right hand and thither hee came to an abbey on his right hand closed with high walls and there hee was let in. When they supposed that was one of the quest of the Sanggreall. So they led him in to a chamber and unarmed him. Sir said sir Bors if that there bee any holy man in this house, I pray you let me speake with him. When one of them led him vnto the abbot which was in a chappell. And then sir Bors saluted him, and hee him againe. Sir Bors, I am a knight arraunt, and told him all the aduenture that he had scene. Sir knight said the abbot, I wot not what yee bee, for I wend neuer that a knight of your age might haue bene so strong in the grace of our Lord Iesu Christ

not

and his Knights of the round Table.

for then yee shall goe vnto your rest, for I will not count you this day it is to late, and to morrow I shall count you as I can.

CHAP. LXXVII.

The holy communication of an abbot vnto Sir Bors, and how the abbot counsailed him.

And that night was Sir Bors richly serued. And on the morrow early he heard masse, and then the abbot came to him and bad him good morrow, and Sir Bors to him againe. Then hee told him that hee was a fellow of the quest of the Sanggreall, and how hee had charge of an holy man to eat of the water. When our Lord Iesu Christ shewed him vnto you the token of a soule that suffered great anguish for vs with hee put vpon the crosse and bled his heart blood for mankind. This was the token and the liknesse of the Sanggreall that was shed before you, for the blood that the great soule bled reuinte the charkins from death to life, and by the bare tree is beate the world, which is naked and without fruit but if it be of our Lord Iesu Christ. Also the Lady for whom yee sought for, and King Aniause which was Lord there before, becometh Iesu Christ, which is King of the world. And that yee fought with the champion for the Lady, this it doth bee token. When yee take the battaile for the Lady, by her yee shall vnderstand the new law of Iesu Christ and holy Church. And by the other law wee shall vnderstand the old law and the fend, which shall day warreth against the holy Church, for yee did the battaile with right. For yee bee Iesu Christs knights, therfore yee ought to bee defenders of the holy Church. And by the blacke battaile yee might vnderstand the holy Church, which saith I am blacke but shee is right faire and beautifull. And by the white battaile that yee saw might men vnderstand Sathan the fend of the world. And I shall tell you, the swanne is white without, and blacke within. It is hypocritie which is without yealow or pale, and seemeth without in manner, and condition the very servants of Iesu Christ, but they be without an horrible filth

D

and

The Historie of Prince Arthur

and sinne and begile the world full euill. And when the seene appeared to thee in the liknesse of a man of religion and blamed thee that thou left thy brother for a Lady, so led thee where thou seemed thy brother was slaine, but hee is yeton liue, and all was for to put thee in errour, and bring thee vnto vaine hope and leachery, for hee knew that thou were tender hearted, and all was for thou shouldest not find the blessed aduenture of the Sancgreall. And the third soule betokeneth the strong battaile against the faire Ladies which were all diuels. Also the drie tree and the white lilly the dry tree betokeneth thy brother Sir Lionell, which is dry with ut vertue, and therefore many men ought to call him the rotten tree and the worme eaten tree, for he is a murtherer and doth contrary to the order of knight hood. And the two white floures signifie two maidens, thee one is a knight which was wounded the other day, and the other is the gentlewoman, which yee rescued, and why the other floure drew nigh the other, that was the knight which would haue defouled her, and himselfe both. And Sir Bors, yee had bene a great fool, and in great perill to haue seene those two floures perish for to succour the rotten tree, for and they had sinned together, they had bene damned, and for that yee rescued them both, men might call you a very knight and seruant of Iesu Christ.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

How Sir Bors met with his brother Sir Lionell. And How Sir Lionell would haue slaine Sir Bors his brother.

Then went Sir Bors from thence and commended the abbot vnto God, and then hee rode all that day and harboured with an old Lady. And on the morrow hee rode vnto the castle in a vale, and there he met with a yeoman going a great pace toward a forrest. Tell mee said Sir Bors, canst thou tell mee of any aduenture. Sir said he, here shall bee vnder this castle a great and a meruailous turneyment. Of what folkes shall it bee said Sir Bors. The earle of Blaines shall be on the one part, and the Ladies nephew of Beruin on the other part. When

and his Knights of the round Table.

Then Sir Bors thought to bee there if hee might meet with his brother Sir Lionel, or any of his fellowship which were in the forrest if the Sancgreall. And then he turned to an hermitage which was in the entry of the forrest. And when hee was come thither, he found there Sir Lionell his brother which sat all armed at the entrie of the chappell doore, for to abide there harboured till vpon the morrow that the turneyment should bee. And when Sir Bors saw him, hee had great ioy of him, that it was meruaile to tell of his great ioy. And then hee alighted off his horse and said. Faire brother when came yee hither, anon as Sir Lionell saw him, hee said. Ah Sir Bors, yee may not make none ioy, but as for you I might haue bene slaine, when yee saw two knights leading mee away beating mee, yee left me for to succour a gentlewoman, and suffred me in perill of death, for neuer before nor did no brother to an other so great an vntruth. As for that misdoede, I now ensuere you but death, for yee haue right well deserued it, therefore keepe thee from hence forth, and that shall yee find as soone as I am armed. When Sir Bors understood his brothers wrath, hee knelted downe to the earth and cried him mercy, holding vp both his hands, and prayed him to forgiue him his euill will. Nay said Sir Lionell, that shall neuer bee and I may haue the higher hand, that I make a vow to God thou shalt haue but death for it, for it were pittie yee liued any longer. Right so hee went and toke his harnais and mounted vpon his horse and came afoze him and said, Sir Bors keepe thee from mee for I shall doe to thee as I should doe to a felon or a traitour, for thou art the vntruest knight that ever came out of so worthie a house as was king Bors de Ganis, which was our father, therefore start vpon thy horse, and so shalt thou bee most at thine aduantage, and but if thou doe so, I will runne vpon thee there, as thou standest on foot, and so the shame shall bee mine, and the harme thine but of that sinne nor recke I not, When Sir Bors saw that hee must fight with his brother or else to die, hee wist not what to doe. When his heart counsailed him not so to doe, in as much as Sir Lionell was his brother or hee, wherefore he ought to beare him reuerence. Yet knelted hee downe afoze Sir Lionell's horse feet and said. Faire brother

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

brother haue mercy vpon me and slep me not, and haue in remembrance the great loue which ought to bee betwene vs twaine. What Sir Bors said, Sir Lionell cared not, for the feend had brought him in such a will that hee should slep him. When Sir Lionell saw hee would none otherwise doe, and that hee would not rise to giue him battaile, hee rushed ouer him, so that hee smote Sir Bors with his horse fete vppward to the earth, and hurt him soze that hee sloued of distresse, the which felt in himselfe to haue died without confession. So when Sir Lionell saw this, hee alight from his horse for to haue smitten off his head, and so hee took him by the helme, and would haue rent it from his head. Then came the hermit running vnto him, which was a good man and of great age, and well had hee heard all the words that were betweene them both, and so fell downe vpon him.

CHAP. LXXIX.

How Sir *Colgreuance* fought against Sir *Lionell* for to saue Sir *Bors*, and how the hermit was slaine.

Then said hee vnto Sir Lionell. Ah gentle Knight haue mercy on me and on thy brother, for if thou slep him thou shalt be dead in sinne and that were sorrowfull, for he is one of the worthiest knights of the world, and one of the best conditioned. Now so God me helpe said Sir Lionell Sir priest, but if you flee from him I shall slep you and hee shall neuer the sooner bee quit. Certainly said the good man I had leauer that yee slep me then him, for of my death shall not bee great harme, not halfe so much as of his. Well said Sir Lionell, I am agreed, and set his hand to his sword, and smote him so hard that his head went backward. Not for then hee drained him not of his euill will, but took his brother by the helme and unlaced it to haue stricken off his head, and had slaine him without faile. But it hapned that Sir Colgreuance a knight of the Round Table came at that time thither as it was our Lord's will. And when hee saw the good man slaine, hee meruailed much what it might bee. And then he beheld how Sir Lionell would haue

and his Knights of the round Table.

slaine his brother, and knew Sir Bors, which hee loued right well. When start hee downe and took Sir Lionell by the shoulders and drew him strongly back from Sir Bors and said Sir Lionell will yee slep your brother, one of the worthiest knights of the world, that ought no good man to suffer. Why said Sir Lionell, will ye let mee, therefore if ye entermit you in this I shall slep you and him after. Why said Sir Colgreuance, is this sooth that yee will slep him. Slep him I will said hee, who saith the contrary, for he hath done so much against me that he hath well deserued it. And so ranne vpon him, and would haue smitten him through the head. And Sir Colgreuance ranne betweene them and said. And yee be so hardy to doe so any more, we two shall meddle together. When Sir Lionell vnderstood his words, hee put his shield afore him, and asked him what he was. And he told him Colgreuance, one of his fellows. Then Sir Lionell desired him, and gaue him a great stroke through the helme, then hee drew his sword, for hee was a passing good knight, and defended him right manfully. So long endured the battaile, that Sir Bors arose vp all anguillously and beheld Sir Colgreuance the good knight fight with his brother for his quarrell. When was hee full sozie and heauie, and thought if that Sir Colgreuance slep him that was his brother hee should neuer haue joy, and if his brother slew Sir Colgreuance, the shame should euer be his. When would he haue risen for to haue departed them, but he had not so much might to stand on his fete. So he abode so long that Sir Colgreuance had the worse, for Sir Lionell was of great chivalrie and right hardy, and had pearced his halberke and the helme, so that hee abode but death, for hee had lost so much of his blood that it was maruaile that hee might stand vpright. When hee beheld Sir Bors which late dressing him vppward and said. Ah Sir Bors, why come ye not to call mee out of perrill of death, wherein I haue put mee to succour you, which were right now nigh the death. Certainly said Sir Lionell that shall not auaille you, for none of you shall be others warrant, but that yee shall die both of my hands. When Sir Bors heard that hee arose and put on his helme. Then perceived he first the hermit priest which was there

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

there slaine, then made hee a meruailous sorow vpon him.

CHAP. LXXX.

How Sir Lionell slew Sir Colgreuance, and how after hee would haue slaine his brother Sir Bors.

Then oft cried Sir Colgreuance vpon Sir Bors and said. Why will yee let mee die for your sake if it please you, that I die for you, the death will please mee better to saue a worthy man. With that Sir Lionell smote off his helme, when Sir Colgreuance saw that hee might not escape then hee said. Faire Lord Iesu Christ of that I haue misdone haue mercy vpon my soule, for such sorow that my heart suffereth for goodnesse for almes-deedes that I would haue done, be to mee a legement of penance vnto my soules health. At these words Sir Lionell smote him so sore that he beare him to the earth: so when he had slaine Sir Colgreuance he ranne vpon his brother as a feendly man, and gaue him such a stroke that hee made him steepe. And hee that was full of humilite prayed him for Gods sake to leaue this battaile, for and it befall faire brother that I slew you, or yee me. we should be dead of that sinne. Neuer God helpe if I haue on thee mercy, if I may haue the better said Sir Lionell. Then Sir Bors drew his sword all wasping and said.

Faire brother God knoweth mine entent. Ah faire brother, yee haue done full euill to day to sleigh such an holy priest the which neuer trespassed against you. Also yee haue slaine a gentle knight and one of our fellows, and well ye wot that I am not greatly ascard of you, but I dread the wrath of God, and this is an unkindly warre, therefore Lord God I beseech thee shew some miracle vpon vs. For now God haue mercy vpon mee though I defend my life against my brother. With that Sir Bors lifted vp his sword and would haue stricken his brother.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP LXXXI.

How a voice was heard that charged Sir Bors not to touch him, and of a clond that came betweene them.

Then heard hee a voice that said. Flee Sir Bors and touch him not, or else thou shalt sleigh him. Right so alighted a clond betweene them in the likenesse of a fire and a meruailous flame that both their shields bent. When were they sore afraid, so that they fell both to the earth, and lay there a great while in a sone. And when they came to themselves, Sir Bors saw that his brother had no harme, then hee held vp his hands, for hee dread sore that God had taken vengeance vpon him. With that he heard a voice say. Sir Bors goe hence and beare thy brother no longer fellowship, but take thy way anon right to the sea, for Sir Perciuaile abideth there. Then hee said to his brother. Brother forgiue me for Gods loue all that I haue trespassed against you. When he answered. God forgiue it thee and I doe. So Sir Bors departed from him, and rode the next way to the sea. And at the last by fortune he came to an abbey which was nigh the sea. That night Sir Bors rested him there. And in his sleepe there came a voice vnto him and bad him go to the sea. he start vp and made the signe of the crosse on his forehead, and tooke his harneis and made ready his horse and mounted vpon him, and at a broken well he rode out. And hee rode so long till that he came to the sea. And vpon the strand hee found a ship couered all with whit white samite, and there he alighted and tooke him vnto Iesu Christ. and as soone as hee entred into the ship, the shippe departed into the sea, and went so fast that him seemed the ship went flying. But it was anon so darke, that he might not see nor know no man. And so he slept till it was day. When he awaked, and saw in the midst of the ship a knight all armed saue his helme. And then hee knew that it was Sir Perciuaile de ganis, and then hee made of him right great ioy. But Sir Perciuaile was all abashed of him, and asked him what hee was. Ah faire sir said Sir Bors, doe yee not know me. Certainly said he, I meruaile how he came hither, but

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

but if our Lord brought you hither himselfe. Then sir Bors smiled and did off his helme. And then Sir Perciuale knew him, and either made of other great ioy that it was maruaile to heare. When sir Bors told him how that he came into the ship, and by whose admonishment. And either told other of their temptations as yee haue heard before. So went they downward into the sea, one while backward, and another while forward, and each comforting other, and oft were in their prayers. When said Sir Perciuale, wee lacke nothing now but the good knight Sir Galahad.

CHAP. LXXXII.

How Sir Galahad fought at a turnement, and how he was known of Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector de maris

AS saith the historie that when sir Galahad had rescued sir Perciuale from the twentie knights hee rode into a vast forrest, wherein he rode many tournies, and found there many adventures, which he brought to an end. When hee took his way to the sea on a day. And it befell that he passed by a castle where was a Turnement. But they without had done so much that they within were put to the worse, yet they within were knights good enough. And when Sir Galahad saw that those within were at so great a mischief, that men slew them at the entry of the Castle, then he thought to helpe them, and put forth his speare, and smote the first that hee fell to the earth, and the speare brake all to peeces. Then he drew his sword, and smote there as they were thickest, and so hee did there wonderfull deedes of armes, that they all meruailed thereof. When it happened that Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector de maris were with the knights without, but when he espied the white shield with the red Crosse, the one said to the other. Wonder is the good knight Sir Galahad. Now he should be a great foole, that would mate with him to fight. So by adventure he came by sir Gawaine, and he smote him so hard that he cleaue his helme, and the Crosse of the iron vnto his head, so that Sir Gawaine fell to the earth. But the stroke was great, that it flanted downe to the earth.

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and carued the horse shoulder in two. When Sir Ector saw Sir Gawaine downe, he drew him aside, and thought it no wise to abide him and also for naturall lone, because hee was his uncle. Thus through his great hardinesse hee beate backe all the knights without. And then they within came out and chased them all about. But when Sir Galahad saw that they would none turne againe, hee stole away priuely, so that no man wist where he became. Now by my head said Sir Gawaine vnto Sir Ector, the words are true that were said of sir Lancelot du lake, that the sword which stuck in the stone should give me such a buffet that I would not haue it for the best castle that is in the world, and certainly now it is proued true, for neuer before had I such a stroke of a mans hand. Sir said Sir Ector mee seemeth your quest is done, And yours is not said Sir Gawaine, but mine is done, I shall seeke no further. When Sir Gawaine was borne into a Castle and vnarmed him, and put him in a rich bed. And a leach found that hee might liue, and hee whole within a moneth. Thus Sir Gawaine and Sir Ector abode together for Sir Ector would not away till Sir Gawaine were whole. And the good knight Sir Galahad rode long till that he came that night to the Castle of Carboneke. And it befell him that he was benighted in an hermitage. And the goodman was full glad when he saw that he was a knight errant. So when they were at rest, there came a gentlewoman knocking at the doore, and called Sir Galahad And so the goodman came to the doore to wit what shee would. When shee called the hermite Sir Vlsin, I am a gentlewoman that would make with the knight that is with you. When the goodman asked Sir Galahad, and bad him arise and speake with a gentlewoman which seemeth hath great need of you. When sir Galahad went to her, and asked her shee would. Sir Galahad said to her, I will that yee arme you, and mount vpon your horse and follow me, for I wil shew you within these three dayes the highest adventure that euer any knight saw. Anon Sir Galahad armed him, and took his horse and commended him to God, and the gentlewoman goe and hee would follow thereas shee

D

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. LXXXIII.

How Sir Galahad rode with a Damosell, and came into a shippe where as Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in.

So the damosell rode as fast as her palfrey might gallop, till that shee came to the sea that was called Collibe. And at night they came unto a Castle in a balley that was closed with running water, and with high and strong wals. And shee entered into the Castle with sir Galahad, and there had hee great chere, for the Lady of that castle was the damosels Lady. So when he was vnarmed, the damosell said to her Lady. O Adam shall we abide here this night. Pay said shee but till he hath slept and slept a little. So hee ate and slept a while till that the maide called him, and armed him by torch-light. And when the maide and hee were both horsed, the Lady toke sir Galahad a faire shield and a rich. And so they departed from the castle, and rode till they came the sea-side, and there they found the ship where Sir Bors and Sir Percivale were in, the which cried on the ship-board. Sir Galahad ye be welcome, wee haue abiden you long. And when he heard them, he asked them what they were. Sir said the damosell, leaue your horse here, and I shall leaue mine. And toke their saddles and their bridles with them and made a crosse on them, and so entered into the ship. And the two knights both receiued him with great ioy, and euery each knew other. And so the wind arose & droue them through the sea unto a meruailous place, and within a while it drowned. When Sir Galahad toke off his helme and his sword and asked of his fellows from whence the faire ship came. Truly said they yee wat as well as wee, but of gods grace. And then they told euery each to other of their adventures, and of their great temptation. Truly said Sir Galahad yee are much bounden to God, for yee haue escaped great adventures. And had not the gentlewoman bene, I had not come hither. For as for you. I would neuer to haue found you, in this strange countries. Ah Sir Galahad said sir Bors, if that that sir Launcelot your father were here, then were we well at ease, for then me seemeth we should

and his Knights of the round Table.

lacked nothing. What may not be said Sir Galahad, but please our Lord. And by then the ship went from the land of Logris, and by adventure it arrived by betwene two rokes being great and meruailous, but there they might not land, for there was a swalow of the sea, saue there was an other ship upon it they might goe without danger. So we thither said a gentlewoman, and there shall wee see adventures, for so it is our Lord will. And when they came thither, they found the ship rich enough, but they found neither man nor woman there, but they found in the end of the ship two faire letters written, which said a dreaddfull word and a meruailous. Thou man which shall enter into this ship, beware thou be in stedfast belief for I am faith, and therefore beware how thou entrest, and thou faile I shall not helpe thee. Then said the gentlewoman, wot ye what I am. Certainly said he, not to my wit. And shee said well said thee I am thy sister, that am daughter to King Pellinore, and therefore wit yee well that yee are the man in the world that I most one. And if yee be not in perfect belief of Iesu Crist, and enter not to no manner of wise for thou shouldst perish in the ship. for it is so perfect it will suffer no sinne in it. And when Sir Percivale knew that she was his sister, he was inwardly glad and said. Faire sister I shall enter therein, for if I be a misse creature or an vntrue knight, then shall I perish.

CHAP. LXXXIIII.

How Sir Galahad entered into the ship, and of a faire bed that was therein, with other meruailous things and of a sword.

In the meane while Sir Galahad blessed him and entered therein, and then next the gentlewoman, and then sir Bors and sir Percivale. And when they were therein, they found it so meruailous faire and rich, that they had great meruaille thereof. And in the midst of the ship was a faire bed, and sir Galahad went thereto, and found there a crowne of silke, and in the case was a sword faire and rich, and it was drawne out of the scabbard halfe a foote and more, and the sword was of

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

diuers fashions, and the pummell was of stone, and there was in it all manner of coulours that any man might find, and euery one of the coulours had diuers vertues, & the scales of the hilt were of two ribs of diuers beasts. The one beast was a serpent which was conuersant in Calidone, and is caled the serpent of the fœnd. And the bone of him is of such a vertue, that there is no hand that handleth it, shall neuer be weary or hurt. And the other beast is a fish, which is not right great, and haunteth the fflow of Eufrates. And that fish is called Gertanar. And his bones be of such a manner of kind that who that handleth them he shall haue so much courage that he shall neuer be weary, and he shall not thinke on ioy nor sorrow that he hath had, but only the thing which hee beholdeth before him. And as for this sword there shall neuer no man begripe it the handle but one, but he shall passe all other. In the name of God said Sir Perciual, I shall assay to handle it. So he set his hand to the sword, but he might not begripe it. By my faith said hee, now haue I failed. Sir Bors set his hand to it and failed. When Sir Galahad beheld the sword and saw the letters as red as blood that said. Let see who shall assay to draw me out of my scabbard but if he bee moze hardier then other, and who that draweth mee, wit ye well that he shall neuer faile of shame of his body, or be wounded unto the death. By my faith said Sir Galahad, I would draw this sword out of the scabbard. but the offending is so great that I shall not set my hand thereto. Now Sir said the gentlewoman, wit yee well that the drawing of this sword is warned unto all men saue unto you. Also this ship arrived in the relme of Logris, and that time was deadly warre betwene King Libor, which was father unto the maimed King, King Hurlame which was a Sarasin. But then was he newly christened, so that men held him after ward one of the wittiest men of the world.

And so upon a day it befell that King Labor and King Hurlame assembled their folke upon the sea where this shippe was arrived, and there King Hurlame was disarmed and all his men slaine, and hee was asfear'd to be dead, and fled to his ship and there hee found his sword, and drew it and came out and found

and his Knights of the round Table.

King Labor, the man in the world of all Christendome was then then the greatest faith. And when King Labor saw King Labor, hee drew his sword and smote him in the helme so hard, that hee claue him and his horse to the with the first stroke of his sword. And so was in the relme of Logris. And so befell great pestilence and great dearth to both realmes. For then increased come noz grass, noz fruite, noz in the water was no fish, wherefore they call it the lands of the two marches, the wast land for the many strokes. And when King Hurlame saw that this sword serving he returned againe to fetch the scabbard. And so came to the ship, and entred and put the sword into the scabbard: and as soone as hee had done so, hee fell downe dead before the ship. Thus was the sword proued that none that drew it but hee should be dead or maimed. So lay he there till a maide came into the ship and cast him out, for there was no man so hardy of the world to enter into that ship for the defence.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the meruailes of the sword and of the scabbard.

So then beheld they the scabbard, which seemed to be of a serpents skinne, and thereon were letters of gold and silver. And the girdell was but poorly to account, and not able to haue such a rich sword, and the letters said. Hee that shall draw mee, ought to bee moze hardier then any other if that hee draw me as truely as I ought to be borne. For the body of him which I ought to hang by, hee shall not be shamed in no place while hee is girded with this girdle, nor neuer none shall be so bold to doe away this girdle for it ought not to bee done alway by the hands of a maide, and that she be a Kings daughter or a Queenes and she must bee a maide all the dayes of her life both in will and in dede, and if shee brake her virginittie, she shall die the most villainous death that euer did any woman. Sir said Sir Perciual, turne this sword, that wee may see what is on the other side, & it was as red as blood with blacke letters as by cole which said, he that shall praise me most, most

shall he find me to blame at a great necessitie, and to whom I shall be most debonaire, shall I be most felow, and that shall be at one time. Faire brother said he unto Sir Percivale, it be fell about fortye yeare after the passion of our Lord Iesu Christ, that Nacien the brother in law of King Mordrains was borne into a towne more then foure daies iourney from his countrey by the commandement of our Lord into an Ile, in the parts of the west, that men call the Ile of Turnance. So it befell that hee found this ship at the entre of a roch, and therin found hee this bed, and the sword as we haue heard now, not for then hee had not so much hardinesse to drawe it. And ther hee dwelled an eight dayes, and at the ninth day there fell a great wind that departed him out of the Ile, and brought him to an other Ile by a roch and there hee found the greatest giaunt that ever man saw. Therewith came that horrible giaunt for to slay him. And then hee looked about him and might not die, and hee had nothing for to defend him with. So he ranne to his sword and when he saw it naked, hee praised it much, and then hee shooke it, and therewith he bracke it in the middes. Ah said Nacien, the thing that I most praised, ought I now most to blace. And therewith hee threw the pieces of the sword over this bed.

And after hee lepyt over a broke for to fight with the giaunt and slew him. And anon hee entred into the ship againe and then the wind arose and drove him through the sea, that by adventure hee came unto another ship whereas king Mordrains was in, the which had beene tempted full euill with a seed in the port of a perillous roch. And when the one saw the other, they made great ioy the one of the other and either told other of their adventures, and the sword failed him at his most need. When king Mordrains saw the sword he praised it much, but the breaking was not to doe but by wickednesse of thy selfe, for thou art in some sinne. And there hee took the sword and set the peeces together, and they sodred together as faire as euer they were befoze. And there he put the sword in the scaburde laid it downe upon the bed. Then heard they a voice that said. Go out of the ship a little while, and ientre into the other ship for dead yee fall into deadly sinne, for if yee be found in deadly sinne,

ye may not escape but perish. And so they went into the ship. And as Nacien went ouer the board, he was smitten with a sword on the right foote, that hee fell downe noseling to the ships bord, and therewith hee said. O Lord God how am I hurt. And then ther came a voice and said. Take thou that for a gift that thou didst in drawing of this sword, therefore receiuest a wound, for thou wast neuer worthy to handle the sword making mention. In the name of God said Sir Galahad, yee are right wise in these words.

CHAP. LXXX.

King Pelles was smitten through both the thighs because he drew the sword, and of meruailous histories.

It said shee, ther was a king that hight Pelles the maimed king. And while hee might ride, hee supported much christi- dom in the holy Church. So vpon a day he hunted in a wood which lasted unto the sea, and at the last hee lost his horse and his knights, saue onely one. And ther hee and his knight went till that they come toward Ireland, and ther hee found the ship. And when hee saw the letters and vnderstood, yet hee entred for hee was right perfect of his life. But his knight had no hardnesse to enter, and ther found hee this spear, and drew it out as much as yee may see. So therwithall hee was smitten through both his thighs, and neuer with might hee be healed, nor nought shall come to him. Thus said shee. Was not king Pelles maimed for his hardnesse. In the name of God said Sir Galahad. So they went toward the beds to see about it and aboue the beds head there hung two faire spindels which were as white as snow, and there were other that were as red as any blood, and other aboue as greene as any emerand. Of these colours the spindels and of naturall colour within, any without painting. These spindels said the goodfellow were when Adam came to gather fruite, for which Adam and shee were driven out of Paradise, shee took with her the bought on which the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the apple hung. Then perceined shee that the bzaunch was faire and greene, and she remembred her of the losse that came from the tree, then she thought to keepe the bzaunch as long as she might. And because shee had no coffoz to keepe it in, shee put it into the ground. So by the will of our Lord the bzaunch grew to a great tree within a little while, and was as white as any snow, bzaunches, boughs and leaues, that it was a token a maide planted it. But after God came vnto Adam and bad him know his wife fleshly as nature required. So lay Adam with his wife vnder the same tree. And anon the tree that was white became as greene as any grasse, and all that came of it. And in the same time that they medled together there was Abell begotten. Thus was the tree long of greene colour. And so it be fell many dayes after, vnder the same tree. Cain slew his brother Abell, wherof he fell full great meruaile, for anon as Abell had receiued the death vnder the greene tree, it lost the greene colour and became red, and that was in tokning of the blood. And anon all the plants died thereof, but the tree grew and waxed meruallous faire, and it was the fairest tree and the most delectable that any man might behold, and so died the plants that grew out of it before the time that Abell was slaine vnder it. So long endured the tree till that Salomon King Dauids sonne reigned, and held the land after his father. This Salomon was wise and knew the vertues of stones and of trees. And so hee knew the course of the starres, and many other things. This Salomon had an euill wife where throughe hee wond that there had neuer bene no good woman. And so hee displeased them in his vixis. So a voice answered him once. Salomon if heauinesse come vnto a man by a woman, he recke thou neuer. For yet shall there come a woman wherof there shall come greater ioy vnto man an hundred times more then the heauinesse giueth sorrow. And heauinesse. & the same woman shall be bozne of thy linage.

When when King Salomon heard these words, hee held himselfe but a foole, and the truth hee perceiued by old bookes. Also the holy Ghost shewed him the coming of the glorious virgin Mary. When asked he of the voice if it should be in the yerd

and his Knights of the round Table.

his linage. Ray said the voice, but there shall come a man which shall bee of a pure maide and the last of your blood, and he shall be as good a knight as was Duke Ioseph thy brother in law.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Now Salomon tooke Dauids sword by the counsaile of his wife, and of other meruailous matters.

Now haue I certified thee of that thou stoodest in doubt. Then was Salomon glad that there should come such a one of his linage, but euer hee meruailed and studied who that should bee, and what his name might bee: His wife perceiued that hee studied, and thought that shee would know it at some season. And so she awaited her time, and asked of him the cause of his studying. And there he told her all together how the voice was to him. Well said shee, I shall let make a shippe of the best wood and most durable that men may find. So Salomon sent for all the best carpenters of the land. And when they had made the ship, the Lady said vnto Salomon. Sir said shee sithence it is so that this knight ough to passe all other knights of chivalry which haue bene before him, and also that shall come after him. Moreover I shall tell you said shee, ye shall goe into our Lords Temple, whereas is King Dauids sword, your father. the which is the maruailest and the sharpest that euer was taken in any knights hand. Therefore take that, and take ye off the pomell, and thereto make ye a pomell of precious stones, that it bee so subtilly made that no man perceiue it, but that they bee all one. And after make an hilt so meruailously and wonderously that no man may know it, and after make a meruallous sheath. And when you haue made all this, I shall let make a girdle thereto such as shall please you. And this King Salomon let make as she deuised, both the ship and all the remnant. And when the ship was ready in the sea for to saile, the Lady let make a great bed and meruallous rich, and set her upon the beds head couered with silke, and laid the sword at her beds fete. And the girdles were of hempe. And therewith

X

was

was the King angry. Sir wit ye well said shee, that I haue none so high a thing that were woorthy to sustaine so big a sword, and a maide shall bring other knights thereto, but I wot not when it shal be, nor what time. And there she let make a couering to the ship, of cloth that shall neuer rot for no maker of weather. Yet went that Lady and made a carpenter to come to that tree which Abell was slaine vnder. Now said she came we out of this tree as much wood as will make me a spindell. Ah madame said the carpenter this is the tree the which our first mother planted. Doe it said shee, or else I shall destroy thee anon as the carpenter began to worke, there came out drops of blood, and then would he haue left. But shee would not suffer him. And so hee took away as much wood as might well make a spindell, and so shee made him to take as much of the greene tree and of the white tree. And when these three spindels were shapen, shee made them to be fastned on the seeler of the bed. When Salomon saw this he said to his wife. We haue don meruailously, for though all the world were here now, they could not tell wherefore all this was made, but our Lord himselfe, and thou that hast done it wotest not what it shal betoken. Now let it be said shee, for ye shall heare tidings sooner then ye wane.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the wonderfull tale of King Salomon and his wife

That night lay King Salomon befoze the ship with a small fellowship. And when King Salomon was on slepe, him thought there came from heauen a great company of Angels and alighted into the ship, and took water which was brought by an Angell in a vessell of silver, and besprent all the shippe. And after hee came to the sword and drew letters in the hilt. And after went to the ship board and wrote there other letters, which said. Thou man that wilt enter with in me, beware that thou befull within of faith, for I am but faith and beleeue. When King Salomon espied these letters, he was sore abashed so that he durst not enter, and so drew him backe, and anon the ship was shouen into the sea, and it went so fast that he lost the sight

of it within a little while. And then a little voice said, Salomon the last knight of thy linage shall rest in this bed. Then went King Salomon and awake his wife, and told her the adventures of the ship.

Now saith the history, that a great while the three fellows beheld the bed and the three spindles. When they were of natural colours, without any manner of painting. When they list on a cloth which was about the ground, and there they found a rich purse by seeming. And Sir Perciuaile took it, and found therein a writing, and so hee red it, and spake of the manner of the spindels, and of the ship from whence it came. and by whom it was made. Now said Sir Galahad, where shall wee find the gentlewoman that shal make new girdles to the sword. Faire Sir said Sir Perciuailes sister, dismay you not, for by the leaue of God I shall let make a girdell to the sword such one as shall belong thereto. And then shee opened a booke and took out girdles which were seemely wrought with golden threads. And thereupon were set full of precious stones, and a rich buckell of gold. Lo Lords said the gentlewoman, here is a girdell that ought to beset about the sword. And wit ye well that the greatest part of this girdell was made of my haire, the which I loued full well while I was a woman of the world. But as soone as I wist that this adventure was ordained mee, I clipped off my haire and made this girdell in the name of God. We are well found said Sir Bors for truly ye haue put us out of a great paine, wherein we should haue entred nor had your teaching bene. Then went the gentlewoman and set it vp on the girdell of the sword. Now said the three fellows. What is the right name of the sword, and what shall wee call it. Truly said shee, the name of the sword is the sword with the strange girdels and the scabbard mouer of blood. For no man that hath blood in him shall neuer see the one part of the scabbard which was made of the tree of life. When they said vnto Sir Galahad. In the name of Iesu Christ we pray you that ye giue you with this sword, which hath bene so much desired in the realme of Logris. Now let me begin (said Sir Galahad) to gripe this sword for to giue you courage. But wot ye well

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

that it belongeth no more to mee then it doth to you. And then he griped about it with his fingers a great deale. And then he gird him about the middle with the sword. Now recke I not though I die, for now I hold mee the blessed maidens of the world, which hath made thee now the worthiest knight of the world. Faire damosell said Sir Galahad, ye haue done so much that I shall be your knight all the daies of my life. When they went from that ship and went into the other ship. And anon the wind droue them into the sea a great pace, but they had no vitaille. But it hapned that they came on the morrow to a castle that men call Carteloise, that was in the marches of Scotland. And when they had passed the port the gentlewoman said. Lords here bee arriuen, that and they will that yee were of King Arthurs Court, yee should anon bee assaied. Damosell said Sir Galahad he that cast vs out of the rock shall deliuer vs from them.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

How Sir Galahad and his fellowes came vnto a Castle, and how they were fought wihall, and how they slew their enemies, and of other matters.

So it befel as they spake thus there came a squire by them, & asked what they were. And they said they were of King Arthurs Court. As that squire said he. Now by my head said hee, ye are euill arriued. And then returned he againe vnto the chiefe fortreffe. And within a while they heard a horne blow. When a gentlewoman came to them and asked them of whence they were, and they told her. Faire Lords said she, returne againe if ye may for Gods loue, for ye be come to your death. Now said they, we will not turne againe, for hee shall helpe vs in whose seruice wee bee entred. When as they stood thus talking, there came knights well armed, and bad them yeld them, or else they would die. That yelding said they shall be noyous to you. And therewithall they let their horses runne togther. And Sir Percinelle smote the foremost to the earth, and took his horse and mounted vpon him. And in likewise did Sir Galahad. Also Sir Bors rescued another so. For they had no horses in the country, for they

and his Knights of the round Table.

had left their horses when they took their ship in other countries. And so when they were hoised, then they began to set them. And the knights of the castle fled into the strongest fortreffe, & the three knights followed after them into the castle, and so they alighted on foote, and with their swords slew them as they right, and gat them into the Hall. So when they beheld the great multitude of people which they had slaine, they held themselves great sinners. Certainly said Sir Bors, I wene and God had loved them that we should not haue had power to haue slaine them thus, but they haue done so much against our Lord that he will not suffer them to raigne no longer. Say yee not so said Sir Galahad, for if they misdid against God the vengeance is not ours, but to him which hath power thereof. So came there out of a chamber a good man which was a priest, & beare Gods body in a cup. And when he saw the which lay dead in the Hall, he was abashed. And Sir Galahad put off his helme & knelt downe, and so did his two fellowes. Sir said they, haue yee no dread of vs, for we be of the court of King Arthur. When asked the good man how they were slaine so suddenly. And they told it him. Truly said the good man, if yee might liue as long as the world shall endure, nor might yee neuer haue done so great an almes deede as this. Sir said Sir Galahad, I repent me much, in as much as they were christned. Say repent yee not said hee, for they were not christned, and I shall tell you how I wot of this castle. Here was the earle Hernox but one yeare and he had three sennes good knights of armes, and a daughter the fairest gentlewoman that men knew. So those three knights loued their sister so sore that they burnt in loue. And so they lay by her maner for her head. And because she cried to her father, they slew her & took their father and put him in prison, and wounded him nigh to the death. But a cousin of hers rescued him. And then did they great vntruth, for they slew priests and clerkes and made to beate downe chappels, that our Lords seruice might not be leued nor said. And this same day their father sent to me for to bee confessed and houseled. But such shame had neuer man as I had this day with the three brethren. But the earle shall suffer, for hee said that they should no longer endure.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

For three servants of our Lord God should destroy them, and now it is brought to an end. And by this may ye wit that our Lord is not displeased with your deeds. Certainly said Sir Galahad, and it had not pleased our Lord neuer would we haue so many men in so little a while. And then they brought the Carle Hernor out of prison into the midst of the Hall which knew Sir Galahad anon, and yet had he neuer scene him before, but by reuelation of our Lord.

CHAP. XC.

How the three Knights with Sir Perciales sister came into the wast forrest and of an hart and foure Lyons, &c of other things.

Then began he to wepe ful tenderly and said. Long haue I abidden your comming, but for Gods loue hold me in your armes, that my soule may depart out of my body in so good a mans armes as yee be. Gladly said Sir Galahad. And then one said on high that all heard it. Sir Galahad well hast thou auenged mee on Gods enemies. Now behoueth thee to goeto the mained King as soone as thou mayest. For hee shall re- ceive by thee his health, the which had biden so long. And therewith the soule departed from the body. And Sir Galahad made him to be buried as hee ought to be. So departed the three Knights, and Sir Perciales sister with them. And so they came into a wast forrest, and there they saw before them a white hart, which foure Lyons led. When they took them to assent for to follow after, for to know whether they repaired. And so they rode after a great pace, till that they came to a ba- ley, and thereby was an hermitage, whereas a good man dwel- led. And the Hart and the Lyons entred in also. So when they saw all this, they turned vnto the chappell, and saw the good in a religious wood and in the armour of our Lord, for he would sing mass of the holy ghost. And so they entred and heard masse. And at the secrets of that masse, they three saw the Hart be- come a man, the which interuailed them, and set him vpon the alter in a rich siege, and saw the foure Lyons changed, the one to the forme of a man, and the other vnto the forme of a Lyon, and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and the third vnto an eagle, and the fourth was chaunged vnto a lion. Then took they their siege where as the hart sat, and went out through a glasse window, and there was nothing per- ued nor broken. And they heard a voice that said thus. In such a manner entred the sonne of God into the wombe of the vir- gin Mary whose virginity was not perished nor hurt. And when they heard these words, they fell downe to the ground and were astonished. And therewith was a great clearenesse. And when they were come to themselves againe, they went to the good man and praised him that hee would tell them the truth. What thing haue yee scene said hee. And they told him all that they had scene. Ah Lords said hee, yee are welcome, now wote ye the good knight, the which shall bring the Sanc- tuary to an end for yee be they to whome our Lord shall shew great secrets, and well ought our Lord be signified vnto an hart. For the hart when he is old he waxeth young againe into a white skinn. Right so cometh againe our Lord from death to liue, for he lost earthly flesh that was the deadly flesh, which hee had taken in the wombe of the blessed virgin Mary. And for that cause appeared our Lord as a white hart without spot. And the foure that were with him, is to vnderstand the foure euangelists, which set in writing a part of Iesu Christs words that hee did sometime when he was among you an earthly man. For wit yee well that neuer erst nor might no knight vnto the truth for oftentimes of this our Lord shewed him vnto good men and vnto good knights in liknesse of an hart. But I suppose that from hence forth yee shall see him no more. And when they ioyed much and dwelled there all that day. And on the morrow when they had heard masse they departed and com- mended the good man vnto God. And so they came vnto a castle and passed by. So there came a knight armed after and said. Lords hearken what I shall say to you.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. XCI.

How they were desired of a strange custome, the which would not obcy And how they fought and slew many Knights.

This gentlewoman that ye led with you is a maide. Sir said she, a maide I am. Then he took her by the hand and said. By the holy crosse yee shall not escape mee before ye haue yealden the custome of the castle. Let her goe said sir Perciual, yee bee not wise for a maide in what place so euer she cometh, she is free: So in the meane while there came out of the castle a ten or twelue knights armed, and with them came a gentlowoman which held a dish of silver, and then this Gentlewoman must yeald vs the custome of this Castle. Sir said a knight, what maide that passeth hereby shall gine this dishfull of blood of her right arme. Blame haue yee said sir Galahad, that brought by such customes, and so God me saue I eniure you, that of this gentlewoman yee shall faile as long as I liue. So God mee helpe said sir Perciual, I had leauer bee slaine. And I also said sir Bors. By my faith said the knight, then shall yee die, for yee may not endure against vs, though yee were the best knights of the world. When let they runne each to other, And the thre fellows beate the ten knights and then let their hands vnto their swords and beate them downe and slew them. When there came out of the castle well a thre score knights all armed. faire Lords said thre fellows, haue mercy vpon your selfe, and haue not to do with vs. faire Lords said the knights of the castle, wee counsaile you to withdraw you, for yee are the best knights of the world, and therefore doe ye no more, we will let you goe with this harme, but we must needs haue the custome. Certainly said sir Galahad for nought speake yee well said the will ye diee. We bee not comethereto said sir Galahad. Then began they to meddle together. And sir Galahad with the strange girdels drew his sword and smote on the right hand, and on the left hand, and slew whom that would abide him, and did such meruaile that there was none that saw him but that they wend hee had bene none earthly man but a monster. And his two fellows holpe him

and his Knights of the round Table.

passingly well. And so they held their iourney eueryeath till hard till that it was night. Then must they needs be. So there came a good knight and said to the thre fellows. Ye will come in to night and take such harbour as here is, ye shall be right welcome. And we shall eniure you by the faith of our bodies, as we are true knights to leaue you in such estate tomorrow as we find you without any falshood, and as soone as know of the custome, we dare say that ye will accorde thereto. Therefore for Gods loue said the gentlewoman, goe thither and spare not for mee. So we said sir Galahad. And so they entered into the Castle. And when they were alighted, they made of them great ioy. So within a while the thre knights asked the custome of the Castle and wherefore it was: What is said they, we will say you the truth.

CHAP. XCII.

How Sir Perciuals sister bled a dish full of blood for to heale a gentlewoman, whereof she died, and how the body was put into a ship.

There is in this Castle a gentlewoman which wee haue, and this Castle is hers and many other moe. So it be many yeares agoe, there fell vpon her a malady. And when she had layen a great while, she fell to a meuell, and of galeach, she could haue no remedy. But at the last an old man said. And she might haue a dish full of the blood of a maide and cleane virgin, in will and in worke, and a kings daughter, that blood would be her health, and for to annoynt her therewith: And for this thing was this custome made. Now said sir Perciuals sister, faire knights, I see well that this gentlewoman is but dead, but if she haue so much of my blood. Certainly said sir Galahad and if yee blede so much as yee may die. Cruelly said she, and I die for to heale her, then shall I get mee great worship and soule health, and worship vnto my linage. And better is one harme then twaine, and therefore there shall bee no more battails, but to morrow I shall yeald you the custome of the Castle. And then there was great ioy, more then euer there was

was afore. For else had there bene mortall warre on the morrow, notwithstanding the would none other whether they would or not. All that night were the three fellows eased with the best. And on the morrow they heard masse. And Sir Perciales sister bad bring forth the sick Lady. So she was brought fourth before her, which was full euill at ease. Then said she who shall let me bleed. So anon there came one forth to let her bleed, and she bled so much that the dish was full. When she lift vp her hand and blessed her. And then she said vnto the Lady. Madam I am come to my death to make you whole, for Gods loue pray for me. With that she fell in a swoone. Then Sir Galahad Sir Perciales and Sir Bors, start vp to her and lift her vp, and steeched her blood. But she had bled so much, that she might not liue. When when she was awake she said. Faire brother Sir Perciales, I must die for the healing of this Lady, so I require you that ye bury not me in this countre, but as soone as I am dead put me in a boate at the next haven, and let mee goe as aduventure will leade mee. And as soone as ye three come to the Citie of Sarras, there to achieve the holy Grail, ye shall find me vnder a Toure arised, and there bury me in the spirituall place. For I say you so much, there shall Sir Galahad be buried, and ye also in the same place, so when Sir Perciales vnderstood these words, he graunted it her weeping. And then said a voice. Lord and fellows to morrow of prime ye three shall depart from other till the aduventure bring you vnto the maimed King. When asked she her Saviour, and as soone as she had receiued him the soule departed from the body. So the same day was the Lady healed when she was enioyned withall. Then Sir Perciales made a letter of all that she had holpen them as in strange aduentures and put it in her right hand, and so laid her in a barge and couered it with silke. And so the wind arose and droue the barge from the land and all knights beheld it, till it was out of their sight. When they drezel all vnto the Castle. And so forthwith there fell a sudaine tempest of thunder, lightning and raine, as all the earth would haue broken. Soe halfe the Castle turned vpsid-dowe. So it passed euensong or the tempest was ceased, When they saw be-

fore them a knight armed and wounded hard in the body and in the head that said. Oh Lord God succour mee for now it is late. After this knight came an other knight and a dwarfe which cried to him a farre. Stand, yee may not escape. When the wounded knight held vp his hands vnto God that he should relieue him in such tribulation. Truly said Sir Galahad, I shall rescue him for his sake that he calleth vpon. Sir said Sir Bors, I will doe it, for it is not for you, for hee is but one knight. Sir said hee, I graunt. So Sir Bors tooke his horse and carried him to God and rode after to rescue the wounded knight.

CHAP. XCIII.

How Sir Galahad and Sir Perciales found in a Castle many tombs of maidens that had bled to death.

The story saith, that all night Sir Galahad and Sir Perciales were in a chappell in their prayers for to saue Sir Bors. So on the morrow they dressed them in their harness toward the Castle, for to wit what was betide of them therein. And when they came there, they found neither man nor woman but that they were dead by the vengeance of the Lord. With that they heard a voice which said. This vengeance is for blood shedding of maidens. Also they found at the end of the chappell and church-yard, and therein might they see forthie faire tombs. And that place was so faire and so delectable, that it seemed them there had bene no tempest. For there lay the bodies of all the dead maidens which were martyred for the sicke. Also they found the name of eueryeach of them, and of what blood they were come. And were all of kings blood, and twelue of them were knights daughters. When they departed and went into a forrest. Now said Sir Perciales vnto Sir Galahad, we must depart. So pray we our Lord that we may meete together in short time. When tooke they off their helmes and kissed together, and wept at their departing.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XCIII.

How Sir Lancelot entred into the ship, where Sir Percivales sister lay dead. And how he met with Sir Galahad his sonne.

The story saith, that when Sir Lancelot was come to the water of Portsele, as it is rehearsed before, hee was in great perill; and so he laid him downe and slept, and tooke his adventure that God would send him. So when he was a sleepe, there came a vision unto him and said, Lancelot arise vp and take thine armour and enter into the first ship that thou shalt find. And when he had heard these words, he start vp and saw a great clearence about him. And then hee lift vp his hand and blessed him, and so tooke his armour and made him ready. And by adventure hee came by a strand and found a ship the which was without saile and oyes. And as soone as hee was within the ship, there hee felt the most sweetest savour that euer he felt. And hee was fulfilled with all things that hee thought on or desired. When hee said, faire father Iesu Christ I wote not in what ioy I am, for this ioy passeth all earthly ioyes that euer I was in. And so in this ioy he laid him downe on the ship-board and slept till day light. And when hee awoke he found there a faire bed, and therein lying a gentlewoman dead, the which was Sir Percivales sister. And as sir Lancelot beheld her, he espied in her, right hand a writing, the which hee read wherein he found all the adventures as ye haue heard before, and of what lineage shee was come. So with this gentlewoman sir Lancelot was a moneth and more. If ye would aske me how he lived, hee thanked the people of I'ræll with manna in the desert, in likewise fed him. For every day when hee had said his prayers, hee was sustained with the grace of the holy Ghost.

So vpon a night hee went to play him by the waters side, for hee was somewhat weary of the ship, and then hee listned and heard an horse come and one riding vpon him. And when hee came nigh hee seemed a knight, and so hee let him passe, and went there as the ship was. And there hee alighted, and tooke

and his Knights of the round Table.

As saddell and the byrdell and put the horse from him, and went into the ship. And then Sir Lancelot went toward him and said, Sir yee-see welcome. And hee answered and saluted him againe. and asked him his name, for much my heart giueth into you. Truly said hee, my name is sir Lancelot du lake. Sir said, he then be yee welcome, for yee were the beginning in this world. Ah said Sir Lancelot, are yee Sir Galahad? For sooth said hee. And so hee kneeled downe and asked him his blessing and after tooke off his helme and kissed him. And so there was great ioy betweene them, for there is no tongue can tell the ioy that they made either of other, and many friendly word was spoken betweene them, as kind would, the which is no neede here to be rehearsed. And there euery each sheweth of their adventures and meruailes that were befallen them in many iourneys, sith they departed from the court. And when Sir Galahad saw the gentlewoman dead in the bed, hee remember well enough and told great worship of her, and that shee was the best maideliuing. And it was great pittie of her death. But when sir Lancelot heard how the meruailous sword was gotten, and who made it and all the meruailes rehearsed before. Then hee praised sir Galahad his sonne that he would shew him the sword. And so he did, and anon hee kissed the pummell, the hilts and the scabbord. Truly said Sir Lancelot, neuer till now knew I of so high adventures done, and so meruailous and strange. So dwelled sir Lancelot and Sir Galahad within that ship halfe a yere, and serued God daily and nightly with all their power. And oft they arrived in fles farre from folke where as were but wild beasts. And there they found many strange adventures and perillous which they brought to an end. But because those adventures were with wild beasts, and not in the quest of the Sancgreall, therfore the tale maketh here no mention. for it would be long to tell that befell them.

The Mynoris of Prince Arthur

CHAP. XCIV.

How a Knight brought vnto Sir Galahad an horse, and bad him come from his father Sir Launcelot.

So after vpon a munday it be fell that they arrived in the Sedge of a forrest before a crosse of stone. And then saw they a knight armed all in white and was richly habessed, and led in his right hand a white horse. And so hee came to the ship, and saluted the two knights vpon the high Lorde be halfe, and said. Sir Galahad, yee haue bene long enough with your father, come out of the ship and lepe vpon this horse, and ride where the aduentures shall leade thee in the quest of the Sancgreall. When hee went vnto his father and kissed him full curteously and said vnto him. Faire father, I wol not when I shall see you any more, till that I see the body of our Lord Jesu Christ. I pray you said Sir Launcelot, pray you vnto the high father that hee hold mee in his seruice. And so hee took his horse. And there they heard a voyce that said. Thinkis for to doe well, for the one shall neuer see the other before the dreadfull day of doome. Now my sonne Sir Galahad said Sir Launcelot, sith we shall depart and neuer see other more, I pray vnto the high father of heauen for to preserve both you and me. Sir said Sir Galahad, no prayer analleth so much as yours. And therewith Sir Galahad entred into the forrest. And the winde arose, and drew Sir Launcelot more then a moneth through out the sea, where he slept but little, and prayed vnto God that hee might haue a sight of the holy Sancgreall. So it be fell vpon a night at midnight hee arrived afore a Castle on the backe side, which was rich and faire. And there was a posterne that opened toward the sea, and was open without any keeping, saue two Lions kept the entrie, and the moone shined cleare. Anon Sir Launcelot heard a voice that said, Launcelot goe out of this ship and enter into the Castle, where thou shalt see a great part of thy desire. When he came to his armes and armed him. And so hee went vnto the gate and saw the two lions. When hee set hands to his sword and drew it. Then came there suddenly a

dwarfe

and his Knights of the round Table.

that smote him vpon the arme so soze that the sword went out of his hand. When hee heard a voyce that said. Oh man full faith and poore beliese, wherefore believest thou more in thy barneis then in thy maker. For hee might more auaille then thine armour in whose seruice thou art set. When said Sir Launcelot. Faire father Jesu Christ I thanke thee of thy mercy that thou reprouest mee of my misdoede. Now see well that thou holdest mee for thy servant. When took he a sword and put it vpon his shield and made a crosse on his forehead, and came to the Lyons. And they made semblant to do him harme, notwithstanding he passed by them without hurt. And entred into the Castle to the chiefe sozetresse, and there were they all at rest. When Sir Launcelot entred in sooned, and he found no gate nor doore but it was opened. And at the last hee found a chamber whereof the doore was shut. Hee set his hand thereto for to haue opened it, but hee might

CHAP. XCVI.

How Sir Launcelot was before the doore of the chamber, wherein the holy Sancgreall was.

When he enforced him much for to vndoe the doore. Then he listned and heard a voice which sung so sweetly, that it was none earthly thing. And thought that the voice said. Honour be to the father of heauen. Then Sir Launcelot knelt downe before the chamber, for well hee wist that there was the Sancgreall in that chamber. then said he. Faire father Jesu Christ if euer I did thing that pleased thee, for thy pittie nor haue me not in despise for my soule sins here before time and that thou shew me some thing of that which I seek. And with that he saw the chamber doore open, and that there came out a great clearenesse, that the house was as bright as though all the torches of the world had bene there. He came hee to the chamber doore and would haue entred, and then a voice said vnto him. Fle Sir Launcelot, and enter not in, thou oughtest not to doe it, and if thou enter thou shalt forer

think

thinko it. And hee withdrew him backe and was right heauie in his mind. When looked hee vp in the midst of the chamber, and saw a table of silver, and the holy vessell covered with red samite, and many Angels about it, whereof one of them held a candell of waire burning, and the other held a crosse, and the ornaments of the altar. And before the holy vessell hee saw a good man clothed like a priest. And it seemed that hee was at the saking of the masse. And it seemed vnto Sir Launcelot that about the priests hands there were three men, whereof the two put the youngest by likenesse betwene the priests hands, and so hee list it vp on high. And it seemed to shew so to the people. And then Sir Launcelot meruailed not a little, for him thought that the priest was so greatly charged of the figure, that him seemed that he should haue fallen to the ground. And when hee saw none about him that would helpe him then he came to the doore a great pace and said. Faire father Iesu Christ, noz take it for no sinne though I helpe the good man which hath great neede of helpe. Right so hee entred into the chamber, and came toward the table of silver. And when hee came nigh he felt a breath, that him thought was entermedled with fire which smote him so sore in the visage, that him thought it all to bzent his visage. And therewith hee fell to the ground, and had no power to arise. As hee was so enraged that he had lost the power of his body and his hearing and his saying, then felt hee many hands about him, which tooke him vp and beare him out of the Chamber without any amending of his sowne and left him there seeming dead to all the people. So on the morrow when it was faire day-light, they within were arisen, and found Sir Launcelot lying before the chamber doze, all they meruailed how hee came in. And so they looked vpon him and felt his pulse, to wit whether there were any life in him. And so they found life in him but hee might neither stand noz stir no member that he had. And so they tooke him by euery part of the body and beare him into a chamber, and laid him in a rich bed farre from all folke, and so he lay foure dayes. Then the one said he was aline, and the other said nay. In the name of God said an old man, for I doe verely to wit he is not dead, but

he is so full of life as the mightiest of you all, and therefore I can assure you that hee be well kept, till God send him life

CHAP. XCVII.

Sir Launcelot had layen twentie foure dayes and as many nights as a dead man, and of other matters

such a manner they kept Sir Launcelot twentie foure dayes and as many nights, which day still like as a dead man and at the the twentieth fine day befell him after midnight he opened his eyes, and when he saw folke, he made great noise and said. Why haue ye wakned me, for I was better then I am now. Wh Iesu Christ who might be so blessed might see openly the great meruailes of secrettesse there no sinner may bee. What haue ye scene said they about I haue scene said hee, great meruailes that no tongue can and more then any heart can thinke, and if my sonne had bene here before mee. I had scene much more. When they him how hee had laine there twentie foure dayes and as many nights. When him thought how it was a punishment for twentie foure yeares that he had bene a sinner, wherefore God put him in penance twentie foure dayes and nights. Then looked Sir Launcelot before him, and saw the haire which had bene nigh a yeare, for that hee sozethought him right that hee had broken his promise vnto the hermitte, which had vowed to doe. When they asked him how it stood with forsooth said hee I am whole of my body thanked be our therefore sirs for Gods loue tell me where I am. When they all hee was in the Castle of Carboneck. Therewith a gentlewoman and brought him a shirt of fine linnen but hee chaunged not there, but tooke the haire to him as Sir said they, the quest of the Sanggreall is achiened in you, that neuer shall ye see more of the Sanggreall ye haue scene. Now I thanke God said Sir Launcelot great mercy of that I haue scene, for it suffiseth me, for suppose no man in this world hath liued better then I haue, so achieue that I haue done. And therewith hee

The historie of Prince Arthure

toke the haire and clothed him in it, and aboue that he put a tinnen shert, and after a robe of scarlet fresh and new. And when hee was so arrayed they prerailed all, for they knew that hee was Sir Launcelot the good knight. And then they said all, O Lord Sir Launcelot hee that yee. And then hee said. Truly I am he. When came word to King Pelles, that the knight which had layen so long dead was Sir Launcelot. When was King Pelles wonderous glad, and went to see him. And when Sir Launcelot saw him come, hee dressed him against him. And there the king made great joy of him, and there the king told him tidings that his faire daughter was dead. When was Sir Launcelot right heauy of it and said. Sir it fore-thinketh the death of your daughter, for shee was a full faire Lady fresh and young. And well I wot shee beareth the best knight that is now on the earth, or that euer was since God was boznie. So King Pelles held Sir Launcelot there foure dayes, and on the morrow hee toke his leaue of King Pelles and of all the felowship that were there, and thanked them of their great labour. Right so they sat at their dinner in the chiefe hall, then it was so that the Sanguereall had fulfilled the table with all manner of meates that any heart might thinke. So as they sat they saw all the doores and windowes of the place were shut with out manns hand, whereof they were all abashed and none wist what to doe. And then it hapned suddenly that a knight came vnto the chiefe doore and knocked mightily, and cried. Vndoe the doore, but they would not, and euer he tried vndoe, but they would not. And at the last it mooued him so much that the king himselfe arose and came to a window where the knight called, then he said. Sir knight yee shall not enter at this time while the Sanguereall is here, and therfore go into an other, for Certainly yee be none of the knight of the quest, but one of them that hath serued the fend, and hath left the service of our Lord. When was he wonderous wroth at the kings words. Sir knight said the king, with yee should I saine enter, say me of what countrey yee be. Sir said he, I am of the countrey and realme of Logris, and my name is Sir Ector de Maris, and brother vnto the noble knight Sir Launcelot. In the name of God said

King

and his Knights of the round Table.

King Pelles, me fore-thinketh that I haue said, for your brother is within, and when Sir Ector de Maris vnderstood that his brother was there, for hee was the man in the world that hee most loved, and then hee said. Ah Lord God now I haue my sorrow and shame. Full truly said the good man vnto Sir Gawaine and me of our dreames. When hee was out of the Court as fast as his courser might run, and so throughout the Castle.

CHAP. XCVIII.

How Sir Launcelot returned toward Logris, and of other adventures that he saw in the way.

And then King Pelles came to Sir Launcelot and told him tidings of his brother, whereof he was sorry, that hee wist not what to doe. So Sir Launcelot departed and toke his array, and said that hee would goe see the realme of Logris, which I haue not seene these twelve moneths. And there with he commended the king vnto God and so rode through many realmes. And at the laste he came vnto an abbey, and there hee had great cheere. And on the morrow he arose and heard masse, and after hee found a rich tombe which was newly made, and then hee toke head and saw the sides written with letters of gold which said. Here lyeth King Bagdemagus of Gote, the which King Arthurs nephew slew, and named him Sir Gawaine. When was he not a little sorry, for Sir Launcelot loved him more then any other, and if it had bene any other then Sir Gawaine hee should not haue escaped from death, and said to himselfe. Ah Lord God, this is a full great damage to King Arthurs court the losse of such a man. And then hee departed and came vnto the Abbey where as Sir Galahad did the adventure of the tombs, and wanne the white shield with the red crosse, and there had hee great cheere all that night. And on the morrow he turned to Camelot, where as hee found King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer. But many of the knights of the round table were slaine and destroyed more then halfe. And of those of them were some home againe, that were Sir Ga-

W 2

waine,

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

waine, sir Ector, and sir Lionell, and many other which needeth not to be rehearsed. When all the court was passing glad of sir Launcelot. And king Arthur asked him what tidings of his sonne sir Galahad. And there sir Launcelot told the king of his adventures that had befallen him since he departed. And also he told him of the adventures of sir Galahad, sir Percivale and sir Bors, which he knew by the letter of the dead damosell, and as sir Galahad had told him. Now would God said the king, that they were all three here. What shall never bee, said sir Launcelot for two of them shall yee never see, but one of them shall come againe.

CHAP. XCIX.

How Sir Galahad came vnto King Mordrains and of other matters and adventures.

Now that sir Galahad rode many journeyes in bayne. And at the last he came vnto the abbey where king Mordrains was & when he heard that, he thought he would abide to see him. And on the morrow when he had heard masse, sir Galahad came vnto king Mordrains, and anon the king saw him, which had been blind a long time. And then he pressed him against him and said, sir Galahad the servant of Iesu Christ whose coming I have abidden long now embrace me and let me rest on thy breast, so that I may rest betwene thine armes, for thou art a cleane virgine about all knights, as the floure of the lilly, in whose virginite is signified, and thou art the rose, the which is the floure of all good vertues, and in the colour of fire. For the fire of the holy Ghost is so taken in thee that the flesh which was of dead oldnesse is become young againe. When sir Galahad heard his words, he embraced him in his armes. Then said king Mordrains, faire Lord Iesu Christ, now I haue my will, now I require thee in this point that I am in, that thou come and visite me. And anon our Lord heard his prayer. Wherewith the soule departed from the body. And then sir Galahad put him in the earth as a king ought to be. And he departed and came into a perillous forest, where as hee found the

and his Knights of the round Table.

well that boiled with great waues, as the tale telleth be-
fore. And so stone and sir Galahad set his hand thereto, it ceased
to burne no more, and the heate departed. For that
it was a signe of lechery, the which was that time
broken. But that heate might not abide his pure virginite.
This was taken in the countie for a miracle. And so euer
after he called sir Galahad well. Then by adventure he
came to the countie of Goye and into the abbey where sir
Launcelot had bene before him, and found the tombe of king
Mordrains. But Ioseph of Arimathea which was founder
thereof. And there he found the tombe of Simeon, where sir
Launcelot had failed. Then hee looked into a crosse vnder the
roof, and there he saw a tombe the which burnt full meruail-
ly. When asked hee the doctor what it was, sir said the
meruallous adventure that may not bee brought to an end,
by him that passeth of bountie & of knighthood at the knights
round table. I would said sir Galahad that ye would lead
me to. Gladly said they. And so they led him vnto a caue.
There went downe vpon a pater of staves and came nigh
the tombe. And then the flaming failed, and the fire stanchied,
the which many a day had bene great. Then came there a
light that said, Much are ye beholden to thanke our Lord that
he giuen you a good houre, that ye may draw your soules out
of earthly paine and put them into the ioyes of paradise. I
of your kiured the which bath dwelled in this heat these
hundred and foure and fifty yeares for to bee purged of
sinne that I did to Ioseph of Arimathey. When sir Galahad
saw the body in his armes and bore it to the minister, and
he lay sir Galahad in the abbey. And on the morrow
hee gave him service, and put him in the earth, before the high
altar.

CHAP. C.

How Sir Percivale and Sir Bors met with Sir Galahad, and how
they came to the Castle of Corbonek, and of other matters.

He departed hee from thence and commended the brethren
to God. And so he rode five dayes till that hee came to the
maynes

The Historie of Prince Arthur

maymed king. And ever followed Sir Percivale the five dayes asking where he had bene, and so one told him how the adventures of Logois were achieved. So upon a day it befell that there came out of a great forrest, and there they met at a straues with Sir Bors that rode alone. It was need to tel if they minded. And then hee saluted, and they yielded him honour and glad adventure, and they told each other their adventures. Then said Sir Bors, I have heard that you have a horse that I never saw. It is a horse that is called the white horse, and it is a horse that is called the white horse, and it is a horse that is called the white horse. When rode they a mountainous hill, and God was ever in their hearts. And when they came to the castle of Camelot, they were entered within the castle, and King Pelle knew them all. When was there made great joy, for he knew well by their coming, that they had fulfilled the quest of the Sancgreall. Then Eliazar King Pelles sonne brought before them the broken sword, wherewith Ioseph was smitten through the thigh. When Sir Bors set his hand thereto, if hee might have soved it againe together, but it would not be. Then he took it to Sir Percivale, but he had no more power thereto then he. Now haue ye it said Sir Percivale unto Sir Galahad, for and it be ever achieved by one body man, ye must see it. And then took he the pentes and set them together, and they seemed that they had neuer bene broken, and as well as it had bene first forged. And then they with in espyed that the adventure of the sword was achieved, then they gave the sword unto Sir Bors, for hee might not be better set, for hee was a full good knight and a worthy man. And a little before noon the sword arose great and meruailous, and was full of great heat, that many men fell for dead. And anon light a voice among them that said, They that ought to sit at the table of our Lord Iesu Christ arise, for now shall very knights be fed. So they went thence all saue King Pelles & Eliazar his sonne, the which were holy men, and a maide which was his nece. And so these three fellows and they three were there and no more. Anon they saw knights all armed come in at the hall doore and bid of their helmes and their harness and said unto Sir Galahad. Sir we haue bidden soze to be with you at this table, where the holy meat

shall

and his Knights of the round Table:

shall be set, when said he, ye be welcome, but of whence are ye? Three of them said they were of Gauls, and other three of Ireland, and other three said they were of Brittain. So as they late thus, there came a bed of tree out of a chamber, the which four gentlewomen brought, and in it lay a good man sirke, and a crowne of gold upon his hand, and there in the mids of the place they set them downe to eat there way againe. Then hee lift up his head and said. O Galahad knight ye be welcome, for much haue I desired to see you, for in such paine and anguish as ye see, haue I been long. But now I trust to God the time is come that my paine shall be alayed, that I shall passe out of this world, so as I have promised me long agoe. Therewith a voice said there was among you that be not in the quest of the Sancgreall, therefore depart ye.

CHAP. CI.

Sir Galahad and his fellowes were fed with the Sancgreall, and how our Lord appeared to them, and of other matters.

When King Pelles and his sonne departed. And therewith it seemed them that there came a man and four Angels clothed in the likenesse of bishops, and had a sword in his hand, and the four Angels beare him up in a cloud, and set him downe before the table of silver, where upon the Sancgreall was, and it seemed that he had in the midst of his head letters that said. See ye here Ioseph the first son of Iacob, the same which our Lord succoured in the pit of Sodom in the spiritual place. Then the knights knailed, for that bishop was dead more then three hundred years before. The knights said hee, meruailous, for I was a time an earthly man. With that they heard the chamber open, and there they saw Angels, and two beare candles and the third a towel, and the fourth a spear which was meruailous, that the dopes fell within a bore the which was with his other hand. And then they set their candles upon the table and the third put the towel upon the vessel, and the

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

the fourth set the holy speare even vpright vpon the vessel. And then the bishop made semblance as though he would haue gone to the salring of the masse, and then hee took a wapher, which was made in the likenesse of bread, and at the lifting vp there came a figure in the likenesse of a child and the visage was as red and as bright as any fire, and smote himselfe into that bread so that they all saw that the bread was formed of a fleshy man. And then he put it into the holy vessel againe. And then hee did that belonged vnto a priest to doe at masse. And then hee went vnto Sir Galahad and kissed him. And then bad him goe and kisse his fellowes. And as he was bidden, so hee did. Now said he ye seruants of Iesu Christ ye shall be fed before this table with swete meates which neuer no knights tasted. And when he had said he vanished away, and they set them in great bread and made their prayers. When looked they and saw a man come out of the holy vessel, that had all the signes of the passion of Iesu Christ blessing all openly (and said) . My knights and my seruants and my true children, which be come out of deadly life into spirituall life, I will now no longer hide mee from you, but yee shall see now a part of my secrets and of my hid things. Now hold and receiue the hie meat which yee haue so much desired. When took hee himselfe the holy vessel and came to sir Galahad, and hee knelt downe and there hee receiued his saluour, and so after him receiued all his felowes, and they thought it so sweet that it was meruaile to tell. When hee said Galahad sonne wotest thou what I hold betwixen my hands. Now said Sir Galahad, but if yee tell mee. This is said hee, the holy dish wherein I ate the lambe on Shether-thursday, and now hast thou seene that thou desiredst most to see, but yet hast thou not seene it so openly as thou shalt see it in the citie of Barras in the spirituall place. Therefore thou must goe hence, and beare with thee this holy vessel. For this night it shall depart from the realme of Logris, that it shall neuer bee seene moze heere, and wotest thou wherfore, for it is not serued nor worshipped to his right, by them of this land, for they be turned vnto euill liuing. Therefore I shall curse them. And therefore goe yee thre to morrow vnto the sea, where as yee shall find

and his Knights of the round Table.

your ship ready. And with you take the sword with the large girdels, and no more with you but sir Perciuaile and sir Kay. And also I will ye take with you of the blood of this spere, and anoint the maimed king both his legges and all his body, and hee shall haue his health. Sir said sir Galahad, why shall these other felowes go with vs. For this cause. For right anon departed mine apostles, one here and an other there, so that yee depart. And two of you shall die in my seruice, but one of you shall come againe and tell tidings. When gaue he them his blessing and vanished away.

CHAP. CII.

Now Sir Galahad anoynted with the blood of the speare the maimed King and of other aduentures.

When Sir Galahad went anon to the speare which lay vpon the table, and touched the blood with his fingers, and came to the maimed king and anoynted his legges. And there hee clothed him anon, and start vpon his feete out of his bed as an whole man, and thanked our Lord that he had healed him, and that was not to the world ward. For anon hee yelved vnto a place of religion of white munkes, and was a full man. That same night about midnight, there came a vision among them, that said thus. Mine owne sonnes and not my chiefe sonnes, my friends and not my warriours, goe yee see whether yee hope best to doe, and as I bad you. At thynke thou Lord said they, that thou wilt vouch safe to call vs so, may wee proue that wee haue not lost our paine. And anon in all hast they took their harnes and departed, but the three knights of Gaule, one of them hight Claudine, King Claudas sonne, and the other two were great gentlemen. When they saw Sir Galahad vnto euery each of them. If yee goe vnto King Arthurs Court, that ye will salute my Lord Sir Lancelot my father, and all the fellowship of the round table. And pray them that if they come in these parts that they should not forget the knight so departed sir Galahad, and sir Perciuaile, and sir Kay with him. And so they rode thre dayes, and then they came

came to arilage, and found the Ship, whereof the tale speaketh before. And when they came within board, they found in the midst the table of silver which they had left with the maimed King, and the Sancgreall, which was couered with red samit. When were they passing glad for to haue such things in their fellowship. And so they entred and made great reuerence there to, and Sir Galahad fell in his prayers long tyme vnto our Lord that at what tyme hee asked, hee might passe out of this world. And so much he prayed, till at the last a voice said to him. Galahad thou shalt haue thy request, and when thou askest the death of thy body, thou shalt haue it, and then shalt thou finde life of thy soule. Sir Perciuaile heard this and prayed him of fellowship that was betwene them, for to tell him wherefore he asked such things. What shall I tell you said Sir Galahad. The other day when we saw the part of the adventures of the Sancgreall, I was in such a ioy of heart, that I trow neuer man was that was earthly, and therefore I wot well that when my body is dead, my soule shall bee in great ioy to see the blessed Trinitie every day, and the maiestie of our Lord Iesu Christ. So long were they in the Ship, that they said vnto Sir Galahad Sir in this bedought yee to lye for so saith the Scripture. And then he laid him downe and slept a great while, and when hee awaked, hee looked afoze him and saw the Citie of Sarra. And as they would haue landed they saw the Ship wherein Sir Perciuaile had put his sister. Truly said Sir Perciuaile in the name of God, wel hath my sister held vs covenant. Then toke they out of the Ship the table of silver. And hee toke it to Sir Perciuaile and to Sir Bors to goe before, and Sir Galahad came behind, right so they went into the Citie. And at the gate of the Citie they saw an old man sit crooked. When Sir Galahad called him and bad him helpe to beare this heauie thing. Truly said the old man, it is ten years agoe that I might not goe but with crutches. Care thou not said Sir Galahad, arise vp and shew thy good will. And so he assayed, and found himselfe as whole as euer hee was. When hee ranne to the table and toke one part against Sir Galahad. And anon there arose a great noise in the Citie. that a cripple was made whole by knights meruailous

meruailous that were entred into the Citie. When anon after the three knights went to the water, and brought vp into the Citie Sir Perciuaile's sister, and buried her as richly as a daughter ought to bee. And when the King of the Citie was called Estourauc saw the fellowship, he asked them whence they were, and what thing it was that they had brought vpon the table of silver. And they told him the truth of the Sancgreall, and the power that God had set there. When the King was a tyrant, and was come of the linage of paynims, hee took them and put them in prison in a deepe hole,

CHAP. CIII.

When they were fed with the Sancgreall while they were in prison, and how Sir Galahad was made King.

As soon as they were there, our Lord sent them the Sancgreall through whose grace they were alway fulfilled while they were in prison. So at the yeares end it befell that King Estourauc lay sicke and felt that hee should die, then he sent for the three knights. And they came before him. And he desired them mercie of that he had done to them. And they forgave him goodly, and he died anon. When the King was dead the Citie was dismaide, and wist not who might bee their King. Right so as they were in counsaile together, there came a voice among them, and bad them chose the youngest knight of the three to be their King, for he shall maintaine you and all yours. So they made Sir Galahad King by all the assent of the Citie, and else they would haue slaine him. And when hee came for to behold the land, he let make about the table of silver a chest of gold and of precious stones that couered the holy vessel and enery day in the morning the three fellows would come before it and said their deuotions. Now at the yeres end, and the same day after that Sir Galahad had borne the crowne of Gold, he arose vpearly and his fellowes, and came vnto the palace and saw before them the holy vessel, and a man kneeling vpon his knees in the likenesse of the Bishop, which had about him a great fellowship of Angels as it had bene Je-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

su Christ himselfe. And then he arose and began a masse of our Lady. And when hee came to the sakring of the masse and had done, anon he called Sir Galahad and said vnto him. Come forth the seruant of Iesu Christ, and thou shalt see that which thou hast much desired to se. And then Sir Galahad began to tremble right soze when the deadly flesh began to behold the spirituall things. When he held vp both his hands toward heauen & said. Lord I thanke thee, for now I see that which hath bene my desire many a day, Now blessed Lord would I no longer liue, if it might please thee good Lord. And there with the good man took our Lords body betwene his hands and proffered it vnto Sir Galahad. And he receiued it right gladly and meekly. Now said the the good man, wotest thou whom I am. Fay said Sir Galahad. I am Ioseph of Arimathie which our Lord hath sent heere to thee to beare the fellowship. And wotest thou wherfore he hath sent me more then any other. For thou hast resembled me in two things. One is that thou hast seene the Sancgreall. And the other is in that thou hast bene a cleane maiden as I am. And when he had said these words, Sir Galahad went to Sir Perciual and kissed him, and commended him to God. And so he went to Sir Bors and kissed him, and commended him to God, and said. Faire Lord salute me to my Lord Sir Launcelot my father and as soone as yee see him, bid him remember this vntable world. And therewith hee kneeled downe before the table and made his praier. And then sodainly his soule departed vnto Iesu Christ. And a great multitude of Angels beare his soule vp to heauen that his two fellows might behold it. Also his two fellows saw come from heauen an hand but they saw not the body, and then it came right to the vessel and took it and the speare, and so beare it vp to heauen. Sithence was there neuer no man so hardy for to say that hee had seene the Sancgreall.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CIIII.

Now followeth what Sir Perciual and Sir Bors made when Sir Galahad was dead. And of the death of Sir Perciual, and of other matters.

When Sir Perciual and Sir Bors saw Sir Galahad dead, they made as much sorow as euer did two men, for they had not bene good men, they might lightly haue fallen, and perished. And the people of the countrey and of the Citie were right heauy. And as soone as hee was buried, Sir Perciual took him to an Hermitage out of the Citie, and took a religious clothing, and Sir Bors was alway with him but he neuer changed his secular clothing because he purposed him to goe into the realme of Logris. Thus a yere and two monethes liued Sir Perciual in the hermitage a full holy life, and departed out of this world. And Sir Bors let bury him by his father and by Sir Galahad in the spiritualties. When Sir Bors departed from Barras and armed him, and came to the sea and entred into a ship, and so it befell him by good aduenture to come into the realme of Logris. And then hee rode fast till he came to Camelot where King Arthur was. And then they made great ioy of him in the court. For they deemed that hee had bene dead, for as much as he had bene so long out of the countrey. And when they had eaten, King Arthur commanded great clarkes to come before him, that they should relate the high aduentures of the good knights. When Sir Bors told him of the aduentures of the Sancgreall, such as had befallen him and his two fellows, that was Sir Galahad and Sir Perciual. When Sir Launcelot told the aduentures of the Sancgreall that hee had seene All this was made in great booke, and put in almeries at Salisbury. And anon Sir Bors said vnto Sir Launcelot. Sir Galahad your sonne saluted you by me, and after you King Arthur and all court the, and so did Sir Perciual. And he buried the with mine owne hands in the Citie of Barras. Also Sir Launcelot, Sir Galahad praie the for to remember this

this vnto adfast world, as yee behight him when yee were together more then halfe a yeare. This is full true said Sir Launcelot, now I trust to God his prayer shall auail me. When Sir Launcelot tolke Sir Bors in his armes and said, Gentle cosyn ye are welcume to me, and all that euer I may doe for you and for yours yee shall find mee ready at all times, while I haue life, and that I promise you faithfully, and neuer to faile you. And wit yee well gentle cosyn Sir Bors, that you and I will neuer depart in sunder whiles that our liues may last. Sir said hee I will as yee will.

CHAP. CV:

Of the ioy that King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer had of the achuement of the Sancgreall. And how Sir Launcelot fell to his old loue againe,

NOW after that the quest of the Sancgreall was fulfilled and that all the knights that were left alieue were come againe to the round table at the booke of the Sancgreall maketh mention. When was there great ioy in the court. And especially King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer made great ioy of the remnant that were come home. And passing glad was the king and the Queene of Sir Launcelot and of Sir Bors, for they had beene passing long away in the quest of the Sancgreall. When Sir Launcelot began to resort vnto Queene Gueneuer againe and forgot the promise and the profession that he made in the quest, had not Sir Launcelot beene in his priuy thoughts and in his minde set inwardly to the Queene, as hee was in seeming outward vnto God, there had no knight passed him in the quest of the Sancgreall, but euer his thoughts were priuely vpon the Queene. And so they loued together more hotter then euer they had done before, and had such priuy draughts together, and many in the court spake of it, and most specially Sir Agrawaine, & Sir Gawaines brother, for he was euer open mouthed. So it bee fell that Sir Launcelot had many resorts of ladies and damosels, that daily resorted vnto him, which besought him to bee their champion. And in all such manners of right, Sir Launcelot

appealed him daily to doe for the pleasure of our Lord Christ. And alwayes as much as he might hee withdrew from the company and fellowship of Queene Gueneuer, for shee the slander and the noise. Wherefore the Queene was wroth and angry with Sir Launcelot. And vpon a day shee called Sir Launcelot vnto her chamber, and said to him Sir Launcelot, I see and feele daily that thy loue beginneth to flacke for thou hast no ioy to bee in my presence but thou art out of this court and quarels and matters thou hast no dayes for ladies and gentlewomen, more then euer thou went to haue in time past. Ah madame said Sir Launcelot this yee must haue me excused for diuers causes. One is, that I am but late in the quest of the Sancgreall, and I thanke God of his great mercy, and neuer of my deseruing that I saw my quest as much as euer saw any sinfull man, and so was I lame, and if I had not had my priuy thoughts to returne to my loue againe as I doe I had seene as great misteries as I saw my sonne Sir Galahad, Sir Perciuaile, or Sir Bors, and so. madame I was but late in that quest, wite yee well madame, it may not bee yet lightly forgotten the hie serulce in which I did my diligent labour. Also madame wit yee well there bee many men that speake of our loue in this place, haue you and me greatly in a waite, as Sir Agrawaine, and Mordred, and wit yee well madame, I dread them more for your sake then for any feare that I haue of them my selfe, for I may happen to escape and rid my selfe in a while, where as yee must abide all that will bee said to you. And then if that yee fall in any distresse through wilfull ye then is there none other remedy or help but by mee and my blood. And wit yee well madame the boldnesse of you and I will bring vs vnto great shame and dishonour, and was well to see you dishonoured. And that is the cause that I take more for to doe for damosels and maidens then euer I did before, men should vnderstand my ioy and my delight is to doe for damosels and maidens.

How the Queene commanded Sir Launcelot to auoid the Court, and of the sorrow that Sir Launcelot made.

All this while the Queene stood still, and let Sir Launcelot say what he would, and when he had all said, she brake out on weeping, and she sobbed and wept a great while, and when she might speake she said. Sir Launcelot now I vnderstand that thou art a false recreant knight, and a common lechour and louest and holdest other Ladies, and of mee thou hast dishaue and scozne. For wit thou well said she, now I vnderstand thy false hood, and therefore shall I neuer loue thee no more, and neuer see thou so hardy to come in my sight, and right here I charge thee that thou nener come more within this Court, and I forbid thee my fellowship, and vpon paine of thy head that thou see mee no more. Right so Sir Launcelot departed with great heauinesse, that vnlesse he might susteine himselfe for great dole making. Then he called Sir Bors, Sir Ector de maris and Sir Lionell, and told them how the Queene had forbidden him the Court, and so he was in will to depart into his owne countrey. Faire Sir said Sir Bors de Ganis ye shall not depart out of this land by mine aduise, ye must remember in what honour ye are renowned and called the most noble knight of the world, and many great matters ye haue in hand, and women in their hastinesse will do oftentimes which soze repent them, and therefore by mine aduise ye shall take your horses and ride to the Hermitage beside Windore, which sometime was a good knight whose name is Sir Brasas and there shall ye abide till I com vnto you with of better tidings. Faire cousin said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well that I am full loth to depart out of this realme, but the Queene hath forbidden me so highly, that me seemeth she will neuer see my good daye as she hath bene in times past, say ye neuer so said Sir Bors for many times before time she hath bene wroth with you, and after it shee was the first that repented it. Ye say well

and said Sir Launcelot, for now will I doe by your counsaile, take my horse and my harneys and ride to the heremit Sir Bors, and there will I rest me vntill I heere some manner tidings from you. But faire cousin I pray you get me the loue of my Lady Queene Gueneuer and yee may. Sir said Sir Bors neede not to moue mee of such matters, for well ye wit I know what I may to please you. And then the noble knight Launcelot departed sodainely with a right heauy cheere, from any earthly creature with of him where he was become, namely Sir Bors. So when Sir Launcelot was departed, the Queene made no manner of outward sorrow, in shewing to any of his blood, nor yet to none other, but wit ye well that in her heart shee had a great thought, but shee beare it out with a countenance as though shee felt no thought nor daunger.

At a dinner the which the Queene made, there was a knight poisoned the which Sir Mador laide vpon the Queene.

And then the Queene let make a priuy dinner in the citie of London vnto the knights of the round table. And all for to shew outward that shee had a great ioy in all other knights of the round table as shee had in Sir Launcelot. All only that dinner shee had Sir Gawaine and his brethren that is to say Sir Agraaine, Sir Gaheris, Sir Gareth, and Sir Mordred, and there was Sir Bors de ganis, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoche de Ganis, Sir Galahad, Sir Galihodin Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Lionell, Sir Palomides and his brother Sir Safire. La cote Mallois, Sir Perlaune, Sir Iron side, Sir Brandiles, Sir Kay of Asteshall, Sir Mardor de la port, Sir Patrice a knight of the land, Sir Aliducke Sir Astomore and Sir Pinell le sauvage which was cousin vnto Sir Lamoracke de Galis, the good knight, the which Sir Gawaine and his brethren slew by treachery. And so these knights should dine with the Queen in a priuy by themselves, and there was made a great feast of all manner of dainty meates and drinks. But Sir Gawaine had a custome

custome that hee used daily at dinner and at supper, that hee loved well all manner fruite, and in especiall apples and pears. And therefore whosoever dined or feasted, Sir Gawaine would comonly puruey for good fruit for him, and so did the queene for to please Sir Gawaine, shee let puruey for him of all manner of fruits. For Sir Gawaine was passing hot knight of nature, and this Sir Pinell hated Sir Gawaine because of his kinship with Sir Lamothe de Galis and therefore for pure enuy and hate Sir Pinell poysoned certayne apples, for to poyson Sir Gawaine withall. And so this was well vnto the end of the meat. And so it befell by misfortune that a good knight named Sir Patrice, cousin to Sir Mador de la port tooke one of the poysoned apples. And when he had eaten it hee swelled til he burst, and there Sir Patrice fell downe dead sodainly among them. When euery knight lept from the board ashamed and enraged for wrath nigh out of their wits, for they wist not what to say, considering that Queene Gueneuer made the feast and dinner, they all had suspicion vpon her. My Lady the Queene said Sir Gawaine, wit ye well madame that this dinner was made for me. For all folkes that know my conditions vnderstand well that I loue fruit, and now I see well I had neuer bene slaine, therefore madame I dread me least ye will be ashamed. When the Queene stood still and was right sore abashed that she wist not what to say. This shall not be ended so said Sir Mador de la port, for heere haue I lost a full noble knight of my blood, and therefore vpon this shame and despite I will be reuenged to the uttermost. And thereupon Sir Mador appealed Queene Gueneuer of the death of his cousin Sir Patrice. When stood they all still, that none of them would speake a word against him. For they had a great suspicion vnto Queene Gueneuer because shee let make the dinner, And the Queene was so sore abashed, that shee could none otherwise doe but wept so heartely that she fell in a swoone. With this noise and sodaine crye came vnto them King Arthur. And interuailed greatly what it might be. And when hee wist of their trouble and the sodaine death of that good knight Sir Patrice, he was a passing heavy man.

Now Sir Mador apeached the Queene of treason, and there was no Knight would fight for her at the first time.

And ever Sir Mador stood still before King Arthur, and neuer hee appealed Queene Gueneuer of treason. For the custome was such at that time that all manner of shamefull death was called treason. Faire Lords said King Arthur mee repenteth sore of this trouble, but the cause is so wee may not haue to doe in this matter, for I must be a rightfull iudge, and that repenteth me that I may not doe battaile for my wife, for as I dame, this dede came neuer of her and therefore I suppose wee shall not all be destitute, but that some good knight shall put his body in iopardie rather then shee should be hent in a wrong quarell, and therefore Sir Mador be not so hasty, for it may happen shee shall not be all friendlesse, and therefore desire thou the day of battell. and shee shall puruey her of some good knight, which shall answere you, or else it were to mee great shame, and vnto all my court. My gracious Lord said Sir Mador ye must hold me excused, for though ye be our king. in that degree, ye are but a knight as we are, and ye are sworn vnto knighthood as well as wee, and therefore I pray you that ye will not be displeased. For there is none of the twentie knights that were bidden for to come vnto this dinner, but all they haue great suspicion vnto the queene. What say ye all my Lords said Sir Mador. When they answered by and by and said that they could not excuse the Queene, for why shee made the dinner, and either it must come by her or by her seruants. Alas said the Queene, I made this dinner for a good entent, and neuer for none euil (so, God helpe me) in my right as I was neuer purposed to doe such euill dedes, and that I report mee vnto God. My Lord the King said Sir Mador, I require you heartily as ye be a righteous king giue mee a day that I may haue iustice. Well said King Arthur, I giue you day this day sitene dayes, that ye be ready armed on hozsebacke in the meadow beside Westminster. And if it so fall that there bee any

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Knicht to encounter with you, there may ye doe your best, and God speede the right. And if it so fall that there be no knight at that day then must my Quene be bzent, and there shall shee bee ready to haue her iudgement. Well I am answered said Sir Mador, and euery knight went where it liked him. So when the King and the Quene were together the King asked the Quene how this case befell. When answered the Quene, so God me helpe I wot not how nor in what manner. Where is Sir Launcelot said King Arthur, and he were here he would not grutch to doe battaile for you. Sir said the Quene I can not tell you where hee is, but his brother and all his kindred men deeme that hee is not within this realme. What soze repenteth me said King Arthur, for and hee were here, he would full soone stint this strife. When I will counsaile you said the King, that ye goe vnto Sir Bors and pray him to doe that battaile for you for Sir Launcelots sake, and vpon my life hee will not refuse you. For right well I perceiue said King Arthur, that none of all those twentie knights without moe that were with you in fellowship together at your dinner, where Sir Parice was so trayterously slaine that will doe battaile for you, nor none of them will say well of you, and that shall be great slander for you in this Court. Alas said the Quene, I can not doe with all. But now I misse Sir Launcelot. For and he were here hee would put mee full soone vnto my hearts ease. What ayleth you said King Arthur, that ye can not keepe Sir Launcelot on your side. For wit ye well said King Arthur, whosoever hath the noble knight Sir Launcelot on his part hath the most man of worship in the world on his side. Now goe your way said the King vnto the Quene, and require Sir Bors to do battaile for you for Sir Lancelots sake.

CHAP. CIX.

How the Quene required Sir Bors to fight for her, and how hee granted her vpon a condition, and how he warned Sir Lancelot thereof.

So the Quene departed from the King, and sent for Sir Bors into her chamber. And when hee was come, shee besought

and his Knights of the round Table.

him of succour. Madame said he, what would ye that I doe. For I may not with my worship haue to doe in this matter, because I was at that same dinner, for dread that any of those knights would haue me in suspicion. Also madame said Sir Bors, now misse ye Sir Launcelot, for hee would not haue failed you, neither in right nor yet in wrong, as ye haue well moued when ye haue bene in danger, and now haue ye driuen him out of this countrey, by whom ye and wee all were dayly worshiped. Wherefore madame I greatly meruaile mee how ye dare for shame require mee to doe any thing for you, in so much as ye haue chased him out of your countrey by whom I was borne vp and honoured. Alas faire knight said the Quene I put mee wholly in your grace and all that is done amisse I will amend as ye will counsaile me. And therewith shee knelt downe vpon both her knees, and besought Sir Bors to haue mercy vpon her, for I shall haue a shamefull death, and therefore I neuer offended. Right so came King Arthur and found the Quene kneeling before Sir Bors. When Sir Bors tooke her vp and said. Madame ye doe to me great dishonour. Ah gentle knight said King Arthur, haue mercy vpon my Quene. For I am now in a ceraine that shee is now vntreuely defamed. And therefore courteous knight said the King, promise her to doe battaile for her, I require you for the loue of Sir Launcelot. My Lord said Sir Bors ye require mee of the greatest thing that any man may require me, and wit ye well if I graunt to do battaile for the Quene, I shall wraath many of my fellows of the round table, but as for that said Sir Bors, I will graunt my Lord, for my Lord Sir Launcelots sake, and for your sake, I will at that day be the Quenes champion, vnlesse that there come by aduenture a better knight then I am to doe battaile for her. Will ye promise this said the King by your faith. Yee Sir said Sir Bors of that will I not faile you, nor her both. But if that there come a better knight then I am, then shall hee haue the battaile. When was the King and the Quene passing glad, thanked him heartily and so departed. So then Sir Bors departed secretly vpon a day, and rode vnto Sir Launcelot, there as he was with the Hermit by Sir Bra-

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

has and told him of all his adventures. Ah Jesu said sir Lancelot this is happily come as I would haue it, and therefore I pray you make you ready to doe battaile, but loke that ye tary till ye see me come as long as ye may, for I am sure Sir Mador is an hot knight, if hee bee chased, for the more yee suffer him the hastier will he be to doe battaile. Sir said Sir Bors let mee deale with him, doubt yee not yee shall haue all your will. Then departed Sir Bors from him and came vnto the Court againe. When was it noyed in all the Court that Sir Bors should doe battaile for the Quene, wherefore many knights were greatly displeased with him, that he should take vpon him to doe battaile in the Quenes quarrell. For there were but few knights in the Court, but that they deemed the Quene was in the wrong, and that shee had done that treason. So Sir Bors answered thus vnto his fellowes of the round table. Wit yee well my faire Lords, it were shame vnto vs all, and wee suffered to see the most noble Quene of the world for to be shamed openly, considering that her Lord and our Lord is the man of most worship in the world and the most chrestned. And hee hath alway worshiped vs all in all places. Many knights answered him againe and said. As for our most noble King Arthur, wee loue him and honour him as well as yee doe. But as for Quene Gueneuer wee loue her not for because shee is a destroyer of good knights. Faire Lords said Sir Bors me seemeth yee say not as yee should say, for neuer yet in all my daies knew I nor heard say that euer shee was a destroyer of any good knight, but at all times as far as I euer could know, shee was alwayes a maintainer of good knights. And alway shee hath bene large and free of her goods to all good knights, and the most bounteous Lady of her gifts, and her good grace that euer I saw or heard speak of, and therefore it were great shame (said Sir Bors) vnto vs all to our most noble Kings wife, if we suffer her to be shamefully slaine. And wit ye well said Sir Bors I will not suffer it. For I dare say so much the Quene is not guilty of Sir Partrices death for she sought him neuer none euill. Will not none of the twentie knights that were at that dinner. For I dare well say, that it was for good loue shee had vnto

dinner

and his Knights of the round Table:

him, and not for no male engin, and that I doubt not shall be proved heere after, For howsoeuer the game goeth, there shall be treason among some of vs. When some said to Sir Bors you may well beleue your words. And so some of them were pleased, and some were not pleased.

CHAP. CX.

At the day Sir Bors made him ready for to fight for Quene Gueneuer and how an other discharged him when hee should fight.

The day came on fast vntill the euen that the battaile should be. Then the Quene sent for Sir Bors and asked him how hee was disposed. Truly madame said hee, I am disposed as well as I promised you, that is to say, I shall not faile to be vnlesse by adventure there come a better knight then I am to doe battaile for you, then madame am I discharged of my duty. Will yee said the Quene that I tell my Lord King thus. Doe as it shall please you madame said, Sir Bors. Then the Quene went vnto the King, and told him the answer of Sir Bors. Haue yee no doubt said the King of Sir Bors, I will call him now one of the best knights of the world, and the most profitablest man. And this is past forth vntill the morrow. And the King and the Quene and all the knights were there at that time drew them to the meadow beside Winchester, where as the battaile should be. And so when the day was come with the Quene, and many knights of the round table. Then the Quene was put there in the Constables house, and there was made a great fire about the Iron stake, for Sir Mador de la port had the better she should be bent. And a custom was vsed in those daies, that neither for fauour nor for loue, nor for affinitie, there should be noke other but with iudgement as well vpon a King as vpon a knight, and vpon a Quene as vpon an other poore Lady. And in the meane while came in Sir Mador de la port and told the King, that Quene Gueneuer did this. Then vnto his cosin Sir Partrice, and vnto his bath hee went,

prone

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

proue it with his body, hand for hand, who that would say the
 contrary thereto. Right so came Sir Bors de ganis and said that
 as for Quene Gueneuer shee is in the right, and that will I
 make good with my hands that she is not culpable of this trea-
 son that is put vpon her. When make thee ready said Sir Ma-
 dor, and wee shal soone proue whether thou be in the right or I.
 Sir said Sir Bors, wit ye well I know thee for a good knight,
 not for then I shall not feare thee so greatly, but I trust vnto al-
 mightie God my maker I shall bee able enough to withstand
 thy malice. But thus much haue I promised my Lord King
 Arthur, and my Lady the Quene, that I shall doe battaile for
 her in this case to the vttermost onely that there came a better
 knight then I am and discharge me. As that all said sir Mador
 either come thou off and doe battaile with mee, or else say nay.
 Take your horse said Sir Bors and as I suppose yee shall not
 tary long but that ye shall be answered. When either departed to
 their tents and made them ready to mount vpon horsebacke as
 they thought best. And anon sir Mador de la port came into the
 field with his shield on his shoulder, and a speare in his hand.
 And so rode about the place crying vnto King Arthur. Bid your
 champion come forth and he dare. When was sir Bors ashamed
 and tooke his horse and came to the list end. And then was hee
 ware where as came out of a wood there fast by, a knight all
 armed at all points vpon a white horse with a strang shield and
 of strange armes. And he came riding all that he might runne.
 And so he came to Sir Bors and said. Faire knight I pray you
 bee not displeased, for here must a better knight then yee are
 haue this battaile. Wherefore I pray you to withdraw you. For
 I would yee knew I haue had this day a right great iourney
 and this battaile ought to be mine, and so I promised you when
 I spake with you last. And with all my heart I thanke you for
 your good will. When sir Bors rode vnto King Arthur and told
 him how there was a knight come that would haue the battell
 for to fight for the Quene. What knight is he said King Ar-
 thur. I can not shew you said sir Bors, but such a couenant made
 hee with mee for to bee here this day. Now my Lord said Sir
 Bors here am I discharged.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXI.

Sir Launcelot fought against Sir Mador de la port for the
 queene, and how he ouercame Sir Mador and discharged the
 queene.

When the king called vnto that knight, & asked him if he would
 fight for the Quene. When he answered vnto the king, ther-
 to hee I hither & therfore sir king he said tary me no longer,
 I may not tary. For anon as I haue finished this battail, I
 depart hence, for I haue to doe many matters else where.
 But yee well said that knight, this is dishonour vnto you
 knights of the round table to see and know so noble a Lady &
 courteous a Quene as Quene Gueneuer is; thus to bee re-
 spected and shamed among you. When meruailed they all what
 knight that might be, that so tooke the battaile vpon him but
 it was not one that knew him, but if it were sir Bors. Where-
 fore sir Mador de la port vnto the king. Now let me wit with
 what I shall haue to doe withall. And then they rode to the
 field, and there they couched their speares, & ranne the one
 against the other with all their mights. And sir Madors speare
 was all to peeces. But sir Launcelots speare held, and beare,
 and adors horse & all backward to the ground, and had a great
 hurt mightely and sodainely he auoided his horse and dres-
 sed his shield before him. And then drew his sword, & bad that
 knight alight and do battaile with him on foot. When that
 knight descended lightly from his horse like a valiant man, and
 his shield afore him & drew out his sword. And so they came
 to battaile, and either gaue other many sad strokes, tra-
 uersing, rasinge and forning, and hurling toge-
 ther with their swords as they had been two wild bores. Thus
 they fighting nigh an houre. For this sir Mador was a full
 knight, and mightely proued in many wrong battailes.
 At the last this knight smot sir Mador groueling, vpon the
 head, & the knight swept neere him for to haue pulled sir Ma-
 dor vnto the ground. And therewithal sodainly sir Ma-
 dor rose. And in his arising hee smot that knight through the
 thigh,

P

The Historie of Prince Arthur

sight, that the blood ranne out right fierly. And when hee felt
 himselfe so wounded and saw his blood, hee let him arise vpon
 his feete, and then hee gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme,
 that hee fell flatling to the ground. And therewith hee trod
 to him for to haue pulled off his helme from his head. And
 then Sir Mador praised that knight to saue his life. And so hee
 yeelded him as an ouercome knight, and released the Quene
 of his quarell. I will not graunt thee life said the knight, but
 onely that thou fræly release the Quene for euer, and that no
 manner of mention bee made vpon Sir Patrices tombe that e-
 uer Quene Gueneuer consented to that treason. All this shall
 hee done said Sir Mador, and clearly I discharge my quarell
 for euer. When the knights parters of the lists took vpon Sir
 Mador and led him to his tent. And the other knight went
 straight to the strete foote where as King Arthur sate, and by
 that time was the Quene come vnto the king, and either kissed
 other louingly. And when the king saw that knight, hee stooped
 downe vnto him and thanked him. And in like wise did the
 Quene. And then the king praised him to put off his helme,
 and to rest him, and to take a sop of wine. And then hee put off
 his helme to drinke. And then euery knight knew that he was
 the noble knight Sir Launcelot. As soone as the king wist that,
 hee took the Quene by the hand and went vnto Sir Launcelot
 and said. Gramercy of your great traualle that yee haue had
 this day for mee and for my Quene. My Lord said Sir Launce-
 lot, wist yee well that I ought of right euer to be in your quarel,
 and in my Lady the Quenes quarell to doe battaile, for yee
 are the man that gaue mee the high order of knighthood, and
 that day my Lady your Quene did mee great worship or else
 I had beene shamed. For that same day yee made mee knight
 through my hastinesse I lost my sword, and my Lady your
 Quene found it, and lapped it in her traine, and gaue me my
 sword when I had neede thereof, or else had I beene shamed
 among all knights. And therefore my Lord King Arthur I
 promised her at that day quer to be her knight in r'ght or in
 wrong Gramercy said King Arthur for this journey, and wist
 you well said King Arthur. I shall acquite you of your good-
 nesse.

and his Knights of the round Table.

And euer the Quene beheld Sir Launcelot, and wep
 sorely that shee sanke almost downe vpon the ground for
 that hee had done to her so great goodnesse, whereas shee
 showed him great unkindnesse. When the knights of his
 table came vnto him, and there either of them made great ioy
 of her. And so came all the knights of the round table that
 were there at that time, and he welcomed them. And then Sir
 Mador was had to lechecraft. And Sir Launcelot was healed of
 his wound. And then was there made great ioy and mirth in
 the Court.

CHAP. CXII.

Now the truth was knownen by the damosell of the lake, and of
 diuers other matters.

As so it befell that the damosell of the lake which was
 called Nimue, the which wedded the good knight Sir Pel-
 lior, and so she came to the court, for euer she did great goodnesse
 to King Arthur and to all his knights, throught her sozcery
 and enchantments. And so when shee heard how the king was
 angred for the death of Sir Patrice, then shee told it openly
 that shee was neuer guilty, and there she disclosed by whom it
 was done, and named him Sir Pinell, and for what cause he did
 it there it was openly disclosed. And so the Quene was excu-
 sed. And the knight Sir Pinell fled into his countrey. Where
 was it openly knownen that Sir Pinell empoysoned the appels
 of the feast, to the entent to haue destroyed Sir Gawaine, because
 Sir Gawaine and his brethren destroyed Sir Lamoracke de
 Galis, to whome Sir Pinell was cousin vnto. When was Sir
 Patrice buried in the Church of Winchester in a Tombe, and
 thereupon written. Here lieth Sir Patrice of Ireland, slaine by
 Sir Pinell le sauage, that empoysoned appels to haue slaine Sir
 Gawaine, and by misfortune Sir Patrice eate one of those ap-
 pels, and then sodeinly hee brast. Also there was written vpon
 the tombe that Quene Gueneuer was appealed of treason of
 the death of Sir Patrice by Sir Mador de la port, and there was
 made mention how Sir Launcelot fought with him for Quene
 Gueneuer, and ouer came him in plaine battaile. And this was
 written

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Written vpon the tomb: of Sir Parice in excusing of the Quene.
 And then Sir Mador selued daily and long to haue the Quenes
 good grace. And so by the meanes of Sir Launcelot hee caused
 him to stand in the Quenes grace, and all was forgotten. Thus
 it passed forth until our Lady day the Assumption within fiften
 dayes of that feast. King Arthur let cry a great iusts and tur-
 neymment that should bee at that day at Camelot, that is Win-
 chester. And the King let crye that he and the King of Scotland
 would iust against all that would come against them. And
 when this crye was made, thether came many knights. So
 there came thether the King of Northgalis, and King Anguish
 of Ireland and the King with the hundred knights, and Sir
 Galahad the haut prince, and the King of Northumberland, and
 many other noble Dukes and earles of diuers countreys. So
 King Arthurn made him ready to depart to these iusts and would
 haue had the Quene with him. But at that time shee would
 not goe shee said, for shee was sicke and might not ride at that
 time. When me repenteth said the King, for these seuen yeares
 yee say not such a fellowship together, except at Whisontide
 when Sir Galahad departed from the Court. Truly said the
 Quene vnto the King, yee must hold me excused, I may not be
 there, and that me repenteth. And many deemed that the Quen
 would be there because of Sir Launcelot du lake, for Sir Launcelot
 would not ride with the King, for hee said that hee was not
 hole of the wound the which Sir Mador had giuen him. Where-
 fore the King was passing heavy and wroth. And so departed
 toward Winchester with his fellowship. And so by way the
 King lodged in a towne called Astolat which is now in En-
 glish called Gilsford. And there the King lay in the Castle. So
 when the King was departed the Quene called Sir Launcelot
 vnto her and thus shee said. Sir Launcelot yee are greatly to
 blame, this to hold you behind my Lord, what trow yee what
 your enemies and mine will say and deeme, nought else but see
 how Sir Launcelot holdeth him euer behind the King and so doth
 the Quene, for that they would haue their pleasure together,
 and thus will they say said the Quene vnto Sir Launcelot, haue
 you no doubt thereof.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXIII.

Now Sir Launcelot rode to Astolat, and receiued a fleue ro beare
 vpon his helme at the request of a maide.

Adame said Sir Launcelot to the Quene, I alow your
 wit, it is of late come sith yee were wise, and therefore
 this time I will be ruled by your counsaile, and this night
 will take my rest, and to morrow betimes will I take my
 way toward Winchester. But wit yee well said Sir Launcelot
 to the Quene Gueneuer that at those iusts I will be against the
 King and all his fellowship. Yee may there doe as yee list said
 the Quene Gueneuer. But by my counsaile ye shall not be against
 the King and your fellowship, for therein are many hardy
 knights of your blood as yee wot well enough it needeth not for
 me to hearse them. Madame said Sir Launcelot, I pray you that
 yee be not displeased with mee, for I will take the aduenture
 that God will send mee. And so on the morrow Sir Launcelot
 went to the Church and heard masse, and after brake his fast,
 and toke his leaue of the Quene and so departed. And then he
 was so long till hee came to Astolat, that now is called Gilsford.
 Whether it hapned him in the euentid he came vnto an barons
 house which hight Sir Bernard of Astolat. And at Sir Launce-
 lots lodging, King Arthur espied him as hee
 walked in a garden beside the Castle how he took his lodging,
 and tolde him full well. It is well said quoth King Arthur to
 the knights that were there with him, in powder garden be-
 side the Castle I haue espied a knight which will full well
 play at the Jests toward which we goe, I vnderstand
 he will doe many meruailous deedes of armes. Who is that,
 they say you tell vs said the knights that were there at that
 time. And we shall not know for mee said the King at this time.
 And the King smiled and went to his lodging. So as Sir
 Launcelot was in his lodging and in his chamber barning
 the old Baron and the hermite came vnto him, making
 reverence, and welcomed him in the best manner that hee
 could. But the old knight knew not Sir Launcelot. Faire Sir
 said

The Historie of Prince Arthur

said Sir Launcelot to his host, I would pray you to lend me a shield that were not openly knowen, for mine is to much knowen. Sir said his host ye shall have your desire, for me seemeth ye be one of the likeliest knights of the world and therefore I shall shew you friendship. Sir wit ye well I haue two sonnes which were but late made knights, and the eldest hight Sir Tirre, and he was hurt the same day that he was made knight that he may not ride, and his shield ye shall haue, for that is not knowen I dare say but heres in no place else. And my pongest sonne hight Sir Lauaine, and if it please you, he shall ride with you vnto those Iusts. And hee is of his age strong and mighty. For much my heart giueth vnto you that ye should bee a noble knight, therefore I beseech you tell mee your name said Sir Bernard. As for that said Sir Launcelot, ye must hold mee excused as at this time, and if God giue me grace to speede well at the Iusts, I shall come againe and tell you. But I pray you heartely said Sir Launcelot, in any wise let me haue your sonne Sir Lauaine with me, and that I may haue his brothers shield. Also this shall be done said Sir Bernard. This old Baron had a daughter that time, that was called the faire maide of Astolat, and ener she beheld Sir Lancelot wonderfully. And she cast such a loue vnto Sir Launcelot that shee could not withstand her loue, wherefore she died. And her name was Elaine la blaunch. So thus as shee came too and fro, shee was so hoot in her loue that shee thought Sir Launcelot should weare vpon him at the Iusts a token of hers. Faire damosell said Sir Launcelot, and if I graunt you that, ye may say I doe more for your loue then iouer I dir for Lady of damosell. When hee remembred him that hee would ride vnto the Iusts disguised, and for because he had neuer before that time bozne no manner of token of no damosell. When he bethought him that he would beare on of hers, that none of his blood thereby might know him. And then hee said, faire damosell, I will graunt you to weare a token of yours vpon my helmet, and therefore what it is, shew me, Sir said shee, it is a red fleue of mine of scarlet, well embroaderen with great pearles. And so shee brought it him. So Sir Launcelot receiued it and said. Neuer of this time

did

and his Knights of the round Table.

so much for no damosell. And then Sir Launcelot betooke the faire damosell his shield in keeping, and prayed her to keepe it till he came againe. And so that night hee had merry rest and great chere, for euer the faire damosell Elaine was about Sir Launcelot all the while that she might be suffered.

CHAP. CXIII.

How the turnement began at Winchester, and what Knights were at the Iusts and of other matters.

Upon a day in the morning King Arthur and all his knights departed. For the king had tarped there three dayes to abide his knights. And so when the king was riden, Sir Launcelot and Sir Lauaine made them ready for to ride, neither of them had white shields, and the red fleue Sir Launcelot let carry with him. And so they took their leaue of Sir Bernard the old Baron, and of his daughter the faire maide of Astolat. And then they rode so long till that they came to a citie which now is called Winchester. And there was great company of knights, Dukes Carles and Barons, and many noble knights. But there was Sir Launcelot priuely lodged by the names of Sir Lauaine with a rich Burgeis, that no man might knowe was ware what they were. And so they soloured there till our Lady day the Assumption, as the great feast was called. So then trumpets began to blow vnto the field. And King Arthur was set on high vpon a scaffold to behold who did best. But King Arthur would not suffer Sir Gawaine to goe with him, for neuer had Sir Gawaine the better if Sir Launcelot were in the field. And many times was Sir Gawaine reuiled when Sir Launcelot came into any Iusts disguised. When some of the kings, as King Anguivish of Ireland, and the king of Scotland, were that time turned vpon King Arthurs side. And then vpon the other part was the king of Northgalis, and the king with the hundred knights, and the king of Northumbria, and Sir Galahad the haut prince. But these three kings with this one Duke were passing weake to hold against King Arthurs part. For with him were the most noble knights of the

the world. So then they withdrew them either partie from other. And euery man made him ready in his best manner to doe what he might. Then Sir Launcelot made him ready, and put on his red heere vpon his head, and fastned it. And Sir Launcelot and Sir Lauaine departed out of Winchester priuely and rode vnto a little leaued wood behind the partie that held against King Archurs part, and there they held them still till the parties smote together. And then came the King of Scotland, and the King of Ireland on King Archurs part. And against them came the King of Northumberland, and the King with the hundred knights smote downe the King of Northumberland, and also the King with the hundred knights smote downe King Anguish of Ireland. Then Sir Palomides that was on King Archurs part, encountred with Sir Galahalt and either of them smote downe other and either partie holpe their Lords on horsebacke againe. So there began a strong assaile on both parties. And then there came in sir Brandiles, sir Sagamore le desirous, sir Dodinas le sauage, sir Kay the seneschal sir Giffet le fise de dieu, sir Mordred, sir Melior de Logris, sir Ozanna le cuer hardy sir Safire, sir Epinogris, and sir Galleron of Galway. All these fiftene knights on the round table. So these with other moe came in together, and beate backe the King of Northumberland, and the King of Malles. When Sir Launcelot saw this as he howed in a little wood he said vnto Sir Lauaine. See yonder is a company of good knights, and they hold them together as Bores that were chased with dogs. What is truth said Sir Lauaine,

CHAP. CXV.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lauaine entred into the field against them of King Archurs Court, and how Sir Lancelot was hurt.

Now said sir Launcelot, and ye will helpe me a little, ye shall see yonder fellowship which chased now these men of our side, that they shall goe as fast backward as they went forward. Sir spare not said sir Lauaine. for I shall doe what I may. When sir Launcelot and sir Lauaine came in at the thick-
est

of the presse, and there sir Launcelot smote downe sir Brandiles, sir Sagamore, sir Dodinas, sir Kay, and sir Giffet, and all this hee did with one speare. And sir Lauaine smote downe Sir Lucas the butler, and sir Bediuer. And then sir Lancelot gat an other great speare, and there hee smote downe sir Agraaine, sir Gaheris, sir Mordred and sir Melior de Logris. And sir Lauaine smote downe Ozanna le cuer hardy. And then sir Launcelot drew out his sword and there hee smote on the right hand and on the left hand, and by great force hee unhorsed Safire, sir Epinogris and sir Galleron. And the knights of the round table withdrew them backe, after they had gotten their horses as well as they might. O mercy Iesu said sir Gawaine, what knight is that I see yonder that doth so meruillous deeds of armes in the field. I wote well, who is that said king Arthur but all this time I will not name him. Sir said sir Gawaine, I would say it were sir Launcelot by the riding and by his buffets that I see him deale. But alway me seemeth it should not be he because he beareth the red heere vpon the helme, for I will him neuer yet beare token at no iusts of Lady nor gentlewoman. Let him be said King Arthur, for he will be better known and doe more or he depart. When the party that were against King Arthur were well comforted and then they held them together, which before hand were sore rebuked. When sir Bors, sir Ector de Maris, and sir Lionell called vnto them the knights of their blood, as sir Blamore de Ganis, sir Bleoberis, sir Aliduke, sir Galihud, sir Galihodin, and sir Bellangere le beuse. So these nine knights of Sir Launcelots kinne thrust in mightely, for they were all noble knights. And they of great hate and vespite that they had to him, thought to rebuke that noble knight Sir Launcelot and sir Lauaine, for they knew them not. And so they came hurtling together and smote downe many knights of Northgalis and of Northumberland. And when Sir Launcelot saw them fare so, hee gat a speare in his hand, and there encountred with them all at once, Sir Bors, Sir Ector de maris, and Sir Lionell smote him all at once with their speares.

And with force of them selfe they smote Sir Launcelots horse vnto the ground. And by misfortune Sir Bors smote Sir Launcelot
Z
celot

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

celot through the shield into the side, and the speare brake, and the head abode still in the side. When Sir Lauaine saw his maister lie vpon the ground he ranne to the King of Scotland and smote him to the ground, and by great force hee tooke his horse and brought him to sir Launcelot and mauger them all he made him to mount vpon that horse. And then Sir Launcelot did mauger them all, hee made him to mount vpon that horse. And then Sir Launcelot gat him a great speare in his hand. And there he smote Sir Bors both horse and man to the ground. And in the same wise he serued sir Ector and Sir Lionell. And Sir Lauaine smote downe Sir Blamore de Ganis. And then sir Launcelot began to draw his sword, for he felt him selfe so sore hurt, that he wend there to haue had his death. And then he smote Sir B'coberis such a buffet vpon the helme, that hee fell downe to the ground in a swoon. And in the same wise he serued Sir Aliduke and Sir Galihud. And Sir Lauaine smote downe Sir Bellangere, that was the sonne of Sir Alisaunder Lorphelin. And by that time sir Bors was horsed. And then he came with sir Ector and sir Lionell, and they three smot with their swords vpon Sir Launcelots helme. And when hee felt there buffets and his wound that was so grievous, then hee thought to doe what hee might while hee might endure. And then hee gaue Sir Bors such a buffet, that hee made him to bow his head passing low. Another with all hee rased off his helme, and might haue slaine him, and so pulled him downe. And in the same manner of wise, hee serued Sir Ector and Sir Lionell. For hee might haue slaine them. But when he saw their visages, his heart might not serue him thereto, but left them there lying. And then after hee hurled in among the thickest presse of them all, and did there meruailous deeds of armes that euer any man saw or heard speake of. And alway the good knight Sir Lauaine was with him. And ther sir Launcelot with his sword smote and pulled downe moe then knights, and the most part were of the round table. And Sir Lauaine did full well that day, for hee smote downe ten knights of the round table.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXVI.

How Sir Launcelot and Sir Lauaine departed out of the field, and in what icopardy Sir Launcelot was.

A mercy Iesu said sir Gawaine vnto King Arthur, I mer-
uaile what knight he is with the red fleue. Sir said King
Arthur, hee will bee knowen or hee depart. And then the King
let blow vnto lodging and the prize was giuen by herawlos to
the knight with the white shield, and that beare the red fleue.
Then came the King with the hundred knights, the King of
Northgalis and the King of Northumberland, and Sir Gala-
had the haut prince, and said vnto sir Launcelot. Faire knight
God thee blisse, for much haue ye done this day for vs, therefore
we pray you that yee will come with vs that yee may receiue
the honour and the prize as yee haue worshipfully deserued it.
By faire Lords said Sir Launcelot, wit ye well if I haue
deserued thanks, I haue sore bought it, and that me repenteth,
for I am like neuer to escape with my life, therfore faire Lords
I pray you that yee will suffer mee to depart where me liketh,
for I am sore hurt, I take no force of none honour, for I had
ouer to rest me then to be Lord of all the world. And therewith
hee groned piteously, and rode a great gallop away from them
until hee came vnder a woods side, and when he saw that hee
was from the field nigh a mile that hee was sure hee might
not bee seene then said hee with a high voice. O gentle knight
Sir Lauaine, helpe me that this trunchion were out of of my side
for it sticketh so sore that it almost sleeth mee. O mine owne
Lord said Sir Lauaine. I would faine helpe you, but it dreads
me sore, and I draw out the trunchion that yee shall bee in pe-
rill of death. I charge you said sir Launcelot as yee loue me
draw it out. And therewith hee descended from his horse and so
did sir Lauaine, and forthwith sir Lauaine drew the trunchion
out of his side. And sir Launcelot gat a great thicke and a
meruailous gastly grone and his blood brast out nigh a pinte
at once, that at the last hee sanke downe vpon his buttocks and
sowned pale and deadly. Alas said sir Lauaine what shall I
doe

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

doe now. And then he turned Sir Launcelot into the wind, but so he lay there nigh halfe an houer as he had been dead. And so at the last sir Launcelot call vp his eies and said. O sir Lauaine helpe mee that I were vpon my horse, for heere fast by within these two miles is a gentle Hermite, which sometime was a noble knight and a great Lord of possessions, and for great goodnesse hee hath taken him vnto wilfull pouertie, and hath forsaken his possessions, and his name is Sir Bawdewine of Britaine, and hee is a full noble surgion and a right good lech. Now let te, helpe me by that I were there. For alway my hart gueth me that I shall not die of my cosin germaines hands. And then with great paine Sir Lauaine holpe him vpon his horse, and then they rode a great gallop together, and euer sir Launcelot blest that it ran downe to the earth. And so by fortune they came vnto that hermitage, the which was vnder a wood, and a great clyffe on the other side, and a faire water running vnder it. And then Sir Lauaine beat on the gate with the end of his speare, and cried. Let me in for Christs sake. And then came there a faire child to them, and asked them what they would. Faire sonne said Sir Lauaine, goe and pray thy Lord the Hermit for Gods sake to let in heere a knight which is right sore wounded, and this day tell thy Lord that I saw him do more deeds of armes then euer I heard say that any man did. So the child went in lightly and then hee brought the hermite, that was a passing good man. So when Sir Lauaine saw him, hee prayed him for Gods sake of succour. What knight is hee said the hermite, is hee of the house of King Arthur or not. I wote not said Sir Lauaine what hee is, nor what is his name, but wel I wote I saw him doe meruailously this day, as of deeds of armes. On whose part was he, said the Hermite. Sir said Sir Lauaine, hee was this day against King Arthur, and there hee wonne the prize of all the knights of the round table. I haue seene the day said the hermite, I would haue loued him the worse, because hee was against my Lord King Arthur, for I was sometime one of the fellowship of round table, but now I thank God I am otherwise disposed. But where is hee let me see him. When sir Lauaine brought the hermit where as the most noble knight Sir Launcelot was.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXVII.

How Sir Launcelot was brought vnto an hermite for to be healed of his wound and of other matters

And when the Hermite beheld him as he sat leaning vpon his saddle-bow euer bleeding pitteously. And alway the knight hermit thought that he should know him, but he could not bring him to knowledge, because hee was so pale for blood. What knight are ye said the hermit and where weare ye come. Faire Lord said Sir Launcelot, I am a stranger and a knight aduenturous that laboureth through out many realms for to win worship. When the hermite aduised him better, and saw by a wound on the cheek that he was Sir Launcelot. Alas said the hermite, mine owne Lord, why hide yee your name from me, forsooth I ought to know you of right, for yee are the most noble knight of the world. For well I know you for sir Launcelot. Sir said he, sith ye know me, helpe me and ye may for Christs sake. For I would be out of this paine at once, either to death or to life. Haue yee no doubt said the hermite, yee shall liue and fare right well. And so the hermite called to him some of his seruants. And so hee and his seruants beare him into the hermitage, and lightly vnarmed him and laid him in his bed. And then anon the hermite stetched the blood, and then he made him to drinke good wine, so by that Sir Launcelot was right well refreshed, and came to himselfe againe, for in those times it was with the guise of hermites, as it now is in these times. For there were no hermites in those daies, but that they had bene men of worship and of prowesse, and those hermites were great households, and refreshed people that were in distress. Now turne we vnto King Arthur, and leaue we Sir Launcelot in the hermitage. So when the kings were come together of both parties, and the great feast should be holden, King Arthur asked the king of Northgalis and his fellowship where was the knight that beare the red floure, bring him before me, that hee may haue his laude and honour and the prize as it is right. Then spake Sir Galahad the haut prince and the king with

The Historie of Prince Arthur

with the hundred knights. Wee suppose that knight is mischieued, and that he is neuer like to see you nor none of vs all, and that is the most greatest pittie that euer wee wist of any knight. Alas said King Arthur. how may this be, is he so hurt. What is his name said King Arthur. Truly said they all, wee know not his name, nor from whence hee came, nor whether he would. Alas said King Arthur, these be to me the worst tidings that came to mee this seauen yeare, for I would not for all the lands I haue, to know and wit it were so, that noble knight were slaine. Know yee him said they all. As for that said King Arthur, whether I know him or not, yee shall not wit for mee what hee is, but Almighty Iesu sent mee good tidings of him. And so said they all. By my head said Sir Gawaine, if it be so that the good knight be so sore hurt, it is great damage and pittie to all this land, for hee is one of the noblest knights that euer I saw in a field handle a speare or a sword. And if he may be found I shall finde him, for I am sure that he is not farre from this towne. Beare you well said King Arthur, and yee may find him, without that he be in such a plight that he may not bestirre himselfe. Iesu defend said sir Gawaine. But I shall know what he is, and if I may find him. Right so sir Gawaine took a squire with him, and rode vpon two hacknies all about Camelot with in fife or seauen mile. But as he went so he came againe, and could here no word of him. When within two dayes King Arthur and all the fellowship returned to London againe. And so as they rode by the way, it hapned Sir Gawaine at Astolat to lodge with Sir Bernard, where as Sir Launcelot was lodged. And so as Sir Gawaine was in his chamber for to take his rest, Sir Bernard the old Warden came to him, and also his faire daughter Elaine for to cheere him and to aske him what tidings he knew, and who did best at the turnement at Winchester. So God helpe me said sir Gawaine there were two knights which beare two white shields, but the one of them beare a red fleur vpon his head. And certaine he was one of the best knights that euer I saw Just in field. For I dare make it good said Sir Gawaine, that one knight with the red fleur smote downe for tie valiant knights of the round table,

and his Knights of the round Table.

able and his fellow did right well and right worshipfully. Now blessed bee God said the faire maide of Astolat, that the good knight sped so well, for hee is the man in the world, the which I first loued. And truly he shall bee the last man that euer after I shall loue. Now faire maide said Sir Gawaine, is that good knight your loue. Certainly said she, wit ye wel he is my loue. When know yee his name, said Sir Gawaine. Naturally said the maide, I know not his name, nor from whence hee came, but to say that I loue him. I promise God and you that I loue him. How had yee knowledge of him first said Sir Gawaine.

CHAP. CXVIII.

How Sir Gawaine was lodged with the Lord of astolat, and ther hee had knowledge that it was Sir Launcelot that beare the red fleur.

Then she told him as yee haue heard before, and how her father betooke him her brother to doe him seruice, and how her father lent him her brother Sir Tires shield, and here with me hee left his owne shield. For what cause did hee so said Sir Gawaine. For this cause said the damosell. For his shield was so well known among many noble knights. Ah faire damosell said Sir Gawaine, please it you for to let me haue a sight of that shield (sir said she,) it is in my chamber couered with a case, and if it will please you to come in with me ye shall see it. Not so said sir Bernard vnto his daughter, let send for it. So when the shield was come, Sir Gawaine took off the case, and when he beheld that shield, he knew anon that it was sir Launcelots shield, and his owne armes. Ah Iesu mercy said sir Gawaine, now is my heart more heauier then euer it was before. Why said the Damosell Elaine. For I haue a great cause said Sir Gawaine, is that knight that oweth that shield your loue. Truly said she, my loue he is, God would that I were his loue. So God me speede said sir Gawaine, faire Damosell yee are the most honourable knight of the world, and the man of most worship. So me thought euer said the Damosell, for neuer at that time for no knight that euer I saw, loued I neuer none

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

none erst. God graunt said sir Gawaine that either of you may reioyce other, but that is in a great aduenture. But truly said sir Gawaine vnto the Damsell, yee may say yee haue a faire grace, for why, I haue knowen that noble knight this foure teene yeares and neuer oz that day, I oz none other knight I dare make it good, saw noz heard, that euer hee beare token oz signe of no Lady, gentlewoman noz maide at no iusts noz turneyment, and therefore faire maide said Sir Gawaine, ye are much beholden to giue him thanks. But I dread me said Sir Gawaine, yee shall neuer see him in this world, and that is great pittie as euer was of earthly knight. Alas said she, how may this bee, is hee slaine, I say not so said Sir Gawaine, but wit yee well that hee is grievously wounded by all manner of signes, and by mens sight moze liker to bee dead then to bee a liue, and wit ye well hee is the noble knight Sir Launcelot, for by his shield I know him. Alas said the faire maide Elaine, how may it be, what was his hurt. Truly said sir Gawaine, the man in the world that loueth him best hurt him so, and I dare say said sir Gawaine, and that knight that hurt him knew the very certaine that hee had hurt sir Launcelot, it would bee the most sorrow that euer came to his heart. Now faire father said Elaine, I require you giue mee leaue to ride and to seeke him, oz else I wot well I shall goe out of my mind, for I shall neuer stint till that I haue found him and my brother sir Lauaine. Do as ye thinke best said her father, for mee right soze repenteth of the hurt of that noble knight. So the maide made her ready befoze sir Gawaine, making great dole. When one the morrow sir Gawaine came vnto King Arthur and told him how hee had found sir Launcelots shield in the keeping of the faire maide of Astolat. All that I knew said King Arthur, and that caused me I would not suffer you to haue to doe at the great iusts. For I espied him said King Arthur when he came into his lodging, full late in the euening in Astolat. But meruaile haue I said King Arthur that euer he would beare any signe of any damosell, for oz now I neuer heard say noz knew that euer he bear any token of no earthly woman. By my head said sir Gawaine, the faire maide of Astolat loueth sir Launcelot meruailously

and his Knights of the round Table.

and well, but what it meaneth I cannot say. And shee is gonen after him soz to seeke him.

So King Arthur and all his court came to London, and there sir Gawaine openly disclosed vnto all the Court that it was the noble knight Sir Launcelot that iusted best.

CHAP. CXIX.

Of the great sorrow that Sir Bors made for the hurt of Sir Launcelot. And of great anger that Queene Gueneuer had because sir Launcelot beare the red fleue.

And when Sir Bors heard that, wit ye wel he was a heauie and a sorrowfull man, and so were all his kinsmen. But when Queene Gueneuer wist that Sir Launcelot beare the fleue of the faire maide of Astolat shee was nigh out of her wits for anger and wrath. And then shee sent for Sir Bors de gaun in all the hast that might bee. So when Sir Bors came afoze the Queene shee said vnto him. Ah Sir Bors haue ye heard how falsly Sir Launcelot hath betraid mee. Alas madame said Sir Bors, I am afraid he hath betrayed himselfe and vs all. For hee said the Queene, though that he bee destroyed, for he is a false traitorous knight. Madame said sir Bors, I beseech you yee not so for wit ye well I may not heere such language of him. Why sir Bors said the Queene should I not call him traitour, when hee beare the red fleue vpon his head at Winchester at the great turnement. Madame said Sir Bors, the red fleue bearing repenteth mee soze, but I dare say hee doth to none euill entent, but for this cause hee beare the red fleue, that none of vs that bee of his blood should know him. For when hee noz none of vs all, neuer knew that euer he beare any signe of maide, Lady noz gentlewoman. Hee on him said the Queene. notwithstanding for all his pride and bouldnes, yet there yee proued your selfe his better. Nay madame said Sir Bors, say yee neuer moze so, for hee beate mee and my followers, and might haue slaine vs, if hee had would. Hee on said the Queene Gueneuer, for I heard Sir Gawaine say befoze my lord Arthur, that meruaile it were to tell the great loue

A a

that

that is betwene the faire maide of Astolat and him. Madame said Sir Bors, I may not warne Sir Gawaine to say what it pleased him, but I dare say as for my Lord Sir Launcelot, that hee loveth no Lady, gentle woman nor maide, but all he loveth in like much, and therefore madame said Sir Bors, yee may say what yee will, but wit yee well that I will haile me to seeke him and find him where so euer hee be, and God send mee good tidings of him.

And so leaue wee them there, and speake we of Sir Launcelot that lay in great perill. So as the faire maide Elaine came to Winchester, shee sought there all about, and by fortune sir Launcelot was ridden to play him and to enchaſe his horſe. And anon as faire Elaine ſaw him, ſhe knew him, and then ſhe cried aloude vnto him. And when hee heard her, anon hee came vnto her. And then ſhe asked her brother. How fareth my Lord Sir Launcelot. Who told you, ſiſter, that my Lords name was Sir Launcelot. When ſhe told him how Sir Gawaine by his ſhield knew him. So they rode together till they came vnto the Hermitage, and anon ſhe alighted ſo Sir Launcelot brought her vnto Sir Launcelot. And when ſhe ſaw him lie ſo ſicke and pale in his bed, ſhe might not ſpeake, but ſodainly ſhe fell vnto the ground in a ſwoone, and there ſhe lay a great while. And when ſhe was reſcued ſhe ſighed and ſaid. O my Lord Sir Launcelot alas why goe ye in this plight, and then ſhe ſowned againe. And then Sir Launcelot prayed Sir Launcelot to take her vp, and to bring her to him. And when ſhe came to her ſelfe againe Sir Launcelot kiſſed her and ſaid. Faire maide why ſaye yee thus, yee put mee ſo paine, wherefore make yee no more ſuch choere, for and yee become to comfort mee yee be right welſome, and of this little hurt that I haue I ſhall bee ſull hailely hole by the grace of God. But Amorette ſaid ſir Launcelot, who told you my name. When the faire maide told him al how ſir Gawaine was lodged with her father, & there by your ſhield hee diſcouered your name. Alas ſaid ſir Launcelot, ſhee repenteth that my name is knowne, for I am ſure that it will turne to anger. And then Sir Launcelot compaſſed in his mind that ſir Gawaine would tell Dame Gueneuer how hee beare the red ſcarfe, and

to whom that he wiſt well that it would turne to great anger. For his maide Elaine neuer went from Sir Launcelot, but wat- ched him daie and night, and gaue ſuch attendance vpon him, there was neuer woman did more kindly for man then ſhe. When Sir Launcelot prayed Sir Launcelot to make eſpies in Winchester for ſir Bors if he came there and told him by what token he ſhould know him by a wound in his forehead. For well ſure ſaid Sir Launcelot that Sir Bors will ſeeke me, for he is the good knight that hurt me.

CHAP CXX.

How Sir Bors ſought Sir Launcelot and found him in the hermitage and of the lamentation betwene them.

Now turne we vnto Sir Bors de ganis that came to Winchester to ſeeke after his coſin Sir Launcelot, and ſo when he came to Winchester, anon there were men that Sir Launcelot had made to lie in watch for ſuch a man. And anon Sir Launcelot had warning thereof. And then Sir Launcelot came to Winchester and found Sir Bors, and there he told him what he was, and what his name was. Now courteous knight ſaid Sir Bors. I require you that yee will bring me vnto my Lord Sir Launcelot. Sir ſaid Sir Launcelot take your horſe and with- in this houre yee ſhall ſee him. And ſo they departed and came vnto the Hermitage, where Sir Launcelot was, and when Sir Bors ſaw Sir Launcelot lie in his bed all pale and diſcoloured, anon Sir Bors loſt his countenance, and for kindneſſe and for pittie he might not ſpeake, but wept ſul tenderly a great while. And then when hee might ſpeake hee ſaid vnto him thus. O my Lord Sir Launcelot, God bleſſe you and ſend you hailely recou- ry, and full heauy am I of my miſfortune, and of mine unhap- pineſſe, for now I may call my ſelfe unhappy, and I dread and feare mee that God is greatly diſpleaſed with me, that hee would ſuffer me to haue ſuch a ſhame for to hurt you that are all our leader and all our worſhip, and therefore I call my ſelfe unhappy, Alas that euer ſuch a captiue knight as I am ſhould

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

haue power by unhappinesse to hurt the most noble knight of all the world where I so shamefully set vpon you, and ouercharged you, and where as yee might haue slaine mee, yee saued mee, and so did not I, for I and my blood did to you our uttermost, I meruaile said Sir Bors that my heart of blood would serue me, wherefore my Lord Sir Launcelot, I aske you mercy. Faire cousin said Sir Launcelot, yee are right hartely welcome, and wit yee well yee say ouermuch to please mee, which pleaseth me not, for why I haue the same I sought, for I would with pride haue overcome you euery ech one, and there in my pride I was nigh slaine, and that was through mine owne default, for I might haue giuen you warning of my being there, and then had I not bene hurt. For it is an old said law. There is an hard battle where as kinne and frendship doe battaile either against other, there may bee no mercy, but mostall warre. Therefore faire cousin said Launcelot, let this speach ouerpasse, and all shall bee wel come that God sendeth, and let vs leaue of this matter, and let vs speake of some reioycing. For this that is done, may not bee vndone, and let vs find some remedy how soone that I may bee hole. Then Sir Bors leaned vpon his beds side, and there hee told Sir Launcelot how the Quene was passing wroth with him, because he weare the red sleue at the great iusts. And there Sir Bors told him all how Sir Gawaine discovered it by his shield which he left with the faire maide of Astolat. When is the Quene wroth said Sir Launcelot, and therefore am I right heauy, for I deserued no wroth, for all that I did was because that I would not bee knownen. Knight so excused I you said Sir Bors, but all was in vaine. For hee said more larglier to mee then I to you now. But is this shee said Sir Bors that is so buisie about you that men call the faire maide of Astolat. Shee it is said Sir Launcelot, which by nino manner of meanes I can put from mee. Why should ye put her from you said Sir Bors, shee is a passing faire damosell, and well beleeue, and well taught, and would God, faire cousin said Sir Bors, that yee could loue her but as to that I may not noz dare noz counsaile you, but, I see well

and his Knights of the round Table.

well (said Sir Bors) by her diligence about you, that shee loueth you most dearly. What mee repenteth said Sir Launcelot. Sir said Sir Bors shee is not the first that hath lost her paine vpon you, that is the more pittie. And so they talked of many other things mo, And so within three or foure daies Sir Launcelot was big and strong againe.

CHAP. CXXI.

Now Sir Launcelot armed him, for to assay himselfe if hee might beare armes, and how his wound brake out againe.

When Sir Bors told Sir Launcelot how that there was swozne a great turneyment and iusts betwene King Arthur and King of Northgalis, that should be vpon Allhalowmasse day beside Winchester. As that truth said Sir Launcelot, then hee abode stil with mee a little while until that I be whole, I feele myselfe right big and strong. blessed be God said Sir Bors. When they abode there almost a moneth together. And euen this faire maide Elaine did her diligence and labour night and day vnto Sir Launcelot, that there was neuer child more in her vnto the father noz wife vnto her husband then was the faire maide of Astolat. Wherefore Sir Bors was greatly delighted with her. So vpon a day by the assent of Sir Launcelot Sir Bors and Sir Lauaine made the hermite to goe seeke in woods for sundry herbs. And so Sir Launcelot made faire Elaine for to gather herbs for him to make him a baine. In the meane while Sir Launcelot made him to arme him at all points, and there he taught for to assay his armour & his speare for his hurt or not. And when hee was vpon his horse, hee spurred him fierly, and the horse was passing lusty and fresh, because hee was not layd in a moneth before. And then Sir Launcelot couched his bow in the rest. So that courser leapt mightely when hee felt the spurres and him that was vpon him, the which was the noblest knight of the world, hee feared him rigorously, and he stily and stably kept still the speare in the rest. And there with Sir Launcelot strained himselfe so straightly with so great force for to get his horse forwarde, that the botome

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

of the wound brake, both with in and without, and therewith the blood came out so fierly, that he felt him selfe so feeble that he might not sit upon his horse. And then Sir Launcelot cried vnto Sir Bors. Ah Sir Bors and Sir Lauaine helpe mee, for I come vnto mine end. And therewith he fell downe on the one side vnto the ground like a dead corpe. And then Sir Bors and Sir Lauaine came to him making out of measure great sorow. And so by fortune the maide Blaine heard their sorow and dole, and then she came thither. And when she found Sir Launcelot there armed in the place, she cried and wept as she had bene wroth, and then she kissed him and did what she might to awake him. And then she rebuked her brother and Sir Bors, and called them both false traitours, and why they would take him out of his bed. Where she cried and said she would appeale them of his death. With this came the holy Hermit Sir Boudwine of Britaine, and when he found Sir Launcelot in that pligh, he said but little but wit ye well he was right wroth. And then he said to them. Let vs haue him in. And so they all beare him into the Hermitage and vngarred him, and laide him in his bed, and euermore his wound bled piteously, but he stirred no limme of his body. When the knight Hermit put a thing in his nose and a little deale of water in his mouth, and then Sir Lancelot wakened out of his slowe. And then the Hermit stampt his bleeding, and when he might speake he asked Sir Launcelot why he put his life in ieopardy. Sir said Sir Launcelot, for because I wend I had bene strong enough, and also Sir Bors told me that there should be at All-halotomasse a great iusts betwene King Arthur and the King of Northgalis, and therefore I thought to assay my selfe, if I might bee there or not. Ah Sir Launcelot said the Hermit, your heart and your courage will neuer be done vntill your last daie, but ye shall do now by my counsaile, let Sir Bors depart from you, and let him doe at that turneyment what he may, and by the grace of God said the knight hermit by that the turneyment be done, and ye come hither againe, Sir Launcelot shall be as whole as ye, so that hee will bee ruled by mee.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXXII.
Sir Bors returned and told tidings of Sir Launcelot, and of the turneyment, and vnto whom the prisoe was giuen.

And then Sir Bors made him ready to depart from Sir Launcelot. And then Sir Launcelot said. Faire cousin Sir Bors, I recommend me vnto all them vnto whom I ought to recommend mee vnto, and I pray you enforce your selfe at that place, that ye may be best for my loue, and heere shall I abide at the mercy of God, till ye come againe. And so Sir Bors departed and came to the court of King Arthur, and told them what place he had left Sir Launcelot. What me repenteth said King, but I shall haue his life, we all may thank God. And then Sir Bors told the Quene in what great ieopardie Sir Launcelot was, when he wold assay his horse. And al that madame was for the loue of you, because hee would haue his turneyment. He on him recreant knight said the Quene. For wit ye will I am right sorie and he shall haue his life. His life shall hee haue said Sir Bors, and who that would hurt him (except you madame,) wee that bee of his blood should hurt our selfe. But madame said Sir Bors, ye haue bene sometimes displeased with my Lord Sir Launcelot, but at all times at the end ye find him a true knight. And so he departed. And then every knight of the round table that was there present at that time, made them ready to beat that iusts at All-halotomasse. And thither drew many knights of many countreies. And as All-halotomasse drew nere, thither came the King of Northgalis, and the King with the hundred knights and Sir Galahalt the haue prince of Swylus. And thither came King Anguish of Ireland, and the King of Scotland. So these three knights came on King Arthurs part. And so that day Sir Gawaine did great deedes of armes, and began first, and the hermes numbered that Sir Gawaine smot downe twenty knights. Then came in at that same time Sir Bors de ganis and he was numbered that he had smitten downe twenty knights and therfore the prisoe was giuen betwene them, both for they began first.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

first and longest endured. Also Sir Gareth did that day great deedes of armes, for he smote downe and pulled downe thirtie knyghts, But when he had done these deedes he taried not, but so departed, and therefore he lost his pryse. And Sir Palomides did great deedes of armes that day, for hee smote downe twenty knyghts, but hee departed sobainly. And men deemed that Sir Gareth and he rode together to some adventure.

So when this turnement was done, Sir Bors departed, and rode till he came to Sir Launcelot his cousin, and then he found him walking on his fete, and there either made great toy of other. And so Sir Bors told Sir Launcelot of all the Joustlike as ye haue heard. A meruaile said Sir Launcelot that Sir Gareth when he had done such deedes of armes that he would not tary. Whereof wee meruailed all said Sir Bors, for but if it were you or Sir Tristram, or Sir Lamorake de galis. I saw neuer knight beare downe so many in so little a while as did Sir Gareth, and anon hee was gone wee wist not where. By my head said Sir Launcelot, hee is a noble knight and a mighty man, and well breathed. And if that he were strongly assaied said Sir Launcelot, I would deeme he were goodenough for any man that beareth life. And he is a gentle knight, curteous, true and bounteous, meeke, and mild, and in him is no manner of male engin, but plaine, faithfull and true. So then they made them ready to depart from the hermite. And so upon a day they toke their horses, and toke Elaine le Blaunch with them. And when they came to Astolat there they were well lodged and had greete cheare of Sir Bernard the old Baron, and of Sir Tirre his sonne. And so on the morrow when Sir Launcelot should depart faire Elaine brought her father with her, and her two brethren Sir Tirre and Sir Lauaine and thus she said.

CHAP. CXXIII.

Of the great lamentation that the faire maide of Astolat made when Sir Launcelot should depart, and how she die for his loue

MY LORD Sir Launcelot, now I see that yee will depart, faire and curteous knight haue mercy vpon mee, and suffer

and his Knights of the round Table.

suffer me not to die for your loue. What would yee that I did said Sir Launcelot, I would haue you vnto my husband said the maide Elaine. Faire damosell I thanke you said Sir Launcelot, but certainly said hee, I cast mee neuer to bee married. Then faire knight said shee, will yee bee my paramour. Iesu defend mee said Sir Launcelot, for then should I reward your father and your brother full euil for their great goodnesse. Alas said she, then must I needes die for your loue. We shall not said Sir Launcelot, for wit yee well faire damosell that I might haue bene married and I had would, but I neuer applyed mee to bee married. But because faire Damosell that yee will loue mee as yee say yee doe, I will for your good loue and kindnesse shew you some goodnesse, and that is this. What wheresoeuer yee will set your heart vpon some good knight that will wed you, I shall giue you together a thousand pound yearly to you and to your heires, thus much will I giue you faire maide for your kindnesse, and allway while I liue to be your owne knight. Of all this said the damosell I will none, for but if ye wil wed mee or else be my paramour at the least, wit ye well Sir Launcelot, my good daies are done. Faire Damosell said Sir Launcelot, of these two things yee must pardon me. When she shrieked shrilly and fell downe to the ground in a sowne. And that gentlewoman beare her into her chamber, and there she made ever much sorow. And then Sir Launcelot would depart. And ther hee asked Sir Lauaine what he would doe. What should I doe said Sir Lauaine but follow you, but if ye drine mee from you. When came Sir Bernard to Sir Launcelot and said vnto him thus. I can not see but that my daughter Elaine will die for your sake. I may not doe thereto said Sir Launcelot, for that me sore repenteth. For I report mee vnto your selfe that my proffer is faire, and me repenteth said Sir Launcelot that she loueth mee as shee doth, I was neuer the causer of it, for I report me vnto your sonne. I early nor late proffered her bountie nor faire behests. And as for me said Sir Launcelot, I dare not doe all that a good knight should doe, that shee is a cleane maide for mee, both for doo and for will. And I am right heauie of her distresse, for shee is a full faire maide, good and gentle

gentle, and right well taught. Father said Sir Lauaine, I dare make it good that shee is a cleane maid as for my Lord Sir Launcelot, but shee doth as I doe, for sithence that I first saw my Lord sir Launcelot, I could neuer depart from him, nor nought I will, and I may follow him. When Sir Launcelot took his leaue, and so they departed and came to Winchester. And when King Arthur wist that Sir Launcelot was come home and sound, the King made great ioy of him, and so did Sir Gawaine and all the knights of the round table except Sir Agrawaine and Sir Mordred. And also quene Gueneuer was wood wroth with Sir Launcelot, and would by no meanes speake with him, but estranged her selfe from him. And Sir Launcelot made all the meanes that hee might to speake with the Queene, but it would not be.

Now speake we of the faire maide of Astolote, which made such sorrow day and night that she neuer slept, eate nor dranke. And alway she made her complaint vnto sir Lancelot. So when shee had thus endured about ten dayes, that shee felt that she must needs passe out of this world. When shee shroue her cleane and receiued her creatour, and euer shee complained still vpon Sir Launcelot. When her Ghostly father had her leaue such thoughts. When said shee why should I leaue such thoughts, am I not an earthly woman, and all the while the breath is in my body I may complaine, for my beloue is that I doe none offence, though I loue an earthly man, and I take God vnto my record I neuer loued non but sir Launcelot du lake nor neuer shall. And a cleane maiden I am for him and for all other. And sith it is the suffrance of God that I shall die for the loue of so noble a knight, I beseech the high father of heauen for to haue mercy vpon my soule, and that mine innumerable paines which I suffer may be allegiance of part of my sinnes. For our swete sauour Iesu Christ said the Maiden, I take thee to record I was neuer greater offender against thy lawes but that I loued this noble knight, sir Launcelot out of all measure, and of my selfe (good Lord) I might notwithstanding the seruient loue, wherefore I haue my death. And then shee called her father sir Bernard, and her brother Sir Ture, and heartely shee prayed her father

father that her brother might write a letter like as she would write it. And so his father graunted her. And when the letter was written word by word like as shee had deuised, then shee prayed her father that shee might be watched vntill she were dead, and while my body is whole, let this letter be put in to my right hand, and my hand bound fast with the letter vntill that I be cold, and let me be put in a faire bed with all the richest clothes that I haue about me, and so let my bed and all my rich clothes be laide with me in a chariot to the next place where as the Thames is, and there let me be put in a barge, and but one man with me, such as yee trust to stee me thither, and that my barge be couered with blacke samite ouer and ouer. Thus father I beseech you let me be done. So her father graunted her faithfully that all this thing should be done like as shee had deuised. When her father and her brother made great dole, for when this was done, anon shee died. And so when shee was dead, the corpes and the bed and all was led the next way vnto the Thames, and there a man and the corpes and all were put in a barge on the Thames and so the man steered the barge to Westminster, and there hee rowed a great while too and fro or any man espied it.

CHAP. CXXIIII.

How the corpes of the faire maide of Astolote arriued before King Arthur, and of the burying, and how Sir Launcelot offered the masse peny.

So by fortune King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer were speaking together at a window. And so as they looked into the Thames, they espied the blacke barge, and had meruaile what it might meane. When the King called Sir Kay, and shewed him it. Sir said Sir Kay, wit yee well that there is some new tidings. So ye thither said the King vnto Sir Kay, and take with you sir Brandiles and sir Agrawaine, and bring me ready word what is there. When these three knights departed and came to the barge, and went in. And there they found the fairest corpes lying in a rich bed that euer they saw, and a poor man sitting

sitting in the end of the barge, and no word would speake. So these three knights returned vnto the King againe, and told him what they had found. That faire corps will I see said King Arthur. And then the King took the Quene by the hand and went thither. When the King made the barge to be holden fast. And then the King and the Quene went in with certaine knights with them. And ther they saw a faire gentlewoman lying in a rich bed couered vnto her middell with many rich clothes, and all was of cloth of gold. And shee lay as though she had smiled. When the Queene espied the letter in the right hand and told the King thereof. When the King took it in his hand and said. Now I am sure this letter will tell what she was and why shee is come hither. Then the King and the Quene went out of the barge. And the King commanded certaine men to waite vpon the barge. And so when the King was come within his chamber, he called many knights about him, and said that hee would wit openly what was written within that letter. When the King brake it open, and made a Clarke to read it. And this was the entent of the letter.

Most noble Knight my Lord Sir *Launcelot du lake*, now hath death made vs two at debate for your loue, I was your lover, that men called the faire maiden of Astolat. Therefore vnto all Ladies I make my moone. Yet for my soule that yee pray, and bury me at the least, and offer me my masse peny. This is my last request. And a cleane Maide I died, I take God to my witnesse. Pray for my soule Sir *Launcelot*, as thou art a Knight pearles. This was all the substance of the letter, And when it was red, the Queene and all the knights wept for pittie of the dolesull complaints. Then was Sir *Launcelot* sent for. And when hee was come, King Arthur made a letter to be red to him. And when Sir *Launcelot* had heard it word by word, hee said. My Lord King Arthur, wit you well that I am right heauy of the death of this faire damosell, God knoweth I was neuer causer of her death by my will, and that I will report mee vnto her owne brother here hee is Sir *Lauaine*. I will not say nay said Sir *Launcelot*, but that shee was both faire and good, and much I was beholden vnto her, but shee loued me out of measure. We might haue

haue shewed her said the Quene some bountie and gentlenesse that ye might haue preserved her life. Madame said Sir *Launcelot*, shee would none other way bee answered, but that shee would bee my wife, or else my paramour, and of these two I would not graunt her, But I proffered her for her good loue which shee shewed me a thousand pound yearly to her and her heires, and to wed any manner of knight that she could find best to loue in her heart. For Madame said Sir *Launcelot*, I loue not to bee constrained to loue, for loue must arise of the heart, and not by constraint. What is truth said King Arthur & many knights. Loue is free in himselfe and neuer wil be bound. For where hee is bound, hee loseth himselfe. Then said the King vnto Sir *Launcelot*. It will be your worship that ye ouersee that shee bee buried worshipfully. Sir said Sir *Launcelot*, that shall bee done as I can best deuise. And so many knights went thither to behold the faire dead Maide. And on the morrow shee was richly buried, and Sir *Launcelot* offered her masse peny. And all the knights of the round table that were there at that time offered with Sir *Launcelot*. And then when all was done the poore men went againe with the barge. When the Quene sent for Sir *Launcelot*, and praised him of mercy, for because she had been wroth with him causeles. This is not the first time said Sir *Launcelot* that ye haue beene displeased with my counsels. What madame, euer I must suffer you, but what sorrow that I endure, ye take no force. So this passed forth all that winter with all manner of hunting and hawking and iusts and turneys were many betweene many great Lords. And euer in all manner of place Sir *Lauaine* gat great worship, that hee was nobly renowned among many of the knights of the round table. Thus it passed on untill Christmasse and euery day there were iustmade for a diamond, that who soeuer iust best, should haue a diamond. But Sir *Launcelot* would not iust but if it were a great iusts eried. But Sir *Lauaine* iusted there all the Christmasse passing well, and most was praised. For there were but few that did so well as hee, wherefore all manner of knights deemed that Sir *Lauaine* should be made knight of the round table at the next high feast of Pentecost.

The Historke of Prince ARTHUR

So after Christmasse King Arthur let call to him many of his knights and there they aduised them together to make a part and a great turneyment and iusts. And the King of Portugalys aid vnto King Arthur that hee would haue on his part King Anguish of Ireland, and the King with the hundred knights, and the King of Northumberland, and sir Galahade the haut prince. So these foure kings and this mighty duke tooke a part against King Arthur and the knights of the round table. And the cry was made of the day and iusts should be beside Westminster or Candlemasse day, wherof many knights were full glad, and made them ready to be at that iust in the freshest manner that they could. When Queene Gueneuer sent for sir Launcelot, and when hee was come shee said to him in this manner, I warne you that yee ride no more in no iusts nor turneyment, but that your kinsmen may know you. For at these iusts that shall be, yee shall haue of me a sseue of cloth of gold, And I pray you for my sake enforce your selfe so there, that men may speake of you worship. But I charge you as yee will haue my loue that yee warne your kinsmen that yee will beare that day the sseue of cloth of gold vpon your helmet. And dame said sir Launcelot your desire shall be done. And so either made of other great ioy. And when Sir Launcelot saw his time hee told Sir Bors that he would depart, and no mo with him but sir Lauaine vnto the good hermit that dwelled in the forrest of Windore whose name was sir Brattias, and there he thought to rest him, and to take all the ease that hee might, because hee would be fresh at that day of iusts. When sir Launcelot and sir Lauaine were ready they departed, that no creature wils where hee was become but the noble men of his blood. And so when hee was come vnto the hermitage, wit you well hee had good cheare. And so daily sir Launcelot would go to a well fast by the hermitage, and there hee would lie downe and see the well spring and bubble and sometime he slept there. So at that time there was a Lady dwelled in that forrest, and shee was a great huntresse, and daily shee used to hunt. And alway she beare her bow with her. And no men went neuer with her, but alwayes women, and they were shoters, and could well kill a

Deere,

and his Knights of the round Table.

Deere, but at the stalle and at the trest. And they dailey beare bowes and arrowes, hoznes and wood knives, and many good hounds they had, both for the string and for a bait. So it hapned that this Lady the huntresse had baited her hounds for the bow at a barren Wind. And this barren Wind tooke her flight ouer heathes and woods. And euer this Lady and part of her gentlewomen costed the Wind, and checked it by the noyse of the hound, for to haue met with the hind, at some water. And so it hapned that the same Wind came to the well whereas sir Launcelot was sleeping and slumbring. And so the Wind when he came to the well for heate he went to the soyle, and there he lay a great while. And the hound came fast after, and vnbetast about for she had lost the perfect sewt of the Wind. Right so there came the Lady huntresse, which knew by her hound that the Wind was at the soyle in that well. And there shee came sildy and found the Wind, and anon she put a broad arrow in her bow, and shot at the Wende and ouershot the Wende, and by misfortune the broad arrow smote Sir Launcelot in the thicke of the buttocke ouer the barbes. When Sir Launcelot felt himselfe so hurt hee hurried vp woodly and saw the Lady which had smitten him. And then when he saw shee was a woman, he said thus. Lady or damosell what that thou be, in an euill time beare thou a bow, the deuill made thee a shoter.

CHAP. CXXV.

How Sir Launcelot after that hee was hurt of a gentlewoman came vnto an hermitte, and of other matters.

Now mercy faire Sir said the Lady, I am a gentlewoman that vsed here in this forrest hunting, and our Lord knoweth I saw you not, but as heere was a barren Wind at the soyle in the well, and I wend to haue done well, but my hand strued. Alas said sir Launcelot now haue ye mischiewed mee. And so the Lady departed. And Sir Launcelot as well as hee might drew out the arrow, and the head abode still in his buttocke, and so went weakly vnto the hermitage, euer wailing as hee went. And when Sir Lauaine and the Hermite espied that

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

that Sir Launcelot was so hurt, wit yee well they were passing heauie. But Sir Lauaine nor the hermite wist not how he was hurt, nor by whom. And then were they wroth out of measure. When with great paine the Hermite gat out the arrow head out of Sir Launcelots buttocke, and much of his blood hee shed at that time, and the wound was passing soze, and right unhappely smitten for the wound was in such a place that sir Launcelot might not sit in a saddle. Ah mercy Iesu said sir Launcelot, I call my selfe the most unhappiest knight that liueth. For euer when I would fainest haue worship, there befalleth me euer some unhappie thing. Now so Iesu me helpe said sir Launcelot, and if no man would but God, I shall bee in the field vpon Candlemasse day at the Iusts whatsoeuer fall of it: So all that might bee gotten to heale Sir Launcelot was had. So when the day was come, Sir Launcelot let deuise that hee was arayed, and Sir Lauaine and their horses as though they had bene Sarasins. And so they departed, and came nigh to the field. The king of Northgalis with an hundred knights with him. And the king of Northumberland also brought with him an hundred good knights. And King Anguish of Ireland brought with him an hundred good knights ready to Iust. And sir Galahad the haute prince brought with him an hundred good knights. And the king with the hundred knights brought with him as many, and all these were proued knights. And then came in King Arthurs part, and there came in the king of Scotland with an hundred knights. And King Vrience of Coze brought with him an hundred good knights. And King Howell of Brittain brought with him an hundred knights. And King Chalaunce of Clarene brought with him an hundred knights. And King Arthur himselfe came into the field with two hundred knights, and the most part were knights of the table round, which were proued noble knights. And there were old knights set vpon scaffolds to iudge with the Quene who did best.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP. CXXVI.

Of a great Iusts done all the Christmasse, and of a great Iusts and turneyment ordained by King Arthur, and of Sir Lancelot.

Then they blew vnto the field, and there the king of Northgalis encountred with the king of Scotland, and there the king of Scotland had a fall. And the king of Ireland smot down king Vriens. And the king of Northumberland smot down King Howell of Brittain. And Sir Galahad the haute prince smote downe King Chalaunce of Clarene. And that King Arthur was wroth and ranne to the king with the hundred knights, and there King Arthur smote him downe. And after with that same speare King Arthur smote downe three other knights. And then when his speare was broken, King Arthur did passing well. And so therewithall came Sir Gawaine and Sir Gaheris Sir Agraaine and Sir Mordred. And there euerie each of them smote downe a knight. And Sir Gawaine smote downe foure knights. And then there began a full strong meddle. For then there came in the knights of Sir Launcelots blood, and Sir Gareth and Sir Palomides with them and many knights of the round table. And they began to hold the foure kings and the mightie Duke so hard, that they were discomforted. But this Duke Sir Galahad the haute prince was a noble knight, and by his mightie prowesse of Armes he held the knights of the round table straight enough. All this doings saw sir Launcelot, and then he came into the field with Sir Lauaine as it had bene thunder. And then Sir Bors and the knights of his blood espied sir Launcelot, and said vnto them all. I warne you beware of him with the fluxe of gold vpon his head, for hee himselfe is Sir Launcelot du lake. And for great goodnesse Sir Bors warned Sir Gareth. I am well apaid said Sir Gareth that I may know him in the same aray. That is the good and gentle knight Sir Lauaine said Sir Bors. So Sir Launcelot encountred with Sir Gawaine, and there by force sir Launcelot smote downe Sir Gawaine and his horse to the ground. And in likewise hee smote downe Sir Agraaine and

C c

Sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

and Sir Gaheris and also hee smote downe Sir Mordred, and all this was done with one speare. When Sir Lauaine met with sir Palomides, and either met other so hard and so fierly, that both their hozes fell to the ground, and then they were hozed againe. And then met sir Launcelot with sir Palomides, and there sir Palomides had a fall. So sir Launcelot or euer hee stinted as fast as he might get speares, he smote downe thirtie knights, and the most part of them were knights of the round table. And euer the knights of his blood with-drew them, and made them to doe in other places whereas sir Lancelot came not. And then King Arthur was wroth when he saw sir Launcelot doe such deedes. Then the king called vnto sir Gawaine, sir Mordred, sir Kay, sir Griflet, sir Lucan the butler, sir Pedituere, sir Palomides, and sir Saire his brother. and so King Arthur with these nine knights made them ready for to set vpon sir Launcelot and vpon Sir Lauaine. All this espied sir Bors de Galis and sir Gareth of Wykeny. Now I dread mee soze said sir Bors, that my Lord sir Launcelot will be hard matched. By my head said sir Gareth, I will ride vnto my Lord sir Launcelot for to helpe him, befall of mee what befall may, for hee is the same man that made me knight. We shall not doe so said sir Bors by my counsaile vnles that ye were disguised. We shall see me disguised said Sir Gareth and that anon. And therewith he espied a Welsh knight where he was to rest himselfe, and hee was soze hurt befoze by Sir Gawaine and to him sir Gareth rode, prayed him of his knighthood for to lend him his shield for his. I will well said the Welsh knight. And when sir Gareth had his shield, it was greene with a maiden that seemed in it. When Sir Gareth came driuing as fast as he might vnto sir Launcelot, and said thus vnto him. Sir knight keepe thy selfe, for yonder cometh King Arthur with nine noble knights with him, to put you to rebuke, and so am I come to beare you fel lowship for old loue ye haue shewed me. Gramercie said Sir Lancelot. Sir said sir Gareth encounter ye with sir Gawaine and I shall encounter with sir Palomides, and let sir Lauaine, match with King Arthur. And when wee haue deliuered them let vs there hold vs sadly together. Then came King Arthur with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with his nine knights with him, and Sir Launcelot encountered with Sir Gawaine, and gaue him such a buffet that the arson of his saddle broke, and Sir Gawaine fell to the earth. When Sir Gareth encountered with the good knight Sir Palomides, and he gaue him such a buffet that both his hozse and hee dashed to the earth. Then encountered King Arthur with Sir Lauaine, and there either of them smote other to the earth hozse and all that they lay a great while.

Then Sir Launcelot smote downe sir Agraaine, sir Gaheris, and sir Mordred. And then Sir Gareth smote downe Sir Kay, Sir Saire, and Sir Griflet. And then Sir Lauaine was hozed againe, hee smote downe Sir Lucas the butler and Sir Pedituere. And then there began a great throng of good knights. When sir Launcelot hurled and pulled off helmes, so that at that time there might none sit him a buffet with his speare nor with his sword. And sir Gareth did such dedes of armes, that all men meruailed what knight hee was with the greene shield, for hee smote downe that day and pulled downe more then thirtie knights. And Sir Launcelot meruailed greatly when hee beheld Sir Gareth doe such deedes what knight hee might bee, and sir Lauaine pulled downe and smote downe twentie knights. Also Sir Launcelot knew not sir Gareth, for and sir Tristram de Liones or sir Lamorake de Galis had beene aliue, sir Lancelot would haue deemed that hee had beene one of them twaine.

So euer as Sir Launcelot, Sir Gareth, and Sir Lauaine fought. And on the other side Sir Bors, Sir Ector de Maris, sir Lionell sir Bleoberis, and Sir Galahud sir Galihodin, sir Pelleas, with moe other of King Bors blood fought on an other part, and held the king with the hundred knights and also the king of Northumberland right straight and right hardy.

How King Arthur meruailed him much of the iusting and turneyment in the field, and how he rode and found Sir Launcelot.

So this iusting and this turneyment endured long, til it was almost night. For the knights of the round table releued euer vnto King Arthur for the King was wroth out of measure, but hee and his knights might not preuaile that day. When Sir Gawaine said vnto King Arthur I meruaile where all this day Sir Bors de galis and his fellowship of Sir Launcelots blood be, I meruaile me all this day greatly that they be not about you. It is for some cause said Sir Gawaine. By my head said Sir Kay, Sir Bors is yonder all this day vpon the right hand of the field, and there hee and his blood done more worshipfuller then we doe. It may well be said Sir Gawaine, but I dread me alway of guile. For vpon paine of my life said Sir Gawaine, this knight with the red floure of gold is Sir Launcelot himselfe. I see wel by his riding and by his great strokes giuing, and the other knight in the same cloour is the good young knight Sir Lauaine. Also that knight with the grane shield is my brother Sir Gareth, and yet hee hath disguised himselfe, for no man can make him to be against Sir Launcelot, because he made him knight. By my head said King Arthur, nephew I loue you, therefore tell me now what is your best counsaile. Sir said Sir Gawaine, yee shall haue my best counsaile. Let blow vnto lodging, for and if hee be Sir Launcelot, and my brother Sir Gareth with him, with the helpe of that good young knight Sir Lauaine, trust mee truly it will be no boote to striue with them, but if we should fall ten or twelue vpon one knight, & that were no worship, but shame. We say truth said the King. And for to say sooth said the King, it were shame to vs so many as wee be to set vpon them any more. For wit ye well said King Arthur, they be three good knights and namely that knight with the red floure of gold. So then they blew vnto lodging. But sooth withall King Arthur let send vnto the four Kings and vnto the mighty duke that the knight with the floure of

of cloth of gold depart not from them, but that the King may speake with him. When sooth withall King Arthur alighted and vnrmed him, and gat him a little hackney and rode after Sir Launcelot, for euer hee had an eye vpon him. And so they found him among the four Kings and the duke. And there King Arthur praised them all vnto supper. And they answered with a good will. And so when they were all vnrmed, King Arthur knew Sir Launcelot, Sir Lauaine and Sir Gareth. Ah Sir Launcelot said King Arthur, this day yee haue hated me and my knights. So they went vnto King Arthurs lodging all together. And there was a great feast and great reuell, and the prize was giuen vnto Sir Launcelot. And by heraulds they named him that hee had smitten downe fiftie knights, and Sir Gareth thirtie five and Sir Lauaine twentie four knights. When Sir Launcelot told the King and the Queene how the Lady huntresse shote him in the foreest of Windsor in the buttocke with a broad arrow And how the wound thereof was that time Sir Arches deepe and also in like long. And King Arthur blamed Sir Gareth, because he left his fellowship and held with Sir Launcelot. For Lord said Sir Gareth, hee made mee a knight and when I saw him so hard bestead mee thought it was my worship to helpe him, because I saw him doe so much, and so many noble knights against him. And when I vnderstood that hee was Sir Launcelot da lake, I shamed me to see so many knights against him alone. Truly said King Arthur vnto Sir Gareth, ye say well, and worshipfully haue yee done, and to your selfe great worship. And all the dayes of my life said King Arthur vnto Sir Gareth, wit ye well I shall loue you and trust you the better. For euer said King Arthur, it is a worshipfull knights dede for to helpe an other worshipfull knight, when hee saeth you in great danger. For euer a worshipfull man will bee loth to see a worshipfull man shamed. And he that is of no worship and faueth with cowardise, neuer shall hee shew gentlenesse, nor no manner of goodnesse where as hee saeth a man in any danger. For then euer a coward will shew no mercy. And alwayes a good knight will doe euer to an other knight as hee should be done to himselfe. So then ther were made great feasts

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

to Kings and dukes: And reuell, game and play, and all manner of noblenesse was vsed. And hee that was curteous, true, and faithfull vnto his friend, was that time cherished.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How true loue is likned vnto summer.

AND thus it passed on from Candelmasse vntill after Easter that the moneth of may was come, when euery lusty heart beginneth to blossome, and to bring forth fruit. For like as herbes and trees bring forth fruit and flourish in may, likewise euery lusty heart, that is in any manner a louer springeth and flourisheth in lusty deeds. For it giueth vnto all louers courage that lusty moneth of May in some thing, for to constrain him to some manner of thing, more in that moneth then in any other moneth, for diuers causes. For then all herbes and trees renew a man and woman. And in likewise louers call againe to their mind old gentlenesse and old seruice and many kind deeds that were forgotten by negligence. For like as winter rasure doth alway rase and deface greene summer. So fareth it by vntable loue in a man, and in woman, for in many persons there is no stabilitie. For wee may see all day, a little blast of winters rasure, anon wee shall deface and put alway true loue, for little or naught that cost much thing, this is no wisdom nor stabilitie, but his feeblenesse of nature and great disworship who soeuer bleth this. Therefore like as May moneth flourisheth and flourisheth in many gardens, so in likewise let euery man of worship flourish his hart in this world. First vnto god, and next vnto the ioy of them that he promisseth his faith vnto. For there was neuer worshipfull woman, but they loued one better than an other. And worship in armes may neuer be defouled. But first reserue the honour vnto god. And secondly the quarell must come of thy lady, and such loue I call vertuous loue. But now a dayes men can not loue may not endure by reason. For where they be soone accozded, and hastily heat soone cooleth. Right so seareth loue now a dayes soone hot soone cold. This is no stabilitie. But the old loue was

and his Knights of the round Table.

not so. Men and women cold loue, together seuen yeares, and thenceforth lusts were betwene them. And then was loue truth and faithfulness. And soe in like wise was loue vsed in King Arthurs dayes, wherefore I liken loue now a dayes vnto summer and winter. For like as the one is hot and the other cold, so fareth loue now a dayes. Therefore all ye that be louers, call vnto your remembrance the moneth of May, like as did queen Gueneuer. For whom I make here a little mention that while she liued she was a true louer, and there she had a good end.

CHAP. CXXIX.

How Queene Gueneuer rode on Maying with certaine Knights of the round table, clothed all in greene.

NOW it befell in the moneth of lusty May that Quene Gueneuer called vnto her Knights of the round table and shee gaue them warning, that early in the morning shee should ride on maying into woods and fields beside Westminster, and I warne you that there be none of you but that he be well horsed, and that ye all be clothed in greene, and I shall bring with me ten Ladies, and euery Knight shall haue a Lady behind him, and euery Knight shall haue a squier and two yeomen, & I will that ye and all be well horsed. So they made them ready in the best manner, and these were the names of the Knights. Sir Kay, sir Agrauaine, sir Brandiles, sir Sagramore, sir Doudas, sir Ozanna, sir Ladas, sir Persaunt, sir Ironside, and sir Pelleas. And those ten Knights made them ready in the most freest manner to ride with the Quene. So on the morrow they took their horses and rode on Maying with the Quene in great ioy and delight. And the Quene purposed to haue borne againe with the King at the furthest by ten of the clocke, and so was her purpose at that time. When there was a Knight the which hight Sir Meliagraunce, and hee was come vnto King Bagdemagus. And this Knight had at that time a Castle of the gift of King Arthur, within seauen mile of Westminster. And this Knight Sir Meliagraunce loued passing well Quene Gueneuer, and so hee had done long and many yeares. And

And he had layen long in a waitte for to keale away the queen, but evermore hee forbore because of Sir Launcelot du lake, for in no wise he would meddle with the Quene if Sir Launcelot were in her company, or else and he were nere hand her. And that time there was such a custome, that the Quene rode neuer without a great fellowship of men of armes about her. And there were many good knights, and the most part were young men that would haue worship, and they were called the quenes knights, and neuer in no battaile, turneyment, or iusts they neuer beare none of them no manner of knowledge of their owne armes, but plaine white shields, and thereby they were called the Quenes knights. And then when it hapned any of them to be of great worship by his noble deeds, then at the next high feast of Pentecost if there were any slaine or dead, as there was no yeare that failed, but some were dead, then was there chosen in their steads that were dead the most men of worship, that were called the Quenes knights. And thus they came vp all first or they were renowned men of worship, both Sir Lancelot and all the remnant of them. But this knight Sir Meliagrance had full well espied the Quene and her purpose, and how Sir Launcelot was not with her, and how hee had no men of armes with her, but the ten knights all arrayed in green for maying. When hee purueied him twentie men of armes and an hundred archers to destroy the Quene and her knights, for he thought that time was the best season to take the quene.

CHAP. CXXX.

How Sir Meliagrance tooke Queen Gueneuer and all her knights which were sore hurt in fighting.

As the Quene had mayed and all her knights, all were bedashed with hearbes and floures in the best manner and freshest. Right so came out of a wood Sir Meliagrance with eight-score men well armed, as they should fight in battaile of arrest, and bad the Quene and her knights abide for maugre their heads they should abide. Traitor knight said Quene Gueneuer, what thinkest thou to dos, wilt thou shame thy selfe,

bethinke

bethinke thee how thou art a kings sonne, and knight of the round table, & thou to be about for to dishonour the noble king that made thee knight, thou shamest the high order of knight-hood and thy selfe. And me I let thee wit shalt thou neuer shame for I had rather cut my throate in twaine rather then thou shouldst dishonour me. As for all this language said Sir Meliagrance, be it as it may, for wit ye well madame that I haue loved you many yeeres, and neuer or now could I get you at such a vantage as I doe now, and therefore I will take you as I find you. Then spake the ten knights all with one voice and said Sir Meliagrance, wit ye well ye are about to ieopard your worship to dishonour, also ye cast for to ieopard our persons, how be it, we bee vnarmed, yee haue vs at a great aduantage, for it seemeth by you that yee haue laid watch on vs, but rather then ye should put the Quene to shame and vs all, wee had as leaue to depart from our liues, for and if we otherwise did wee were shamed for euer. Then Sir Meliagrance said, dresse you as well as ye can, and keepe the Quene. Then the ten knights of the round table drew their swords, and the other let run at them with their speares, and the ten knights manly abode them, and smote away their speares, that no speare did them harme. Then they lashed together with their swords, and anon Sir Kay, Sir Griefe, Sir Agrauaine, Sir Dodinas, and Sir Ozanna were smitten to the earth, with grimly wounds. Then Sir Brandiles and Sir Persaunt Sir Ironside and Sir Pelleas fought long and they were full sore wounded. For these knights or euer they were laid to the ground slew fortie men of the best of them. So when the Quene saw her knights thus dolesfully wounded and neddes must be slaine at the last, then for pittie and sorow she cried and said. Sir Meliagrance sleynot my knights, and I will go with thee upon this couenant that thou saue them, and suffer them to bee no more hurt, with this that they bee led with mee where-soeuer thou ledest mee, for I will rather sleyn my selfe then I will goe with thee, vnesse that these my noble knights may be in presence. Madame said Sir Meliagrance, for your sake they shall bee led with you into my Castle, with that ye wil be ruled and ride with me.

Do

Then

The Historie of Prince Arthur

When Quene Gueneuer praised the foure knights to leaue their fight, and she and they would not depart. Madame said sir Pelleas we will doe as yee doe, for as for me I take no force of my life nor death. For sir Pelleas gaue such buffets there, that no armour might hold them.

CHAP. CXXXI.

How Sir Lancelot had word how the Quene was taken, and how Sir Meliagraunce layed an embushment for Sir Lancelot.

Then by the Quenes command they left battaile and dressed the wounded knights on horsebacke some sitting and some ouerthwart, that it was pittie to behold them. And then Sir Meliagraunce charged the Quene and all her knights, that none of her fellowship should depart from her. For full sore he deead sir Launcelot du lake least he should haue any knowledge. All this espied the Quene, and priuely shee called vnto her a child of her chamber which was swiftly horsed, to whom shee said. Goe thou when thou seest thy time and beare this ring vnto sir Launcelot du lake, and pray him as he loueth me that he will come and see me, and that hee rescue mee if euer hee will haue ioy of mee, and spare thou not thy horse said the Quene neither for water nor yet for land: And so the child espied his time, and lightly hee mounted vpon his horse and smote him with the spurs and so departed from them as fast as euer his horse might runne. And when Sir Meliagraunce saw the child so flee, hee vnderstood well it was by the Quenes commande, for to warne Sir Launcelot. When they that were best horsed chased him, and shot at him. But the child went from them all. And then Sir Meliagraunce said vnto Quene Gueneuer. Madame yee bee about to betray mee, but I shall ordaine for Sir Launcelot, that hee shall not lightly come at you. And then hee rode with her and they all to her Castle in all the haste that they might, and by the way Sir Meliagraunce laide in an ambullyment the best archers that he might get in his countrey, to the number of thirtie for to waite vpon Sir Launcelot, charging them that if they saw such a manner of knight come by

and his Knights of the round Table.

the way vpon a white horse, in any wise to slay his horse, but in no manner of wise not to haue to doe with him bodily for hee is ouer hard to bee ouercome. So this was done, and they were come to his Castle, but in no wise the Quene would neuer let none of the ten knights and her Ladies be out of her sight, but alway they were in her presence. For that Sir Meliagraunce durst make no masteries for dread of Sir Launcelot in so much as he deemed that he had warning. So when the child was departed from the fellowship of Sir Meliagraunce, within a while he came to Westminster, and anon he found Sir Launcelot, and when hee had told his message and deliuered him the Quenes ring. Alas said sir Launcelot, now am I shamed for euer onely that I may rescue that noble Lady from dishonour. Then egerly hee asked his armour. And euer the child told sir Launcelot how the ten knights fought meruailously, and how Sir Pelleas, Sir Ironside, Sir Brandiles, and sir Persaunt of Inde fought strongly but namely Sir Pelleas, for there was none might withstand him, and how they all fought till at the last they were laid to the earth. And then the Quene made a pointment for to saue their liues and went with Sir Meliagraunce. Alas said Sir Launcelot that, that most noble knight should bee destroyed, I had rather said Sir Launcelot then all the realme of Fraunce that I had bene there well armed. So when Sir Launcelot was all armed and vpon his horse, hee prayed the child of the Quenes chamber for to warne Sir Launcelot how sudainely he was departed, and for what cause, and pray him that as hee loueth me that hee will hie him fast after me, and that he stint not till that he come to me vnto the Castle whereas Sir Meliagraunce abideth or dwelleth. For there said Sir Launcelot shall hee heere of me, if I bee a man liuing, and rescue the Quene and the ten knights the which full traiterously hath taken, that shall I proue vpon his head, and on all them that holdeth with him.

How Sir Launcelots horse was slaine, and how Sir Launcelot rode in a Chariot for to rescue the Queene.

Then Sir Launcelot rode as fast as he might, and he took the water at Westminster bridge, and made his horse for to swim over the Thames to Lambeth. And then within a while he came to the place whereas the ten Knights had fought with Sir Meliagraunce. And then Sir Launcelot followed the trace untill he came unto a wood, and there was a stright way and therein the thirtie archers bad Sir Launcelot to turne againe and follow no longer the trace. What command haue yee thereto said Sir Launcelot, to cause me that am a Knight of the round table to leaue my right way. This way shalt thou leaue, or else thou shalt goe it vpon thy feete. For wit thou wel thy horse shall be slaine. What is little mastery said Sir Launcelot, for to sleigh my horse but as for my selfe when my horse is slaine, I giue right nought for you, not and yee were five hundred more. So then they shot Sir Launcelots horse, and smote him with many arrowes. And then Sir Launcelot auoided his horse and went on foote. But there were so many ditches and hedges betwene them and him, that he might not meddle with one of them. Alas for shame said Sir Launcelot, that euer one Knight should betray an other Knight, but it is an old saying. A good man is neuer in danger, but when he is in danger of a coward. When Sir Launcelot went a while on foote, and then was he foule combred with his armour, shield and speare, and all that belonged to him, wit ye wel he was full soze annoyed, and full loth he was to leaue any thing that belonged vnto him, For hee dead right soze the treason of Sir Meliagraunce. And then by fortune there came by a chariot the which came thither for to fetch wood. Well mee carter said Sir Launcelot, what I shall giue thee for to suffer me to leape into the chariot, and that thou bring mee vnto a castle within these two miles. Thou shalt not come within my chariot said the carter, for I am sent for to fetch wood for my Lord sir Meliagraunce, with him would

would I faine speake said Sir Launcelot. Thou shalt not goe with mee said the carter. Then sir Launcelot leapt to him and gaue him such a buffet, that hee fell to the ground sturke dead. Then the other carter his fellow was afearde, and thought to haue gone the same way, and then he cried and said. Faire lord saue my life, and I shall bring you where you will. Then I charge thee said sir Launcelot, that thou drive mee and this chariot euen vnto Sir Meliagraunce Castle. Leape vp into the chariot said the carter, and ye shall bee there anon. So the carter drove forth as fast as hee could. And sir Launcelots horse followed the chariot with more then fortie arrowes broad and rough in him. And more then an houre and a halfe. Quene Gueneuer was in a bay window waiting with her Ladies, and espied an armed Knight standing in a chariot. See madame said a Lady whereas rideth in a chariot a goodly armed Knight I suppose that he rideth to hanging. Where said the Quene. And then the Quene espied by his shield that hee was there himselfe Sir Launcelot du lake. And then she was ware where came his horse after that chariot, and euer hee rode his guts and his paunch vnder his feete. Alas said the Quene, now I see well and proue, that well is him that hath a trusty friend. Ah most noble Knight said Quene Gueneuer, I see well that thou hast bene hard bested when thou ridest in a cart. Then hee rebuked that Lady that likned him to ride in a chariot to hanging, it was foule mouthed said the Quene, and euill liked, so for to liken the most noble Knight of the world in such a shamefull death. Oh Jesu defend him and keepe him said the Quene from all mischieuous end. By this was Sir Launcelot come vnto the gate of the Castle, and he descended downe, and cried that all the Castle rang of it. Where art thou false traitour Sir Meliagraunce, and Knight of the round table. Now com forth here thou false traitour Knight, thou & thy fellowship with thee for here I am Sir Launcelot du lake, I shall fight with thee. And therewithall he beare the gate wide open vpon the porter, and smot him vnder his eare with his gauntlet that his necke brake in sunder.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. CXXXIII.

How Sir *Meliagraunce* required forgiuenesse of Queene *Gueneuer*, & how she appealed Sir *Lancelot*, and of other matters.

So when Sir *Meliagraunce* heard that Sir *Launcelot* was come, hee ran to the Queene and fell vpon his knees and said. Mercy madame, now I put mee wholly in your grace. What ayleth you now said *Queene Gueneuer*, forsooth yee might well wit that some good knight would reuenge mee, though my Lord King *Arthur* wist not of this your work. *Madame* said Sir *Meliagraunce* all this is done amisse on my part shall bee amended, right as your selfe will deuise, and wholly I put mee in your grace. What would yee that I did said the *Queene*. I would no more said Sir *Meliagraunce*, but that ye would take into your owne hands, and that yee will rule my Lord Sir *Launcelot*. And such chaire as may bee made him in this poore castle, yee and hee shall haue vntill to morrow. And then may ye and all your knights & Ladies returne to *Westminster*. And my body and all that I haue, shall I put into your rule. *Ye* say well said the *Queene*, and better is peace then alway warre. And the lesse strife is made, the more is my worship. When the *Queene* and her ladies went downe vnto the knight Sir *Launcelot*, which stood wroth out of measure in the inner Court for to abide battaile, and euer hee said. Thou traitour knight come forth here. When the *Queene* came vnto him and said. Sir *Launcelot*, why be ye so moued. *Madame* said Sir *Launcelot*, wherfore aske ye me that question. *Ye* seemeth said Sir *Launcelot*, ye ought to be more displeased then I am, for yee haue the hurt and the dishonour. For wit ye well madame, my hurt is but litle for the killing of a maires sonne. But the despite greueth mee much more then all my hurt. Truly said *Queene Gueneuer* ye say truth. But heartely I thanke you said the *Queene*, but ye must come in with mee peaceably, for al things is put in my hands, and all that is euill shall be for the best. For the knight full sore repenteth him for the misadventure that is befallen him. *Madame* said Sir *Launcelot* sith it is so that yee are accorded with him, as for mee

and his Knights of the round Table.

I may not bee against it how be it Sir *Meliagraunce* hath done full shamefully to mee and full cowardly. *Madame* said Sir *Lancelot*, if I had wist that ye would haue been so soone accorded with him, I would not haue made such haste to you. Why say you so said the *Queene* do ye forgethinke your selfe of your good doodes. Wit ye well said the *Queene*, I accorded neuer vnto him for fauour nor loue that I haue vnto him, but for to lay downe euery shamefull noyse. *Madame* said Sir *Launcelot*, yee vnderstand full well that I was neuer willing nor glad of shamefull slander nor noisie, and there is neither king queene nor knight that beareth life, except my Lord King *Arthur* and you madame that should let mee, but that I should make Sir *Meliagraunce* heart full cold or I depart from hence. What wot I well said the *Queene*, but what will ye more, yee shall haue all things ruled as ye like to haue it. *Madame* said Sir *Launcelot* so that ye be pleased I care not, as for my part ye shall full soone please. Right so the *Queene* took Sir *Launcelot* by the bare hand, for hee had put off his gauntlet, and so shee went with him to her chamber. And then she commanded him to bee unarmed. And then Sir *Launcelot* asked where the ten knights were, that were sore wounded. So she shewed them vnto Sir *Launcelot*, and there they made great toy of his coming, and Sir *Launcelot* made great dole for their hurts, and bewailed them greatly. And there Sir *Launcelot* told them how cowardly and traitterously Sir *Meliagraunce* had set archers to sleigh his horse and how he was faine to put himselfe in a chariot. Thus they complained the one vnto the other, and fullfaine they would haue bene reuenged, but they appeased themselves because of the *Queene*. When Sir *Launcelot* was called many a day after *Le Cheualler du chariot*, and did many doodes, and great aduentures he had.

And so leaue we off this tale *Le Cheualler du chariot*, and returne wee vnto our tale. So Sir *Launcelot* had great chere with the *Queene*. And then Sir *Launcelot* made a promise with the *Queene*, that the same night hee should come into a window outward into a garden, and that window was bared with iron. And there Sir *Launcelot* promised for to meete her when

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

when all folkes were a sleepe. So then came Sir Lauaine dy-
uing to the gate, crying whereis my Lord Sir Launcelot du
lake. When was he forthwith sent for, and when Sir Lauaine
saw Sir Launcelot he said. My Lord, I found well how yee
were hard bested, for I haue found your horse the which was
slaine with arrowes. As for that said Sir Launcelot. I pray you
Sir Lauaine speake yee of other matters, and let this passe, and
wee shall right it an other time, when wee best may.

CHAP. CXXXIIII.

How Sir *Lancelot* came in the night to the Queene, and lay with
her, and how Sir *Meliagraunce* appeached the Queene of
treason.

Then the knights that were wounded were searched and
soft salues were laid to there wounds and so it passed on
till supper time. And all the cheere that might bee made them,
there it was shewed vnto the Queene and her knights. When
when season was they went to their chambers. But in no wise
the Queene would not suffer the wounded knights to bee from
her, but that they were laide within draughts vpon beds and
pillowes that shee her selfe might see to them, that they lacked
nothing. So when Sir Launcelot was in his chamber that was
assigned vnto him, hee called vnto him Sir Lauaine, and told
him that, that night hee must goe speake with his Lady dame
Gueneuer. Sir said Sir Lauaine let me go with you and it please
you, for I dread me sore of the treason of Sir *Meliagraunce*.
Nay said Sir Launcelot. I thanke you, I will haue no person
with me at this time. And then Sir Launcelot took his sword
in his hand, and priuely went vnto a place where as he had es-
pied a ladder befoze hand, and that hee tooke vnder his arme
and beare it through the garden and set it vp in a window.
And there anon the Queene was ready to meet him. And then
they made either to other their complaints of diuers things.
And then Sir Launcelot wished that he might come in vnto her,
And it yee well said the Queene, I would as faine as yee that yee
might come into me. Would yee madame said Sir Launcelot
with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with your heart that I were with you. Ye truly said the Queene.
Nay that I proue my might said Sir Launcelot, for the loue of you.
And then hee set his hand vpon the barres of Iron and pulled
at them with such a great might, that hee brake them cleane
out of the stone walls. And there withall one of the barres of
Iron cut the baine of Sir Launcelots hand through out to
the bone, and then he lept into the chamber to the Queene.
Spake yee no noyse said the Queene for my wounded knights
he here fast by me. And so to passe forth vpon this tale, Sir
Launcelot went to bed with the Queene, and so hee took no force
of his hurt hand, but took his pleasure and his liking vntill
it was in the dawning of the day, and wit yee well hee slept not
but watched. And when hee saw the time that hee might tary
no longer, hee took his leaue and departed at the window, and
put it together againe as well as he might, and so departed and
came to his owne chamber. And there he told Sir Lauaine how
hee was hurt. When Sir Lauaine dressed his hand and staunched
it, and put vpon it a gloue, that it should not bee espied. And so
the Queene lay long in her bed vntill it was nine of the clocke.
Then Sir *Meliagraunce* went to the Queenes chamber, and
found her Ladies there ready clothed. Iesu mercy said Sir
Meliagraunce, what ayleth you madame that yee sleepe thus
long. And so forth withall he opened the curtaines for to behold
her. And then was he ware where shee lay, and all the shete
and pillow was all bebled with the blood of Sir Launcelots hurt
hand. And when Sir *Meliagraunce* espied that blood, then hee
deemed in himselfe that she was false vnto the King, and that
some of the wounded knights had laine by her all that night.
Ah madame said Sir *Meliagraunce*, now I haue found you a
false traitresse vnto my Lord King Arthur, for now I proue
it well that it was not for nought that yee laide these wound-
ed knights within the bounds of your chamber. Wherefore
I will accuse you of treason befoze my liege Lord King Arthur,
and now I haue proued you Madame with a shamefull deed,
and that they be all false or some of them, and that I will make
good, for a wounded knight this night hath lien by you. What
is false said the Queene, and that I report me to them all.

MR

C e

Then

When when the ten knights heard sir Meliagraunce words, they spake al with one voice and said to sir Meliagraunce Thou saidst falsely, and wrongfully putttest vpon vs such a dede, and that we will make good any of vs chose which thou list of vs, when we are whole of our wounds. Ye shall not (said sir Meliagraunce) say nay with proud language, for here ye may all see said Sir Meliagraunce, that by the Quene this night a wounded knight hath layne. When were they all ashamed when they saw that blood. And wit ye well that Sir Meliagraunce was passing glad that he had the Quene at such a vantage, for he deemed that should hide his treason. So in this rumour came in Sir Launcelot, and found them all at a great arg.

CHAP. CXXXV.

How Sir Launcelot answered for the Quene, and waged battaile against Sir Meliagraunce. And how Sir Launcelot was taken in a trap.

AHa, what aray is this said Sir Launcelot. When sir Meliagraunce told him what he had found, and shewed him the Quenes bed. Truly said Sir Launcelot, yee did not your part nor knightly to touch a Quenes bed the whiles it was drawn, and she lying therein. For I dare say and make good, that my Lord King Arthur himselfe would not haue desplayed her surtains, she being within her bed vntill it had pleased him to haue lien downe by her. And therefore haue yee done vn-wozshipfully and shamefully to your selfe. I wote not what you meane said sir Meliagraunce, but well I am sure there hath one of her wounded knights lye by her this night, and therefore I will proue it with my hands that she is a traitresse vnto my Lord King Arthur. Beware what ye do, said sir Launcelot, for and ye say so and that ye will proue it, it shall be taken at your hands. My Lord sir Launcelot said sir Meliagraunce, be you beware also what yee do, for though ye are neuer so good a knight as yee wote well that yee are renowned the best knight of the world, yet should ye be aduised to doe battaile in a wrong quarrell. For God will haue a stroke in every battaile that is done.

As

As for that said sir Launcelot. God is to bee dread. But as vnto that I say nay plainly, that this night there lay none of these ten wounded knights with my Lady Quene Guenener, and that will I proue with my hands, that yee say vntruely in that now. Hold said sir Meliagraunce, here is my gloue, that she is a traitresse vnto my Lord King Arthur and that this night one of the wounded knights lay with her. And I receiue your gloue said sir Launcelot. And so they were sealed with their signets & deliuered to the ten knights. Vpon what day shall we do battaile together said sir Launcelot. This day eight daies said sir Meliagraunce in the field besid Westminster. I am agreed said sir Launcelot. But now said sir Meliagraunce, sith it is that we must be battail together, I beseech you as ye are a noble knight alwaies me with no treason, nor no vilanie in the meane while, nor none for you So God me helpe said sir Launcelot, ye shall right wel wit I was neuer of those conditions, for I report me vnto all knights that euer knew me, I vfed neuer no treason, nor I loued neuer to be in the fellowship of no man that vfed treason. When let vs go to dinner said sir Meliagraunce, and after dinner yee and the Quene and ye all may ride vnto Westminster. I wil wel said sir Launcelot. And then sir Meliagraunce said vnto sir Launcelot. Pleaseth it you to se the fetures of this castle. With a good will said sir Launcelot. And then they went together from chamber to chamber, for sir Launcelot dread no perils. For euer a man of wozship and of prowesse dreadeth alwaies perils least, for they wene that euery man is as they be. But alwaies he that delecteth with treason putteth a man oft in grea- at daunger. So it befell vpon sir Launcelot that no perill dread. And as he went with sir Meliagraunce he troade on a trap & the board rolled, & therewith sir Launcelot fell downe moze then ten fadome into a caue vpon straw. And then sir Meliagraunce departed & made seblauit as though he had not wist where he was. And when sir Launcelot was thus missed, they meruailed where he was become. And then Quene Guenener & many of them deemed that he was departed as he was wont to do sodeinly. For Sir Meliagraunce made sodeinly to put out of the way Sir Launcelots horse, that they might all vnderstand that

Sir Launcelot was departed sodainly. So it past forth untill after dinner, and then Sir Lauaine would not stint untill that he had ordained horse litters for the wounded knights that they might be laide in them, and so with the Quene and them all, both Ladies and gentlewomen and many other went to Westminster. And the knights told unto King Arthur how Sir Meliagraunce had appealed the Queen of high treason, and how Sir Launcelot had receiued the glaue of him and this day eight dayes they shall doe battaile together afore you. By my head said King Arthur, I am afraid that Sir Meliagraunce hath taken vpon him a great charge. But where is Sir Launcelot said the king. Sir said they all we wit not where he is, but we deeme hee is ridden to some aduentures, as hee is oftentimes wont to doe, for hee hath Sir Lauaines horse. Let him be said the king, hee will bee found but if hee be trapped with some treason.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

How Sir *Launcelot* was deliuered out of prison by a Lady, and how he tooke a white courser, and came for to keepe his day.

Now returne we vnto Sir Launcelot lying within that caue in full great paine. And euery day there came a lady and brought him his meat and his drinke and wooed him to haue layen by her. And euer the noble knight Sir Launcelot said her nay. Sir Launcelot said she, yee are not wise, for yee may neuer come out of this prison but if yee haue my helpe, and also your Lady Quene Gueneuer shal be burnt in your default, vnlesse that you bee there at the day of battaile. God defend it said Sir Launcelot that she should be burnt in my default. And if that it bee so said Sir Launcelot that I may not bee there, it shall be well vnderstood of both the king & of the Quene, and withal men of worship that I am dead or sick or else in prison. For all men that know me will say for me that I am in some euill case, if I be not there that day. And well I wote there is some good knight either of my blood, or else some other that loueth me, that will take my quarell in hand. And therefore said sir Launcelot, wit ye well that yee shall not feare me. And if there were no more women in this land but you, I would

not haue to doe with you. When art thou shamed (said the Lady) and destroyed for euer. As for worlds shame said sir Launcelot, I will defend me, and as for my destresse, it is welcome what so euer it be that God sendeth me. So she came vnto Sir Launcelot that same day that the battaile should bee and said to him. Sir Launcelot me thinketh yee are too strong hearted, but wouldst thou kisse me once. I would deliuer thee and thine armour and the best horse that is within Sir Meliagraunce stable. As for to kisse you said Sir Launcelot I may do that and lose no worship, and wit you well and I vnderstand there were any dishonour for to kisse you I would not doe it. When hee kissed her, and then she gate him & brought him to his armour. And when hee was armed. she brought him to a stable; where as shee had twelve good coursers, and bad him chouse the best. When sir Launcelot looked vpon a white courser which liked him best, & anon hee commanded the keeper fast to saddle him with the best saddle of warre that was there. And so it was done as hee commanded. When gat hee his speare in his hand, and his sword by his side, & commended the Lady to God and said. Lady for this god deed I shall doe you seruice if euer it bee in my power.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

How Sir *Launcelot* came the same time that Sir *Meliagraunce* abode him in the field, and dressed him to battaile.

Now leaue we sir Launcelot galloping all that he might, and speake we of Quene Gueneuer that was brought to her to haue beene burnt for Sir Meliagraunce was sure him thought that Sir Launcelot should not be at that battaile. And therefore he euer cried vpon king Arthur for to do him iustice, or else for to bring forth sir Launcelot. When was the king and all the court full soze abashed & shamed that the Quene should be burnt in the default of sir Lancelot. By good Lord said King Arthur said sir Lauaine, ye may right well vnderstand that it is not well with my lord Sir Lancelot, for & he were alive, so hat he be not sick or in prison, wit ye wel that he would be here, for neuer heard we that euer he failed his part for whom he should do battaile for

And therefore now said Sir Lauaine, my Lord King Arthur beseech you give me licence to doe battaile here this day for my Lord and master, and for to saue my Lady the Quene. Grace mercy gentle knight Sir Lauaine said King Arthur, for I dare say that, that Sir Meliagraunce putteth vpon my Lady Quene Gueneuer is wrong for I haue spoken with all the ten wounded knight, and there is not one of them and he were whole and able to doe battaile, but that hee would proue vpon Sir Meliagraunce body that it is false that hee putteth vpon the Quene. So shall I said Sir Lauaine in defending of my Lord Sir Launcelot, and ye will give mee leaue. Now I give you leaue said King Arthur and doe your best, for I dare well say there is some treason done to sir Launcelot. When was Sir Lauaine horsed, and suddenly at the lists end hee rode to perforce this battaile. And right as the heralds should crie lesles les aller, right so came in Sir Launcelot driving with all the force of his horse. And so King Arthur cried goe and abide. When was sir Launcelot called before King Arthur on horsebacke and there hee told openly before the King and all them that were present how Sir Meliagraunce had serued him first and last. And when the King and the Quene and all the Lordes knew of the treason of Sir Meliagraunce, they were all ashamed on his behalfe. And then was Quene Gueneuer sent for, and set by the King in great trust of her champion. And so then ther was no more to say, but Sir Launcelot and Sir Meliagraunce dressed them vnto battaile and took their speares, and so they came together as thunder, and there sir Launcelot beare him downe quite ouer his horse croupe. And then sir Launcelot alighted and dressed his shield on his shoulder with his sword in his hand. And Sir Meliagraunce in the same wise dressed him vnto Sir Launcelot, and there they smote many strokes together. And at the last Sir Launcelot smote him such a buffet vpon the helme that hee fell on the one side to the ground. And then he cried vpon him a loude, most noble knight sir Launcelot du lake I pray you saue my life, for I yeld mee vnto you, and I beseech you as ye be a knight and fellow of the round table slea mee not, for I yeld me as an ouercome knight. And whether

whether I shall liue or die I put me in the Kings hands and yours. When Sir Launcelot wist not what to doe, for hee had rather then all the good of the world hee might haue bene reuenged vpon Sir Meliagraunce. And then Sir Launcelot looked toward Quene Gueneuer if hee might espie by any signe or countenance what hee should haue done. And then the Quene wagged her head vpon sir Launcelot, as though shee should say say him. Full well knew sir Launcelot by the wagging of her head that shee would haue had him dead. When sir Launcelot had him arise for shame and perforce that battaile to the utmost. Say said Sir Meliagraunce, I will neuer arise vntill that ye take mee as yelden and recreant. I shall proffer you large proffers said sir Launcelot, that is to say I shall brynne my head and the left quarter of my body all that may bee brynne, and I shall let bind my left hand, behind me, so that it shall not helpe mee, and right so I shall doe battaile with you. When Sir Meliagraunce heard that, hee start vpon his legges and said on high. My Lord King Arthur take hede to this proffer, for I will take it, and let him bee disarmed and bound according vnto his proffer. What say ye said King Arthur vnto sir Launcelot, will ye abide by your proffer. Ye my Lord said sir Launcelot I will neuer goe from that I haue once said. Then the knights parters of the field disarmed Sir Launcelot his head, and after his left arme and his left side. And then they bound his left arme behinde his backe without shield or any thing. And then were they put together. And it ye well there was many a Lady and knight meruailed that Sir Launcelot would leoparde himselfe in such wise. When Sir Meliagraunce came with his sword all on high, and Sir Launcelot shewed him openly his bare head and the bare left side. And when he wend to haue smitten him vpon the head, then lightly he auoided the left leg and the left side, and put his right hand on his sword to that stroke, and so put it aside with great might. Then with great force Sir Launcelot smot him vpon the helmet such a buffet, that the stroke karued the head in two parts. When there was no more to doe, but hee was drawn out of the field. And at the instance of the knights of the round table

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

table, the King suffered him to be buried, & the mention made vpon him, and for what cause hee was thus. And then the King and the Queene made much of Sir Launcelot and more he was cherished then euer he was before.

C H A P. CXXXVIII.

How Sir Vire came vnto King Arthurs Court for to bee healed of his wounds, and how King Arthur would begin to handle him.

Then ther was a good knight in the land of hungary whose name was Sir Vire, and he was an aduenturous knight And in all places where hee might heare of any deedes of worship, there would hee be. So it hapned in Spaine there was an Charles sonne the which hight Alphegus, and at a great tutenment in Spaine this Sir Vire knight of Hungary and Sir Alphegus of Spaine encountred together for very enuy, and so either undertooke other to the uttermost. And by fortune Sir Vire slew Sir Alphegus the Charles sonne of Spaine. But this knight that was slaine had giuen Sir Vire oz euer hee was slaine seuen great wounds, thre on the head, and foure on the body and vpon his left hand. And this Sir Alphegus had another which was a great sorceresse. And the for the despite of her sonnes death, wrought by her subtile crafts that Sir Vire should neuer be whole, but euer his wounds should on time fester and an other time bleed, so that he should neuer be whole til that the best knight of the world had serched his wounds. And in this manner shee made her haunt, where throught it was knowen that Sir Vire should neuer bee whole. Then Sir Vires mother let make an horse-litter, and put him therein vnder two palfreys. And then shee tooke Sir Vires sister with him, which was a full faire damosell, whose name was Feloly. And then shee tooke a page with her to keepe their horses. And so they led Sir Vire throught many countries. For she led him so seuen yeares throught all lands Christian, and neuer she could find no knight that might ease her sonne. So at the last she came into Scotland by the bounds of England, and at the feast of Pentecost

and his Knights of the round Table.

at King Arthurs Court that at that time was holden at Caerleill. And when she came there, then she made it openly to be knowne, how shee was come into that countrey for to haue her sonne healed. Then King Arthur let call the Lady, and asked her the cause why shee had brought that hurt knight into that countrey. By most noble Lord King Arthur (said that Lady) wit ye well I brought him hether for to bee healed of his wounds, the which of all these seuen yeares might not bee healed. And then shee told the King where hee was wounded and of whom, and how his mother had discovered in her pride, how shee had wrought that by enchantment, so that hee should neuer bee whole vnto the time that the best knight of the world had searched his wounds. And so I haue passed throught all the lands christen for to haue him healed, except this land, and if that I faile to heale him here in this countrey, I will neuer take more paine vpon me. And that is pitie for hee was a full good knight, and of great noblenesse. What is his name said King Arthur. By good and gracious Lord said shee, his name is sir Vire of the mount. In good time said King Arthur, and sith ye are come hither into this countrey, ye are welcome. And wit ye well that here shall your sonne be healed, and if any Christian man may heale him, and for to giue all other men of worship courage, I my selfe will assay to handle your sonne. And so shall all the kings, dukes and earles, that be heere present with me at this time and thereto I will commande them. And well I wote they shall obey and doe after my commande. And wit ye well said King Arthur vnto sir Vires sister, I shall begin to handle him and search him vnto my power, not presuming vpon me that I am so worthy to heale your brother by my deeds, but I will encourage other men of worship to doe as I will doe. And then the king commanded all the kings, dukes & earles & al the noble knights of the round table that were there that time present to come into the medow of Caerleill. And so at that time there were but an hundred and ten knights of the round table, for fortie knights were away. And so here he must begin at King Arthur, as is kindly to begin at him that was the most man of worship that was christened at that time.

The Historie of Prince Arthur

CHAP. CXXXIX.

How King Arthur handled Sir Vire and after him many other Knights of the round table.

Then King Arthur looked vpon Sir Vire, and thought in himselfe that hee had beene a full likly man when hee was whole. And then King Arthur made him to be taken out of the litter and laid him vpon the ground, and there was laid a cushion of cloth of gold that he should kneele vpon. And then King Arthur said. Faire knight me repenteth of thy hurt, and to encourage all other noble knights I will pray thee for to suffer mee softly to handle thy wounds. Most noble christen King said Sir Vire, do as it shal please you for I am here at the mercy of God, and at your commande. So then King Arthur softly handled him, and then some of his wounds renewed on bleeding. Then after King Arthur, King Clarence of Northumberland searched and it would not be. And then Sir Barraunt le apres, that was the King with the hundred knights, he assailed and failed. And so did King Vriens of the land of Goze. So did King Anguish of Ireland. So did King Nentres of Carloth. So did King Carados of Scotland. So did the duke Galahad the haut prince. So did Constantine that was King Carados sonne of Cornewaille. So did duke Chalaunce of claraunce. So did the earle Vlbaule. So did the earle Lambaile. So did the earle Arlause. Then came in Sir Gawaine with his three sonnes, Sir Gingame, Sir Florence, and Sir Louell. These three were begotten vpon Sir Brandiles sister, and Sir Gawaine and his sonnes failed. Then came in Sir Agrauaine, Sir Gaheris, Sir Morded, and the good knight Sir Gareth, which was of very knight hood worth all the brethren. So there came knights of Sir Launcelots kinne. But Sir Launcelot was not that time in the court, for hee was that time on his adventures. Then Sir Lionell, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de ganis Sir Galhalantin, Sir Galihodin, Sir Manadiuke, Sir Villiers le valiaunt, Sir Hebes le renowne. All these knights were of Sir Launcelots kinne and they failed every each one.

Then

and his Knights of the round Table:

Then came in Sir Sagramore le desirous, Sir Dodinas le sauvage, Sir Dinadan, Sir Brunor le noire, which Sir Kay called la cote male taile, and Sir Kay the Seneshall, Sir Kay de Itraungis, Sir Melior de Logris and Sir Petipace of Winchellie, Sir Galleron of Galway, Sir Melion of the mountaine, Sir Sadocke, Sir Vwayne les auoures, and Sir Ozanna le cuer hardy. Then there came in Sir Astamore, Sir Gromore, Sir Grumwors sonne, Sir Crosselme, Sir Seruaule le breuse, which was at that time called one of the strongest knights of the world. For the chiefe Lady of the Lake feasted this Sir Seruaule le breuse and Sir Launcelot du lake. And so when shee had feasted them both at sundry times, shee prayed them to graunt her aboue, & they graunted to her. And then shee prayed Sir Seruaule le breuse. That he would promise her neuer to doe battaile against Sir Launcelot du lake. And in the same manner of wise shee prayed Sir Launcelot du lake, neuer to doe battaile against Sir Seruaule le breuse. And so either of them promised vnto other. that Sir Seruaule had neuer no lust nor courage to do battaile against no man, but if it were against giaunts and against dragons, and such other wild beasts. So wee passe vnto them which at the Kings request made them all that were there at that high feast, as of all the knights of the round table, for to search Sir Vire. To that entent the King did it, for to know which was the noblest knight among them all. Then there came in Sir Agrauaile, Sir Durnar and Sir Tor the which was begotten vpon Aries the colweards wife. But this Sir Tor was begotten before Aries the colweard had wedded her. And King Pellinore begate all these knights. First Sir Tor Sir Agrauaile, Sir Durnore, Sir Lamoracke, which was one of the most noble knights that euer was in King Arthurs daies, as for a worldly knight, and Sir Percuale that was peerelesse, except Sir Galahad in holy deeds but they died in the quest of the Sancgreall. Then came in Sir Griset le fise de Dieu, Sir Lucan the butler, Sir Bediure his brother, Sir Brandiles, Sir Constantine, Sir Cadors sonne of Cornewaille, which was King after Arthurs daies, and Sir Clegis, Sir Sadocke, Sir Dinas the seneshall of Cornewaille, Sir Hergus, Sir Driaunt, Sir Lambegus, Sir Clarus of Cleremount

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Sir Clodrus, sir Hectimere, sir Edward of Carnaruan, sir Dinas, sir Priamus, which was christened by the noble knight sir Tristram, and these three were brethren, sir Helaine le blanke, which was sonne unto sir Bors, and he begat him upon king Brandegoris daughter, and sir Brian de Listinoise, sir Gautere, sir Reinold, sir Gillemere were three brethren that sir Launcelot wan upon a bridge in sir Kays armour. Sir Guiart le petie, sir Bellangere le Breuse which was sonne unto the good sir Alisaunder Lorphelin, that was slaine by the treason of king Marke. Also that false traitour king Marke slew the noble knight sir Tristram as he sat harping before his Lady la beale Moud, with a trenchant glaive, for whose death was much bewailing of every knight that ever was in king Arthurs daies there was neuer none so bewailed as was sir Tristram and sir Lamoracke for they were traiterously slaine, sir Tristram by king Marke, and sir Lamoracke by sir Gawaine & his brethren. And this sir Bellangere reuenged the death of his father sir Alisaunder Lorphelin and sir Tristram. And la beale Moud died following upon the corps of sir Tristram, where of it was great pittie. And all that were with king Marke that were consenting to the death of sir Tristram were slaine as sir Andred and many other. Then came to sir Hebes, sir Morganore, sir Senitraile, sir Surpinabiles, sir Bellangere le orgulous, which the good knight sir Launcelot wan in plaine battaile, sir Neroucus and sir Plenorius two good knights that sir Launcelot wan. sir Darras, sir Harry le fise lake, sir Hermenid, brother to king Hermance, for whom sir Palomides fought at the red Citie with two brethren. And sir Selises of the dolozous toure, sir Edward of Oxkeney, and sir Ironside which was called the noble knight of the red lands, that sir Gareth wan for the love of dame Lioness, sir Arrocke le graunt, sir Degraigne sauncevilany, that fought with the giانت of the blake tow, sir Epino-gris that was the kings sonne of Northumberland, sir Pelleas which loved the Lady Ettard, and hee had died for her love had not beene one of the Ladies of the Lake, her name was dame Niniue. And shee wedded sir Pelleas, and she saued him that he was neuer slaine, and he was a full noble knight. Sir Lamiel

and his Knights of the round Table.

of Cardase that was a great louer. Sir Plaine de force, sir Meleus de Lile, sir Robert le cuer hardy, which was king Arthur's sonne, sir Mador de la port sir Colgreuaunce, sir Herpys de la forrest sauage, sir Marrocke the good knight that was betrayed by his wife, for shee made him well a seven yeares a prisoner. Sir Persaunt and sir Pertelophe his brother, which was called the greene knight and sir Perimones, brother unto them both, which was called the red knight, which sir Gareth of Oxkeney wan, when he was called Beaumains. All these knights and ten searched sir Vvres wounds by the commandement of king Arthur.

CHAP. CXXXX.

How sir Launcelot was commanded by king Arthur to handle his wounds, and anon he was whole, and how they thanked God.

Mercy Jesu said king Arthur, where is sir Launcelot du lake, that he is not here at this time. Thus as they stood and spake of many things, there was espied sir Launcelot which came riding toward them, and anon it was told the king thereof. Peate said the king, let no manner of thing bee said untill that hee bee come to vs. So when sir Launcelot espied king Arthur, he descended downe from his horse, and came vnto the king and saluted him and them all. Anon as the maiden sir Vvres sister saw sir Launcelot, shee ranne vnto her brother whereas hee lay in her litter, and said. Brother heere is come a knight that my heart giueth me greatly vnto. Faire sister said sir Vvre, so doth my heart light against him, and certainly I hope now to bee healed, for my heart giueth vnto him more then to all these that haue searched mee. Then said king Arthur vnto sir Launcelot. We must doe as we haue done, and told sir Launcelot what they had done, and shewed him all those that had searched sir Vvre. Jesu defend me said sir Launcelot when so many kings and knights haue assaied and failed that I should presume vpon mee for to achieuue that all yee my Lords might not achieuue. We shal not choose said king Arthur

The Historie of Prince Arthure

for I will command you for to doe as wee all haue done. My most renowned Lord said sir Launcelot, yee know well that I dare not nor may not disobey your commandement. But and I might or durst, wit ye well I would not take it vpon mee to touch that wounded knight, to that entent that I should passe all other knights; Jesu defend me from that shame. Yee take it wrong said King Arthur, yee shall not doe it for no presumption, but for to beare vs fellowship in as much as yee bee a fellow of the round table. And wit you well said King Arthur, and if yee preuaile not to heale him, I dare say there is no knight in this countrey may heale him, and therefore I pray you doe as wee haue done. And then all the kings and knights for the most part prayd Sir Launcelot to searce him. And then the wounded knight Sir Vrrc set himselfe by full weakly, and prayed Sir Launcelot heartely saying thus. Courteous knight I require thee for Gods sake heale my wounds, for mee thinketh euer sithence ye came hère my wounds grieue me not. My faire Lord said sir Launcelot: Jesu would that I might helpe you, and I shame me soze that I should bee thus rebuked. For neuer was I able in worthinesse to doe so high a thing. Then Sir Launcelot knèled downe by the wounded knight, saying to him thus. My Lord King Arthur I must needs doe your commandement, which is full sore against my heart. And then he held by his hand and looked into the east, saying secretly to himselfe. Thou blessed Father, Sonne, and Holy ghost. I beseech thee of thy mercy, that my simple worship and honesty be saued, and thou blessed Trinitie thou maist giue power to heale this sicke knight by the great vertue and grace of thee but good Lord neuer of my selfe. And then Sir Launcelot prayed Sir Vrrc for to let him see his head. And then deuoutly kneeling he rancked the thre wounds, that they bled a little. And forth with the thre wounds faire healed, and seemed as though they had bene whole seuen yeares before. And in likewise he searched his body of thre other wounds, and they healed in likewise. And then the last of all he searched, the which was in his hand and anon it healed faire. When King Arthur and all the other kings and knights knèled downe, and gaue thankses and

and his Knights of the round Table.

praise vnto God and to his blessed mother, and euer sir Launcelot wept as he had bene a child that had bene beaten. When King Arthur let aray Priests and clarkes in the most deuout manner to bring Sir Vrrc within Caerleill with singing and praise vnto God. And when this was done, the king let cloth him in the richest manner that could be deuised or thought. And then were but few better made knights in all the Court. For hee was passingly well made and big. When King Arthur asked Sir Vrrc how he felt himselfe. My good Lord said hee, I fel my selfe neuer so lusty. Will ye iusts and doe deedes of armes said King Arthur: Sir said sir Vrrc, and I had all that belouged to Iusts I would soone be ready.

CHAP. CXLI:

How there was made of an hundred Knights against an hundred Knights, and of other matters.

Then King Arthur made a part of an hundred knights to bee against an hundred knights. And so on the morrow after they iusted for a diamond. But there iusted not one of so dangerous knights. And so for to make most tale sir Vrrc and sir Lauaine iusted best that day. For there was none of them both but hee ouerthrew and pulled downe thirtie knights. And then by the assent of all the kings and Lords both sir Vrrc and sir Lauaine were made knights of the round table. And sir Lauaine cast his loue to damie Felilolie, sir Vrrcs sister. And then they were wedded together with great ioy. And King Arthur gaue vnto euery each of them a Barony of lands, and this knight sir Vrrc would neuer goe from Sir Launcelot but hee and sir Lauaine waited euermore vpon him. And they were in all the Court accounted for good knights and full desirous in sties. And many noble deedes they did, for they would haue no rest, but alway sought aduentures. Thus they liued in the Court with great noblenesse and ioy long time. But euer night and day Sir Agraaine Sir Gawaines brother awaited Quene Gueneuer and Sir Launcelot, for to put them to a rebuke and shame.

And

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

And so leaue I here off this tale, and ouerskip great booke of Sir Launcelot du lake, what great adventures hee did when hee was called Le chiualler du chariot. For because of despite of those knights and Ladies that called him the knight that rode in the chariot like as hee had bene iudged to the gallows. Therefore in despite of all them that named him so, hee was caried in a chariot twelue moneths, for but little after he had slaine sir Moliagraunce in the Quenes quarrell, he neuer in twelue moneths came on horseback. And hee did in those twelue moneths more then fortie battailes. And because I haue lost the very manner of Le chiualler du chariot. I depart from the tale of Sir Launcelot, and here I goe vnto the death of King Arthur, and that caused sir Agrauaine.

CHAP. CXLII.

How Sir Agrauaine and Sir Mordred were busie vpon Sir Gawaine for to disclose the loue betweene Sir Launcelot and Queene Gueneuer.

AT that season of the merry moneth of May when euery heart flourisheth and burgeneth. For as the season is lusty to behold and comfortable, so man and woman reioyce and be glad of summer comming with his fresh floures. For winter with his rough winds and blasts, causeth a lusty man and woman to Coure and sit by the fire. So in this season as the month of May, it hapned there befell a great anger the which stinted not till the floure of chiuallrie of all the world was destroyed and slaine. And all was long of two unhappie knights the which were named Sir Agrauaine and Sir Mordred that were brethren vnto Sir Gawain. For these too knights Sir Agrauaine and Sir Mordred had euer a priuie hate vnto the Quene dame Gueneuer and vnto Sir Launcelot, and dayly and nightly they euer watched vpon Sir Launcelot. So it mis hapned Sir Gawaine and his brethren were in King Arthurs chamber. And then sir Agrauaine said thus openly and not in counsaile, that many knights might heare it, I meruaile that we all be not ashamed, both to see and know how Sir Launcelot

lieth

and his Knights of the round Table:

lieth dayly and nightly by the Quene, and all wee know it so, and it is shamefully suffered of vs all, that we al should suffer so by a king as king Arthur is, so to bee shamed. Then speake Sir Gawaine and said. Brother Sir Agrauaine, I pray you, and charge you moue no such matter no more before me. For wit you well said Sir Gawaine, I will not be of your counsaile. So when hee helpe said Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareth wee will not knowe brother Sir Agrauaine of your deeds. Then will I say sir Mordred I beleue that well sayed Sir Gawaine, I shal be vnto all unhappinesse brother Sir Mordred thereto I yee graunt, and I would that yee left all this, and be you not so busie, for I know well enough said Sir Gawaine what will be fall of it. Fall of it what fall may said Sir Agrauaine, I will disclose it vnto the king. Yee shall not doe by my counsaile said Sir Gawaine, for if there rise any war and wrath betweene Sir Launcelot and vs, wit you well brother there will many things and great Lorde hold with sir Launcelot. Also brother sir Agrauaine said sir Gawaine, ye must remember how oftentimes sir Lancelot hath rescued the king and the Quene, and the best of vs all had bene full cold at the first roote had not sir Lancelot bene a better knight then we. And that hath he proued himself so oft. And as for my part said Sir Gawaine, I will neuer bee against sir Lancelot for one dayes space as when he rescued me fro king Carados of the dolorous dreare, and slew him & saued my life. Also brother sir Agrauaine & Sir Mordred, in likewise sir Lancelot rescued you both, & threë times and two from sir Torquine. He thinketh brother such kind words and kindnesse should be remembered. Do as ye list said sir Agrauaine, for I wil hide it no longer, with these words come to King Arthur. For now brother stint your noise said sir Gawaine. I will not said sir Agrauaine and sir Mordred. Wil ye so said Sir Gawaine, then God speede you, for I wil not here your tales, nor be of your counsaile. No more will I said sir Gareth and sir Gaheris. For we wil neuer say euil by that man, for because said sir Gareth sir Lancelot made me knight, by no maner ought I to say euil of him. And therewith they threë departed making great dole. Alas said sir Gawaine and sir Gareth, now is the Round Table holie mischued, and the noble fellowship of the round table shal be dispersed. So they departed.

CG CHAP.

CHAP. CXLIII.

How Sir *Agrauaine* disclosed their loue vnto King *Arthur*, and how that King *Arthur* gaue them licence for to take him.

And then King *Arthur* asked them what noise they made. My Lord said sir *Agrauaine* I shall tell you which I may keepe no longer. Heere is I and my brother sir *Mordred* brake vnto my brother sir *Gawaine* sir *Gaheris* and sir *Gareth*. Now this we know all that sir *Launcelot* houldesth your Queene, and hath done long, and wee be your sisters sonnes, and wee may suffer it no longer. And we know all that ye should be aboue sir *Launcelot*, and yee are the King that made him knight. And therefore wee will proue it that he is a traitour to your person. If it be so said King *Arthur*, wit yee well hee is none other, but I would bee loth to begin such a thing but if I might haue proues vpon it, for I tell you sir *Launcelot* is an hardy knight, and all yee know hee is the best knight among vs all. And but if he be taken with the deede, hee will fight with him that bringeth vp the noise, and I know no knight that is able to match him. Therefore and it bee sooth as yee say I would hee were taken with the deede. For King *Arthur* was loth thereto, that any noise should bee vpon sir *Launcelot* and his Queene. For the king had a deeming but he would not here of it, for sir *Launcelot* had done so much for him and for his Queene so many times, that wit ye well King *Arthur* loued him passingly well. My Lord said sir *Agrauaine* ye shal ride to morrow on hunting, and doubt yee not sir *Launcelot* will not goe with you. When when it draweth toward night, yee may send the Queene word that ye will lie out all that night. And so may yee send for your cooke, and then vpon paine of death we shall take him that night with the Queene, and either we shall bring him to you dead or quicke. I will well said the King. When I counsaile you said the King, take with you sure feloweship. Sir said sir *Agrauaine*, my brother sir *Mordred* and I will take with vs twelue knights of the round table. We well ware said King *Arthur*, for I warne you ye shall find him full waighty. Let vs

deale

and his Knights of the round Table.

deale said sir *Agrauaine* and sir *Mordred* So vpon the morrow King *Arthur* rode on hunting and sent word vnto the Queene that he would lie out all that night. When sir *Agrauaine* and sir *Mordred* gate vnto them twelue knights, and hid them selues in a chamber in the Castle of Caerlell, and thus were their names. Sir *Colgreuance*, sir *Mador de la port* sir *Gingaline*, sir *Meliot de Logris* sir *Petipace* of *Winchelsea*, sir *Galleon* of *Galway*, sir *Melion* of the mountaine sir *Astamore* sir *Ormore* somor iour, sir *Curselaine*, sir *Florence*, sir *Louell*, So these twelue knights were with sir *Mordred* and sir *Agrauaine*. And all they were of Scotland, either of sir *Gawines* kinne, either well willers of his brethren. So when the night came, sir *Launcelot* told sir *Bors* how hee would goe that night and speake with Queene *Gueneuer*. Sir said sir *Bors*, ye shall not goe this night by my counsaile. Why said sir *Launcelot*. Sir said sir *Bors* I alway dread me much of sir *Agrauaine*, which waiteth you daily for to doe you shame and vs all, and neuer gaue my heart against your going that euer yee went to the Queene so much as now. For I mistrust that the King is out this night from the Queene, because peradventure hee hath layen some watch for you and the Queen, and therefore I dread me sore of treason. Haue yee no doubt said sir *Launcelot*, for I shall goe and come againe, and make no tarying. Sir said sir *Bors*, that me sore repenteth, for I dread me greatly that your going out this night shall wrath vs all. Faire nephew said sir *Launcelot*, I meruaile me much why yee say thus, sithence the Queene hath sent for me. And wit ye well that I will not bee so much a coward but that shee shall vnderstand I will see her good grace. God speed you well said sir *Bors* and send you safe & sound againe.

CHAP. CXLIV.

How Sir *Launcelot* was espied in the Queenes chamber, and how Sir *Agrauaine* and Sir *Mordred* came with 12. Knights to sleie him.

So Sir *Launcelot* departed, and tooke his sword vnderneath his arme And so that noble knight went forth in his man-

G 2

tell,

tell, and put himselfe in greatieopardy. And so hee passed till hee came vnto the Queenes chamber. And then sir Launcelot was lightly put into the chamber. And the Quene and Sir Launcelot were together, and whether they were a bed or at other manner of disports, me list not thereof to make mention. For loue that time was not as it is now a dayes. But thus as they were together there came sir Agraaine and Sir Mordred, with twelue knights with them of the round table, and with a crying voice they said thus. Traitor knight Sir Launcelot du lake, now art thou taken. And thus they cried with a loud voice that all the court might heere it. And they al were 14. armed at all points as they shoulde fight in a battaile. Alas said Quene Gueneuer now are we mischiewed both. Madame said sir Lancelot, is here any armour within your chamber that might couer my body withall, & if there be any I pray you heartely let me haue it, and I shall soone stint their malice by the grace of God. Truly said the Quene I haue none armour, shield, sword, nor speare wherefore I dread mee soze our long loue is come to a mischiewous end, for I heere by their noise there bee many valiaunt knights, and wel I wot they be surely armed, against them yee may not resist, wherfore yee are like to bee slaine, and then shall I be bzent. For and yee might escape them said the Quene, I would not doubt but that yee would rescue me in what danger so euer I stand in. Alas said Sir Launcelot, in all my life was I neuer thus bestowd that I should be thus shamefully slaine for lacke of mine armour. But alwayes sir Agraaine and sir Mordred cried. Traitor knight come out of the Queenes chamber, for wit thou well that thou art so beset, that thou shalt not escape. O Jesu mercy said sir Launcelot, this shamefull crie and noise we may not suffer, for better were death at once, then thus to endure this paine. When hee tooke the Quene in his armes and kissed her and said: Most noble christian Quene I beseech you as ye haue euer bene my speciall good Lady and I at all times your true and pwe knight to my power, and as I neuer failed you in right nor yet in wrong sithence the first day that king Arthur made me knight that yee will pray for my soule if that I heere bee slaine. For well

well I am assured that Sir Bors my nephew and all the remnant of my kinne, with sir Lauaine and sir Vrrc, that they will not faile you for to rescue you from the fire & therfore mine owne deare Lady, recomfort you selfe whatsoeuer come of me, that ye goe with sir Bors my nephew and sir Vrrc. And they all will doe you all the pleasure they can or may, that ye shall haue like a Queen vpon my lands. Nay sir Lancelot said the Quen, wit thou well I will neuer liue a day after thy dayes, but and thou be slaine I will take my leath as meekly for Jesu Christs sake, as euer did any christian Quene. Well madame said sir Launcelot sith it is so that the day is come that our loue must depart, wit you well that I shall sell my life as deare as I may. And a thousand fold said sir Launcelot, I am more heauier for you then for my selfe. And now I had leauer then to be Lord of all christendome, that I had sure armour vpon me, that men might speake of my deeds or I were slaine. Truly said Quene Gueneuer I would & it might please God, that they would take me and slay me, and suffer you to escape. What shall neuer be said sir Lancelot, God defend me from such a shame, but lord Jesu be thou my shield and mine armour.

CHAP CXLV.

How Sir Launcelot slew Sir Colgrehauunce, and armed him in his armour. And after slew Sir Agraaine and twelue of his felowes.

And there withall Sir Launcelot wrapped his mantell around about his arme well and surely. And by then they had gotten a great foyme out of the hall, and therewithall they dashed at the chamber doore. Faire Lords said sir Launcelot leaue your noise and your dashing, and I shall set open the doore, and then may yee doe with mee what it liketh you to doe. Come off then said they all, and doe it, for it auaileth thee not to strue against vs all, and therefore let vs into this chamber, and we shall saue thy life vntill thou come to king Arthur. When Sir Launcelot unbarred the doore, and with his left hand hee held it open a little, so that but one man might come in at once. And

The Historie of Prince Arthure

so anon there came in a striding good knight a big man and a large, which was called Sir Colgreuance of Coze, and hee with a sword strake at sir Launcelot mightely, and he put aside the stroke and gaue him such a buffet vpon the helme, that hee fell do lone dead groueling within the chamber doore. And then Sir Launcelot with his great might drew that dead knight within the chamber doore. And then sir Lancelot with the helpe of the Quene and her ladies was lightly armed in sir Colgreuance armour. And euerstod sir Agraaine and sir Mordred crying. Traitor knight come out of the Quenes chamber. Let be your noise said Sir Launcelot vnto sir Agraaine, for wit yee well sir Agraaine, yee shall not prison me this night, and therefore doe yee by my counsaile, go ye all from this chamber doore, and make no such crying and such manner of slander as yee doe. For I promise you by my knighthood and ye will depart and make no more noise. I shall as to morrow appeare before you all, and before the King, and then let it be seene which of you all will accuse me of treason. And there I shall answer you as a knight ought to do, that hither I came vnto the Queen for no manner of male engine and that I will proue and make good vpon you with mine owne hands. Fie on the false traitour said sir Agraaine and Sir Mordred, we will haue thee manure thy head, and sleethee if we list, for we will let thee to wit that wee haue the choise of King Arthur so saue thee or to sleethee. Ah sirs said sir Launcelot, is there none other grace with you, then keepe your selfe. So then sir Launcelot set the chamber doore wide open, and mightely and knightly hee stood in among them. And anon at the first buffet hee slew sir Agraaine, and twelue of his fellows, within a little while after he had laid them to the cold earth. And there was none of all the twelue that might stand with Sir Launcelot a buffet. Also Sir Lancelot wounded sir Mordred, and he fled with all his might. And then Sir Launcelot returned againe vnto the Quene and said. Madame now wit yee wel that al our true loue is brought vnto end. For now will King Arthur euer bee my foe, and therefore madame and if it like you that I may haue you with me, and I shall saue you from all manner of ill aduentures and daungers.

and his Knights of the round Table.

anger. That is not best said the Quene, me seemeth now yee haue done so much harme, it will be best yee hold you still with this. And if ye see that as to morrow they will put me vnto the death. Then may ye rescew me as ye thinke best. I will well said Sir Launcelot, for haue ye no doubt while I am liuing I shall rescew you. And then hee kissed her, and either gaue her a ring. And so there hee left the Quene and went to his lodging.

CHAP. CXLVI.

How Sir Launcelot came to Sir Bors and told him how hee had sped, and in what aduenture he had beene, and how he escaped

So when sir Bors saw Sir Launcelot hee was neuer so glad of his home comming as he was at that time. Jesu mercy said Sir Launcelot, what may this meane. Sir said sir Bors, after that ye were departed from vs, we all that be of your blood your wellwillers, were so dreeming, that some of vs lept out of our beds naked. And some in their dreames caught naked swords in their hands. Wherefore said sir Bors, we deeme there is some great strife at hand. And then we all deemed that yee were betrayed with some treason, and therefore wee made vs thus ready what neede soeuer ye had beene in. My faire nephew said Sir Launcelot vnto sir Bors, now shall ye wit all that this night I was more hardor bested then euer I was in my life, and yet I escaped. And so hee told them all how and in what manner as yee haue heard before. And therefore my fellowes said Sir Launcelot, I beseech you all that yee will bee of good heart in what neede soeuer that I stand in, for now is warre come to vs all. Sir said sir Bors all is welcomie that God send us, and wee all haue had much wealth with you and much worship, and therefore wee will take the woe with you as wee haue taken the wealth. And therefore they said all which were many good knights, loke that ye take no discomfort, for there is no band of knights vnder heauen but that we shall bee able to graue them as much as they may vs. And therefore vnto you not your selfe by no meanes, and ye shall gather together those

those that wee loue, and that loneth vs, and what yee will haue done shall be done. And therefore Sir Launcelot said they, wee will take the woe with the wealth. Gramercy said Sir Launcelot of your good comfort, for in my great distresse my faire nephew ye comfort me greatly, and much I am beholden vnto you. But this my faire nephew I would that ye did in all haste that yee may, or it bee foure dayes, that yee will looke in their lodgings, that bene lodged here nigh about the King which will hold with me, and which will not, for now I would faine know which were my friends from my foes. Sir said Sir Bors I shall doe what I may. And or it be seuen of the clocke I shall wit of such as yee haue said before, who will hold with you or not. When Sir Bors called to him Sir Lionell, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Blamor de Ganis, Sir Bleoberis de Ganis, Sir Galahaurine, Sir Galihodine, Sir Galihnd, Sir Menadeweke, with Sir Villiers the valiant, Sir Hebes le renomies, Sir Lauaine, Sir Vae of hungary, Sir Neroueus and Sir Plenorius these two Sir Launcelot made knights and the one of them he wanne vpon a bridge & therefore they would neuer bee against him. And Sir Harry le fise de lake, and Sir Selises of the dolorous Toure, and Sir Melias de lile and Sir Bellangere le beuse, which was Sir Alisaunder Lorphelins son, because his mother dame Alis la beale pilgrim was of kin vnto Sir Launcelot, hee held with him. So there came Sir Palomides and Sir Safire his brother to hold with Sir Launcelot, and Sir Clegis of sadocke, and Sir Dinas, and Sir Clarius of Claremount. So these two and twentie knights drew them together and anon they were armed and on horsebacke and promised Sir Launcelot to doe what hee would. Then there fell to them what of Northwallis and what of Cornewalle for Sir Lamorecks sake and for Sir Tristrams sake to the number of fourescore good and valiant knights. My Lords said Sir Launcelot, wit ye wel that I haue bene euer sithence I came into this countrey well willing vnto my Lord King Archur and vnto my Lady Quene Gueneuer vnto my power. And this night because my Lady the Quene sent for mee to speake with her, I suppose it was by treason, how be it I dare largely excuse her person. Not withstanding I was thereby afore cast nigh staine, but as Iesu pro-

indeo

uised mee I escaped all their malice. And then that noble knight Sir Launcelot told them all how he was hard belied in the Quenes chamber, and how and in what manner he escaped from them, and therefore (said Sir Launcelot) wit ye wel my faire Lords, I am sure there is nought but warre vnto me and mine, and for because I haue staine this night these knights, as Sir Agraaine, Sir Gawaines brother, and and at the least the loue of his fellowes, and for this cause now I am sure of mortall war. These knights were sent and ordained by King Arthur to betray mee, and therefore the King will in his hate and malice iudge the Quene to the fire, and that may I not suffer, that shee should bee burnt for my sake. For and I may be heard and suffered, and so taken I will fight for the Quene, that she is a true Lady vnto her Lord. But the King in his heat I dread me will not take me as I ought to be taken.

CHAP. CXLVII.

Of the counsaile and aduise which was taken by Sir Launcelot, and his friends for to saue the Quene.

My Lord Sir Launcelot said Sir Bors, by mine aduise yee shall take the woe with the wealth, and take it patiently, and thanke our Lord God of it. And sithence it is fallen as it is, I counsaile you to keepe your selfe. For if yee will your selfe, there is no fellowship chistned of knights that shall doe you any wrong. Also I will counsaile you my Lord Sir Launcelot, that and my Lady Quene Gueneuer be in distresse, in so much as she is in paine for your sake, that yee knightly rescue her. And if yee did otherwise. All the world will speake of you shame to the worlds end. In so much as yee were taken with her, whether ye did right or rong, it is now your part to hold with the Quene, that shee bee not staine and put to a mischiefes death, for and the Quene die so, the shame shall be yours. Oh good Lord Iesu defend mee from shame, said Sir Launcelot, and keepe and saue my Lady the Quene from vilany and from shamefull death, and that she neuer be destroyed in my default. And therefore my faire Lords, ye that be of my kinne and my

Wh

friends

The Historie of Prince Arthur

friends, said Sir Lancelot, what will ye doe. When they said all
we will doe as ye will doe your selfe. And put this to you said Sir
Lancelot, that if my Lord King Arthur by euill counsaile, will
to morrow in his heate put my Lady the Quene to the fire,
there to be burnt, now I pray you counsaile mee what is best
to be done. When they said all at once with one voice. Sir wee
thinke that the best that ye may doe is this, that yee knightly
rescwe the Quene, in so much as shee shall be burnt it is for
your sake. And it is to be supposed that if ye might be handled,
ye should haue the same death, or else a more shamefull death.
And Sir wee say all that many times yee haue rescwed the
Quene from death, for other mens quarrels, as seemeth it is
more your worship, that ye rescwe the Quene from this peril,
so much as she hath it for your sake. When Sir Lancelot stood stil
e said. My faire Lords wit ye well that I would be loth to doe
that thing that should dishonour you or my blood. And wit ye
well I would be right loth that my Lady the Quene should die
a shamefull death. But and it be soe that ye will counsaile me
for to rescwe her, I must doe much harme or I rescwe her,
and peradventure I shall ther destroy some of my best friends
which would repent me much. And peradventure there be some
and they could well bring it about, or disobey my Lord King
Arthur; they would full soone come to mee, the which I wold
loth to hurt. And if so be that I should rescwe her, where should
I keepe her. That shall be the least care of vs all said Sir Bors
how did the noble knight Sir Tristram by your good will, did
not he keepe with him la beake Isoud nigh thre yeres in toyous
guard, the which was done by both your aduises and that same
place is your owne. And in likewise may ye doe as ye list and
take the Quene lightly away, if it bee so that the King will
iudge her to be hurt and in Joyous gard yee may keepe her long
enough, untill the heate of the King be past, and then shall yee
bring againe the Quene vnto the King with great worshipp.
And then peradventure ye shall haue thanks for her bringing
home againe. Where other shall haue mauer. That is hard to
doe said Sir Lancelot, for by Sir Tristram I may haue a war-
ning. For when by organes of the treatise Sir Tristram brought
againe

and his Knights of the round Table.

la beake Isoud vnto King Marke from Joyous gard looke
at the end, how shamefully that false traitour King
Arthur that noble knight as he sat harping before his La-
dy beake Isoud with a sharpe grounded glauiue thrust him be-
to the heart. It grieueth mee said Sir Launcelot to speake
of his death, for all the world may not find such a knight. All
that he said Sir Bors, but there is one thing shall courage
me and be all. We know well that King Arthur and King Marke
were neuer like of conditions. For there was neuer yet man
that could proue King Arthur untrue of his promise. So to mak
that tale, they were all consented that for better or worse, if it
were so that the Quene were on the morrow brought to the
fire, shortly they all wold rescwe her. And so by the aduise of
Sir Launcelot they put them all to an ambushment in a little
wood as nigh Caerleill as they might, and there they abode
all for to wit what the King would doe.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

How Sir Mordred rode hastily vnto the King for to tell him of
the fray and death of Sir Agramaine his brother and of other
things.

Now turne wee againe vnto Sir Mordred which when hee
was escaped from the noble knight Sir Launcelot, he
gan gat his horse and mounted vpon him, and rode straight
to King Arthur soe wounded and beaten and all bee-bleed. And
there he told the King al how it was, and how they were al slain
but me. Jesu mercy how may this be said the King, did yee take
him in the Quenes chamber. We so God me helpe said Sir
Mordred there we found him vnarmed, and there he slew Sir
Colgrenaunce and armed him in his armour. And all this hee
told the King from the beginning to the ending. Ah Jesu mercy
said the King he is a meruailous knight of prowesse. Alas me
soe repenteth said the King that euer Sir Launcelot should be
against mee, now I am sure the noble fellowship of the round
table is broken for euer, for with him will hold many a noble
knight. And now it is befallen so said King Arthur, that I

may not with my worship but that the Quene must suffer death. So then there was made great ordinance in this heate that the Quene must bee iudged to death. And the law was such in those dayes, that what soeuer they were, of what estate or degree, if that they were found guiltie of treason, there should be none other remedie but death, and either the men or the taking with the dead should bee the causer of their hastie iudgement. And right so was it ordained for Quene Gueneuer. Because Sir Mordred was escaped soe wounded & the death of twelue knights of the roundtable these proues and experience caused King Arthur to command the Quene to the fire there to be burnt. When spake Sir Gawaine and said. My Lord King Arthur, I would counsaile you, and not to be ouer haste but that ye would put in respite this iudgement of my Lady the Quene for many causes. One is, though it were so that Sir Launcelot were found in the Quenes chamber, yet it might be so that he came thither for none euill. For yee know, my Lord said Sir Gawaine, that the Quene is much beholden vnto sir Lancelot, more then to any other knight aliue. For often times he hath saved her life, and done battaile for her when all the Court refused the Quene. And peradventure she sent for him for goodnesse and for none euill to reward him, for the good dedes he had done for her in time past. And peradventure my Lady the quene sent for him to that entent that Sir Launcelot should come to her good grace priuely and secretly, weneing to her that it was best so to doe, in eschewing and dreading of slander. For often times we doe many things that we wene it is for the best and yet peradventure it turneth to the worst. For I dare say said Sir Gawaine, that my Lady your Quene is to you both good and true. And as for Sir Launcelot said Sir Gawaine, he will make it good vpon any knight liuing, that will put vpon him selfe any vilanie or shame. And in likewise he will make good for my Lady damie Gueneuer. What I beleue well said King Arthur but I will not that way with Sir Launcelot, for hee traffeth so much vpon his hands and his might that he doubteth not in. And therefore for the Quene hee shall neuer fight more, for shee shall haue the law. And if that I may get Sir

Lancelot

Lancelot, wit yee well hee shall haue a shamefull death. Iesu said sir Gawaine, that I may neuer see it. Wherefore yee so said King Arthur vnto sir Gawaine, for truly ye haue no great cause to long sir Lancelot, for this night last past he slew your owne brother sir Agraue a ful good knight, and hee had almost slaine your other brother sir Mordred And so there he slew 12 good knights. And also sir Gawaine remembred you how he slew two sonnes of yours. Sir Florence and Sir Iuell. My Lord said sir Gawaine of all this I haue knowledge, whose death I repent me soe But in so much as I gaue them warning, and told my brethren & my sonnes before hand, what would fall in the end, in so much as they would not do by my counsaile, I will not medle me thereof, nor reuenge me nothing of their deaths, for I told them it was no bote to strue with sir Lancelot, how be it I am soe of the death of my brother and my sonnes, for they were the causers of their owne death. For many times I warned my brother sir Agraue, and told him the perils the which hee now hee fallen.

CHAP. CXLII

How Sir Launcelot and his kinsmen rescued the Quene from the fire, and how hee slew many Knights.

Then said the noble King Arthur to sir Gawaine. My deare nephew I pray you that ye wil make you ready in your best way with your brethren sir Gaheris & sir Gareth to bring my Quene to the fire, there to haue her iudgement, and receiue her death. Say my most noble Lord (said sir Gawaine) that wil I neuer doe in my life, for wit you well that I will neuer bee in the place where so noble a Quene as is my Lady Quene Gueneuer shall take such a shamefull ending. For wit you well said sir Gawaine that my heart will neuer serue mee to see her die, and it shall neuer bee said that euer I was of your counsell of her death. When said King Arthur vnto sir Gawaine. Suffer your brother sir Gaheris and sir Gareth to be there. My Lord said sir Gawaine, wit you well that they will bee loth to bee so present, because of many adventures, which hee like to fall

The Historie of Prince Arthure

fall there, but they are young and full unable to say you nay. When spake sir Gaheris and the good knight sir Gareth vnto King Arthur. Sir yee may well commande vs to be there, but wit yee well it shall be soze agatist our will. But and wee be there by your straitte commandement, yee shall plainly hold vs there excused, wee will bee there in peaceable wise and beare no harnais of warre vpon vs. In the name of God said the King, then make you ready, for the shall sone haue her iudgement. Alas said Sir Gawaine, that euer I should endure to see this wofull day. So Sir Gawaine turned him and wept heartely, and so hee went into his chamber. And then the Quene was led forth without Chaerleyll and there shee was dispoiled vnto her smocke. And so then her ghostly father was brought to her to be shziuen of her misdeeds. When there was weeping and wailing and wching of hands of many Lords and Ladies. But there was but few in comparison that would beare any armitour for to strength the death of the Queen. Then was there one which Sir Launcelot had sent vnto that place for to espie what time the Quene should goe vnto her iudgement. And anon as he saw that the Quene was dispoiled vnto her smocke, and also that shee was shziuen, then he gaue Sir Launcelot warning thereof. Then was there spurring and plucking vp of horses And right so they came to the fire, and who that stood against them, there they were slaine, there might none withstand sir Launcelot. So all that beare armes and withstood them there were they slaine many a noble knight. For there was slaine sir Belias le orgulous, Sir Sagwardes, Sir Griflet, Sir Brandiles, Sir Aglouaile, Sir Tor, Sir Gauter Sir Guilimere, Sir Reinolds thre brethren, sir Damas, sir Priamus, sir Kay the stranger, sir Driaunt, Sir Lambegus, Sir Herminde, sir Pertelopoe, Sir Perimones two brethren, which were called the greene knight and the red knight. And as this rushing and hurling as sir Launcelot thraugh heere and ther, it mishapned him to sleie sir Gaheris, and the noble knight sir Gareth for they were vnarmed and vnaware. For Sir Launcelot smote Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris vpon the brain paus, where through they were both slaine in the field. Now bee it in very trufth sir Launcelot

and his Knights of the round Table.

Launcelot saw them not, and so were they found dead among the thickest of the presse. When when sir Launcelot had thus done, and had put them to flight all they would withstand him, so he rode straight vnto Quene Gueneuer and made a kirtell and a gowne to bee cast vpon her, and then hee made her to bee behind him, and praised her to be of good cheare. Wit it you that the Quene was glad that shee was escaped fro death: so then shee thanked God and Sir Launcelot. And so hee rode away with the Quene vnto Joyous gard, and there hee kept as a noble knight should doe, and many great Lords and knights sent Sir Launcelot many good knights. And many noble knights drew vnto Sir Launcelot. When this was knowne, that King Arthur and Sir Launcelot were at debate, many knights were glad of their debate, and many knights were soze of their debate.

CHAP. CL.

The sorrow and lamentation of King Arthur for the death of his two nephewes and other good Knights, and also for the Quene his wife.

So turne we againe to King Arthur, that when it was told him how and in what manner of wise the Quene was taken away from the fire and when hee heard of the death of his noble knights, and in speciall of Sir Gaheris and Sir Gareths death, then the King sorrowed for pure sorow, and when hee was rethied he said. Alas that elier I bare any crowne vpon my head, for I hadde now lost the fairest fellowship of noble knights that euer yeld christian King together. Alas my good knights be slaine away from me. Now within these two dayes I lost forrie knights, and also the noble fellowship of sir Pertelopoe and his blood, for how I may neuer more hold them together with my worship. Alas that euer this war began. Now faire fellows said the King, I charge you that no man shall speake of the death of his two brethren. For I am the King, when Sir Gawaine heard that Sir Gareth his brother was dead, he will high go out of his mind. Oh mercifull Iesu

The Historie of Prince Arthur

Jesus said the king, why slew hee Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris? for I dare say as for Sir Gareth he loued Sir Launcelot above all earthly men. What is truth said some knights, but they were slaine in the hurling as sir Launcelot thrang in the thicke of the presse. And as they were vnarmed hee smote them and wist not to whom hee smote, and so unhappely they were slaine. The death of them said King Arthur will cause the greatest mortall warre that euer was. I am sure wist Sir Gawaine that Sir Gareth were slaine, I should neuer haue rest of him, till that I had destroyed Sir Launcelots kinne and him selfe both, or else hee to destroy me, and therefore wit you well my heart was neuer so heauie as it is now, and much more I am sorrier for my good knights losse, then for the losse of my queen, for Quenes might haue enough, but such a fellowship of good knights shall neuer bee together in no company. And now I dare say said the king that there was neuer christian king that held such a fellowship together. Alas that euer Sir Launcelot and I should bee at debate. Ah Agraine, Agraine said the king, Jesus forgiue it thy soule for thing euill wilt that thou and thy brother Sir Mordred had vnto Sir Launcelot, hath caused all this sorow. And euer among these complaints king Arthur wept and sorrowed. Then there came one vnto Sir Gawaine and told him how the Quene was led away with Sir Launcelot, and nigh twentie foure knights slaine. Oh Jesus defend my brethren said Sir Gawaine, for full well wist I that Sir Launcelot would rescue her, or else hee would die in the feld. And so for to say the truth he had not bene a man of worth if he had not rescued the Quene, that day in so much as he should haue ben burnt for his sake. And as in that said Sir Gawaine he hath done but knightly and as I would haue done my selfe, and I had stood in like case. But where are my brethren said Sir Gawaine I am sure that I heare not of them. Truly said the man, your two brethren Sir Gareth and Sir Gaheris be slaine. Jesus defend said Sir Gawaine, for all the good in the world I would not that they were slaine, and in especial Sir Gareth. Sir said the man, hee is slaine & that is great pittie. Who slew him said Sir Gawaine. Sir said the man,

and his Knights of the round Table.

that Sir Launcelot slew them both. What may I not beleue said Sir Gawaine, that hee slew my brother Sir Gareth, for I dare say my brother Sir Gareth loued him better then mee and all his brethren, and the king both. Alas I dare say, and if Sir Launcelot had desired my brother Sir Gareth to haue been with him, hee would haue bene with him against the king and vs all, and therefore I may neuer beleue that Sir Launcelot slew my brother. Sir said the man, it is noyed that he slew him.

CHAP. CLI.

How King Arthur at the request of Sir Gawaine concluded to make warre against Sir Launcelot, and laid siege to his Castle, called Ioyous gard.

Alas said Sir Gawaine, now is all my ioy gone. And then he fell downe in a sowne, and long he lay there as he had bene dead, and then when hee arose out of his sowne hee cried out so rusfully and said, alas. And right so Sir Gawaine ranne into the king crying and weeping. Oh King Arthur mine vncle, my good brother Sir Gaheris is slaine, and my brother Sir Gareth also, the which were two noble knights. When the king wept and hee both, and they fell downe in a sowne. And when they were reuiued againe, Sir Gawaine spake and said. Sir I will goe see my brother Sir Gareth. We may not see him said the king, for I caused him to bee buried and Sir Gaheris both. For I wel vnderstood that ye would make ouermuch sorow and the sight of Sir Gareth should haue caused your double sorow. Alas mine owne Lord said Sir Gawaine, who slew my brother Sir Gareth, mine owne good Lord I pray you that you will tell me. Truly said the king I shall tell you as it is told me Sir Launcelot slew him and Sir Gaheris both. Alas said Sir Gawaine, neither of them both beare none armes against him. I wot not how it was said the king but as it is said, Sir Launcelot slew them both in the thickest of the presse, and knew them not, and therefore let vs make a remedy for to reuenge their deaths.

My most gracious Lord and my vncle said Sir Gawain, wit you

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

you well that now I shall make you a promise, the which I shall hold by my knighthood, that from this day I shall neuer faile Sir Launcelot, untill the one of vs hath slaine the other, and therefore I require you my Lord and my King vnto the warre. for wit you well I shall be reuenged vpon Sir Launcelot. And therefore as yee will haue my seruice and my loue now haſte you thereto, and assay your friends, for I promise vnto God said Sir Gawaine, that for the death of my brother Sir Gareth I shall ſeeke Sir Launcelot throughout ſeuene Kinges realmes, but I shall ſley him or elſe hee ſhall ſley mee. We ſhall not neede to ſeeke him ſo farre ſaid the King, for as I heard ſay Sir Launcelot will abide me and you in Joyous gard and much people draweth vnto him as I heare ſay. That may I full well beleue ſaid Sir Gawaine, but my Lord assay your friends, and I will assay mine. It ſhall be done ſaid the King and as I ſuppoſe I ſhall bee big enough to draw him out of the biggeſt Towre of his Caſtle. So then King Arthur ſent letters and writs throughout all England, both in the length and in the breadth, for to aſſemble all his knights. And ſo vnto King Arthur drew many knights, Dukes and Barons, ſo that he had a great hoſt. And when they were aſſembled, the King enformed them all how Sir Launcelot had bereft him of his Quene. Then the King and all his hoſt made them ready to lay ſiege about Sir Launcelot, wher as he lay within Joyous gard. Therof heard Sir Launcelot and purſued him of many a good knight. For with him held many knights, ſome for his owne ſake and ſome for the Quenes ſake. Thus they were on both parties well furniſhed and garniſhed of all manner of things that belonged to the warre. But King Archurs hoſt was ſo big that Sir Launcelot would not abide him in the field, for he was full loth to doe battaile againſt the King. But Sir Launcelot drew him to his ſtrong Caſtle with all manner of viſſell. And as many noble men as might ſuffice, both within the towne and the Caſtle. Then came King Arthur and Sir Gawaine with an huge hoſt, and laid a ſiege about Joyous gard, both at the towne and at the Caſtle. And there they made full ſtrong warre on both parties. But in no wiſe Sir Launcelot would

not

and his Knights of the round Table:

ride out nor goe out of the Caſtle of a long time, neither would ſuffer none of his good knights to iſſue out, neither of the towne nor of the Caſtle untill ſixtene weekes were paſt.

CHAP. CII.

Of the communication betweene King Arthur and Sir Launcelot, and how King Arthur reproveth him.

So it befell on a day in harueſt that Sir Launcelot looked ouer the walls and ſpake on hie to King Arthur and Sir Gawaine. My Lords both wit ye well it is in vaine that ye labour at this ſiege, for heere win yee no worſhip, but diſhonour and mauer for and it liſt mee come out my ſelfe and my good knights, I ſhould full ſoone make an end of this warre. Come ſayd King Arthur vnto ſir Launcelot and thou daereſt, and I promise thee I ſhall meeete thee in the middeſt of the field. God defend mee ſaid ſir Launcelot, that euer I ſhould encounter with the moſt noble King that made me knight. He vpon the faire language ſaid the King, for wit thou well and truſt it, that I am thy moſtall foe, and euer will bee to my dying day. For thou haſt ſlaine my good knights and the noble men of my blood, which I ſhall neuer recouer againe. Alſo thou haſt lyeuen by my Quene, and holden her many winters, and ſith like a traitour taken her from me by force. My moſt noble King ſaid Sir Launcelot ye may ſay what yee will, for wit you well that with your ſelfe I will not ſtrive. But whereas yee ſay that I haue ſlaine your good knights, I wot well that I haue done ſo, and that mee ſore repenteth but I was enforced to doe battaile with them in ſauing of my life, or elſe I muſt haue ſuffered them to haue ſlaine me. And as for my Lady Quene Gueneuer (except your perſon of your highneſſe and my Lord Sir Gawaine) there is no knight vnder heauen that dare make it good vpon mee, that euer I was a traitour vnto your perſon. And where it pleaſeth you to ſay that I haue holden my Lady your Quene yeares and winters, vnto that I ſhall make a large anſwere and proue it vpon any knight that beareth life (except

your person and sir Gawaine) that my Lady Quene Gueneuer is a true Lady vnto your person, & that will I make good with my hands, how bee it, it hath liked her good grace to haue mee in charitie and to cherish mee more then any other knight. And vnto my power I haue deserued her loue againe. For oftentimes my Lord yee haue consented that she should bee bzent and destroyed in your heate, and then it fortun'd me to doe battaile for her, and so that I departed from her aduersaries, they confessed their vntruths, and shee full worshipfully excused.

And at such times my Lord Arthur, said Sir Launcelot, yee loued mee, and thanked me when I saued your Quene from the fire, and then yee promised me for euer to bee my gracious Lord, and now me thinketh ye reward me full euill for my good seruice. And my good Lord, mee seemeth that I had lost a part of my worship in my knighthood, if I had suffred my Lady your Quene to haue bene bzent, in so much as she should haue bene bzent for my sake. For sithence I haue done battailes for your Quene in other quarels then in mine owne, mee seemeth now I had more right to doe battaile for her in a right quarell. And therfore my good and gracious Lord said Sir Launcelot take your Quene vnto your good grace, for shee is both faire, true and good. Fie on thee false recreant knight (said Sir Gawaine) I let thee to wit that my Lord mine vnckle King Arthur shall haue his Quene and thee maugre thy visage, and slea you both where as it shall please him. It my well be (said sir Launcelot) but wit yee well my Lord Sir Gawaine, and mee list to come out of this Castle yee should win mee & the Quene more harder then euer yee wanne a strong battaile. Fie vpon thy proud words said Sir Gawaine, as for my Lady the Quene I will neuer say of her shame. Ah thou false recreant knight said sir Gawaine, what cause hadst thou to slea my good brother Sir Gareth, that loued thee more then all thy kin. Alas thou madst him knight with thine hands, why slewest thou him that loued thee so well, for to excuse mee (said sir Launcelot) it helpeth mee not. But by Iesu said Sir Launcelot, and by the faith that I owe vnto the high order of knighthood, I should with as good a will haue slaine my nephew sir Bors de Ganis at that

that time. But alas that euer I was so vnhappy (said sir Launcelot) that I had seene sir Gareth and sir Gaheris. Thou liest false recreant knight said sir Gawaine thou slewest him in despite of me, & therfore wit thou well that I shall make warre vnto thee al the while that I may liue. What me soze repenteth said sir Launcelot, for well I vnderstand that it helpeth me not to seeke for none accordment whiles that yee sir Gawaine are so maliciously set. And if yee were not, I would not doubt to haue the good grace of my Lord King Arthur, I beleue it well false recreant knight said sir Gawaine, for thou hast many long daies ouerlad mee and vs all, and hast destroyed many of our good knights. Yee say as it pleaseth you said sir Launcelot, and yet may it neuer be said on me and openly proued, that euer I before cast off reason slew no good knight, as ye my Lord sir Gawaine haue done and so did I neuer but in my defence, and that I was driuen thereto in sauing of my life. Ah false knight said Sir Gawaine, that thou meanest by Sir Lamoracke, but wit thou well that I slew him. Yee slew him not your selfe said sir Launcelot, for it had bene ouermuch for you to haue slaine him, for he was one of the best knights christned of his age, & it was great pitie of his death.

CHAP. CLIII.

How the cosins and kinsmen of Sir Launcelot exhorted him for to goe out to do battaile, and how they made them ready.

Then said sir Gawaine vnto sir Lancelot, sith thou embzadest me of sir Lamoracke, wit thou well I shall neuer leaue thee till I haue thee at such aduantage that thou shalt not escape my hands. I trust you well enough said Sir Launcelot, that if yee may get me, I shall haue but little mercy. But King Arthur would haue taken his Quene againe, and would haue bene accorded with sir Launcelot, but sir Gawaine would not suffer him by no maner of meanes. And then sir Gawaine made many men to blow vpon sir Lancelot, & al at once they called him false recreant knight. When when sir Bors de ganis, sir Ector de Ma, and sir Lionell heard this out crie, they called vnto them sir

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Palomides, and Sir Safire his brother, and Sir Lauaine, with many other more of their blood, and all they went vnto sir Lancelot and to him they said thus. My Lord Sir Lancelot, wit ye well that wee haue great scozne of the great rebukes that wee heard Sir Gawaine say vnto you, wherefore wee beseech you and charge you as ye will haue our seruice, keepe vs no longer within these walls, wit you well we will ride vnto the field and doe battaile with them. For ye fare as a man that were afeard and for all your faire speech it will not abaille you. For wit ye well sir Gawaine will not suffer you to bee accorded with King Arthur, and therefore fight for your life and your right and ye dare. Alas said sir Lancelot, for to ride out of this Castle and doe battaile, I am full loth to doe it. Then Sir Launcelot spake on high vnto King Arthur and sir Gawaine. My Lords I require you and beseech you sith I am thus required and constrained to ride into the field, that neither you my Lord King Arthur nor you sir Gawaine come not into the field. What shall wee doe then said sir Gawaine, is not this the Kings quarrell with thee to fight, and it is my quarrell to fight with thee Sir Launcelot, because of the death of my brother sir Gareth. Then must I needes vnto battaile said sir Launcelot, now wit ye wel my Lord King Arthur and Sir Gawaine, ye will repent it when soeuer I doe battaile with you. And so then they departed either from other. And then on the morrow either partie made them ready for to doe battaile. And great purueiance was made on both sides. And Sir Gawaine let puruey many knights for to waite vpon Sir Launcelot for to ouer set him, and to slay him. And on the morrow at vnderne King Arthur was ready in the field with three great hostes. And then sir Lancelots fellowship came out at three gates in full good aray. And sir Lionell came in the foremost battaile, and sir Launcelot came in the middle battaile. And Sir Bors came out at the third gate. Thus they came in order and rule as valiant knights. And alwaies Sir Launcelot charged all his knights in any wise to saue king Arthur and sir Gawaine.

CHAP.

and his Knights of the round Table.

CHAP CLIIII.

How Sir Gawaine iusted and smote downe Sir Lionell, and how Sir Lancelot horsed King Arthur.

Then came forth sir Gawaine from the knights host, and he came befoze and proffered to Iust, and Sir Lionel was a prey knight, and lightly he encountred with Sir Gawaine, and there Sir Gawaine smote Sir Lionell throughtout the body, that he dashed vnto the earth as hee had bene dead. And then sir Ector de Maris and more other beare him into the Castle. Then began a great sturre and much people was there slaine. And euer sir Launcelot did what he might to saue the people on King Arthurs part. For Sir Palomides and Sir Bors and Sir Sir Guenther slew many knights, for there were deadly knights Sir Blamor de ganis, and Sir Bleoberis de ganis, with Sir Illangere le Breuse, these five knights did much damage and hurt. And euer King Arthur was nigh about sir Lancelot for to slaine him. And sir Launcelot suffered him and would not strike againe. So Sir Bors encountred with King Arthur, and bare with a speare Sir Bors smote him downe to the ground. And so he alighted and drew his sword and said vnto Sir Launcelot. Shall I make an end of this warre. And that hee ment for to haue slaine King Arthur. Not so hardie said Sir Launcelot vpon paine of thy head that thou touch him no more. For I will see that most noble King that made mee knight, neither slaine nor shamed. And therewithall Sir Launcelot alighted from his horse, and tooke vp the King and horsed him againe, and said vnto him thus.

My Lord Arthur for Gods loue stint this strife, for ye may see here no worship, and I would doe mine uttermost, but euer I forbear you, and ye nor none of yours forbear me. My Lord remember what I haue done in many places, and now I am euill rewarded. When King Arthur was againe on horseback, he looked vpon sir Lancelot, and then the teares burst out of his eyes thinking on the great curtesie that was in Sir Launcelot more then in any other man. And therewith the King

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

King rode forth his way, and might no longer behold him, and said to himselfe. Alas that euer this warre began. And then either parties of the battailes withdrew them for to rest them, and buried the dead bodies, and to the wounded man they laid soft salues. And thus they endured that night till on the morrow. And on the morrow by vnderne they made them ready to doe battaile. And then Sir Bors led them forward. So on the morrow came Sir Gawaine as grim as any Beare with a speare in his hand. And when Sir Bors saw him, he thought to reuenge his brother Sir Lionell of the despite that Sir Gawain had done him the other day. And so they that knew either other, feutred their speares, and with all the might of their horses and themselves, they met together so furiously, that either beare other through, & so they fell both to the ground. And then the battailes toynd together and there was great slaughter on both parties. When Sir Launcelot rescued Sir Bors and sent him into the Castle. But neither Sir Gawaine nor Sir Bors died not of their wounds, for they were both holpen. Then Sir Lauaine and Sir Vire prayed Sir Launcelot to doe his paine and fight as they had done. For we see that yee forbear and spare, and that doth much harme, therefore we pray you spare not your enemye no more then they doe you. Alas said Sir Launcelot, I haue no heart to fight against my Lord King Arthur. For alway mee seemeth I doe not as I ought to doe. My Lord said Sir Palomides though ye spare them all this day they will neuer can you thanke. And if they may get you at any vantage yee are but dead. So then Sir Launcelot vnderstood well that they told him truth, and then he strained himselfe more then he did aforehand, and because that his nephew Sir Bors was sore wounded. And then within a little while by euensong time, sir Launcelot and his partie better stood. For their horses went in blood aboue their fote-locks, there was so much people slain on both parties. And then for pittie sir Launcelot withdrew his knights. And so did King Arthurs part. And then sir Lancelot and his partie entred into their Castle. And either partie buried the dead bodies and put salve to the wounded men.

So when Sir Gawaine was hurt, they on King Arthurs partie

and his Knights of the round Table:

He were not halfe so orgulous and proud as they were before to doe battaile. Of this warre was noised through all christendome. And at the last it was noised before the people. And hee considering the great goodnesse of King Arthur and sir Launcelot, which was called the most noble knight of the world, wherefore the Pope called vnto him a noble clarke, that at that time was there present, which was the bishop Rochester. And the Pope gaue him bulls vnder lead vnto King Arthur of England charging him vpon paine of interdicting of all England that he take his Quene dame Gueneuer to him againe and accord with sir Launcelot.

CHAP. CLV.

How the Pope sent downe his Bulls for to make peace, and how Sir Launcelot brought the Quene vnto King Arthur.

So when this bishop was come to Caerleill he shewed the King these Bulls. And when the King vnderstood the Bulls hee wist not what to doe. Gladly hee would accord with Sir Launcelot, but Sir Gawaine would not suffer him. But as for to haue the Quene againe, thereto hee agreed, but in no wise Sir Gawaine would not suffer the King to accord with Sir Launcelot, but as for the Quene shee consented. And then the bishop had of his King his great seale and his assurance as hee was a true anointed King, that Sir Launcelot should come and go safe, and that the Queen should not be reprovied of the King, nor of none other for nothing done before time past. And of all these appointments the bishop brought with him assurance and writing to shew sir Launcelot. So when the bishop was come to Joyous gard there hee shewed sir Lancelot, how the Pope had written vnto King Arthur and vnto him. And there hee told him the perils, if hee withheld the Quene from the King. It was neuer my thought said Sir Launcelot for to withhold the Quene from my Lord King Arthur, but in so much as she would haue bene dead for my sake, mee seemeth it was my part to saue her life, and put her from that danger till better reconer might come. And now I thanke God that the Pope

h h

bath

hath made her peace. For God knoweth said Sir Launcelot, I would bee a thousand fold more gladder to bring her againe then I was of her taking away. With this that I may be sure for me and mine to come safe and goe safe, and that the Queene shall haue her liberties as she had before, and neuer for nothing that hath beene surmised before this time, that she neuer from this day stand in no perill. For else said Sir Launcelot, I dare aduenture mee for to keepe her from an harder shoure then euer I kept her. That shall not need said the bishop for to dread you so much, for wit you well the pope must bee obeyed. And if it were not the popes worship and my poore honestie yee were distressed, neither the Queene, neither in perill, nor shamed. And then he shewed Sir Launcelot all his writings, both from the Pope and from King Arthur. This is sure enough said Sir Launcelot, for full well I dare trust my Lords owne writing and his seale, for hee was neuer yet shamed of his promise. Therefore said Sir Launcelot vnto the bishop, yee shall ride vnto the king before me, and recommend me vnto his good grace and let him haue knowledge that this same day eight dayes (by the grace of God) I my selfe shall bring my Lady Queene Gueneuer vnto him. And ye may say vnto my most redoubted Lord King Arthur, that I will say largely for my Lady the Queene that I shall except none for dread nor feare but the King himselfe, and my Lord Sir Gawaine, and that is more for King Arthurs loue then for himselfe. So the bishop departed and came to the King at Caerleil, and told him all how Sir Launcelot had answered him. And then the teares brast out of King Arthurs eyes. When sir Launcelot purueied him an hundred knights, and all they were clothed in greene veluet, and their horses trapped to the heeles. And euery knight held a bzaunch of oliue in his hand in token of peace. And the Queen had with her twentie gentlewomen following her in the same wise. And Sir Launcelot had twelue coursers following him. And vpon euery courser sat a young gentleman, & all they were arrayed in greene veluet, with sarpes of gold about their quarters, and their horses trapped in the same wise downe to the heele with many ouches and set with stones and pearles in gold to the

number

number of a thousand. And Queene Gueneuer and Sir Launcelot were clothed in white cloth of gold tisme. And right so as yee haue heard hee roade with the Queene from Joyous gard vnto Caerleil. And so sir Launcelot roade thzough out Caerleil, and so into the castle, that euery man might behold. And wit you well there was many a weeping eye. And then Sir Launcelot himselfe alighted and auoided his horse and take the Queene and led her where as King Arthur sat in his seate, and Sir Gawaine sat before him, and many other great lords. So when sir Launcelot saw the King and sir Gawaine, then hee led the Queene by the arme, and then hee kneeled downe and the Queene both. Wit you well then was there many a bold knight with King Arthur that wept as tenderly as though they had seene all their kinne before them. So King Arthur sat still and said not one word. And then Sir Launcelot saw his countenance, hee arose and tooke vp the Queene with him, and thus speake hee vnto the most noble King Arthur full knightly, and like a man of great honour.

CHAP. CLVI.

Of the deliuerance of the Queene to the King by Sir Launcelot, and what language Sir Gawaine gaue Sir Launcelot.

My most redoubted Lord ye shall vnderstand, that by the Popes commandement and yours, I haue brought vnto you my Lady the Queene, as right requireth. And if there be any knight, of whatsoeuer degree hee be (except your person) that will say or dare say but that shee is true and cleane vnto you, I here my selfe Sir Launcelot will make it good vpon his body, that she is a true Lady vnto you. But liers ye haue listned vnto, & that hath caused great debate betweene you and me, for the time hath beene my Lord King Arthur, that yee haue beene greatly pleased with me, when I did battall for my Lady your Queene. And full well ye know my most noble Lord and King, that shee hath beene put vnto great wrong or this time. And sith it pleased you at many times that I should fight for her, me seemeth my good Lord I haue more cause to rescow her from

lik 2

the

the fire, in so much as wee should haue bene bzent for my sake. For they that told you those tales were liers, and so it fell by on them. For by likelyhood had not the might of God bene with me, I might neuer haue endured against fourteen knights and they armed and before purposed, and I unarmed and not purposed. For I was sent for vnto my Lady your Quene, I wot not for what cause. But I was not so soone within the chamber doze but anon Sir Agraaine and Sir Mordred called mee false traitour and recreaunt knight. They called thee right said Sir Gawaine. My Lord Sir Gawaine said Sir Launcelot in their quarrell they proued themselves not in the right. Yet wel Sir Launcelot said King Arthur I haue giuen thee no cause to doe to mee as thou hast done, for I haue worshipped thee and thine more then any all my knights. My good Lord and king said Sir Launcelot, so ye be not displeased, ye shall vnderstand that I and mine haue often done better seruice then any other knights haue done you diuers places, and where ye haue ben still heard bestead diuers times, I haue my selfe rescewed you from many dangers, and euer vnto my power I was glad for to please you and my Lord Sir Gawaine both in iusts and in tournaments, and in battailes set both on horsebacke and on foote I haue often rescewed you and my Lord Sir Gawaine and many moe of your knights in diuers places. For now I will make my aunt said Sir Launcelot, I will that yee all wit that yet I found neuer no manner of knight, but that I was ouer hard for him, and I had done mine vttermoost thanked be God, how be it I haue bene matched with good knights, as Sir Tristram and sir Lamorake, but euer I had a fauour to them and a damping what they wer. And I take God to record said sir Lancelot, I was neuer wroth nor greatly heauie with no knight, and I saw him busie about to winne worship. And full glad I was euer when I found any knight that might endure me on horsebacke and on foote. How be it Sir Carado of the dolorous toure was a full noble knight and a passing strong man, and that wot ye my Lord Sir Gawain. For he might ful wel bee called a noble knight, when he by fine force pulled you out of your saddle and bound ouerthwart his horse before him to his saddle bow.

And

And there my Lord sir Gawaine I rescewed you, and slew him before your face. And I found his brother Sir Torquine in like wise, leading Sir Gaheris your brother bound before him, and there I rescewed your brother, and slew that sir Torquine, and deliuered fortie sours of my Lord Archurs knights out of prison. And now I dare say said sir Launcelot, I met neuer with so strong knights, nor so well fighting, as was sir Carados and sir Torquine, for I fought with them to the vttermoost. And therefore said sir Launcelot vnto sir Gawaine, me seemeth yee ought of right for to remember this. For and I might haue your good will, I would trust to God to haue my Lord king Archurs good grace.

CHAP. CLVII.

Of the communication betweene Sir *Gawaine* and Sir *Launcelot* with much other language.

The king may doe as hee will said sir Gawaine But wit thou well Sir Launcelot, thou and I shall neuer bee accorded while wee liue. For thou hast slaine three of my bretheren, and twaine of them thou slewest traiterously and piteously, for they beare no harneys against thee, nor none would beare. God would they had bene armed said Sir Launcelot for then had they bene alieue. And wit yee well Sir Gawaine, as for Sir Garech I lone none of my kinsmen so much as I did him, and euer while I liue said Sir Launcelot, I will bewaile Sir Garechs death, not all onely for the great feare that I haue of you but many causes caueth me to bee sorrowfull. One is, for I made him knight. Another is I wote well he loued mee aboue all earthly knights. And the thirde is, hee was passing noble, true curteous and gentill, and well conditioned. The fourth is, I wist wel anon as I heard that sir Gaheris was dead that I should neuer after haue your loue, but euermore warre betweene vs. And also I wist well that ye would cause my lord Arthur for euer to be my most all foe. And as Iesu be my helpe said sir Lancelot I slew neuer sir Garech nor sir Gaheris by my wil. But alas that they were unarmed that unhappy day. But thus much I offer you said sir Lancelot, if it may please the kings

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

god grace and you my Lord Sir Gawaine. And first I shall begin at Sandwich and there I shall goe in mee shirt and bare foot, and at euery ten miles end I will found and cause to make a house of religion, of what order ye will assigne me, with an hole couent, to sing ynd to reade day and night in especiall for sir Gareths and sir Gaheris, sake & this shall I performe from Sandwich vnto Caerleill, and euery house shall haue sufficient liuelihood, and this shall I performe while I haue any liuelyhood in chyztendonre, and there is none of all these religious places but they shall be performed, furnished and garnished in all things as an holy place ought to be I promise you faithfully. And this Sir Gawaine me thinketh were moze fairer and better vnto their soules, then that my most noble Lord Arthur and you should warre on mee, for thereby shall yee get none anaille. When al the knights and Ladies that were there wept as they had bene mad. And the teares fell vpon King Arthurs chæks. Sir Launcelot said Sir Gawaine, I haue well heard thy spech and thy great proffers, but wit thou well (let the King doe as it shall please him) I will neuer forgiue thee my bzetherens death and in especiall the death of my bzother Sir Gareth. And if mine vncle King Arthur will accoꝝd with thee, hee shall lose my seruice. For wit thou well that thou art both false to the King and to me. Sir said sir Launcelot, hee beareth not the life that may make that good, And if that yee Sir Gawaine will charge mee with so high a thing, yee must pardon me, for then needs must I answere you. Day said Sir Gawaine, wee are past that as at this time and that caused the Pope. For he hath charged mine vncle the King, that hee shall take the Quene againe, and for to accoꝝd with thee sir Launcelot as for this season, and therfore thou shalt goe safe Sir Launcelot as thou comest. But in this land thou shalt not abide past 15 daies, such warning I giue thee. So the king & we were consented & accoꝝded as thou comest hither. And else said Sir Gawain, wit thou well that thou shouldest not haue come hither, but if it were maugre thy head. And if that it were not for the Popes commandement I should do battaile with my body against thy body, and proue it vnto thee that thou hast bene false vnto mine vncle King

Arthur

and his Knights of the round Table.

Arthur and to mee both, and that shall I proue vpon thy body when thou art departed from hence where soeuer I find thee.

CHAP. CLVIII.

How Sir *Launcelot* departed from King *Arthur* and from Ioyous gard for to goe ouer the sea, and what Knights went with him.

Then sir Launcelot sighed and therewith the teares fell on his chækes, and then hee said these words. Alas most noble christian Realme, whom I haue loued aboue all other Realmes, and in thee haue I gotten a great part of my worship and now I shall depart in this wise. Truly me repenteth that euer I came into this Realme that should bee thus shamefully banished vnder seruice and causelesse. But fortune is so variable and the wheele so mutable, there is no constant abiding, and that may be proued by many old chronicles of noble Hector and Troylus and Alisaunder the mightie conquerour and many other moe, when they were most in their royaltie, they alighted lowest. And so fareth by mee (said sir Launcelot) for in this Realme I haue had worship, and by me and mine all the whole round table hath bene encreased moze in worship by mee and my blood then by any other. And therfore wit thou well Sir Gawaine, I may liue as well vpon my lands as any knight that is here. And if ye my most renoumed King will come vpon my lands with your nephew sir Gawaine for to warre vpon me, I must endure you as well as I may, but as for you sir Gawaine, if that yee come there, I beseech you and require you charge mee not with treason nor felony, for and yee doe I must answere you. Doe thou thy best said sir Gawaine, therfore hee the fast that thou were gone, and wit thou well we shall sone come after, and breake the strongest Castle that thou hast vpon head. That shall not neede said sir Lancelot. For and I were as Agulus proudly & set as ye are, wit ye well I should meet with you in the middost of the field. Make ye no moze adoe said sir Gawaine, but deliuer the Quene from thee and pight thee lightly out of this Court. Well said sir Launcelot, and I had wit of this

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

this short answer, I would haue aduised mee twice or I had come hither. For and the Quene had bene so deare to mee as ye noyse her. I durst haue kept her from the fellowship of the best knights vnder heauen. And then Sir Launcelot said vnto Quene Gueneuer, in heareing of the King and all the knights. Madame now I must depart from you and this noble fellowship for euer. And thence it is so, I beseech you pray for mee, and send me word if ye be noysed with any false tongues, lightly my Lady let mee haue knowledge. And if that any knights hands may deliuer you by battaile, I shall deliuer you. And so therewith Sir Launcelot kissed the Quene. And then hee said openly that all they that were there might heare him. Now let me se what he be in this place, that dare say the Quene is not true vnto my Lord King Arthur. Let see who will speake and he dare speake. And therewith hee brought the Quene vnto the King. And then Sir Launcelot tooke his leaue and departed. And there was neither King, Duke nor Earle, Baron nor knight, Lady nor gentlewoman but that they all wept as people out of their wits, except Sir Gawaine. And so when the noble knight sir Launcelot tooke his horse for to ride out of Camelot, there was sobbing, and weeping for pure dole of his departing. And so hee tooke his way to Joyous gard. And afterward hee called it the Dolorous gard. And thus sir Launcelot departed from the Court for euer. And so when hee came to Joyous gard hee called of his fellowship vnto him, and asked them what they would doe. When they answered all together with one voice, that they would do as he would do. My faire fellowes said Sir Launcelot, I must depart out of this most noble Realme, and now I shall depart, it grieneth me sore at my heart, for I shall depart with no worship. For a banished man departeth neuer out of no Realme with worship, and that is my heauinesse, for euer I feare after my dayes that they shall cronicle vpon mee that I was banished out of this Realme. And else my faire Lords be yee sure and I had not dread shame, my Lady dame Gueneuer and I should neuer haue departed a further. When spake many noble knights, as Sir Palomides, Sir Saire his brother, and Sir Bellanger le brense, and Sir Vire

with

and his Knights of the round Table.

with Sir Lauaine and with many other. Sir and ye be so disposed for to abide in this countrey wee will neuer faile you. And if ye list not to abide in this countrey, there is none of the good knights that be here will faile you for diuers causes. One is this. All we that bee not of your blood shall neuer bee welcome to the Court of King Arthur. And thence it liketh vs to take part with you in your distresse and heauinesse in the Realme. But you well it shall like vs all well for to goe in other countries with you, and there to take such part as ye see. My faire Lords said Sir Launcelot, I well vnderstand you, and as I can I thanke you, and yee shall vnderstand, as to such livelyhood as I am borne vnto. I shall depart it with you in this manner of wise, that is to say, that I shall depart all my liuelihood and all my lands freely among you, and I my selfe will haue as little as any of you, for I haue sufficient that may long to my person, I will aske none other rich array and I trow to God to maintaine you on my lands, as well as euer I remaintained any knights. When spake all the knights at once. Wee haue shame that will leaue you. For wee all vnderstand in this realme will bee now no quiet but euer strife and debate. Now the fellowship of the round table is broken, for by the noble fellowship of the round table was King Arthur borne vp, and by their noblenesse the King and all his realme was in quiet and in rest. And a great part said they all, was because of your great noblenesse.

CHAP. CLIX

How Sir Launcelot passed ouer the Sea into his owne land, and how he made great Lords of the Knights that went with him,

Truely said Sir Launcelot I thanke you of your good saying how, be it I wot wel in me was not all the stablishment of this realme. But in that I might I did my endeavour. And well I am sure I knew many rebellions in my dayes, which by me were peased. I trow we al shall heare of them in short space, and that me sore repenteth. For euer I dread mee said Sir Launcelot that Sir Mordred will make trouble. For

II

he

hee is passing envious and applyeth him to trouble. So they were accorded to goe with Sir Launcelot vnto his lands. And for to make short tale, they trusted and paid all that would aske them. And well an hundred knights departed with Sir Launcelot at once and made their quowes, that they would neuer depart from him for weale nor for woe. And so they shipped at Cardife and sailed vnto Wentwiche. Some men call it Weyon and some men call it Beaune, whereas the wite of Beaune is. But for to say the truth, Sir Launcelot and his nephewes were Lords of all the realme of Fraunce, and of all the lands that longed vnto Fraunce, hee and his kindred reioyced in through Sir Launcelots noble prouesse. And then Sir Launcelot wuffed and furnished and garnished all his good towne and Castles. When all the people of those lands came vnto Sir Launcelot on fote and hands. And so when hee had established all these countries hee shortly called a parliament. And there hee crowned Sir Lionell King of Fraunce. And hee made Sir Bors to be crowned King of all King Claudas lands. And Sir Ector de Maris which was Sir Lancelots youngest brother, he crowned him King of Wentwiche, and also King of all Guian which was Sir Launcelots owne land. And he made Sir Ector prince of them all. And thus he parted his honour. When Sir Lancelot aduanced all his noble knights. And first he aduanced those of his blood. And first hee made Sir Blamore Duke of Limosin in Guian. And Sir Bleoberis he made him Duke of Hoytiers. And Sir Galihautine he made him Duke of Duuerne. And Sir Galihodin hee made him Duke of Sentong. And Sir Galihud he made him Earle of Perigot. And Sir Menadeuke he made him Earle of Moerge. And Sir Villiers the valiant hee made him Earle of Bearne. And Sir Hebes le renomes he made him Earle of Containg. And Sir Lauaine hee made him Earle of Arminake. And Sir Vere he made him Earle of Crake. And Sir Neroneus he made him Earle of Perotake. And Sir Plenorius he made him Earle of Coise. And Sir Selise of the Doorous Toure he made him Earle of Palauke, and Sir Melias de Lilc he made him Earle of Lusank. And Sir Sir Bellangere le Breuse hee made him Earle of Maundis. And the good knight

And Sir Palomides he made him duke of the countrie of Bzore. And Sir Saire hee made him duke of Langebocke. And Sir Elegis hee gaue him the earldome of Agent. And Sir Sadocke hee gaue him the earldome of Surlate. And Sir Dinas the seneshall hee made him duke of Angeo. And Sir Clarus hee made him duke of Normandie. Thus Sir Launcelot rewarded his noble knight, and many moe, that mee seemeth it were to long to rehearse.

CHAP CLX.

Now King Arthur and Sir Gawaine made a great hoost ready to goe ouer sea to make warre on Sir Launcelot.

And leaue wee Sir Launcelot in his lands, & his noble knights with him, and returne wee againe vnto King Arthur and Sir Gawaine that made a great hoast ready, to the number of thre thousand, and all things was ready for their shipping to pass ouer the sea. And so they shipped at Cardif, And there King Arthur made Sir Mordred chiefe ruler of all England. And also hee put Queene Gueneuer vnder his gouernance, for because Sir Mordred was King Arthurs sonne, hee gaue him the rule of all his land, and of his Queene. And so King Arthur passed ouer the sea and landed vpon Sir Launcelots land, and there hee burnt and wasted through the vengeance of Sir Gawaine all that they might ouer runne. When these tidings came vnto Sir Launcelot that King Arthur and Sir Gawaine were landed vpon his lands, and that they made great destruction and wast. Then speake Sir Bors and said. My Lord Sir Launcelot, it is great shame that wee suffer them thus to ride ouer our lands. For wit you well, suffer ye them as long as ye will they will doe you no fauour, and they may handle you. When said Sir Lionell, which was ware and wise. My Lord Sir Launcelot, I will giue you this counsaile. Let vs keepe our strong walled towne vntill they haue hunger and cold, and blow on their nailes, and then let vs freshly set vpon them, and shred them doane as sheepe in the field, that all altaunts may take ensample for euer how they land vpon our lands. When speake

King Bagdemagus vnto Sir Launcelot. Sir your curtesie will shew vs all, and your courtesie hath caused all this sorrow. For and they thus ouer ride our lands they shall by processe of time bring vs all to nought, whilest we thus hide vs in holes. Then said the good knight Sir Galihud to Sir Launcelot. Sir here be knights come of kings blood that will not long droupe and they were without the wals, therfore giue vs leaue as wee are knights to meete them in the field, and we shall slay them, that they shall curse the time that euer they came into this countrey. Then speake the seven brethren of North Wales, and ther were seven noble knights, as a man might seeke in seven lands or he might find such seven knights, then they spake all with one voice Sir Launcelot for Christs sake let vs ride out with Sir Galihud, for we haue neuer went to coure in castels nor in towne. Then spake Sir Launcelot, which was maister and gouernour of them all. My faire Lords wit you well I am full loth to ride out with my knights, for shedding of Christen mens blood. And yet my Lords I vnderstand wee are full bare to susteine any host a while. For the mighty warriors that other whiles made King Claudas and my father King Ban, and mine vnckle King Bors for to obey. Now hee it we will as at this time keepe our strong wals, and I shall send a messenger vnto my Lord King Arthur desiring him to take a treatise. For better is peace then alwayes warre. So Sir Launcelot sent forth a damoisell and a dwarfe with her requiring King Arthur to leaue his warre vpon his lands, and so shee start vpon a palfrey, and the dwarfe ranne by her side. And when shee came vnto the pavilion of King Arthur, there she alighted. And there met her a knight whose name was Sir Lucan the butler that said. Faire damoisell, come yee from Sir Launcelot du lake. Yea said shee. therfore come I hither for to speake with my Lord King Arthur. Alas said Sir Lucan, my Lord King Arthur would loue Sir Launcelot but Sir Gawaine will not suffer him. And then hee said, I pray to God damoisell yee may speede well. For all we that are about the King, would that Sir Launcelot did best of any knight liuing. And so with this Lucan led the damoisell vnto King Arthur where he sat with Sir Gawaine for to heare what shee would say. So when shee had told her tale,

the water began to runne out of King Arthurs eyes. And all the Lords were right glad to aduise the King to bee accorded with Sir Launcelot, saue all only Sir Gawaine, and hee said. My Lord, mine vnckle, what will yee do, will ye now turne againe, now yee are past thus farre vpon this iourney, all the world will speake of you vilany. Nay said King Arthur, witte yee well Sir Gawaine I will doe as yee will aduise mee, and yet mee cometh said King Arthur his faire proffers were not good to bee refused. But sithence that I am come so far vpon this iourney I will that yee giue the damoisell her answers. For I may not speake to her for pittie.

CHAP. CLXI.

What message Sir Gawaine sent vnto Sir Launcelot, & how King Arthur laid siege vnto Benwike and of other matters.

When Sir Gawaine said vnto the damoisell thus. Damoisell I yee shall say vnto Sir Lancelot, that it was but idle labour, now to send to mine vnckle. For tell him and hee would haue made any labour for peace, he should haue made it or this time. For tell him that now it is to late. And say that Sir Gawaine sendeth him word, and that I promise him by the faith I owe to God and vnto the order of knight hood, that I shall neuer leaue him till he hath slaine me or I him. So the damoisell wept and departed, and there were many weeping eyes. And so Sir Lucan brought the damoisell vnto her palfrey. And so she came vnto Sir Launcelot, where as hee was among all his knights. And when Sir Lancelot had heard this answer, then he seares ranne downe by his cheeks. And then his noble knights that stood about him said. Sir Launcelot wherfore make yee such cheare thinke what yee are, and what men we are, and let vs noble knights watch them in the midst of the field. What may lightly bee done said Sir Launcelot, but I was neuer so loth to doe battaile, and therfore I pray you faire sirs as yee loue me, be ruled as I wil haue you. For I will alwayes see that noble King that made me knight. And when I may go farther I must needs defend me, and that will bee the more worship for me, and for euery of vs, then to compare with the

The Historie of Prince Arthure

noble king, whom we all haue serued. When they held their language, and as at that night they took their rest. And on the morrow early in the dawning of the day, as the knights looked out, they saw how the cite of Benweke was besieged round about, and fast they began to set vp ladders. And then they bested them out of the towne, and beate them mightely from the wals. Then forth sir Gawaine well armed at all points vpon a horse, and hee came befoze the chiefe gate with his speare in his hand crying on high. Sir Launcelot where art thou, is there not one of you proud knights that dare breake a speare with me. When sir Bors made him ready and came forth out of the towne. And there sir Gawaine entountred with sir Bors. And so he smote sir Bors downe fro his horse, & almost he had slaine him, And anon sir Bors was rescued & borne into the towne. When there came forth sir Lionel brother vnto sir Bors and thought to reuenge him. And either sentred their speares and ranne together, and there they met right spitefully. But sir Gawaine was so fiery, that that he smote sir Lionel downe and wounded him there passing sore. And then sir Lionel was rescued and borne into the towne. And thus sir Gawaine came euery day and failed not but that hee smote downe one knight or other. So thus they endured well halfe a yere, and much slaughter of people there was on both parties. When it befell vpon a day that sir Gawaine came befoze the gates armed at all pices vpon a great courser, with a great speare in his hand. And then he cried with a loud voice. Where art thou now thou false traitour Sir Launcelot why dost thou hide thy selfe with in hoales and walls like a coward, looke out now thou false traitour knight, and here I shall reuenge vpon my body the death of my thre brethren. All this language heard sir Launcelot and his kinne euery deale and then his knights drew about him, and they said all at once vnto sir Launcelot. Sir Launcelot, now yee must defend you like a knight, or else yee bee shamed for euer. For now ye be called vpon treason, it is time for you to stirre, for yee haue slept ouer long and suffered ouer much. So God mee helpe said sir Launcelot, I am right heauie of sir Gawaines words, for now he chargeth me with a great charge

and his Knights of the round Table.

charge. And therefore I wot it as well as yee, that I must defend me, or else to bee a recreant knight. When sir Launcelot commanded to saddle his strongest horse and bad fetch his armour and bring all vnto the gate of the Towre. And then sir Launcelot spake on high vnto king Arthure and said. My Lord the noble king which made mee knight wit you well that I am right heauie for your sake, that ye thus sew vpon mee, and all waies I forbeare you. For I would haue bene reuengeable I might haue met you in the middell of the field, and there to haue made your boldest knights full tame. And now I haue endured you halfe a yere, and haue suffered you and sir Gawaine to doe what ye would, and now I may endure it no longer. Now must I needs defend my selfe, in so much as sir Gawaine hath appealed me of treason, the which is greatly against my will, that euer I should fight against any of your blood. But now I may not forsake it, I am driuen thereto as a best to a snare. When sir Gawaine said vnto sir Launcelot. Sir Launcelot and thou darrest doe battaile, leaue thy babling and come on, and let vs ease our hearts. When sir Launcelot began to come him lightly and mounted vpon his horse. And either of the knights gat great speares in their hands, and the hoast without stood still apart. And the noble knights came out of the cite by a great number. In so much that when king Arthure saw the number of men and knights, hee meruailed and said to himselfe. Alas that euer sir Launcelot was against me, for now I see that hee hath forborne me. And so the couenant was made, there should no man come nigh them, nor deale with them, till that one were dead or yelden.

CHAP. CLXII.

How sir Gawaine and sir Launcelot, did battaile together, and how sir Gawaine was hurt.

When sir Gawaine and Launcelot departed a great way in funder. And then they came together with all their horses might as fast as they myght runne, and either smote other in the middell of their sheelds. But the knights were so strong, and

and their speares so bigge that their hozes might not endure their buffets. And so their hozes fell to the earth. When they auoided their hozes, and dressed their shields before them. When they stode together, and gaue many sadde strokes vpon diuers places of their bodyes, that the blood brasse out of many places. When had sir Gawaine such a grace and gift which an holy man had giuen him, that euery day in the yeare from vnderne till high noone, his might encreased those thre hozes as much as thryce his owne strength. And that caused Sir Gawaine to winne great honour. And for his sake King Arthur made an ordinance that all manner of battayles for any quarrels that should bee done before King Arthur, they should begin at vnderne. And all this was done for sir Gawains sake. That by likelyhood if that Sir Gawaine were on the one partie he should haue the better hand in battaile while that his strength endured thre houres, but there were but few knights that time liuing that knew this vantage that Sir Gawaine had, but King Arthur all onely. When Sir Launcelot fought with Sir Gawaine, and when sir Lancelot felt his might euermore encrease Sir Launcelot had of him great wonder, and dread him sore to be shamed. For he wend when he felt Sir Gawain double his strength that he had been a feend & non earthly man, wherfore Sir Launcelot traced and trauesed and couered himselfe with his shield, and kept his might and his breath during thre houres. And that while Sir Gawaine gaue him many sad brunts and many strokes that all knights that beheld Sir Launcelot, meruailed how he might endure him. But full little vnderstood they the trauaile that sir Launcelot had for to endure him. And then when it was past noone, Sir Gawaine had no more but his owne might. When when Sir Launcelot felt him so come downe then began he to stretch himselfe vp, and stood nere Sir Gawaine, and said to him these words. My Lord Sir Gawain, now I feele that yee haue done, now my Lord Sir Gawaine I must doe my part, for many great and grievous strokes I haue endured you this day with paine. When Sir Launcelot began to double his strokes, and gaue Sir Gawaine many a buffet vpon the helmet, that he fell downe on his side, and then sir Launcelot

Launcelot withdrew him from him. And by with drawest thou thyselfe said Sir Gawaine, now turne againe traitour knight and say me. For and thou leaue mee thus when I am whole I shall doe battaile with thee againe. Sir I shall endure you by the grace of God said Sir Launcelot. But wit you well Sir Gawaine, I will neuer thee smite a felled knight. And so Sir Launcelot went into the Citie, and Sir Gawaine was bozne into one of King Arthurs pavillions. And anon there was leeches brought to him, which searched his wound, and salued it with soft ointments. And then Sir Launcelot said. Now haue good day my Lord the King. For wit ye well ye shall winne no worship at these walls. And if I would bring out my knights, there should many a man die. Wherefore my Lord King Arthur remember you of old kindnesse, and how so ever I fare Iesu be your guide in all places.

CHAP. CLXIII.

Of the sorrow that King Arthur made for the warre, and of another battaile, where also Sir Gawaine had the worse.

As said the King that euer this unhappie warre began, for euer sir Launcelot forbearth me in all places, and in likewise my kinne, and that is scene this day by my nephew Sir Gawaine. When King Arthur fell sicke for sorrow of Sir Gawaine that was so sore hurt, and because of the warre betwene him and Sir Launcelot. So then they of King Arthurs part kept the siege with little warre and small force. And they within kept their walls, and defended them when neede was. Thus Sir Gawaine lay sicke about thre weekes in his tent, with all manner of leach-craft that might be had. And as soone as Sir Gawaine might goe and ride, he armed him at al points and start vpon a courser, and gat a speare in his hand. And so became riding before the chiefe gate of Benwike, and there he tried on high. Where art thou sir Launcelot, come forth thou false traitour knight and recreant, for I am here Sir Gawaine will proue this that I say on thee. All this language Sir Launcelot heard, and then hee said thus. Sir Gawaine, mee repenteth

senteth of your foule saying, that ye will not seake of your language. For wit ye well sir Gawaine, I knowe your might, and all that yee may doe. And well yee wote sir Gawaine, that yee maie not greatly hurt mee. Come downe thou traitour knight and make it good contrary with thy hands, for it mishapned mee the last battaile to be hurt of thy hands, therfore wit thou wel that I am come this day to make amends. For I wene this day to lay thee as low as thou latdest mee. Jesu defend me said sir Launcelot, that euer I should be so far in your danger as ye haue bene in mine. For then my dayes were at an end. But sir Gawaine, said sir Launcelot ye shall not thinke that I tary long but sithence that yee so vnknighly call mee of treason, yee shall haue both your hands full of mee. And then sir Launcelot armed him at all points and mounted vpon his horse, and gate him a great speare in his hand, and rode out at the gate. And both the hostes were assembled, of them without, and of them within, and stood in aray full manly. And both parties were charged for to hold them still, to see and behold the battaile of these two noble knights. And then they laid their speares in their rests, and they raine together as thunder. And sir Gawaine brake his speare vpon sir Launcelot in an hundred peeces vnto his hand. And sir Launcelot smote him with a greater might, that sir Gawaines horse fete reised, and so the horse and he fell to the earth. When sir Gawaine full quickly auoided his horse, and put his shield before him, and egerly drew his sword, and bad sir Launcelot alight traitour knight, for though this maieres sonne hath failed me wite thou well that a Kings sonne and a Quenes sonne shall not faile thee. When sir Launcelot auoided his horse, and dressed his shield before him, and drew his sword. And so they stood together, and gaue many sad strokes, that all men on both parties had thereof passing great wonder. But when sir Launcelot felt sir Gawaines might so miraculously encreased, hee then withheld his courage and his wind and kept himselfe wonderous couer of his might. And under his shield hee traied trauesed here and there, for to breake sir Gawaines strokes and his courage. And sir Gawaine enforced him withall his might and power to destroy sir Launcelot,

Launcelot. For euer as sir Gawaines might encreased, right so encreased his wind and his euill will. Thus sir Gawaine did great paine vnto sir Launcelot thre houres continually, that sir Launcelot had great paine to defend himselfe. And after that the thre houres were passed, then sir Launcelot felt verily that sir Gawaine was come to his owne proper might and strength, and that his great power was done. When sir Launcelot said vnto sir Gawaine. Now haue I well proued you false, that yee are a full dangerous knight, and a wonderfull man of your might and many wonderfull deeds haue you done in your dayes for by your might encreasing ye haue deceiued many a noble and valiaunt knight, and now I seele that ye haue done your mighty deed. Now wit you well I must doe my deeds. And then sir Launcelot stood nere sir Gawaine and double his strokes, and sir Gawaine defended him mightely. But neuerthelesse sir Launcelot smote such a stroke vpon sir Gawaines helme and vpon the old wound, that sir Gawaine sank downe vpon his one side in a sowne. And anon as hee was awake hee waied and seiwmed at sir Launcelot there as he lay and said. Traitour knight wite thou well that I am not yet slaine, come thou neere and performe this battaile to the vttermost. I will no more doe, then I haue done, said sir Launcelot, for when I see you on foot I will doe battaile with you all the while I see you stand on your fete, but for to smite a wounded man, that may not stand God defend me from such a shame. And then he turned him and went his way toward the towne, and sir Gawaine euer more calling him traitour knight, and said. Wit thou well sir Launcelot when I am hole I shall do battaile with thee againe, for I shall neuer leaue thee till that one of vs be slaine.

Thus as this siege endured, and as sir Gawaine lay sicke nere a moneth. And when hee was well recovered and ready within thre daies to doe battaile againe with sir Launcelot right so came tidings vnto king Arthur from England, that made king Arthur and all his host to remoue.

CHAP. CLXIV:

How Sir Mordred presumed and tooke on him to bee King of England and would haue married the Queene.

AS Sir Mordred was ruler of all England hee caused letters to be made as though they came from beyond the sea, and the letters specified that king Arthur was slaine in battaile with Sir Launcelot, wherfore sir Mordred made a parliament, and called the Lords together and there he made them to chosse him king and so hee was crowned at Caunterbury and held a feast there fiftene daies. And afterward hee drew him to Winchester, and there hee tooke Queene Gueneuer, and said plainly that hee would wed her which was his vnckles wife and his fathers wife. And so hee made ready for the feast, and a day prefixed that they should bee wedded. Wherfore Queene Gueneuer was passing heauy, but she durst not discouer her heart, but speake faire and agreed to Sir Mordred will. When she desired of sir Mordred for to goe to London for to bye all manner thing that belonged vnto the wedding. And because of her faire speech, Sir Mordred trusted her well enough and gaue her leaue to goe. And when she came to London, secretly in all hast possible, she stuffed it with all manner of vittaille, and well garnished it with men and so kept it. When when sir Mordred will and vnderstood how he was deceined he was passing wroth out of measure. And to make short tale hee went and laid a mighty siege about the Toure of London, & made many great assaults thereat, and threw many great engines vnto them, and shot great gunnes. But all might not preuaile Sir Mordred. For Queene Gueneuer would neuer for faire speech nor for foule trust to come in his hands againe. And then came the bishop of Caunterbury, the which was a noble clarke and an holy man, and thus he said to sir Mordred. Sir what will yee doe, will yee first displease God, and after shame your selfe and all knight hood. Is not king Arthur your vnckle, no further but your mothers brother, and on her himselfe king Arthur begate you by yon his owne sister, therefore how may yee wed your fathers wife.

and his Knights of the round Table.

wise, Sir said the noble clarke leaue this opinion, or else I shall curse you with booke, bell, and candell. Do thy worst said Sir Mordred, wit thou well that I utterly desie thee. Sir said the bishop, I shall not feare mee to doe that I ought to doe. Also where as yee noie that my Lord king Arthur is slaine, it is not so, and therefore yee will make an abhominable worke in this land. Peace thou false priest said sir Mordred, for and thou chafe me any more I shall make thy head to be stricken off. So the bishop departed and did the curse in the most orguloust wise that might be done. And then sir Mordred sought the bishop of Caunterbury for to haue slaine him. And when the bishop heard that he fled, and tooke part of his goods with him, and went nigh vnto Clattenbury, and there hee was a religious Hermit in a chappell, and liued in pouerty, and in holy praiers. For well be vnderstood that a mischieuous warre was nere at hand. When sir Mordred sought vpon Queene Gueneuer by letters and sonds, and by faire meanes and foule for to haue her to come out of the toure of London. But all this auailed him not, for she answered him shortly, openly, and priuely, that she had leauer ley her selfe, then to be married with him. When came word to Sir Mordred that king Arthur had raised the siege from sir Launcelot and that hee was comming home ward with a great host, for to be auenged vpon sir Mordred. Wherfore sir Mordred made to write letters vnto all the barrony of this land, and much people drew vnto him, for then was the common voice among them, that with king Arthur was none other life but warre and grieue, and with Sir Mordred was great toy and blisse. Thus was king Arthur deptraued and evil said of. And many there were that king Arthur had made up of naught, and had giuen them lands, might not say of him then a good word.

Loe wee all English men see what a mischief here was, for hee that was the noblest king and knight of the world, and most loued the fellowship of noble knights and men of worship and by him they were all upholden. Now might not wee English men hold vs content with him. Loe this was the old custom and vsage of this land. And also men say, that we of this

The Historie of Prince Arthur

I and haue not yett lost nor forgotten the custome and vsage. As alas this is a great default of vs English-men, for there may nothing please vs no tearme. And so fared the people at that time. For they were better pleased with Sir Mordred then they were with King Arthur, and much people drezv vnto Sir Mordred, and said they would abide with him for better and for worse. And so Sir Mordred drezv with a great host toward Douer, for here he heard say that King Arthur would arrive. And so hee thought to beate his owne father from his lands. And the most part of all England held wifh Sir Mordred the people were so new fangled.

CHAP. CLXV.

How after that King Arthur had tidings, he returned and came to Douer, where Sir Mordred met him to let his landing, and of the death of Sir Gawaine.

And so as Sir Mordred was at Douer with his host, there came King Arthur with a great many of ships, galies and caraks. And there was Sir Mordred ready waiting vpon his landing, to let his owne father to land vpon the land that he was King off. Then was there launching of great boates and small, and all were full of noble men of armes. And there was much slaughter of gentle knights, and many a full bold Baron was laid full low on both parties. But King Arthur was so couragious, that there might no manner of knight let him to land, and his knights fierly folloved him. And so they landed maugre Sir Mordred and all his power, and put Sir Mordred back that he fled and all his people. So when this battaile was done, King Arthur let bury his people that were dead. And then was the noble knight Sir Gawaine found in a great boate lying more then halfe dead. When King Arthur wist that Sir Gawaine was laid so low, he went vnto him, and there the king made sorrow out of measure and toke Sir Gawaine in his armes, and thrice hee sorrowed. And then hee came to himselfe againe hee said. Alas my sisters sonne, here now thou liest the man in the world that I loved most, and now is my ioy gone.

For

and his Knights of the round Table.

For now my nephew Sir Gawaine I wil discover me vnto your person. In Sir Launcelot and you I most had my ioy and mine assistance, and now haue I lost my ioy of you both, wherefore all mine earthly ioy is gone from me. My vncke King Arthur said Sir Gawaine, wit you well that my deathes day is come, and all is through mine owne hastinesse and wilfulnesse, for I am smitten vpon the old wound that Sir Launcelot dulake gaue me, of the which I feele that I must die, and if Sir Launcelot had bene with you as hee was, this unhaplie warre had neuer begun and of all this I my selfe am causer, for Sir Launcelot and his blood through their prowesse, held all your cankered enemies in subiection and danger. And now said Sir Gawaine, ye shall misse Sir Launcelot. But alas I would not accord with him, and therefore said Sir Gawaine, I pray you faire vncke that I may haue paper, pen, and inke, that I may write vnto Sir Launcelot a letter with mine owne hands. And when paper and inke was brought, Sir Gawaine was set vp weakely by King Arthur, for hee had bene shruen a little before, and hee wrote thus vnto Sir Launcelot floure of all noble knights that euer I heard of or saw in my dayes.

I Sir Gawaine King Lots sonne of Wykeney, sisters sonne vnto the noble King Arthur send vnto thee greeting and let thee haue knowledge, that the tenth day of May, I was smitten vpon the old wound which thou gauest mee before the Citie of Benwicke and through the same wound that thou gauest mee I am come vnto my death day, and I will that all the world wit that I Sir Gawaine knight of the round table sought my death & not through thy deseruing, but it was mine owne seeking, wherefore I beseech thee Sir Launcelot for to returne againe vnto this realme and see my tombe, and pray some prayer more or lesse for my soule. And that same day that I wrote this letter, I was hurt to the death in the same wound the which I had of thy hands Sir Launcelot. For of a more nobler man might I not bee slaine. Also Sir Launcelot for all the loue that euer was betwene vs, make no taryng, but come ouer the sea in all the hast that thou maiest with thy noble knights, and rescue that noble King that made thee knight, that is my

Lord

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

Lord and vncle King Arthur, for hee is full straightly bestowd with a false traitour, which is my false brother Sir Mordred and he hath let crowne himselfe King, and he would haue wedded my Lady Quene Gueneuer, and so had he done, if shee had not put her selfe in the toure of London. And so the tenth day of May last past, my Lord and vncle King Arthur and we al landed vpon them at Douer and there we put that false traitour Sir Mordred to flight. And there it misfortuned me for to be stricken vpon thy stroke. And at the date of this letter was writtten but two houres and halfe before my death, writtten with mine owne hand, and so subscribed with part of my heart blood. And I require this as thou art the most famous knight of the world that thou wilt see my tombe. And then Sir Gawaine wept, and also King Arthur wept. And then they solowed both, and when they awaked both, the King made Sir Gawaine to receiue his Saviour. And then Sir Gawaine prayed the King to send for Sir Launcelot and to cherish him aboue all other knights. And so at the houre of noone Sir Gawaine betooke his soule into the hands of our Lord God. And then the King let bury him in a chappell within the Castle of Douer. And there yet vnto this day all men may see the skull of Sir Gawaine, and the same wound is seene that Sir Launcelot gaue him in battaile. Then was it told to King Arthur that Sir Mordred had pight a new field vpon Warendowne. And on the morrow the King rode thither to him, and there was a great battaile betwene them. And much people were slaine on both parts. But at the last King Arthurs partie stood best, and Sir Mordred and his partie fled vnto Canterbury.

CHAP. CLXVI.

How after Sir *Gawaines* goast appeared vnto King *Arthur*, and warned him that he should not fight as at that day

And then the King searched all Townes for his knights that were slaine, and made to bury them. And those that were soze wounded he caused them to be salued with soft salues. When much people drewe vnto King Arthur, and said that Sir Mordred

and his Knights of the round Table

Mordred warred on King Arthur wrongfully. And then the noble King drewe him and with his host downe vnto the sea side westward vnto Salisbury, and there was a day assigned betwene King Arthur and Sir Mordred, and they should mete vpon a down beside Salisbury and not farre from the sea side, and this day was assigned vpon a Sunday after Trinitie Sunday, whereof King Arthur was passing glad that hee might be auenged vpon that traitour Sir Mordred. When Sir Mordred raised much people about London, for they of Kent Southsexe and Southery, Essex and Suffolke, and of Norfolk held the most part with Sir Mordred, and many a noble knight drew vnto Sir Mordred, and vnto King Arthur, but they that drew vnto Sir Launcelot drew vnto Sir Mordred.

And so vpon Trinitie Sunday at night King Arthur dreamed a right wonderfull dreame, and that was this. That him thought hee sat vpon a chafet in a chaire, and the chaire was fast vnto a wheele, and there vpon sat King Arthur in the richest cloth of gold that might be made. And the King thought there was vnder him farre from him a heuious and a deepe blacke water, and therein was all manner of serpents and wormes and wild beasts foule and horrible. And suddainely the King thought that the wheele turned vnder doone, and that hee fell among the serpents and wilde beasts, and euery beast tooke him by a limme. And then the King cried as hee lay in his bed and slept, helpe.

And then knights Squires and yeomen awaked the King and then hee was so amased, that hee wist not where hee was. And then hee fell in a slumbering againe, not sleeping nor through waking. So King Arthur thought that there came Sir Gawaine vnto him verely, with a number of faire Ladies with him, and so when King Arthur saw him hee said. Welcome my sisters sonne, I wend thou hadst bene dead, and now I see thee aliuie, much am I beholding vnto almightie Iesu. Oh faire nephew and my sisters sonne, what bee these Ladies that bee come hither with you. Sir said Sir Gawaine, all these bee the Ladies for whom I haue fought when I was a man liuing. And all these are those that I did battaile for in a right wise

wife quarrell. And God hath given them that grace at their great prayer, because I do battaile for them, that they should bring mee hither to you, thus much hath God given mee leaue for to warne you of your death. For and yee fight as to morrow with Sir Mordred, as both yee haue assigned, doubt yee not yee must bee slaine, and the most part of your people on both parties. And for the great grace and goodnesse that Almighty Iesu hath vnto you, and for pittie of you and many more other good men that there should bee slaine, God hath sent mee vnto you of his most speciall grace for to give you warning, that in no wise yee doe battaile as to morrow, but that yee take a treatise for a moneth or more, and proffer him largely, so as to morrow to bee put in a delay, for within a moneth shall come Sir Lancelot with all his noble knights and shall rescue you worshipfully, and they Sir Mordred and all that ever will hold with him.

Then Sir Gawaine and all the ladies banished. And anon the King called upon his knights, squires and yeomen, and charged them lightly to fetch his noble horses and wise bishops vnto him. And when they were come, the King told them his vision, what Sir Gawaine told him, & warned him that if he fought on the morrow he should bee slaine. Then the King commanded Sir Lucan the butler and his brother Sir Bedevere, and two Bishops with them, and charged them in any wise if they might take a treatise for a moneth with Sir Mordred, and spare not to proffer him lands and goods as much as yee thinke best. So then they departed and came to Sir Mordred, where hee had a grimly host of an hundred thousand men. And thereby entreated Sir Mordred long time, and at the last Sir Mordred was agreed to haue Camelotte and Kent by King Arthurs dayes. And after the dayes of King Arthur to haue all England to his obedience.

CHAP. CLXVII.
How by misaduenture of an adder the Battaile began where Sir Mordred was slaine, and King Arthur wounded to death.

So then were they condescended that King Arthur and Sir Mordred should make betwene both their hosts, and euery of them should bring fourtene persons. And they came with this word vnto King Arthur. And then said hee, I am gladd that this is done. And so hee went into the field. And when King Arthur should depart, hee warned all his host that and they saw any sword drawn, looke that yee come on fiercely, and say that traitour Sir Mordred, for in no wise trust him. In like wise Sir Mordred did warne his host that if ye see any manner of sword drawn, looke that yee come on fiercely, and so they all that euer standeth before you. For in no wise I will not trust for this treatise. For I know well that my father will bee auenged vpon me. And so they were agreed and accorded thoroughly and wine was set, and they dranke. Right so came an adder out of a little death bush, and it stung a knight on the foote. And when the knight felt him stung, he looked downe and saw the adder, and then hee drew his sword to slay the adder, and thought of none other harme. And when the hosts on both parties saw that sword drawn they blew beumes, trumpets, and hornes, and shouted grimly. And so both hosts dressed them together, and King Arthur took his horse and said. Alas this unhappy day. And so roade hee to his part. And so Sir Mordred did in like wise. And neuer was there scene a more dolefuller battaile in no christian land. For there was but rushing and riding, forning and striking, and many a grim word was there spoken either to other and many a deadly stroke. But alway King Arthur roade through out the battaile of Sir Mordred many times and did there right nobly as a noble king should doe. And at all times hee neuer fainted. And Sir Mordred that day put him in denore and in great perill. And thus they fought all the long day and neuer stinted till the noble knights was laid to the cold ground. And euer they fought till it was nigh night, and

by that time was there an hundred thousand laid dead vpon the
dome. When was king Arthur wroth out of measure, when he
saw his people so slaine from him. When the king looked about
him and then was hee warre that of all his host, and of al his
good knights were left no more alieue but two knights, that was
Sir Lucan the butler and Sir Bediuer his brother, and they
were right soze wounded. Jesu mercy said king Arthur, where
are all my noble knights become. Alas that euer I should see
this dolefull day. For now said king Arthur, I am come vnto
mine end. But would to God that I wist where that traitour
sir Mordred is which hath caused all this mischief. When was
king Arthur ware where sir Mordred leaped vpon his sword
among a great heepe of dead men. Now giue mee my speare
said king Arthur to sir Lucan, for yonder I haue espied the
traitour which hath wrought all this woe. Sir let him be said
sir Lucan, for hee is unhappy, and if yee passe this unhappy
day, yee shall be right well reuenged vpon him. By god
Lord remember well your dreame that yee had this night, and
what the spirit of Sir Gawaine told you this night, yet God of
his great goodnesse hath preserved you hither, therfore for Gods
take my Lord leaue off by this. For blessed be God yee haue
wonne the field. For heere wee be thre on liue, and with sir
Mordred is none alieue. And if yee leaue off now this wicked
day of destine is done. Lettide me death beside me life said the
king, now I see him yonder alone, hee shall neuer escape my
hands, for at a better vantage shall I neuer haue him. God
sped you well said sir Bediuer. When king Arthur gate his
speare in both his hands and ranne toward sir Mordred, crying.
Traitor now is thy death day come. And when sir Mordred
heard king Arthur, hee ran vnto him with his sword drawn
in his hand, and there king Arthur smote sir Mordred vnder
the shield, with a soine of his speare throughtout the body more
then a fadom. And when sir Mordred felt that hee had his
death wound he thrust himselfe with all the might that hee had
vp to the end of king Archurs speare with his sword that hee
held in both his hands on the side of the head, that the sword
perced the helme the brain pan. And therewith sir Mordred fel
downe

downe to the earth, and the noble king Arthur fell
downe to the earth. And there hee sojourned oftentimes. And
sir Lucan and sir Bediuer oftentimes heaued him vp, and
so weakly they lad him betwene them both vnto a little chap-
pell not farre from the sea side. And when the king was there,
hee thought him well eased. When heard they people crie in
the field. Now go thou sir Lucan said the king, and doe me to
know what betokeneth that noise in the field. So sir Lucan de-
parted, and hee was grievously wounded in many place, and so
as he went hee saw and harkned by the moone light, how the
killers and robbers were come into the field, for to pill & robbe
many a noble knight of breeches and beads, of many a good
ring, and of many a rich iewel. And who that were not dead
all out, there they slew them for to haue their harnais and their
riches. And when sir Lucan understode this worke, hee came
vnto the king as sone as he might, and told him all that hee
had heard and sene. Therefore by mine aduise said sir Lucan
it is best that wee bring you vnto some towne. I would it were
so said the king.

CHAP CLXVIII.

Now King Arthur commaunded to cast his sword Excalibur in
the water and how hee was deliuered vnto ladies in a barge.

But I may not stand my head aketh so. Ah sir Launcelot
said king Arthur, this same day haue I soze missed thee.
Alas that euer I was against thee, for now haue I my death,
wherof sir Gawaine warned me in my dreame. When sir Lu-
can took by king Arthur on the one part, and sir Bediuer on
the other part, and in the lifting, the king sloued. And sir
Lucan fel in a towne with that list that some of his guts fell out
of his body. And therewith the noble knights heart braft. And
when king Arthur came to himselfe againe, he beheld sir Lucan
how he lay froming at the mouth, and part of his bowels fell
to his feete. Alas said king Arthur, this is vnto mee a full heauy
sight for to see this noble Duke so to die for my sake, for hee
would haue holpen me, that had more neede of helpe then I
haue. Alas hee would not complaine him, his heart was so set

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

for to helpe me. Now Iesu haue mercy vpon his soule. When sir Bedinere wept for the death of his brother. Leuite this weeping and mourning said King Arthur, for all this wil not auaille mee. For wit thou well I might liue my selfe, the death of sir Lucan would greene me euermore. But my time bieth fast said King Arthur vnto sir Bediuer, therefore take thou Excalibur my good sword, and goe with it vnto ynder water side. And when thou comest there, I charge thee throw my sword into that water, and come againe and tell me what thou shalt see there. My Lord said Sir Bediuer your commande shall be done, and lightly bring you word againe. And so Sir Bediuer departed, and by the way he beheld that noble sword, where the pommel and the hilt were all of precious stones. And then hee said to himselfe. If I throw this rich sword into the water, thereof shall neuer come good, but harme and losse. And then sir Bediuer hid Excalibur vnder a tree, and as soone as hee might he came againe vnto King Arthur, and said hee had bene at the water, and had throwen the sword into the water. What sawest thou there said the King. Sir said he, I saw nothing but waues and wind. That is vntruely said of thee said King Arthur. Therefore goe thou lightly and doe my command, as thou art to mee lefe and deere, speare not but throw it in. When Sir Bediuer returned againe, and tooke the sword in his hand. And then him thought it sinne and shame to throw away that noble sword. And so after hee hid the sword and returned againe, and told to the King that hee had bene at the water and done his command. What saw yee there said the King. Sir said hee I saw nothing but the water wap and waues waune. Ah traitour vntrue said King Arthur, now hast thou betrayed me two times who would haue wend that thou that hast bene vnto me so selfe and deere, and thou art named a noble knight, and wouldest betray mee for the rich sword. But now goe againe lightly, for thy long tarrying putteth me in great iopardie of my life, for I haue taken cold. And but if thou doe as I commaund thee and if euer I may see thee, I shall see thee with mine owne hands, for thou wouldest for my rich sword let me dead. When sir Bediuer departed, and went to the sword, and lightly tooke it by

and

and his Knights of the round Table.

and went to the waters side, and there hee bound the girdell about the hilts. And then hee threw the sword into the water as farre as hee might. And there came an arme and an hand aboue the water and met it and caught it, and soooke it thise and brandished.

And then the hand vanished away with the sword in the water. So sir Bediuer came againe to the King and told him what he had seene. Alas said the King, helpe me from this, for I dread me I haue taried ouer long. When sir Bediuer tooke King Arthur vpon his backe, and so went with him to the waters side. And when they were at the waters side even by the bank hee saw a little barge, with many faire Ladies in it. And among them all was a Queene, and all they had white hoods, and they wept and shaked when they saw King Arthur.

Now put mee into the barge said the King. And so hee did sofly, and there receiued him three Queenes with great mourning. And so these three Queenes set them downe, and in one of their laps King Arthur layde his head. And then that Queene said. Ah dear brother why haue ye taried so long from me. Alas the wound on your head hath taken ouer much cold. And so then they rowed from the land. And sir Bediuer beheld al those ladies goe from him. When Sir Bediuer cried. Ah my Lord Arthur what shall become of mee now ye goe from me, & leaue me here alone among mine enemies. Comfort thy selfe said King Arthur, and do as well as thou maiest, for in mee is no trust for to trust in, for I wil into the vale of Auilion, for to heale me of my grievous wound. And if thou neuer heere more of mee, pray for my soule. But euermore the Queenes and the Ladies wept and shaked that it was pittie for to heare them. And as soone as Sir Bediuer had lost the sight of the barge, he wept and wailed, and so tooke the forrest, and so he went all the night, and in the morning hee was ware be-
tweene two hills, of a Chappell and an hermitage.

CHAP.

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

CHAP. CLXIX.

How Sir *Bedivere* found King *Arthur* dead on the morrow in an hermitage, and how he abode there with the hermit.

Then was Sir *Bedivere* glad and thither hee went. And when hee came into the chappell, hee saw where lay an hermit groueling vpon all foure there fast by a tombe newly grauen. When the hermit saw Sir *Bedivere*, hee knew him well, for he was but a little before Bishop of *Canterbury*, that Sir *Mordred* had banished away. Sir said Sir *Bedivere* what man is there buried that yee pray so fast for. By faire sonne said the hermit, I wot not verily but by daeming, but this night at midnight heere came a great number of Ladies, which brought this dead corpes, and prayed mee to bury him. And heere they offered an hundred tapers, and gaue me an hundred besaunts. Alas said Sir *Bedivere*, that was my Lord King *Arthur* that heere lyeth buried in this Chappell. Then Sir *Bedivere* sowned. And when hee awoke, hee prayed the hermit that hee might abide with him heere still to liue with fasting and prayers, for from hence will I neuer goe said Sir *Bedivere* by my will, but all the dayes of my life heere to pray for my Lord King *Arthur*. We are welcome to mee said the hermit, for I know you better then yee weene that I doe. For yee are that bold *Bedivere*, and the noble Duke Sir *Lucan* the butler was your owne brother.

When Sir *Bedivere* told the hermit all as yee heard before. So Sir *Bedivere* abode there still with the hermit, which had bene before the Bishop of *Canterbury*. And there Sir *Bedivere* put vpon him poore cloathes and serued the hermit full lowly in fasting and in prayers. This of King *Arthur* I finde no more witten in my coppie of the certaintie of his death. But thus was hee led away in a barge wherein were three Quenes. That one was King *Archurs* sister *Morgan* le fay. The other was the Quene of *Northgalis*. And the third was the Quene of the *Walt* lands, and there was *Nimue* the chiefe Lady of the Lake which had wedded Sir *Pelleas* the

good

and his Knights of the round Table:

good knight and this Lady had done much for King *Arthur* for shee would neuer suffer Sir *Pelleas* to bee in no place whereas hee should bee in danger of his life. And so hee liued to the uttermost of his dayes with her in great rest. More of the death of King *Arthur* could I neuer find, but that Ladies brought him vnto the burials. And such one was buried there, that the hermit bare witness, that some times was Bishop of *Canterbury*. But yet the hermit knew not of a certaine that it was verely the body of King *Arthur*. For this tale Sir *Bedivere* knight of the round table made it plainly to be witten.

CHAP. CLXX.

Of the opinion of some men, of the death of King *Arthur*, and how Quene *Guenewer* made her a Nunne in *Almesbury*.

Some men yet say in many parts of England that King *Arthur* is not dead, but by the will of our Lord *Iesu Christ* into an other place. And men say that hee will come againe, and hee shall winne the holy Crosse. I will not say that it shall bee so, but rather I will say, that heere in this world hee changed his life. But many men say that there is witten vpon his tombe this verse. *Hic iacet Arthurus rex quondam, rexq; futurus.*

Thus leaue wee here Sir *Bedivere* with the hermit, that dwelled that time in a chappell beside *Glastinbury*, and there was his hermitage. And so they liued in prayers and fastings and great abstinence. And when Quene *Guenewer* vnderstood that her Lord King *Arthur* was slaine, and all the noble knights Sir *Mordred* and all the remnant, then shee stole away, and shee Ladies with her. And so shee went to *Almesbury*, and there shee let make her selfe a spunne and ware white cloathes and blacke. And great pennance shee tooke as euer did sinfull Lady in this land, and neuer creature could make her merry, but liued

Do

in

in fastings, prayers and almes deeds, that all manner of people marvelled how virtuously shee was changed. So she leue wee Queene Gueneuer in Almesbury that was a Nunne in white cloathes and blacke. And there shee was abbesse and ruler as reason would, and turne wee from her and speake we of Sir Launcelot du lake.

CHAP. CLXXI.

How when Sir Launcelot heard of the death of King Arthur and of Sir Gawaine, he came into England

AND when he heard in his countrey that Sir Mordred was crowned King in England, and made warre against King Arthur his owne father, and would not let him to land in his owne land. Also it was told Sir Launcelot how that Sir Mordred had laid siege about the Toure of London, because the Queene would not wed him. When Sir Launcelot wonderous wroth and faine to his kin. Alas that double traitour Sir Mordred, now I repent mee that hee escaped my hands, for much shame hath hee done to my Lord King Arthur. For I feele by the letter of Sir Gawaine, that my Lord King Arthur is right hard bested. Alas said Sir Launcelot that euer I should live to heare that most noble King that made mee knight thus to bee over-set with his subjects in his owne Realme, and this dolefull letter that my Lord Sir Gawaine hath sent me befoze his death, praying mee to see his tombe, wit ye well his dolefull wordes shall neuer goe from my heart. For hee was a full noble knight as ever was bozne, and in an unhappie houre was I bozne, that euer a wretch should haue that unhappie to see Sir Gawaine. Sir Gawaine the good knight, and mine owne friend Sir Gaheris that noble knight.

Alas I may say that I am unhappie said Sir Launcelot, that euer I should see thus unhappely. Alas might I neuer haue hap to see that traitour Sir Mordred. Leave you

your complaints said Sir Bors, and first reuenge you of the death of Sir Gawaine, and it will bee well done that ye goe to see Sir Gawaines tombe, and secondly that ye reuenge my Lord King Arthur and Queene Gueneuer, I thanke you said Sir Launcelot for euer ye will my worship.

Then they made them ready in all the hast that might be with ships and gallies with Sir Launcelot and his host for to passe into England. And so hee passed ouer the sea, and arrived at Douer. And there hee landed with seuen things, and their number was hidious to behold. When Sir Launcelot enquired of the men of Douer where King Arthur was become.

Then the people told him how that hee was slaine with Sir Mordred and an hundred thousand died vpon a day, and how Sir Mordred gaue King Arthur there the first battaile at his Landing and there was the good knight Sir Gawaine slaine, and on the morrow Sir Mordred fought with King Arthur vpon barraine downe, and there King Arthur put Sir Mordred to the worst. Alas said Sir Launcelot this is the heaviest tidings that euer came to mee. Now faire sirs said Sir Launcelot, I beseech you shewe me the tombe of Sir Gawaine.

And then certaine people of the towne brought him to the Castle of Douer, and shewed him the tombe of Sir Gawaine. When Sir Launcelot kneled downe and wept and prayed full heartely for his soule. And that night hee made a dole, and al they that would come had as much flesh and fish, wine and Ale as they might eate and drinke, and everyman and woman had twelue pence come who would. Thus with his owne hands dealed he his money in a mourning gowne. And euer hee wept and prayed them to pray for the soule of Sir Gawaine. And on the morrow all the priests and clarkes that might be gotten in the countrey were there, and sung masse of Requiem. And there Sir Launcelot offered first, and hee offered an hundred pound,

and then the seven kings offered fortie round a peece. And the offering dured from the morning to night. And Sir Launcelot lay two nights vpon his tombe in prayers and in weeping. When on the thirde day Sir Launcelot called vnto him the kings, Dukes, Charles, Barons and knights, and thus hee said, My faire Lords I thanke you all of your comming hither into this countrey with me. But wee come to late, and that shall repent men while I liue, but against death there may no man rebell. But sith it is so said sir Launcelot I will my selfe ride and seeke my Lady Quene Gueneuer, for as I heare say, she hath had much paine and great disease, and I haue heard say that shee is fled into the west countrey, therefore yee all shall abide mee heere, and but if I come againe within fiftene dayes, then take your ships and depart into your countries. For I will doe as I haue said to you.

CHAP. CLXXII.

How Sir Launcelot departed for to seeke Quene Gueneuer and how hee found her at Almesbury.

Then came Sir Bors de Ganis and said, My Lord Sir Launcelot what thinke yee to doe now to ride in this Realme, wit thou well yee shall finde few friends. Bee as it may said sir Launcelot, keepe you still heere, for I will forth on my iourney, and neither man nor child shall goe with mee. So it was no boot to strue, but hee departed and rode westward and there hee sought seven or eight dayes, and at the last hee came vnto a Pury. And then was Quene Gueneuer ware of sir Launcelot as hee walked in the cloyster. And when shee saw him there, shee solowned thre times, that all the Ladies and gentlewomen had woelke enough for to hold the Quene vp. So when shee might speake, shee called Ladies and gentlewomen vnto her. Bee meruaile faire Ladies why I make this chere. Truly said shee, it is for the sight of yonder knight.

knicht which yonder, wherefore I pray you all to call him vnto mee. And when Sir Launcelot was brought vnto her, then shee said, Through this knight and mee all these warres were wrought, and the death of the most noble knights of the world. For through our loue that wee haue loued together, is my most noble Lordaine. Therefore wit thou well Sir Launcelot, I am set in such a plight to get my soules health. And yet I trust through Gods grace, that after my death for to haue the sight of the blessed face of Iesu Christ, and at the dreadfull day of dome to sit on his right side. For as sinfull creatures as euer was I are Saints in Heauen.

Therefore Sir Launcelot, I require thee and beseech thee heartely, for all the loue that euer was betweene vs two, that thou neuer looke mee more in the visage. And further more I command thee on Gods behalfe right straightly, that thou forsake my company, and that vnto thy kingdome shortly thou returne againe, and keepe well thy Realme from warre and wracke. For as well as I haue loued thee Sir Launcelot, now mine heart will not once serue mee to see thee. For through mee and thee is the floure of Kings and knights destroyed. Therefore Sir Launcelot goe thou vnto thy Realme, and there take thee a wife, and liue with her in ioy and blisse. And I beseech you heartely pray for mee vnto our Lord God, that I may amend my misdeed.

Now sweete madame said Sir Launcelot would yee that I should now returne againe into my countrey, and there to wed a Lady. Nay madame, wit yee well that I will neuer while I liue. For I shall neuer bee so false to you, of that I haue promised, but the same destiny that yee haue taken you vnto, I will take mee vnto, for to please God, and speciall to pray for you.

If thou wilt doe so said the Quene hold thy promise. But I may not beleue but that thou wilt returne to the world againe. We say well said hee yet wit yee mee neuer.

never false of my promise, and God defend but that I should forsake the world like as yee haue done. For in the quest of the Sancgreall I had forsaken the vanities of the world, had not your Lordshene. And if I had don so at that time with my heart, will and thought, I had passed all the knyghts that were in the quest of the Sancgreall, except Sir Galahad my sonne. And therefore my Lady Dame Gueneuer, thence yee haue taken you vnto perfection, I must needs take me vnto perfection of right.

For I take record of God in you haue I had mine earthly toy. And if I had found you so disposed now, I had cast mee for to haue had you into mine owne Realme and countrey.

CHAP. CLXXIII

How Sir Launcelot came vnto the Hermitage where the Archbishop of Canterbury was, and how he tooke the habite vnto him.

But sithence I finde you thus disposed, I ensure you faithfully that I will take mee to penance, and pray while my life lasteth, if I may finde any good hermite either gray or white that will receiue mee. Wherefore Madame I pray you kisse mee once and neuer moze. Nay said the Quene, that shall I neuer doe, but abstaine you from such things. And so they departed. But there was neuer so hard a hearted man, but hee would haue wept to see the sorrow that they made. For there was a lamentation as though they had bene stunged with speeres, and many times they sobred. And the Ladies beare the Quene to her Chamber. And sir Launcelot awoke and went and took his horse and rode all that day and all that night in a forest weeping. And at the last hee was ward of an hermitage and a chappell that stood betweene two clifles, and then hee heard a little Bell ring to masse, and thither he rode and alighted, and tied his horse to the gate

and heard masse. And he that sung the masse was the Bishop of Canterbury. Both the bishop and Sir Bediure knew Sir Launcelot, they spake together after masse. But when Sir Bediure had told him his tale all whole, Sir Launcelots heart almost brast for sorrow, and Sir Launcelot threw a broad hir armour and said. Alas who may trust this world.

And then hee kneeled downe on his knees, and prayed the Bishoppe for to spise him and assoile him. And then hee besought the Bishop that hee might bee his brother. When the Bishoppe said, I will gladly and then hee put an habite vpon sir Lancelot, and there hee serued God day and night with prayers and fastings.

Thus the great host abode at Dover. And then Sir Lionell tooke sithene Lords with him and rode to London to seeke sir Launcelot. And there Sir Lionell was saine and many of his Lords. When Sir Bors de Ganis made the great host to goe home againe vnto their owne countrey. And Sir Bors, Sir Ector de maris, Sir Blamor, Sir Bleoberis, and with moe other of Sir Launcelots kinne tooke on them to ride through all England to seeke Sir Launcelot.

So Sir Bors rode so long, till hee came vnto the same Chappell where Sir Launcelot was. And so Sir Bors heard a little Bell knell that rung to masse, and there hee alighted and heard masse. And when masse was done, the Bishoppe, Sir Launcelot and Sir Bediure came vnto Sir Bors. And when hee saw Sir Launcelot in that manner of clothing, then hee prayed the Bishop that hee might bee in the same seufe. And so there was an habite put vpon him, and there hee liued in prayers and fasting. And within halfe a yeare there was come Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir Bleoberis, Sir Villiers, Sir Clarrus and Sir Gahalarine. So these seuen noble knyghts abode there still. And when they saw that Sir Launcelot had taken him vnto such perfection, they had no list to depart, but

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR

but tooke such an habite as hee had. Thus they endured in great penance sixe yeares, and then Sir Launcelot tooke the habite of priesthood, and twelue monethes hee sung the masse. And there was none of these other knights but that they red in booke, and helped for to sing masse and ring Wells, and did lowly all manner of seruice. And so their horses went where they would. For they tooke no regard in worldly riches. For when they saw Sir Launcelot endure such penance, in prayer & in fasting, they tooke no force what paine they endured, for to see the noblest knight of the world take such abstinence, so that hee waxed full leane. And thus vpon a night there came a vision vnto Sir Launcelot, and charged him in remission of all his sinnes, to hast him toward Almesburry, and by that time thou come there, thou shalt finde Quene Gueneuer dead, and therefore take thy fellowes with thee, and also puruey thee an horse beere, and bring you the corps of her, and bury it by her Lord and husband the noble King Arthur. So this vision came thrice vnto Sir Launcelot in one night.

CHAP. CLXXIIII.

How Sir Launcelot went with his seven fellowes to Almesbury, and found Quene Gueneuer dead whom they brought to Glastinbury.

Then Sir Launcelot rose vp or it was day, and told the Hermite thereof. It is well done said the Hermite, that ye disobey not this vision. Then Sir Launcelot his seven fellowes with him, and on foote they went from Glastinbury, the which is little more then thirte mile. And thither they came within two dayes, for they were weake and feeble to goe. And when Sir Launcelot was come to Almesbury within the Sunny, Quene Gueneuer died but halfe an houre before. And the Ladies told Sir Launcelot, that Quene Gueneuer had told all or shee died,

and his Knights of the round Table:

died, that Sir Launcelot had bene priest nere twelue moneths, and hither hee cometh as fast as he may for to fetch my corps. And beside my Lord King Arthur hee shall bury mee. Wherefore the Quene said in hearing of them all. I beseech almighty God that I may neuer haue power to see Sir Launcelot with my worldly eyes. And this (said all the Ladies) was euer her prayer all those two dayes, vntill shee was dead. When Sir Launcelot saw her visage, but hee wept not greatly, but sighed. And so hee did all the obseruance of the seruice himselfe, both the Dirige at night and the masse on the morrow. And there was ordained an horse beere. And so with an hundred torches euer burning about the corps of the Quene. And euer Sir Launcelot with his seven fellowes went about the beere singing and reading many an holy and deuout orison. And frankensence vpon the corps encensed. Thus Sir Launcelot and his eight fellowes went on foote from Almesbury vntill they came to Glastinbury. And when they were come to the Chappell and the Hermitage, there shee had a Durge with great deuotion. And on the morrow the Hermite that was sometime Bishop of Canturbury sung the masse of Requiem with great deuotion. And Sir Launcelot was the first that offred, and then offered all his eight fellowes. And then shee was wrapped in seared clothes of reines, from the top to the toe in thirtie fold, and then shee was put in a web of lead, and after in a coffin of marble, and when shee was put into the earth, Sir Launcelot solined, and lay long vpon the ground while the Hermite came and awaked him and said. Wee are to blame for we displease God with such manner of sorrow making. Truly said Sir Launcelot, I trust I doe not displease God. For hee knoweth well mine entent, for my sorrow was not, nor is not for any reioycing of sinne, but my sorrow may neuer haue an end. For when I remember and call to minde her beautie, her bounty, and her noblenesse, that was as well with her

King my Lord Arthur as with her, and also when I saw
the corps of that noble King and noble Queene so lye to-
gether in that cold grane made of earth, that sometime
were so highly set in most honourable places, truly mine
heart would not serue mee to susteine my wretched and
carefull body also. And when I remember mee how I
throught my default and throught my presumption and pride
that they were both laid full low, the which were perelless
that euer were liuing of chritian people. Wit yee well
said Sir Launcelot, this remembred of their kindnesse,
and of mine unkindnesse, sauke and empress so in my
heart, that all my naturall strenght failed mee, so that I
might not susteine my selfe.

CHAP. CLXXV.

How Sir Launcelot began for to waxe sicke, and after died,
and then his body was borne vnto Ioyous gard, there to
bee buried.

Then Sir Launcelot neuer after eate but little meate,
nor drinke, but continually mourned vntill hee was
dead. And then hee sickned more and more, and dried
and diuined away. For the Bishop nor none of his fellowes
might not make him to eate, and little hee dranke that
hee was and then wared shorter by a cubit then hee was,
that the people could not know him. For euer more day
and night hee prayed, but needfully as nature required
sometime hee slumbered a broken slepe, and alwayes hee
was lying groueling vpon King Arthurs and Queene Gu-
eneuers tombe. And there was no comfort that the Bishop
nor Sir Bors, nor none of all his fellowes could make him,
it auailed nothing.

Oh yee mightie and pompeous Lords toying in the
gloze transitory of this vnsustainable life, as in raigning ouer
great Realmes and mightie great countries, fortified with
strong Castles and Cities edified with many a rich Citie

Pea

We also yee fierce and mightie knights so balliant in ad-
uenturous deeds of armes. Behold behold see how this
mightie conquerour King Arthur whom in his humaine
life all the world doubted. See also the noble Queene Gu-
eneuer which sometime sat in her chaire adozned with gold,
pearles and precious stones, now lye full low in obscure
fosses or pit couered with cloads of earth, and clay. Behold
also this mightie champion Sir Launcelot, pearcelles of
all knighthood, see now how hee lyeth groueling vpon the
cold mould, now being so feeble and faint that sometime
was so terrible, how and in what manner ought yee to bee
so desirous of worldly honour so dangerous. Therefore
mee thinketh this present booke is right necessary offer
to be read. For in all yee finde the most gracious knightly
and vertuous war of the most noble knights of the world,
whereby they gat prayling continually. Also mee seem-
eth by the oft reading thereof, yee shall greatly desire to
accustome your selfe in following of those gracious knight-
ly deeds, that is to say, to dread God, and to loue righte-
ousnesse, faithfully and couragiously to serue your soue-
raigne Prince. And the more that God hath given you
the triumphall honour, the more yee ought to bee, euer
feareing the vnsustainable of this deceitfull world. And
so I passe ouer and turne againe vnto my matter.

So within five weekes after Sir Launcelot fell sicke,
and lay in his bed. And then hee sent for the Bishoppe
that there was Hermite, and all his true fellowes. When
Sir Launcelot said with dery reueren. Sir Bishoppe I
pray you that yee will giue mee all my rights that belong-
eth vnto a chritian man. It shall not neede you say the
Hermite and all his fellowes, it is but a heauinesse of your
blood, yee shall bee well amended by the grace of God to
morrow.

My faire Lords said Sir Launcelot, wit yee well my
carefull body will into the earth, I haue warning more
then I will now say, therefore I pray you giue mee my

rights: So when hee was howeled and criered, and had all that a christian man ought to haue, hee prayed the Bishop that his fellowes might beare his body vnto Joyous gard.

Some men say Arthure & some men say is Bambozole: How be it said Sir Lancelot me repenteth sore, but I made mine auowlsome, that in Joyous gard I would be buried, because of breaking of mine auow, I pray you all leade mee thither. When there was weeping and wringing of hands among all his fellowes. So at the season of the night, they went all to their beds: for they all lay in one chamber. So after midnight against day the Bishop that was Hermite as hee lay in his bed a sleepe, hee fell on a great laughter. And therewith the fellowship awoke, and came vnto the Bishop, and asked him what hee ayled. Ah Iesu mercy said the Bishop, why did yee awake mee, I was neuer in all my life so mery and so well at ease. Why, wherefore said Sir Bors.

Cruely said the Bishop, heere was Sir Launcelot with mee, with more Angels then euer I saw men vpon one day. And I saw the Angels haue vp Sir Launcelot towards Heauen, and the gates of Heauen opened against him. It is but vntching of sweuens said Sir Bors. For I doubt not Sir Launcelot ayleth nothing but good. It may well bee said the Bishop, goe yee to his bed, and then shall yee proue the sooth.

So when Sir Bors and his fellowes came to his bed, they found him sturke dead, and hee lay as hee had slept. And the sweetest saour about him that euer they smelled. When was there weeping and wringing of hands, and the greatest dole they made that euer made men. And on the morrow the Bishop sang his masse of Requiem. And after the Bishop and all those nine knights put Sir Launcelot in the same hose beere that Quene Gueneuere was laid in before that shee was buried.

And so the Bishop and they altogether went with the corps

corps of Sir Launcelot dayly, till they came vnto Joyous gard, and euer they had an hundred torches burning about him.

And so within fiftene dayes they came to Joyous gard. And there they laid his corps in the body of the quire and sung and read many psalters and prayers ouer him and about him. And euer his visage was laid open and naked, that all folke might behold him. For such was the custome in those dayes that all men of worship should so lye with open visage till that they were buried. And right thus as they were at their seruice there came Sir Ector de Maris, that had sought seuen yeaere all England, Scotland and Wales seeking his brother Sir Launcelot.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

How Sir Ector found Sir Launcelot his brother dead. And how Constantine reigned next after King Arthur. And of the end of this booke.

And when Sir Ector de Maris heard such noise and light in the Quere of Joyous gard, hee alighted and put his horse away from him, and came into the Quere, and there hee saw men sing the seruice full lamentably. And all they knew Sir Ector, but hee knew not them. Then went Sir Bors vnto Sir Ector, and told him how there lay his brother Sir Launcelot dead.

And then Sir Ector threw his shield, his sword and his helute from him. And when hee beheld Sir Launcelots visage, hee fell downe in a swoone. And when hee awaked, it were hard for any tongue to tell the dolefull complaints that he made for his brother. Ah Sir Lancelot said hee thou were head of all christian knights, and now I dare say said Sir Bors that Sir Launcelot, there thou liest thou were neuer matched of none earthly knights hands. And thou were the truest knight that euer beare shield. And thou were the truest friend to thy louer that

The Historie of Prince ARTHUR.

ever bestrood horse, and thou were the truest lover of a
finfull man that ever loved woman. And thou were the
kindest man that ever strooke with sword. And thou were
the goodliest parson that ever came among preste of
knights. And thou were the meekest man and the gen-
tlest that ever ate in Hall among Ladies. And thou were
the sternest knight to thy mortall foe that ever put speare
in the rest.

When there was weeping and dolour out of measure.
Thus they kept Sir Launcelots corps about the ground
fiftene dayes, and then they buried it with great deuoti-
on. And then at leasure they went all with the Bishop of
Canterbury vnto his Hermitage. And there they were
together more then a moneth. Then Sir Constantine
(which was Sir Cadors son of Cornewaile) was chosen
king of England. And hee was a full noble knight, and
worshipfully hee ruled this Realme. And then this King
Constantine sent for the Bishop of Canterbury for hee
heard say where hee was. And so hee was restored vnto
his Bishopricke and left that hermitage. And Sir Bedi-
uere was there ever till an Hermite vnto his liues end.
Then Sir Bors de Ganis, Sir Ector de Maris, Sir Gaha-
latine, Sir Galihud, Sir Galihodin, Sir Blamor, Sir Ble-
oberis, Sir Villiers le valiaunt, Sir Clarrus of Claremount
all these knights drew them to their countries, how be-
it, King Constantine would haue had them with him. But
they would not abide in this Realme. And there they liued
in their countries as holy men. And some English
bookes make mention, that they went neuer out of Eng-
land after the death of Sir Launcelot, but that was fauour
of markees.

For Sir Bors, Sir Ector, Sir Blamor, and Sir Bleo-
beris, went into the Holy land, there as Iesu Christ was
both quicke and dead, and as they had established their
lands. For Sir Launcelot commanded them so to doe or
ever hee passed out of this world. And these foure knights
did

and his Knights of the round Table.

did many battailes vpon the Discreaunts and Turkes.
And there they died vpon good fryday for Gods sake.

Here is the ende of the whole booke of King Arthur
and of his noble knights of the round table, that when they
were whole together, there was ever an hundred and for-
tie. Also heere is the end of the death of King Arthur. I
pray you all gentlemen & gentlewomen that read this booke
of King Arthur and his knights from the beginning to the
ending, pray for mee while I am alieue that God send
mee good deliuerance.

And when I am dead, I pray you all pray for my
soule. For this booke was finished the ninth yeare of
the raigne of King Edward the fourth by Sir Tho-
mas Maleor knight, as Iesu helpe mee for his great
might, as hee is the seruant of Iesu both day and
night.

Thus endeth this noble and ioyous booke entituled
La Mort D'Arthur, notwithstanding it treateth of the
birth, life, and acts, of the said King Arthur and of
his noble knights of the round table, and their mer-
uallous enquests and aduentures, the achleueing of the
Holy Sanctgreall.

And in the end the dolorous death and departing
out of this world of them all.

FINIS.